South Africa Yearbook 2017/18

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

2030 NDP

This edition of the *South Africa Yearbook* (SAYB) coincides with the period of renewal, revival and optimism in our country. The invigorating "Send Me – Thuma Mina" clarion call challenges all South Africans to make a meaningful contribution towards the creation of a transformed and prosperous society with a diverse and inclusive economy, as envisaged in the National Development Plan (NDP): Vision 2030.

Despite sporadic incidences of racism, most patriotic South Africans are committed to upholding social cohesion and nation-building to create a united, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic and prosperous country. In its relentless pursuit to ensure a better life for all South Africans, government is making a concerted effort to tackle poverty and inequality by growing the economy and creating much-needed jobs.

As a secure, technologically advanced and attractive investment destination, South Africa is open for business. Government has introduced a number of enterprising initiatives to create a conducive environment to do business without hindrances. Agriculture and mining are some of the sectors which contribute to the economic growth and development of the country.

The NDP recognises tourism, which contributes about 9% to our gross domestic product and employs over 1,6 million people across the value chain, as one of the industries essential for economic growth and job creation.

As part of addressing the imbalances and injustices of the past, government will forge ahead with the orderly expropriation of land without compensation as a fundamental process to accelerate land redistribution and restore the dignity of the historically dispossessed people.

On the other hand, radical economic transformation will ensure the attainment of significant economic freedom by, among other things, accelerating shared and inclusive economic growth and transforming the ownership of business enterprises.

Government is determined to advance the socio-economic well-being of youth through various empowerment programmes such as the National Youth Service, which seeks to develop the abilities of young people through active service and learning.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 states that every child has the right to be protected from maltreatment, neglect, abuse or degradation. Law-enforcement agencies have adopted a zero-tolerance approach towards acts of women and child abuse to ensure that these vulnerable members of our society are and always feel safe.

Government aims to intensify efforts to improve the health of our people, particularly in the context of the devastating impact of the AIDS pandemic and other diseases such as tuberculosis, cancer and diabetes.

Of the estimated 7,1 million people living with HIV in South Africa, more than 4,2 million of them are on antiretroviral treatment, which makes it the world's biggest treatment programme.

On environmental matters, South Africa has a number of measures in place to tackle marine pollution, which threatens our fragile ecosystems.

South Africa continues to sustain and deepen international and regional relations to promote peace, security, stability, economic cooperation and integration. As an active member of the global community, the country plays active roles within various multilateral forums.

Through the National Anti-Corruption Hotline (0800 701 701), which continues to make remarkable progress in uncovering corruption in the Public Service, government aims to ensure clean, effective and efficient governance.

All senior managers in the Public Service are expected to disclose all their financial interests by 30 April of each year. One of the priorities of government is to create a strong and capable state that provides quality services such as houses, safety and security, water, education and healthcare to our people.

Following the Year of Oliver Reginald Tambo in 2017, South Africa commemorates the centenary of two other liberation struggle icons, former President Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela and Mama Albertina Nontsikelelo Sisulu in 2018.

Both Tata Mandela and Mama Sisulu dedicated their lives to securing better socio-economic and political conditions in South Africa. In honour of their legacy, all South Africans should strive to promote nation-building and a socially cohesive society.

The SAYB serves to highlight government's major achievements and future plans, particularly the cherished endeavour to address the triple challenge of inequality, poverty and unemployment.

Mr Cyril M. Ramaphosa
President of the Republic of South Africa
October 2018

South Africa Yearbook 2017/18
Twenty-fifth (25th) edition
(Originally published as *South Africa Official Yearbook)*

Compiled, edited and published by:
Government Communication and Information System
(GCIS), Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001

Telephone: 012 473 0000
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*

Managing Editor: Elias Tibane

Editor: Miriam Mokoena

Assistant Editor: Malphia Honwane

Support services: Carel Mojela

Picture coordinator: Elizabeth Mpila

Images supplied by: GCIS

Design and layout: Rachel Sekhu

ISBN: 978-0-620-79162-5

The *South Africa Yearbook* (SAYB) is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring formal confirmation of any data in the SAYB or more detailed specific information, should consult the sources as indicated. Additional information is also available on *Government Online (www.gov.za).*

Unless otherwise specified, the information contained in this book was the latest available in October 2018.

For all enquiries, please contact the Editor, Ms Miriam Mokoena, tel: 012 473 0089, email: *miriam@gcis.gov.za*

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Land and its people

South Africa occupies the most southern tip of Africa with its long coastline stretching more than 3 000 km from the desert border with Namibia on the Atlantic coast southwards around the tip of Africa and then north to the border of subtropical Mozambique on the Indian Ocean.

The country has more than 290 conservation parks. It is home to almost 300 mammal species, about 860 bird species and 8 000 plant species. The annual sardine run is the biggest migration on the planet.

South Africa comprises 10 world heritage sites and is divided into eight biomes.

The heritage sites are:

- Cradle of Humankind
- Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape
- Robben Island
- Cape Floral Region Protected Areas
- iSimangaliso Wetland Park
- Vredefort Dome
- uKhahlamba / Drakensberg Park
- ǂ Khomani Cultural Landscape
- Makhonjwa Mountains.

The biomes are:

- Grassland
- Savanna
- Succulent Karoo
- Nama Karoo
- Forest
- Fynbos
- Desert
- Thicket.

The country is considered to be the cradle of humankind and boasts 40% of all hominid finds on Earth.

The land

Stretching latitudinally from 22°S to 35°S and longitudinally from 17°E to 33°E, South Africa's surface area covers 1 219 602 km^2.

Physical features range from bushveld, grass-lands, forests, deserts and majestic mountain peaks, to wide unspoilt beaches and coastal wetlands.

The country shares common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland, while the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho is landlocked by South African territory in the south-east.

The Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947, lie some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town.

The oceans and coastline

The warm Mozambique-Agulhas Current skirts the east and south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the cold Benguela Current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola.

The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for significant differences in climate and vegetation, as well as differences in marine life.

Owing to the cold waters of the west coast being much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast.

Saldanha Bay on the west coast is the only ideal natural harbour.

Rivers and lakes

None of the country's rivers are commercially navigable and most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbanks block entry for most of the year.

South Africa has no significant natural lakes. Artificial lakes are used mostly for crop irrigation.

The Orange River is South Africa's largest river. Rising in the Drakensberg Mountains, it traverses through the Lesotho Highlands and joins the Caledon River between the Eastern Cape and the Free State before it empties into the Atlantic Ocean forming the border with Namibia.

Other major rivers include the Vaal, Breede, Komati, Lepelle (previously Olifants), Tugela, Umzimvubu, Limpopo and Molopo.

Average temperatures (°C) in South Africa

City	Summer		Winter	
	Max	Min	Max	Min
Bloemfontein	31	15	17	-2
Cape Town	26	16	18	7
Durban	28	21	23	11
East London	26	18	21	10
George	25	15	19	7
Johannesburg	26	15	17	4
Kimberley	33	18	19	3
Mthatha	27	16	21	4
Musina	34	21	25	7
Nelspruit	29	19	23	6
Pietermaritzburg	28	18	23	3
Polokwane	28	17	20	4
Port Elizabeth	25	18	20	9
Pretoria	29	18	20	5
Richards Bay	29	21	23	12
Skukuza	33	21	26	6
Thohoyandou	31	20	24	10
Upington	36	20	21	4

Source: South African Weather Service

Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major physiographic categories: the interior plateau and the land between the plateau and the coast.

Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 m in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert. The plateau is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level. The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and 60 km to 80 km in the west. At least three major subdivisions are recognised – the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions, and the western plateau slopes.

Climate

A subtropical location, moderated by ocean on three sides of the country and the altitude of the interior plateau, account for the warm temperate conditions. South Africa is a relatively dry country, with an average annual rainfall of about 464 mm.

While the Western Cape gets most of its rainfall in winter, the rest of the country is generally a summer-rainfall region.

Temperatures in South Africa tend to be lower than in other countries at similar latitudes owing mainly to greater elevation above sea level.

On the interior plateau, the altitude – Johan-nesburg lies at 1 694 m – keeps the average summer temperatures below 30°C. In winter, for the same reason, night-time temperatures can drop to freezing point or lower in some places.

South Africa's coastal regions are therefore relatively warm in winter. The hottest place in South Africa is Letaba in Limpopo, with a mean annual temperature of 23.3ºC and an average annual maximum temperature of 35.0ºC.

The coldest place in South Africa is Buffelsfontein near Molteno in the Eastern Cape, with a mean annual temperature

of 11.3 ºC and an average annual minimum temperature of 2.8 ºC. The wettest place in South Africa is Matiwa in Limpopo with an average annual rainfall of 2004 mm (calculated over a 60-year period).

The driest Place in South Africa is Alexander Bay in the Northern Cape, with an average annual rainfall of only 46 mm.

The windiest place in South Africa is Cape Point in the Western Cape, which experiences only 2% of all hours in the year with calm conditions. The average wind speed is 6.9 m/s with 42.1% of the wind speeds greater than 8 m/s.

The people

For 2018, Statistics South Africa estimated the mid-year population as 57,73 million. Approximately 29,5 million (51%) of the population was female. Gauteng comprises the largest share of the South African population, with approximately 14,7 million people (25,4%) living in the province. KwaZulu-Natal has the the second largest population, with 11,4 million people (19,7%). With a population of approximately 1,23 million people (2,1%), Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population.

About 29,5% of the population is aged younger than 15 years and approximately 8,5% (4,89 million) is 60 years or older. Similar proportions of those younger than 15 years live in Gauteng (21,1%) and KwaZulu-Natal (21,0%). Of the elderly aged 60 years and older, the highest percentage 24,0% (1,18 million) reside in Gauteng. The proportion of elderly persons aged 60 and older is increasing over time.

Migration is an important demographic process in South Africa as it shapes the age structure and distribution of the provincial population. For the period 2016-2021, Gauteng and Western Cape are estimated to experience the largest inflow of migrants of approximately, 1 048 440 and 311 004 respectively.

Life expectancy at birth for 2018 is estimated at 61,1 years for males and 67,3 years for females.

The infant mortality rate for 2018 is estimated at 36,4 per 1 000 live births.

The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13,1% among the South African population, up from 12,9% in 2017. The total number of people living with HIV is estimated at approximately 7,52 million in 2018. For adults aged 15–49 years, an estimated 19,0% of the population is HIV positive.

The decline in the percentage of AIDS-related deaths since 2007 can be attributed to the increase in the roll-out of ART over time. National roll-out of ART began in 2005 with a target of one service point in each of the 53 districts of South Africa (later reduced to 52 districts).

The number of AIDS-related deaths declined consistently since 2007 from 276 921 to 115 167 AIDS related deaths in 2018. Access to antiretroviral treatment has changed historical patterns of mortality. Access to ART has thus extended the lifespan of many in South Africa, who would have otherwise died at an earlier age, – as evidenced in the decline of AIDS deaths post-2006..

Languages according to mother tongue

Language	Percentage	Language	Percentage
IsiZulu	24,6%	isiNdebele	1,6%
IsiXhosa	17,0%	Siswati	2,6%
Afrikaans	12,1%	Tshivenda	2,4%
Sepedi	9,5%	Xitsonga	4,2%
English	8,3%	Sesotho	8,0%
Setswana	8,8%	Sign Language	0,5%

Source: Stats SA's Community Survey 2016

Languages

Besides the official languages, scores of others – African, European, Asian and more – are spoken in South Africa, as the country lies at the crossroads of southern Africa. Other languages spoken here and mentioned in the Constitution are the Khoi, Nama and San languages, sign language, Arabic, German, French, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu. There are also a few indigenous creoles and pidgins.

English is generally understood across the country, being the language of business, politics and the media, and the country's lingua franca. But it only ranks fourth out of 11 as a home language.

South Africa's linguistic diversity means that all 11 languages have had a profound effect on one another. South African English, for example, is littered with words and phrases from Afrikaans, isiZulu, Nama and other African languages.

According to Stats SA's Community Survey 2016, isiZulu is the most common home language spoken by 24,6% of the population, followed by isiXhosa (17,0%), Afrikaans (12,1%),

Sepedi (9,5%), Setswana (8,8%), and English (8,3%), Sesotho (0,8%), Xitsonga (4,2%), Siswati (2,6%), Tshivenda (2,4%) and isiNdebele (1,6%).

Religion

South Africa is a secular democracy with freedom of religion. Many religions are represented in the ethnic and regional diversity of the population.

According to Stats SA's Community Survey 2016, the distribution of religious beliefs in South Africa is as follows: Christianity (43 423 717); Islam (892 685); Traditional African religion (2 454 887); Hinduism (561 268); Buddhism (24 808); Bahaism (6 881); Judaism (49 470); Atheism (52 598); Agnosticism (32 944); No religious affiliation/belief (5 964 892); Other (1 482 210), and Do not know (704 358).

The provinces

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, at 169 580 km², is South Africa's second-largest province after the Northern Cape, taking up 13,9% of the total land area.

The province has a population of more than 6,5 million people, the majority of whom speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

It is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the Wild Coast.

The Eastern Cape is abundantly rich in natural resources, from grazing land to forests, marine life to rich farming soils, water to wilderness. The province's climate allows for the production of a diverse range of crops such as pineapples, tea, tomatoes and chicory.

Pondoland, in the east of the province, holds some of the richest soils in the country. Between 10% and 15% of land is set aside for provincial nature reserves while private parks comprise a further 15% of conservancies.

The region has remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof Valley, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

Various floral habitats meet in the province, ranging from tropical forests in the north to the more temperate woods of the south.

The Eastern Cape economy is largely dependent on the automotive sector but has potential in areas such as chemical and petrochemicals, agriculture and agro-processing, capital goods, manufacturing, automotive and green industries.

Education, Health, Rural development, land and agrarian reform, and food security are priorities of the provincial

Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho
Principal languages:
IsiXhosa 82,7%
Afrikaans 10,3%
English 3,9%
Population: 6 522 700
Percentage share of the total population: 11,3%
Area: 169 580 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2018 and Community Survey 2016

government, and the growth of the agriculture and agro-processing sector is strongly rooted in the Eastern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Programme (PGDP).

The PGDP earmarks primary production of food and food products, and the addition of value to primary production by processing, manufacturing and creative marketing of the products.

The province is home to a number of higher education institutions, including Rhodes University, the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology.

It has airports in Bhisho, East London, Mthatha and Port Elizabeth. It also has two major harbours in East London and Port Elizabeth respectively.

Agriculture, fisheries and forestry

The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while sheep farming predominates in the Karoo.

The Alexandria-Grahamstown area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa.

An olive nursery has been developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare to form a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape.

The coastal areas receive good summer rainfall and have a moderate climate, becoming more subtropical to the north-west, which makes it particularly suitable for forestry.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources, and access to line-catches of hake.

Industry

There are two industrial development zones: the West Bank in East London and Coega, near Port Elizabeth, which includes the deepwater Port of Ngqura.

The metropolitan economies of Port Elizabeth and East London are based primarily on manufacturing, the most important being automotive manufacturing. The province is the hub of South Africa's motor industry. With its ability to link throughout the economy, the government has identified the automotive industry as a key growth sector. It already exhibited significant growth under the Motor Industry Development Programme.

Other important sectors include renewables and green industries, forestry and timber processessing, pharmaceuticals, plastics and chemicals, capital goods and tourism.

Free State

According to the Mid-year population estimates, 2018, there were 2 954 300 people in the Free State on about 129 825 km^2 of land. The main languages spoken are Sesotho, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

The Free State has wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns.

It lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

Mangaung, comprising Bloemfontein, Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu, has an established institutional, educational and administrative infrastructure. With Bloemfontein being South Africa's judicial capital, the province houses the Supreme Court of Appeal. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem and the charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains.

Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State. Other tourist attractions include the Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, is South Africa's seventh World Heritage Site.

Agriculture

Agriculture dominates the Free State landscape, with cultivated land covering 32 000 km^2 and natural veld and grazing 87 000 km^2 of the province. Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture.

Free State

Capital: Bloemfontein
Principal languages:
Sesotho 71,9%
Afrikaans 10,9%
IsiXhosa 5,7%

Population: 2 954 300
Percentage share of the total population: 5,1%
Area: 129 464 km^2
Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2018 and Community Survey 2016

Mining

The National Development Plan has intensified the mining potential that still exists in the goldfields region of Matjhabeng in the Lejweleputswa District as a job intervention zone. The De Bron-Merriespruit Gold Project and the Bloemhoek Gold Project are included as potential development projects in the scope of work of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission.

The province has 12 gold mines, producing 30% of South Africa's output and making it the fifth-largest producer of gold in the world. Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country. Uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields is extracted as a by-product.

The Free State's gold reef of more than 400 km stretches across the province from Gauteng. South Africa's largest gold-mining complex is Free State Consolidated Goldfields, with an area of 330 km^2.

Bituminous coal is mined and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg.

The province also produces high-quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district.

Manufacturing and industry

The Maluti-a-Phofung Special Economic Zone is the Free State's share of the logistics and industrial corridor. The Vehicle Distribution Centre was established in partnership with the German Bremen Logistics Group, which committed R60 million towards this project. The Harrismith Food Processing Park forms part of the broader development initiative.

The green economic solar zone in the Xhariep district was expected to result in the establishment of the Xhariep Solar Park, harnessing the solar radiation in the southern part of the Free State.

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme forms part of Eskom's capital expansion programme. This energy infrastructure project is located on the border of the Phumelela and Maluti-a-Phofung Local Municipalities in the Free State and eMnambithi Local Municipality and the uThukela District Municipality in KwaZulu-Natal.

Sasol South Africa, the largest producer of synthetic fuels on the sub-continent, remains a key role-player in the Free State economy. Its investment in its Sasolburg operations is evident from the Wax Expansion project, the Ethylene Purification Unit 5, the Gas Engine Power Plant and Clean Fuels 2.

The Omnia Nitric Acid complex, located within the Sasol Industrial Complex, includes a nitric acid plant, an ammonium nitrate plant, a porous ammonium nitrate plant, a fleet of 145

specialised ammonia rail tankers and other ancillary facilities.

Gauteng

The 2018 Mid-year population estimates show that Gauteng remains the most populous province – 14 717 000 (25,5%). Gauteng contributes 33,9% to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) and is also one of the biggest contributors to the economy of the continent.

Gauteng accounts for the bulk of all employees' remuneration in the country, at a whopping 47,7%, and is responsible for 50,4% of all company turnover in South Africa. Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the province's most important economic sectors.

It is the business heart of South Africa, but it is also the shopping mecca of Africa, with 60% of tourists from the rest of the continent citing shopping as their reason for visiting the province.

The population of more than 14 million people has the highest per-capita income level in the country. The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix, flavoured by a number of foreign influences.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg.

The City of Johannesburg is the capital of the province. South of Johannesburg lies Soweto, the most populous urban residential area in the country, with a population of more than a million.

Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies South Africa's administrative capital, Pretoria. The magnificent Union Buildings, which overlook the city from Meintjieskop, represent the official seat of the South African Government and house the offices of the country's President.

The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and Ga-Rankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Cullinan, which is well known for its diamonds, and Mamelodi and Eersterust are in the east. To the west lies Atteridgeville.

Gauteng

Capital: Johannesburg
Principal languages:

IsiZulu	23,0%
Sesotho	12,7%
English	11,3%
Afrikaans	10,1%

Population: 14 717 000
Percentage share of the total population: 25.5%
Area: 18 178 km²
Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2018 and Community Survey 2016

Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand; and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand. Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspruit, to the east, are of agricultural importance.

The University of Pretoria is the largest residential university in South Africa, while the University of South Africa is believed to be the largest correspondence university in the world. Other universities include the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg.

The province also has several other tertiary education institutions such as universities of technology and further education and training colleges. Gauteng is also home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, the Agricultural Research Council, the Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and the Human Sciences Research Council.

Since December 2014, thousands of people have been taking part in the annual Mandela Remembrance Walk to remember the Struggle veteran. In 2017, the organisers introduced a 10-km run to complement the 5-km walk.

Mining and manufacturing

Manufacturing includes basic iron and steel, fabricated and metal products, food, machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies, vehicle parts and accessories, and chemical products.

All major gold and diamond mining houses have their headquarters in Johannesburg, the biggest being Anglo American and De Beers.

Although gold-mining and ancillary industries provide thousands of jobs, the importance of mining is declining compared to the manufacturing and financial sectors. Gauteng dominates the South African economy in every major sector except agriculture, mining and quarrying. Mining produces only 6% of Gauteng's total income and 31% of export earnings.

Technology

More than 60% of South Africa's research and development takes place in Gauteng.

The CSIR is one of South Africa's leading science and technology research, development and implementation centres. Located in Pretoria, the CSIR's research and development areas include biosciences; the built environment; information and communication; materials science and manufacturing; natural resources and the environment; mineral resources; space technology; nanotechnology and synthetic biology.

The Innovation Hub in Pretoria is Africa's first internationally accredited science park and a full member of the International Association of Science Parks. Its community has become a regional centre of innovation and knowledge creation, linked to the fast-moving world of global interconnectivity, and made up of small, medium and micro-enterprises and multinational companies, employing over 1 000 people.

Industry and agriculture

A large area of Gauteng falls within the so-called "Maize Triangle." The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three subregional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. It includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast, stretching from Port Edward in the south to Mozambique in the north.

The Drakensberg mountain range stretches the entire length of KwaZulu-Natal's western boundary.

The Drakensberg forms the boundary between South Africa and the mountain kingdom of Lesotho, and offers some of the country's most awe-inspiring landscapes.

It provided the backdrop for the films *Zulu* (1964) and *Yesterday* (2004) and the setting for Alan Paton's novel *Cry, the Beloved Country*, and is the inspiration for a million picture postcards.

Within the area is a vast 243 000-hectare sweep of basalt summits and buttresses; this section was formally granted World Heritage status in November 2000, and was renamed uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions are hot and humid, with a subtropical climate. The Midlands area is drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground. In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Swaziland to the edge of the escarpment.

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg
Principal languages:

IsiZulu	82,5%
English	12,5%
Afrikaans	13,2%

Population: 11 384 700
Percentage share of the total population: 19,7%
Area: 94 361 km²
Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2018 and Community Survey 2016

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy, north of Durban, or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour.

There are several nature reserves including the Royal Natal National Park, Giant's Castle and the Kamberg Nature Reserve.

Tertiary institutions of learning in the province include the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

Industry and agriculture

KwaZulu-Natal has a diverse industrial sector, with major industries having developed around the port of Durban.

Major industries in the province are agriculture, forestry, aluminium, petro-chemicals, automotive manufacturing, steel production, plastics and packaging, paper and board manufacturing, and a range of industries associated with imports and exports though the major ports of Durban and Richards Bay.

The coastal belt is also a large producer of subtropical fruit and sugar, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetables, dairy and stock farming.

Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

Limpopo

South Africa's northernmost province shares borders with Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal gateway to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, natural beauty and historical and cultural treasures.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa Spatial Development Initiative, which is a network of rail and road corridors connected to the major seaports, opening up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane, the capital city, which lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road, running through the centre of the province, strings together a series of towns such as Bela-Bela, with its popular mineral spa; Modimolle, with its beautiful Waterberg mountain range; Mokopane; Polokwane; Makhado, at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, which is well-known for its majestic baobab trees. The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge.

Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi are Limpopo's major mining centres, while the town of Tzaneen in the picturesque Magoebaskloof is known for its tea plantations, forestry products and tropical fruit.

The province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld. Natural resources include more than 50 provincial nature reserves and several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is along Limpopo's eastern boundary, which borders on Mozambique.

Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to the ancient people and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown.

Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane and the Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen. Mapungubwe ("Place of the Jackal") Hill, some 75 km from Musina, is a world heritage site. It served as a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about 950 AD to 1200 AD.

Agriculture

Limpopo produces a wide range of agricultural products. The area is a potato belt and known for its superior quality potatoes for high-end markets. It also produces 75% of the country's mangoes; 65% of its papayas; 36% of its tea; 25% of its citrus, bananas and litchis; 60% of its avocados and two thirds of its tomatoes.

Other products include coffee, nuts, guavas, sisal, cotton, tobacco, sunflower, maize, wheat and grapes. In addition, more than 170 plantations produce timber.

Most of the higher-lying areas are devoted to cattle and game ranching, earning a reputation for quality biltong (salted, dried meat), which is a popular South African delicacy.

Industry and mining

Limpopo also has abundant mineral resources, making mining the critical sector of the province's economy by contributing 22% of the gross geographic product. Metals include platinum, chromium, nickel, cobalt, vanadium, tin, limestone and uranium clay.

Other reserves include antimony, phosphates, fluorspar, gold, diamonds, copper, emeralds, scheelites, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon, mica, black granite, corundum, feldspar and salt.

The Medupi Power Station, a new dry-cooled, coal-fired power station near Lephalale, was expected to create around 40 000 job opportunities.

Mpumalanga

Spectacular scenic beauty and an abundance of wildlife make the province one of South Africa's major tourist destinations.

Mpumalanga, which means "Place Where the Sun Rises", is home to just more than four million people. The principle languages are Siswati and isiZulu.

With a surface area of only 76 495 km^2, it is the second-smallest province after Gauteng, yet has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Swaziland in the east, and Gauteng in the west, the province is situated mainly on the high plateau grasslands of the Middleveld. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks terminating in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

The province has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Owing to its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, including the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni, Standerton, Piet Retief, Malalane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie, which lies in the centre of one of the largest man-made forests in the world. Mpumalanga lies mainly within the Grassland Biome.

The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng, and Maputo in Mozambique, facilitates economic development

Limpopo

Capital: Polokwane
Principal languages:

Sepedi	56,0%
Tshivenda	17,1%
Xitsonga	16,6%

Population: 5 797 300
Percentage share of the total population: 10,0%
Area: 125 754 km^2
Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2018 and Community Survey 2016

Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit
Principal languages:

Siswati	29,1%
IsiZulu	28,8%
Xitsonga	9,6
IsiNdebele	10,1%

Population: 4 523 900
Percentage share of the total population: 7,8%
Area: 76 495 km^2
Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2018 and Community Survey 2016

and growth for the region.

The Makhonjwa Mountains are a greenstone belt just outside Barberton, a range of mountains and hills that cover 120 km by 60 km, most of it lying in Mpumalanga, but 20% in the neighbouring Swaziland. The area became a World Heritage Site in 2018.

Its geological value lies in its protection of some of the best preserved ancient rocks on Earth, for it is the place of one of the world's oldest structures, with volcanic and sedimentary rock that dates back 3.6 to 3.25 billion years. Small wonder that the area's been mined for gold and is often referred to as the 'Genesis of Life'.

It is believed by scientists who have worked in the area that an impact crater could still be uncovered based on evidence of meteor shock.

Agriculture and forestry

Mpumalanga is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate. The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on the high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers.

Agriculture, as the backbone of the province's economy, employs 8,1% of its total workforce. An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruit – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, papayas, granadillas, guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced here.

Mbombela is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country's orange exports. The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated in the city.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area, which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus, cotton, tobacco, wheat and vegetables. Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also grown there.

Industry and manufacturing

Most of the manufacturing production in Mpumalanga occurs in the southern Highveld region; especially in Highveld Ridge, where large petrochemical plants such as Sasol 2 and Sasol 3 are located.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing. In the Lowveld subregion, industries concentrate on manufacturing products from agricultural and raw forestry material. The growth in demand for goods and services for export via Maputo will stimulate manufacturing in the province.

Mpumalanga is rich in coal reserves with eMalahleni being the biggest coal producer in Africa. South Africa's major power stations are situated in this province.

Kendal power station's cooling towers are the largest structures of their type in the world. The Kusile power station near Delmas, which was completed in 2016, is the country's biggest, contributing a massive 4 800 MW of electricity to the national grid.

One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg, which produces steel and vanadium, is home to Columbus Stainless, South Africa's only producer of stainless steel flat products.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is South Africa's largest province, taking up almost a third of the country's total land area. However, the province is sparsely populated with only about 1,2 million people on 372 889 km^2 of land.

About 68% of the people speak Afrikaans while Setswana, isiXhosa and English are also widely spoken.

The last remaining true San people live in the Kalahari area, mainly along the Orange and Vaal rivers. Many fossils and San rock engravings have been found here, some of which are displayed at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley.

The province lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry.

The Northern Cape borders the Atlantic Ocean in the west with Namibia and Botswana to the north and north-west, respectively. It is fringed by the Swartberg mountain range on its southern border.

With two major airports at Kimberley and Upington, and an excellent road network, the province's interior is easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports.

Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

The Northern Cape is one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) radio-telescope. Developed by scientists from 17 countries, it will be the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world.

Among many other benefits, the province's tourism and hospitality industry is profiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties are flooding into the town of Carnarvon.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas, including the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park and Augrabies Falls National Park.

The largest part of the province lies in the dry Nama-Karoo Biome, which contains a number of fascinating plants, including the elephant's trunk ("halfmens" or half-man) tree, aloe ("kokerboom" or quiver tree) and a variety of succulents. The area is well known for its spectacular annual spring flowers, which attract thousands of tourists.

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley
Principal languages:
Afrikaans 56,8%
Setswana 33,4%
Population: 1 225 600
Percentage share of the total population: 2,1%
Area: 372 889 km^2
Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2018 and Community Survey 2016

Agriculture and industry

The economy of the province's Karoo region depends on sheep farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district.

The province has fertile agricultural land, especially in the Orange River Valley. A variety of fruit is cultivated at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes. The Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton facilitates the production of wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton.

Wine is also produced in the Northern Cape's Orange River wine region, which accounts for 25,6% of South Africa's Colombard vines and 10% of its Chenin Blanc. The Niewoudtville Rooibos Tea processing initiative centres on the development and economic empowerment of smallholder farmers. It is aimed at unlocking economic potential, creating sustainable jobs and increasing the skills base. The installation of pasteurisation equipment has been completed and tea has been exported to countries such as Germany, Spain and Japan.

Mining

Mining contributes about 28% to the gross regional domestic product. Iron-ore mining in the north-eastern corner of the province has been expanding despite the global recession, driven largely by China's demand for steel.

Sishen is the biggest iron-ore mine in the country and its owner, Kumba Iron Ore, is engaging in a new project at Kolomela. New manganese projects are also underway.

Diamond mining is increasingly moving away from the older mines to alluvial mining along the Orange River and its tributaries and in the Atlantic Ocean.

The province also has copper, asbestos, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

North West

North West is bordered by Botswana in the north and fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. It is known as the "Platinum Province", owing to its wealth of this precious metal.

The province has a population of more than 3,6 million people who mainly speak Setswana.

Mahikeng is the capital city and well known for the Mafikeng Siege, which took place in October 1899 during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

Most of the province's economic activity is concentrated between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp, as well as in Rustenburg and the eastern region, where more than 83,3% of the province's economic activity takes place.

The province has various tourist attractions including Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, Madikwe Game Reserve, and the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust.

A portion of one of South Africa's seven Unesco world heritage sites also falls within the borders of North West namely the Taung hominid fossil site, which has been incorporated into South Africa's Cradle of Humankind.

Mining and manufacturing

Mining contributes 23,3% to North West's economy, and makes up 22,5% of the South African mining industry. The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum, which is more than any other single area in the world. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold. Employment along the Platinum Corridor, from Pretoria to eastern Botswana, accounts for over a third of the province's total employment.

North West's manufacturing sector centres on the municipalities of Brits, Rustenburg, Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp and Mahikeng, which together account for more than 50% of the province's total manufacturing production.

The industries in Brits concentrate on manufacturing and construction, while those in Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry. In the manufacturing arena, automotive parts, machinery, electronic, audio, and medical equipment are manufactured using local materials and resources.

North West

Capital: Mahikeng
Principal languages:

Setswana	71,5%
Afrikaans	7,2%
IsiXhosa	5,1%

Population: 3 979 000
Percentage share of the total population: 6,9%
Area: 140 882 km²
Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2018 and Community Survey 2016

Agriculture

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country.

North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize. The areas around Rustenburg are fertile, mixed-crop farming land, with maize and sunflowers being the most important crops.

Western Cape

Situated on the south-western tip of the African continent, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breathtaking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist destination.

Cape Town, often referred to as the "Mother City", houses Parliament and is South Africa's legislative capital. The province has a strong network of higher education institutions including the universities of Cape Town, Stellenbosch and the Western Cape, and has the highest adult education level in the country.

Visitors to the province can disembark at one of the province's two main airports, Cape Town International or George Airport or at the seaports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay and Saldanha.

Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island and the Kirstenbosch Botanical Gardens are among the province's most popular tourist attractions.

The Western Cape is also known for its floral diversity. The Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site, comprising eight separate protected areas, covers an area of more than 553 000 ha stretching from the Cape Peninsula to the Eastern Cape.

The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the West Coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province's southern beaches.

Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town
Principal languages:

Afrikaans	46,6%
IsiXhosa	31,1%
English	19,6%

Population: 6 621 100
Percentage share of the total population: 11,5%
Area: 129 462 km²
Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2018 and Community Survey 2016

Agriculture and fisheries

The Western Cape's sheltered valleys between mountains are ideal for the cultivation of export-grade fruit such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges.

A variety of vegetables is cultivated in the eastern part of the Western Cape, while the Swartland and Overberg districts are well-known as the country's prime wheat-growing areas.

The agricultural sector is critical to the Western Cape economy, accounting for 60% of regional exports. The Western Cape is also well known for its wine production.

Some 75% of all South African fishing takes place along the Western Cape coastline. The rich fishing grounds on the west coast are protected from exploitation by a 200 km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system. Snoek, Cape lobster, abalone, calamari, octopus, oysters and mussels are among the delicacies found in these waters.

Other exports are fruit, wine, wool and ostrich. The high quality of exports, combined with the relative weakness of the local currency, makes the products some of the most affordable high-quality exports in the world.

Industry

The Saldanha Bay Industrial Development Zone (SBIDZ) is drawing strong international interest.

The Saldanha Bay IDZ Licencing Company signed six lease agreements with international and South African oil and gas companies. These include firms specialising in oilfield services, oil rig operations, logistics operators, ship repair, engineering and market support.

The Licensing Company is in talks with an international consortium to develop a rig module building facility.

Saldanha Bay is strategically located to serve as a service, maintenance, fabrication and supply hub for the booming African oil and gas sector, due to the increasing number of oil rigs requiring maintenance, and their traffic flow passing from the west to the east coast of Africa.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

History

The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the ground-breaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoikhoi and San of historical times. The Khoikhoi and San, although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples. The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which generally are near the coast. At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an Iron Age culture and domesticated crops. After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or "Highveld," where they adopted a more extensive cattle-farming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and hence hierarchies of authority within communities. Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation.

At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trading economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good Hope. Aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's history, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past.

The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century onwards.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (VOC) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoikhoi for slaughter stock soon degenerated into raiding and warfare. Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions in the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities. As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.

Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed. By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were "free burghers" (European colonists). The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east. It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they were to greatly outnumber the white people in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of south-east Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion. As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms, were established, partly for reasons of defence. The Mfecane or Difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate.

The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, thus controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims.

The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of "free" labour and in the "civilising mission" of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns. One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed equal civil rights for "people of colour" within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of "apprenticeship" with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a

depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation. The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony in the late 1830s.

Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot. Increasingly, they were lumped together as the "coloured" people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the "Cape Malays" (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms. The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land. Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms. They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities. The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They, too, called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape's borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards.

They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the Mfecane.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. These Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security.

Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu State, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape. Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the Mfecane were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with their own customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was en-trenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to white people. This system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism that would prevail in the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indentured Indian labourers were imported from 1860 to work the plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed.

These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Indian activist and leader Mohandas Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result was that black and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the "liberal tradition" in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of black people within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent. The hardening of racial attitudes that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa.

In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated blacks indentured for equality met with increasingly fierce resistance. At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil John Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become Prime Minister of the

Cape Colony (from 1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as modern-day Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before. Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The Transvaal was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi (northern Sotho) State, which fell within the Republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted.

The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that both the current Lesotho and Swaziland escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895.

The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer Government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans responded with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, blacks exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase production for sale. A substantial black peasantry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to blacks were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of blacks into the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying blacks rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Blacks could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa," but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs." Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations." This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and, later (from 1948), apartheid.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 to May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war. In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mahikeng) and Kimberley in the northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

Some colonial Boers rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid. Kruger fled the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900. The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorched-earth policy, which included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They, too, suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves of employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used blacks as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war.

Most blacks supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed. In the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for blacks to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for blacks.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the black people back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally. Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, black resources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals

in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of blacks came forward from areas such as the Transkeian territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants.

This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The blacks' post-war ability to withhold their labour was undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years.

The Boer leaders – most notably Louis Botha, Jan Smuts and JBM Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide.

The National Convention drew up a Constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910.

The 19th century's formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone. It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response to blacks' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights.

Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than elsewhere on the continent. An educated élite of clerics, teachers, businesspeople, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics. Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on black political life, and separatist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion.

The experiences of studying abroad, and in particular interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part.

A vigorous black press arose, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as John Tengo Jabavu, Pixley ka Isaka Seme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube serving the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed.

Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloured people began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became the most important black organisation, drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest. Worker militancy emerged in the wake of the First World War and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign, given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting the extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation representing black people in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racialism and worker organisations, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by him in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act in 1913.

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves. The centenary of this Act was commemorated in 2013.

The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division between white citizens and black non-citizens, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also reserved skilled work for white people and denying black workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act of 1923, entrenched urban segregation and controlled black mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws were designed to force blacks into labour and to keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power. In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect the union of English-and Afrikaans-speaking white people. However, divisions within the white community remained significant. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after union.

It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the First World War against Germany.

In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming.

An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to black people.

Soon, labour issues came to the fore. In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed. Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines.

As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force.

In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance

of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against black people. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service, was intensified, and the job colour bar was reinforced, with a key objective being to address what was known as the "poor-white problem".

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression.

This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr DF Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the qualifying Africans of the Cape Province from the common voters' roll. Meanwhile, Malan's breakaway NP was greatly augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

Apartheid

After the Second World War, in 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves. The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the leadership of figures such as Anton Lembede, AP Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers' Strike was a turning point in the emergence of politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with the First World War, the experience of the Second World War and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent.

For those who supported the NP, its primary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking white people in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The State became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond coordinated the party's programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum on the issue. A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced.

South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth. In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the governor-general) as head of state.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments. A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual activities and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters' roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured "group areas."

Until the 1940s, South Africa's racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gathering pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed "separate development," divided the African population into artificial ethnic "nations," each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence," supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent.

This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering, as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the "homeland" structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared "independent", a status which the vast majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community, declined to recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3,5 million people and vast rural slums were created in the homelands, which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed.

Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s. Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of "white" South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education and healthcare, central government took control over black people's lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as "temporary sojourners", welcome in "white" South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour.

However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Mohandas Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress; the Coloured People's Congress; a small white congress organisation (the Congress of Democrats); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women's resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the

Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of "Africanism" and anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The State's initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

It was the 60th anniversary of the 1952 women's march in 2012. You strike a woman – you strike a rock! *Wathint' abafazi, wathint' imbokodo*! In 1956, with these words thousands of women advanced the cause to liberate South Africa from apartheid rule. The phrase has come to symbolise women's courage and strength in South Africa. During the early 1950s, Lilian Ngoyi, Helen Joseph, Albertina Sisulu, Sophia Williams-De Bruyn, and many others formed the Federation of South African Women (FSAW). With the Blacks (Abolition of Passes and Coordination of Documents) Act, 1952 (Act 67 of 1952), the South African Government amended the pass laws, requiring all black people over the age of 16 to carry a "reference book" at all times.

On 9 August 1956, more than 20 000 women of all races marched through the streets of Pretoria to the Union Buildings to hand over a petition to JG Strijdom, South Africa's Prime Minister, protesting the introduction of the new pass laws and the Group Areas Act, 1950 (Act 41 of 1950). The latter enforced different residential areas for different races and led to forced removals of people living in "wrong" areas. On the day of the march, Strijdom had arranged to be elsewhere, and the petition was eventually accepted by his secretary.

However, the first attempt to make black women carry passes was in 1913 when the then Orange Free State introduced a new requirement that women, in addition to existing regulations for black men, had to carry reference documents. The resulting protests, by a multiracial group of women, many of whom were professionals, took the form of passive resistance through refusing to carry the new passes. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as the mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) ("Spear of the Nation"), were arrested in 1963.

In the "Rivonia Trial", eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned. The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming repression and relative political disarray among black people in the country. Armed action was contained by the state.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership embarked on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia (now Zimbabwe).

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (Zipra) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces. Although the joint MK-Zipra force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people.

News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage.

White capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973 and black trade unions were revived. A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, being drawn into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy.

The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students (Congress of South African Students) and college and university students (Azanian Students Organisation).

By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement of workers in resistance took on a new dimension with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of Zimbabwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy.

Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance. An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of blacks outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Sanctions and boycotts were instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a coordinated strategy

by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

FW de Klerk, who replaced PW Botha as State President in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990 the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them Nelson Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting. Above all, even if South Africa was nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting.

International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of white people. No longer could they demonise the ANC and PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its *raison d'être*. Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability.

In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner elite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with black people forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

The First Decade of Freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the State, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity (GNU) to be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The NP and the Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) formed part of the GNU until 1996, when the NP withdrew. The ANC-led government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socio-economic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the first decade of freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So, too, have been the national and local government elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive governance have been strengthened through the practice of public participation, roving executive council and mayoral meetings, in which members of the Executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly communicate directly with the public about the implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two-thirds and the election of Thabo Mbeki as President and successor to Mandela. It saw a sharp decline in the popularity of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance (DA), which the NNP left in 2001.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

As final reparations, government provided a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before and were designated by the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are continuing programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms and changing geographical and place names.

The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council. It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit in June 2003 brought these sectors together to take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development.

At the summit, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and

to speed up job-creating growth and development.

Partnership between government and civil society was further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised labour, higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

In the first decade of freedom, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and healthcare, as well as social grants for those in need.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it remains of critical importance to build political and economic links with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment that is more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.

The South African Government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a cooperative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces. South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa. President Mbeki chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to President Joaquim Chissano of Mozambique in July 2003. In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September that year. By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in countries such as the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and Sudan – South Africa has contributed to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

During the first decade of freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community, NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It hosted several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, the World Conference Against Racism in 2001, the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002 and the World Parks Congress in 2003. The country has also been represented in international forums such as the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee and Interpol.

The Second Decade of Freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004, there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped to bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development. As government took stock of the first decade of freedom in the *Towards a Ten Year Review*, it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to the Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014. Following these elections, President Mbeki was appointed to a second term of office – a position he relinquished in September 2008, following the decision of the National Executive Committee of the ANC to recall him. Parliament elected Kgalema Motlanthe as President of South Africa on 25 September 2008.

Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

South Africa held national and provincial elections to elect a new National Assembly as well as the provincial legislature in each province on 22 April 2009. Some 23 million people were registered for the 2009 general election, which was about 2,5 million more than in 2004. About 77% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65,9%; the DA 16,6%; the newly-formed Congress of the People (Cope) 7,4%; the IFP 4,5%; and the Independent Democrats 0,9% of the votes cast.

Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009. Shortly thereafter, President Zuma announced several changes to existing government departments and the creation of new structures within The Presidency. The latter essentially comprise the Ministry for Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration and the National Planning Ministry, in keeping with the new administration's approach to intensify government delivery through an outcomes-based approach, coupled with a government-wide monitoring and evaluation system.

Government adopted 14 outcomes as its focus areas. These include among other things: improving the quality of basic education and health services, strengthening the fight against crime, creating decent employment through inclusive growth, and boosting skills development. It also included ensuring food security for all, building sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life, improving local government structures and an efficient and development-oriented public service.

A significant milestone for South Africa in the second decade of freedom was the successful hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The tournament, which was the first on African soil, demonstrated that South Africa has the infrastructure and capability to warrant serious investment consideration. It also showcased South Africa and its people to the world.

The local government elections held on 18 May 2011 were characterised by lively and respectful campaigning with all political parties free to engage with voters in all areas. The Independent Electoral Commission highlighted decreased voter apathy and achieved an impressive 57,6% registered voter turn-out – an improvement from the previous local government elections, which scored below the 50% mark. The ANC won the highest number of seats and councils – 198 councils and 5 633 seats, constituting 62% of the vote. The DA came second with 18 councils, 1 555 seats and 23,9% support. The ANC and DA were followed by the IFP and Cope.

As part of government's commitment to secure a better quality of life for all, the National Planning Commission (NPC) in The Presidency finalised the National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030 in 2011. The plan was a step in the process of charting a new path for South Africa.

By 2030, government seeks to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality. The plan was the product of not just the NPC but also tens of thousands of ordinary South Africans who shared their dreams, hopes and ideas for the future.

In August 2012, the Chairperson of the NPC, Minister Trevor Manuel, handed the revised NDP 2030 over to President Zuma during a Joint Sitting of both Houses in Parliament. The revised document, entitled *Our future – make it work*, is a policy blueprint for eliminating poverty and reducing inequality in South Africa by 2030.

Implementation of the plan will be broken up into five-year chunks, in line with the electoral cycle, with the 2014 to 2019 medium-term strategic framework forming the first five-year building block of the plan.

The Presidency will lead the formulation of the 2014 to 2019 medium-term strategic framework, which includes key targets

from the NDP and other plans such as the New Growth Path, National Infrastructure Plan and Industry Policy Action Plan.

The Presidency and National Treasury will work with government departments to clarify roles and responsibilities, ensure that plans and budgets are aligned, and develop clear performance indicators for each programme.

Government will focus on areas where implementation of existing policies needs to improve and will hold focused discussions to overcome obstacles to implementation. It will also engage with other sectors to understand how they are contributing to the NDP's implementation and to identify any obstacles they face.

The 2019 to 2024 and 2024 to 2029 planning cycles will be used to initiate the remaining activities and will be informed by a performance review of the previous cycle.

The objective of a better life for the people of South Africa, the continent of Africa and the world at large was at the heart of the country's successful hosting of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change's 17th Conference of the Parties in Durban towards the end of 2011. Aware of the fact that Africa is the continent most affected by the impact of climate change, South Africa was committed to ensuring that Durban delivered a fair and balanced outcome that would help secure the future of our planet. The resulting Durban Platform outcome was a coup for South Africa and the African continent.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. On 1 January 2011, South Africa began its second term as a nonpermanent member of the UN Security Council (UNSC) for the period 2011 and 2012. South Africa serves alongside the five permanent members, China, France, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom and the United States of America, and elected members Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Colombia, Gabon, Germany, India, Lebanon, Nigeria and Portugal. In January 2012, the UNSC President saw the adoption of Resolution 2033 that provides for closer cooperation between the UN and the AU.

In the conduct of its international relations, South Africa is committed to garnering support for its domestic priorities, promoting the interests of the African continent, enhancing democracy and human rights, upholding justice and international law in relations between nations, seeking the peaceful resolution of conflicts and promoting economic development through regional and international cooperation in an interdependent world.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa, the continent and the world. Thousands of ordinary South Africans, political and religious leaders attended the centenary celebrations which were held in Mangaung, Free State, the birthplace of the ANC.

On 25 May 2012 the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) Organisation announced that the SKA Project would be shared between South Africa and Australia, with a majority share coming to South Africa.

The full dish array and the dense aperture array will be built in Africa. The core, i.e. the region with the highest concentration of receivers, will be constructed in the Northern Cape, about 80 km from the town of Carnarvon (the same site where the MeerKAT is being constructed). The sparse aperture array (low-frequency array) will be built in Western Australia.

Over the next few years, teams of radio astronomy scientists and engineers from around the world will work together to scope and finalise the design of the SKA.

In July 2012, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, then Minister of Home Affairs, was elected as the first female head of the AU Commission and the first person from South Africa to hold this position. In September 2012, she received the UN South-South Award for Global Leadership.

In November 2012, South Africa was elected by the members of the UN General Assembly to the UN's 47-member Economic and Social Council (Ecosoc). It is one of the principal organs of the UN, alongside the Security Council and General Assembly. South Africa completed its two-year non-renewable, non-permanent membership of the Security Council on 31 December 2012, and immediately assumed the membership of Ecosoc on 1 January 2013. South Africa last served in Ecosoc from 2004 to 2006.

Released in September 2012, the World Economic Forum's *Global Competitiveness Report 2012/13* confirmed that South Africa remained the most competitive economy in sub-Saharan Africa.

On 30 October 2012, Statistics South Africa released the Census 2011 results. The census, which analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality, was the third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa. Results showed that the country's population grew to 51,8 million people from 44,8 million in 2001, representing a 15,5% increase over the last decade.

In December 2012, President Zuma was re-elected as the president of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung. Cyril Ramaphosa was elected as the party's deputy president.

In July 2013, Ms Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka, was appointed executive director of the UN Women Entity for Gender Equality and Empowerment of Women, and Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, was appointed director in the UN Development Programme's Bureau for Development Policy.

While receiving intensive medical care at home for a lung infection after spending three months in hospital, South Africa's first democratically elected President and anti-apartheid icon, Nelson Mandela, died at the age of 95, on 5 December 2013.

Mr Mandela led South Africa's transition from white-minority rule in the 1990s, after serving 27 years in prison for his political activities.

His body lay in state at the Union Buildings from 11 to 13 December. He was buried in his home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape on 15 December 2013.

South Africa celebrated 20 Years of Freedom in 2014, which was a historic milestone for the country. The Twenty Year Review, which was released in 2013, and the National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report, highlight that poverty, inequality and unemployment continue to negatively affect the lives of many people.

Despite progress in reducing rural poverty and increasing access to basic services in rural areas over the past 20 years, rural areas are still characterised by great poverty and inequality. As stated in the NDP, by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country.

Government's programme of radical economic transformation is about placing the economy on a qualitatively different path that ensures more rapid, sustainable growth, higher investment, increased employment, reduced inequality and deracialisation of the economy. The NDP sets a growth target of at least 5% a year, and emphasises measures to ensure that the benefits of growth are equitably shared.

The 2014 South African general election was held on 7 May 2014, to elect a new National Assembly and new provincial legislatures in each province. It was the fifth election held in South Africa under conditions of universal adult suffrage since the end of the apartheid era in 1994, and the first held since the death of Nelson Mandela. It was also the first time that South African expatriates were allowed to vote in a South African national election.

The National Assembly election was won by the ANC (62,1%). The official opposition, Democratic Alliance (DA) won 22,2% of the votes, while the newly formed Economic Freedom Fighters (EFF) obtained 6,4% of the vote.

Eight of the nine provincial legislatures were won by the ANC. The EFF obtained over 10% of the votes in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West, and beat the DA to second place in Limpopo and North West. In the other six provinces won by the ANC, the DA obtained second place. In the Western Cape, the only province not won by the ANC, the DA increased its majority from 51,5% to 59,4%.

The discovery of *Homo naledi*, an extinct species of hominin, in September 2015 became worldwide news. In 2015, South Africa celebrated the 60th Anniversary of the Freedom Charter, which advocated for a non-racial South Africa.

The 40th Anniversary of the 16 June 1976 Soweto Student Uprising was celebrated in 2016, along with the 20th Anniversary of the signing of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

The 2016 Local Government Elections were held on 3 August 2016. The ANC won 53,9% of the total votes, followed by the official opposition DA with 26,9% and the EFF with 8,2%.

In 2017, South Africa celebrated five years since the launch of the National Development Plan, which outlines the goals to achieve the vision of a prosperous South Africa by tackling the triple challenge of unemployment, poverty and inequality by 2030.

South Africa celebrated the Centenary of the late Oliver Reginald Tambo in 2017, under the theme: “Life and Legacy of OR Tambo”. He was one of the key drivers of South Africa’s liberation and one of the founding fathers of the country’s constitutional democracy.

At its 54th National Conference held at Nasrec in Soweto on 18 December 2017, the ANC elected Mr Ramaphosa as its president. Following the resignation of President Zuma in February 2018, Mr Ramaphosa was elected unopposed as the fifth President of democratic South Africa by the National Assembly on 15 February 2018.

In 2018, South Africa celebrated the centenary of two Struggle stalwarts, Tata Mandela and Mama Albertina Nontsikelelo Sisulu.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Agriculture

The agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors are crucial to South Africa's socio-economic development. However, the future of these sectors depends on critical issues such as climate change, population growth, skills shortages, changes in consumer needs and shifts in the global economy and related markets.

As one of the most employment-intensive sectors of the economy, agriculture's potential impact on empowerment and poverty relief is much larger than its actual weight in the economy suggests.

While the primary agricultural sector contributes about 3% to the country's gross domestic product (GDP), it represents about 7% of formal employment. If the entire value chain of agriculture is taken into account, its contribution to GDP reaches about 12%.

The mandate of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) is to address production and consumption in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors.

The department's strategic goals over the medium term, which are organised around the key priority areas of food security, job creation, and rural and economic development, are to:

- provide effective and efficient strategic leadership, governance and administration;
- increase production and productivity in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors, to enhance employment and economic growth;
- provide an enabling environment for food security and sector transformation; and
- ensure the sustainable use of natural resources in the forestry and fisheries sectors through the conservation, protection, rehabilitation and recovery of natural resources within ecosystems.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming to cattle-ranching in the bushveld and sheep-farming in the more arid regions. About 12% of South Africa's surface area can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million ha are under irrigation.

The forestry industry is one of the strategic economic sectors in South Africa, with a significant contribution towards economic growth and job creation. Therefore, the expansion of South Africa's forest resources remains one of the department's main objectives to ensure growth, transformation and sustainability of the sector.

As a natural resource, the fisheries sector is also recognised as a potential area for economic growth. The mandate for fisheries management includes fresh water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture.

Broadening the scope of aquaculture will provide an opportunity to increase the production of fish and other aquatic food species, thereby decreasing the pressure on natural fish resources. Through the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the department strives to ensure effective stakeholder engagement and management, as well as advancing the transformation agenda in the sector.

Legislation and frameworks

Some of the legislation of the DAFF include:

- The Veterinary and Para-Veterinary Act, 1962 (Act 71 of 1962), as amended in 2012, provides for the establishment, powers and functions of the South African Veterinary Council and also regulates the institutions and registration of professionals in the practising veterinary and para-veterinary fields.
- The Fertiliser and Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act, 1947 (Act 36 of 1947) regulates the registration, acquisition, disposal, sale and use of fertilisers, stock feeds, agricultural remedies, stock remedies, sterilising plants and pest control operators.
- Consultation regarding the Plant Breeders' Rights Amendment Bill was underway to replace the Plant Breeders' Rights Act, 1976 (Act 15 of 1976). The Bill aims to strengthen the protection of intellectual property rights relevant to new plant varieties, which in turn positively impacts on the competitiveness of South Africa's agricultural sector.
- The Genetically Modified Organisms (GMO) Act, 1997 (Act 15 of 1997) provides for the regulation of GMO activities in South Africa, and states that biosafety assessments should be conducted for every proposed GMO activity. The Act provides a framework to ensure that all activities involving the use of GMOs are carried out in such a way as to limit possible harmful consequences.
- The Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002) and the National Disaster Risk-Management Framework of 2005 address agricultural risk management and climate change, and are supplemented by climate change-related policies and programmes.
- The Meat Safety Act, 2000 (Act 40 of 2000) provides for measures to promote meat safety and the safety of animal products; establishes and maintains essential national standards in respect of abattoirs; regulates the import and export of meat; and establishes meat safety schemes.
- The Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983) provides for control over the use of natural agricultural resources to promote the conservation of soil, water sources and vegetation, and the combating of weeds and invader plants.
- The Control of Markets in Rural Areas Ordinance, 1965 (Ordinance 38 of 1965).
- The Problem Animals Control Ordinance, 1978 (Ordinance 14 of 1978).
- The Livestock Brands Act, 1962 (Act 87 of 1962) regulates the registration of a brand in the name of an owner of livestock for the purpose of identifying the livestock.
- The Agricultural Credit Act, 1966 (Act 28 of 1966) provides for a system of assistance to people or undertaking to farming operations, and for control in respect of assistance rendered.
- The Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, 1970 (Act 70 of 1970) regulates the subdivision of agricultural land and its use for purposes other than agriculture.
- The Plant Improvement Act, 1976 (Act 53 of 1976) provides for the registration of establishments where plants and propagation material are sold and packed, for the introduction of schemes for the certification of certain propagation material, for the requirements to which plants and propagation material sold for the purposes of cultivation must conform and for quality control over plants and propagation material imported or exported.
- The Livestock Improvement Act, 1977 (Act 25 of 1977) regulates the collection and sale of semen and ova and the artificial insemination and inovulation of certain animals, the

establishment of a system for the evaluation and certification of the performance of certain animals quality control regarding the importation and exportation of certain animals, semen, ova and eggs the incorporation of livestock breeders' societies and the maintenance of the legal personality of livestock breeders' societies and the granting of certain exclusive powers relating to the registration of pedigrees of certain livestock.

- The Liquor Products Act, 1989 (Act 60 of 1989) provide for control over the sale and production for sale of certain alcoholic products, the composition and properties of such products and the use of certain particulars in connection with the sale of such products; for the establishment of schemes; for control over the import and export of certain alcoholic products; and for matters connected therewith.
- The Co-Operatives Act, 1981 (Act 91 of 1981) regulates the formation, registration, management and functioning of various types of co-operatives.
- The Perishable Products Export Control Act, 1983 (Act 9 of 1983) provides for the control of perishable products intended for export from South Africa and for the continued existence of a statutory board to bring about the orderly and efficient export of perishable products from the country.
- The Agricultural Pests Act, 1983 (Act 36 of 1983) introduces measures for the prevention and combating of agricultural pests.
- The Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990) establishes a juristic person, the Agricultural Research Council (ARC), to undertake agricultural research and regulate matters regarding the ARC's proceedings, powers, duties, management, control, employees, financing and related matters.
- The Agricultural Product Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990) provides for control over the sale and export of certain agricultural products and other related products, with a view to the maintenance of certain standards regarding the quality of products and packing, marking and labelling.
- The Agricultural Produce Agents Act, 1992 (Act 12 of 1992) provides for the establishment of an Agricultural Produce Agents Council and fidelity funds.
- The Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP) Incorporation Act, 1999 (Act 19 of 1999) provides for the establishment of a company to manage the institution, the appointment of directors and the holding and disposal of shares in the company.
- The Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998) provides for the conservation of the marine ecosystem, the long-term sustainable use of marine living resources and the orderly access to exploitation, use and protection of certain marine living resources; and for the exercising of control over marine living resources in a fair and equitable manner for the benefit of all the citizens of South Africa. The Marine Living Resources Act of 1998 was amended by the Marine Living Resources Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 5 of 2014).
- The National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998) allows for an exemption for the use and handling of protected trees and their products; and authorises the Minister to establish a trust, in respect of state forests under certain circumstances.
- The National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998) reforms the law on veld and forest fires and repeals certain provisions of the Forest Act, 1984 (Act 122 of 1984).
- The Sea Fishery Act, 1988 (Act 12 of 1988) provides for the conservation of the marine ecosystem and the orderly exploitation, use and protection of certain marine resources; and provides for the exercise of control over sea fisheries.

The African Growth and Opportunity Act (AGOA) is a trade act of the United States of America (USA), enacted on 18 May 2000 as Public Law 106 of the 200th Congress. AGOA has since been renewed to 2025. It provides duty-free access to the USA market for almost all products exported from more than 40 eligible sub-Saharan African countries, including South Africa.

Agriculture sector

About three quarters of smallholder farms are within the former homelands, and the rest are split between urban areas and commercial farming areas. There is a scope to increase the size of the smallholder sector in each of these areas.

In the 2017/18 financial year, the DAFF work with provincial departments of agriculture (PDAs) to support these smallholders to become sustainable and meet the targets set out in the NDP.

In the former homelands, there are thousands of hectares of under-utilised arable land that can be put back under production. Currently the total hectares that have been planted since the Fetsa Tlala food production initiative was launched in October 2013 is 381 396 and the balance is planned for the remaining years of the current MTSF.

The department continues to provide targeted support programmes such as the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP), Ilima/Letsema and LandCare in order to realise enhanced food production, contributing towards the eradication of hunger by 2030. With the approval of National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security by cabinet, the department will reduce the percentage of households with inadequate to severely inadequate access to food.

The department would increase its inspection capacity and infrastructure for abattoirs and ports of entry for US imports to manage AGOA trade agreements.

The management of pests and diseases remains important in contributing to sustainable agricultural production and ensuring access of commodities to export markets. As such, the DAFF continues to provide intensified control measures to deal with outbreaks and maintain a Foot and Mouth Disease (FMD) free status.

In 2016, the department initiated the Compulsory Community Service (CCS) for newly qualified veterinarians.

In 207/18, the DAFF will place 130 cohorts to strategically service resource-poor farmers in the rural and under serviced areas. The deployment of CCS veterinarians entrenches the department's commitment towards community service for young professionals.

Budget and funding

For the 2017/18 financial year, the department was allocated R6 807 billion. An amount of R2,2 billion was allocated as a conditional grant to support farmers. R1,6 billion was for CASP and R522 million for Ilima/Letsema.

R220 million was set aside for the development of smallholder farmers to graduate to commercial farmers. The target is to have 2 250 black commercial farmers by 2022.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on

improving food security, creating decent jobs, and sustainably increasing the contribution of the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors to GDP. Through pursuing these objectives, the department contributes to the realisation of the goal of the National Development Plan (NDP) to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030, and outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth), outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) and outcome 10 (protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources) of government's 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework.

Over the medium term, the department plans to support around 435 000 subsistence and smallholder farmers through:

- providing farm equipment, fencing, fertilisers, seedlings and other essentials
- disbursing a grant through the comprehensive agricultural support programme
- repairing flood-damaged infrastructure.

The DAFF will support the agri-park initiative, in collaboration with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform. The initiative aims to:

- establish and maintain producer support infrastructure such as markets and agro-processing facilities
- create networks and provide logistical services for producers and input suppliers
- coordinate activities for producer support and development to create jobs and develop rural economies.

Through the R5,3 billion comprehensive agriculture support programme grant, the department will play a crucial role in supporting smallholder farmers who will supply produce to agri-park initiatives across South Africa.

The DAFF will also provide support to farmers by putting one million hectares of land into production, and provide farmers with advisory services and training on the basic components of food security.

The department plans to increase financial support to emerging producers by R370 million over the medium term, which will be accessed through the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank).

This amount has been reprioritised from funding for provincial conditional grants, and will provide loans to qualifying producers. The loans will improve producers' access to production inputs (such as fertilisers, seeds, seedlings and chemicals) and farm infrastructure, to increase the participation of emerging producers in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors.

The DAFF plans to spend R241 million on an agricultural census in collaboration with Statistics South Africa. The census will create a registry of subsistence, smallholder and commercial farmers, and gather baseline information.

The gathered information will be used to properly target support to farmers, avoid duplicating support to emerging farmers, and allow for a proper ratio of extension officers to ensure the productivity of emerging farmers.

The DAFF aims to deploy at least 150 veterinarians each year over the medium term, to strengthen primary animal healthcare, support smallholder animal production, and contribute to productivity and food security.

This initiative will be supported by an allocation of R403 million over the medium term, in the Agricultural Production, Health and Food Safety programme.

Improving food security

South Africa has been self-sufficient in most agriculture products with the exception of wheat, poultry and red meat. Between 50% and 60% of the country's wheat requirement is imported, due to the fact that it is cheaper to import than to produce locally.

Grains remain an important part of food and nutrition security initiatives in the cpuntry. Accordingly, the Agricultural Research Council (ARC) has developed and disseminated at least seven new grain cultivars for improved yields and productivity in South Africa.

The country's investments in research and development continue to yield good results for market access. In February 2018, the ARC launched a new table grape, "Joybells" at the World's largest fruit exhibition in Berlin. This table grape variety was well received by producers and fruit traders in the global market. Already, more than 50 000 cartons of Joybells have sold across Europe and the UK and producers and exporters are expanding sales into other world markets. At least 200 hectares, and expanding, have been planted in South Africa to produce this table grape variety.

The DAFF promotes food and nutrition security by supporting food producers through the:

- Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa, which provides agricultural production loans to smallholder operators in the agriculture, forestry and fishery sectors
- CASP grant, which provides post-settlement support to targeted beneficiaries of land reform and redistribution, as well as to other producers who have acquired land privately and are engaged in domestic value-adding enterprises or exporting agricultural produce
- Ilima/Letsema projects grant, which provides production inputs to subsistence and smallholder farmers

Creating jobs

The DAFF plans to support the production of commodities such as red meat, poultry, fruit, vegetables, wine and wheat.

This is expected to contribute to job creation, food security, growth and the export-import trade balance.

To contribute to the creation of 60 000 job opportunities over the medium term, the department plans to spend more than R1,7 billion on the Ilima/Letsema projects grant, which is transferred to provinces for food production initiatives.

The department's LandCare programme grant promotes sustainable land and soil management practices, and the prevention of land degradation and desertification in rural areas, thereby contributing to job creation through the establishment of more arable farmland.

Over the medium term, the programme is projected to create 4 725 local jobs through refurbishing forested and deforested plantations; as well as 2 400 full-time-equivalent local jobs through rehabilitating 48 900 hectares (ha) of land by reducing the spread of invasive alien plants, erecting fencing and protecting agricultural land from degradation.

About R233,7 million will be allocated towards the LandCare programme grant over the medium term.

The Oceans Economy Operation Phakisa is expected to increase the production of fish from 4 000 tons per year to 20 000 tons per year, over the medium term. This is expected to create 2 500 direct new jobs and 15 000 jobs in the fisheries value chain by 2020.

Over the medium term, the DAFF will spend R121 million in the Aquaculture subprogramme in the Fisheries programme to support Operation Phakisa initiatives.

Aquaculture is an important growth sector and a priority for the country. It has demonstrated potential for growth over the past 10 years and offers a significant opportunity to contribute to food security and nutrition, rural development, job creation and the GDP of the country.

There are currently 36 Operation Phakisa aquaculture projects, 26 of which are in production. At least 15 of these projects represent small scale entities.

The total investment committed to Operation Phakisa aquaculture projects is R690 million, of which government committed R227 million.

The total jobs created across Operation Phakisa aquaculture projects in 2016/17 is 1 806 on 26 registered aquaculture farms. A total of 3 500 tons of aquatic animal products was produced from these aquaculture projects.

Aquaculture production was expected to increase to 20 000 tons, resulting in an additional 2 500 direct jobs and 15 000 jobs in the value chain by 2019, and an additional investment of R500 million.

Further opportunities and livelihood alternatives in the fishing communities will be created through the continued implementation of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) in coastal and rural communities. The department aims to create 1 085 full time jobs under this programme.

Partnerships with several coastal municipalities and investors have been formed to rehabilitate abandoned fish processing plants in order to process fish for major retailers, including Woolworths and WiseFoods in the United Kingdom.

The beneficiaries of these will be the right holders of the community co-operatives who will eventually own the facilities. This is part of the implementation of the small-scale fisheries policy which was approved by Cabinet.

Sector transformation

In addressing the developmental challenges in the sector and to achieve policy imperatives of the NDP, National Growth Path, Agricultural Policy Action Plan (APAP), Revitalisation of Agriculture and Value Chains (RAAVC) and Land Reform; farmer training is crucial.

Colleges of Agriculture are best suited to offer practical accredited training for farmers, agricultural technicians, producers, processors, and farm managers. The colleges are playing a pivotal role in Agricultural Vocational Education and Training (ATVET) through a three-year diploma qualification and the vocational skills training to farming communities, youth and women. Correctly elevating these colleges to become a national competency will ensure that they are strategically positioned to respond to the agri-skills shortage challenge in a more comprehensive and uniform manner.

On average, each college admits 400 full time students and trains 1 000 farmers per annum and this relates to close to 1 000 potential entrant farmers and over 10 000 skills trainings per year.

In 2018, the DAFF was expected to place 1 000 unemployed agricultural graduates within the sector across the nine provinces on a two-year internship program, training them to be future agri-preneurs. The initiative will contribute in addressing the unemployment challenge in the sector and will be championed by the AGRI-BEE and the Fisheries Transformation Council in support of the sector skills development and transformation.

Government is also working with the private sector to achieve transformation in the fishing industry. Old Mutual's Sea Harvest, Brimstone and Masisizane Fund have committed to the establishment of a R100 million fisheries development fund. The fund will ensure the empowerment of small businesses entering the fishing industry in order to truly revitalise the Ocean's Economy. Focus will not only be on supporting smallholder production, but also on increasing the number of black commercial producers.

The DAFF with the assistance of the Dti, the Land Bank, the National Empowerment Fund and the IDC have developed a programme to commercialize black producers in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors. This is an incentive-based programme to provide access to small, medium and large scale black producers in these sectors.

The Land Bank has been identified as the grant fund administrator, but together with commercial banks will provide the loan portion of the funds required to commercialise these producers.

For small scale producers that have a turnover of less than R500 000 per year, the development support will remain the responsibility of provincial departments of agriculture in partnership with the commodity associations.

The department continues to support livestock farmers to develop and improve their livestock through dedicated programmes. One such programme is the Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo – an animal improvement scheme dedicated to the development and improvement of livestock breeding and production among black farmers.

To date more than 8 800 farmers are participating in the Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo programme which is designed to improve the health condition of livestock in rural areas. The majority of these farmers own an average of 20 cattle. Herd performance has increased over the past year.

The average calving rates for these farmers increased from 54% in 2016 to 57% in 2017. Average herd mortality remained relatively steady at around 6% while average herd off take rates increased slightly from 10% in 2016 to 11% in 2017.

Through participating in Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo programme, smallholder farmers were able to generate higher incomes. PDAs and ARC conducted five cattle auction sales involving 410 farmers during the previous financial year. With a high women participation rate of 30%, these auctions generated R7,8 million from the sale of 794 herd of cattle. The department also conducted two goat auctions involving 169 farmers with 41% women participation where R417 255 was generated from the sale of 502 goats.

Agricultural Policy Action Plan

The challenges facing the agricultural, forestry and fisheries sectors are numerous:

- rising input costs
- an uneven international trade environment
- lack of developmental infrastructure (rail, harbour, electricity)
- a rapidly evolving policy and production environment
- transformation of the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors has been slow and tentative.

Based on this analysis of the various challenges within the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors, the Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries Strategic Framework was developed to outline appropriate responses to these challenges. The APAP aims to translate these high-level responses offered in the Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries Strategic Framework into tangible, concrete steps.

The Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries Strategic Framework identifies four broad sector goals:

- equitable growth and competitiveness
- equity and transformation
- environmental sustainability
- governance.

These goals translate into a comprehensive, abiding intervention framework, which will be supported through iterations of APAP via short and medium-term interventions targeting specific value chains (sectoral interventions) or transversal challenges/interventions).

The APAP is the programmatic response to Priority One of the Nine-Point Plan to ignite growth and create jobs. It outlines a value chain approach in priority commodities, informed by the commodities with high-growth potential and high-labour absorption capacity identified in the NDP.

The APAP has been reviewed to ensure that it becomes a jobs driver and promotes growth, employment, rural incomes, investment, output, exports and African regional development.

Agriculture and South Africa's role in the national and international economy

Agriculture's prominent, indirect role in the economy is a function of backward and forward linkages to other sectors. Purchases of goods such as fertilisers, chemicals and implements form backward linkages with the manufacturing sector, while forward linkages are established through supplying raw materials to the manufacturing industry. About 70% of agricultural output is used as intermediate products in the sector. Agriculture is therefore a crucial sector and an important engine of growth for the rest of the economy.

The South African economy grew by 1,3% in 2017, exceeding National Treasury's expectation of 1,0% growth. The strengthening in economic activity in 2017 was partly driven by the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors recovering from one of the worst droughts in recent history. The sectors' contribution to the GDP was 2,4% in 2017.

The sectors have expanded in four consecutive quarters. The growth in the industry is attributed to the increase in the production of field crops, horticulture and animal products. The total volume of South African agriculture production for 2017 was estimated at 62,9 million tons compared to 50,8 million tons in 2016 – a 24% increase in production, which is attributed to the bumper summer crop harvest following good rainfalls during the season.

South Africa's agriculture exports increased to R127,85 billion in 2017 from R112,07 billion in 2016, boosted by growth in edible fruits, beverages, spirits as well as prepared fruits, vegetables and nuts. Imports of agriculture products increased by 21% in 2016, from R76,10 billion in 2015 to R91.81 billion. The import value of agriculture products decreased by 5% to R 86,93 billion in 2017, led by processed products such as prepared foods, meat, sugar and beverages.

The South African agriculture products continue to benefit from the Tripartite Free Trade Area agreement of the Southern African Development Community, Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa and the East African Community.

Crop and livestock production decreased sharply in 2016/17. Maize production, for example, decreased by 24%, from 7,54 million tons in 2015/16 to 5,7 million tons in 2016/17. Higher yields are expected in 2017/18 as the drought is predicted to end.

The department expects to spend R644 million on infrastructure projects over the medium term, R75,4 million of which is allocated for the maintenance and erection of fences along the borders of the Kruger National Park. The erection of these fences plays a critical role in the management of the incidence and the spread of foot-and- mouth disease, which has a negative impact on the export of red meat products.

The estimated value of imports for 2016/17 came to R79515 million, an increase of 3,9% from R76 511 million for 2015/16. The value of exports increased by 17,4%, from R83 022 million in 2015/16 to R97 429 million in 2016/17.

According to the 2016/17 export values, citrus fruit (R16 989 million), wine (R8 731 million), apples, pears and quinces (R7 161 million), wool (R4 158 million) and nuts (R3 568 million), were the most important agricultural export products.

Rice (R6 438 million), maize (R6 364 million), meat (R5 717 million), cane or beet sugar (R3 788 million) and undenatured ethyl alcohol (R3 445 million) accounted for the highest imports in terms of value.

During 2016/17, the Netherlands, with exports to the value of R10 827 million, the UK (R8 908 million), Zimbabwe (R6 125 million), Mozambique (R5 938 million) and China (R5 389 million) were the five largest trading partners of South Africa in terms of export destinations for agricultural products. About 20,2% of the total value of agricultural exports from South Africa for the period July 2016 to June 2017 went to the Netherlands and the UK combined.

The five largest trading countries for South Africa's imported agricultural products during 2016/17 were Argentina (R7 306 million), Brazil (R5 375 million), the United States (R4 305 million), Thailand (R4 173 million), and Indonesia (R3 858 million). About 16,0% of the total value of agricultural imports by South Africa during the period July 2016 to June 2017 was from Argentina and Brazil combined.

Farming income

Gross income from all agricultural products increased by 7,3% and amounted to R277 436 million for the year ended 31 March 2018. This was mainly influenced by the increase in income from animal products (14,7%) and field crops (1,7%). Income from horticultural products showed a slight decrease of 0,2%, from R77 119 million to R76 967 million. The increase in income from animal products was mainly due to the increase in income from poultry meat by 18,0%, cattle and calves slaughtered (15,8%), eggs (12,1%), milk (10,4%) and sheep slaughtered (6,9%).

The increase of 1,7% in income from field crops was mainly boosted by the increase in income from groundnuts by 419,8%, dry beans (92,5%), grain sorghum (70,4%), cotton (54,2%), soya beans (25,4%), tobacco (5,7%), sugar cane (4,0%), hay (3,7%) and maize (3,6%). However, the income obtained from wheat decreased by 20,7% and sunflower seed by 32,2%. The

decrease in income from horticultural products was caused by the decrease in income from deciduous and other fruit by 10,6% and subtropical fruit by 2,9%. Income from citrus fruit increased by 6,0%, viticulture by 1,4% and vegetables slightly by 0,7%.

The gross income of producers for the year ended 30 June 2017, amounted to R267 009 million, compared to R242 216 million the previous year – an increase of 10,2%. The increase can be ascribed mainly to significant higher volumes of maize, grain sorghum, groundnuts, soya beans and dry beans produced in comparison to the poor harvest during 2016 as a result of the severe drought.

The gross income from field crops increased by 24,2% to R63 718 million for the year ended 30 June 2017. Income from all major grain and oilseed crops showed marked improvements, notwithstanding lower prices paid to farmers. Income from maize amounted to R29 905 million, an increase of 20,2% on the R24 874 million of the previous 12 months.

At the end of June 2017, 54,0% of the expected record maize crop of 16 400 million tons were delivered. Soya beans income increased by 32,3% to R6 272 million. Income from sunflower seed amounted to R4 843 million, 33,9% more than the R3 617 million of the previous 12 months. Income from groundnuts increased by 304,7% to R746 million and that of grain sorghum by 83,8% to R470 million. Income from sugar cane at R8 094 million was 25,7% higher than that of the previous 12 months. Income from cotton production also increased by 29,3% to R298 million.

On average, prices received by farmers for their products decreased by 1,9% for the period ended 31 March 2018. This was due to the decrease in prices received for field crops (30,4%) and horticultural products (2,1%). The decrease of 30,4% in prices of field crops was mainly caused by the substantial decrease in prices of summer grains by 46,4%, oilseeds by 21,8%, hay by 9,8%, winter grain by 4,5%, sugar cane by 3,4% and tobacco by 2,6%.

The prices of cotton and dry beans increased by 9,1% and 1,6%, respectively. The reason for the decrease of 2,1% in prices of horticultural products was the decrease in prices of vegetables by 8,9%. The prices of viticulture increased by 6,9% and fruit slightly by 0,5%.

The prices of animal products increased on average by 16,5% due to the increase in prices of slaughtered stock by 19,5%, poultry by 17,3%, pastoral products by 13,4% and milk by 7,1%.

The prices paid for farming requisites, including machinery and implements, material for fixed improvements and intermediate goods and services increased by 3,9% compared to 5,1% the previous year. Prices of animal health and crop protection increased by 10,0%, seeds by 7,7%, packaging material by 5,4%, fencing materials by 4,6%, implements and maintenance and repairs of machinery by 4,2%, trucks and irrigation equipment by 4,1% each, fertilisers by 3,9%, tractors by 2,9%, fuel by 2,3% and feeds by 1,4%. Domestic terms of trade weakened by 5,3%, largely because of a decrease of 1,9% in prices received by the farmers for their products and 3,9% increase in prices paid for their production inputs.

The 7,3% increase in gross farming income and 6,2% increase in intermediate expenditure led to a 15,1% increase in net farming income. Interest payments increased by 8,7%, labour costs by 6,2% and rent payments by 4,7%. The farmers' cash flow increased by 9,0% to R103 816 million during the period under review, from R95 268 million the previous period.

The increase in gross farming income was mainly the result of the increase in income made from animal products (14,7%) and field crops (1,7%). The increase in income from animal products can be attributed mainly to the increase in prices, while that from field crops was largely due to significant increases in production levels of summer grains, cotton, oilseeds, dry beans, sugar cane and tobacco.

Consumer prices

The consumer prices of all agricultural products increased by an average of 6,0% for the year ended June 2017. The consumer price index of food increased by 10,1% and that of non-food items by 5,3%.

The price index of sugar and related products rose by 19,2%, coffee and tea by 14,7%, fruit by 14,1%, grain products by 12,2%, fish by 9,5%, dairy products and eggs by 8,8%, meat by 8,4%, fats and oils by 8,1% and vegetables by 5,6%.

Volume of agricultural production

The estimated volume of agricultural production in 2016/17 was 7,7% more than in 2015/16.

The field crop production volume increased by 50,8%, mainly as a result of increases in the production of summer crops (maize and sorghum), winter crops (wheat, barley and canola), as well as oilseed crops (soya beans, sunflower seed and groundnuts), hay, sugar cane and dry beans.

Maize production increased by 8,2 million tons (99,7%) and sorghum by 92 960 tons (114,7%) from the previous season and can mainly be attributed to the favourable production conditions that prevailed at the beginning of 2017.

Wheat production increased by 472 087 tons (32,6%), barley by 23 000 tons (6,93%) and canola by 12 000 tons (12,9%).

Soya beans production increased by 598 370 tons (80,6%), sunflower seed by 69 630 tons (8,9%) and groundnut production by 82 460 tons (412,2%). The production of hay increased by 396 000 tons (8,8%), sugar cane by 213 209 tons (1,4%) and dry beans by 36 390 tons (93,3%) from 2the previous year.

Horticultural production decreased by 2,3% from the previous season, which can mainly be attributed to decreases in the production of citrus fruit and subtropical fruit. The decrease in the production of oranges by 395 061 tons (22,4%), grape fruit by 72 586 tons (18,6%), lemons by 30 068 tons (8,5%) and naartjes by 5 793 tons (13,8%) led to a decrease in citrus fruit production from 2015/16. The decrease in the production of bananas by 113 813 tons (28,3%), pineapples by 12 877 tons (12,3%) and avocados by 4 268 tons (4,9%) attributed to a decrease in the production of subtropical fruit from the previous season.

Animal production decreased by 0,6%, mainly as a result of decreases in number of stock slaughtered (sheep, pigs, cattle and calves), as well as decreases in the production of wool, ostrich feathers and eggs. The number of sheep slaughtered decreased by 224 668 units (4,4%), pigs by 65 603 units (2,3%) and cattle and calves by 58 940 units (2,0%), from the previous year. The production of wool decreased by 8 779 tons or 20,2%, ostrich feathers by 40 tons or 22,6% and eggs by 11 242 tons or 1,8%, as compared to the previous season

Role players

Credit and assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (56%), agricultural cooperatives and agribusinesses (9%), the Land Bank (30%), private creditors (3%) and other creditors and financial institutions (2%).

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa

Established in 1912, the Land Bank is a government-owned Development Finance Institutions with the sole mandate of financing agricultural development to achieve food security, and to drive economic growth and development in South Africa. It is charged with promoting agricultural and rural development, as well as providing a range of financial products and services, including crop insurance to farmers and agribusinesses.

As part of its transformation objective, the Land Bank Insurance Company (LBIC) subsidiary launched and implemented a Black Broker Training Programme to train the first fully accredited Black Crop Insurance Brokers in the country. A total of 18 brokers were accredited and began marketing LBIC's crop insurance products, collectively writing R22,6 million in premiums in their first season of crop insurance solutions provision, which equates to R565 million worth of risk managed exposure.

The bank is a specialist agricultural bank guided by a government mandate to provide financial services to the commercial farming sector and agribusiness. It also makes available financial products to new entrants to agriculture from historically disadvantaged backgrounds.

Through its direct lending, Land Bank currently supports approximately 1 500 black farmers and relinquished approximately R100 million of its profits to subsidise interest rates to these farmers as well as an additional 700 emerging farmers through its WFF intermediaries. One of the contributing factors to the increase in development finance is that average transaction values increased from approximately R0,7 million in 2016 to more than R2,0 million in 2017.

The bank nearly doubled its Wholesale Finance Facilitiy that supports emerging farmers through intermediaries from R477 million in 2016 to R914 million at the end of 2017.

It also disbursed more than R5,0 billion, including revolving loans, to entities with a BBBEE Level of four or better in 2017.

In 2017, the bank relinquished approximately R100 million of its profit to subsidise interest rates to emerging farmers. The bank provided support to farmers impacted by the drought, disbursing more than R100 million in loans under its drought-relief programme, administered in conjunction with the Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa.

Micro Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (MAFISA)

MAFISA is a scheme that provides production loans to smallholder operators within the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors. The scheme's operations are guided by the MAFISA Credit Policy.

MAFISA loans were initially restricted to agricultural enterprises, but following the incorporation of the forestry and fisheries subsectors into the department of agriculture, the credit policy was reviewed so that it can also accommodate these two subsectors.

Loans are provided at 7% interest and accessed through a network of institutions accredited by the DAFF as retail intermediaries. Intermediaries submit monthly and quarterly reports to the department as part of its monitoring process. Regular workshops and inspection visits to intermediaries are also conducted as part of monitoring.

The scheme offers production loans of up to R500 000 per person, with the repayment terms structured according to the income cycle of the enterprise. The loans are limited to South African citizens who meet the eligibility criteria. Loans of up to R50 000 can be granted without security. Most of the loans disbursed are in respect of livestock, sugar cane, vegitables and grain crops. MAFISA loans are available for the entire value chain of agriculture, forestry and fisheries, though most of the loans are still in respect of primary production.

Agri South Africa (AgriSA)

AgriSA was established in 1904 as the South African Agricultural Union. It serves approximately 32 000 large and small commercial farmers.

Its mission is to promote the development, profitability, stability and sustainability of agriculture in South Africa by means of its involvement and input on national and international policy and the implementation thereof.

Essentially AgriSA, through its affiliated membership, represents a diverse group of individual farmers regardless of gender, colour or creed.

AgriSA's policy advocacy includes work on trade negotiations, industrial policy, taxation, financing, land reform, labour laws, training, farmer development, environmental affairs, water rights and water pricing, other input-related issues, farm safety, law and order, infrastructure, technology development and transfer, statistical information and local government.

Furthermore, the organisation maintains an extensive communication network with its members and other affected communities, organisations and individuals. AgriSA is a member of high-level business, trade and agricultural entities that includes Business Unity South Africa, the International Chamber of Commerce, the World Farmers' Organisation, the Southern African Confederation of Agricultural Unions and the Cairns Group Farm Leaders.

AgriSA communicates with its members via its two-monthly magazine, namely Agri (incorporating Die Boer/The Farmer) and an electronic newsletter. The magazine provides background information on policy, legislation and programmes of interest to farmers. It also offers advice, extension and news on topical events to more than 29 000 farmers who are members of Agri SA via the respective affiliates. The magazine is sent directly to each member. It is also distributed more widely to include opinion-formers and decision-makers. It is also responsible for programme content for an agricultural radio programme aired on Radio Sonder Grense (RSG).

Agriculture in South Africa remains an important sector despite its relatively small contribution to the GDP. The sector plays an important role in terms of job creation, especially in rural areas, but is also a foremost earner of foreign exchange.

Agriculture's prominent indirect role in the economy is a result of backward and forward linkages with other sectors. Purchases of intermediate goods and services form backward linkages with the manufacturing sector, while forward linkages are established through the supply of raw materials to industry.

Approximately 70% of agricultural output is used as

intermediate products. Agriculture is therefore a crucial sector and a key driver of growth for the rest of the economy – a fact also acknowledged in policy-related documents such as the NDP: Vision 2030.

Essentially, the NDP entails that agriculture – both emerging and commercial – should still be afforded the opportunity to contribute optimally to economic growth, job creation, foreign-exchange earnings and development of the industrial sector within a safe and non-discriminatory environment. AgriSA is preoccupied with ensuring a safe environment for all people involved in the agricultural sector. A sound working relationship has been established with the South African Police Service (SAPS) at both policy and operational level, with a view of addressing the relevant rural safety problems.

Agricultural Business Chamber (Agbiz)

Agbiz is a voluntary, dynamic and influential association of agribusinesses operating in South and southern Africa.

Agbiz's function is to ensure that agribusiness plays a constructive role in the country's economic growth, development and transformation, and to create an environment in which agribusinesses of all sizes and in all sectors can thrive, expand and be competitive.

- Agbiz is the only organisation that serves the broader and common over-arching business interests of agribusinesses in South Africa.
- Agbiz addresses the legislative and policy environment on the many fronts that it impacts on the agribusiness environment.
- Agbiz facilitates considerable networking opportunities so that South African agribusinesses can play an active and creative role within the local and international organised business environment.

The strategic intent of Agbiz is to advocate for and facilitate a favourable agribusiness environment in order for its members to perform competitively and sustainably.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA)

TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of property rights, economic issues, and safety and security. TAU SA conducts various projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture.

National African Farmers' Union of South Africa (NAFU)

NAFU was established in 1991 with the aim of creating a "home" for thousands of black farmers who had previously been excluded from the mainstream of agriculture. At the time of its formation, there was no farmer organisation operating at national level in South Africa. Between 1979 and 1991, the only organisation which attempted to address the needs of black farmers at national level was National African Federated Chamber of Commerce and Industry. This organisation eventually facilitated the formation of the NAFU.

NAFU is a mouthpiece of predominantly black smallholder farmers in South Africa. It strives to promote the interests of primarily black farmers who are largely a disproportionately disadvantaged farming community. NAFU therefore represents the aspirations of those who have been disadvantaged, neglected and marginalised.

The focus of NAFU has been on advocacy, and it has and continues to lobby for access to *crucial* resources such as land, credit, information, extension and other support services. However, NAFU also played and continues to play a role in building the capacity and strength of its membership through the use of effective communication systems, training, improving management skills and exposing farming to the latest and most up-to-date production techniques.

The African Farmers' Association of South Africa (AFASA)

AFASA's objectives are to create a sustainable united body of African farmers with capacity to influence policies through lobbying and advocacy. AFASA, like any other organisation, is a collection of individuals who come together for a common purpose.

The DAFF is expected to support smallholder farmers through conditional grants such as the CASP, the LandCare Programme, the Ilima/Letsema Programme, as well as the mobilisation of farmers, women and youth into agricultural co-operatives.

Veterinary services

Veterinary public health and food safety aspects, in relation to animal products, remain a priority and are receiving increasing attention. The DAFF has set aside R100 million for the Primary Animal Health Care Programme. Special attention is being given to the major rehabilitation of existing infrastructure, as well as the building of new clinics, animal healthcare centres and other animal-handling facilities. Mobile veterinary vehicles will also be considered for remote areas. These efforts support the creation of an enabling environment for the Compulsory Community Service (CSS) Programme for newly qualified veterinarians.

The CCS is aimed at promoting primary animal healthcare in rural areas and at improving access to veterinary services.

The CCS service for young professionals is a government policy which started in 1998 when the medical doctors were deployed to rural areas. The deployment of veterinarians entrenches the department's commitment towards community service. This programme will also incorporate the training of veterinary technicians or paravets.

To strengthen the DAFF's animal healthcare, 18 primary healthcare clinics were delivered to provinces and the Veterinary Strategy, as part of the Animal Disease Management Plan.

In addition, the DAFF requested the World Organisation for Animal Health to conduct an evaluation on the performance of veterinary services in South Africa. The recommendations from the World Organisation for Animal Health's report will be applied to further enrich interventions on all veterinary issues.

Agricultural Research Council

The ARC was established by the Agricultural Research Act of 1990 and is the main agricultural research institution in South Africa. In terms of the Act, the council's primary mandate is to conduct research and development, and effect the transfer of technology to promote agriculture and industry, contribute to a better quality of life, and facilitate and ensure conservation of natural resources.

The ARC's spending focus over the medium term will be on:

- generating knowledge and technologies that will enhance the efficiencies of crop production, animal production and health
- the management of natural resources
- research and development
- maintaining national assets
- providing diagnostic and analytical services on behalf of the DAFF and industry stakeholders.

Over the medium term, the ARC will spend its total budget of R4 billion on supporting 1 130 farmers participating in animal health improvement schemes, conducting 1 777 diagnostic and analytical services, and producing 238 peer-reviewed scientific publications in natural resource management.

In response to climate change, the council is working on 25 research studies into new crop cultivars that will be registered. The new cultivars are expected to benefit rural South Africa and the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region.

The council's staff complement will remain constant at 3 297 over the medium term to contain growth in expenditure on compensation of employees, which constitutes R2,7 billion or 68,3% of total expenditure. The council's main revenue stream over the medium term will be transfers of R2,8 billion received from the DAFF, and the Department of Science and Technology, constituting about 66% of total revenue. Other income, of R1,5 billion, will be generated by sales of publications, research material and technology to supplement transfers received.

Onderstepoort Biological Products state-owned company (SOC) Ltd

OBP SOC was corporatised in 2000 under the OBP Incorporation Act of 1999.

The OBP's mandate is the prevention and control of animal diseases that impact on food security, human health and livelihood. This mandate is delivered through the continued development of innovative products and efficient manufacturing processes that ensure the affordability and accessibility of vaccines through diverse distribution channels.

The OBP possesses the capability, skills and scientific expertise to combat animal disease through the large-scale production of specialised animal vaccines. The company produces millions of doses a year to control as many as 50 different diseases and is an acknowledged world leader in the battle against animal disease.

Experiments at the OBP have seen encouraging progress in the development of new and improved vaccines against African horse sickness, which, despite the development of immunisation programmes, remains a constant threat to farmers, breeders and owners.

In 2018, OBP will commence building a Manufacturing Plant which will be completed by 2020 for R347 million. This will lead to large scale production of competitively priced vaccines manufactured under global quality standards; consistent availability of OBP vaccines and improved response to animal disease outbreaks; penetration of previously inaccessible markets and sustainable job creation in the fields of Veterinary and Biotechnological Sciences.

It is the objective and target of OBP to improve performance and production efficiencies of current products. The government is expected to increase the number of new distribution points of OBP products in rural areas to nine.

OBP takes priority in advocating for farming skills to alleviate poverty. OBP has implemented two learnership programmes, the Pharmaceutical Sales (NQF Level 5) and Animal Production (NQF Level 4). The objective of the learnership is to bridge the gap between the current education and training provided and the needs of the labour market. It offers youth an opportunity to gain a qualification through a structured learning programme. The programme has registered eight learners.

Grain SA

Grain SA was established in June 1999 and was formed out of the following organisations:

- National Maize Producers' Organisation (known as NAMPO) – maize
- National Oilseed Processors Association – soyabeans, sunflower and groundnuts
- Wheat Producers' Organisation – wheat, barley and oats
- SPO – grain and sorghum.

The mission of Grain SA is to provide commodity strategic support and services to South African grain producers to support sustainability.

Grain SA is a voluntary association of grain farmers established to represent the interests of its members. It wants to be recognised as an autonomous and independent grain producers' organisation.

The organisation wants to be involved in all matters bearing on the wellbeing of the industry and to be consulted about policy issues relating to the industry. It is strongly apolitical and issues are dealt with only on merit and sound business principles without any party political consideration.

Grain SA is controlled by farmers for farmers and structured to ensure members' democratic control over their elected office bearers.

National Agricultural Marketing Council

Currently, there are 18 industries that are subjected to statutory measures, collecting R517 million through statutory levies. The funds collected are used to finance industry-oriented activities including transformation. One of the approval conditions is that at least 20% of levy income be spent on transformation. NAMC works directly with eleven industry trusts that were formed during the process of deregulation. To date, the total asset value of the trusts is R2,4 billion from the initial value of R678 million.

Monthly, NAMC provides analysis of food price trends and tracks the cost of a basket of 28 selected basic food items. This information is made available to, amongst others community radio stations. This enables citizens to make informed choices in household spending on food.

The Competition Commission has raised competition issues in the industry, including barriers to entry for emerging farmers throughout the value chain. Lack of access to markets led to some of the produce rotting in the fields.

As such, a Transformation Review Committee was established to, among others, ensure the statutory levies collected are used by industries to contribute meaningfully to the development of black farmers. Milk SA's commercialisation project in the Free State developed nine projects that support black farmers with cattle, feed, milking parlour and electrification of the farms.

The result is that black farmers are able to supply formal

markets such as Nestle. Positive signs are emanating with other industries like mohair, potatoes, and grains ensuring that transformation occurs. NAMC together with DAFF and Buhle Farmers Academy deliver an annual accredited training programme for female agri-entrepreneurs. In its 11th year running, the programme focuses on technical, managerial and capacity building aimed at ensuring market access.

Over 360 female farmers have gone through the training programme. Some of the participants supply retail stores with their produce. One of the female agri-entrepreneurs participants from 2014, Ms Fezeka Mkile, was appointed a Council Member of the National Agricultural Marketing Council in 2017.

Last year, 2 234 animals from 400 farmers went through the Custom Feedlot Programme, generating R16,8 million. Currently, the programme employs 133 people. In May 2018, communal livestock farmers in the Amajuba District organised an auction which generated R1.4 million in sales.

The Youth Agriculture programme was launched in 2016 with the aim of promoting corporate careers in agriculture and entrepreneurship opportunities. Through this programme the NAMC adopts agricultural high schools, conducts career guidance, offers bursaries to best performing Grade 12 learners and provide internships to graduates at NAMC and industry organisations where they are assigned mentors.

Over 80 learners have gone through the internship programme since 2010 and more than 40 bursaries awarded. Dr Abongile Balarane, a young agricultural economist, is one such example, who today works at NAMC as a grains specialist and compiles a monthly Supply and Demand Estimates Report. Another group of interns involved in crop production were provided with training on irrigation under at Ga-Mapaila Irrigation Scheme in Limpopo.

Perishable Products Export Control Board

The PPECB's Agricultural Export Technologist Programme remains one of the entity's flagship development program. It is aimed at attracting and developing young qualified black professionals and up skilling them in matters relating to export of perishable products. In 2017, the entity successfully trained 35 students from designated groups. To date 296 young people have been trained. About 80% of students that participated in the PPECB's Agricultural Export Technologist Programme established in 2006, have managed to find employment within the sector.

PPECB with Agri Seta appointed six unqualified learners to provide them with practical work experience. Five graduates were also appointed within the support services departments to give them exposure and experience in their respective fields.

PPECB has trained 167 small holder farmers in Good Agricultural Practices, the responsible use of pesticides and food safety. The entity has further certified 20 small holder farmers through its SA GAP programme. PPECB will also fund a learnership programme in business administration for disabled learners.

Products

According to the third production forecast for summer crops by the Crop Estimates Committee (CEC) for the 2018 production season, the expected commercial maize crop was 12,827 million tons, which is 23,7% or 3,993 million tons less than the 16,820 million tons of the 2017 season.

The estimated area planted to maize by South African commercial maize producers during the 2018 season is 2,319 million ha – 11,8% or 309 750 ha less than the 2,629 million ha planted the previous season. The expected yield is 5,53 t/ha. The ratio of white to yellow maize plantings was estimated at 55:45.

The estimated white maize plantings were 1,268 million ha, which is a decrease of 22,8% from the previous season's plantings of 1,643 million ha. Yellow maize plantings were estimated to be 1,051 million ha – 6,6% more than the 985 500 ha for 2017.

During the 2018 production season, most of the country's maize crop was planted in the Free State (45,5%) and the North West and Mpumalanga provinces both with (20,7%).

The plantings of maize decreased by 9,1%, from 1,160 million ha to 1,054 million ha in the Free State Province, and by 2,0%, from 490 000 ha to 480 000 ha, in Mpumalanga Province. Plantings in the North West Province are estimated at 480 000 ha – a decrease of 23,8% from the 630 000 ha planted for the 2017 season. The production forecast for white maize was 6,630 million tons, which is 33,1% less than the 9,916 million tons of the previous season. The expected yield for white maize was 5,23 t/ha, as against 6,03 t/ha in 2017. In the case of yellow maize, the production forecast was 6,197 million tons, which is 10,2% less than the 6,904 million tons the previous season. The yield for yellow maize was expected to be 5,90 t/ha, as against 7,01 t/ha for 2017.

A sunflower seed crop of 792 260 tons was expected, which is 9,4% less than the 874 000 tons of the previous season. The area planted to sunflower seed was estimated at 601 500 ha, which is 5,4% lower than the 635 750 ha planted for 2017. The expected yield for 2018 was 1,32 t/ha, as against 1,37 t/ha in 2017. The production forecast for soybeans was 1,430 million tons, which is 8,7% more than the 1,316 million tons of the previous season. The estimated area planted to soybeans was 787 200 ha, which is 37,2% or 213 250 ha more than the 573 950 ha planted for 2017. The expected yield was 1,82 t/ha, as against 2,29 t/ha in 2017.

The expected groundnut crop was 80 600 tons, which is 12,4% less than the 92 050 tons of the 2017 season. The area planted to groundnuts was estimated at 56 300 ha, which is 0,5% or 300 ha more than the 56 000 ha planted the previous season. The expected yield was 1,43 t/ha, as against 1,64 t/ha in 2017. The production forecast for sorghum was 84 750 tons – 44,2% less than the 152 000 tons of the previous season. The area planted to sorghum was estimated to be 28 800 ha, which is 32,0% or 13 550 ha less than the 42 350 ha planted for 2017. The expected yield was 2,94 t/ha, as against 3,59 t/ha the previous season.

The production of dry beans was expected to be 65 610 tons – 4,3% less than the 68 525 tons of the previous season. The estimated area planted was 53 360 ha, or 18,4% more than the 45 050 ha planted the previous season, with an expected yield of 1,23 t/ha for 2018, as against a yield of 1,52 t/ha in 2017.

Producers' intentions to plant winter cereals are based on the results of a non-probability survey conducted by the Directorate: Statistics and Economic Analysis of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and reflects the position as at the middle of April 2018.

Early indications are that producers intend to plant 500 500

ha of wheat for the 2018 season. This is 1,8% or 8 900 ha more than 491 600 ha planted to wheat in 2017.

The main producing areas are within the Western Cape with 320 000 ha (64%), followed by the Free State with 95 000 ha (19%) and the Northern Cape with 37 000 ha (7%).

The expected area planted to malting barley is 95 700 ha, which is 4,7% or 4 320 ha more than the 91 380 ha of the previous year.

The expected area planted to canola is 78 500 ha, which is 6,6% or 5 500ha less than the 84 000 ha planted in 2017.

Grains

Maize

Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the SADC region for animal and human consumption.

South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC, with production at 12 million tons (Mt) to 14 Mt a year over the past 10 years.

It is estimated that about 6 500 commercial maize producers are responsible for most of the South African crop, while thousands of small-scale producers are responsible for the rest. Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga.

About 43% of maize produced in South Africa is white and the remaining 57% is yellow maize. White maize is primarily used for human consumption, while yellow maize is mostly used for animal feed production.

White maize is generally produced in the western parts of the maize belt, while yellow maize is planted in the eastern parts.

Maize is planted during late spring/early summer, with optimal planting times in November and December. However, planting can start as early as October and extend to January.

In a particular season, the rainfall pattern and other weather conditions determine the planting period as well as the length of the growing season.

Most of the maize is harvested from late May up to the end of August.

Maize production in 2017 reached a record high of about 17,5 million tons, more than double the level of 2016 and well above the previous five-year average. The significant production upturn reflects a 35% increase in plantings, which was spurred by higher prices, and bumper yields, mostly owing to wetter conditions following the dry weather conditions experienced in the previous season.

The country is expected to export around 2,4 million tons of maize in the 2017/18 Financial Year and consequently return to being a net exporter, in contrast to the previous year when an above average volume of nearly 2,4 million tons had to be imported.

Between April and November 2017, about 60% of the exported amount was shipped to East Asia, while a significant volume was also exported to Kenya.

In addition, to increased exports, closing stocks at the end of the 2017/18 Financial Year are expected to rise by almost four times to an above-average level compared to the reduced stocks in 2016/17.

Maize prices were stable in 2017 as upward pressure from a weaker currency and some earlier dry conditions during the start of the planting period for the 2018 maize crop were partly offset by forecasts pointing to good seasonal rainfall prospects. In addition, the abundant national supplies have continued to exert downward pressure, maintaining prices below their year-earlier levels.

An opening maize stock of over 4 million tons in 2018/19 is forecast in South Africa and, therefore, despite the anticipated production decrease, the country is still expected to have adequate supplies to fulfill the import demand by neighbouring countries. The larger domestic supplies also sharply cut maize import requirements for 2017/18, which are estimated to be less than 1 million tons compared to an average level of 2,4 million tons and 4,8 million tons imported in 2016/17. Most of the yearly decline reflects negligible imports, compared to the 2,2 million tons imported in 2016/17.

Sorghum

Sorghum is an indigenous crop in Africa, while regarded as the fifth most important cereal in the world. There are two types of sorghum, namely bitter and sweet sorghum cultivars.

Preference is given to the sweet cultivars. Bitter sorghum is planted in areas where birds are a problem because it contains tannin, which gives a bitter taste and consequently birds tend to avoid feeding on it.

Sorghum is mainly cultivated in low and erratic rainfall areas, especially on shallow and heavy clay soils. It is planted mainly between mid-October and mid-December.

During the last few years, sorghum production shifted from the drier western to the wetter eastern production areas. Sorghum for commercial purposes is mainly produced in the Western Free State, Mpumalanga, the drier parts of the North West and Limpopo provinces.

The rainfall pattern and other weather conditions of a particular season can determine the planting period as well as the length of the growing season to a large extent.

The country has moved from being a net exporter to a net importer. The area planted to sorghum is projected to be approximately 60 thousand hectares. The national consumption of sorghum is around 200 000 tons.

Wheat

Wheat is the second most important grain crop produced in South Africa plays an important role in national food security. Most of the wheat produced in the country is bread wheat, with small quantities of durum wheat being produced in certain areas and is used to produce pasta. In South Africa, wheat is mainly used for human consumption (bread, biscuits, breakfast cereals, rusks, etc.) and the remaining is used as seed and animal feed.

There are other non-food uses such as production of alcohol for ethanol, absorbing agents for disposable diapers, adhesives and industrial uses as starch on coatings. Producers of wheat are estimated to be approximately between 3 800 to 4 000.

Wheat is planted between April and June in the winter rainfall areas and between May and end of July in the summer rainfall areas.

South Africa is a net importer of wheat. The price farmers get for their crop is, therefore, tied to import parity. There is and import tariff of R752.40/t. In 2016, the top exporters of wheat to South Africa were Russia, Germany, Poland, USA, Ukraine, Canada, Argentina and Australia. A quota of 300 thousand tons can be imported duty free from the European Union under the

new EPA. South Africa isexpected to import almost two million tons by 2026. The crop is mainly planted between mid-April and mid-June in the Western Cape and between mid-May and the end of July in the eastern Free State province.

According to the Bureau for Food and Agricultural Policy (BFAP), the Free State is expected to account for approximately 14% of total area over the 2017 – 2026 outlook period – due to changing rainfall patterns which make dryland wheat production risky, and the competitive returns from growing soybeans.

The long-term expectation is for a 65% production of the country's wheat to come from the winter-rainfall areas of the Western Cape, and for national production to increase by less than 1% to around 1,7 million tons by 2026.

The wheat marketing season in South Africa commences on 1 October and ends on 30 September the following year. In a bid to protect the local industry, the tariff as at 2017, September 28 was R752,40/t a metric ton. South Africa remains the largest wheat producer in Sub-Saharan Africa after Ethiopia.

In October 2017, a partnership between government and the wheat production saw the launch of a platform that will improve wheat yields, despite the challenging climate.

The multimillion-rand Wheat Breeding Platform at Welgevallen Experimental Farm in Stellenbosch in the Western Cape is aimed at helping South Africa to meet the current local wheat demand and also become a wheat exporter.

Government has invested R15 million into a multi-consortium wheat breeding programme with the aim of improving abiotic stresses such as drought and extreme temperatures.

The platform is a partnership between the department, Grain SA, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, the Agricultural Research Council, Sensako, Pannar and Stellenbosch University, among others.

Grains remain an important part of the food and nutrition security initiatives. Accordingly, the ARC has developed and disseminated at least seven new wheat cultivars for improved yields and productivity of wheat in South Africa.

The new wheat cultivars are for the Free State, Northern Cape, North West, Limpopo, Southern Cape and Western Cape. The aim is to ensure that farmers adopt these cultivars to increase the production of wheat and reduce the country's import bill.

Barley

Barley is one of the most important grain crops in South Africa, surpassed only by wheat and maize and is, following wheat, the most important small grain type.

The cultivation area for malting barley under dry land conditions is at present restricted to a very specific region, namely the Southern Cape, which stretches from Bot River in the west to Heidelberg in the east. It would not be economically viable to cultivate malting barley on dry land in an area that does not receive 350 mm of well-distributed rainfall during the growing season (April to October).

The concentration of the production of a relatively minor commodity, for instance malting barley, in a specific area, has various advantages, e.g. it facilitates transport, storage, control, extension and research, which also implies cost advantages.

However, because of the risk of unpredictable weather conditions in the southern Cape, barley production has also been introduced to the cooler central irrigation areas in the Northern Cape. There are also farmers in other areas of South Africa, such as the North West, Limpopo and Free State, who plant small quantities of malting barley under irrigation.

Malting barley under irrigation has a higher yield and is more stable than in the southern Cape, where the crop is dependent on rainfall.

Barley is planted over a relatively short period of time (from three weeks in certain areas to five weeks in others).

The earlier plantings generally have a higher yield potential. This results in greater yield increases with disease and pest control programmes in earlier plantings. Barley planted later than the optimum planting period is therefore at greater risk in terms of both yield and quality.

Barley is mainly used for the production of malt (for brewing beer), animal feed and pearl barley. However, the Crop Estimates Committee's barley estimates only involve malting barley, therefore excluding barley for animal feed.

Dry beans

Dry beans are warm season annual legumes with upright or bush as well as creeping type or indeterminate growth habit. The first true leaf formed after the cotyledons emerge from the soil is simple or unifoliate and all subsequent leaves are compound (with three leaflets). Small flowers (self-pollinated) are produced in clusters at various nodes on the plant and may be either white or lavender in colour. Mature pod colour, seed colour and seed size or shape varies depending upon market class and/or variety.

The crop requires between 85 and 120 days from planting to maturity depending on variety. The first half of this period is vegetative development and the latter half is reproductive. In vine types, there is an overlap of the two periods because continued vegetative growth occurs after flowering begins. Flowering continues for 2 to 3 weeks so there can be new pods, half developed pods and fully developed pods as well as newly opened flowers present on many plants in early August. Pods are initially green changing to light brown or tan as they mature. Each pod can contain 2 to 4 seeds depending upon variety.

Gross returns from dry beans can easily be higher than for soya-beans. While yields are typically lower, dry beans fetch a relatively higher price. Achieving a good net profit is dependent on choosing an appropriate market class and good varieties to grow, keeping production costs under control, and finding a cost-effective way to clean, store, and deliver the crop. Although dry bean prices fluctuate, as a food crop they do not follow the prices of corn and soya-beans.

Adding dry beans to the mix of crops on a farm can assist in spreading out the risk from changes in market prices.

The crop has a high-water use efficiency and contribute to soil quality by fixing nitrogen in the soil. They can be used as feedstuff for animals and plays a major role in food security, especially since they are a vegetable protein. South Africa has a dry bean deficit and relies on imports. This provides an opportunity for the whole of Southern Africa to increase production.

The crop is mainly produced in the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, North West and the Northern Cape provinces. Producers can sell directly to the trade or sell their product to

wholesalers and co-operatives.

Oilseeds

Groundnuts

Groundnuts are grown mainly in the Free State, North West and Northern Cape. They are also produced in Limpopo, Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal but production is lower in these provinces.

The normal planting time for groundnuts is mid-October to mid-November. The marketing season starts in March and ends in February the following year

Oil made from groundnuts can be used for cooking and to make peanut butter. It can also be used to manufacture soap; massage oil; body, shaving and hair creams.

The crop is rich in protein and can be eaten raw, cooked or roasted. They work well as a rotational crop and should be planted on the same soil once every four years.

Sunflower seed

The Free State and North West provinces, are the major producers of sunflower seed, followed by Limpopo, Mpumalanga and Gauteng. South Africa is the world's 10th largest producer of sunflower seed. Sunflower seed can be planted from the beginning of November to the end of December in the eastern parts of the production areas and up to the middle of January in the western part.

Sunflowers grow best when planted in midsummer to ensure that less moisture is lost from the soil during the crucial growing phases.

Compared to other crops, sunflower performs well under dry conditions. This is probably the main reason for the crop's popularity in the marginal production areas of South Africa. A close link exists between the area planted to maize and the area planted to sunflower seed because farmers can easily switch to sunflower if the normal period for maize planting has passed.

Sunflower seed is primarily used for manufacturing sunflower oil and oilcake. The oil is used for cooking and can also be converted to diesel.

Sunflower is used to prepare margarine and spreads, used daily by many people in South Africa. Its seed also produces oil cake, which is widely used for animal feeds.

South Africa contributed 850 000 tons of the global 46,1 million in 2017.

Major exporters of sunflower seed to South Africa are Romania, Botswana, Bulgaria and Argentina. Importing from SADC countries utilises the SADC Free Trade Agreement which facilitates flow of commodities among countries in the region at no tariff charges.

Sales of sunflower seed are mostly to the domestic market with very little quantities destined for the export market. Mostly, South Africa remains a net importer of sunflower seed.

Sunflower seed can grow on marginal soils with little fertiliser, is consistent crop under unfavourable weather conditions, and historically, it could be planted "as a last resort".

The sunflower marketing season in South Africa commences on 1 March.

Macadamia nuts

The DAFF together with the Eastern Cape Department of Rural Development and Agrarian Reform has invested R40 million of CASP since 2006 to establish 300 ha of Macadamia Nuts in Ncera area.

This is a private, public partnership with landowners, the community and private partners. A total of 180 ha of Macadamia Nuts have been planted with 80 ha harvested for export market, creating 110 permanent jobs. The project is estimated to be completed by 2017/18 with 300 sustainable jobs created. This project has turned the tide of unemployment, unskilled communities and poverty. It created a vibrant society with better prospects for the future.

This macadamia development programme will be further expanded in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo, focusing on growing the participation of black producers in this industry.

Soya beans

Soya beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are also produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West. Various soya bean cultivars have adapted quite well to South African conditions. Depending on prevailing local conditions, soya beans are usually planted in November and December. It is a relatively difficult crop to grow and not all areas are suitable for soya bean cultivation. The plants thrive in warm, fertile, clayish soil and are mainly cultivated under dry land conditions.

Soybeans are an important source of vegetable oil and protein. The seeds can be eaten as a vegetable and when processed, they give soya milk.

The crop is a good rotation crop which benefits crops planted after it. South Africa is one of top soya beans producers in Africa, together with Nigeria, Zambia, Malawi, Benin and Zimbabwe.

The crop is mainly cultivated under dryland conditions, and grown in Mpumalanga and the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, North West and Gauteng.

Soya beans are planted from November and December.

The area cultivated to soybeans increased to 574 thousand hectares in 2017. The area is expected to increase to just under 900 thousand hectares in 2026. The average yield is projected to increase to a total soybean crop of 2,1 million tons by 2026.

Domestic soya bean oilcake production has exceeded imported oilcake since 2014 and is projected to increase to over 1,8 million tons by 2026, continually replacing imports so that only 250 thousand tons or 13% of domestic soya bean oilcake use is projected to be imported by 2026. Soya oil imports are projected to decrease from 160 thousand tons in 2017 to merely 50 thousand tons by 2026.

In 2016/17, soybeans were consumed as follows: human consumption, 19 838 tons; animal feed, 85 930 tons; oil and oilcake, 756 624 tons.

Canola

Canola is an oilseed crop grown mainly in the Western Cape. Canola competes on the local market with other oilseeds such as sunflower seeds and soya beans.

Canola was developed in the early 1970s using traditional plant breeding techniques by Canadian plant breeders to remove the antinutritional components (erucic acid and glucosinolates) from rapeseed to assure its safety for human and animal consumption. The canola plant produces seeds with a very low level of saturated fat.

Local and international investors in the oilseed crushing sector are boosting South Africa's capacity to process local oilseed crops such as soya beans, canola and sunflower seed.

About 99% of the canola crop in South Africa is produced in the Western Cape province, particularly in the southern Cape. Over time, there were also farmers in other areas of South Africa, such as the Northern Cape, Free State, Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo and North West, who started to plant small quantities of canola.

Sugar

South Africa produces cost-competitive high-quality sugar. The sugar sector is a diverse industry, combining the agricultural activities of sugar-cane cultivation with the industrial factory production of raw and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, as well as a range of byproducts.

The cane-growing sector comprises about 29 000 registered sugarcane growers farming predominantly in KwaZulu-Natal, with a substantial investment in Mpumalanga and the Eastern Cape.

Sugar cane is a ratoon crop, which means that after cropping, new shoots emerge from the roots. It yields up to 10 crops from the original rootstock, after which it is uprooted and the field is replanted. This is done on a rotational basis, with approximately 10% of the area under cane being replanted each season. Planting usually coincides with the first spring rains.

Sugar is manufactured by six milling companies with 14 sugar mills operating in these cane-growing regions.

The R12 billion South African sugar industry is cost-competitive, consistently ranking in the top 15 out of approximately 120 sugar producing countries worldwide. The industry makes a positive difference to the lives of more than a one million people and is a catalyst to economic growth and development. Sugarcane is a strategic crop for Kwazulu-Natal and Mpumalanga, where sugarcane production is located, comprising nearly 50% of field crop gross farming income across the two provinces.

The industry has transferred 21% of freehold land under cane from white to black owners since 1994 off a base of 5%. This industry's proactive stance on land reform, which commenced in 1996, has been the foundation for the achievement to date. The industry has worked closely with the government on numerous land reform projects which have contributed to the success of land reform in the industry.

Based on revenue generated through sugar sales in the Southern African Customs Union region as well as world market exports, the industry generates an annual estimated average direct income of over R12 billion.

It makes an important contribution to employment and sustainable socio-economic development, particularly in rural areas. This is built on its agricultural and industrial investments, foreign exchange earnings, labour intensity, and linkages with major suppliers, support industries and customers. The industry provides education and training, contributes to excellence in research, science and technology, supporting enterprises, and ensuring the sustainable use of natural resources.

The industry is diverse, combining the agricultural activities of sugarcane cultivation with the manufacture of raw and refined sugar, syrups, specialised sugars by-products and co-products. In line with developments in the global sugar sector, it has the potential to be a producer of renewable energy, bio-fuels and bio-plastics.

The sugar industry creates employment in rural and deep rural areas in job starved regions where there is often little other economic opportunity. Direct employment occurs in both in the sugar cane field and the sugar mills and cuts across a diverse array of skills from farm workers to agricultural scientists.

There is also direct and indirect employment through numerous support industries in the provinces where sugarcane is grown and processed. The sugar industry creates approximately 79 000 direct jobs, which represents over 11% of the total agricultural workforce in South Africa. In addition, there are registered cane growers supplying cane for processing to sugar mills. Indirect employment is estimated at 350 000 jobs. Approximately one million people or 2% of South Africa's population depend on the sugar industry for a living.

Sugarcane is grown by approximately 24 000 registered growers, farming predominantly in KwaZulu-Natal with substantial operations in Mpumalanga, and some sugarcane production in the Eastern Cape. Sugar is manufactured by six milling companies with 14 sugar mills operating in the cane-growing regions. The industry produces an average of 2,2 million tons of sugar per season. About 75% of this sugar on average is marketed in the SACU region. The remainder is exported to markets in Africa, Asia and the USA.

A unique relationship exists between sugarcane and sugar production, in that cane is a bulky, non-tradable commodity which requires rapid post-harvest processing in order to preserve the sucrose in the cane stalk. As a result, sugar mills are always located as close as possible to cane supply. The financial viability of these significant capital investments is entirely dependent on a sustainable supply of sugarcane in each mill supply area.

This in turn means the sheer size of economic activity generated in rural areas through the activities of sugarcane cultivation and sugar production generates a vast number of jobs in support industries and commerce. In most cases the sugar mill and accompanying cane farms form the backbone of the nearest rural town and are major contributors to the development of secondary economic activity, services and Infra-structure that otherwise would be absent.

Deciduous fruit

The deciduous fruit industry in South Africa, including fresh, dried and canned fruit for local consumption and export, is a multimillion rand industry. It is based on scientific research and development, resulting in optimum harvests and quality, a large variety of cultivars, and finely controlled storage methods. Deciduous fruits grown in South Africa include apples, pears, apricots, nectarines, peaches, plums, grapes, olives, figs and cherries.

The Western Cape is the largest and traditional producer of deciduous fruits in South Africa. However, in the past two decades, the Northern Cape, Eastern Cape, and Limpopo provinces have become increasingly large producers of deciduous fruit.

The country is ranked the fourth largest apple producer and second largest pear producer in the Southern Hemisphere.

Although some producers grow fruit both for processing (canning, juice and drying) as well as fresh consumption, it is estimated that in South Africa there are about 2 300 producers

of fruit for fresh consumption, 1 246 producers of dry and table grapes, 925 producers of stone fruit and 706 producers of pome fruit.

Apple production in the 2017/18 financial year is expected to decrease by 6% to 850,000 mt, due to the decrease in area harvested, limited irrigation water, lower yields and smaller fruit sizes. Exports of apples in the 2017/18 financial year are forecast to decrease by 5% to 500,000 mt, based on the available production and some fruit not meeting the export quality standards.

Pear production in the 2017/18 financial year is expected to decrease by 6% to 405,000 mt, due to the decrease in area harvested, limited irrigation water, lower yields and smaller fruit sizes. This is expected to result in about a 3% decrease in exports – to 250,000 mt.

Table grape production is expected to decrease by 14% to 287,000 mt, because of the reduction in area harvested and small fruit size in the Western Cape. This decrease was partially due to the higher yielding new generation varieties, as well as normal production and growing conditions in the Orange River growing regions. This will result in a 15% decrease in the 2017/18 table grape exports to 258,000 mt.

South Africa's deciduous fruit industry is export-oriented and prioritizes exporting as much volume as they can before supplying the surplus fruit to the local market. As a result, the 2017/18 domestic consumption of apples, pears and table grapes will decrease based on the lower production. South Africa only imports small quantities of deciduous fruits to fulfill a niche market or to satisfy domestic demand when supply is limited.

Dried fruit

Dried fruit is produced mainly in the western and southern parts of the Western Cape province and the Lower and Upper Orange River areas in the Northern Cape province. Tree fruit, as opposed to vine fruit, is dried mainly in the Western Cape.

The most important dried fruit products in terms of volume are Thompson seedless raisins, golden sultanas, unbleached sultanas, currants, peaches, pears, apricots and prunes.

The quantities of dried fruit produced vary per fruit type, depending on the factors that influence production and the opportunities offered by alternative marketing channels.

Apricots are grown mainly in the Little Karoo and prunes are produced almost exclusively in the Tulbagh District in the Western Cape.

Most raisins are produced in the area along the Lower Orange River and currants are mainly from the Vredendal District in the Western Cape.

Cotton

In South Africa, cotton is grown in the warm regions of the Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal where minimum night temperatures are at least 15°C during the growing season. Cotton is planted mainly during October, although planting can be done until the second half of November.

The cotton industry is labour-intensive and provides work for roughly one worker per hectare of cotton planted. Oil extracted from cotton seed can be used for cooking and salad dressings. Extracted seed can also be used as a fertiliser or as feed for livestock, poultry and fish.

The 10th estimate for the 2016/17 production year indicated a total crop of lint bales to be produced from locally grown seed cotton to go up 64% from the previous season.

Tobacco

Virginia tobacco is produced mainly in Mpumalanga, Limpopo, Eastern Cape, Western Cape and North West.

Flue-cured leaf tobacco contributes more than 79% to total production, with the number of ha cultivated for flue-cured tobacco being about six times the land cultivated for air-cured leaf tobacco. The industry produces 15 million kg tobacco a year.

There are 176 tobacco growers in South Africa operating on some 5 000 ha of land. Tobacco farmers employ about 8 000 – 10 000 farmworkers; in addition, more than 35 000 dependants are also able make a living in deep rural areas thanks to the tobacco industry.

More than 90% of tobacco used in South Africa goes toward the manufacturing high-quality tobacco products.

Honeybush and rooibos tea

Honeybush production is a young, growing industry that is unique to South Africa. Honeybush is part of the fynbos that grows wild in the Cederberg area of the Western Cape and is not produced anywhere else in the world. The plant grows naturally on the wetter and cooler southern slopes of mountains. Some species are mostly harvested in the wild, while others are cultivated commercially.

Some 230 ha of honeybush tea are under cultivation. It is harvested from the natural mountainous veld in the Langeberg and Swartberg in the Eastern and Western Cape and processed at farm-processing facilities.

The honeybush industry has the potential to grow from an annual average of 150 t of processed tea to 1 500 t by 2021 and to increase turnover from R10 million to R100 million. South Africa produces about 200 t of honeybush tea a year. Local and international demand exceeds supply.

Fewer than 10 farmers cultivate only 30% of honeybush tea and the rest (70%) is harvested in the wild.

Owing to the growing interest in the health properties of natural products and specifically, herbal teas, many biochemists round the world are investigating rooibos. The rooibos plant grows well in the Cederberg area, where temperatures drop to 0°C during the winter months and rise to 48°C at the height of summer. On average, South Africa produces about 15 000 t of rooibos tea a year. South Africans consume 4 500 t to 5 000 t and the rest is exported.

Since July 2014, South Africa has won the right to secure geographical indicator status for Rooibos tea. This enables Rooibos tea growers to look for new markets in Asia and increase those that already exist.

ARC Infruitec-Nietvoorbij is responsible for managing nine genebanks. The genebanks include field collections of various deciduous tree fruit crops, grapevines, olives, indigenous flowers of the Proteaceae and honeybush, in vitro collections of yeasts, fungi and bacteria as well as some tree fruit and berry crops in medium-term cold storage.

The main purpose of the field genebanks is to conserve genetic diversity of fruits, grapes and indigenous crops,

particularly in support of breeding programmes; the yeast collection contributes to oenological research; and the fungal and bacterial collections provide for research and diagnostics.

With its high levels of antioxidants, rooibos has long been known for its ability to help prevent cancer from developing, but recent research shows that it could potentially also be used to treat – but not cure – the disease.

In laboratory studies, Stellenbosch University (SU) biochemist Prof Amanda Swart found rooibos extract interferes with the male sex hormone dihydrotestosterone – which is one of the main drivers of prostate cancer. This action is similar to that of current drugs used in the treatment of prostate cancers.

Molecular testing showed that honeybush extract contained chemicals that can either block or increase oestrogen, which may drive the growth of some types of cancers.

Although still in the testing phases, honeybush-derived therapy may one day be used as a second-line drug against some of these cancers.

Wine

South Africa is the eighth-largest wine producer in the world, with a contribution of 4,1% to the world's wine production.

The area under wine grape vineyards is estimated at 98 597 ha, which is 0,9% less than the 99 470 ha of the previous year.

The wine industry is labour intensive and provides employment to approximately 270 000 people directly and indirectly. The number of primary wine grape producers in South Africa is estimated at 3 232.

Wine is produced mainly in the Western Cape Province and along parts of the Orange River in the Northern Cape Province.

The traditional winegrowing areas along the coastal zone benefit from its cooling breezes that moderate the summer temperatures. The Cape mountain ranges form a backdrop to what is internationally recognized as one of the most beautiful wine producing areas of the world. The vineyards lie on a valley sides of the mountain foothills some areas, and in flatter plains in others. One of the potential competitive advantages of the Cape wine lands is great variety of soils, something that can be exploited.

Nietvoorbij, the internationally acclaimed research farm of the ARC, is synonymous with quality research in enology and viticulture. Annually, 1 000 different wines (10 – 20l) are made for research purposes in the modern experimental cellar. Next door, in the old, thatched roof cellar, traditional and modern winemaking methods are combined to create unique wines for enjoyment.

Citrus and subtropical fruit

South Africa ranks 13th in world citrus production and despite increased competition, its citrus exports are growing. The country is also the world's third largest exporter of fresh citrus fruit by volume, after Spain and Turkey.

Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and occurs in Limpopo (23 970 ha), Eastern Cape (14 770 ha), Western Cape (9 232 ha), Mpumalanga (9 375 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (3 192 ha), and Northern Cape (1 451 ha). Pineapples are grown mainly in the Eastern Cape and northern KwaZulu-Natal.

Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, as well as in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

Citrus fruit is grown in the Limpopo, Eastern Cape, Mpumalanga, Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal in areas where subtropical conditions (warm to hot summers and mild winters) prevail.

The Western Cape and Eastern Cape are considered 'cooler' citrus growing areas and production is focused on Navel oranges and lemons. The cooler climate allows farmers to respond to consumer demand for easy peelers like clementines and satsumas. Farm sizes are also smaller and most citrus in the Western and Eastern Cape is packed by privatized cooperatives in huge facilities that are amongst the largest in the world. In Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal, the climate is warmer and better suited to the cultivation of grapefruit and Valencia oranges. Farm sizes in these regions are larger and many farmers pack in smaller privately owned facilities.

In terms of gross value, the citrus industry is the third largest horticultural industry after deciduous fruits and vegetables. Citrus represents one of South Africa's most important fruit group by value and volume.

A total area of 72 731 ha was under citrus production in South Africa during 2016. There are important differences between production regions in South Africa based mainly on climate.

A number of cultivars or varieties of oranges, soft citrus, grapefruit, and lemons and limes are grown in South Africa. In 2016, the cultivars planted mostly in South Africa were Midknight (34% or 9 411 ha), Valencia Late (20% or 5 512 ha), Delta (18% or 4 974 ha), and Turkey (Juvalle) (10% or 2 628 ha). Together, the four cultivars accounted for 82% of total Valencia oranges planted during the year. The total area planted to Valencia oranges in South Africa during 2016 was 27 535 ha.

Orange exports represented 13% of world exports and ranked number three in the world. Lemon and lime exports represented 7,7% of world exports and ranked number six. South African grapefruit exports represented 13,1% of world exports and its ranking on the world exports was number two. Naartjie exports represented 4,2% of world exports and its ranking on the world exports was number five.

Vegetables (excluding potatoes)

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but on the largest scale in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga Lowveld and Middleveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape. In Limpopo, South Africa's main tomato-growing area, most of the crops are found in Letaba (3 260 ha), Mooketsi and Musina (860 ha). Limpopo's total annual production is about 230 000 t.

Onions are grown mainly in Mpumalanga, certain areas of the Western Cape and the southern Free State and in all areas of Limpopo with the main production areas being Polokwane and Mokopane. Onions have an estimated planting area of 6 500 ha to 9 000 ha and a retail value of R200 million a year.

Cabbages are grown countrywide, but the largest crops are in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal.

Vegetables are produced in most parts of the country. However, in certain areas farmers tend to concentrate on specific crops; for example, green beans are grown mainly in

Kaapmuiden, Marble Hall and Tzaneen, green peas mainly in George and Vaalharts, onions mainly in Caledon, Pretoria and Brits and asparagus mainly in Krugersdorp and Ficksburg.

The perishables export industry is a substantial and sustainable contributor to the national economy, with perishables making up more than 50% of the country's agricultural exports, and boasting an annual export value of approximately R45,5 billion. The services delivered by the department through its subsidiaries, such as the Perishable Products Export Control Board, are amongst other measures, based on a national quality control system that ensures safe fresh products that require international best practices.

South Africa has consistently, over many decades, been a world leader of fresh produce supply in a highly competitive world market. This is indicative of the pivotal role of the agricultural sector in providing an efficient supply chain from farm to fork.

The DAFF aims to contribute to the benefit of the economy through sustaining and improving on global agricultural and food supply chains, while keeping on the cutting edge of technology in respect to food safety as a country.

Potatoes

There are 16 distinct potato-production regions in South Africa, which are spread throughout the country. The main regions are situated in the Free State, Western Cape, Limpopo and Mpumalanga.

Potatoes are planted at different times because of climate differences in the production areas, resulting in fresh potatoes being available throughout the year.

In the early 1990s, there was a major shift in production from dryland nto irrigation and currently almost 80% of plantings are under irrigation.

In 2016, the potato industry contributed approximately 52% to the total gross value of vegetable production, 10% of horticultural products and 3% of total agricultural products. Processing of potatoes has grown at a rapid rate over the past ten years. According to Potatoes South Africa, the processing industry represented 20% of the total potato crop.

Potatoes are produced from sixteen production regions which are spread throughout South Africa. The main producing regions are situated in the Limpopo, Free State, Western Cape, Mpumalanga, Kwazulu Natal and Eastern Cape. In 2016, Eastern Free State province was the leading in the number of hectares planted, accounting for 21% of ha of the total national production. Potatoes are planted at different times due to climatic differences in the production areas. This has resulted in fresh potatoes being available throughout the year. The crop is produced all year round both in dry land and under irrigation. There has been a major shift for the past two decades from dry land production to production under irrigation. A total of 52 722 hectares were planted during the 2016 production year.

According to Potatoes South Africa, in 2016 there were 540 commercial table potato farmers. There are approximately 220 registered potato seed growers under the supervision and administration of potato certification services.

Potatoes are sold through different marketing channels such as national fresh produce market, informal trade (street hawkers), directly to retailers and processors for manufacturing of dry, frozen and fresh chips. They are also exported to other countries through export agents and marketing companies.

Livestock

Animal production contributes approximately 48% to the country's agricultural output in terms of value. The industry employs about 500 000 people.

The ARC, in partnership with all the provinces, will roll out the implementation of the Livestock Development Programme. In this initiative, the ARC will introduce and expand on the dissemination of technologies, such as artificial insemination and embryo transfer.

The National Agriculture Marketing Council (NAMC) is also actively engaged in a programme to introduce farmers to the structure, operation and requirements of the formal red meat market. This is the National Red Meat Development Programme. It works with emerging and communal farmers to increase the income earned from raising cattle through greater and more beneficial participation in formal red meat markets.

The National Livestock Development Strategy aims to enhance the sustainability of animal agriculture in South Africa across the entire production, processing and supply chain.

By mid-2016, a conservative estimate of the value of South Africa's livestock industry was around R50 billion. The foot-and-mouth disease (FMD)-free status has enabled the country to negotiate market access for cloven-hoofed animal products. The DAFF is in the process of negotiating the export of game meat to the EU and beef to the Middle East.

In safeguarding the country's biosecurity, the ARC has developed a new vaccine against Heartwater that will be made available to farmers after evaluating for safety and registration by the authorities. The availability of a Heartwater vaccine will boost mohair production as Angora goats are the most susceptible to animal diseases.

Development of new vaccines will play a vital role in expanding the number of successful livestock farmers resulting in reduced losses and increase in revenue for the farmers

Dairy farming

Milk production in South Africa contributes about 0,5% to the world's milk production. South Africa has four major dairy breeds, namely Holstein, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire. The industry comprises various economic activities with, significant differences in farming methods and the processing of dairy products, including the production and marketing of raw milk, pasteurised milk and cream, fermented milk, long-life milk and cream, yoghurt, and cheese and its byproducts.

The South African dairy industry is important to the job market, with some 2 700 milk producers employing 60 000 farmworkers and providing 40 000 people with indirect jobs within the value chain, such as milk processing.

Beef cattle farming

Beef is produced throughout South Africa. The quantity of beef produced depends on infrastructure such as feedlots and abattoirs, and not necessarily on the number of cattle available in those areas. South Africa has a highly developed transport infrastructure that allows for movement of cattle from one area to another, even to and from neighbouring countries, for example, Namibia. Commercial farmers own 59% of the 14 million head of cattle available in South Africa. There are 27 popular breeds in South Africa including the Brahman, indigenous Afrikaner

and Nguni, Tuli, Boron, Bonsmara, Drakensberger, Simbra, Beefmaster, Angus and Braford.

Beef cattle comprise approximately 80% of the total number of cattle in the country while dairy cattle make up the remaining 20%.

Small stock (sheep and goat) farming

South Africa has about 8 000 commercial sheep farms and about 5 800 communal farmers. Most of the estimated 24,4 million sheep in South Africa is found in the Eastern Cape, followed by the Northern Cape, Free State, Western Cape and Mpumalanga.

The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, such as the Dohne Merino, South African Mutton Merino, Afrino and Letelle breeds. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton produce.

Mutton sheep are found mostly in the semidesert areas of the Northern and Western Cape, with the most popular mutton breed being the locally developed Dorper. Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed and Karakul sheep are still found. Karakul sheep are found in the more arid areas.

The Eastern Cape has the largest number of goats (38%), followed by Limpopo (19%). The indigenous meat-producing Boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa. Almost all of South Africa's Angora goat (mohair) farmers are located in the Eastern Cape, where they farm with about one million goats.

The South African mohair clip of four million kilograms, accounts for 60% of the world's mohair production. About 63% of all goats in South Africa are so-called indigenous goats.

South Africa is also geared towards the conservation of indigenous Speckle goat and Namaqua Afrikaner Sheep breeds.

Pig and poultry farming

The South African pork industry is relatively large, in terms of the overall South African agricultural sector. It contributes 1,9% to the primary agricultural sector. The gross value of pork production is dependent on the quantity produced and the price farmers received.

The trend in gross value follows a pattern of prices, because the industry is characterised by volatile prices.

Pork is produced throughout South Africa with Limpopo and North West being the largest producers, contributing to 44% of total production. There are about 4 000 commercial, 19 stud and about 110 smallholder pig farmers; they own about 125 000 sows (100 000 commercial and 25 000, smallholder farmers); they employ about 10 000 workers, comprising about 4 000 farm workers and 6 000 workers in the processing and abattoir sectors.

The 46 registered pig abattoirs use modern technology to ensure a streamlined slaughtering process. The predominant pig breeds are the South African Land Race, the Large White, Duroc and the Pietrain.

The poultry industry (including meat and eggs) continues to dominate the agricultural sector in South Africa, and is the main supplier of protein in kilogramme terms to the South African consumer, as more poultry products are consumed per year than all other animal protein sources combined.

The poultry industry is an essential component of South Africa's food value chain. It is the single largest component of the agricultural sector in the country by turnover.

Although poultry producers remain the largest segment of South African agriculture, they have been facing challenges regarding input prices, which put profit margins in broiler production under pressure.

The volatility in price and profitability is inherent to the broiler industry, because biological factors, such as poultry diseases and prolonged turnaround times in the production chain, combined with hikes in feed costs, electricity and fuel have a direct impact on production costs.

Along with being the primary source of protein, the poultry industry remains an important contributor to job creation and employment opportunities. Some 10% of all agricultural sector workers are employed in the poultry sector.

Considering the dominance of the poultry industry in South Africa, it also has the largest influence on the feed industry as its main customer. The South African Poultry Association estimates that a total of 107 857 people (48 118 direct and 59 739 indirect) are employed in the broiler, hatchery, rearing, processing and distribution industries.

At a gross turnover of R8,6 billion at producer level, eggs take their place as the fourth largest animal product sector in agriculture in South Africa.

Considerable scope exists for increased per capita consumption, particularly taking into account the price competitiveness of eggs as a protein source, compared to other animal proteins.

The industry remains an important employer with an estimated 8 000 workers.

Regarding the African Growth and Opportunity Act trade, although the deadline of 31 December 2015 passed without agreement, an agreement was reached on 6 January 2016 on the relevant three meats, namely beef, pork and poultry. The proclamation made by the USA not to suspend agricultural imports was extended to 15 March 2016. However, the agreement was eventually signed by the USA and is currently in force.

The DAFF has already issued permits for the first 16 250 t of poultry meat to 29 importers, of which nine are HDIs. Under AGOA, the agricultural sector has advantages for the exports of citrus, macadamia nuts, wine and other food products.

However, implications of the concessions are that the EU and other partners may require equal treatment, which will require readjustment of the current agreements with trading partners. Concerning SPS-issues, a protocol for highly pathogenic avian influenza was signed between the two countries.

Hunting and wildlife sector

The hunting sector in South Africa consists of about 300 000 hunters, of which 75 000 belong to 28 accredited hunting associations.

Hunting can be divided into trophy hunting and meat hunting. South Africa is a popular hunting destination for international hunters that may want to take a trophy of their hunting experience home as memorabilia.

Local hunters, often referred to as biltong hunters, hunt for their own use as an alternative protein source, which also contributes to food security.

The five most popular hunting provinces are Limpopo, Northern Cape, Eastern Cape, North West and Free State. The five most popular species among biltong/consumptive hunters are springbok, impala, blesbuck, blue wildebeest and kudu.

Hunting primarily occurs in rural and remote rural areas, which provides an economic injection to communities that are home to many unskilled and unemployed people. The Limpopo, North West and Eastern Cape provinces are prime hunting destinations that generate employment for the unskilled workforce where other viable land-use options are often limited.

The financial rewards for wildlife management in dryland ecosystems, that stretch over vast areas of the country, is approximately three to four times higher than for domestic stock farming (R220/ha vs R80/ha). Compared to typical agriculture, wildlife-based enterprises employ three times more staff.

The hunting sector in South Africa is represented by various voluntary associations and organisations that serve in the interest of both consumptive and professional hunters. The SA Hunters and Game Conservation Association (SA Hunters) is the biggest representative body for hunters in South Africa and has approximately 42 000 members in 79 branches countrywide.

SA Hunters and other hunting associations in South Africa have taken the lead in the wildlife economy by advocating and practising responsible, sustainable hunting as the most effective wildlife management mechanism that supports the game ranching sector in the country.

Programmes and projects

Regulatory services

The DAFF's regulatory activities include: the inspection of plants, animals and their products to prevent the introduction and distribution of quarantine pests and diseases; to also ensure that exported animals/plants and their products are free from quarantine pests and diseases.

South Africa is an active member of the World Organisation for Animal Health. Disease reports are received from the Organisation for Animal Health and through direct contact with veterinary administrations in exporting countries.

Trade in animals and animal products are regulated to prevent the entry of diseases.

The DAFF also ensures compliance with agricultural legislation by conducting inspections at designated ports of entry. Preborder inspections are aimed at exports for compliance with international requirements among trading partners. Post-border inspections are intended for those regulated articles that were given extended detentions at borders or escaped the border control inspections.

Plants and plant products are inspected for compliance with plant health, genetic resources and food and quality-assurance legislation. The department conducts surveillance for regulated pests and/or national pests of concern throughout the country.

The Pest Risk Analysis Division conducts scientific analysis of risks posed based on scientific data. Risks associated with the importation of plant propagation material are managed by prescribing a compulsory predetermined quarantine detention period for specific high-risk categories.

To prevent the introduction of harmful exotic plant pests, all imported plant material is tested and audited. The DAFF renders diagnostic services to ensure that all imported and exported products comply with international standards.

Closely linked to early detection is the implementation of proper pest-awareness programmes to keep the agricultural sector and the general public informed.

Through its Import/Export Protocols Division, the DAFF ensures and maintains market access for South African plants and plant products. This includes exchanging plant health information and expertise in terms of bilateral engagements, and maintaining bilateral export/import programmes.

Despite having maintained the country's lucrative fruit export markets, production and exports are still under threat. Accordingly, imports of host fruit from countries where pests have been established must be appropriately managed. This emphasises the importance of border control and risk management responsibilities.

Food import and export standards

Internationally, standards for food imports and exports are harmonised through various international standard-setting bodies subscribed to under the World Trade Organisation (WTO) and to which South Africa is a signatory, including the Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measurements Agreement, World Organisation for Animal Health, Codex Alimentarius Commission and the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. These requirements aim to protect consumer rights, the environment, animal life and public health.

Through its Directorate: Food Import and Export Standards, the department collates information regarding the standards for sanitary and phytosanitary measures applicable to trade in animal and plant products. The DAFF also coordinates promotion and awareness programmes addressing cross-cutting standards and legislative requirements for food safety, quality, and plant and animal health.

The department and the PPECB work closely to assist South Africans – within the ambit of the law – to export their products successfully in a highly competitive global arena.

Food safety and quality assurance

The Directorate: Food Safety and Quality Assurance (D: FSQA) is responsible for the development of regulations, standards and requirements regarding control of the export of agricultural products of plant and animal origin under the Agricultural Product Standards Act and to control the production, sale, import and export of certain alcoholic products in terms of the Liquor Products Act.

These standards and regulations are harmonised with various international standard-setting bodies such as the Codex Alimentarius Commission, The Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development, United Nations (UN) Economic Commission for Europe and the International Dairy Federation.

South African products can compete on an equal footing with overseas products and can also be marketed more competitively.

The Agricultural Product Standards Act makes provision for the appointment of assignees to undertake inspections at the point of sale, manufacture, packing or export to ensure that the set standards and requirements are complied with.

The following assignees are currently appointed:

- The PPECB conducts quality inspection and food safety services for regulated agricultural products under the Agricultural Products Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990)

intended for export;
- Nejahmogul Technologies Agric Services (Pty) Ltd conducts quality inspection for dairy and related products on the local market;
- Agency for Food Safety conducts inspection for regulated animal products (poultry meat and eggs) on the local market;
- Impumelelo Agribusiness (Pty) Ltd conducts quality inspections on processed products on the local market;
- Leaf Services conducts quality inspections on grain and grain products on the local market;
- Product Control of South Africa conducts quality inspections of fresh fruit and vegetables; and
- South African Meat Industry Company conducts inspections of meat carcasses on the local market.

National analytical services

The National Analytical Services (NAS) laboratories reside under the D: FSQA. There are two in-house laboratories within NAS; one situated in Stellenbosch and one in Pretoria. The laboratories provide and coordinate the analysis of certain agricultural products (fresh fruit and vegetables, grains, wines and spirits, dairy products and processed food) in support of the enforcement of the food safety and quality standards and requirements as laid down in the Agricultural Products Standards Act and the Liquor Products Act.

Disaster and risk management

The National Agricultural Disaster Risk Management Committee provides strategic guidance on policy and advises the Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on issues relating to agricultural disaster risk management. The committee comprises members from provincial departments of agriculture, organised agriculture such as Nafu, Agri SA, TAU SA and ARC and relevant directorates within the department.

The established National Drought Task Team, chaired by the DAFF, advises the National Disaster Management Advisory Forum on drought management. The task team comprises provincial disaster management centres, organised agriculture such as NAFU, Agri SA, TAU SA and ARC, and relevant directorates within the department. The department frequently responds to hazards such as droughts, veld fires, floods and outbreaks of pests and disease, which includes the control of migratory pests such as locusts and quelea. It is also responsible for the control of the blackfly pest.

International cooperation

Regarding AGOA trade, South Africa was given an extension on the 31 December 2015 deadline to comply to AGOA requirements. An agreement was reached on 6 January 2016 on the relevant three meats, namely beef, pork and poultry.

The Proclamation made by the USA not to suspend agricultural imports, was extended to 15 March 2016. The agreement was eventually signed by the USA and is currently in force. The DAFF has issued permits for the first 16 250 t of poultry meat to 29 importers, of which nine are historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs).

Under AGOA, the agricultural sector has advantages for the exports of citrus, macadamia nuts, wine and other food products. However, implications of the concessions are that the EU and other partners may require equal treatment, which will require readjustment of the current agreements with trading partners.

Concerning sanitary and phyto-sanitary (SPS) issues, a protocol for highly pathogenic avian influenza was signed between the two countries in November 2015.

The DAFF has continued to open new markets. A notable achievement is the Indonesian government's recognition of the competence of South Africa's food safety control measures. This comes after a protracted negotiation process between the technical teams of the two countries, which eventually led to the opening of the Indonesian market to South African exporters.

The recognition was granted in respect of 15 commodities, including deciduous fruit, citrus, grapes and nuts. South African exporters will be allowed to use the port of Jakarta, the port of Tanjung Priok, which is closer to the main Jakarta market, therefore reducing transport costs and preventing quality loss.

In safeguarding biodiversity, the ARC has developed a new vaccine against Heartwater that will be made available to farmers after evaluation for safety and registration by the authorities.

The availability of a Heartwater vaccine will boost mohair production as Angora goats are the most susceptible to animal diseases. Development of the new vaccine will play a vital role in expanding the number of successful livestock farmers, resulting in reduced losses and increased revenue for farmers.

Regarding exotic fruit flies, the quarantine pest Bactrocera dorsalis was detected in all provinces except the Western, Eastern and Northern Cape and the Free State. No surveillance took place in North West. However, pest management interventions took place in KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape. The pest was also detected in new areas – eastern parts of the Eastern Cape and the Mpumalanga Highveld.

South Africa, under the leadership of DAFF, has acceded to the Indian Ocean Tuna Commission and the Commission for the Conservation of Southern Bluefin Tuna, thereby allowing the country greater influence in negotiating for increased tuna quota allocations and access.

The associated benefits of fully acceding to these regional fisheries management organisations (RFMOs) has resulted in the immediate increase in the allocation of Southern Bluefin Tuna from 40 t to 150 t. This has increased the sector's income from about R24 million to more than R100 million.

Weather and climate

Climate change

The agricultural sector in South Africa faces considerable impact from climate change, which affects the livelihoods of most people, especially those who are vulnerable to food insecurity.

South Africa responds to international obligations regarding climate mainly through the Department of Environmental Affairs, but the DAFF, as well as other departments such as those of mineral resources, energy, science and technology, and water affairs are also involved. The Climate Change Programme implemented by the DAFF includes programmes on raising awareness, policy development, the development of sector mitigation and adaptation plans, conducting vulnerability assessments countrywide, and identifying and coordinating climate-related research projects.

South Africa is a full member of the Global Research Alliance which, among other objectives, aims to enhance collaborative research into reducing agricultural emissions and increasing

support and resourcing for agricultural emissions research.

Early warning unit

The increasing risk of disaster is reduced by strengthening early warning systems and disseminating early warnings, as well as raising awareness through campaigns. This helps to build resilient farming communities.

The DAFF has, therefore, developed and implemented an Early Warning System (EWS) that disseminates extreme weather warnings to farming communities. The EWS communicates monthly advisories and daily extreme weather warnings, in support of reducing disaster risk.

The implementation of the EWS is continuously monitored and evaluated to identify and address gaps in the system. National Agro-Meteorological Committee meetings are held quarterly.

Sustainable resource management and use

The DAFF and the ARC's Institute for Soil, Climate and Water have developed an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The National Land Type Survey, available for use at a 1:250 000 scale, aims to assist and guide land-use planning and decision making at national level.

All available natural-resource spatial information and other required data sets, including the latest Spot 5 satellite imagery and agricultural information, are found on the internet-based Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (Agis). Using interactive web-based applications, Agis provides access to spatial information, industry-specific information and decision-support tools.

The Advanced Fire Information System (Afis) tracks all fire outbreaks in the SADC region through the use of Moderate-Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer satellite imagery. The information may be viewed at afis.meraka.org.za.

Soil degradation

Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in organic soil matter. Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-term fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. In addition, it is estimated that about 60% of the cropland area is moderately to severely acidic, and probably at least 15% is affected by subsoil acidity.

It is calculated that 1,5 million ha (around 1% of the land surface) have a high to extremely high erosion risk. More than 11 million ha (9%) are classified as having a moderate erosion risk, and 17% as very low to very low risk.

It is estimated that 25% of South Africa is covered by soils that are also potentially highly susceptible to wind erosion. These include the sandy soils in the western half of the "maize quadrangle" in the North West and the north-western Free State – the areas that produce 75% of the country's maize.

South African soils are also extremely prone to serious soil compaction, particularly under intensive mechanised cultivated agriculture, in both dry land and irrigated land. It is a problem throughout the country and much more widespread and serious than the global norm.

Large areas of South Africa are covered with soils prone to serious crusting (surface sealing). The extent resulting and awareness of it have increased sharply over the last two decades.

Human-induced soil acidification is a major problem. Its effect is severe since it impacts on the country's scarce, arable land, especially the limited high-potential agricultural land. Soil-fertility degradation is a concern.

In commercial agriculture, there has been nutrient capital-building of some nutrients, especially phosphorus and zinc. In some cases, phosphorus has built up to excessive levels, where it starts to reduce crop yields.

Genetically modified organisms

Genetic modification (GM) provides a way to meet the growing demand for food without placing greater pressure on scarce resources.

South Africa has commercialised three different GM crops, namely maize, cotton and soya beans.

South Africa is the ninth largest producer of genetically modified crops in the world and remains the pioneer for the adoption of genetically modified crops. This is aligned to Section 24 of the Constitution, which advocates for sustainable use of biodiversity

LandCare Programme

The National LandCare Programme is a government-supported community-based initiative, which is active throughout the country. Driven by both the public and private sectors through partnerships and cooperation, it seeks to:

- conserve natural resources
- use them in a sustainable way
- create a conservation ethic through education and awareness
- create jobs and address poverty by launching various natural resource rehabilitation, improvement and conservation projects.

Serious concerns about land and water degradation are identified in each province and specific projects address these issues. Projects have been implemented in all nine provinces through the LandCare Conditional Grant, whereby ring-fenced funding is transferred to provinces, in terms of the Yearly Division of Revenue.

Four subprogrammes, namely WaterCare, VeldCare, SoilCare and JuniorCare, are all part of the LandCare Programme.

The LandCare Programme is aligned with Government's broader objective of job creation. The temporary jobs created under the programme are funded through the EPWP and the LandCare Programme adheres to the target of 55% women, 40% youth and 2% people with disabilities as specified by the EPWP.

Funding for these projects is transferred quarterly to the respective provincial departments as implementing agents, as conditional grants under the Division of Revenue Act (DORA). Assessment and reporting requirements are specified in DORA, as well as by the EPWP. The provincial departments use the reporting tools provided by the EPWP to report on the number of jobs created.

Additional monthly, quarterly and annual reports are forwarded by the provincial departments to DAFF to monitor performance and the impact of the programme on the state of the natural agricultural resources.

WaterCare

WaterCare promotes the development of techniques for water-resource management and encourages opportunities for training in this field.

The rehabilitation of irrigation schemes increases water supply and household food security. Irrigated agriculture is by far the biggest single user of run-off water in South Africa and has substantial potential to make a significant socio-economic and social impact on rural society. It contributes more than 30% of the gross value of the country's crop production.

The DAFF has embarked on a process to rehabilitate irrigation schemes that have the potential to increase food production, eradicate poverty, create jobs and contribute to economic growth.

About 90% of the country's fruit, vegetables and wine are produced under irrigation.

VeldCare

This programme promotes best grazing systems and erosion-prevention practices to improve production.

It develops and maintains agricultural activities in accordance with the principles of ecologically sustainable development.

Economic and social development opportunities are realised by improving grazing areas and maintaining viable grazing areas throughout rural communities.

SoilCare

The Conservation Agriculture (CA) approach has encouraged the proactive and sustainable use of agricultural natural resources. CA aims to ensure the effective and sustainable use and management of natural resources through minimum disturbance of the soil.

CA integrates the management of soil, water and biological resources, to maintain and enhance land productivity and reduce the level of risk.

It further aims to protect the potential of natural resources, prevent soil and water degradation and ensure economic viability with a reduction in vulnerability to the effects of climate change.

The result of these practices will ensure continued household and national food security through crop production, while conserving the environment. CA is characterised by three principles:

- minimum mechanical soil disturbance (minimum tillage)
- permanent organic soil cover, particularly through available crop residue
- diversified crop-rotation practices.

Junior LandCare

The objectives of Junior LandCare are to empower previously disadvantaged youth by providing training in facilitation and leadership skills.

This includes promoting food security at home and in schools, enhancing awareness of sustainable agriculture and stimulating the formation of youth clubs and projects that promote other components of LandCare.

Junior LandCare addresses the needs of young people in an integrated way and involves interdisciplinary approaches. This is done for youth both in and out of school.

Smallholder development

In support of food security, the DAFF has persistently strengthened its support for smallholder producers and continues to do so with the involvement of both internal and external partners.

Support to smallholder producers is being synchronised through the department's coordinated Programme Management Unit, which comprises all DAFF technical support units.

The Programme Management Unit has been established to reinforce smallholder support activities of the already existing Smallholder Development Working Group, which is constituted by other national government departments, the ARC and the provincial departments of agriculture. Smallholder access to markets is pursued and engagements with institutions such as the World Food Programme and the Food and Agriculture Organisation for such market opportunities are at an advanced stage.

A web-based platform of the supported small-holder producers is being developed to ensure proper data and updates on all smallholder activities. The implementation of the approved Strategic Plan for Smallholder Support is on track with support funding received from the Department of Trade and Industry's Employment Creation Fund.

Small-scale sugar cane farmers in the Nkomazi area of Mpumalanga are to benefit significantly from Government's Jobs Fund and are expected to double their production and create 1 544 new and sustainable jobs.

The farms should, over a five-year period, increase production from 450 000 t of cane to 850 000 t per year.

The fund is targeted at established companies with a good track record and which plan to expand existing programmes or pilot innovative approaches to employment creation, with a special focus on opportunities for young people.

Akwandze Agricultural Finance Ltd, through funding provided by the Jobs Fund, is addressing this need by ensuring these farmers can get adequate, cost-effective and appropriate financing with favourable terms.

Akwandze is also providing a package of associated farmer support initiatives such as on-site service back-up, training and capacity building.

According to the South Africa Sugar Association, the number of small-scale sugar growers declined by 33% between 2005 and 2011. The productivity of small-scale farmers has also been declining. The tonnage in sugar produced by small-scale farmers has dropped from 850 000 at its peak to 450 000 t per year.

Akwandze is also supporting a cooperative of 216 small-scale farmers called Siboshwa to expand their growing area of 83 ha by 20 ha, developing their irrigation infrastructure and ensuring everything is in place to maintain it according to manufacturer specifications. This should allow them to produce another 2 000 t of cane.

Akwandze has matched a grant of R50 million from the Jobs Fund with a further R70 million and will recapitalise irrigation infrastructure for 1 281 small-scale growers, which will help to rehabilitate 10 000 ha of sugar cane land.

Akwandze will also extend its lending capacity to the growers for replanting, fertiliser, weeding and irrigation costs. The result should be to double the total annual tonnage of sugar cane

produced by small-scale growers in Nkomazi.

It is anticipated that the Akwandze Project will create 1 544 new full-time jobs and increase turnover for these small-scale growers.

The agricultural, forestry and fisheries sectors have the best multiplier effect for every rand invested in terms of employment, exports, fiscal revenue and economic output.

With all conditions favourable, the agriculture and agro-processing value chain has the potential to increase the number of smallholders from 171 670 in 2013 to 471 670 in 2019; increase the value added of the sectors from R42,5 billion in 2012 to R48,9 billion in 2019 (or 2% real growth per year); real increase in the value of net exports from an annual average of R5,1 billion in 2012 to R5,8 billion in 2019 (or 2% real growth per year); decrease in the value of diesel, fertiliser and machinery imports from an annual average of R9,6 billion in 2012 to R7,4 billion in 2019 (or 3% real decline per year) and increase the number of jobs in the sector from 660 000 in 2012 to a potential one million jobs by 2030.

The intensification of the RAAVC will focus on the following five crucial areas, namely the implementation of the Agri-parks — expanding infrastructure support to 44 Agri-hubs and 88 farmer production support units; implementing APAP with special focus on the production of high value crops where R3,2 billion will be spent on projects and 11 082 jobs created; collaborating with private sector partners to leverage new investments; increasing market access for smallholders through the implementation of programmes such as SA-GAP and increasing intra-African trade and other global trade opportunities and continued implementation of the Aquaculture Lab to strive towards achieving total production of 8 100 t, 3 200 jobs and an additional R500 million investment.

Public entities, the ARC and the NAMC in particular, have been actively involved in the development of APAP/RAAVC over the past two financial years. The research and databases from the ARC's Soil Testing Laboratories was used in its spatial analysis and maps to determine which commodities can be produced in which places.

These maps have been overlaid with the mapping by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform following their land audit.

The NAMC also supported APAP/RAAVC with economic analysis and their expertise in value chain mapping. The NAMC is also the coordinator for Strategic Infrastructure Project 11, which pertains to agrologistics and rural infrastructure.

The PPECB has committed to expand the number of smallholder farmers with South African Good Agricultural Practice (SA-GAP) certification. The organisation is also working with the OBP to secure adequate funding to ramp up vaccine production.

In March 2017, the Eastern Cape government announced that small-scale farmers were to benefit from the school nutrition programme by supplying fresh produce to their local schools.

The DAFF was working on a local farmer development programme that seeks to give local farmers an opportunity to directly provide schools in their areas with fresh produce.

The pilot would be in one circuit per district to test the inclusion of local fresh food producers in the school nutrition programme. The benefits of this would be increased access to healthier food for school learners through supporting local food producers who would benefit financially from this new market.

The DAFF engages service providers who are given contracts to supply hot meals to schools on a daily basis. The school nutrition programme in the Eastern Cape has in the past been marred by inflation of prices by rogue service providers.

MEC Makapula said the school nutrition programme was increasing learner enrolment and retention at schools in the province. The programme was allocated R1,1 billion rand for 2017.

Extension and advisory services

The National Policy on Extension and Advisory Services for the agricultural, forestry and fisheries sectors recognises and calls for the involvement of a wide array of stakeholders involved in the delivery of extension and advisory services through a pluralistic and integrated approach.

Such an approach is expected to ensure that extension and advisory services benefit from the distributed technical expertise, financial capital and other resources located across the stakeholder base. The DAFF targets to deploy 20 extension practitioners to commodity organisations per financial year.

The intention is to deploy 100 extension practitioners by 2019/20, to ensure that extension practitioners acquire skills and gain experience of a specific commodity value chain.

Training

The agricultural sector boasts state-of-the-art training and research facilities.

At grassroots level, South Africa has a number of regular schools offering a range of agricultural subjects and specialised agricultural high schools such as Bekker High School in North West, Harry Oppenheimer Agricultural High School in Limpopo and Boland Agricultural High School in the Western Cape.

Prospective farmers and technicians are trained at the country's colleges of agriculture such as Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute in the Eastern Cape, Cedara College of Agriculture in KwaZulu-Natal and Madzivhandila College of Agriculture in Limpopo.

Universities (including those with and without designated faculties of agriculture) offer advanced degree courses and Bachelor of Technology degrees. Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

This training potential is coupled with productive and robust research capacity in terms of scientists and researchers based at various organisations who are world leaders in their respective fields of agricultural research.

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations, as well as some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms, conduct agricultural research.

Research and innovation

It is only through proper research that the country can be able to increase productivity, come up with disease resistant plants and animals, and alleviate the impact of climate change.

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations, as well as some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development

and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms, conduct agricultural research.

Through the Agricultural Science, Technology and Innovation Activities Coordination Committee, the department engages the Department of Science and Technology on joint issues of national importance within the National System of Innovation.

The research unit is also involved in the development and implementation of national research policies and strategies, such as the National Agricultural Research and Development Strategy. This encompasses the national priority-setting process, developing guidelines, administering a national research and technology fund and overall monitoring and evaluation.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on research and development while the Government Agricultural Research and Development Action Group provide a platform for Government and State-owned entities to plan research and technology development within the national agricultural research system.

The NARF facilitates consensus and makes recommendations to Government on the coordination of research, development and transfer of technology to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability.

In the last 18 months, the ARC has identified and provided scientific solutions to farmers for crop pests and diseases such as tomato leaf miner, Fall Armyworm, Mirafiori lettuce big vein disease and false codling moth among others.

Solutions provided have enabled the majority of farmers, commercial and smallholder, to achieve the record yields. Through the use of ARC cultivars, the fruit canning industry provides sustainable income to more than 20 000 direct employees and generates more than R2,5 billion per annum.

Policy

The Directorate: Policy Research Support in the DAFF coordinates all agricultural research and development activities. The mandate of the Policy Research Support on policies extends beyond policies and strategies in research but covers the entire sector related policies.

The Policy Research Support Unit is responsible for ensuring that available sector policies are aligned to government protocols, which is conducted by subjecting available policies to the objectives of the main government policies, such as the NDP, to ensure that sector policies address Government's priorities.

The unit is also responsible for conducting the review of sector policies for alignment with the NDP.

Animal identification

Under the Animal Identification Act, 2002 (Act 6 of 2002) the Minister declares animals for compulsory identification. The national register is available to the SAPS through the State Information Technology Agency to help it trace individual animals to their owners.

However, this can only be implemented successfully if all cattle, goats, pigs and sheep are marked in accordance with the Act.

Regulation services

Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (SAPCA) is the official representative of the pest, termite and woodborer-control industries. All SAPCA-qualified inspectors have to register with the DAFF.

South Africa regularly liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

To respond comprehensively to the management of regulated plant pests and diseases, the department, in close collaboration with the South African fruit industries, has developed an early warning surveillance programme for the quarantine of fruit flies. The technical forum continues to identify, prioritise and manage quarantine pest risks such as the African invader fruit fly.

In the global trade of food and food products, veterinary public health and food safety aspects in relation to animal products received increasing attention.

Food security

To address the challenges of households vulnerable to poverty, inequality, unemployment and persons with inadequate or severely inadequate access to food, the department has prioritised food and nutrition security, including agrarian transformation.

In 2013, the South African Cabinet approved the National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security, the Household Food and Nutrition Security Strategy and the Fetsa Tlala Integrated Food Production Initiative. These policy frameworks are intended to streamline, harmonise and integrate the diverse food and nutrition security interventions in South Africa.

The strategic objective of the National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security is to ensure the availability, accessibility and affordability of safe and nutritious food at national and household levels.

The National Food and Nutrition Security Plan (NFNSP 2017 – 2022) embodies a collective response of government to the challenges of food insecurity and malnutrition in the country. It reflects a common vision across government departments and entails a unified set of national goals and objectives, indicators and targets for monitoring progress, as well as a common budget for implementation of activities.

It enables the country to address problems such as hunger, malnutrition and micronutrient deficiencies that affect physical growth and cognitive development, especially among children, as directed by the NDP 2030.

The goal of the NFNSP is to implement a priority set of actions and establish the necessary institutional architecture to lead, coordinate, budget and monitor the implementation of these actions to deliver significant improvements in food and nutrition status by 2030.

The NFNSP actions are guided by six strategic objectives which were derived from a consultative process aimed at establishing a governance and leadership system; to review current policies and strategies; reform the current duplicated and uncoordinated delivery of food and nutrition security (FNS) interventions and to ensure the implementation of strategic and comprehensive FNS initiatives in a coordinated manner.

It also took into account the recommendations from Cabinet; the Policy on Food and Nutrition Security, and the Diagnostic/ Implementation Evaluation of Nutrition Interventions for Children from Conception to Age 5 (2014), which compared South Africa to Brazil, Colombia, Malaysia, Malawi and Mozambique.

The department also worked with the private sector to develop the APAP, which will bring one million ha of underused land into full production over the next three years.

Through APAP/RAAVC, the department aims to bring more smallholders into the mainstream as envisaged in the NDP. However, the effective participation of the previously excluded black majority in agriculture and food production will only occur meaningfully, when they have access to land and the means to work it.

An inclusive and scientific process will be used to assess the situation in terms of land capability for different commodities and in different localities, so as to inform land acquisition and allocation for different categories of producers across the country.

Although the country can maintain the ability under normal weather conditions to meet national food requirements, more than 14 million citizens have insufficient access to food, are vulnerable to hunger and are food insecure. To reduce hunger and ensure that good nutrition is attained, the DAFF will focus on the promotion and empowerment of smallholder producers.

These producers are supported in various ways, among others, by providing production inputs, training and advisory services, as well as access to finance and credit through MAFISA, CASP and Ilima/Letsema. These interventions have increased their competitive edge towards becoming sustainable producers to provide products to markets. Through the Fetsa Tlala initiative, the department's strategic objective is to use one million ha of land in rural areas for the production of crops.

To ensure mechanisation support to smallholder producers, the National Mechanisation Policy creates a favourable regulatory environment in which Government will continue to make agricultural machinery such as tractors available to smallholder producers to ensure the optimal production of food.

An innovation of which the department is particularly proud is the drought tolerant maize cultivar which was launched by the ARC in 2014. Results indicate that farmers who planted the new maize cultivar experienced on average 50% increased yields when compared to conventional varieties available on the market. The department now has to ensure that sufficient seed is available for farmers.

The final small-scale fisheries regulations were gazetted on 8 March 2016, along with the Marine Living Resources Amendment Act signed by the President. These now provide the legal mechanism for the implementation of the small-scale fisheries policy. These reforms give legal recognition to small-scale fishers and will promote the transformation of the subsector to assist fishing communities living along the coastal areas in creating sustainable livelihoods, generating income and creating jobs.

Aquaculture has been given a boost through its inclusion in the Oceans Economy Operation Phakisa. Through Operation Phakisa and the detailed plans on the development of 24 marine and inland aquaculture projects, which are being implemented, the department expects to increase production from the current 4 000 t to 20 000 t per year, increase the current value of the subsector from R400 million to R6 billion per year and create up to 210 000 sector jobs by 2030.

Fetsa Tlala Food Production Initiative

The Fetsa Tlala Food Production Initiative mobilised smallholder producers to increase production and to access export market opportunities through, for example, the World Food Programme.

Initially, the initiative sought to put one million ha of underutilised agricultural land in communal areas and land reform farms back in production.

The department will accelerate support programmes and continue to forge partnerships with the private sector and other relevant stakeholders to claw back on the upward trajectory for Fetsa Tlala for the coming production seasons.

Work on a Government-led food procurement model, linked to the smallholder producers, is currently under way. This is one of the interventions by Government to sustain the economic viability of this vulnerable agricultural sector.

Through this initiative, Government will reprioritise its procurement on food to create markets for subsistence and smallholder producers in rural, urban and peri-urban areas.

Sector interventions to assist smallholder producers with technical, infrastructure and financial support will continue to be rolled out. These include the CASP and the Ilima/Letsema and LandCare programmes.

Female Entrepreneur Awards

Top female farmers were recognised during the DAFF's prestigious Female Entrepreneur Awards ceremony in Mpumalanga in August 2017. The annual ceremony continues to pay tribute to the efforts and contribution by women, young females and women with disabilities for the roles they play towards ensuring food security, poverty alleviation, job creation and economic growth in the sector. The awards were held under the theme "Proclaiming progress towards women's empowerment.''

Kedidimetse Rakgoale from North West was crowned the overall winner of the night. She also received an award in the Top Entrepreneur Commercial category. Rakgoale produces broiler chickens at the Selame Poultry farm and has created 14 permanent jobs.

Other awards presented on the night were:

- Best Female Worker: Zona Nzimande from the Eastern Cape
- Best Subsistence Producer: Kobanku Msibi from the Free State Province
- Top Entrepreneur – Smallholder: Julia Madihlaba from Limpopo.
- Top Entrepreneur – Processing and the Ministerial Award for Young Female Entrepreneur: Berene Damons from Western Cape.

The Western Cape also walked away with a third award for Top Entrepreneur: Export Markets which was handed to Carmelita Kelly – the first black person to study and qualify as a wine maker in South Africa (in 1995).

A second Ministerial Award for Disabled Female Entrepreneur went to Busisiwe Nyathi from Mpumalanga.

Winners walked away with prize money and tablets loaded with the Agrisuite app to help them with farming information and fertilisers.

Regional and international cooperation and trade

Regional cooperation

South Africa has strong and mutually dependent economic links

with countries in the southern African region through the SADC and the SACU.

As contribution to the African regional development, the DAFF continues to implement South Africa's foreign policy objectives, through the facilitation of SADC and AU engagements and implementation of the South-South Cooperation.

The International Relations Strategy is an instrument put into place to interact with various sector stakeholders at regional and international level in support of producers to access international markets.

Regional trade

South Africa, as a member of SACU and a signatory of the SADC Treaty, is committed to sharing its objectives with other nations in the region. SACU opened its markets to the countries of the SADC region by implementing its tariff reduction commitments under the SADC Trade Protocol.

The signatories to the SADC Trade Protocol are: Botswana, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, the Seychelles, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. Angola and the Democratic Republic of the Congo are still in the process of acceding to the protocol.

The first objective of the trade protocol is to remove both tariff and non-tariff barriers to trade between SADC countries.

The SADC has set up an electronic reporting system for non-tariff barriers, in which the DAFF is involved as a contact point to receive traders' complaints.

South Africa, as part of the SACU and SADC, is in the process with negotiating with the Common Market for Southern and Eastern Africa and the East African Community for the Tripartite Free Trade Area Agreement.

Forestry

The DAFF is the custodian of South Africa's forest resources, which cover over 38 million ha (about 31,1%) of the country's land surface area.

The forestry sector employs around 158 400 workers with the forest sub-sector providing about 60 200 direct jobs and 28 000 indirect jobs. Forestry provides livelihood support to 692 000 people of the country's rural population. The pulp and paper industry provides about 13 200 direct and 10 800 indirect employment opportunities.

Some 20 000 direct workers are employed and 8 000 indirect in sawmilling, and 6 000 in the timber-board and 2 200 in the mining timber industries, while a further 10 000 workers are employed in miscellaneous jobs in forestry.

In terms of land use, the afforested area is about 1,22 million ha or about 1,0% of the total South African land area of 122,3 million ha. The forest sector (forestry and forest products) contributes about 0,91% to the GDP, a considerable decline from the usual average of 1,2% to the GDP in the previous few years. In terms of regional GDP, forestry in KwaZulu-Natal contributes 3,4%; Mpumalanga 3,1%; the Eastern Cape 0,9%; Limpopo 0,7% and Western Cape about 0.2%.

The DAFF contributes to eradicating poverty through the Forestry Livelihoods Programme. Firewood, construction poles, medicinal plants and edible fruit are all critical to the livelihoods of the rural poor.

The department develops human resources through forestry-sector skills development initiatives and promotes employment through commercial forestry activities such as forestation and downstream activities. The integration of forestry programmes into provincial and municipal development plans assist with the United Nations' Plant a Million Trees Campaign.

The DAFF is pursuing a target of 10 000 ha of net new afforestation a year. However, the target has not been met due to various reasons that include challenges with acquisition of water use licences for afforestation and the need to conduct environmental impact assessments since forestry is classified as a stream flow reduction activity in terms of environmental law. There are new efforts to review the target. However, it has emerged recently that afforestation on areas issued with planting licences has been slow due to various reasons.

The focus will remain on encouraging cooperatives, simplifying and streamlining the regulatory environment, training and extension, supporting the implementation of rural credit and offering incentives for new entrants.

In terms of the economic growth and development that forestry offers, the DAFF is working closely with other government structures in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal to fast-track the afforestation licensing process.

In the Eastern Cape, the DAFF and the Dti have recently funded the processes of conducting environmental impact assessments – a prerequisite preceding any afforestation activity.

Afforestation is taking place in rural areas where there are few other viable opportunities for job creation and economic activity.

The development of these additional raw material resources will attract greater processing capacity in the form of sawmills, board mills, chipping plants and treatment plants, which will lead to broad economic growth. An additional R500 million a year could be generated from such plantations.

The forestry programme also includes greening and tree-planting projects. The programme prioritises work on integrated fire management and the Working on Fire Programme and fire protection associations registered in terms of the fire law are playing a crucial role in this regard. The department encourages the establishment and registration of fire-protection associations (FPAs), which are community-based organisations established in terms of the National Veld and Forest Fire Act of 1998.

Although forestry contributes a modest 0,6% to the GDP, it supports manufacturing subsectors such as pulp, paper and cellulose manufacture, sawmilling, pole treating, panel and fibre board manufacturing, as well as mining timber, tannin extract (used in leather tanning) and charcoal manufacture.

Of the total land area of 122,3 million ha in South Africa, only 1% or 1,221 million ha is used for forestry.

In 2016, plantation area per province, as a percentage of the total plantation area in the country was as follows: 40,6% in Mpumalanga, 39,9% in KwaZulu-Natal, 11,6% in the Eastern Cape, 4,3% in Limpopo and 3,6% in the Western Cape. The production of roundwood in the same year was 16,442 million m3 (14,222 million tons), while the value of sales from plantations amounted to R9,0 billion. This production was, in turn, processed by the forest products Industry into primary processed products valued at R25,5 billion in 2015/16.

An analysis of the trends of commercial forestry ha planted by tree species and primary use indicates that, firstly, there has been a marked decline in new afforestation since the mid-1990s, secondly there has been a shift away from softwood to

hardwood and thirdly, an increase in plantations for pulpwood purposes as compared to the ha for sawlogs and mining timber. Of upmost importance is that the total area of plantations has declined by almost 300 000 ha (or 20%) from its peak of 1,518 million ha in 1996/97 to 1,221million ha in 2015/16.

Underlying these trends are various factors, but in particular the tighter regulatory framework governing water usage – forestry is regarded as a "stream flow reduction activity", therefore, new water use licences are required to expand the area under plantations. Other factors include the removal of large areas within riparian zones to comply with certification and water legislation requirements, the removal of over 50 000 ha in terms of the State's "exit strategy" and the conversion of plantations to more profitable crops such as macadamia nuts and avocados.

The forest products industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country. Paper and paper board, wood pulp, wood and articles of wood and charcoal were the leading export products and constituted 94% of total forestry products. The forest sector continues to generate substantial net trade surpluses. In 2016 this net trade surplus amounted to R9,3 billion with export values amounting to R29,1 billion as opposed to forest product imports of R19,8 billion.

Production from plantations has been declining in recent years – from a peak of 22,8 m m3 (19,6 m tons) in 2005/06 to 16,4 m m3 (14,2 m tons) in 2015/16.

One subsector that has already been affected by the decline in timber supply is sawmilling, with the number of sawmills decreasing in number over the past decade by 27 (or 26%) - from 104 in 2004/05 to 77 in 2015/16.

While it is clear that the private sector does have good management capacity and has also ushered in efficiencies across the value chain, the State must still play a role to ensure adequate levels of investment in long-rotation sawlog plantations as the State produces sawlogs for the private sector to process. The State's role to forestry has, however, declined substantially since the partial privation of SAFCOL through the leasing out of most of its plantation assets to the private sector. SAFCOL, through KLF, is nevertheless an important player in the Industry and continues to play a role in providing the private sector sawmilling sector with sawlogs.

Mpumalanga has the highest investment in plantations at R17,9 billion (41,8%) followed by KwaZulu-Natal with R15,4 billion (35,8%), the Eastern Cape at R5,7 billion (13,3%), Limpopo R2,0 billion (4,7%) and the Western Cape at R1,9 billion (4,4%).

The DAFF manages approximately 64 000 ha of plantations categorised into Category B and C. These plantations have vast areas suitable for planting but are currently unplanted. The department intends to revitalise the plantations, which will create jobs for people in the surrounding communities. South Africa is currently experiencing a shortage of timber and is constrained to meet the national demand for saw log timber. Approximately 30 000 ha of currently fallow areas, could be a strategic contribution to timber supply in order to meet needs along the value chain.

The forestry sector offers long-term investment opportunities for rural economic development. Increased production and productivity in prioritised areas will be ensured by sustainable forest management through the replanting of 1 725 hectares in temporary unplanted areas; certification of one plantation for the Forestry Stewardship Council; and the implementation of the Agro-forestry Strategy.

In the 2017/18 financial year, 16 000 hectares of agricultural land and 300 hectares of state indigenous forests and woodlands are expected to be restored through rehabilitation, including fencing, controlling of weeds and alien invasive species, veld reclamation, clearing of alien invasive plants, tree planting, soil conservation works and natural regeneration.

Regarding integrated fire management, the DAFF has facilitated the registration of Fire Protection Associations (FPAs) in high-risk areas, and has also embarked on the process of the consolidation of non-viable FPAs and alignment of FPAs with municipal boundaries to ensure the effective utilisation of limited resources.

Furthermore, 8 351 ha have been replanted within the Jobs Fund/DAFF Rehabilitation Programme. Sustainable management of natural resources, such as land, soil, water and climate systems is critical for the sustainable use of resources and food security. To address the loss of prime agricultural land to other sectors, the department has developed and formulated the Preservation and Development of Agricultural Land Framework.

Legislation

The National Forests Act of 1998 and the Forestry Laws Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 35 of 2005), reflect the vision for the future of forestry in South Africa. They emphasise sustainable forest management, and explain how people and communities can use forests without destroying them. The Acts set out rules for protecting indigenous forests, and ensure that the public has reasonable access to state-forest land for recreational, cultural, spiritual and educational purposes.

South Africa is richly endowed with more than 1 700 tree and shrub species. Some are threatened, and 47 species are protected under the Act.

Protected trees may not be cut down, damaged, destroyed or possessed, collected, removed, transported, exported, purchased, sold, donated or in any other way acquired or disposed of except under a licence granted by the Minister or in terms of an exemption. In terms of the National Forests Act of 1998, all natural forests are protected. In 2014, the National Forests Act of 1998 was ammended to ensure ease of implementation.

The National Veld and Forest Fire Act of 1998 and the National Veld and Forest Fire Laws Amendment, 2001 (Act 12 of 2001), are the primary legislation regulating veldfire management in the country.

The purpose of these Acts is to prevent and combat veld, forest and mountain fires. The legislation provides a variety of institutions, methods and practices for achieving the purpose. The Acts place an individual duty on every landowner where there is a risk of fire to take certain minimum precautions to prevent and combat fires. It also introduces the concept of voluntary FPAs, which may be formed by landowners for purposes of veldfire management in a specific area. The Act provides for FPAs for two reasons:

- Veldfires often become emergencies because they threaten life and assets on the property where they have started, or when they spread, or threaten to spread, beyond the

boundaries of any one property,
- Require co-operation to manage the conditions that determine their occurrence, to prevent and control veldfires, and to use controlled burning for environmental and other purposes.

Industry and exports

The forestry industry was a net exporter of over R9,2 billion worth of goods in 2016. The forest products industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country, having contributed 2,6% to total exports and 1,8% to total imports in 2016.

The value of forest product exports grew by 52,4% between 2013 and 2016, from R19,0 billion to R29,0 billion. In 2016, pulp products were the most important exports after recording R12,2 billion, followed by paper and solid wood products with R8,8 billion and R6,9 billion respectively.

Pulp products also reported the largest trade surplus in history during 2016 of R10,7billion, up by 13,1% from previous year. Paper products recorded a deficit of R4,2 billion during the same year. South Africa's primary forestry sector GDP was valued at R8,9 billion in 2016 from R10,0 billion in 2015.

On the other hand, the sales of timber increased from 8,9 million to 9,0 million m3/tons between 2015 and 2016. The book value of the commercial forestry sector was R21,8 in 2016. Capital investment in the industry amounted to an estimated R42,9 billion in 2016.

Role players

National Forest Advisory Council (NFAC)

The function of the NFAC is to advise the Minister on any matter related to forestry in South Africa. The functions of the CSFM are to advise: the council, the cepartment, and the Minister on all aspects of sustainable forest management in the country; the department and the Minister on the administration of criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management; and the department on convening forum for interested persons to participate in the formulation of criteria, indicators and standards.

The functions of the CFA are to advise the Minister on promoting the granting and exercise of access to forests; promoting education on the sustainable management and use of forests, and the use of the National Forest Recreation and Access Trust funds.[

South African Forestry Company Limited (SAFCOL)

SAFCOL is Government's forestry company, conducting timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities, both domestically and internationally.

Through its operations, it employs about 5 000 people through direct and indirect employment and by extension, are responsible for about 20 000 lives in communities adjacent to its operations.

It subscribes to the Forest Sector Charter and plays a leading role in transformation within the industry. With the focus on communities adjacent to its plantations and specifically the youth in those communities, it makes a difference in the physical circumstances and networking in the communities.

The structured approach of community partnerships was strengthened, with the focus on implementing needs-driven development and making a positive impact in community members' lives.

Of special note is the launch of the SAFCOL-sponsored Forestry Chair at the University of Pretoria, which is an opportunity for students who wish to further their studies in forestry-related fields.

Forestry South Africa

Forestry South Africa (FSA) was formed in 2002 through the amalgamation of the erstwhile Forestry Owners Association and the South African Timber Growers Association.

FSA represents the interests of its members in particular and the promotion and wellbeing of the South African commercial Forestry Industry in general. Although voluntary in its nature, FSA's membership includes all 11 corporate timber companies, including their subsidiaries, operating in South Africa, 1 100 commercial timber farmers and over 20 000 small-scale black timber growers. This membership represents over 90% of the industry as a whole and virtually all the private sector involved in the industry. Due to this representivity, FSA is viewed by both government and the private sector as the body which represents the South African Forestry Industry.

FSA is involved in a host of areas such as research, education and training, water and environmental affairs, forest protection, bio-energy, business development and transport.

Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)

The FTFA is the sub-Saharan African partner of Global ReLeaf, an international greening organisation.

The FTFA's mission is to contribute to healthier living, especially in disadvantaged communities, through environmental awareness and greening programmes. The FTFA was started in 1990 to address sustainable development through greening, climate change action, sustainable natural resource management and food-security programmes.

The FTFA works in partnership with Government, the private and public sectors and civil society. Its goal is to provide trees to as many underserved communities as possible, with the help of sponsors and certificate programmes.

The FTFA; the departments of water affairs and of agriculture, forestry and fisheries; and the Institute of Environment and Recreation Management, manage the Urban Greening Fund.

It is a collective fund that supports partnerships aimed at sustainable development through tree planting, parks, food-gardening projects and environmental education.

Organisations, companies and individuals can contribute to the fund to help disadvantaged South Africans create a greener, healthier and more secure life.

Research and training

South Africa has world-class forestry research infrastructure and personnel, with almost 2% of the forestry industry's turnover (private and public sectors) devoted to research. The forest research function within the department has been coordinating a number of research projects focusing on sustainable management of forest resources. These include:
- the monitoring and evaluation of bark-harvesting techniques used for two indigenous tree species in the Letaba State Forest
- sustainable harvesting of plants used for medicinal purposes
- the sustainable use of monkey rope (Secamone alpini) by

local subsistence farmers
- ex situ and in situ conservation of the critically endangered Protea roupelliae sbsp. hamiltonii
- conservation of the co-occurring endangered Leucospermum gerrardii within the Dr Hamilton Nature Reserve.

The major institutes servicing the research needs of the industry are the Institute of Commercial Forestry Research in Pietermaritzburg, the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnology Institute, and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research in Pretoria. The South African National Biodiversity Institute also plays an important role, in terms of species protection.

The faculties of agricultural and forestry sciences at the universities of Stellenbosch, KwaZulu-Natal and Venda offer forestry degrees. The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (George Saasveld Campus) offers diplomas and limited degree courses in forestry disciplines.

The Natal University of Technology offers a diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology, and the Fort Cox College of Agriculture and Forestry offers a diploma in Social Forestry.

Skills training is provided by a number of industry-sponsored and in-house training centres. Industry-sponsored bursaries are available, as are company-sponsored bursaries for study at these institutions.

The Fibre Processing and Manufacturing (FPM) Sector Education and Training Authority (SETA), is responsible for ensuring that the training undertaken by the industry meets certain quality standards.

The department, together with the FPM Seta, offers study bursaries in forestry-related fields.

Programmes and initiatives

Participative forestry

The department supports the establishment of community projects through regional forestry staff. An estimated R2 million has already been spent from the Community Facilitation Fund to support the establishment of projects on the ground. Projects include the establishment of medicinal plant nurseries, in partnership with various stakeholders, and beekeeping, in partnership with the ARC.

In addition to producing honey, beekeepers play a critical role in agriculture, contributing to crop pollination and the development of products worth billions of rand.

The honey industry in South Africa has an average annual turnover of R3,2 billion and produces some 2 000 t a year. Government's investment in KwaZulu-Natal aims to increase national production to 100 000 t and employ over 100 000 people.

National Arbor Week

South Africa celebrates Arbor Week from 1 – 7 September annually. The DAFF, as the custodian of forestry in South Africa, is responsible for the campaign.

Arbor Week 2017 was celebrated under the theme; "Forests and Water". The theme was retained from the 2016 theme because South Africa had not escaped the effects of drought.

For Arbor Week 2018, trees will be planted using trained Community-based Educators to ensure that departmental programmes have economic spin-offs for the communities. The department manages seven state nurseries and five of these in Ulundi, Bloemhof, Mahikeng, Upington and Qwaqwa will be revitalised in 2017/18. As part of the management of the 60 000 ha of state plantations, the department will plant 550 ha.

Arbor Week is an opportune time to urge all South Africans to plant indigenous trees as a practical and symbolic gesture of sustainable environmental management.

The primary purpose of the campaign is to spread and herald the importance of protection, conservation and preservation of the country's green heritage, namely forests, indigenous trees and related green resources. The secondary aim is to educate, change attitudes and modify the general behaviour of the South African public in a way and a manner they perceive and relate to the green heritage.

Greening refers to an integrated approach to the planting, care and management of all vegetation in urban and rural areas, to secure multiple benefits for communities.

Greening in the South African context takes place in towns, townships and informal settlements, specifically because in the past the latter mentioned areas were disadvantaged in terms of planning for parks as well as tree planting in streets and open spaces.

To promote greening, especially the planting of indigenous trees whose occurrence has become scarce, the concept of the trees of the year was born some years ago. There are two selected Trees of the Year comprising of a rare and common species. The common tree of the year for 2018 is P. elongatus, P. falcatus, P. henkelii, P. latifolius; Common name: yellow woods and Boscia albitrunca; Common names: Shepherd's tree) which will be planted during the 2018 Arbor Week Campaign.

Champion Tree Project

The purpose of the Champion Tree Project is to identify and protect trees that are of national importance and worthy of special protection, due to their remarkable size, age, aesthetic, cultural, historic or tourism value. Similar projects have been established in several other countries, but this is the first of its kind in Africa.

Nomination forms with guidelines for the nomination process are available from the DAFF.

Every nomination cycle starts on 1 August each year, and ends on 31 July the following year.

Eighty Six trees and groups of trees have been declared by the department as Champion Trees, based on criteria such as size, age and historical value. These trees are all protected under the National Forests Act of 1998. They include the Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route, the Post Office milkwood tree of Mossel Bay, the Sagole baobab in Limpopo and camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate in the Western Cape three centuries ago. The Sagole baobab has the second biggest trunk in the world, while a stand of saligna gum trees planted in 1906 near Tzaneen in Limpopo are the tallest trees in Africa.

A few Champion Trees have died since the launch of the project, including the Platland Baobab in Limpopo province, which collapsed in 2017. At Cape Town in the Western Cape, the Tokai Arboretum was damaged by fire, and extensive work had to be undertaken by arborists to fell dead trees and prune or treat others.

The Adopt a Champion Tree project initiated by Aurecon assisted with the development of a visitor's site to a Champion tree in the Eastern Cape, and the treatment of a diseased Champion oak tree in Gauteng. Through the DAFF-Aurecon

partnership, a number of information boards have been erected, and launch events have been held at some newly proclaimed trees, such as the Whisper Tree in Albertinia, Western Cape.

The oldest planted tree in South Africa is a saffron pear, brought from the Netherlands and planted in the Dutch East India Company's gardens in Cape Town more than three centuries ago, supposedly by Jan van Riebeeck. Historic trees include a poplar tree, which served as a landmark for refugees during the apartheid regime who found a safe haven in the Johannesburg house of Ruth Fischer, the daughter of Bram Fischer, who was a founding member of the South African Communist Party. In 2015 a new record-breaking tree was discovered in an old tree lane in the Boschendal wine estate. This karri gum tree of 50,4m tall has a massive crown and a trunk circumference of over 8m, and is now officially the largest tree in South Africa.

A group of international and local tree climbers has visited and climbed the champion trees around the country, contributing to more accurate height measurements, and installing nesting boxes for the rare Cape parrot in some of the large champion trees that occur in natural forests.

All the trees were also visited by a professional photographer, to create a proper photographic record of the trees.

In 2015, an internationally acclaimed book was published on the Champion Trees, titled "We are the Champions". This was followed by another book at the end of 2016, titled "Remarkable Trees of South Africa". The project was also cited as an international forestry best practice within the Southern African Development Community countries. Several international delegations from organisations such as the International Dendrology Society visited South Africa in the past decade to see the tree heritage of the country, including Champion Trees.

Million Trees Programme

The Million Trees Programme was launched in 2007 as part of a UN greening initiative to encourage countries worldwide to plant more trees. Its purpose is to ensure that at least one million trees, including fruit trees and indigenous ornamental shade trees, are planted every year in various member states of the United Nations.

In South Africa, the Million Trees Programme is a partnership between the three spheres of government, non-governmental and community-based organisations, schools and the corporate sector.

It is part of the South African contribution to the UN Environment Programme "Plant for the Planet: Billion Tree Campaign", where communities, industry, civil society organisations and governments are encouraged to plant at least one billion trees worldwide.

Resources

Sustainable forest management

Forest products contribute about R34,5 billion to the economy – about 0,6% of the GDP. Export value increased by 13%, from R26 to R29 billion. This is underpinned by 1,2 million hectares of well-developed plantation forestry. The forestry sector is responsible for 158 400 direct employment, about 1,3% of South Africa's workforce.

The forestry industry is at continuous risks from fire, pests' diseases and drought. The department is currently amending the National Veld and Forest Fire Act of 1998. Forestry has also been impacted negatively by drought. This calls for more efficient usage of water. To address the issue, the department is conducting a study with the Water Research Commission to investigate the existing estimations of land under irrigation and water used by irrigated agriculture. The study will cost R2 million and is expected to be published in August 2018.

The three cape provinces are still experiencing drought, and as a result, government has declared a national state of drought disaster. Through the support of DAFF, the Western Cape Province was allocated R40 million during 2017/18 financial year to assist drought-stricken farmers with provision of animal fodder.

A report by the Western Cape Department of Agriculture with the Bureau for Food and Agricultural Policy estimates that the impact of the drought equates to an average production decline of about 20%.

In an effort to address the issue of competing land use between agriculture and forestry, the department developed a strategy on agro-forestry. Agro-forestry is a practice that integrates forestry and agriculture on the same piece of land with social, economic and environmental benefits. This strategy will ensure household food security and increase the country's fibre.

In the 2017/18 financial year, the department was expected to conclude Memoranda of Understanding with key role players in the two provinces earmarked for piloting the project – Limpopo and Mpumalanga. Implementation will commence and preparations will be made to roll-out the system in KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

Forestry is one of the sectors that have a huge potential in job creation whilst ensuring the sustainable use of natural resources. Through the EPWP in the Environment and Culture sectors, the department has managed to create 720 temporary and 211 permanent jobs. For 2017/18 financial year, R2 284 million has been allocated to the department as part of the incentive where a total of 2 706 work opportunities and 1 353 full time equivalents will be created.

These policy measures and interventions are intended to enhance the resilience of agricultural and food production systems; contribute to the reduction of the greenhouse gases emissions; intensify agricultural and forestry production while safeguarding food security and creating job opportunities.

There are three categories of forests in South Africa, namely indigenous forests, woodlands and plantation forests. Natural forests cover approximately half a million ha of land in total, plantation forestry covers less than 1,3 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover approximately 38 million ha.

Forestry activities in indigenous forests and woodlands are not limited to the protection of the resource as a natural heritage, but include its development, use and management, as well as the management and processing of non-timber forest products.

Plantation forestry practices include, among other things, the establishment of vast areas of land with exotic tree species that are harvested and processed into pulp for the paper and packaging industries; sawn timber for the production of structural and industrial timber used in the construction industry; poles for telephone and electricity supply; mining timber for use as underground support structures in primarily the gold and platinum mining sectors. The balance of other timber produced is used for a variety of other products such as charcoal and

match manufacture.

Although large forestry companies do not own all the certified forests, having their own specialist environmental departments has helped the rapid expansion of certification, as they ensure that land is managed according to their own stringent environmental codes of practice.

To promote transparency, members of the public are invited to join company staff when regular audits are conducted.

There has been an increase in the number of non-corporate growers who have become certified. This may be attributed to factors such as the FSC's acceptance of group-certification schemes and the availability of local FSC auditors, both of which have reduced the cost of certification considerably.

The introduction of small, low-intensity managed forest audits enables small and community forestry schemes to be FSC-certified.

Indigenous forests

Only about 0,5% of South Africa's total land area is covered by natural forests. About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species, representing some 530 000 ha of dense growth, grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateaux in isolated valleys and ravines.

A number of these natural forest regions, such as the Tsitsikamma National Park, are important tourist attractions.

The large Afro-temperate forests of the southern Cape, although distributed close to the coast, are aligned with the inland forest types of the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. This is because the southerly temperate latitudes compensate for the altitude of inland forests.

Almost half of all natural forests in South Africa are found on private property or land under communal tenure. A detailed inventory of natural forests helps Government to monitor changes in forest areas.

Although the country's low natural forest coverage has led to the development of the commercial forestry sector over the last 100 years, natural forests have continued playing a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities.

The use of natural forests as sources of building material, fuel wood, food and medicine is increasing, with an estimated 80% of South Africa's population still using medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests.

The forest-type classification for natural forests represents 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System guides the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Systematic timber harvesting occurs in certain areas of southern Cape forests and on a smaller scale, in the Amathole forests in the Eastern Cape. This sustainable harvesting system concentrates on the removal of small quantities of senile trees dying off within the forest. On average, 3 750 m^3 of round logs are harvested annually (150 m^3 of stinkwood, 750 m^3 of yellowwood, 2 500 m^3 of Australian Blackwood and 350 m^3 of other species).

The seven-week fern (*Rumohra adiantiformis*), harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests, is another valuable product of indigenous forests. The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September, when sales have been known to exceed 420 000 bunches.

Woodlands

The woodlands, also known as savannahs, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. It is the most accessible forest resource for poor communities and contributes in the region of R2 000 to R5 000 to poor households annually. Natural forests cover less than one million ha of land in total, plantation forestry covers less than 1,3 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover about 29 million ha to 46 million ha.

The cover includes extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Rich biodiversity is found in savannah woodland comprising 5 900 plants, 540 bird species and 175 mammals.

These include iconic species such as the Big Five group of mammals that are important to the tourism industry. Several protected tree species of the savannah, such as camel thorn and Leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braai wood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use.

Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared protected woodland under the National Forests Act of 1998.

In the past, this resource was not really recognised as a forestry responsibility, except where some woodland occurred on state-forest land in conservation areas. However, the National Forestry Action Programme of 1997 identified woodland management as a key area of operation for forestry.

The New Forests Act of 1998 also includes woodland in its definition of forests and mandates monitoring and reporting on the state of the woodlands. This legislation protects woodlands on private and communal land, as well as in state forests, while promoting sustainable use.

Savannah woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual marula-fruit (Sclerocarya birrea) harvest, for example, is worth some R1,1 billion a year to rural communities.

There are 87 savannah woodland types, and although the biome as a whole is fairly well protected in formal and private reserves, many underprotected savannah types have been identified.

Another woodland type is the Albany thicket biome, characterised by dense growth of woody and succulent plant species. There are 13 thicket types, which together cover about three million ha. Extensive Spekboom plantings are underway in the Eastern Cape to restore the carrying capacity of degraded thicket areas, and to capitalise on the high carbon sequestration rates of this species as a climate change offset.

Commercial forests

Commercial forest plantations predominantly meet South Africa's demand for wood. During the 1930s, Government started extensive commercial plantations to make South Africa

self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities.

Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle. South Africa's plantation forests cover about 1% of the combined cultivated (arable) and grazing land.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising sustainable forest management and is a world leader in forest certification. Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all plantation and processing activities.

The Institute for Commercial Forestry Research (ICFR) completed its role in developing the National Forest Protection Strategy for the DAFF, a project funded by the FAO of the UN.

Another development which will assist in enhancing forest protection is the MoU, formalising FSA's support and funding for these activities at the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnical Institute (Fabi), which has been entered into with the University of Pretoria.

The FAO and DAFF approved the National Forest Protection Strategy, which includes forest-fire related matters. Once fully implemented, the strategy is expected to provide the industry with additional resources and enhance the coordination of responses to combat forest fires.

Plantation yields

South Africa's intensively managed commercial forestry plantations are recognised as some of the most productive in the world – not only climatic and soil conditions but also advanced management techniques. Consequently, from a limited geographic footprint of 1,2 million ha, the industry can produce, on a sustainable and annual basis, between 15 and 18 million tons of timber a year.

Average production per hectare has increased from 10,2m3 in 1980 to 13,5m3 in 2016 – a 32% increase.

In the 2015/16 financial year, production from the country's plantation forests amounted to 14,2 million tons (16,4 mm3), some 1 100 000 tons or 7,7% less than the 15,3 million tons (17,9 million m3) recorded the previous year.

In terms of production by product, pulpwood production a t 8,7 million tons was by far the highest, representing 61% of total production. Sawlog production was 4,7 million tons (33% of total). This was followed by mining timber production of 299 000 tons, pole production of 236 000 tons, charcoal production of 197 000 tons and production of other products of 87 000 tons.

Sappi Forests supplies over 70% of the wood requirements of Sappi Southern Africa from both its own and committed commercial timber plantations of 492 000 ha. This equates to approximately 30 Mt of standing timber.

The Lomati Sawmill produces 102 000 m³ per year of sawn timber for the construction and furniture manufacturing industry.

All wood grown on Sappi-owned land and a large proportion grown on plantations managed by us, is Forest Stewardship Council® (FSC®) certified.

Approximately 150 000 ha of land is set aside and maintained by Sappi Forests to conserve the natural habitat and biodiversity found there, including indigenous forests and wetlands.

The timber is used in wood products such as roof trusses. It is also pulped, so that the wood fibre may be used for newspapers, boxes, paper bags and paper.

South Africa's intensively managed commercial forestry plantations are recognised as some of the most productive in the world – not only weather and soil conditions but also advanced management techniques. Consequently, from a limited geographic footprint of 1,22 million ha, the industry can produce, on a sustainable and annual basis, between 16 and 18 Mt of timber a year.

Production from the country's plantation forests amounted to 15,3 Mt (17,9m3) in 2015.

Pulpwood production at 11,8 Mt was the highest, representing 66,1% of total production. Sawlog production was 4,8 Mt (26.1% of total). Mining-timber production of 557 000 tons and other products such as poles and charcoal at 711 600 tons made up the balance.

Socio-economic reform and growth

The forestry vision states that forests are managed for people and that there is a need to create an enabling environment for economic and social development through sustainable forestry, especially at local level.

Forestry strategies to achieve this vision include forestry enterprise development, aimed at creating opportunities for people to use forests including indigenous forests, woodlands and plantations, and forest-based resources for economic growth, income-generation and job creation.

The forestry enterprise development concept is central to Government's pro-poor agenda and also a key component of Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) in the forestry sector.

BBBEE Charter

The BBBEE Charter process is one of many government strategies aimed at transforming the economy. The formulation and implementation of BEE programmes at different levels and in different sectors of the economy include partnerships between Government and the private sector, including trade unions and community-based organisations.

The BBBEE Charter for the forestry sector will be instrumental in achieving objectives such as increasing the number of black people, particularly women, who own, manage and control enterprises and productive assets; and facilitating ownership and management of enterprise and productive assets by communities, workers, cooperatives and other collective enterprises.

Under the charter, Government aims to process about 15 000 ha of water-use licence applications a year for the next 10 years to obtain a nett increase in afforested land of about 10 000 ha a year or 100 000 ha over the entire period.

Community forestry

Community forestry is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to benefit local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities, and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots, and woodland being managed by communities and individuals.

Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest

enterprise development.

Participatory forest management of the DAFF is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the sustainable management of South African forests.

Elements of participatory forest management were initially developed for indigenous state forests.

However, the aim is to use participatory forest management as an approach to managing all forest types, where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands and where different types of ownership and management (State, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

Some 96 community-stream flow-reduction activity applications, totalling about 13 000 ha, were supported by the departments of agriculture, forestry and fisheries and trade and industry through assistance provided in the undertaking of environmental impact assessments in the Eastern Cape.

Fisheries

The DAFF is tasked with managing the development and sustainable use of marine and coastal resources; maximising the economic potential of the fisheries sector; and protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems.

The South African coastline covers more than 3 000 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. These shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals recorded.

The productive waters of the West Coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities.

Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The main challenge in fisheries is to create a balance between maximising the social and economic potential of the fisheries industry; protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems and addressing transformation in the sector.

In line with international trends, the department recognises fisheries as an economic activity rather than a purely environmental or biodiversity matter.

Government has expanded the mandate for fisheries management by adding fresh water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture, to the department's existing responsibilities.

The department will gradually establish offices of the fisheries branch in coastal, as well as inland provinces. These are economic decisions, which contribute to employment creation and poverty alleviation.

The fisheries sector contributes roughly 0,1% to the GDP, which is small even by the standards of agriculture. However, it is more important for economic development in the Western Cape where 11 of the 13 proclaimed fishing harbours are situated. These contribute more the 5% to Gross Provincial Domestic Product.

The total output is estimated at 600 000 t worth about R6 billion, depending on the Pelagic catch of pilchards and anchovy, which could be as much as 600 000 t.

It is estimated that the direct employment in the industry constitutes approximately 27 000 jobs (16 000 in the primary sector and 11 000 in the secondary and tertiary sectors), while an additional 81 000 people are indirectly (net building, bait preparing, etc.) employed in industries that are at least partially dependent on the fishing sector (figures based on industry estimates and the Total Allowable Catch and Total Allowable Effort, calculated as a function of tonnage).

Fisheries output is determined by catch volumes, which in turn depends on the health and management of fish stocks, varying according to ecological changes and subjected to overexploitation through illegal, unreported and unregulated fishing activities.

Inshore species are especially vulnerable to stock depletion, as they are easily accessed, especially illegally. According to one study, 68% of commercial line fish stocks have collapsed and another 11% are overexploited.

The DAFF seeks to prevent overexploitation by means of assigning Total Allowable Catch and/or Total Allowable Effort per species, which are adjusted regularly depending on the estimated state of the resource. The DAFF has also sought to promote transformation in the sector through inclusion of small-scale fishing communities. The Marine Living Resources Amenment Act of 2014 will grant small-scale fishing communities better access to fishing rights and resources.

The small-scale fishing sector was expected to directly benefit approximately 30 000 people from coastal communities and is expected to transform the entire fishing industry. This new sector is designed to address food security needs within the local community, and will allow fishers to derive maximum benefit through value-adding of products and accessing markets.

The effective management of the existing 12 harbours and proclamation of additional new harbours will support resource management. Although wild catch fisheries appear unlikely to expand beyond their present levels, aquaculture is becoming more important as a substitute for wild capture fisheries.

While the marine-based "mariculture" part of aquaculture has been around for some years, focusing on species such as abalone, oysters and mussels, freshwater aquaculture is experiencing a rapid expansion, owing in part to Government's multipronged aquaculture promotion campaign.

Aquaculture has been included in the Oceans Economy Operation Phakisa. Globally, wild fish stocks have been dwindling, growing at a modest 1% per annum, while aquaculture has grown by 7% and accounts for 44% of the global fish production. Therefore, aquaculture is seen as a quick win for growing the oceans economy.

Through Operation Phakisa and the detailed plans on the development of 24 marine and inland aquaculture projects, which are being implemented, the expectation is to increase production from the current 4 000 t to 20 000 t per year, increase the current value of aquaculture from R400 million to R6 billion and create up to 210 000 sector jobs by 2030.

Aquaculture is an important element of the Ocean's Economy Strategy, Operation Phakisa. It is anticipated that Operation Phakisa will place marine resources in a central position in the economy. Through Operation Phakisa, Government plans to grow the sector value from its current R400 million to R6 billion, with a possible job creation of up to 210 000 jobs in this sector by 2030.

The WfFP will remain one of the vehicles for economic growth and sustainable livelihoods for fishing communities.

Regarding vulnerability to stock depletion in inshore species, the DAFF will prevent over-exploitation by assigning Total Allowable Catch and Total Allowable Effort per species which will be adjusted on a regular basis depending on the estimated state of the resource.

Globally, wild fish stocks have been dwindling, growing at a modest 1% per annum, while aquaculture has grown by 7% and accounts for 44% of the global fish production. As a result, aquaculture is seen as a quick-win for growing the oceans' economy.

The department will continue to advocate for responsible management of the marine resources, supported by extensive research on the declining marine stock. The DAFF in collaboration with the industry will accelerate growth in the sector to meet the aspirations of increasing the aquaculture sector five-fold to 20 000 tons annual production, thereby creating 15 000 jobs and contributing R3 billion to the GDP by 2019.

Freshwater aquaculture is becoming more important as a substitute for wild capture fisheries and is experiencing a rapid expansion, owing in part to government`s multi-pronged aquaculture promotion campaign.

A total number of eight initiatives in aquaculture focus area have been identified to spur the growth of the sector. One initiative will address the selection and implementation of 24 catalyst projects across the country by 2019.

Together, these projects are expected to grow the size of the aquaculture sector from approximately R700 million to almost R3 billion by 2019, increase production from about 6 000 tons in 2013 to approximately 20 000 tons in 2019 and create 2 500 direct new jobs and also 15 000 jobs in the value chain over the same period.

Other initiatives will include the creation of an enabling regulatory environment, the establishment of an Inter-Departmental Authorisations Committee (IAC) to coordinate aquaculture applications and approvals, increasing the skills pool and awareness, improving funding and providing access to markets. An amount of R338 million in private sector investment has been committed in the sector to augment the R106 million of government investments. In addition, 521 jobs have already been created in ten aquaculture farms that are in production, and the seven new projects that are already assessed will potentially create a further 335 jobs once implemented.

Small-scale fisheries sector

To implement its Small Scale Fisheries sector, the DAFF conducted a series of training programmes with small scale fisheries cooperatives. The workshops commenced in two fishing communities Hondekilp Baai and Port Nolloth, Northern Cape and was expected to be rolled out in other provinces.

More than 120 small scale fishers were registered from the two fishing communities in the Northern Cape. Following the completion of the cooperative training programme, the official registration of the cooperatives is expected to be finalised after which rights will be allocated.

The training programme includeed understanding what a cooperative model is, how to run and manage cooperatives successfully and how to register cooperatives among others.

The sector is aimed at redressing the inequality suffered by coastal fishing communities which, as a result of unintended consequences, have remained marginalised through previous rights allocation systems. Furthermore, the establishment of the small-scale sector seeks to empower small-scale fishers to contribute meaningfully to the national GDP and to play a meaningful role in food security and job creation.

This process is informed by the Marine Living Resources Act and the regulations thereof which was amended to legally recognise small-scale fishers who have been living in coastal communities and depending on fishing and its related activities as a source of livelihood.

In March 2016, the department began a process to register, verify and recognise small-scale fishers and fishing communities, of which a total of 289 fishing communities were visited in the four coastal provinces to register small-scale fishers as per the regulations relating to small-scale fishing.

From these visits, an overwhelming total of 22 580 individuals requested to be recognised as small-scale fishers. A well-detailed socio-economic baseline report of each community visited has been generated to better understand this new sector.

Industry and products

South Africa is among the global fishing nations that have identified the challenges within their fishing industry. With 22 commercial fisheries sectors and new fisheries being explored and experimented with, South Africa has two fisheries sector components.

Wild capture fisheries include three distinct components, namely commercial, recreational and subsistence fisheries, each of which requires specific research and management interventions.

The aquaculture (fish farming) sector is considered underdeveloped and as a result, has been prioritised, owing to declining wild stocks.

Legislation and policies

- The Small-Scale Fisheries Policy seeks to address imbalances of the past and ensure that small-scale fishers are accommodated and properly managed. For the first time, fishing rights will be allocated on a group, rather than an individual basis. The policy further aims to support investment in community entities to take joint responsibility for sustainably managing the fisheries resources and to address the depletion of critical fisheries stocks.
- The department has entered into a service level agreement with the South African Navy to manage its fleet of four patrol vessels and three research vessels for a year, while the department considers its various options regarding the long-term management of these vessels.

Resource management

The department increased its capacity to combat illegal, unregulated and unreported fishing, and launched an anti-poaching project in the Western Cape, funded through the WfFP.

This enabled the department to deploy 60 military veterans in the Overberg region to serve as the "eyes and ears" of Government.

The fishing sector comprises large-scale operators and small-scale and recreational fishermen and women.

According to a recent UN report, more than two-thirds of the

world's fisheries have been overfished or are fully harvested, and more than one third is in a state of decline, owing to the loss of fish habitats, soaring pollution levels in oceans and rivers and climate change.

According to the report, abalone stocks remain in a depleted to heavily depleted state as the resources continue to decline, due to increasing levels of poaching and ecological factors.

Meanwhile, line fish resources range from heavily depleted to optimal states, depending on species.

There are, however, signs of a positive response by some species to the emergency management measures implemented in 2000.

Given the low population sizes of many line fish species, however, present management measures are expected to assist in allowing stock to increase.

Under the operational management procedure, the West Coast rock lobster is showing signs of recovery.

Deep-water hake remains depleted, however, its status is improving, whereas shallow-water hake is considered optimal to abundant.

The implementation of precautionary management approaches to hake fisheries in recent years has resulted in a faster than anticipated recovery of deep-water hake.

Harders, which are the main target of the beach-seine and gillnet fisheries, remain in a depleted to heavily depleted state.

Environmental anomalies and illegal netting have affected the recruitment of the species in recent years.

The abundance of Agulhas sole has remained relatively constant over the past 15 years, while Cape horse mackerel has increased in abundance in recent years, due to good recruitment, and the stock is considered to be in an optimal state.

The anchovy stock is at the lowest level observed in the past 15 years, but sardine and round herring stocks continue to increase.

In South Africa, the fisheries sector is worth around R6 billion a year and directly employs some 27 000 people in the commercial sector. Thousands more and their families depend on these resources for food and the basic needs of life.

The total allowable catch apportioned for the subsistence (small-scale/interim relief) subsector, is set at 276 t (138 kg per fisher).

The apportionment for the recreational fishing subsector remains unchanged at four West Coast rock lobsters per person per day for the duration of the fishing season.

The size restriction remains at 80 mm carapace length and recreational fishing permits will only be issued to persons above the age of 12 years. Any west coast rock lobster caught, collected or transported shall be kept in a whole state.

West coast rock lobster caught with a recreational permit may not be sold by any person.

Recreational west coast rock lobster permits are obtainable at the Post Office, at a cost of R92 per permit and are valid for the entire recreational fishing season.

The department's decision to pursue the recovery target has been welcomed by WWF and carries the unanimous support of all the WCRL user sectors.

The International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas (ICCAT) is an RFMO)that is responsible for the management of tuna and tuna-like species in the Atlantic Ocean and Mediterranean Sea.

South Africa's strategic intent with participating in the ICCAT is to ensure long-term fishing access in the Atlantic Ocean for South African fishing companies in the tuna pole fisheries and the developing large pelagic fisheries.

Access to the Atlantic Ocean is essential for encouraging future investment in the tuna/swordfish fisheries, to create the enabling environment for these fisheries to develop.

The ICCAT will benefit South Africa with management activities, including collating fisheries data, guiding research, conducting stock assessments, establishing management and conservation measures and issuing country quotas.

Aquaculture

Aquaculture incorporates the breeding, trading or rearing of aquatic organisms in a controlled or selected aquatic environment for recreational, commercial or subsistence purposes.

Fisheries and aquaculture support the livelihoods of an estimated 540 million people. Aquaculture, is the farming of aquatic organisms and is divided into fresh-water culture and mariculture.

Species farmed in the latter include dusky kob, abalone, Pacific oysters, Mediterranean mussels and black mussels, among others. According to the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the sector is relatively small and Government wants to create a climate in which it can grow.

Special attention will be paid to freshwater aquaculture, as it has shown growth potential.

Government will also boost investments in research, development technology, transfer and extension, as well as education and training programmes in aquaculture.

The Agriculture Development Enhancement Programme, which offers cost-sharing grants of R40 million per company aims to create more jobs in the sector. The grants will be made available for machinery, equipment, infrastructure, commercial vehicles and work boats, in pursuit of boosting competition in the industry.

Abalone fishing is severely restricted in South African waters, however, poaching is rife, as it is a lucrative trade.

Poaching has caused the decline in abalone numbers over the years. The species is highly coveted and fetches high prices, especially in the Far East.

The National Aquaculture Policy Framework was developed against the backdrop of a global aquaculture sector that has seen an increased demand for fishery products.

The policy provides a unified framework for the establishment and development of an industry that contributes towards sustainable job creation and increased investment.

In South Africa, marine and freshwater aquaculture presents a good opportunity to diversify fish production to satisfy local demand; contribute to food security, job creation, economic development and rural development; and improve export opportunities.

To fast-track the growth of the aquacultural sector an amount of R338 million in private sector investment has been committed to supplement the R106 million government investments. In the nine aquaculture farms that are already in production, 521 jobs have been created while a further 335 jobs are envisaged. These nine aquaculture farms are located in the Eastern Cape,

KwaZulu-Natal, Northern Cape and the Western Cape and produce kob, oysters, abalone and trout.

Aquaculture has been given a boost through its inclusion in the Oceans Economy Operation Phakisa. Through Operation Phakisa and the detailed plans on the development of 24 marine and inland aquaculture projects, which are being implemented, the department expects to increase production from the current 4 000 t to 20 000 t per year, increase the current value of the subsector from R400 million to R6 billion per year and create up to 210 000 sector jobs by 2030.

The aquaculture sector has unlocked investments of more than R400 million across 10 aquaculture farms, which are already in production. The community in Hamburg in the Eastern Cape has seen its first harvest of dusky kob (kabeljou — fish) and the Siyazama Aquaculture Cooperative in Hamburg sold its first harvest of dusky kob to the Cape Town Fish Market at the V&A Waterfront.

The expansion of aquaculture projects to inland and other coastal areas in support of SMMEs will create 3 200 jobs and contribute R500 million to the GDP over the next three years. Furthermore, the draft Aquaculture Bill was by mid-2016 ready for public consultation. The DAFF has also established the Interdepartmental Authorisations Committee and the Aquaculture Development Fund.

The effective management of the existing 12 harbours and proclamation of additional new harbours will support resource management. Although wild catch fisheries appear unlikely to expand beyond their present levels, aquaculture is becoming more important as a substitute for wild capture fisheries.

While the marine-based "mariculture" part of aquaculture has been around for some years, focusing on species such as abalone, oysters and mussels, freshwater aquaculture is experiencing a rapid expansion, owing in part to Government's multipronged aquaculture promotion campaign.

Aquaculture has been included in the Oceans Economy Operation Phakisa. Globally, wild fish stocks have been dwindling, growing at a modest 1% per year, while aquaculture has grown by 7% and accounts for 44% of the global fish production. Therefore, aquaculture is seen as a quick win for growing the oceans economy.

Through Operation Phakisa and the detailed plans on the development of 24 marine and inland aquaculture projects, which are being implemented, the expectation is to increase production from the current 4 000 t to 20 000 t per year, increase the current value of aquaculture from R400 million to R6 billion and create up to 210 000 sector jobs by 2030.

Subsistence fisheries

Participation in subsistence fisheries is comprehensive – coastal communities have traditionally made use of intertidal and shallow-water resources as a source of food. Only surplus not consumed by fishers is sold locally.

Recreational fishing

While the illegal harvesting of abalone poses the greatest threat to management objectives, the DAFF will continue to work with all stakeholders in the abalone sector and continue to strengthen partnerships with other law-enforcement agencies and communities to ensure that the country grows and protects its resources.

With South Africa's extensive coastline spanning two oceans and its numerous dams, lakes, rivers and streams, the country is a recreational fisher's paradise. However, recreational fishing may only be undertaken with a valid permit, and recreational fishing is limited to certain times of the fishing season.

To reduce user conflicts between commercial and recreational fishing, and to, protect stocks during breeding periods, certain areas have been declared closed areas.

Recreational fishers are also subject to bag limits of fish on a per-day basis.

Annual recreational fishing licences in all industries total about 300 000, with income generated from these licences amounting to R18 million. The actual annual catch is about 17 000 t of high-value species.

World Soil Day

World Soil Day is observed and celebrated every year on 5 December by all UN member states, the organisations of the UN system and other international and regional organisations, civil society, non-governmental organisations and individuals to emphasise the importance of soil.

Rural Enterprise Development (REID) Hub

A RED hub was launched in the Eastern Cape in March 2017.

The hub is one of government's efforts to stimulate growth through agriculture and agro-processing.

This development will alleviate poverty and address low levels of development in the district.

Agriculture is the third highest contributor to the Alfred Nzo District's economy. There is an urgent need for major new private sector investments to create jobs and improve livelihoods in the area.

The establishment of the RED Hub will thus stimulate local economic development as well as the investment drive to expand beyond agriculture and traditional subsistence farming.

Farmers will also move from subsistence to commercial farming.

The creation of the RED hubs is another effort to stimulate primary and agro-processing as well as the marketing of products from the rural areas.

In addition to this RED Hub, the province has other three RED hubs: in Mqanduli in the King Sabatha Dalindyebo Municipality, Ncora at Intsika Yethu Municipality and Lady Frere in Emalahleni Municipality.

The total amount invested by Government in the RED hubs over the past three years is R190 000 000.

Of the four existing RED Hubs, the hub in Mbizana leads the pack in terms of investment as Government has invested R53 000 000 for the state-of-the-art structure.

Fourteen primary co-operatives that have been formed, which in turn formed a secondary co-operative which is a structure that owns the RED Hub.

Information for International travellers

Are you travelling to South Africa?

South Africa is one of the world's most attractive business and leisure travel destinations because of its economic opportunities, scenic beauty, magnificent outdoors, sunny climate and cultural diversity. As people and commodities move around the world, pests that threaten the life and health of plants and animals

travel with them. The increasing volume of international tourism and trade raises the risk of introducing alien invasive species as well as foreign pests associated with plants, plant products, animals, animal products and other regulated goods from one country to another.

Once a pest has entered South Africa, climate change may influence its establishment and spread, as well as the damage it causes.

When travelling to South Africa, make sure you do not bring in prohibited agricultural products. These products may harbour pests that occur in other countries and their introduction may endanger South Africa's competitiveness in trade and agricultural productivity.

The introduction, establishment and spread of these pests undermine agricultural productivity and trade because of the direct damage to plant and animal re- sources, the high costs involved in pest eradication and post-harvest programmes, technical difficulties encountered in eradicating these pests and loss of markets.

Animals and animal products such as meat and dairy products, plants and plant products, honey and honey products as well as other regulated goods, are all potentially high-risk materials. These materials may only be imported into South Africa by means of an import permit, unless exempted, and must be declared with the DAFF inspectors for inspection at ports of entry before entering South Africa..

In the interest of protecting plant health, animal health, human health and the country's territory against exotic pests, South Africa has put legislative measures in place to control the importation of agricultural products into the country and invested in raising biosecurity awareness to the international travellers and traders.

Inspectors from DAFF conduct luggage and consignment inspections at the ports of entry by means of visual and sniffer dogs to ensure compliance with the import permit requirements.

Prohibited products will either be confiscated, destroyed or returned to the country of export and those found carrying them may face a fine of up to R20 000 or imprisonment.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Arts and Culture

South Africa's arts and culture are as varied as one might expect from such a diverse nation. The blend of local cultures and diverse influences make for a melting pot of creativity that never disappoints.

As custodians of South Africa's diverse cultural, artistic and linguistic heritage, the Department of Arts and Culture(DAC) aims to develop and preserve South African culture to ensure social cohesion and nation-building.

South Africa's cultural and creative industry is a good revenue generator, and still has great potential to produce more and contribute to job creation.

Worldwide, the turnover of cultural industries makes this the fifth-largest economic sector, which comprises design, the performing arts, dance, film, television, multimedia, cultural heritage, cultural tourism, visual arts, crafts, music and publishing.

The findings of the latest mapping study for the creative industries sector revealed that South Africa employs between 162,809 and 192,410 people; and accounts for between 1,08% to 1,28% of employment in the country. The sector contributes between R90 billion and R107 billion in direct output (turnover) per annum and between R48 billion and R57 billion in value added to the economy, per annum.

The department has entered into partnerships with significant stakeholders to map the cultural industries.

Cabinet has identified the creative and cultural industries as one of the drivers of economic growth and job creation in the implementation of the New Growth Path.

The Industrial Policy Action Plan 2 identifies the cultural industries, in particular the craft sector, music, jewellery production, clothing, leather, footwear and textiles as some of the sectors that will be subjected to focused and significant support by the State.

The department is mandated to:

- develop and promote arts and culture in South Africa, and mainstream its role in social development
- develop and promote the official languages of South Africa, and enhance the linguistic diversity of the country
- improve economic and other development opportunities for South African arts and culture nationally and globally through mutually beneficial partnerships to ensure the sustainability of the sector
- develop and monitor the implementation of policy, legislation and strategic direction for the identification, conservation and promotion of cultural heritage. The DAC aims to increase interactions across all races, foster constitutional values, and encourage equal opportunities, inclusion and redress.

Legislation and policies

The DAC derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- The Heraldry Act, 1962 (Act 18 of 1962).
- The Culture Promotion Act, 1983 (Act 35 of 1983).
- The National Archives and Record Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996).
- The Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997).
- The South African Geographical Names Council Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998).
- The Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998).
- The National Council for Library and Information Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001).
- The National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999).
- The Use of Official Languages Act, 2012 (Act 12 of 2012)
- The National Film and Video Foundation Act, 1997 (Act 73 of 1997).

Broadly, this legislation mandates the department to:

- develop and promote arts and culture in South Africa and mainstream its role in social development
- develop and promote the official languages of South Africa and enhance the linguistic diversity of the country
- improve economic and other development opportunities for South African arts and culture nationally and globally through mutually beneficial partnerships to ensure the sustainability of the sector
- develop and monitor the implementation of policy, legislation and strategic direction for the identification, conservation and promotion of cultural heritage.
- Fund various disciplines in the the Arts and Culture sectors.

National symbols

Animal: Springbok (Antidorcas marsupialis)

The springbok's common name is derived from its characteristic jumping display. It is the only southern African gazelle and is fairly widespread in open, dry bush, grasslands or riverbeds near water. It is also the emblem of South Africa's national rugby team, which bears its name.

Bird: Blue crane (Anthropoides paradisia)

This elegant crane with its silvery blue plumage is endemic to southern Africa, with more than 99% of the population within South Africa's borders.

Fish: Galjoen (Coracinus capensis)

The galjoen is found only along the South African coast and is a familiar sight to every angler. It keeps to mostly shallow water and is often found in rough surf and sometimes right next to the shore.

Flower: King protea (Protea cynaroides)

This striking protea is found in the south-western and southern areas of the Western Cape. It derives its scientific name cynaroides, which means "like cynara" (artichoke), from the artichoke-like appearance of its flower head.

Tree: Real yellowwood (Podocarpus latifolius)

The yellowwood family is primeval and has been present in South Africa for more than 100 million years. The species is widespread, from Table Mountain, along the southern and eastern Cape coast, in the ravines of the Drakensberg up to the Soutpansberg and the Blouberg in Limpopo.

National flag

South Africa's flag is one of the most recognised in the world. It was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history.

It is the only six-coloured national flag in the world. The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag pole in a "V" form and flowing into a single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with the hoist or the cord seam at the top.

When displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place, it should be to the right of the audience.

National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika and The Call of South Africa (Die Stem van Suid-Afrika).

The National Anthem

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika was composed by Methodist mission schoolteacher, Enoch Sontonga, in 1897. The words of The Call of South Africa were written by CJ Langenhoven in May 1918, and the music was composed by Reverend ML de Villiers in 1921.

National Coat of Arms

South Africa's Coat of Arms, the highest visual symbol of the State, was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

Its central image is a secretary bird with uplifted wings and a sun rising above it.

Below the bird is the protea, an indigenous South African flower, representing the aesthetic harmony of all cultures and the country flowering as a nation. The ears of wheat are emblems of the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant symbolise wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

At the centre stands a shield signifying the protection of South Africans, above which are a spear and knobkierie. These assert the defence of peace rather than a posture of war.

Within the shield are images of the Khoisan people, the first inhabitants of the land. The figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art.

The motto of the coat of arms – !ke e:/xarra//ke – is in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, and means "diverse people unite" or "people who are different joining together".

National Orders

National Orders are the highest awards that the country, through its President, can bestow on individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities.

- The Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement.
- The Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation, and community service.
- The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, cooperation and friendship towards South Africa.
- The Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution.
- The Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport.
- The Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery.

President Cyril Ramaphosa hosted the National Orders Awards Ceremony in Pretoria in April 2018.

The Order of the Baobab

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- **Mr Maduke Lot Ndlovu** (Posthumous): For his excellent contribution to transformation in South Africa. He contributed

immensely to the development of black commerce in the country.

- **Mr Nkosinathi Freddy Ndlovu**: For his excellent contribution to the fight for the recognition of the rights of people with disabilities. His courageous work continues to shine the light on the plight of the most vulnerable in society.
- **Ms Violet Jacobeth Seboni** (Posthumous): For her excellent contribution to the struggle for the rights of workers and equality for women. She bravely took on the proverbial Goliath corporations and industries to fight for workers' rights.

Order of Ikhamanga

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- **Mr Hashim Mohammed Amla**: For his excellent contribution to the sport of cricket. He has brought pride to our country with his many batting firsts in the international cricket arena and remains one of the leading batsmen of our time.
- **Mr Omar Badsha**: For his commitment to the preservation of our country's history through ground-breaking and well-balanced research, and collection of profiles and events of the struggle for liberation.
- **Mr Eric Risimati Baloyi**: For his excellent contribution to youth development by training young boxers who have gone on to make South Africa proud in global competitions.
- **Mr Johan Botha** (Posthumous): For his excellent contribution to opera music and putting South Africa on the world stage. He courageously entertained multitudes and sang for good causes, even at a time when his health was weakening.
- **Ms Lillian Dube**: For her excellent contribution to the performing arts and raising awareness in women's health issues through storytelling. Her creative ways of dealing with serious subjects through humour have been healing the nation.
- **Mr Sipho Cecil Peter 'Hotstix' Mabuse**: For his excellent contribution to the field of music and social cohesion. His spellbinding music has consistently captured the imagination of the nation.
- **Ms Elana Meyer**: For her excellent contribution to track and field athletics. Her commitment to her sport and her glittering performances put South Africa on the world stage a multiple times.
- **Mr John Koenakeefe Motlhankana** (Posthumous): For his excellent contribution to the field of art. His works remain an inspiration to many budding and established artists.
- **Mr Thami Mnyele** (Posthumous): For his excellent use of art and cultural activism to confront injustice. His creative works remain a living legacy and witness that oppression does not diminish one's talent.
- **Adv Nakedi Ribane**: For her excellent contribution to the performing arts and literature. She has been a consistent advocate for equity and justice in the arts.
- **Mr John William Smit**: For his excellent contribution and leadership in the sport of rugby. He captained his country to become world champions, and has been the epitome of pride and commitment.
- **Mr Neil Robert Tovey**: For his excellent contribution to South African football. His passion for the sport put South Africa on the world map when he captained the national team to winning the Africa Cup of Nations.

The Order in Bronze was bestowed on:

- **Ms Traci Mackie**: For her outstanding contribution to the field of journalism and exposing the evils of apartheid. She exposed the covering-up of Steve Biko's death and exposed those in the Security Branch who were involved.
- **Ms Elsa Meyer**: For her outstanding contribution to the field of senior athletics and encouraging the elderly to remain fit in their matured years.

Order of Luthuli

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- **Mr Godfrey Kenneth Beck** (Posthumous): For his excellent contribution to the fight for liberation and equal rights for all South Africans. He bravely pushed back against the system that promoted inequality.
- **Mama Lillian Lily Diedericks**: For her excellent contribution to the fight for the liberation of all South Africans and women in particular. She is one of the brave women who led the 1956 march to the Union Buildings to protest against the pass laws.
- **Mama Mary Fitzgerald** (Posthumous): For her gallant fight against injustice and inequalities enforced through racist laws. She was ahead of her time and her legacy continues to live on in downtown Johannesburg.
- **Prof Farid Esack**: For his excellent contribution to academic research and to the fight against race, gender, class and religious oppression. His body of work continues to enlighten generations of fledgling and established academics.
- **Mr Swaminathan 'Swami' Karuppa Gounden**: For his lifelong and courageous fight against apartheid oppression. He continues to live by the courage of his convictions in his pursuit of equality for all.
- **Rev Charles Hooper** (Posthumous): For his bravery and contribution to the struggle for democracy when the apartheid regime was at its most brutal. He left everything and fled to a far-away land to fight the racist system.
- **Ms Sibongile Mkhabela**: For her excellent contribution to the well-being of children, young people and her gallant fight against injustice. She is part of the legendary 1976 youth that distinguished themselves with their bravery against apartheid.
- **Major General Keith Mokoape**: For his excellent contribution to the liberation movement. His service to the country from exile to democracy has been invaluable and remains his legacy.
- **Mama Rahima Moosa** (Posthumous): For her selfless contribution to the fight for freedom and gender equality in South Africa, and gallantly facing down the oppressive government of the time. She left behind a rich legacy as a champion of women's rights.
- **General Maomela Moreti Motau**: For his contribution to the liberation movement and conflict resolution on the African continent. He distinguished himself with his invaluable work in the redevelopment of countries torn by civil wars.
- **Mama Zondeni Veronica Sobukwe**: For her tenacious fight for freedom and her steadfast support of incarcerated freedom fighters. She challenged the injustices meted out

against the majority of South Africans.

The Order in Bronze was bestowed on:

- **Mama Sylvia Motlagomang 'Mamza' Benjamin** (Posthumous): For her outstanding contribution to workers' rights and her gallant fight against injustice. She bravely embraced the cause of disenfranchised workers and women
- **Mr Ronald Bernickow** (Posthumous): For his outstanding lifelong contribution to the fight for social justice and persistence in challenging the system that oppressed the people of South Africa.

The Order in Gold was bestowed on:

- **Inkosi Mhlabunzima Joseph Maphumulo** (Posthumous): For his exceptional selfless contribution to conflict resolution, and his resistance against injustice and oppression. He paid the ultimate price for our freedom and hard-won democracy.
- **Justice Dikgang Ernest Moseneke**: For his exceptional contribution to the field of law and the administration of justice in democratic South Africa. Through his leadership our fledgling democracy has continually administered justice without fear, favour or prejudice.
- **Mama Dora Tamana** (Posthumous): For her sustained and brave fight against unjust laws and promoting the rights of workers. She consistently pushed back against the injustices meted out on the disenfranchised.

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo

The Order in Bronze was bestowed on:

- **Ms Rosita Johnson** (USA): For her outstanding contribution to the well-being of young South African exiles by enabling them to pursue their education, and for raising awareness, in the United States, of the plight of South Africans under apartheid.

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- **Ambassador Alexander Sergeevich Dsasokhov** (Russia): For his contribution to the fight for the liberation of the people of South Africa and the Southern African region. His efforts assisted many young South African exiles both in Africa and the former Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR).
- **Mr Vyacheslav Tetekin** (Russia): For his excellent contribution to the fight for the liberation of the people of South Africa and the Southern African region. His efforts assisted many young South African exiles both in Africa and the former USSR.

The Order in Gold was bestowed on:

- **His Excellency Mr Joaquim Alberto Chissano** (Mozambique): For his exceptional contribution to the liberation struggle in Southern Africa. As the second President of liberated Mozambique, he was instrumental in transforming Mozambique into a thriving democracy.
- **His Excellency Sir Quett Ketumile Joni Masire** (Posthumous) (Botswana): For his exceptional contribution to the struggle for peace and liberation in South Africa, Mozambique, Rwanda and the Southern African region. He worked tirelessly in ensuring that Africans are liberated from oppression and colonial rule.
- **His Excellency Dr Samuel Daniel Sam Nujoma** (Namibia: For his opposition to the then government of apartheid South Africa. He led forces that fought alongside South African freedom fighters and posed a formidable challenge to the oppressive regimes in the Southern African region. The Founding Father of a free Namibia continues to be a great source of inspiration.
- **Her Excellency President Ellen Johnson Sirleaf** (Liberia): For her exceptional contribution to women's leadership in the African continent. She tenaciously contained conflicts in a volatile region while ensuring recovery and development of newly founded democracies in Africa.

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The country's Constitution guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for the country's diverse people and their cultures. These are: English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Afrikaans, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, French, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu.

South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

In line with the Use of Official Languages Act, the DAC developed its Official Language Policy in 2014.The policy provides for the use of all 11 official languages, taking into account factors such as usage, practicality, expense, regional circumstances and the balance of the needs and preferences of the public it serves, and sets out how these languages will be used for DAC's purposes.

The DAC language policy is implemented through the National Language Service, which is composed of four sections namely; Translation and Editing, Terminology Coordination, Human Language Technologies and Language Planning and Development.

Role players

National Heritage Council

The NHC of South Africa is a statutory body that is responsible for the preservation of the country's heritage. Since its inception in February 2004, it has managed to place heritage as a priority for nation-building and national identity.

The NHC focuses on policy development for the sector to meet its transformation goals, enhance public awareness and education, and increase knowledge production in heritage subjects that were previously neglected. It also makes funding available to projects that present heritage as a socio-economic resource. Over R30 million has been invested in such deserving projects since its inception. Applicants are invited to submit

In November 2017, the NHC hosted the first Resistance and Liberation Heritage National Summit in Pretoria.

The summit was held under the theme "The Year of OR Tambo: Rediscovering Liberation Heritage for the Africa we want". It aimed to adopt a coordinated collaborative approach of preserving the slowly fading resistance and liberation heritage of South Africa with its many SADC cross boundary traces.

This would contribute to the local development economies and boost the tourism sector with a new niche market.

proposals annually between November and March.

The NHC engages heritage stakeholders in public and private institutions, including the various organs of civil society, mobilises debates and builds awareness about heritage.

Golden Shield National Heritage Awards

The awards acknowledge active citizenship that protects and promotes the country's heritage.

Winners of the 2017 awards were announced in September 2017 in Kimberley. The awards coincided with Heritage Month, when culture and the diversity of beliefs and traditions are celebrated as part of nation building and social cohesion. The awards were hosted by the NHC, together with the Northern Cape Department of Sport, Arts and Culture and the Sol Plaatje Municipality. They were held under the theme: Celebrating Cultural and Heritage champions in the 100 years of Oliver Tambo.

The winners were:

- **Young Heritage Activist**: Vhutshilo Padima, whose unique products are made of natural resources such as clay and wood. She has trained and employed a number of passionate youth in her community.
- **Preferred Heritage Destination**: Mphebatho Cultural Museum, a community-based museum in Pilanesberg. Exhibitions at the museum cover traditional Batswana knowledge systems and oral history.
- **Heritage Corporate Citizen**: Naomi Mamakiri, a fashion designer. Her brand makes traditional clothes relevant to today's lifestyle, and encourage its clients to feel proud of their culture and continue wearing their traditional clothes.
- **Heritage Education**: Thandi Sibaya, who together with her team of learners, is currently researching and documenting their local heritage in order to archive it for the current and future generations.
- **National Living Treasure**: Irene Mawela, a song writer and singer, known for her Tshivenda music.
- **Persons Living with Disability**: Mhlonipheni Gumede, who formed a musical group, Green Berets, which sings traditional music. The group has collaborated with internationally acclaimed musicians like Paul Simon and the award-winning Ladysmith Black Mambazo.
- **Academic Excellence**: Dr David Mcintyre Morris who heads Archaeology at the McGregor Museum and Extraordinary Professor in the School of Humanities at Sol Plaatje University. He is passionate about the archaeology and history of the Northern Cape as well as the importance of museums in society.
- **Voice of Heritage**: Godsend Mokgope, who is involved in the preservation and promotion of the Batswana cultural heritage through music shows and documentaries.
- Liberation Heritage Steward: Simphiwe Msizi, who is the pioneer of the Steve Biko youth conversations in which the youth discuss the importance of black consciousness and are encouraged to be proud of their African backgrounds. He works with the Nelson Mandela University in researching about those unsung heroes and heroines who played a role in the liberation of South Africa.
- **Outstanding Community Project**: Peelton Congregational Church, built in 1875 by Reverend Brit from the London Missionary Society. This church also served as a school which produced some of the prominent figures in South African such as Walter Rubusana and liberation struggle stalwart, Steve Tshwete.
- **Ubuntu Honours**: Mfengu Makhalima, who embodies the mobile library and heritage of the ordinary people.
- **Lifetime Achiever Award**: Mama Grace Masuku, described as "everyone's grandmother". She is renowned for her deep knowledge of Tswana traditional and cultural values.

South African Heritage Resources Agency

SAHRA is a statutory organisation established under the National Heritage Resources Act of 1999, as the national administrative body responsible for the protection of South Africa's cultural heritage.

SAHRA provides for the identification, protection, conservation and promotion of South Africa's heritage for present and future generations. It established the National Heritage Resources Fund to provide financial assistance to approved bodies or individuals, for any project that contributes to the conservation and protection of South Africa's national heritage resources.

Conservation categories include:

- national heritage sites, registers, areas and objects
- protected areas
- structures of more than 60 years old
- burial grounds and graves
- fossils (palaeontology) and archaeology
- rock art
- sites relating to the history of slavery in South Africa
- movable objects such as those recovered from the soil or waters of South Africa
- discoveries that are associated with living heritage; ethnographic and decorative art; objects of scientific interest; books, documents, photographs, film material or sound recordings.

SAHRA conserves buildings of historical or architectural value.

It is the national administrative management body for the protection of South Africa's cultural heritage. The agency's main functions include managing the national estate through partnerships with other bodies to promote an integrated heritage resources management system.

Heritage South Africa is a non-profit organisation that conserves South Africa's variety of architectural gems.

South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC)

The SAGNC advises the Minister of Arts and Culture on the transformation and standardisation of official geographical names in South Africa. The council has jurisdiction over all names of geographical features and entities falling within the territories over which the South African Government has sovereignty.

The renaming of geographical features is regarded as a form of symbolic reparation to address South Africa's past.

The following principles are adhered to:

- each individual feature or entity should have only one official name
- the following types of geographical names would generally be avoided:
  - approved names of places elsewhere in South Africa
  - names of places in other countries and names of countries

- names that are blasphemous, indecent, offensive, vulgar, unaesthetic or embarrassing
- names that are discriminatory or derogatory
- names that may be regarded as an advertisement for a particular product, service or firm
- names of living people.

Geographical names committees have been established in all nine provinces.

National Arts Council of South Africa

The NAC facilitates opportunities for people to practise and appreciate the arts. The council also promotes the general application of the arts in the community, fosters the expression of national identity by means of the arts, promotes freedom in the practice of the arts, and gives historically disadvantaged people greater access to the arts.

Arts institutions

The following arts institutions contribute to a sustainable performing arts industry based on access, excellence, diversity and redress, and encourage the development of the full range of performing arts:

- State Theatre, Pretoria
- Playhouse Company, Durban
- ArtsCape, Cape Town
- Market Theatre, Johannesburg
- Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein
- Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg.

The institutions receive annual transfers from the DAC, but also generate revenue through entrance fees, donor assistance, sponsorships and rental income. Performing Arts Institutions provide a platform for the artistic and cultural expression of artists and those interested in performing arts.

Business and Arts South Africa (BASA)

BASA is an internationally recognised South African development agency with a suite of integrated programmes implemented nationally and internationally. The agency encourages mutually beneficial partnerships between business and the arts, securing the future development of the arts sector in South Africa and contributing to corporate success through Shared Value.

BASA was founded in 1997 as a joint initiative of the DAC and the business sector as a public/private partnership.

BASA's mission is to ensure the relevance and sustainability of the arts in South Africa by providing expertise and developing partnerships between business and the arts.

Arts and Culture Trust (ACT)

The ACT is the oldest arts funding agency in democratic South Africa. Since 1994 it has advanced its position towards becoming a self-sustaining perpetual fund for the continued development of arts and culture.

It was established to develop and promote arts, culture and heritage, in general, by securing financial and other resources; and to promote the needs and the role of the sector in the public domain.

Due regard is given to ensuring a spread of projects across all the cultural and artistic disciplines, including arts administration, arts education, community art, festivals, heritage, craft, fine art, dance, music, theatre, literature, multidisciplinary and new media.

A number of focused funding and development programmes implemented by ACT support a broad range of activities nationally. Through the Professional Development Programme, the Trust makes funding available to individual artists, practitioners and arts and culture organisations and institutions in the form of once-off grants. The Scholarships Programme facilitates the allocation of three grants to pursue undergraduate performing arts studies and the annual ACT Awards recognise and celebrates excellence in South African arts, culture and creativity.

Through the presentation of arts management master classes, ACT develops administration and management skills of practitioners, which in turn increases the capacity and sustainability of arts organisations and institutions. The annual Arts and Culture Conference aims to share information, knowledge and research with stakeholders of the creative economy with a view to develop, enable and inspire the sector.

Community art centres and other Cultural organisations

There are hundreds of community art centres in operation, varying from community-initiated to government-managed centres, in South Africa.

The centres operate at different levels, ranging from general socio-cultural promotion to advanced programmes and vocational training.

Some of these centres are located in, for example, craft centres, community halls and theatres.

Many art centres are functioning well and have made impressive contributions to local socio-economic development.

The DAC endorses and supports programmes in needy centres that are community-initiated or non-governmental.

Bureau of Heraldry

The Bureau of Heraldry was founded in 1963 and is responsible for registering:

- coats of arms
- badges and other emblems such as flags, seals, medals and insignia of rank and offices of order
- names and uniforms (colours) of associations and organisations, such as universities
- promoting national symbols.

National Language Service (NLS)

The NLS is tasked with meeting the constitutional obligations of multilingualism by managing language diversity through language planning, human-language technologies and terminology projects. It also provides a translation and editing service in the official and foreign languages.

Through its bursary scheme, the department offers language-learning opportunities, as well as training in language practice.

The NLS promotes the use and equal status of all official languages. This entails the review of the national language policy, the development of language terminologies and human language technology, translation and publishing services in all official languages, and the awarding of bursaries.

Pan South African Language Board

Parliament established the PanSALB to develop South Africa's 11 official languages, as well as the Khoi and the San languages and South African Sign Language, and to promote multilingualism by:

- creating the conditions for the development of and the equal use of all official languages
- fostering respect for and encouraging the use of other languages in the country
- encouraging the best use of the country's linguistic resources to enable South Africans to free themselves from all forms of linguistic discrimination, domination and division and to enable them to exercise appropriate, linguistic choices for their own well-being, and for national development.

To achieve this, the board has three structures:

- provincial language committees
- national language bodies
- national lexicographic units.

The PanSALB is mandated by law to investigate complaints about language-rights violations from any individual, organisation or institution.

It conducts hearings at which complainants and respondents are present, and depending on its findings may recommend steps to be taken by the department or institution concerned.

The PanSALB creates an environment that is conducive to developing, using and promoting all official languages, as well as the Khoi, Nama and San languages and South African Sign Language.

The PanSALB is a constitutional institution that promotes an awareness of multilingualism as a national resource and supports previously marginalised languages. It is mandated to investigate complaints about language rights violations from any individual, organisation or institution.

In 2017, PanSALB declared February as the month of language activism. This coincides with International Mother Language Day which is celebrated annualy on 21 February to promote linguistic and cultural diversity and multilingualism.

The 2018 month-long celebrations were characterised by various events, including:

- Publishing: access to books
- Creating a culture of reading in all languages
- The Use of Official Languages Act
- PanSALB Public Lecture
- Live TV debate on the importance of languages
- PanSALB Language Awards

Programmes, projects and initiatives

Public Art Development Programme (PADP)

The PADP is a work stream of the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy (MGE). It is implemented in partnership with other levels of government, agencies and civil society. The PADP is implemented to strengthen and grow the arts, culture and heritage sector, with particular emphasis on giving the youth, women, children and persons with disabilities the opportunity to participate and benefit from the PADP.

The objectives of the PADP include:

- creating decent work for artists, designers, researchers, storytellers, crafters, performance artists and a range of other workers that are involved in the realisation and presentation of public artworks
- attracting investment and economic activity to particular locations, including the rural areas.

Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy

The MGE strategy will host 63 flagship cultural events over the medium term at an estimated cost of R532,1 million over the period, budgeted for in the Cultural and Creative Industries Development subprogramme in the Arts and Culture Promotion and Development programme.

There are national flagship cultural events, such as the Buyel'Ekhaya Pan African Music Festival (Eastern Cape), the Joy of Jazz Festival (Gauteng), and the Marula Festival (Limpopo) and the Diamonds and Dorings Festival (Northern Cape).

Another part of the strategy is to develop major international exchange platforms such as Africa Month and international cultural seasons.

The cultural seasons are a programme of arts and culture exchange between South Africa and other countries to create new international markets for South African arts and culture products.

The DAC is planning the South Africa-Russia Season for the medium term. The department projects that the MGE strategy will create an estimated 53 000 work opportunities over the period.

Art Bank

In December 2017, the DAC launched the Art Bank by opening an exhibition of artworks that will form part of the curated art collection of the bank. The theme of the exhibition was: "Emerging Visions: Telling the South African story".

The purpose of the Art Bank of South Africa is to identify and purchase contemporary visual art works from emerging and established South African artists. The objectives of the Art Bank of South Africa are to:

- be a national rental agency for contemporary South African art (art works will be leased out for a minimum period of two years)
- procure and curate art works in all public buildings, including government departments, government institutions and South African embassies around the world, on a bi-annual basis, to ensure that good-quality contemporary art works are displayed
- allow for the exposure of artists in marketing their works, as this will further contribute to audience development and consumption of South African art.

Festivals

Arts and cultural festivals abound in South Africa, offering something for every taste – from prickly pears, peaches, "witblits", asparagus and cherries, to various music forms, dance, arts, science, books and whales.

Many of these have become annual events, growing in popularity and attendance numbers.

- Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.
- Arts Alive International Festival in Newtown, Johannesburg provides the best in homegrown and overseas entertainment in September.

- The Cape Town International Jazz Festival features international and African artists. It also features photographic and art exhibitions.
- The Dance Umbrella is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance, presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies.
- The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, known as the KKNK, a vibrant festival for the performing arts, is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.
- The Mangaung African Cultural Festival (MACUFE) in Bloemfontein in the Free State is one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. This 10-day festival showcases the cream of African and international talent.
- The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.
- Oppikoppi Bushveld Bash near Northam in North West offers live performances by rock, alternative and blues bands, both local and from abroad.
- The Splashy Fen Music Festival near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- Standard Bank Joy of Jazz is Johannesburg's biggest annual jazz festival, with local and international artists performing at different venues across the city.
- Up the Creek is a popular music festival on the banks of the Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.
- The Mandela International Film Festival aims to celebrate and stimulate a brave new world of film-making, and is dedicated to improving both the craft and business of film.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international level are: Innibos in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; Taung Cultural Calabash in North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; and the Hilton Arts Festival in KwaZulu-Natal.

Theatre

South Africa has a prolific theatre scene with more than 100 active spaces around the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire to West End and Broadway hits, classical opera and ballet. South African theatre very interactive, with actors sometimes directly addressing audiences.

The country has a long and rich history of storytelling, from the oral narratives and shamanistic dances of the San, to the fables told around the fire by South Africa's indigenous peoples, to the modern and youthful productions of today.

South African theatre came into its own during the apartheid years, partly due to the cultural boycott of the country by British and American actors. Without any external influences, South African theatre flourished with its own unique and local feel, particularly the protest theatre of the 1970s and 1980s.

But the formal South African theatre tradition dates back as far back as the 1830s, when Andrew Geddes Bains's Kaatje Kekkelbek, or Life Among the Hottentots, was performed in 1838 by the Grahamstown Amateur Company.

Over the years, playwrights such as Athol Fugard and Gibson Kente would form the backbone of South African theatre. And through their plays, actors such as John Kani and Winston Ntshona became a few of the early participants of a form of theatre that sought to challenge the apartheid system and question racial attitudes of the time.

With mainstream venues like the National Theatre barring black people from creative participation, the Market Theatre in Johannesburg and The Space in Cape Town were just two of many theatres established to give black artists a stage and multiracial audience. Theatre venues were desegregated in 1978.

Some of the more well-known venues include the Market Theatre, Jo'burg Theatre and Soweto Theatre in Johannesburg; the Baxter and Artscape theatres in Cape Town; and the Playhouse in Durban.

Many of the casinos and malls in South Africa are also home to theatres. The Montecasino Theatre and Studio has hosted major productions such as Dream Girls and Phantom of the Opera.

There are also multitudes of festivals that take place across the country. The most well-known is the Grahamstown National Arts Festival which is the biggest annual celebration of the arts on the African continent. Over the years, the festival has showcased some of South Africa's best-performing arts talent, including up-and-coming artists. It has also spawned a multitude of similar festivals such as the Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees in Oudtshoorn.

Music

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report, and Government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the kwêla music of the forties and fifties, are being redefined; the country also has a rich choral tradition, and pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally.

Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue.

The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

The DAC funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC.

Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition

The DAC hosts the annual Moshito Conference and Exhibition, a key music event on the African continent that promotes collaboration among interested parties from both the private and public sectors.

The event is designed to provide opportunities for business networking; information exchange; music-business education; promotion and product development for national music producers, performers, individuals and entities providing support services; as well as to strengthen business opportunities for the music industry and related media.

The 2017 Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition took place at the Newtown Music Factory from 6 to 9 September under the theme: Rhythms of the Ancients. During the conference, panelists discussed topics that inform the music industry and looked at ways to develop young artists. Topics covered include Decolonising the Airwaves, The Gospel in Me: Lifestyle or Calling? and Scooping that Award.

The event attracted delegates from Uganda, Swaziland, Cape Verde, Brazil and Morocco, among others.

Mangaung African Cultural Festival (MACUFE)

The 21st edition of the popular MACUFE was held from 5 to 13 October 2018, under the theme "Kaofela re moo". This festival has from humble beginnings grown from strength to strength and has undoubtedly reached international stature.

South African Music Awards (SAMAs)

The 23rd annual SAMAs ceremony was held in Sun City, North West in May 2017. The winners were:

- **Best Newcomer of the Year:** Amanda Black – *Amazulu.*
- **Best Album of the Year:** Kwesta – *Dakar II*.
- **Best Duo or Group of the Year:** Black Motion – *Ya Badimo*.
- **Best Female Artist of the Year:** Amanda Black – *Amazulu*.
- **Best Male Artist of the Year:** Kwesta – *Dakar II.*
- **Record of the Year:** Nasty C – *Hell Naw*.
- **Best Album of the Year:** Kwesta – *Dakar II*.
- **Best Rock Album:** Albert Frost – *The Wakeup*.
- **Best Pop Album:** GoodLuck – *The Nature Within*.
- **Best Afro Pop Album (2017):** Vusi Nova – *Vusi Nova*.
- **Best Adult Contemporary Album:** Hugh Masekela – *No Borders.*
- **Best Maskandi Album:** Khuzani – *Inyoni yomthakathi*.
- **Best Classical Instrumental Album:** Charl du Plessis Trio – *Baroqueswing Vol.II*.
- **Best African Indigenous Gospel Album:** Living In Christ Legends – *Living In Christ Legends*.
- **Beste Kontemporere Musiek Album:** Joshua na die Reen – *Die Wereld Binne My*.
- **Best Rap Album:** Kwesta – *Darak II*.
- **Best Kwaito Album:** Dr Malinga – *Goodwill*.
- **Best Dance Album:** Black Motion – *Ya Badimo*.
- **Best Traditional Faith Music Album:** Sprit of Praise – *Spirit of Praise Vol.6*.
- **Best African Adult:** Soul Kulture – *Ngeliny'ilanga*.
- **Best Alternative Music Album:** Native Young – *Kings*.
- **Best R&B/Soul/Reggae Album:** Amanda Black – *Amazulu*.
- **Best Contemporary Faith Music Album:** Khaya Mthethwa – *The Dawn*.
- **Beste Pop Album:** ADAM – *Hoogtevrees*.
- **Best Jazz Album:** Nduduzo Makhathini with Umgidi Trio and One Voice Vocal Ensemble – *Inner Dimensions*.
- **Best Classical and/Instrumental Album:** Charl du Plessis Trio – *Baroqueswing Vol. II*.
- **Best Traditional Music Album:** Dr Thomas Chauke Na Shinyori Sisters – *Shimatsatsa No 34: Xiganga*.
- **Best African Artist:** Patoranking – *Patoranking*.
- **Best Live Audio Visual Recording:** Khaya Mthethwa – *The Dawn*.
- **Best Collaboration:** Kwesta – *Ngud'*.
- **Best Music Video of the Year:** Miss Pru – *Ameni*.
- **Best Produced Album of the Year:** Sjava – *Isina Muva*.
- **Best Engineered Album of the Year:** Arno Carstens – *Aandblom 13*.
- **Best Remix of the Year:** Vic – *Wena Wedwa* (MusicCraftMAN Mix).
- **Best Selling DVD of the Year:** Joyous Celebration – *20*.
- **Best Selling Digital Artist:** Sfiso Ncwane – *Ngipholise Nkosi*.
- **Best Selling Album of the Year:** My Hart Bly In n Taal – *Refentse*.
- **CAPASSO Best Selling Digital Download Composer's Award:** Sfiso Ncwane – *Ngipholise Nkosi*.
- **SAMRO Highest Airplay of the Year:** *Ngud* – Kwesta.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay of the Year:** *Ngud* – Kwesta.

The winners of the 24th annual SAMAs held at Sun City in North West on 2 June 2018 were:

- **Album of the Year:** Shekhinah – *Rose Gold*.
- **Best Duo or Group of the Year:** Mafikizolo – *20*.
- **Best Newcomer of the Year:** Shekhinah – *Rose Gold.*
- **Best Male Artist of the Year:** Prince Kaybee – *I am Music*.
- **Best Female Artist of the Year:** Shekhinah – *Rose Gold.*
- **Best Rock Album:** Fokofpolisiekar – *Selfmedikasie*.
- **Beste Pop Album:** Kurt Darren – *Laat Die Dansvloer Brand*.
- **Best Pop Album:** Tresor – The Beautiful Madness.
- **Beste Kontemporere Musiek:** Jo Black – *Skepe*.
- **Best Adult Contemporary Music:** Wouter Kellerman and Soweto Gospel Choir – *Symphonic Soweto*.
- **Best African Adult Album:** Siseko Pame – *Ilanga*.
- **Best Alternative Music Album:** Bongeziwe Mabandla – *Mangaliso*.
- **Best R&B/Soul/Reggae Album:** Afrotraction – *Relationships*.
- **Best Hip Hop Album:** Shane Eagle – *Yellow*.
- **Best Kwaito Album:** Busiswa – *Highly Flavoured.*
- **Best Dance Album:** Lady Zamar – King Zamar.
- **Best Traditional Faith Music Album:** Andile KaMajola – *Andile KaMajola Chapter 8 Sekwanele*.
- **Best Contemporary Faith Music Album:** Nqubeko Mbatha – *Heaven's Ways.*
- **Best Maskandi Album:** Abafana Baka Mgqumeni – *6 to 6*.
- **Best Jazz Album:** Nduduzo Makhathini – *Ikhambi*.
- **Best Classic Instrumental Album:** Charl du Plessis Trio – *Baroqueswing Vol. III*.
- **Best Live Audio Visual Recording:** Donald – *Red Mic Xperience*.
- **Best Collaboration:** Sun_EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **Best Music Video of the Year:** Rouge – *Arumtumtum*.
- **Best Produced Album:** Goldfish – *Late Night People*.
- **Best Engineered Album:** Mafikizolo – *20*.
- **Best Remix of the Year:** Mobi Dixon – *I got you*.
- **Best Afro Pop Album:** Mafikizolo – *20.*
- **Best African Indigenous Gospel:** Vuma Zion – *Samson Aphi Amandla Akho.*
- **Best African Artist:** Simphiwe Dana – *The Simphiwe Dana Symphony Experience*.
- **Best Selling Album of the Year:** Joyous Celebration
- – *Joyous Celebration Volume 21 Heal Our Land*.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay Award:** un-EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **Record of the Year:** Distruction Boyz ft Benny Maverick & Dladla Mshunqisi – *Omunye*.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay Song of the Year:** Sun-EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay Composer's Award:** Sun-EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **CAPASSO Best Selling Digital Download Composer's Award:** Timothy Bambelela Myeni – *Joyous Celebration Volume 21*.

South African Traditional Music Achievement (SATMA) Awards

The SATMA Awards are aimed at promoting, preserving, uplifting, developing, honouring and awarding traditional musicians across racial and ethnic backgrounds. The 13th SATMA Awards ceremony took place at Mmabatho Convention Centre on 29 September 2018 and the winners were:

- **Best Song of the Year:** Izindlovukazi ZikaMageba – *Akusiwo umuthi umuntu*.
- **Best Vernacular Hip Hop Song:** Papzito – *Rain in Limpopo*.
- **Best Indigenous Comedian:** Hallo M.
- **Best Male Artist:** Majotha – *Obhuti Engibaxoshayo.*
- **Best Female Artist:** Buselaphi – *Umakhanda khanda*.
- **Best Traditional Dance Group:** Dithaga Tsa Ga Mme Halenyane – *Moulu Wa Pitse*.
- **Best Poet:** MaGcwabe Imbongi – *Izithembiso ezaphuka*.
- **Best Praise Singer:** Jessica Mbangeni – *Jessica Mbangeni Sings iGoli @ Lyric Theatre.*
- **Best Newcomer Artist:** Ezendidane – *Ikheshi Lodadooh*.
- **Best Maskandi:** Amageza Amahle – *Inhlesa nenhlama*.

- **Best Mbaqanga:** Sphamandla Masondo – *Baba Wami*.
- **Best Boeremusiek:** Die Ventertjies – *Wikkel Vingers*.
- **Best Indian:** Vernon Govender – *Bhakthi Sangeedam*.
- **Best Setswana:** Dinonyane Cultural Group – *Pitse*.
- **Best IsiNdebele:** Mhlokonywa KaBungela – *Igwabo Lakwa Pondo*.
- **Best IsiXhosa:** 100% Ncobela – *U-Level*.
- **Best Xitsonga:** Sir Jambatani 9 – *Milorho*.
- **Best Sepedi:** Seremi – *Makgaritlana*.
- Best Sesotho: Haeso Ha Ramatla No.3 – *Haeso Ha Ramatla No.3*.
- **Best TshiVenda:** Mazwale vol 3 – *Vhuhadzi ndi nama ya Thole*.
- **Best African:** Jazz Azah – *Batswadi*.
- **Best Reggae:** Black Jahman – *Peace Teacher.*
- **Best Accapella** (*Isicathamiya*): Thee Legacy – *Thee Legacy*.
- **Best Cultural Electronic Media Journalist:** Zimkhita Manqinana.
- **Best Cultural Print Media Journalist:** Lulamile Feni.
- **Traditional Radio Programme Loyal Listener:** William Mahlangu.
- **Best Traditional Community Radio DJ:** Siyaxola Sobantu.
- **Best Department of Art and Culture:** Mpumalanga.
- **Best Traditional TV Programme Show Album:** Golden Circle.
- **Best Traditional Music Air-Play Radio Station of the Year:** Ligwalagwala FM.
- **Best Traditional Music Radio Programme of the Year:** Lwesuka Lutfuli.
- **Best Traditional Radio Presenter of the Year:** Monwabisi Bangi – "Gudla".

Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The University of the Witwatersrand (Wits) Theatre is another popular dance venue.

Dance Umbrella

The Dance Umbrella is an annual platform for South African contemporary dance at which new choreographic creations are presented. It is an open platform encompassing performances by youth and community groups, the efforts of young choreographers and commissioned works from professionals.

Celebrating its 30th anniversary, Dance Umbrella 2018, ran at various theatres and venues in Johannesburg from 6 to 18 March 2018.

It opened on 6 and 7 March at the UJ Centre for the Arts with two works: Gula Matari by Vincent Sekwati Mantsoe and Mayhem by Gregory Vuyani Maqoma.

The internationally renowned annual festival presented 18 programmes of new contemporary dance works from both local and international choreographers.

Visual arts

South Africa has a rich variety of visual art, with influences ranging from prehistoric, ancient and indigenous art to western, Asian and contemporary art.

Art galleries, ranging from small privately owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Educational institutions also play an important role in acquiring works of national interest.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as their interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space.

Indigenous people with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoi fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists' spiritual world can also be found on the sandstone canvases. These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone, some 10 200 years, was discovered in a living floor at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (around 6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Cango Valley near Oudtshoorn.

Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back some 3 900 years.

The DAC supports a number of projects, including a rock-heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape.

Millions of pieces of tools made by humankind's ancestors (possibly the Homo heidelbergensis species) were uncovered at Kathu in the Northern Cape in July 2014. The site is between 700 000 and a million years old and used to be a huge workshop to produce tools.

The findings were published in the technical magazine, PLoS One, by the universities of Cape Town and Toronto (Canada) and the McGregor Museum in Kimberley.

The hominid species produced tools and equipment at the site for 20 000 to 30 000 years generation after generation.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise.

Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee table books, documentaries, local and international exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

Famous South African photographers include Kevin Carter, Ernest Cole, Alf Kumalo, Peter Magubane, Jürgen Schadeberg, Austin Stevens, Greg Marinovich, Andrew Tshabangu, Sam Nzima and James Oatway.

In June 2016, Peter Magubane launched a book titled June 16: 40th Anniversary Edition in Johannesburg. It is a pictorial account of the events that took place on 16 June 1976 – a fateful day that marked a significant change in the discourse of South Africa's push for liberation. The foreword of the book was written by Struggle veteran Winnie Madikizela-Mandela.

A number of photographers from the state of emergency era partnered with the Mcgregor Museum and the Nelson Mandela Foundation to honour photographers who played a fundamental role in the liberation.

This museum is home an exhibition which tells forgotten stories and highlights South Africa's heritage.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage, reflecting contributions from all the cultural groups in the country. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

This is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern, commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities, including the universities of Pretoria, Cape Town, the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, the Witwatersrand and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University.

Crafts

A high level of skill is brought to the production of work that has long been a part of African society, and has found new commercial outlets.

South African beadwork, once the insignia of tribal royalty, has found a huge range of applications, from the creation of coverings for everything such as bottles and matchboxes, to the reproduction of the red AIDS ribbon using Zulu beadwork known as Zulu love letters.

With workplaces ranging from the pavements and markets of the big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products.

There are also several important collections of African art in South Africa, such as the Standard Bank collection at the Gertrude Posel Gallery at Wits University, in Johannesburg. The Durban Art Gallery houses works of historical and anthropological significance.

These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and key rings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures. In addition to the standard materials such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, many other mediums are also used, including telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and even food tin labels, to create brightly coloured paper mâché bowls.

Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income to communities.

Fugitive's Drift in KwaZulu-Natal, offers a large variety of skilfully crafted basketry; the Northern Cape Schmidtsdrift community of displaced San people produces paintings influenced by ancient rock art; and the Madi a Thavha Art Gallery in the Soutpansberg region of the Limpopo produces and sells a range of arts and crafts created by the local Venda and Tsonga communities, including beautiful beadwork, sculptures, ceramics and jewellery.

South African folk art is also making inroads into Western-style "high art".

The Ndebele tradition of house-painting, part of the widespread African practice of painting or decorating the exteriors of homes, burgeoned amazingly with the advent of commercial paints.

It also gave rise to artists such as Esther Mahlangu, who has put her adaptations of the distinctive, highly coloured geometric Ndebele designs on everything from cars to aeroplanes.

> In April 2018, the University of Johannesburg honoured internationally-renowned Ndebele artist Esther Mahlangu with a doctoral degree for her contribution to the arts. Mahlangu was born in 1935 on a farm near Middelburg, Mpumalanga.
>
> She has also been recognised internationally with a painting on a boulevard in New York.
>
> She' has also collaborated with international brands, such as BMW and singer John Legend.
>
> Her work has been featured at galleries across the globe, including Japan and France

Design

Design Indaba's annual Conference of Creativity took place from 21 – 24 February 2018 at the Artscape Theatre Centre in Cape Town. The conference featured over 30 speakers, including Es Devlin, Natasha Jen, Mark Kamau, Neri Oxman, Amna Elshandaweely and Tom Dixon.

The speakers tackled issues ranging from the water crisis, design thinking, greening neglected parts of the Cape Town CBD to rebuilding a whole city in Chile following an earthquake, new innovations in tech and design as well as projects focused on using design to build more empathy.

The conference ended on a high note with artists honouring the late jazz legend Hugh Masekela. It was announced that the biggest gallery at the Zeitz Museum of Contemporary Art Africa which was designed by Design Indaba 2018 speaker Thomas Heatherwick, would be named the Hugh Masekela Gallery.

The Design Indaba Conference is a yearly three-day showcase of the world's best creative minds, providing endless inspiration, new perspectives and universal solutions.

The conference has been the highlight of South Africa's creative calendar since 1995, and has not only contributed vastly to uplifting the South African design sector, but has also been named the best design conference in the world.

Literature

South Africa has a rich and diverse literary history, with realism, until relatively recently, dominating works of fiction.

Fiction has been written in all of South Africa's 11 official languages – with a large body of work in Afrikaans and English. This overview focuses primarily on English fiction, though it also touches on major poetic developments.

The local literature sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world.

Well-known South African writers include Nobel Prize winners JM Coetzee and Nadine Gordimer, Gcina Mhlope, Phaswane Mpe, Es'kia Mphahlele, Wally Serote, Athol Fugard, Herman Charles Bosman, Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, Breyten Breytenbach, Dalene Matthee, Alan Paton, Olive Schreiner, Andre P Brink and Njabulo Ndebele.

The current generation of writers are also making their mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late Kabelo K Sello Duiker, who have had their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish; and Deon Meyer, whose work has attracted worldwide critical acclaim and a growing international fan base. Originally written in Afrikaans, Meyer's books have been translated into 25 languages, including English, French, German, Dutch, Italian, Spanish, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Russian, Finnish, Czech, Romanian, Slovakian, Bulgarian, Japanese and Polish.

Well-known poets include the late Keorapetse William Kgositsile, Joseph Mbuyiseni Mtshali, Roy Campbell, Sheila Cussons, Jakob Daniël du Toit (better known as Totius), Elisabeth Eybers, Ingrid Jonker, Antjie Krog, Thomas Pringle, NP van Wyk Louw and Eugène Marais.

The new pop culture in poetry, often referred to as "spoken-word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms in the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. Regular platforms have been created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The Publishing Association of South Africa is committed to creativity, literacy, the free flow of ideas and encouraging a culture of reading.

The annual National Book Week (NBW) was celebrated from 3 to 9 September 2018 and the NBW mascot, Funda Bala, visited new regions in all nine provinces of South Africa to reignite the African passion for stories told by the fireside to the beat of a drum.

Each regional community hosting a NBW event in September showcased their storytelling style and tradition, encouraging appreciation of their local talent and mother tongue. This culminated in a storytelling festival at the South African Book Fair on 7 September.

The theme for the 2018 event was #OURSTORIES, which was intended to highlight not only the fact that storytelling is deeply ingrained in African culture, but that South Africans could and should be the authors of their own stories.

The primary aims of the NBW are to:

- promote and entrench a culture of reading in South Africa particularly in schools;
- raise awareness of the critical role reading has to play in fostering socio-economic development;
- celebrate books as a means of facilitating and supporting education, culture and heritage;
- improve access to books and other forms of printed media;
- showcase and increase indigenous language publishing;
- showcase South African and African writers, publishers, booksellers and related businesses;
- raise the profile of the South African book industry with an emphasis on small, medium and micro enterprises operating in the industry;
- facilitate skills and enterprise development across the entire book industry value chain;
- form partnerships with other African countries that celebrate NBW; and
- create awareness of both NBW and the South African Book Fair through various media channels.

The DAC supports the Baobab Literary Journal with the purpose of providing a regular publishing platform for budding writers to appear alongside seasoned ones. This publication includes contributors from various countries across the African continent and the Diaspora.

The department continues to support the Time of the Writer and the Poetry Africa festivals, held annually in Durban. These festivals also deliver developmental workshops for young emerging writers, a schools programme and an initiative with the Department of Correctional Services to promote writing among inmates. WordFest, a literary component of the Grahamstown Arts Festival, focuses on promoting literature in indigenous languages. Also popular are the Johannesburg and Franschhoek literary festivals.

There is an English Literary Museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans Museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal is home to the Bernth Lindfors Collection of African literature.

The centre's mission is to promote a culture of reading, writing and publishing in all local languages, and easy access to books for all South Africans.

South African Literary Awards (SALA)

The SALA aims is to pay tribute to South African writers who have distinguished themselves as ground-breaking producers and creators of literature, while it celebrates literary excellence in the depiction and sharing of South Africa's histories, value systems and philosophies and art as inscribed and preserved in all the languages of South Africa, particularly the official languages.

The 12th SALA ceremony was held in Pretoria on 7 November 2017. The winners were:

- **First-time Published Author Award:** Moses Shimo Seletisha (*Tšhutšhumakgala*).
- **Creative Non-Fiction Award:** Dikgang Moseneke (*My Own Liberator*).
- **Sello Duiker Memorial Literary Award:** Nthikeng Mohlele – *Pleasure*.
- **Poetry Award:** Simphiwe Ali Nolutshungu (*Iingcango Zentliziyo*) and Helen Moffett (*Prunings*).
- **Chairperson's Award:** Prof Themba Christian Msimang.
- **Lifetime Achievement Literary Award:** Vusamazulu Credo Mutwa, Aletta Matshedisǒ Motimele and Etienne Van Heerden, for their body of work.
- **Posthumous Literary Award:** IA!kunta, !Kabbo, ≠Kasin, Dia!kwain and IHan≠kass'o for honouring the work of the Khoi and San.
- **Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award:** Roela Hattingh (*Kamee*).
- **Literary Journalism Award:** Don Makatile and Phakama Mbonambi, for their body of work.

SALA 2018

The 13th SALA ceremony was held in Pretoria on 6 November 2018. The winners were:

- **First-time Published Author Award:** Malebo Sephodi (*Miss Behave*).
- **Creative Non-Fiction Award:** Jurgen Schadeburg (*The Way I See It*).
- **Poetry Award:** Kelwyn Sole (*Walking, Falling*).

- **Chairperson's Award:** Peter Magubane, for his body of work.
- **Lifetime Achievement Literary Award:** Ronnie Kasrils and Hermann Giliomee, for their body of work.
- **Posthumous Literary Award:** Leon Roussow and SM Mofokeng, for their body of work.
- **Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award:** Nick Mulgrew (*The First Law of Sadness*) and Nicole Jaekel Strauss (*As In Die Mond*).
- **Literary Journalism Award:** Sam Mathe, for his body of work.
- **National Poet Laureate Prize:** Mongane Wally Serote, for his body of work.
- **Children's Literature Award:** Jaco Jacobs (*Daar's Nie 'N Krokodil In Hierdie Boek Nie/Moenie Hierdie Boek Eet Nie*).
- **Literary Translators Award:** Peter Tshobisa Mtuze and Jeff Opland (*Umoya Wembongi: Collected Poems 1922 – 1935) by John Solilo* and *Iziganeko Zesizwe: Occasional Poems (1900-1943) by S.E.K. Mqhayi*.)

Film

The first-ever newsreel was shot in South Africa during the Anglo-Boer/South African War, which ended in 1902. The weekly newsreel ran for more than 60 years. Film production began in 1916, when IW Schlesinger set up Killarney Studios in Johannesburg.

The studio produced 42 movies between 1916 and 1922. Access to international markets became limited in the 1920s, and it was only in the 1950s that the market picked up again, when Afrikaans filmmakers developed an interest in the industry.

In the 1980s, South Africa gave foreign companies the opportunity to film movies in the country by giving them tax breaks.

The South African film industry contributes R3,5 billion annually to the country's GDP, while providing employment for more than 25 000 people.

The South African Government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry.

The incentives comprise the Foreign Film and Television Production incentive to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa, and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-Production incentive, which aims to assist local film producers in producing local content.

South Africa's first co-production treaty was signed with Canada in 1997, followed by Germany, Italy, the UK, France, Australia and New Zealand.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit, called Cinema Nouveau, with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

National Film and Video Foundation

The NFVF develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa. The foundation promotes local film and video products, supports the development of and access to the industry, and addresses historical imbalances in infrastructure, skills and resources in the industry.

South African Film and Television Awards (SAFTAs)

The 12th annual SAFTAs were held in March 2018 in Sun City, North West. The winners were:

- **Best TV Soap** – *Isibaya*.
- **Best Actor: TV Soap/Telenovela** – Hamilton Dhlamini.
- **Best Actress: TV Soap/Telenovela** – Jo-Anne Reyneke.
- **Best Supporting Actor: TV Soap/Telenovela** – Pallance Dladla.
- **Best Supporting Actress: TV Soap/Telenovela** – Tarryn Lamb.
- **Best Achievement in Directing: TV Soap/Telenovela** – Isibaya
- **Best Achievement in Scriptwriting:** TV Soap/Telenovela – Suidooster
- **Best Telenovela** – High Rollers 3
- **Most Popular TV Soap**: Uzalo
- **Best TV Drama**: Tjovitjo
- **Best Actor: TV Drama** – Warren Masemola
- **Best Actress: TV Drama** – Thuso Mbedu
- **Best Supporting Actor:** TV Drama – Emmanuel Castis.
- **Best Supporting Actress:** TV Drama – Jana Cilliers.
- **Best Achievement in Directing: TV Drama** – iNumber Number.
- **Best Achievement in Scriptwriting: TV Drama** – Lockdown
- **Best TV Comedy**: Puppet Nation ZA.
- **Best Actress: TV Comedy** – Carine Rous.
- **Best Actor: TV Comedy** – Mandla Gaduka.
- **Best Supporting Actress: TV Comedy** – Linda Sebezo
- **Best Supporting Actor: TV Comedy** – Schalk Bezuidenhout
- **Best Achievement in Directing: TV Comedy** – Puppet Nation ZA
- **Best Achievement in Scriptwriting: TV Comedy** – Puppet Nation ZA
- **Best Talk Show Host**: Pabi Moloi.
- **Best TV Presenter**: Lerato Kganyago.
- **Best Actor: Feature Film** – Nakhane Touré.
- **Best Actress: Feature Film** – Crystal-Donna Roberts.
- **Best Supporting Actor: Feature Film** – Bongile Mantsai.
- **Best Supporting Actress: Feature Film** – Nomonde Mbusi.
- **Best Achievement in Directing: Feature Film** – *Inxeba* (The Wound).
- **Best Achievement in Scriptwriting: Feature Film** – *Inxeba* (The Wound).
- **Best Feature Film** – *Inxeba* (The Wound).
- **Best Documentary Feature** – *Skulls of my People*.
- **Best Student Film** – *Hewn*.
- **Lifetime Achievement Awards** – Johan Stemmet and Thoko Ntshinga.
- **Youth Achiever Award recipient** – Ayanda Sithebe.
- **Outstanding Person with Disability Contributor Award** – Shelly Barry.
- **Outstanding Provincial Contributor Awards** – Thabang Moubane.

Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can justifiably be called the "museum country of Africa", with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

There are more than 300 museums in South Africa. They

range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Visitors can find exhibits, both conventional and eccentric, on every conceivable topic – from beer to beadwork, from fashion to food.

New additions are those reflecting the apartheid era, and commemorating those who fought and died for the cause of establishing a democratic country.

Most of the country's national museums are declared cultural institutions and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the DAC.

They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but function autonomously.

The following officially declared heritage institutions depend on annual transfers from the DAC:

- Northern Flagship Institutions, Pretoria
- Freedom Park, Pretoria
- Iziko Museum, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- Bloemfontein National Museum
- Afrikaans Language Museum, Paarl
- The National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha.

The following museums report to the Minister of Arts and Culture:

- Ditsong museums of South Africa
- Iziko museums, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Language Museum, Paarl
- National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Ditsong museums of South Africa comprise the National Cultural History Museum, Kruger House, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum the Coert Steynberg Museum, the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko museums of Cape Town comprise the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa's first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Mandela was imprisoned.

In April 2009, the DAC declared Freedom Park, Pretoria, a cultural institution under the Cultural Institutions Act of 1998.

The //hapo museum at the historic Freedom Park was officially unveiled in April 2013.

The museum, which is situated at the top of Salvokop in Pretoria, will also serve as a monument to the mighty legacy of South Africa's first democratically elected President, Nelson Mandela.

//hapo is a Khoi word which means "a dream". The museum will help the country define the history, in holistic terms, from the early wars of dispossession such as the Khoikhoi-Dutch war in the 1500s; the arrival of Jan van Riebeeck in the Cape in 1652; the Third War of Dispossession between the Khoisan and colonial authorities in the 1800s; and the South African War, previously known as the Anglo-Boer War, to the anti-apartheid struggle – all of which form part of the freedom history and define the freedom South Africans enjoy today. The museum is the result of nationwide consultative processes that solicited advice from youth, intellectuals, academics, artistic communities, women's groups, traditional leaders and healers and faith-based organisations.

It is a product of South Africans from all walks of life and is in every shape and form a community's dream.

Other elements include a vast wall commemorating those who paid the ultimate price for freedom, an eternal flame paying tribute to the unknown and unsung heroes and heroines, a gallery dedicated to the legends of humanity, a symbolic resting place for those who have died and the story of southern Africa's 3.6 billion years of history.

Other museums administered by central government departments or research councils are the:

- Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria)
- Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria)
- South African Air Force Museum at Swartkop Air Force Base (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban
- museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria).

The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko museums, the Ditsong museums of South Africa, the National Museum and the KwaZulu-Natal Museum.

The following natural history museums do not fall under the DAC, but work closely with the national heritage institutions:

- McGregor Museum, Kimberley
- East London Museum
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown
- Port Elizabeth Museum
- Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural history collections are housed in the Iziko and the Ditsong museums, as well as the Durban Local History Museum and Museum Africa in Johannesburg.

The South African National Gallery in Cape Town and the William Humphreys Art Gallery in Kimberley report to the DAC.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country.

The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, and relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent.

The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with

a planetarium attached to it.

The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2.5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings.

It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, combines a museum with a cultural-development initiative.

The National Cultural History Museum in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans.

It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both, and nurtures the living cultures of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel.

It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable gold field was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored.

Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly in two museums. These are Kleinplasie in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspruit, in Gauteng.

This museum comprises two "house" museums and runs educational programmes based on its extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals.

The Absa Museum and archives in Johannesburg preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. The museum also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the apartheid years.

Exhibitions in the museum include audiovisual footage recorded during the apartheid era.

The Red Location Museum in Port Elizabeth highlights the struggle against apartheid and has won several international awards.

A common type of museum in South Africa is the "house" museum. Examples include an entire village nucleus in Stellenbosch; the mansion of the millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks; the Kruger House Museum, the residence of Paul Kruger, former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek; and Melrose House, where the Peace Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the Second Anglo-Boer/South African War (1899 to 1902) was signed, around the massive dining table, on 31 May 1902, in Pretoria. performing arts institutionsSimpler variations include the Pioneer Museum and 1848 house in Silverton, Pretoria; and the Diepkloof Farm Museum featuring a farmhouse dating back to the 1850s, at Suikerbosrand near Heidelberg, in Gauteng.

There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example, Tsonga Kraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War, in particular.

The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.

On 18 May, the world celebrates International Museum Day which is coordinated by the International Council of Museums. The objective of International Museum Day is to raise awareness of the fact that museums are an important means of cultural exchange, enrichment of cultures and development of mutual understanding, cooperation and peace among peoples.

The event highlights a specific theme that changes every year and that is at the heart of the international museum community's preoccupations.

The 2018 International Museum Day theme is :Hyperconnected museums: New approaches, new publics.

Participation in International Museum Day is growing among museums all over the world. In 2017, more than 36,000 museums participated in the event in some 157 countries.

The main mission of museums is to oversee the safekeeping and protection of the heritage that lies both within and beyond their walls.

Archives

The archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin.

The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives (NFVSA).

Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value, and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the National Archives' repository in Pretoria.

The nine provinces run their archiving services independently from the National Archives.

The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the National Automated Archival Information System, which can be found at *www.national.archives.gov.za.*

It includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs and audiovisual material.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance.

The National Archives also renders a regulatory records-management service with regard to current records in governmental bodies, aimed at promoting efficient, transparent and accountable administration.

In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The Oral History Programme seeks to build the National Archives' capacity to document the spoken word, and fill the gaps in the archives of previously disadvantaged communities.

The automated National Register of Oral Sources is an important element of the programme.

The National Oral History Association, which was established in 2006, hosts annual oral history conferences.

The National Archives' outreach programme promotes the use of its facilities and functions. Archives are taken to the people of South Africa through coordinated national and provincial archive services.

The National Archives is also responsible for ensuring effective, transparent and accountable management of all public records.

The Convention for a Democratic South Africa and the multiparty South African collections have been nominated and provisionally registered for the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) Memory of the World International Register.

This is part of South Africa's contribution to the documented collective memory of the peoples of the world.

Library and information services (LIS)

The DAC oversees various libraries, including the National Library of South Africa, a statutory body; the South African Library for the Blind; and Blind South Africa.

South Africa's growing LIS sector also includes public/community libraries; special libraries; government libraries; and higher education libraries.

In 2018 public libraries in South Africa commemorated 200 years of existence since the first National Library in South Africa (South African Library) was found in Cape Town in 1818. This was the forerunner of the current National Library of South Africa, Cape Town campus.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA was established after the merger of the former State Library in Pretoria and the former South African Library in Cape Town, and includes a specialist unit, the Centre for the Book in Cape Town.

The NLSA in Pretoria has seating capacity for 1 300 library users.

The NLSA offers free Internet access to users in Cape Town and Pretoria.

The Centre for the Book promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all official languages of South Africa.

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's knowledge resources. It is mandated to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material and make it accessible worldwide.

Its collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and special interest material, including Africana and newspapers.

The functions of the NLSA are to:

- build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa
- maintain and preserve these collections
- provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlending services
- promote information awareness and literacy.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic.

The Bookkeeper Mass De-Acidification has been installed at the NLSA in Pretoria to treat books and archival non-book material to extend the useful life of paper collections.

The NLSA is also able to offer moderate services to local libraries, archives and museums.

The NLSA is a link between the LIS sector and heritage sector. It will influence a social cohesive nation by providing free and equitable access to knowledge and information resources, with a theme: "A reading nation is a thriving nation".

Library and Information Association of South Africa (LIASA)

LIASA is the national professional association that represents libraries and information institutions; all library and information workers; and millions of users and potential users of libraries in South Africa.

It aims to unite, develop and empower all people in the library and information field. It represents the interests of and promotes the development and image of library and information services in South Africa.

Libraries have always played a role in education,whether school, academic, public or special libraries.

Where there are not enough school libraries, public libraries are largely bridging the gap.

The concept of lifelong learning is one embodied in all libraries, especially public and community libraries.

That any person, young or old, rich or poor, employed or unemployed, can walk into a library and find information (in both electronic and traditional formats) to educate and enrich themselves, is one of the major benefits of libraries.

National Library Week was held from 19 – 25 March 2018 under the theme, Libraries: heart of the Community. The theme re-emphasizes the idea that libraries belong to the community and are central to it. The theme is also reminder to all library users that the library is a communal space that caters to specific needs – educational, social, recreational or informative.

LIASA remains aligned with South Africa's National Development Plan (NDP) 2030 that will shape communities through among others, skill development in a focused attempt to reduce unemployment especially amongst the youth.

National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

The NCLIS is an advisory council that advises the ministers of arts and culture, of basic education and of higher education and training on matters relating to LIS to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, recreational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country.

The council is broadly representative and councillors are appointed for their expertise and experience in the field of LIS.

Members serve on the council for a renewable term of three years.

Some important policy matters include the development of the Library and Information Services Transformation Charter, which aligns the role of libraries with the vision and strategic framework of Government; the training of librarians; and the

funding of the sector.

Legal Deposit Committee

The Legal Deposit Committee was appointed in terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, which is administered by the DAC.

The committee members serve on the committee for a renewable term of three years.

The mandate of the Act includes:

- providing for the preservation of the national documentary heritage through the legal deposit of published documents
- ensuring the preservation and cataloguing of, and access to, published documents emanating from, or adapted for, South Africa
- providing for access to government information.

The core functions of the Legal Deposit Committee include:

- advising the Minister on any matter dealt with in this Act
- making recommendations to the Minister concerning any regulations which the Minister may make under this Act
- coordinating the tasks carried out by the places of legal deposit
- advising any place of legal deposit regarding any matter dealt with in this Act.

The places of legal deposit are: the NLSA, the Library of Parliament in Cape Town, the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein, the Msunduzi/Voortrekker Municipal Library in Pietermaritzburg and the NFVSA in Pretoria.

The Act also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories (OPDs), namely the Constitutional Court Library in Johannesburg, Phuthaditjhaba Public Library in the Free State, the North West Provincial Library, Information and Archives Service, and the Mpumalanga Library Services.

South African Library for the Blind

The SALB is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape. Its purpose is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on funds from the private sector and the general public.

The SALB also produces documents in special media such as Braille, audio and tactile formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

It also acquires, manufactures and disseminates the technology people with visual disabilities use to read. The SALB has five broad objectives, namely to significantly contribute towards:

- helping to build a nation of readers
- assisting the organised blind community
- improving the lives of individuals with print disabilities by meeting their information needs
- helping the State to discharge its cultural mandate, and its obligations to blind and visually impaired people
- assisting Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind people and the institutions that serve their information needs.

The SALB has a membership of about 3 655 people, an audio and Braille collection of more than 25 600 books, and an annual circulation of 133 222 books in Braille or audio format.

To make library services more accessible, the SALB partners 82 public libraries providing accessible reading material and assisting devices.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg.

It provides services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille.

The organisation equips blind people with the skills they need to fully and independently participate in society. This includes support in living without assistance, getting about, using technology, reading, working and socialising. All this is made possible through the organisation's advocacy, education committee, braille services, orientation and mobility services and employment programme.

It is through this, and the support of its donors, that Blind SA connects South Africans who are blind or visually impaired with the world they live in.

Blind SA provides:

- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students
- interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment)
- information (including free Braille magazines)
- assistance in finding sustainable employment
- advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights)
- Braille publications at affordable prices in all the official languages
- free Braille training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people)
- free orientation and mobility training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people).

International relations

The DAC's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union (AU) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development, South Africa has embarked on the road to restoring, preserving and protecting its African heritage.

The department ensures that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage, and uses arts and culture as a tool for economic self-liberation.

Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the UK, China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and many more.

South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so.

In the area of international cooperation on cultural development, the DAC is committed to promoting the African Agenda.

The DAC continues to encourage and support initiatives to promote South African artists on the world stage.

Cultural diplomacy

South Africa continues to expand its international Cultural Diplomacy Programme led by DAC, in order to create opportunities for artists and showcase South African talent and creativity to the world.

Cultural diplomacy and seasons programmes build relations between individuals, communities, states and institutions, in order to foster better understanding of each other's cultures and heritage and to use this power to promote peaceful relations.

Cultural diplomacy support and enhance political dialogue and economic cooperation. It uses the power of culture as a driver and facilitator of economic development, and contributes to poverty reduction, whilst fostering positive, socially-cohesive nations.

The Cultural Seasons initiative is one of the tools used for the implementation of cultural diplomacy. It is a concentrated focus of cultural activities and exchanges over a specific period of time, agreed to between two countries and is based on reciprocity. It seeks to profile and strengthen cultural relations between two countries and showcase the best talent while providing growth opportunities for emerging and up-and-coming young artists.

It creates international platforms and opportunities for artists and cultural practitioners of all genres to showcase their work, and to engage with their counterparts and audiences, growing and further developing the arts and culture sector.

The initiative creates reciprocal cultural, arts and heritage collaboration and exchanges between involved countries, creating institutional ties, increasing the level of awareness of each other's culture and heritage, and unlocking opportunities in other spin-off areas, including cultural tourism.

Africa Seasons

The African cultural seasons are aimed at showcasing South Africa's artistic and cultural talent and promote regional integration. In line with the NDP and South Africa's foreign policy imperative on "regional integration", South Africa's national interests include the development and upliftment of its people; growth and development of the economy; growth and development of Southern Africa; and a stable and prosperous African continent.

Africa Month

South Africa recognises itself as an integral part of the African continent and therefore understands its national interest as being intrinsically linked to Africa's stability, unity and prosperity.

In line with South Africa's commitment to contribute to a better Africa and a better world and the principles of the Charter for African Cultural Renaissance, the DAC initiated the Africa Month Programme in 2015.

In May 2018, Africa Month was successfully celebrated under the theme: "A Year of Nelson Mandela – Building a Better Africa and a Better World".

South Africa-Russia Seasons

The initiative has become an excellent and innovative way to showcase different cultures, discover new talent and connect new generations of creative professionals and audiences in South Africa and Russia. It is about the sustainability and growth of the arts and culture sector.

The South Africa-Russia Seasons initiative, at its core is about common and shared heritage, the need to positively influence each other, shared thinking on the arts, culture and creative industry, institutional collaboration, nurturing of leadership in the arts and promoting innovation.

Indigenous music and oral history

The International Library of African Music (ILAM), attached to the Music Department at Rhodes University, is the largest repository of African music in the world. Founded in 1954 by ethnomusicologist Hugh Tracy, ILAM is devoted to the study of music and oral arts in Africa. It preserves thousands of historical recordings, going back to 1929, and supports contemporary fieldwork.

The DAC has entered into partnerships with the universities of Venda, Fort Hare and Zululand to conduct research into indigenous music and instruments, as well as identifying and collecting all aspects of intangible cultural heritage in their provinces.

The department and the African Cultural Heritage Fund promote indigenous music by hosting regional, provincial and national indigenous dance and music competitions.

African World Heritage Fund (AWHF)

The AWHF provides financial and technical support for the conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage of outstanding universal value.

The fund was established as a result of work undertaken by African member states of UNESCO, with the objective of developing an ongoing strategy to deal with the challenges that most African countries have in implementing the World Heritage Convention. The AWHF is the first regional funding initiative within the framework of the UNESCO World Heritage Convention.

The AWHF strives towards the effective conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage. AWHF is aimed at AU member states that signed the 1972 UNESCO World Heritage Convention in support of these goals.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Communications

South Africa's combined information and communications technology (ICT) sector and general communication between government and citizens as well as between citizens and the private sector is governed by three bodies:

- The Department of Communications (DoC)
- Government Communication and Information System (GCIS)
- The Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services (DTPS).

Department of Communications

The Ministry of Communications is responsible for the overarching communications policy and strategy, information dissemination and publicity, as well as the branding of the country abroad.

The DoC comprises the following entities: Brand South Africa (Brand SA); the Film and Publication Board (FPB); the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA), the Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) and the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC).

The vision of the DoC of providing vibrant and sustainable communication services for an informed citizenry and a positive image of South Africa supports its mission of creating an enabling environment for the provision of inclusive communication services to all South Africans; in a manner that promotes socio-economic development and investment through broadcasting, new media, print media and new technologies, and brand the country locally and internationally.

The DoC is responsible for the national communications policy and strategy; information dissemination and publicity; and the branding of South Africa. Improved communication and marketing will promote an informed citizenry and assist the country in promoting investments, economic growth and job creation. The department's mandate is derived from section 192 of the Constitution, which provides for the independence of broadcasting regulation in the public interest, the International Telecommunications Union and the World Intellectual Property Organisation.

The National Development Plan (NDP) envisages an active citizenry that participates in the social, economic and political life of the country. This is given expression by outcome 14 (nation building and social cohesion) of government's 2014-2019 medium-term strategic framework, which is closely aligned with the work of the Department of Communications. Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on transforming the communications sector through the rollout of the digital terrestrial television (DTT) project, developing responsive communications policies and regulatory frameworks, and effectively overseeing public entity within the communications sector.

Migration to digital terrestrial broadcasting is expected to have a positive impact on South African society as it will provide for an informed citizenry that is responsive to the needs, challenges and opportunities of the country. Once the migration is complete, high definition television telecast facilities will be available, along with expanded community, FM and satellite radio services to the entire population. In this regard, the implementation of the department's digital terrestrial migration project will be monitored to ensure that 1,5 million set-top boxes and other devices related to digital terrestrial television are installed over the MTEF period.

To eliminate cross border interference during the migration process, provinces that border neighbouring countries (Mpumalanga, Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal, Eastern Cape, Free State, Northern Cape and North West) will be targeted first. Over the medium term, the department plans to compile 12 reports on consumer access to digital broadcasting; coordinate 30 public awareness and registration campaigns in provinces; target non-subsidised households that rely on the retail market to acquire digital terrestrial devices; and conduct national, provincial and regional road shows to raise awareness and communicate timelines associated with the rollout process.

The DoC is spearheading the process of migrating broadcasting signals from analogue to digital. South Africa's national digital network coverage comprises digital terrestrial television (DTT) transmission coverage of 84% of the population, with the remaining 16% to be covered by satellite network.

DTT is a reliable and cost-efficient means to distribute linear TV content and has many advantages over the analogue broadcasting system. One of its major advantages for communities is that it clears the analogue spectrum for the delivery of broadband mobile internet and wi-fi services.

To view digital TV signals on an ordinary analogue TV set, consumers will need a set-top box (STB).

Government will provide about five million financially disadvantaged TV-owning households with free STBs.

South Africa was given until June 2015 to meet the International Telecommunications Union's deadline to switch off analogue transmitters as part of the broadcasting digital migration project. However, the project was delayed following a court ruling that declared part of the digital migration policy unlawful and invalid, and effectively placed the manufacture of digital terrestrial TV STBs on hold.

As a result of the delay, Sentech continued to maintain both the analogue and digital platforms until the issue was resolved. The Analogue Switch-Off Event took place in Carnarvon, Northern Cape in October 2016.

During the 2017/18 financial year, the DoC developed the *White Paper on Audio-Visual and Digital Content Policy for South Africa*, which provides enabling mechanisms to facilitate ownership of the new audio-visual digital content value chain by previously disadvantaged communities and small, medium and micro enterprises.

DoC legislation

The department is responsible for the administration and implementation of the following legislation:

- The Films and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996).
- The Broadcasting Act, 1999 (Act 4 of 1999).
- The MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002).
- The ICASA Act, 2000 (Act 13 of 2000).
- The Electronic Communications and Transactions Act, 2002 (Act 25 of 2002).
- The Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005).

DoC entities

Brand SA

Brand SA develops and implements a proactive and coordinated international marketing and communication strategy for South Africa to contribute to job creation and poverty reduction; and to attract inward investment, trade and tourism.

The new slogan, "South Africa: Inspiring New Ways", represents the next phase of the country's development, where South Africa has moved from possibility to delivery, and is now an important regional power.

Internationally, Brand SA lobbies and networks extensively among global opinion leaders to shift perceptions about the country and the continent.

Being a member of the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa (BRICS) trade bloc, for example, provides a platform to engage and influence perceptions.

Brand SA also regularly brings groups of international journalists to the country to interact with government and business representatives, experience local life and culture, and learn about the country's latest technological developments.

Film and Publication Board

The FPB assists the public to make informed choices about whether a particular film is appropriate by displaying guidelines that identify classifiable elements such as strong language, violence, sex, nudity, drug abuse, blasphemy and religious prejudice.

The Films and Publications Act of 1996 recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression with the exception when it comes to child pornography; it therefore requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children.

The board spearheads a national anti-child-pornography campaign to educate learners about ways to avoid victimisation.

Child-pornography websites can be reported by calling the board's toll-free number 0800 148 148.

Over the medium term, the FPB will focus on:

- informing and educating society to empower adults and protect children against harmful content
- implementing compliance as well as monitoring and evaluation
- developing leading-edge technology to perform online content regulation, classify content for films, games and adult publications
- conducting research on the impact of content on the public.

In this regard, the FPB was allocated R86,4 million in 2016/17.

The Film and Publication Board regulates and controls the creation, production, possession, exhibition and distribution of certain films, interactive computer games and publications in terms of the Films and Publications Act (1996).

The board is also responsible for monitoring age restricted business premises for compliance with their licence and registration terms.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

ICASA was established in July 2000 as a merger of the telecommunications regulator, the South African Telecommunications Regulatory Authority and the Independent Broadcasting Authority.

The ICASA Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 2 of 2014) provided for the additional incorporation of the Postal Regulator into ICASA. It also increased ICASA's council complement from seven to nine councillors.

ICASA is responsible for regulating the telecommunications, broadcasting and postal industries in the public interest and ensure affordable services of a high quality for all South Africans. ICASA is further tasked with:

- issuing licences to telecommunications and broadcasting service providers
- enforcing compliance with rules and regulations
- protecting consumers from unfair business practices and poor quality services
- hearing and deciding on disputes and complaints brought against licensees
- controling and managing the effective use of radio frequency spectrum.

ICASA is a Chapter 9 institution in terms of the South African Constitution and is an entity of the DoC.

The NDP recognises the need for universal access to and the availability of a wide range of services at a cost and quality at least equal to South Africa's main peers and competitors. Over the medium term, ICASA will focus on increasing access to wireless broadband services to meet the demand for them; protecting consumers against harmful practices employed by operators in the use of premium-rated services; increasing competition in the telecommunications and broadcasting sector; and developing a framework for dynamic spectrum management.

The authority contributes to outcome 14 (nation-building and social cohesion), and indirectly to outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) and outcome 12 (an efficient, effective and development oriented public service), of government's 2014-2019 medium-term strategic framework.

The authority plans to increase competition in the telecommunications and broadcast sector by regulating the industry and making sure that all licensees have equal opportunities. The authority plans to protect consumers against harmful practices employed by operators in the use of premium rated services by reviewing the number of portability regulations in the telecommunications sector.

In the commercial broadcasting sector, the authority is set to license the multiplex 3 frequency spectrum and free to air television services. These activities are budgeted for in the licensing programme with an allocation of R168,3 million over the medium term.

To promote competition in the sector, the authority seeks to increase access of the high demand spectrum from the current 566.695MHz to 890.305MHz by 2020/21. Access to spectrum will enable the authority to rollout wireless broadband infrastructure by licences.

To meet the demand for wireless broadband services, the authority is set to increase mobile network coverage by 15% and extend network traffic measurements to include data and voice calls. The authority also plans to obtain inputs from the 5G Forum global network, and update the national radio frequency plan and radio frequency migration strategy.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA promotes media development and diversity to ensure that all citizens can access information in a language of their choice; and to transform media access, ownership and control patterns in South Africa. It was established in terms of the MDDA Act of 2002.

A public-private partnership, the MDDA's mandate is to promote media development and diversity by providing the most disadvantaged, those traditionally sidelined by the mainsteam media, access to information in the language of their communities.

The agency functions independently from and at arm's length of its funders and political-party and commercial interests. This arrangement enables Government, the media industry and donors to work together to address the legacy of imbalances in media access.

Its mandate includes:

- creating an enabling environment for media development and diversity that reflects the needs and aspirations of all South Africans
- redressing exclusion and marginalisation of disadvantaged communities and people from access to the media and the media industry
- promoting media development and diversity by providing support primarily to community and small commercial media projects
- encouraging ownership and control of, and access to, media by historically disadvantaged communities as well as by historically diminished indigenous language and cultural groups
- encouraging the development of human resources and training as well as capacity-building within the media industry, especially among historically disadvantaged groups
- encouraging the channelling of resources to the community media and small commercial media sectors
- raising public awareness with regard to media development and diversity issues.

South African Broadcasting Corporation

The SABC is the country's only public service broadcaster. An Act of Parliament established the SABC in August 1936. At its inception, the SABC only had one English radio station. In 1976, it launched the country's then first and only television channel.

The SABC is made up of 18 radio stations, which cater for the country's 11 official languages, as well as the iXun and Khwe language; and also four television channels, which include a 24-hour news channel.

The SABC, which is governed by the Broadcasting Act of 1999 (as amended), has developed editorial policies which guide and give direction to the corporation's public broadcasting mandate and licence conditions, as set by ICASA and the provisions of the Broadcasting Act of 1999.

The organisation's vision, "Broadcast for Total Citizen Empowerment", propels it in fulfilling its public-service mandate as a broadcaster.

The SABC remains South Africa's most accessible broadcaster and therefore government continues to support it to discharge its public broadcasting service mandate. The DoC has a duty to promote the growth and development of the local content industries to ensure that there is enough content for digital platforms in all 11 official languages.

Local television producers have been engaged, resulting in the appointment of commissioning editors in all nine provinces

where shooting and packaging of the content will be done. This a radical shift from how the SABC used to commission content, where the shooting and packaging of content used to take place in main cities.

Government Communication and Information System

The mandate of the GCIS is derived from Section 195(g) of the Constitution, which stipulates that the public should be provided with information that is timely, accurate and accessible.

This is in support of the constitutional principles of freedom of expression, transparency and openness of government.The department is responsible for providing strategic leadership and coordinating government communication to ensure that the public are informed and have access to government programmes and policies that benefit them.

Chapter 15 of the NDP emphasises the need to unite all South Africans around a common goal, ensure that citizens are active in their own development, and build a capable and developmental state.

This is given expression by Outcome 12 (an efficient, effective and development oriented public service) and Outcome 14 (nation building and social cohesion) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF, with which the work of the GCIS is closely aligned.

The department provides information about government policies, plans, programmes and activities to the public.

Among other things, the GCIS is responsible for maintaining government's website (*www.gov.za*), which provides general information about government.

Among other products, the GCIS publishes the *South Africa Yearbook*, *Pocket Guide to South Africa*, *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper, *Public Sector Manager* magazine and My District Today newsletter. It is also responsible for the South African Government News Agency, SAnews.gov.za.

The Thusong Service Centre Programme enables communities to access government information and services.

Thusong Service Centres are one-stop centres providing integrated services and information from government and other civil society groups, to communities close to where they live as part of a comprehensive strategy to better their lives.

They also also enable communities to access opportunities offered by other civil-society groups such as businesses, non-governmental organisations and parastatals.

The GCIS also gathers public opinion, research and analysis of media coverage to understand the communications environment and to inform government messages.

The department provides media bulk-buying services, which are designed to reduce the cost to government on advertising; facilitate a rapid response mechanism to hasten government's response to issues arising in the media; and provide media production services to support other government departments.

The GCIS was expected to assist the Independent Electoral Commission in driving campaigns around voter registration and Department of Home Affairs on ensuring that citizens have the correct documents to vote in the 2019 General Elections.

In August 2018, Cabinet approved the Government Communication Policy, which seeks to establish norms and standards to professionalise and strengthen the government communication system. This applies to communication coordination and use of alternative media across the three spheres of government and across government departments at a national level

Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services

The DTPS is mandated to develop ICT policies and to ensure the development of robust, reliable, secure and affordable ICT infrastructure. The department also contributes to building an ICT skills base in the country to ensure equitable prosperity and global competitiveness.

The NDP envisages that by 2030, the ICT sector will underpin the development of a dynamic and connected information society, and a vibrant knowledge economy that is inclusive and prosperous.

Drawing from this vision, the DTPS contributes to Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF by ensuring that ICT infrastructure and services are accessible, affordable, robust, reliable and secure.

Over the medium term, the department will expand and modernise ICT infrastructure by implementing the South Africa Connect broadband policy, coordinating the migration to digital broadcasting, and implementing the legislative framework stemming from the 2016 *National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper*.

In 2018, the DTPS, through Broadband Infraco and State Information Technology Agency (SITA), started connecting government facilities in the eight districts which have been identified for the rollout of SA Connect, the country's broadband plan and strategy.

In 2017, the department gazetted the Electronic Communications Amendment Act for public comment, which among other things, creates the legislative environment for the establishment of the Wireless Open Access Network (WOAN). It also established the National Rapid Deployment Coordinating Centre to assist network providers by reducing time and costs for deploying their telecommunication infrastructure.

Cabinet approved the National e-Strategy, the e-Government Strategy and the ICT SMME Development Strategy, which aims to accelerate the development, growth, and sustainability of small and medium enterprises in the ICT sector.

This is meant to stimulate the creation of jobs and for greater economic inclusion, while also aiming to enhance entrepreneurship, increase the usage of ICT tools for all small businesses, and to improve their profitability and competitiveness.

Cabinet approved the framework for the establishment of a State ICT Infrastructure Company and the State IT Company. The State ICT Infrastructure Company will be formed through the merger of Sentech and Broadband Infraco.

The State IT Company will be formed through the reconfiguration of SITA. The department will also facilitate and coordinate the implementation of the national e-strategy to realise the eservices programme. Finalising a national e-strategy will plan for the digital transformation of South Africa to achieve the ideals of the NDP by prioritising sectoral electronic services such as e-health, e-agriculture and e-education.

The six state-owned enterprises under the DTPS are the South African Post Office (SAPO), Sentech; National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (NEMISA); Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA); .za.Domain Name Authority (ZADNA); Universal Service and Access Fund (USAF); Broadband Infraco and SITA.

Legislation

The Electronic Communications Act of 2005 allows the Minister of Telecommunications and Postal Services to draft policies to fulfil South Africa's obligations under bilateral, multilateral and international treaties and conventions; set guidelines for the determination of certain licence fees by ICASA; promote universal service and electronic communications services in underserviced areas; promote the participation of small business in the ICT sector; and enhance the capacity of and exercise oversight of SOEs.

In addition to the Electronic Communications Act of 2005, the department's mandate is derived from the following legislation:

- The Electronic Communications and Transactions Act of 2002.
- The Sentech Act, 1996 (Act 63 of 1996).
- The Postal Services Act, 1998 (Act 124 of 1998).
- The SAPO SOC Ltd Act, 2002 (Act 22 of 2011).
- The South African Postbank Limited Act, 2010 (Act 9 of 2010).
- The SITA Act, 1998 (Act 88 of 1998).
- The Broadband Infraco Act, 2007 (Act 33 of 2007).

DTPS entities

South African Post Office

SAPO is a Schedule 2 Public Entity in terms of the Public

Finance Management Act of 1999 (PFMA). It is a government business enterprise established to provide postal and related services to the public, and derives its mandate from the SAPO SOC Ltd Act of 2011 and the South African Postbank Limited Act of 2010.

The Postal Services Act of 1998 grants it an exclusive mandate to conduct postal services. This Act makes provision for the regulation of postal services and operational functions of the postal company, including universal service obligations and the financial services activities of Postbank.

The entity's strategic goals are to:

- maintain good corporate governance principles
- remain customer centric by providing quality services
- invest in employees by building capacity and implementing transformation programmes
- attain financial sustainability while delivering on Government's social mandate
- provide affordable postal and related services that meet the needs of customers
- remain environmentally conscious by promoting green practices
- provide a secure, efficient and integrated infrastructure for better responses to its stakeholders
- continue the corporatisation of Postbank and the upgrading of its banking systems.

Post offices have become important service-delivery centres, offering South Africans a convenient place to accept and deliver cash-on-delivery items, which is a very important service in rural communities where some people shop from catalogues.

In addition, more than a million South Africans walk through the doors of post offices near where they live to access their social grants.

Post offices also offer services that include enabling South Africans to renew their vehicle registration and pay their municipal accounts and television licences.

Over the medium term, the SAPO plans to focus on continuing to provide access to postal and related services, and increasing the number of addresses to allow wider access to postal and financial services in underserviced areas.

The Postbank caters for the banking needs of the unbanked majority, thus facilitating their inclusion into the economic mainstream and expanding the existing range of banking services.

With effect from 30 September 2018, the SAPO took over the payment of social grants. The new gold card is safer and does not allow for illegal deductions and fraudulent transactions to take place.

It is designed to protect social grants beneficiaries from illegal deductions for things such as electricity, airtime and loans. The only deductions that are permitted on the new gold South African Social Security Agency card are for funeral policies on non-child grants, which should also not be more than 10% of the total grant.

Sentech

Sentech Limited is an SEO established in terms of the Sentech Act of 1996 and is listed as a schedule 3B public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. The company is mandated to provide broadcasting signal distribution for broadcasting licensees, with a particular focus on accelerating the implementation of government ICT interventions within the framework of the NDP and the strategic integrated project for expanding access to communication technology.

In 2002, the company's mandate was expanded to provide an international voice gateway and common carrier multimedia services in accordance with Government's imperative to liberalise the telecommunications sector.

The entity's strategic goals over the medium term were to:

- align its strategic roadmap with shareholder programmes to enable the development of open access government participation in the communications industry through infrastructure-based investment
- continue working to support and realise Government's ICT vision and goals, including innovation in broadcasting and media services, and content management and distribution
- create solutions that enhance the customer experience and are in line with Government's mandate of access to communication services for all citizens
- repackage social responsibility interventions and create community social investment ICT programmes that improve lives, create value and are sustainable.

Sentech derives commercial revenue from terrestrial television services, terrestrial FM and AM radio services, satellite linking, facility rentals and the sale of satellite decoders.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa

NEMISA's vision is for South Africa to be an e-skilled society by 2030. Its mission is to provide a national integrated e-skills development framework for sustainable socio-economic development in South Africa and to radically advance the human capacity development in e-skills (digital skills).

NEMISA collaborates with relevant Post School Education and Training Institutions and other organisations offering e-skills programmes to maximise the use of existing infrastructure and resources and to ensure that education and training respond to the demands and needs for e-skills in the country.

Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa

USAASA is a public body as confirmed by Schedule 3A of the Public Finance Management Act 1 of 1999.The existence, functions, duties and mandate of the Agency are governed by sections 80 – 91 of the Electronic Communications Act 36 of 2005 which came into operation on 19 July 2006. The new amendments to the ECA, which have a direct bearing on governance of the Agency, came into operation on 21 May 2014.

The agency has the responsibility to:

- strive to promote the goal of universal access and universal service;
- encourage, facilitate and offer guidance in respect of any scheme to provide universal and access, universal services or telecommunication services in terms of the Reconstruction and development Plan (RDP);
- foster the adoption and use of new methods of attaining universal access and universal service;
- make recommendations to enable the Minister to determine what constitutes universal access, universal service and under serviced areas;
- conduct research into and keep abreast of developments in the Republic and elsewhere on information communication technology, electronic communications services and electronic communications facilities;
- continually survey and evaluate the extent to which universal access and service have been achieved;
- make recommendations to the Minister in relation to policy on any matter relating to universal access and universal service;
- advise the Authority (ICASA) on any matter relating to universal access and universal service;
- continually evaluate the effectiveness of this Act and things done in terms thereof towards the achievement of the goal of universal access and universal service;
- manage the Universal Service and Access Fund (USAF) in accordance with the provisions of the Act;
- submit annual reports in its operations, budget and expenses to the Minister;
- use the USAF exclusively for the payment of certain subsidies; and
- provide incentives to network licensees to construct operate and maintain networks in areas declared under-serviced by ICASA.

State Information Technology Agency

SITA was established in 1999 to consolidate and coordinate the State's information technology resources in order to achieve cost savings through scale, increase delivery capabilities and enhance interoperability. SITA is committed to leveraging Information Technology (IT) as a strategic resource for

government, managing the IT procurement and delivery process to ensure that the Government gets value for money, and using IT to support the delivery of e-Government services to all citizens.

.za Domain Name Authority

ZADNA is a not-for-profit company that manages and regulates the .za namespace. It is accountable to the DTPS, but does not receive government funding, which means it is exempt from complying with the PFMA of 1999.

The ZA Central Registry, through ZADNA's guidance and the African Union (AU) Commission, has made significant progress in its application for the right to establish and operate an Africa Internet namespace for the benefit of Africa.

ZADNA has also ensured that Cape Town, Durban and Johannesburg are not left behind in the Internet revolution, which will bring about new website addresses such as hotels.capetown, tourism.durban and business.johannesburg.

The ZA Central Registry, formerly known as UniForum SA, was established as a non-profit organisation in 1988 by a group of end users, developers, and vendors. It was assigned the responsibility of administering the co.za domain name space in 1995, three years after the first co.za domain name was registered.

The World Wide Web started to take off globally, and the number of co.za domain name registrations rose rapidly. In 1995, the co.za zone contained in the region of 400 entries. Today there are 1,1 million domains.

According to the ZA Central Registry, co.za ranks as a medium to large zone and within the top 30 registries worldwide in terms of size.

Telkom

Telkom is Africa's largest integrated communications company, providing integrated communications solutions to nine different countries across Africa. The organisational structure comprises three major business units: Telkom South Africa, Telkom International and Telkom Data Centre Operations.

It is listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Ltd and majority-owned by the DoC. Telkom was the country's only fixed-line operator until 2006, when the country's second fixed-line operator, Neotel, began its operations.

According to international auditing and tax advisory powerhouse PwC, Telkom will continue to dominate the fixed broadband market in South Africa, with DSL subscriptions forecast to reach 1,66 million by the end of 2018. Total fixed broadband subscriptions in South Africa are forecast to number 2,06 million by the end of 2018.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) 2017, only 0,1% of households had only a landline.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco sells high-capacity long-distance transmission services to licensed fixed and mobile network operators, internet service providers and other value-added network service providers.

In 2016/17, Broadband Infraco expanded its network to more than 14 900 km of fibre. It optimised 41 points of presence to enable third parties to access to its network. In 2017/18, Broadband Infraco will continue to aggregate state network services and lead in connecting sites in pilot districts.

To enhance South Africa's international connectivity and the speed of broadband, Broadband Infraco has co-invested with the private sector in the deployment of the West African Cable System (WACS).

The WACS is the fifth submarine cable system linking South Africa to the world. Broadband Infraco's investment in the WACS entitled it to 11,4% of the system's total capacity, which would help South Africa meet its target of providing broadband connectivity to all who need it by 2020.

The cable system has 15 established terminal stations en route, and will reduce the cost to connect Africa's west coast with the high-speed global telecommunications network for years to come.

South African Accreditation Authority

The South African Accreditation Authority was established in terms of the Electronic Communications and Transactions Act of 2002. The authority is responsible for the accreditation of authentication and certification products and services used in support of electronic signatures.

It is also concerned with monitoring of the activities of authentication and certification service providers whose products or services have been accredited within the Republic of South Africa.

The Director-General of the DTPS is appointed as the South African Accreditation Authority, and may appoint Deputy South African Accreditation Authorities and officers from employees of the department after consultation with the Minister.

Programmes and initiatives

Broadband infrastructure development

Broadband is an essential digital resource for accessing basic services, products, commerce and job creation. It has the potential to create job opportunities and open new markets that will allow businesses – particularly small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) – to grow.

Given the strategic importance of broadband, the DTPS, together with the ICT industry, has committed to delivering 100% broadband penetration and creating a million jobs by 2020.

The department's aim is to increase access to broadband through the digital development and digital future pillars in line with South Africa Connect (the national broadband policy and strategy) by:

- implementing Phase 1 of the digital development programme, which is focused on providing connectivity to 2 800 of 5 803 sites or identified government institutions by March 2017
- implementing Phase 2 of the digital development programme, which is focused on providing connectivity to 1 797 of 35 211 sites by March 2019
- establishing the wholesale open access network through developing the implementation plan for wholesale open access network(s) by March 2018.

It also want to improve security by establishing cybersecurity institutional capacity by:

- establishing a fully fledged cybersecurity hub by March 2019
- facilitating and monitoring the implementation of the cybersecurity awareness plan by March 2019.

In addition, the DTPS wants to create an effective national spectrum framework to ensure that citizens realise socio-economic benefits from the use of the radio spectrum by finalising the South African positions and proposals for the World Radiocommunication Conference 2019 in line with the participation plan and framework by March 2019.

The department is aware of the interconnectedness of broadband and the licensing of radio frequency spectrum, which is a scarce natural resource.

The Broadband Strategy and Implementation Plan outlines fibre connectivity across the country to district level.

An infrastructure gap analysis study has indicated that there is a gap between the high-capacity backbone and access to network infrastructure.

This gap is biggest in rural areas and in particular in former homeland states where the most marginalised communities live. There are also some urban areas with high population densities that remain unserved.

However, the real gap is in the last-mile or "local loop" infrastructure. There is considerable duplication and potential underexploitation of infrastructure in metropolitan areas because these areas were commercially attractive to service providers.

To address this gap, Government had found it necessary to consider a range of interventions on both the demand and supply-side of broadband.

Supply side interventions to encourage investment and rollout of infrastructure include:

- support for public/private investment initiatives
- increased competition
- expansion of core and access networks
- enablement of infrastructure sharing
- promotion of coordinated build programmes
- allocation of prime spectrum to support universal access.

To complement the supply chain, Government determined a number of demand-side interventions. These seek to stimulate the uptake and usage of broadband services and products:

- increased affordability of services and devices
- aggregation of government demand to enhance procurement
- alignment of regulatory framework
- development of ICT skills and e-literacy
- development of local content, applications
- stimulation of niche manufacturing.

Internet

The South African Internet user population passed the 20-million mark for the first time in 2016, reaching 21 million, and was expected to grow to at least 22.5 million in 2017.

This is the main finding of of the Internet Access in South Africa 2017 study, released in July 2017 by World Wide Worx.

The report reveals that the single most common use of the Internet among South African adults is communication, reported by almost a third (31%) of respondents, followed by social networking (24,9%) and information (23,7%), both reported by almost a quarter of respondents. Only then comes entertainment at 22,1%.

According to Stats SA's GHS 2017, just over six-tenths of South African households (61,8%) had at least one member who used the Internet either at home, their places of work or study or at Internet cafés.

Access to the Internet at home was highest among households in Western Cape (25,7%) and Gauteng (16,5%), and lowest in Limpopo (2,2%) and Eastern Cape (3,5%).

Social media

The SA Social Media Landscape 2019 report, released on 15 October 2018 by Ornico, the Brand Intelligence organisation, and World Wide Worx, shows that across age groups, the racial divide and lifestyle measures, there is little difference in Facebook penetration.

The data highlights the impact of the launch in South Africa of Facebook Lite in 2015, and some network operators allowing it to be used without data charges being incurred.

This meant a massive uptake of Facebook Messenger as a cheap or free means of sending instant messages, and led to Facebook spreading evenly among all population segments.

The Social Media Landscape report shows that there are now 21-million Facebook users in South Africa, representing 28% of the population. This is up from 19-million users a year ago.

The study reveals that Instagram grew a massive 73% , from 3.8 million to 6.6 million in 2017. This is largely thanks to the intense usage of the photo-sharing platform by media, music and fashion personalities.

The top 25 most followed South Africans on Instagram include only one individual from outside these ranks: cricketer AB de Villiers, who enjoys a massive fan base in India, takes the number one position of South Africans on Instagram, with no less than 6.4-million followers.

The rapid growth brings Instagram into the Big Five of social networks in South Africa, behind Facebook, YouTube, Twitter and LinkedIn. Although Twitter growth has flattened – both globally and in South Africa – it still picked up another 300 000 new followers in 2017 to take it to 8.3-milion users.

By mid-2018, it was estimated that there were over nine million YouTube users in South Africa. The most popular YouTube channel in the country, for the fifth year running, remains Kruger Sightings, the wildlife video-sharing community started by then schoolboy Nadav Ossendryver when he was 15. It has passed the million subscriber mark and has had around 800-million views.

LinkedIn, which is intended for business and career networking, now has 6.8-million users in South Africa, up 11 % from 2017.

Cybercrime and cybersecurity

Identity fraud, stalking, online child pornography and terrorism have become daily occurrences that threaten communities' ability to enjoy the benefits of new technologies.

The Cybersecurity Hub, pooling public and private sector threat information is responsible for processing and disseminating information to relevant stakeholders in the industry and civil society.

Mobile communications

South Africa has one of the largest telecommunications markets on the continent. It has five mobile operators, namely Cell C, MTN, Vodacom, Telkom Mobile and virtual network operator Virgin Mobile.

According to Stats SA's GHS 2017, nationally, only 3,5% of households did not have access to either landlines or cellular phones in 2017. Inadequate access to telephones was most common in Northern Cape (10,0%) and Eastern Cape (7,1%).

Nationally, 88,2% of households had access to at least one cellular phone, while 8,2% of households had access to both a landline and a cellular phone.

Only 0,1% of households had only a landline. However, access to these means of communication differed by province. Households in historically rural provinces such as Mpumalanga (95,0%) and Limpopo (94,4%) were very reliant on the more accessible cellular telephones than landlines.

By contrast, a combination of both cellular phones and landlines in households were most prevalent in the more affluent provinces, namely Western Cape (19,6%) and Gauteng (10,2%).

Postal sector

The cornerstone of national policy for the postal sector is the provision of a universal service at an affordable price and an acceptable standard for all citizens. To ensure this, a universal service obligation has been placed on SAPO.

To offset the cost of providing a basic service in low-density, rural or unviable areas, it has also been common practice to confer exclusive rights and privileges, i.e. a monopoly on the provision of the basic letter service.

Mail Business has 26 mail-sorting centres for domestic mail and parcels, and three international sorting centres for international mail and parcels. Between these centres, some six million mail items are handled daily and 50 tons of parcels are processed a year.

Specialised SAPO products include:

- Securemail
- Speed Services Couriers
- Parcelplus
- insurance and cash-on-delivery
- Postbank
- a courier freight group made up of XPS and PX
- Docex.

Philatelic Services

SAPO's Philatelic Services is responsible for producing South Africa's postage stamps and other stamp-related products.

SAPO prints more than 380 million postage stamps a year. They not only reach every corner of South Africa, but also the rest of the world. Although stamps are produced mainly to serve as prepayment for postage, their beauty and historical significance have inspired people to collect them since the first postage stamps were produced in England in 1840.

Over the years, many of them have become valuable collector's items. For example, the first triangular postage stamp was issued on 1 September 1853 in the Cape of Good Hope, which was a British colony at the time. The triangular-shaped stamp, which became known as the Cape Triangular, was the first stamp to be issued in Africa and has become a highly sought-after collector's item worldwide.

Stamp issues are divided into two main categories:

- Definitive stamps are issued every five to seven years and comprise a set of designs in a full range of face values to

provide for the country's postal needs. They usually reflect a particular theme.
- Commemorative stamps are issued according to an annual commemorative stamp-issuing. programme. Between 12 and 15 commemorative issues are produced per year. They often commemorate significant historical events or people, or coincide with important days.

Postbank

The Postbank Limited Act of 2010 allows SAPO to prioritise the banking needs of the unbanked majority, thus facilitating their inclusion into the economic mainstream. The Act established the Postbank division of SAPO as a separate legal entity, with the principal aim of expanding the existing range of banking services to, among others:
- improve access to affordable services, including loans, especially in rural and lower-income communities
- promote a culture of saving.

The media

South Africa is fortunate to have vibrant and independent media.

According to the Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:
- freedom of the press and other media
- freedom to receive or impart information or ideas
- freedom of artistic creativity
- academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa.

In March 2017, there were 280 community broadcasting services, 275 community radio and five community TV stations; and it was estimated that there were 31 radio stations that only broadcast on the Internet.

Radio

Radio is a great communications medium and still enjoys the broadest reach of any media category in South Africa. The diversity of stations, formats, voices and offerings ensures that most of the public's needs are catered for.

It also fulfils a vital need for information and entertainment, with relatively low costs to the distributors and the listeners.

As a communication medium, radio has very few barriers to access. SABC Radio has more than 25 million listeners weekly in South Africa.

The fact that radio cuts across boundaries of illiteracy strengthens the importance of the medium to the consumer and the advertiser.

The SABC's national radio network comprises 18 radio stations, of which 15 are dedicated specifically to public-service broadcasting.

These include 11 full-spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa; a cultural service for the Indian community broadcasting in English; a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English; and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape.

The SABC has three stations in its commercial portfolio. These are 5FM, Metro FM and Good Hope FM. Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:
- Algoa FM
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- 94.7 Highveld Stereo
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Good Hope FM
- Jacaranda 94.2
- OFM
- East Coast Radio
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- Capricorn FM
- Power FM
- Radio KFM.

Stations such as 94.2 Jacaranda FM, 94.7 Highveld Stereo, OFM, Algoa FM, Classic FM, Kaya FM and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster.

Many of South Africa's radio stations are also available online.

Community radio

Community broadcasting remains an important project for the DoC. From the early days of Cape Town's Bush Radio, Africa's oldest community radio station project, to today's broadcasting landscape which boasts more than 200 stations across the country's nine provinces, community radio has provided communities with an indispensable platform from which to raise awareness of their grass roots issues, irrespective of race, gender, disability or economic class.

Still a relatively youthful sector, community radio can trace its origins back to Bush Radio, the idea for which started in the 1980s when community activists and alternative media producers explored ways in which media could be used for social upliftment. The radio was officially formed in 1992, broadcasting illegally following numerous attempts to apply for a broadcast license from the apartheid government.

It was however only after the first democratic elections of 1994 that South Africa saw the liberalisation of the airwaves with the establishment of an independent regulator, the Independent Broadcasting Authority (IBA), now the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA).

In 2002, the MDDA Act of 2002 was promulgated giving further, significant impetus to the transformation of the media. Published figures indicate that listenership of community radio as compared to total radio audience has moved from 8% in 1997 to 28% some 20 years later and a national listenership of 9 million out of the total radio audience of approximately 33 million.

The community radio sector also contributes to the promotion of indigenous languages and cultural groups. Across the more than 150 community broadcast projects that have received funding from the MDDA, the full spectrum of South African languages can be heard.

Television

The SABC's television network comprises three television channels – all free-to-air. South African television is broadcast in all 11 official languages.

Community TV

In 2007, Soweto TV was the first community television station to obtain a seven-year broadcasting licence from ICASA.

Since then, more seven-year licences have been issued to stations operating in Soweto, Cape Town, Tshwane, Empangeni and Nelson Mandela Bay. The issuing of new community television licences is on hold until the migration from analogue to digital broadcasting is complete.

Free-to-air TV

e.tv is South Africa's first private FTA TV channel. It is the largest English-medium channel in the country and the second largest overall. e.tv also has a pan-African presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed on the DStv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries.

Satellite broadcasting

eNews Channel Africa (eNCA) is South Africa's first and most watched independent 24-hour TV news channel on the DStv

platform (Channel 403).

The 24-hour news service is broadcast live in the UK to over 10,5 million subscribers on the Sky digital satellite platform.

eNCA provides live news bulletins to nearly three million South African viewers each night on e.tv (in English, isiZulu and Sesotho) and to more than 200 000 Afrikaans viewers on kykNET. The SABC's also has its own 24-hour news channel on DStv (Channel 404).

Print

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, characterised by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

Newspapers

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses. These include Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd and Tiso Blackstar Group. Other important media players include M&G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; RamsayMedia, and Kagiso Media.

Some of the prominent daily and weekly newspapers in South Africa include: *The Sunday Times*, *Citizen*, *Sowetan*, *The Daily Sun*, *The Witness*, *Sunday World*, *City Press*, *The Weekly Mail and Guardian*, *Beeld*, *Pretoria News*, *The Star*, *Die Burger*, *The Cape Argus*, *Cape Times*, *Son*, *Daily Dispatch*, *The Herald*, *The Daily News*, *The Mercury*, *The Witness*, *Business Day*, *Die Volksblad*, *Diamond Fields Advertiser*, *Isolezwe*, *Rapport*, *Sunday Tribune*, *Sunday Sun*, *Ilanga*, *The Post* and *Soccer Laduma*.

Magazines

According to figures released by the Audit Bureau of Circulations of South Africa, there has been a steady decline in magazine circulation in South Africa over the past months, with only a handful of commercial magazines achieving a steady increase in circulation.

Online media

In 2016, almost 70% of South Africans browsed the web on their mobile. From 2015, this was an increase of 15%, according to the South Africa Mobile Report released by the Interactive Advertising Bureau South Africa, an independent, voluntary, non-profit association focused on growing and sustaining a vibrant and profitable digital industry within South Africa.

A total of 4 993 mobile internet users in South Africa were surveyed from November 2016 to January 2017.

News24 is the largest site in the country, followed by Gumtree and TimesLive. According to the Effective Measure statistics, News24 attracted 5,9 million unique visitors in June 2016. Gumtree was second with 4,4 million visitors and TimesLive third with 3,4 million.

Media organisations and role players

The non-profit-making Print and Digital Media South Africa (PDMSA) was originally formed to bring together under one roof publishers of diverse print genres.

The PDMSA recognised the advantages of extending its footprint online by extending its membership to include digital media publications. By the end of 2018, the PDMSA membership included more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles that cater for four different language groups.

The members include Caxton and CTP; Independent Newspapers; Media24; *Mail & Guardian*, and the Association of Independent Publishers, the latter which represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

Tiso Blackstar Group – whose stable includes the *Sunday Times*, *Sowetan*, *Financial Mail and The Herald* – is the largest, national English-language publishing group in South Africa and the country's second-largest digital publisher.

It also owns the largest music and independent film catalogue in Africa; TV channels, TV production facilities and radio stations in Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria and South Africa.

The **South African National Editors' Forum** (SANEF) was formed at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors and senior journalism educators and trainers.

The **Forum of Journalists for Transformation** addresses issues that directly affect its members.

The **Press Council**, the **Press Ombud** and the **Appeals Panel** are an independent co-regulatory mechanism set up by the print and online media to provide impartial, expeditious and cost-effective adjudication to settle disputes between newspapers, magazines and online publications, on the one hand, and members of the public, on the other, over the editorial content of publications.

The **Freedom of Expression Institute (FXI)** was formed to defend freedom of expression, to oppose censorship, to promote access to information and knowledge, and to promote media diversity. The FXI is the leading organisation on issues of freedom of expression and access to information as enshrined in section 16 of the South African Constitution.

The **Forum of Community Journalists** is an independent, non-profit, non-racial and voluntary organisation striving to promote and express the interests of all journalists employed on a permanent or freelance basis at regional community newspapers, magazines and online community publications in South Africa.

The **Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa** is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct.

Media Monitoring Africa is a non-profit organisation that acts in a watchdog role to promote ethical and fair journalism that supports human rights.

The **National Community Radio Forum** lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the Foreign Correspondents' Association of Southern Africa; Printing Industries Federation of South Africa; South African Typographical Union; Specialist Press Association; South African Guild of Motoring Journalists; Professional Photographers of South Africa; Media Institute of Southern Africa; Publishers' Association of South Africa, and various press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

Local and international news agencies based in South Africa include:

- African News Agency
- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press
- Deutsche Presse Agentur
- United Press International.

Media awards

Some of South Africa's media awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards
- Vodacom Journalist of the Year Awards
- South African Breweries (SAB) Environmental Media and Environmentalist of the Year Awards
- SAB Sports Media Awards
- Sanlam Financial Journalist of the Year Award
- CNN MultiChoice African Journalist Awards
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards
- SANEF's Nat Nakasa Award
- Local Media Excellence Awards
- Liberty Radio Awards
- Isu Elihle Awards
- Standard Bank Sikuvile Awards
- New Generation Social & Digital Media Awards.

Advertising

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic advertising industry.

Local advertising agencies are often recognised internationally for their excellence.

Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims.

It is an independent body established and funded by the marketing communication industry to manage advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation.

The ASA cooperates with Government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

The code is the ASA's guiding document based on the International Code of Advertising Practice, prepared by the International Chamber of Commerce.

Drawn up by the ASA with the participation of representatives of the marketing-communication industry, the code is amended from time to time to meet the changing needs of the industry and of South African society.

Advertising awards

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic advertising industry. The Loeries® are Africa and the Middle East's premiere initiative that recognises, rewards, inspires and fosters creative excellence in the brand communication industry.

The 40th Annual Loerie Awards ceremony was held at the Inkosi Albert Luthuli International Convention Centre in August 2018.

A total to 287 Loeries were awarded across 14 categories, including six Grands Prix, 31 Golds, 69 Silvers, 113 Bronzes, 18 Craft Golds and 50 Craft Certificates.

More than 2 500 entries were received, with 15% of entries from outside South Africa. A total of 700 brands were represented by 265 agencies from 15 countries across Africa and the Middle East.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Economy

The South African economy grew by 2,2% quarter-on-quarter (seasonally adjusted and annualised) in the third quarter of 2018, bringing to an end the country's second recession since 1994.

Higher contributions to growth in a number of industries – most notably in manufacturing, transport as well as finance and business services – were enough to lift economic growth back into positive territory.

The rise in economic activity in the third quarter follows two consecutive quarters of negative growth, which is a widely recognised indicator of recession. The economy slumped by 2,6% in the first quarter of 2018 and a further 0,4%1 in the second quarter.

Manufacturing was the main driver of positive growth in the third quarter. The industry grew by 7,5%2, largely as a result of increased production of basic iron and steel, metal products and machinery; wood and paper; petroleum products; and motor vehicles. This is the largest jump in manufacturing production since the second quarter of 2016.

After contracting in the second quarter, the transport, storage and communication industry rebounded by 5,7% in the third quarter, making it the second largest contributor to overall growth. An increase in freight transportation underpinned the rise in activity. This is the largest quarter-on-quarter increase for transport, storage and communication since the third quarter of 2007.

The finance, real estate and business services industry was another strong supporter of GDP growth, edging up by 2,3%. It was specifically the activities related to financial intermediation, insurance and real estate which performed better in the third quarter, contributing to the rise.

The agriculture industry bounced back from two consecutive quarters of negative growth to record a 6,5% rise in the third quarter. Strong growth in the production of field crops, horticultural cultivation and animal products contributed to the rebound.

The mining industry was the biggest detractor from economic growth, declining by 8,8%. Lower production levels were recorded for platinum group metals, iron ore, gold, copper and nickel.

Key facts from the third quarter 2018 GDP release:

- Expenditure on GDP increased by 2,3% in the third quarter of 2018.
- Gross fixed capital formation fell by 5,1% in the third quarter, largely as a result of declining investment in construction works, transport equipment, and non-residential buildings.
- Households spent more on food, beverages and household furnishings in the third quarter, driving up household final consumption expenditure by 1,6%.
- Unadjusted real GDP (measured by production) was up by 0,8% in the first nine months of 2018, compared with the first nine months of 2017.

Economic indicators

Domestic outlook

The National Treasury forecasts that GDP growth will slow to 0.7% in 2018, down from 1.3% last year, before rising to 1.7% in 2019 and 2.1% in 2020. The economic outlook is weaker than projected in the February 2018 Budget, which forecast 1.5% and 1.8% GDP growth in 2018 and 2019 respectively.

Agriculture and mining are expected to return to moderate growth in the next 12 months, and business and consumer confidence are expected to improve gradually over the medium term. Despite lower commodity prices, the resolution of several longstanding policy issues over the past six months is expected to support investment in mining and energy.

Higher agricultural output is expected as a result of improved rainfall in the Western Cape this year.

Household consumption

Household consumption grew by 2.3% in the first half of 2018, up from 1.6% over the same period in 2017. Lower food inflation and the stronger rand in the first quarter of 2018 helped boost purchasing power and demand for durable and semi-durable goods.

Credit conditions have improved moderately: household credit growth continues to tick up and the rejection rate for new applications has eased. An optimistic growth outlook supported higher consumer confidence in the first half of 2018.

Growth in household consumption expenditure is projected to reach 1.6% in 2018, rising to 2.6% in 2021. It is supported by a moderate recovery in wage and employment growth, and further improvements in household credit growth.

Investment

South Africa has experienced an extended period of weak investment. Growth in gross fixed-capital formation, after slowing to 0.1% in the first half of 2018, is expected to measure 0.9 per cent for the year as a whole, and 2.9% by 2021. Excluding investments in the utilities sector – primarily in electricity – growth in gross fixed-capital formation has averaged 1.5% per year since 2010, compared with average annual growth of 5.7% in the 2000s.

Low levels of demand and prolonged policy uncertainty have contributed to anaemic investment growth. In recent months, government has worked actively to improve the investment climate by strengthening governance in state institutions and removing policy bottlenecks in energy and mining.

The infrastructure fund will promote investment in major capital projects.

Employment

Unemployment remains extremely high. Government recognises the centrality of private-sector job creation in sustainably reducing joblessness.

Changes in employment levels over the past year have been marginal, with unemployment at 27.2% in the second quarter of 2018.

Formal non-agricultural employment grew by 0.3% in the first half of the year, compared with the same period in 2017. Average employment in the government sector, which accounts for about 21% of total formal non-agricultural employment, rose by 1.8% in the first half of the year, mostly as a result of temporary employment for voter registration.

Employment outside government declined by 0.1% t in the first half of 2018.

According to the Quarterly Employment Statistics (QES) survey released by Statistics South Africa (Stats SA), enterprise-surveyed formal non-agricultural employment decreased by an annualised 1.9% from the first to the second quarter of 2018.

This resulted in a loss of about 47 100 jobs, lowering the level of such employment to an estimated 9.8 million.

Formal non-agricultural employment increased marginally in the first half of 2018, despite the contraction in real GDP over this period.

The decrease in the second quarter of 2018 largely reflected the termination of around 66 700 temporary employment contracts by the Electoral Commission of South Africa (IEC).

When excluding this election-related employment, formal non-agricultural employment increased by 0.7% in the second quarter of 2018 and by 0.3% in the first quarter.

The decline in formal non-agricultural employment in the second quarter of 2018 resulted primarily from an annualised 11.3% decrease in public sector employment as the IEC terminated temporary employment.

When excluding these temporary jobs, public sector employment decreased at an annualised rate of only 0.4%. Job losses at provincial level, national departments and other public sector enterprises were partly offset by increased employment by local governments and the public transport, storage and communication sector.

Within a constrained fiscal environment, the 2018 MTBPS confirmed government's commitment to contain expenditure, which implies sustained limitations on public sector employment, apart from filling certain critical vacancies

The private sector added 20 100 jobs in the second quarter of 2018, despite the further contraction in real GDP. Employment gains in the trade, catering and accommodation services; finance, insurance, real estate and business services; construction; and private community, social and personal services sectors more than offset job losses in the mining; private transport, storage and communication services; and manufacturing sectors.

Mining sector employment decreased further in the second quarter of 2018, albeit at a slightly slower pace. Gold mining employment continued to decline for a seventh successive quarter along with a recent acceleration in the pace of decrease.

The number of people employed in the non-gold mining sector decreased only marginally in the second quarter. The protracted low platinum and gold prices as well as fairly low output weigh on employment prospects in the mining sector. It remains to be seen if the recently gazetted Mining Charter could facilitate policy and regulatory stability.

Manufacturing sector employment contracted for a fifth successive quarter in the second quarter of 2018, in step with weak output and business confidence.

The Absa Manufacturing Survey by Stellenbosch University's Bureau for Economic Research (BER) showed that manufacturing business confidence fell further to 21 index points in the third quarter of 2018, following a 10-point drop to 27 in the second quarter.

A sharp deterioration in domestic demand indicators in the second quarter of 2018 was followed by a further decline in sales and order volumes in the third quarter, and consequently production volumes and employment indicators remained in contractionary territory.

Insufficient demand and the general political climate also weighed heavily on manufacturers' willingness to invest over the next 12 months, with respondents scaling back current and planned investment outlays.

Employment in the construction sector increased marginally in the second quarter of 2018, following two successive quarterly declines.

When measured over four quarters, construction sector employment contracted for seven successive quarters up to the second quarter of 2018, with a cumulative 24 400 jobs lost since the first quarter of 2017.

Weighed down by weak growth in construction activity and declining order books – 91% of respondents reported a lack of new construction work as a business constraint – the First National Bank (FNB)/BER Civil Confidence Index increased by only two index points to 17 in the third quarter of 2018, remaining below 20 for a third successive quarter.

Tender competition moderated due to attrition as financially distressed construction companies ended up in business rescue or liquidation.

Building confidence, as measured by the FNB/BER Building Confidence Index, remained unchanged at 29 index points in the third quarter of 2018 – its lowest level since the third quarter of 2012.

This reflected continued low residential building activity and a marked slowdown in non-residential building activity

Employment in the finance, insurance, real estate and business services sector increased for a third successive quarter in the second quarter of 2018.

Similarly, the trade, catering and accommodation services sector created a cumulative 31 900 jobs in the four quarters up to the second quarter of 2018.

Despite the increase in employment, the BER's Retail Survey showed that business confidence among retailers remained unchanged at 33 index points in the third quarter of 2018, following a decline from 42 in the first quarter.

This portrays a constrained consumer environment which lowers prospects for further employment growth in the trade sector in the short run. Employment in the services sectors grew consistently in recent years, except for a brief period in 2014.

This provided support to private sector employment at a time when the goods-producing sectors experienced notable job losses due to company closures and retrenchments.

The services sectors tend to absorb unskilled workers in low-paying jobs – often with unspecified and limited-duration employment contracts in the retail trade sector and in business services not elsewhere classified, often through labour brokers.

The total number of people employed in South Africa, as measured by the Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS) of Stats SA, increased by 92 000 from the second to the third quarter of 2018, and by 188 000 (or 1.2%) over four quarters, increasing the level of total employment to approximately 16.38 million.

The informal sector created a notable 327 000 jobs in the year to the third quarter of 2018, while the formal non-agricultural sector shed 125 000 jobs. Annual employment gains occurred in the construction (137 000), community and social services (59 000), finance (38 000), agriculture (32 000), trade (20 000), transport (8 000) and electricity (3 000) sectors.

However, job losses were observed in private households (46 000), mining (40 000) and manufacturing (30 000). Annual job creation took place only in the unspecified contract category, with approximately 84 000 job gains.

Discouragingly, there were 163 000 permanent jobs lost and a further 29 000 part-time contracts terminated in the year to the

third quarter of 2018.

The number of unemployed South Africans increased by 127 000 from the second quarter of 2018 to approximately 6.21 million in the third quarter, while decreasing marginally by 1 000 from a year earlier.

The number of discouraged work seekers increased markedly by 297 000 (or 12.2%) to around 2.73 million in the year to the third quarter of 2018, but decreased by 88 000 from the second to the third quarter.

The increase in the number of new entrants to the labour force – 179 000 (or 7.8%) – in the third quarter of 2018 resulted in part from more discouraged work seekers engaging in renewed job searching activity, lifting the official unemployment rate.

Within this context, the official unemployment rate increased from 27.2% in the second quarter of 2018 to 27.5% in the third quarter, marginally lower than the 27.7% recorded a year earlier.

Similarly, the seasonally adjusted unemployment rate increased from 27.0% in the second quarter of 2018 to 27.3% in the third quarter.

The youth unemployment rate (for people aged 15 to 24 years) decreased from 53.7% in the second quarter of 2018 to 52.8% in the third quarter, marginally up from 52.2% a year earlier.

Constructive engagements between business, organised labour, the community and government at the 2018 Jobs Summit – prioritising the need to protect and create jobs – are encouraging to address South Africa's high unemployment rate.

Price inflation

Headline inflation continued to ease in 2018, averaging 4.5% over the first eight months of the year compared with 5.5% over the same period in 2017. This trend was largely driven by lower food inflation.

Core inflation, which excludes food, fuel and electricity prices, slowed from 4.9% in the first eight months of 2017 to 4.2% over the same period in 2018. Inflation expectations have eased slightly in 2018 but remain near the upper end of the 3% to 6% t target range.

Higher inflation is expected during the remainder of 2018 in response to administered price increases. In recent months, rising oil prices and a weaker currency led to a sharp increase in fuel prices.

Electricity prices, which rose by 2.1% in August 2017, increased by 7.8% in August 2018. Headline inflation is projected to average 4.9% in 2018, rising to 5.4% by 2021 as food price inflation returns to its historic average.

The medium-term outlook has adjusted the assumption of electricity price inflation from 8% to 10%.

South Africa's consumer inflation rate jumped to 4,5% in April 2018 after reaching a seven-year low of 3,8% in March. Much of the increase was a result of price rises in product groups that attract specific taxes, namely alcohol, fuel and sugary drinks.

A one percentage point increase in value added tax (VAT) also came into effect in April. The exact impact on inflation is not yet entirely clear in the data, since VAT is not paid on all goods and services, and the introduction of the higher rate is being treated differently by providers.

The price for inland 93 octane petrol increased by 69c/l in April, of which 52c was a result of tax increases. Fuel prices in general have risen by 9,0% over the past 12 months, placing fuel as the number 1 product (on par with meat) with the highest year-on-year price increase.

Excise taxes on alcohol and tobacco, which came into effect in February 2018, are slowly permeating the market as retailers fill their shelves with new stock. Prices for alcoholic beverages climbed by 1,2% in March 2018 compared with February 2018, according to the inflation data, followed by a further 1,6% increase in April. Beer experienced an annual price increase of 8,0%.

The new Health Promotion Levy or 'sugar tax' on cool drinks came into effect in April at a rate of 2,1 cents per gram of sugar content exceeding 4 grams per 100ml.

Cell phone fees increased by 2,6% in April. This index normally shows very little movement and this is the largest monthly increase since 2008 when Stats SA started recording the prices of cell phone fees.

There were items in the inflation basket that experienced a fall in price over. Fruit prices, for example, fell by 8,2%, bread and cereals went down by 3,7%, desserts and sweets by 1,5%, and oils and fats by 1,0%.

Exchange rates

In the first three quarters of 2018, the rand weakened by 12.4% against the US dollar. The currency depreciated largely in response to a strengthening of the dollar, negative investor sentiment induced by market volatility in Turkey and Argentina, and wider concerns about trade tensions. Low levels of domestic economic growth contributed to rand weakness.

Creating partnerships for growth

The October 2018 Jobs Summit strengthened the partnership between government, business, labour and communities. Highlights included:

- Improving the efficiency of government spending, for example by increasing placement ratios in the private sector for beneficiaries of public employment programmes, and receiving local procurement commitments from the private sector.
- Project-specific collaboration, as demonstrated by partnerships between commercial farmers, lenders and black farmers.
- Improving policy certainty through consultations that respond to affected groups, evidenced in both the extension of the employment tax incentive as well as changes in the training lay-off scheme.

The Youth Employment Service, a business-led initiative launched in March 2018, offers one-year work experience and training alongside job placement services. Government supports the initiative, which also benefits from the employment tax incentive and enhanced broad-based black economic empowerment recognition.

In December 2018, President Cyril Ramaphosa announced that the NMW will be implemented from 1 January 2019. The NMW of R20 an hour represents a marked increase in income for more than six million workers – or 47% of South Africa's labour force – who earn less than R20 an hour. This rate is subject to future adjustments in terms of the NMW Act of 2018.

The NMW is expected to significantly improve the lives of millions of low-paid workers and begin to address the challenge of wage inequality.

The Jobs Summit resulted in an agreement to extend the

employment tax incentive, due to lapse in 2019, for 10 years. The incentive, which encourages the hiring of younger workers, supported about 690 000 jobs in the 2016 tax year.

The Small Business and Innovation Fund will help entrepreneurs and small businesses to navigate the pre-start-up phase and provide support as they scale up their enterprises. This will complement the work of the CEO Initiative's SME Fund, which has raised R1.4 billion to date, with about R500 million expected to be committed for debt and equity investments in SMEs by the first quarter of 2019.

The financial sector has committed to invest R100 billion over five years in black industrial enterprises and firms. The Financial Sector Transformation Council is working with the Department of Trade and Industry to finalise guidelines for the disbursement of this funding.

The infrastructure fund announced as part of the President's economic stimulus and recovery plan is intended to encourage capital investment by the private sector and development finance institutions in public infrastructure. The fund will build on work under way in government to improve the planning and management of large infrastructure projects.

Government expenditure

Government spending is expected to total R5.9 trillion over the MTEF period, growing at an annual average of 7.8% per year.

Funding remains focused on ensuring access to health and education, supporting low-income households through social grants, and providing basic services such as water and electricity.

The expenditure ceiling remains unchanged from the 2018 Budget. Of the R32.4 billion of expenditure reprioritised over the medium term, R15.9 billion goes towards faster-spending infrastructure programmes, clothing and textile incentives, and job creation under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

The public-service wage bill constitutes the largest share of government expenditure by economic classification, crowding out other spending. The wage agreement reached in 2018 adds to these pressures.

National and provincial government will work with municipalities to improve governance and confront weaknesses in financial management.

The main budget expenditure ceiling, which includes the contingency reserve, has anchored fiscal policy since the 2012 budget. Allocations made over the MTEF period provide an agreed-upon upper limit within which departments prepare their budgets.

The expenditure ceiling will be maintained for the next two years and is set to grow at 1.5% in real terms in 2021/22 — largely in line with average real GDP growth over the past decade.

Non-interest expenditure remains broadly unchanged as a share of GDP over the medium term. In real terms, non-interest spending grows by an average 1.9% year. This includes a contingency reserve amounting to R7 billion in 2019/20, R8 billion in 2020/21 and R12 billion in 2021/22.

To ensure the expenditure ceiling remains intact, and to support policy priorities, baselines are reprioritised by a total of R32.4 billion over the next three years. Funding of non-performing and under-performing areas has been reallocated, baselines have been reduced, the contingency reserve has been drawn down and provisional allocations have been adjusted.

Reprioritised resources support the President's economic stimulus and recovery plan, and some non-discretionary and infrastructure spending pressures. In addition, R14.7 billion has been shifted within grants for upgrading informal settlements.

In 2016, government introduced legally binding compensation ceilings for national departments. These ceilings remain unchanged over the MTEF period ahead, with departments expected to absorb any shortfall within their current allocations.

Overall growth

According to the 2017/18 budget speech, in 2016/17 the economy grew by 0,3% and is projected to grow by 1% this year. The total income produced by the economy every year is now R4,3 trillion. Net foreign direct investment worth R33 billion flowed into South Africa, a growth of 50%.

Financial ranking

South Africa's performance in the 2018 World Bank's Ease of Doing Business Index (EDB) is ranking at 82nd out of 190 economies.

The World Bank notes two areas of improvement in the EDB 2018, being: South Africa has made starting a business easier by reducing the time for online business registration, and the country improved the monitoring of electricity outages through recording data to monitor outages better.

The World Bank's Ease of Doing Business Report, whcih was released in October, is an indicator of the ease of doing business in various economies around the world.

The 2018 Ibrahim Index of African Governance (IIAG) report, also shows that South Africa has fallen from 6th to 7th position. The IIAG provides an annual measure of governance efficiency of African countries.

The report covers 54 countries and base its analysis on 100 indicators that are drawn from 36 independent sources which together fall into 4 broad thematic categories: Safety & Rule of Law; Participation & Human Rights; Sustainable Economic Opportunity; and Human Development.

South Africa's performance also showed a decline in the 2018-2019 World Economic Forum (WEF) Global Competitiveness Index (WEF GCI). The country now ranks 61 out of 140 economies assessed in the annual s urvey.

South Africa's national strengths can be found in the Finance System ranking 18th, its Market Size at 35th, with strong performance in Business Dynamics at 56th, the Labour Market at 55th, with a relatively good ranking for Economic Stability at 57th. In the context of the 4th Industrial Revolution it is notable that South Africa ranks 46th for Innovation Capability.

Economic Development Department (EDD)

The EDD has assumed responsibilities relating to the creation of decent employment through inclusive economic growth, including the implementation of certain aspects of the NDP, the NGP and the national infrastructure plan as captured in outcomes 4, 6 and 7 of government's 2014 – 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

The department is also responsible for five public entities, comprising three regulatory bodies and two development

finance institutions. These are: the Competition Commission, the Competition Tribunal, the International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa (ITAC), the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) of South Africa and the Small Enterprise Finance Agency (Sefa).

Legislation

In line with these responsibilities, the department's mandate includes the administration of the following legislation:

- The Industrial Development Act, 1940 (Act 22 of 1940).
- The Competition Act, 1998 (Act 89 of 1998).
- The International Trade Administration Act, 2002 (Act 71 of 2002).
- The Infrastructure Development Act, 2014 (Act 23 of 2014).

Budget and funding

The EDD aims to drive government's priorities of job creation, inclusive economic growth and industrialisation, and to support the alignment of the State in implementing policies.

The department focuses its work in relation to Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth) of government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF.

The department's 2009 NGP for creating the jobs that South Africa needs aims for the collective achievement of a more developed and equitable economy and society over the medium term, in the context of sustained growth.

It sets out critical markers for employment creation and growth, and identifies where viable changes in the structure and character of production can generate a more inclusive and greener economy over the medium to longer term.

To that end, it combines macroeconomic and microeconomic interventions. Over the medium term, the department will make interventions aimed at integrating its NGP, including: interventions in infrastructure initiatives, support to provinces on economic planning, and strategic support to development finance institutions and regulatory bodies.

Cabinet has approved reductions of R8,3 million for 2017/18 and R13,5 million for 2018/19 to the department's compensation of employees budget. The reductions are part of Cabinet's decision to lower the national aggregate expenditure ceiling.

The department's operational expenditure is largely on compensation of employees for the skilled personnel required to drive its policy and coordination interventions.

A reduction in personnel will be mitigated through partnerships with higher education institutions to provide technical expertise as it is required. After consultation with the Department of Public Service and Administration and National Treasury, the department will develop and implement a plan to manage its personnel expenditure within its reduced personnel budget.

The department's goods and services budget has been reduced by R1,2 million for 2017/18 and R1,4 million for 2018/19, particularly in travel and subsistence. The department plans to mitigate the impact of the reductions by shifting expenditure from nonperforming areas.

For the 2017/18 financial year, the department was allocated R914.2 million.

Interventions in infrastructure initiatives

The EDD continues its work as secretariat to the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC), which focuses on 18 national strategic integrated projects (SIPs). The secretariat's work is budgeted for in the Investment, Competition and Trade programme. R51,5 million over the medium term is allocated to compensation of employees in this programme.

The EDD will provide 60 annual progress reports to Cabinet on the SIPs and unblock, fast-track and facilitate other infrastructure projects. The focus includes unblocking water use licence applications and environmental impact assessments so that projects can commence.

As the chair of the Saldanha-Northern Cape development corridor (SIP 5), the EDD will drive the corridor's implementation over the medium term. The Saldanha-Northern Cape development corridor promotes integrated rail and port expansion and back-of-port industrial capacity, strengthens maritime support capacity for oil and gas along the African West Coast, and expands iron ore mining production and beneficiation.

Support to provinces on economic planning

The EDD was expected to continue supporting provinces on economic planning through a number of spatial, local and provincial economic initiatives. By the end of 2015, support was being provided to the Free State, Eastern Cape, Northern Cape, North West, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal.

Over the medium term, the department was expected to use 30 economic development initiatives to promote employment, empowerment and development in all the provinces. Support to provinces on economic planning is budgeted for in the Growth Path and Social Dialogue programme, and the increase in activities over the medium term drives expenditure to grow at an average annual rate of 12,4%, from R27,9 million in 2015/16 to R39,6 million by 2018/19.

Strategic support to development finance institutions and regulatory bodies

The EDD continues to oversee and provide strategic direction to the development finance institutions and regulatory bodies reporting to it. This work accounts for 81% of total departmental spending over the medium term, or R1,7 billion, in the Investment, Competition and Trade programme.

The EDD will evaluate development finance institutions' performance on the impact of jobs. The department expects to have four strategic engagements per year with development finance institutions over the medium term, to improve administrative efficiencies and decrease turnaround times for project approvals.

The department will also undertake 14 engagements with the trade and competition regulatory bodies to improve administrative efficiencies and ensure that the competition authorities address the abuse of market power and support government's employment, industrialisation and development objectives.

To further support the work of the competition authorities, the allocation over the medium term to the Competition Tribunal has been increased to strengthen its capacity.

Regulatory and development finance institutions

Competition Commission

The Competition Commission is a statutory body constituted in terms of the Competition Act of 1998. It is empowered to

investigate, control and evaluate restrictive business practices, including the abuse of dominant positions and mergers; and to promote the advocacy of competition issues to achieve equity and efficiency in the South African economy. The commission's total budget for 2016/17 was R268,7 million.

Competition Tribunal

The Competition Tribunal was established in terms of the Competition Act of 1998. All large corporate mergers and allegations of restrictive practices are brought before the tribunal by the Competition Commission and interested parties for adjudication.

International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa

The ITAC is mandated to manage an efficient and effective trade administration system. It was established in terms of the International Trade Administration Act of 2002. The ITAC is mandated to foster economic growth and development to raise incomes and promote investment and employment, in South Africa and within the Common Customs Union Area.

This is done by establishing an efficient and effective system for the administration of international trade, subject to this Act and the Southern African Customs Union Agreement.

The core functions are customs tariff investigations, trade remedies, and import and export control.

Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa

The IDC is a national development finance institution established in terms of the Industrial Development Act of 1940 with the objective of leading industrial capacity development.

This entails aligning its priorities with those identified in terms of government policies and programmes related to industrial development, including relevant elements of the NDP, the NGP and the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP).

Small Enterprise Finance Agency (SEFA)

The SEFA was established in 2012 and combines the operations of Khula Enterprise Finance, the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund and the IDC's small business operations.

The SEFA provides non-financial business-development and support services for small enterprises.

This is in partnership with other role players ensuring their growth, sustainability and enhancing their competitiveness and capabilities through coordinated services, programmes and projects.

New Growth Path

The NGP is government's vision to place jobs and decent work at the centre of economic policy. It sets a target of five million new jobs to be created by 2020.

It sets out the key jobs drivers and the priority sectors that we will focus on over the next few years. It is based on strong and sustained, inclusive economic growth and the rebuilding of the productive sectors of the economy.

Infrastructure development in particular is a foundation for more jobs and addressing rural underdevelopment.

Green economy

South Africa is committed to pursuing and exploring opportunities in its transition to an inclusive, low-carbon, resource-efficient green economy.

Government aims to use all opportunities in the green economy to create jobs and cut carbon emissions. High-tech innovations will help employment grow over the long term, as new technology spreads throughout the economy and transforms other, larger sectors. South Africa's chemical industry is of substantial economic significance, contributing around 5% to the GDP and approximately 25% of manufacturing sales.

The Green Fund is budgeted for in the Environmental Programmes programme, receiving 3,8% or R290,5 million of the programme's budget over the medium term.

Established in 2011, the Green Fund is a national fund providing catalytic finance for investment in green initiatives that will support South Africa's transition towards a green economy.

The fund is additional and complementary to existing fiscal allocations, focusing on innovative projects that need to cover a funding or financing gap. The fund is managed by the Development Bank of Southern Africa on behalf of the Department of Environmental Affairs. In the 2017/18 financial year, the fund had a portfolio of 20 active and two completed investment projects, representing investment of R679.8 million since the fund's inception

Over the medium term, the Green Fund is expected to receive additional allocations from the economic competitiveness and support package of R95 million in 2018/19, R111 million in 2019/20 and R117.1 million in 2020/21.

Direct investment into projects, including co-investments and additional support realised thus far, amount to R285 million, with contributions from the private sector amounting to R91 million.

Drawing investment from the private sector is one of the key mandates of the fund. As investments begin to show favourable returns, it is expected that private sector investors will invest without any state involvement.

As a result, direct investment is expected to exceed R500 million over the medium term.

Department of Trade and Industry (the dti)

The mission of the dti is to promote structural transformation towards a dynamic industrial and globally competitive economy; provide a predictable, competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment, conducive to investment, trade and enterprise development; broaden participation in the economy to strengthen economic development; and continually improve the skills and capabilities of the dti to effectively deliver on its mandate and respond to the needs of South Africa's economic citizens.

The department's strategic objectives are to: facilitate transformation of the economy to promote industrial development, investment, competitiveness and employment creation; build mutually beneficial regional and global relations to advance South Africa's trade, industrial policy and economic development objectives; facilitate broad-based economic participation through targeted interventions to achieve more inclusive growth; create a fair regulatory environment that enables investment, trade and enterprise development in an equitable and socially responsible manner; and promote a professional, ethical, dynamic, competitive and customer-focused working environment that ensures effective and efficient service delivery.

The work of the dti supports Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth), Outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) and Outcome 11 (create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world) of government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF.

Key products and services

Economic Empowerment

The dti provides strategic direction in the development of policies and strategies that promote enterprise growth, empowerment and equity in the economy.

Industrial development

The Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP) provides a working outline of the National Programme of Action that has been put in place to implement the country's industrial policy objectives.

Trade, Exports and Investment

The dti plays a critical role in the promotion of economic development and meaningful participation in the global economic and trade environment. It achieves this by working to build an equitable multilateral trading system that facilitates development, strengthens trade and investment links with key economies. The dti recognises the importance of promoting trade and inward investment, and building trade and investment relations. It focuses on encouraging exports, to leverage global growth for the development of the South African economy, through the establishment of collaborative agreements with existing trading partners and dynamic fast-growing emerging markets. The dti, in partnership with the Provincial Investment Promotion Agencies, undertakes investment and export promotion activities in targeted markets that are aligned to South Africa's international relations and co-operation agreements.

- Financial Assistance (incentives): the dti provides financial support to qualifying companies in various sectors of the economy. Financial support is offered for various economic activities, including manufacturing, business competitiveness, export development and market access, as well as foreign direct investment.
- Legislation and Business Regulation: the dti develops and reviews regulatory systems in the areas of competition, consumer protection, company and intellectual property, as well as public interest regulation. It also oversees the work of national and provincial regulatory agencies mandated to assist the dti in providing competitive and socially responsible business and consumer regulations, for easy access to redress and efficient markets.

Priority areas

Industrial development

The Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP) is firmly entrenched in government's overall policy and plans to address the key challenges of economic and industrial growth and race based poverty, inequality and unemployment. It is a key component of the President's Nine Point Plan and is aligned to the policy perspective of Radical Economic Transformation. It is guided by the vision of the National Development Plan. IPAP 2017 is aligned to the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) as well as the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

The IPAP is a product of the Economic Sectors, Employment and Infrastructure Development (ESEID) cluster. The responsibility for its implementation lies with government as a whole and a wide range of entities, including SOCs.

IPAP 2017/18 – 2019/20

Key focus area:

- The need to raise aggregate domestic demand
- The national Buy Back SA campaign which must be energetically implemented, with the full support of the public sector, led by Proudly South African, the State Owned Enterprises and the private sector
- The need to ensure a much stronger on-going focus on labour intensity across the value chains
- A stepped-up export effort - because of the strong economic and employment multipliers which result - with a focus on key existing exporters, emerging and export-ready firms and supporting new black-owned entrants
- Continuing efforts to achieve a well-regulated, integrated, development-friendly investment framework to raise levels of productive (non-portfolio) capital inflows into the economy
- Strengthening of on-going efforts to build a less concentrated, more competitive economic and manufacturing structure in which barriers to entry for new entrants are lowered across key sectors of the economy
- An understanding that the Fourth Industrial Revolution and disruptive technologies do constitute a clear and present threat to the competitiveness of South African industry and employment; and, therefore, that a concerted, integrated government approach to the issue is imperative.

Investment promotion

The dti plays a critical role in the promotion of economic development and meaningful participation in the global economic and trade environment. It achieves this by working to build an equitable multilateral trading system that facilitates development, strengthens trade and investment links with key economies. A significant feature of the dti's international engagement also involves work to support African regional economic integration and development co-operation.

The dti recognises the importance of promoting trade and inward investment, and building trade and investment relations. It focuses on encouraging exports, to leverage global growth for the development of the South African economy, through the establishment of collaborative agreements with existing trading partners and dynamic fast-growing emerging markets.

The dti, in partnership with the Provincial Investment Promotion Agencies (PIPAs), undertakes investment and export promotion activities in targeted markets that are aligned to South Africa's international relations and co-operation agreements.

Invest SA is a division of the dti which provides a One-Stop-Shop service to investors. It provides investment promotion, facilitation and aftercare services which are geared towards fast-tracking projects and reducing government red tape.

Industrial parks/special economic zones (SEZs)

SEZs are geographically designated areas of a country set aside for specifically targeted economic activities, supported through special arrangements (that may include laws) and systems that are often different from those that apply in the rest of the country.

The 2017/18 – 2019/20 Industrial Policy Action Plan - IPAP

identifies SEZs as key contributors to economic development. They are growth engines towards government's strategic objectives of industrialisation, regional development and employment creation.

A number of incentives are available to ensure SEZs growth, revenue generation, creation of jobs, attraction of Foreign Direct Investment (FDI) and international competitiveness.

These SEZ incentives include:

Preferential 15% Corporate Tax:

Businesses (prescribed in section 24(4) of the SEZ Act) that are located in a Special Economic Zone may be eligible for tax relief, including the reduced rate of corporate income taxation. In addition to satisfying the requirements of the SEZ Act, further criteria for some of the available tax incentives are stipulated in the Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act No. 58 of 1962.)

Building Allowance:

Businesses and Operators (prescribed in section 1of the SEZ Act) operating within a Special Economic Zone may be eligible for tax relief, including the building allowance, subject to requirements contained in the Income Tax Act.

Employment Incentive:

Businesses and Operators operating within a Special Economic Zone may be eligible for tax relief, including the employment tax incentive subject to requirements contained in the Employment Tax Incentive Act, 2013 (Act No. 26 of 2013).

Customs Controlled Area:

Businesses and Operators located within a customs controlled area of a Special Economic Zone will be eligible for tax relief as per the Value-Added Tax Act, 1991 (Act No. 89 of 1991), the Customs and Excise Act, 1964 (Act No. 91 of 1964), the Customs Duty Act 2014 (Act No. 30 of 2014) and the Customs Control Act, 2014 (Act No.31 of 2014).

12i Tax Allowance:

The 12i Tax Incentive is designed to support Greenfield investments (i.e. new industrial projects that utilise only new and unused manufacturing assets), as well as Brownfield investments (i.e. expansions or upgrades of existing industrial projects). The new incentive offers support for both capital investment and training.

Black Industrialists

The Black Industrialists Policy aims to leverage the Government's capacity to unlock the industrial potential that exists within black-owned and managed businesses that operate within the South African economy through deliberate, targeted and well-defined financial and non-financial interventions as described in the IPAP and other government policies.

This policy targets entities that should have extensive experience, operations and track record in their respective or envisaged industrial sectors and value chains. It is expected that the entities supported will:

- Expand their current operations or businesses to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within 10 years of being in the programme;
- Start a new operation or business that can enable them to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within 10 years of being in the programme; and
- Acquire an existing or new business that can enable them to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within a specified period.
- Such entities should be operating in the manufacturing sectors of the economy in line with the industrialisation path as articulated in the IPAP.

By January 2018, a total of 78 black industrialists had been supported. The programme is expected to support 100 industrailists by March 2018.

Legislation, policies and strategies

The dti develops and reviews regulatory systems in the areas of competition, consumer protection, company and intellectual property, as well as public interest regulation.

It also oversees the work of national and provincial regulatory agencies mandated to assist the department in providing competitive and socially responsible business and consumer regulations, for easy access to redress and efficient markets.

The department's work is governed by a broad legislative framework. These include the:

- The BBBEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003)
- The Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008)
- The Co-Operatives Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 6 of 2013), which amended the Co-Operatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005)
- The Copyright Act, 1978 (Act 98 of 1978)
- The Intellectual Property Laws Rationalisation Act, 1996 (Act 107 of 1996)
- The Liquor Act, 2003 (Act 59 of 2003)
- The Patents Act, 1978 (Act 57 of 1978)
- The Small Business Development Act, 1981 (Act 112 of 1981)
- The Trade Marks Act, 1993 (Act 194 of 1993).
- The Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act 5 of 2000) as amended
- The BBBEE Amendment Act of 2013 aims to strengthen the implementation of BBBEE and its reporting across the economy, as well as to put in place mechanisms to deal with non-compliance.

The latter Act has several objectives, including aligning it with other legislation that deals with BBBEE and the Codes of Good Practice. It also seeks to establish the BBBEE Commission to create an institutional environment for monitoring and evaluating BBBEE.

Some of the key material amendments in the BBBEE Amendment Act of 2013 refer to:

- aligning the Act and the codes, which comprises an interpretation clause extended to include a trumping provision that stipulates that the BBBEE Amendment Act will trump any law that was in force prior to the commencement date of the Act
- establishing the BBBEE Commission as an entity within the administration of the dti, headed by a commissioner appointed by the Minister; the commission will be responsible for overseeing, supervising and promoting adherence to the act, as well as the monitoring and evaluation of BBBEE
- setting clear penalties, which include a minimum penalty of 10 years imprisonment (and/or a fine) or if the offender is not a natural person, a fine of 10% of its annual turnover

Budget

The dti was allocated R9.3 billion for the 2017/18 financial year, of which 98.98% was spent over the period.

During the period under review, the department collected R106.6 million as compared to R98 million in 2016/17.

Role players

Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission

The PICC has the following 18 SIPs:

- Durban-Free State-Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor
- South Eastern node and corridor development
- Unlocking the economic opportunities in North West
- Saldanha-Northern Cape Development Corridor
- Integrated Municipal Infrastructure Project
- Integrated Urban Space and Public Transport Programme
- Green Energy in support of the South African economy
- Electricity Generation to support socio-economic development
- Electricity Transmission and Distribution for all
- Agri-Logistics and Rural Infrastructure
- revitalisation of public hospitals and other health facilities
- rational school build programme
- Higher Education Infrastructure
- rxpanding access to communication technology
- SKA and MeerKat
- regional integration for African cooperation and development
- Water and Sanitation Infrastructure Master Plan.

The main objective of the PICC awareness campaign is to promote infrastructure development initiatives across the country, whilst showcasing the tangible benefits in terms of job creation and mainstreaming access to social services.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Limited is a specialist risk-finance company that provides customised financial solutions, technical assistance, mentorship, business premises and other added-value services for formal small and medium enterprises in South Africa and selected African countries. The company is passionate about funding, supporting and mentoring entrepreneurs.

Business Partners Limited considers financing applications up to R50 million in all sectors of the economy — with the exception of on-lending activities, direct farming operations, underground mining and non-profit organisations — to those formal small and medium businesses whose gross assets are under R100 million, where annual turnover does not exceed R200 million and/or employees are less than 500 in number.

Applications for financing below R500 000 are usually not considered; and the company does not operate in the informal or micro enterprise sectors.

National Empowerment Fund (NEF)

The NEF was established by the NEF Act, 1998 (Act 105 of 1998), to promote and facilitate black economic equality and transformation.

The NEF provides finance and financial solutions to black businesses across a range of sectors. It also structures accessible retail savings products for previously disadvantaged people based on state-owned equity investments.

Its mandate and mission is to be government's funding agency in facilitating the implementation of BBBEE, in terms of the BEE codes of good practice.

The fund has five core divisions: small and medium enterprises, rural development, venture capital, corporate finance, and women empowerment funds.

South African Women Entrepreneurs' Network (SAWEN)

SAWEN is a South African national network that facilitates and monitors the socio-economic advancement of women entrepreneurs and their positive impact on the country's economy.

The objectives of SAWEN are to:

- provide a national vehicle that brings women and women's groups together to address the challenges faced by them
- lobby government, public and private institutions on such issues, but not limited to policy, legislation and/or proposed legislation affecting either directly and indirectly the trade and commerce activities of women entrepreneurs
- align SAWEN with other bodies or organisations with similar business interests at both national and international level, and to leverage the relationships arising out of these alignments for the benefit of its members
- facilitate access to business resources, information and opportunities for South African women entrepreneurs in a way that promotes their effective participation in the global economy
- profile and affirm women in business leadership positions in both public and private sectors.

To buttress government's intent of strategic intervention in women's economic empowerment, the dti has been using vehicles such as SAWEN, the Isivande Women's Fund (IWF), Bavumile and Technology for Women in Business (TWIB).

The Ligugu Lami Awards acknowledge women entrepreneurs and encourages them to take pride in their achievements.

Isivande Women's Fund

IWF is an exclusive fund that aims to accelerate women's economic empowerment by providing more affordable, usable and responsive finance than is currently available. The IWF assists with support services to enhance the success of businesses. It pursues deals involving start-up funding, business expansion, business rehabilitation, franchising and bridging finance.

The fund is managed by the IDC on behalf of the dti through a development fund manager.

IDF Managers is an SME financier aimed at supporting the creation of self-sustaining black-owned and women-owned businesses in South Africa by providing primarily financial and non-financial support to its investee companies.

The IDF Managers is responsible for reviewing eligible business plans requiring funding of R30 000 to R2 million.

The women-owned enterprises have to meet the following criteria:

- at least six months in operation
- requires early stage, expansions and growth capital
- 50% plus one share owned and managed by women
- have potential for growth and commercial sustainability
- improved social impact in the form of job creation.

Small Business Finance Agency

The Sefa was established on 1 April 2012 following the merger of South African Micro Apex Fund, Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd and the small business activities of the IDC.

Sefa's mandate is to foster the establishment, survival and growth of small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs) and

contribute towards poverty alleviation and job creation.

Sefa has a regional footprint of nine offices around the country and it lends between R500 and R5 million to SMMEs.

The target market is survivalists, SMMEs, including co-operatives falling in the following funding gap:

- Survivalists and microenterprises – loans between R500 and R50 000
- Small enterprises – loans between R50 000 and R1 million
- Medium enterprises – loans between R1 million and R5 million.

Resources

Technology support

The dti implements skills development, economic infrastructure, and innovation and technology programmes to support priority sectoral and regional industrial development plans.

Some of the key programmes include the Technology and Human Resource for Industry Programme (THRIP), the Support Programme for Industrial Innovation (SPII) and the Centre for Entrepreneurship and Technology Programme.

Provision is also made for transfer payments and subsidies to:

- SEDA's Technology Programme, which is managed by SEDA, to finance and support early, seed and start-up technology-based ventures
- THRIP, which is managed by the National Research Foundation, to support research and technology development
- the SPII, which is managed by the IDC, to support a wide group of enterprises that promote technological development through financial assistance
- the Workplace Challenge Programme, which finances and supports world-class manufacturing and value-chain efficiency improvements in South African companies.

Black Economic Empowerment

BEE is not only a political and social necessity for redressing the wrongs of the past, but will also help broaden economic participation, which will contribute to economic growth.

Programmes and projects

Black Business Supplier Development Programme

The Black Business Supplier Development Programme is a cost-sharing grant offered to black-owned small enterprises to help them improve their competitiveness and sustainability, to become part of the mainstream economy and create employment.

The programme provides grants to a maximum of R1 million: R800 000 for tools, machinery and equipment on a 50:50 cost-sharing basis; and R200 000 for business development and training interventions per eligible enterprise to improve their corporate governance, management, marketing, productivity and use of modern technology.

The objectives of the incentive scheme are to:

- draw existing SMMEs exhibiting potential for growth into the mainstream economy
- grow black-owned enterprises by fostering linkages between black SMMEs and corporate and public-sector enterprises
- complement current affirmative procurement and outsourcing initiatives of corporate and public-sector enterprises
- enhance the capacity of grant-recipient enterprises to successfully compete for corporate and public-sector tenders and outsourcing opportunities.

Industrial Policy Action Plan

The IPAP 2016/17 – 2018/19 is informed by the vision set out for South Africa's development provided by the NDP. The IPAP is a key pillar of the Nine-Point Plan, which seeks to ignite economic growth and create much-needed jobs.

Automotives

The automotive industry remained the largest and leading manufacturing sector in the domestic economy.

The automotives sector has performed exceptionally well. The dti has established a team of technical experts to develop a post-2020 Automotives Master Plan.

The mandate of the team is to examine the entire automotive sector and not just the existing Automotive Policy Development Plan, which will include light, medium and heavy vehicles and motorcycles.

The purpose is to ensure that in the context of long-term policy certainty, a post-2020 Master Plan will create a framework to secure even higher levels of investment and production, higher exports, deepening localisation and expanding employment.

The dti initiated the Medium and Heavy Commercial Vehicles Automotive Investment Scheme (MHCV-AIS), a subcomponent of the Automotive Investment Scheme (AIS), an incentive designed to grow and develop the automotive sector through investment in new and/or replacement models and components that will increase plant production volumes, sustain employment and/or strengthen the automotive value chain.

The MHCV-AIS provides for a non-taxable cash grant of 20% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets by medium and heavy commercial vehicle manufactures and 25% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets by component manufactures and tooling companies for MHCV's as approved by the dti.

Some of the conditions are that the applicant must:

- be a registered legal entity in South Africa in terms of the Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008 (as amended); Companies Act, 1973 (as amended); or the Close Corporations Act, 1994 (as amended), and must undertake manufacturing in South Africa
- be a taxpayer in good standing and must, in this regard, provide a valid tax clearance certificate before the MHCV-AIS grant is disbursed; the grant will only be applicable to investment in assets that will be used in the entity's South African operations
- submit a business plan with a detailed marketing and sales plan, a production plan, budget and projected financial income statement, cash-flow statement and balance sheet, for a period of at least three years for the project submit a B-BBEE certificate, ITAC Registration certificate, projected financial income statement, cash-flow statement and balance sheet for a period of at least three years of the relevant division, cost centre or branch where the project is located, if applicable submit a cost benefit analysis for the project in cases where it cannot provide information in respect of a cost centre.

Clothing and textiles

After government set a 100% local content requirement,

the clothing, textiles, leather and footwear sector saw the reintroduction of products where local production had been discontinued.

These include technical fabrics, protective footwear, protective fabrics and chambray fabrics.

This intervention, supported also by the Clothing and Textile Competitiveness Improvement Programme, has contributed to turning the sector around. In response to the flood of cheap clothing imports, government has increased the import duty on clothing to 45% in line with World Trade Organisation regulations.

Business process services (BPS)

South Africa's BPS sector continued to maintain its status as a leading global outsourcing destination, while steadily moving up the value chain in terms of service offerings.

BPS already accounts for 200 000 jobs nationally and is one of the country's fastest-growing sectors, with double digit growth over the past five years.

Special Economic Zones

The South African Government, in an effort to reposition itself in the world economy, established the Industrial Development Zones (IDZ) programme.

SEZs are geographically designated areas of a country set aside for specifically targeted economic activities, supported through special arrangements (that may include laws) and systems that are often different from those that apply in the rest of the country.

The purpose of the SEZ programme is to:

- expand the strategic industrialisation focus to cover diverse regional development needs and context
- provide a clear, predictable and systemic planning framework for the development of a wider array of SEZs to support industrial policy objectives, the IPAP and the NGP
- clarify and strengthen governance arrangements, expand the range and quality of support measure beyond provision of infrastructure
- provide a framework for a predictable financing framework to enable long-term planning.

There are currently five operating IDZs in South Africa, namely:

- The Coega IDZ is the largest IDZ in southern Africa. It was designated in 2001 and became South Africa's first IDZ. It lies in the Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality in the Eastern Cape, which is strategically located on the east-west trade route to service both world and African markets. The Coega IDZ leverages public sector investment to attract foreign and domestic direct investment in the manufacturing sector with an export orientation. The IDZ has attracted investment in the agro-processing, automotive, aquaculture, energy, metals logistics and business process services sectors. This has advanced socio-economic development in the Eastern Cape region through skills development, technology transfer and job creation.
- The Richards Bay IDZ is a purpose-built and secure industrial estate on the north-eastern South African coast. The N2 business corridor links the province's two major ports, Durban and Richards Bay, and connects with Maputo in Mozambique and, ultimately, areas of East Africa. It is linked to an international sea port of Richards Bay, tailored for manufacturing and storage of minerals and products to boost beneficiation, investment, economic growth and, most importantly, the development of skills and employment. First-world infrastructure allows for the full exploitation of the areas' natural and strategic advantages. Through the superb industrial infrastructure, well-established network of shipments, tax and duty-free incentives, the IDZ aims to encourage international competitiveness and the attraction of export-orientated manufacturing investment.
- The East London IDZ has become a prime industrial park in South Africa, renowned for its customised solutions for various industries including automotive, agro-processing and aqua-culture. The IDZ offers growth-oriented companies a specialised manufacturing platform, innovative industrial and business solutions access to new markets and strategic industry networks. The IDZ, one of the country's leading specialised industrial parks, is located in Buffalo City, the municipal area which also incorporates Bhisho, the province's capital and King William's Town. It was one of the first IDZs in South Africa to become operational and represents an ideal choice for the location of exported manufacturing and processing. Its location provides investors with connections to major markets both locally and across the globe.
- The Saldanha Bay IDZ in the Western Cape is expected to serve as the primary oil, gas and Marine Repair engineering and logistics services complex in Africa, servicing the needs of the upstream Oil Exploration Industry and Production service companies operating in the oil and gas fields off sub-Saharan Africa. Situated approximately two hours north of Cape Town, the IDZ will include logistics, repairs and maintenance, as well as fabrication activities.
- The Dube TradePort is a catalyst for global trade and a portal between KwaZulu-Natal and the world. It is the only facility in Africa that brings together an international airport, a cargo terminal, warehousing, offices, a retail sector, hotels and an agricultural area. Located 30 km north of Durban, Dube TradePort is positioned between the two biggest sea ports in southern Africa, and linked to the rest of Africa by road and rail. The following two areas have been designated as comprising the IDZ: the Dube TradeZone and the Dube AgriZone. The Dube TradeZone aims to focus on manufacturing and value-addition primarily for automotive, electronics and fashion garments. The facility involves warehousing, manufacturing, assembling real estate resource, complete with a single facility in which all freight forwarders and shippers are located (Dube TradeHouse), which enjoys a direct link to the adjacent Dube Cargo Terminal via an elevated cargo conveyor system. The Dube AgriZone – a high-tech, future farming facility and host to the continent's largest climate-controlled growing area under glass – will focus on high-value, niche agricultural and horticultural products. The AgriLab will look into specialised tissue culture, greenhouses, flowers and plants, all of which require swift air transportation.

South African Emerging Black Filmmakers Incentive Scheme

The South African Emerging Black Filmmakers Incentive is available to South African black-owned qualifying productions. It aims to nurture and capacitate emerging black filmmakers to take up big productions and contribute towards employment

opportunities.
The dti expected to spend R100 million to support emerging black filmmakers by the end of March 2018.
By July 2017, the incentive scheme had managed to support 40 projects of emerging filmmakers as part of the R100 million budget.

World Economic Forum 2018 (WEF)

Deputy President Cyril Ramaphosa led a South African delegation to the WEF in Switzerland from 23 – 28 January 2018. The team reached out to international partners as part of efforts to position the country favourably to the rest of the globe. They participated in a range of public forums and bilateral meetings as part of positioning South Africa's attractiveness as an investment destination, trade partner and member of the international community.

Government also utilised the WEF Davos 2018 platform to bring attention to the significant centenary celebrations of the iconic global leader and late South African President Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela.

The Deputy President also held bilateral meetings with President Paul Kagame of Rwanda; President João Lourenco of Angola; Prime Minister Hassan Ali Khayre of Somalia; Deputy Prime Minister Tharman Shanmugaratnam of Singapore and Foreign Minister Mohammed bin Abdulrahman bin Jassim Al Thani of Qatar.

He also held bilateral meetings with WEF Founder and Executive Director Prof Klaus Schwab, Danish Prime Minister Lars Løkke Rassmussen and British Prime Minister Theresa May.

The four-day meeting was held under the theme: "Creating a Shared Future in a Fractured World".

Business process outsourcing and offshoring

Business process outsourcing and offshoring is a major global trend, with a significant positive impact on developing countries with the required skills, cost advantages and infrastructure. Under the Monyetla 2 Programme, 3 400 recruits were trained, of which 70% have been guaranteed employment by the business process outsourcing consortium.

South African Premier Business Awards

The South African Premier Business Awards is hosted annually by the the dti in partnership with Proudly South African and Brand South Africa. The awards recognise business excellence and honours enterprises that promote the spirit of success and innovation as well as job creation, good business ethics and quality. These awards bring together all single sectored awards, among others technology, manufacturing and women in business.

The 2018 awards were held on 30 January 2018 at the Sandton Convention Centre in Johannesburg under the theme "Rewarding Business Excellence".

The winners were as follows:

- **Black Industrialist Award:** Thata Ubeke Manufacturing (Pty) Ltd.
- **Enterprise Development Award:** Sumitomo Rubber South Africa.
- **Exporter Award:** Aerosud Aviation (Pty) Ltd.
- **Investor Award:** Sumitomo Rubbers South Africa
- **Manufacturer Award:** Thata Ubeke Manufacturing (Pty) Ltd.
- **Play Your Part Award:** Clover Mama Afrika Trust.
- **Proudly South African Member Company Award:** La Van Skin and Body Excellence System.
- **SMME Award:** Memeza Shout (Pty) Ltd.
- **Women-Owned Business Award:** BBD Steel Supplies.
- **Young Entrepreneur Award:** Gridbow Engineers and Technical Services.

Old Mutual, Tsogo Sun, Wits Business School and the Johannesburg Stock Exchange sponsored the awards.

International cooperation

The Investment and Trade Initiative (ITI) is part of the dti's objective to create market penetration for South African value-added products and services, and to promote South Africa as a trade and investment destination.

IThe ITI focuses on showcasing South Africa's diverse range of capabilities to produce world-class products and services in the targeted sectors, which include agro-processing (rooibos tea, dried fruits, spices, sauces, frozen fish and sparkling 100% fruit juice), industrial chemicals and automotive components.

South African companies have developed highly specialised skills and products and there are various opportunities for South African companies to market their expertise and collaborate in projects with their Brazilian counterparts.

The programme of the ITI includes trade and investment seminar, business-to-business meetings and sector-specific business site visits to companies in São Paulo and Porto Alegre.

Department of Public Enterprises (DPE)

The mandate of the DPE is to ensure that the state-owned companies (SOCs) in its portfolio are directed to serve government's strategic objectives, as articulated in the NDP, the NGP and the IPAP.

In the current economic climate, SOCs have emerged as key instruments for the State to drive its developmental objectives of creating jobs, and for enhancing equity and transformation.

The SOCs in the DPE's portfolio form the cornerstone of the economy and their capacity would be strategically used to support the delivery of the NDP's outcomes, making the strengthening of oversight tools for the SOCs crucial to socio-economic transformation.

The department does not directly execute programmes but seeks to leverage off state ownership in the economy to support the delivery of key outcomes outlined in the NDP and government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF.

The DPE oversees the six SOCs in its portfolio: Alexkor, Denel, Eskom, the South African Forestry Company (SAFCOL), South African Express Airways and Transnet. The DPE aims to ensure that they are financially sound and pursuing government's national development objectives, in particular Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of the 2014 – 2019 MTSF.

Over the medium term, the department is expected to focus on strengthening its oversight functions, increasing the public sector's investment in the economy, reducing SOCs' reliance on the fiscus, and ensuring their financial sustainability.

Budget

The department's budget for the 2017/18 financial year was R266.7 million. It spent 93.9% of its total budget for the 2017/18 financial year.

Role players

Alexkor

Alexkor was established in terms of the Alexkor Limited Act, 1992 (Act 116 of 1992) to mine marine and land diamonds in Alexander Bay. In line with Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF, the company is exploring opportunities in energy through coal and limestone mining opportunities, which will require the organisation to expand its operations beyond the Northern Cape.

Alexkor has further commissioned and started a study into non-mining activities in the Northern Cape which the Richtersveld community could pursue from the proceeds of the pooling and sharing joint venture.

The land-mining rights and 49% of the mining operations were ceded to the Richtersveld community following the conclusion of the land restitution agreement with government in 2007. Alexkor remains the owner of the sea-mining rights and 51% of the mining operations.

The mining operations with the land and sea-mining rights have been pooled into an unincorporated entity called the Alexkor Pooling and Sharing Joint Venture. The mining operations employ 250 people.

The settlement agreement included, among other things, the restoration of land and mineral rights, the formation of the pooling and sharing joint venture, environmental rehabilitation, and the establishment and development of the town at Alexander Bay.

As a result, since November 2013, the town has been made official and now forms part of the Richtersveld Municipality. Progress to date includes the upgrade of residential properties' electrical and water reticulation systems, and the transfer of the mine operations restored with the land mining rights to the Richtersveld Mining Company. The implementation of the plan to rehabilitate mining areas has also begun.

The company has also undertaken an initial study to explore alternative revenue streams to improve its financial position. Alexkor will continue to work towards improved sustainability over the medium term.

South African Forestry Company

SAFCOL is government's forestry company conducting timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities, both domestically and internationally.

The company also contributes to education and healthcare infrastructure through maintaining its commitment to support the growth and transformation of the communities in which it operates and promoting socio-economic development.

It provides almost 5 000 permanent and contractual jobs in rural areas in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco is an SOC that operates within specific focus areas of the country's telecommunications sector.

It is intended to improve market efficiency in the long-distance connectivity segment by increasing available long-distance network infrastructure.

Broadband Infraco provides long-distance national and international connectivity to licensed private sector partners, licence-exempt projects of national importance and previously underserviced areas.

Broadband Infraco also provides strategic international connectivity to operators in the Southern African Development Community region and on the west coast of Africa.

Broadband Infraco fibre optic network currently comprises approximately 14 000 km of fibre and 158 Points of Presence countrywide.

Denel

Denel is the largest manufacturer of defence equipment in South Africa and operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment.

It is an important defence contractor and a key supplier to the South African National Defence Force (SANDF), both as a manufacturer of original equipment and service provider for the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of equipment in the SANDF's arsenal.

Denel supplies systems and consumables to end-users, as well as subsystems and components to its industrial client base.

It also has a number of equity partnerships, joint ventures and cooperation agreements with international players in the defence industry.

Eskom

Eskom's mandate is to generate, transmit and distribute electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors.

It contributes to the realisation of Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF.

Eskom generates 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and 45% of the electricity used in Africa.

South African Airways

SAA is South Africa's national airline and operates from OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg, Gauteng. Its principal activities include providing scheduled air services for the transportation of passengers, freight and mail to international, regional and domestic destinations.

In fulfilling its mission to be an African airline with global reach, it operates to 38 destinations worldwide and provides a competitive, quality air transport service within South Africa and to major cities worldwide.

South African Express

South African Express Airways was established in 1994 as a regional carrier operating domestic and regional flights, serving secondary routes in South Africa and the continent, including regional routes to Botswana, Namibia, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Zimbabwe and Zambia.

It also provides feeder air services that connect with the South African Airways network.

Transnet

Transnet's mandate is to contribute to lowering the cost of doing business in South Africa, enable economic growth, and ensure

security of supply through providing appropriate port, rail and pipeline infrastructure in a cost-effective and efficient manner.

This is in line with Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF.

Considering the economic climate, the company is reviewing its investment programme to ensure that it is optimised and remains affordable, which may necessitate an extension in planned capital programme expenditure from seven to 10 years, due to a decrease in export demand for commodities.

Notwithstanding these challenges, over the medium term and beyond, Transnet will continue with a number of key infrastructure and equipment projects.

These include the rollout of the manganese expansion project, the berth-deepening and reconstruction of Durban Container Terminal Pier 2, the doubling in size of the Overvaal Tunnel, the delivery of the 1 064 locomotives, and delivery on Operation Phakisa initiatives, which relate to the oceans economy.

Government Employees Pension Fund (GEPF)

The GEPF is Africa's largest pension fund, with more than 1,2 million active members, in excess of 400 000 pensioners and beneficiaries, and assets worth more than R1,6 trillion.

State workers and retirees, including departmental bureaucrats, teachers, nurses and members of the police force are among its members.

Department of Small Business Development (DSBD)

The mission of the DSBD is to create a conducive environment for the development and growth of small businesses and co-operatives through the provision of enhanced financial and non-financial support services.

The DSBD creates a conducive environment for the development and growth of small businesses and co-operatives through the provision of:

- enhanced financial and non-financial support services
- competitiveness, market access
- promotion of entrepreneurship, advancing localisation
- leveraging on public and private procurement.

The department leads an integrated approach on the promotion and development of small businesses and co-operatives, focusing on the economic and legislative drivers that would stimulate entrepreneurship to contribute to radical economic transformation.

Budget

The department was allocated R1.5 billion for the 2017/18 financial year..

Department of Public Works (DPW)

The DPW is mandated to be the custodian and portfolio manager of national government's immovable assets.

Following the operationalisation of the Property Management Trading Entity in 2015/16, the DPW's role will now be policy formulation, coordination, regulation and oversight relating to the provision of accommodation and expert built environment services to client departments at the national government level; as well as, through the Property Management Trading Entity, the planning, acquiring, managing and disposing of immovable assets in the department's custody.

The DPW is further mandated to coordinate and provide strategic leadership in job creation initiatives through the implementation of the EPWP. The DPW is constitutionally designated as a concurrent function exercised by both the national and provincial spheres of government.

As articulated in government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF and the NDP, slow economic growth and the associated unemployment are expected to characterise South Africa's economic performance over the medium term.

Against this background, the DPW is expected to contribute to providing labour-intensive work opportunities and income support to low-skilled or unskilled unemployed people by coordinating the EPWP.

The DPW enables participating government and non-government bodies to identify and bring into the programme labour-intensive projects with a significant capacity to absorb low-skilled work seekers.

Legislation and policies

The DPW is governed by the following legislation:

- The State Land Disposal Act, 1961 (Act 48 of 1961).
- The Occupational Health and Safety (OHS) Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), compels the DPW to prepare health and safety specifications for any intended construction project and contractors making a bid, or appointed to perform construction work with the specifications.

Responsibility for OHS and workers' compensation in South Africa resides in three government departments:

- The Department of Labour is responsible for workers' compensation, in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), and for OHS, in terms of the OHS Act of 1993.
- The Department of Mineral Resources is responsible for OHS in mines and mining areas, in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996).
- The Department of Health is responsible for compensating mine workers, in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1993 (Act 208 of 1993).

Budget

The department's budget allocation for the 2017/18 financial year was R7 billion.

Role players

Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB)

The CIDB provides leadership to stakeholders; stimulates the growth, reform and improvement of the construction sector; and enhances the industry's role in the South African economy. The board's total budget for 2016/17 was R126 million.

Council for the Built Environment (CBE)

The CBE is an overarching body that coordinates the six built-environment professional councils – architecture, engineering, landscape architecture, project and construction management, property valuation and quantity surveying – to promote good conduct within the professions, transform them and advise government on built-environment related issues.

The CBE is also an appeal body to ensure protection of the public interest. As such, the CBE and the six councils for the

professions maintain, and apply, standards for built-environment professionals' conduct and practice to effectively protect the interests of the public.

Programmes and projects

Expanded Public Works Programme

The EPWP is one of government's key programmes aimed at providing poverty and income relief through temporary work for the unemployed.

The EPWP is a nationwide programme covering all spheres of government and SOEs.

The programme provides an important avenue for labour absorption and income transfers to poor households, in the short to medium term.

EPWP projects employ workers on a temporary or ongoing basis with government, contractors, or other non-governmental organisations under the Ministerial Conditions of Employment for the EPWP or learnership employment conditions.

The EPWP creates work opportunities in four sectors, namely infrastructure, non-state, environment and culture and social, by:

- increasing the labour intensity of government-funded infrastructure projects
- creating work opportunities through the Non-Profit Organisation programme and Community Work Programme
- creating work opportunities in public environment and culture programmes
- creating work opportunities in public social programmes.

The EPWP also provides training and enterprise development support, at a subprogramme level.

Since 2012/13, the EPWP has created 4 185 426 work opportunities, and targets creating an additional 4 205 730 work opportunities by the end of 2018/19.

As the coordinator of the programme, the DPW will monitor the quality of the programme's delivery of infrastructure and services to the poor (including training), and it will encourage greater participation in the programme and community ownership of it.

Spending on transfers and subsidies for the EPWP was set to increase from R1,7 billion in 2015/16 to R2,3 billion in 2018/19, at an average annual rate of 11%.

For coordinating the programme, the department projects spending R1 billion over the medium term, specifically on compensation of employees and goods and services; including R622 million for personnel providing support at the provincial level for administering the programme grants.

Department of Labour

The mandate of the Department of Labour is to regulate the labour market through policies and programmes developed in consultation with social partners, which are aimed at:

- improving economic efficiency and productivity
- facilitating decent employment creation
- promoting labour standards and fundamental rights at work
- providing adequate social safety nets to protect vulnerable workers
- promoting and enforcing sound labour relations
- eliminating inequality and discrimination in the workplace
- enhancing occupational health and safety awareness and compliance in the workplace
- giving value to social dialogue in the formulation of sound and responsive legislation and policies to attain labour market flexibility for competitiveness of enterprises that is balanced with the promotion of decent employment.

Legislation and policy

The department administers the following legislation:

- The Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995), applies to all workers and employers, and aims to advance economic development, social justice, labour peace and the democracy of the workplace.
- The Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), applies to all employers and workers and protects workers and job seekers from unfair discrimination, and also provides a framework for implementing affirmative action.
- The Unemployment Insurance Act, 1996 (Act 30 of 1996), provides security to workers, when they become unemployed.
- The OHS Act of 1993 provides and regulates health and safety at the workplace for all workers.
- The National Economic Development and Labour Council (NEDLAC) Act, 1994 (Act 35 of 1994).
- Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998 as amended), develops and improves the skills of the South African workforce.
- The Employment Services Act, 2014 (Act 4 of 2014), promotes employment, growth and workplace productivity.

In February 2018, South Africa, as chair of the Southern African Development Community (SADC), hosted a two-day workshop on youth unemployment in the region.

The workshop was held under the theme "Addressing Youth Employment in the SADC Region". Youth unemployment is defined by the United Nations as unemployed young people between the ages of 15-25 years of age, who do not have a job but are actively seeking work.

However, youth unemployment within the SADC region includes unemployed persons between the ages of 15-35 years old.

An estimated 71 million youth in the SADC region are said to be unemployed. SADC Labour Ministers have been mandated to come up with solutions to the growing problem.

The objective of the workshop is to establish a forum for employment services practitioners within the SADC Member States to share experiences and challenges, as well as come up with best practices on how to approach youth unemployment.

The workshop was held at Birchwood Conference Centre in Ekhurhuleni, Gauteng.

Budget

The department was allocated R3.1 billion for the 2017/18 financial year.

Labour Policy and Industrial Relations

The Labour Policy and Industrial Relations Branch supervises policy research, labour market information and statistical services.

This includes regulation of labour and employer organisations and bargaining councils, dealing with all the Department of Labour's responsibilities and obligations in relation to the International Labour Organisation and other international and regional bodies with which the South African Government has formal relations, as well as the effective functioning of the

Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA) and NEDLAC.

The CCMA is an independent dispute-resolution body created in 1996, in terms of the Labour Relations Act of 1995.

It does not belong to, nor is it controlled by, any political party, trade union or business.

The CCMA was established to provide South Africans with an accessible, user-friendly and affordable labour-dispute resolution system.

Workers who have allegedly been unfairly dismissed, or are the victims of various unfair labour practices, are able to approach the CCMA alone or with certain categories of recognised representatives to seek redress for workplace wrongs.

The Labour Policy and Industrial Relations programme receives R9,1 million in 2017/18 and R9,7 million in 2018/19 to establish a national minimum wage fixing mechanism, to adjust the level of the wage periodically, and to review the impact of the national minimum wage.

Role players

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF is a public entity of the Department of Labour that contributes to alleviating poverty in South Africa by providing effective short-term unemployment insurance to all workers who qualify for unemployment and related benefits.

The Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 32 of 2003) deals with the administration of the fund and the payment of benefits.

It also provides for the commissioner to maintain a database to pay benefits to beneficiaries.

The South African Revenue Service (SARS) continues to administer the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002 (Act 4 of 2002).

The fund is financed through contributions from employees and employers, as legislated in the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act of 2002, as well as return on investments.

SARS collects contributions from all employers whose workers pay employees' tax. The collection of contributions from all other employers is delegated to the Unemployment Insurance Commissioner.

The fund's mandate and job-creation initiatives contribute to three core elements identified in the NDP (social protection through the provision of unemployment insurance to all workers in the country; employment through investment in job creation projects; and quality education and skills development through training initiatives) that aim to provide unemployed beneficiaries with various artisan skills.

In addition to improving benefits, the fund aims to improve its efficiency by improving the rate at which claims are processed and paid from five weeks to four weeks by 2017/18, and three weeks in 2018/19.

The fund also aimed to save an estimated 35 000 jobs over the medium term by assisting distressed companies through an allocation of R229,1 million to Productivity South Africa's turnaround solutions programme.

The training lay-off scheme is an alternative to retrenchment for companies in distress. Participation in this scheme will ensure that beneficiaries of the fund do not lose their jobs, and are reskilled to remain active in the labour market.

Employment figures

The total number of people employed in South Africa, as measured by the Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS) of Stats SA, increased by 92 000 from the second to the third quarter of 2018, and by 188 000 (or 1.2%) over four quarters, increasing the level of total employment to approximately 16.38 million.

The informal sector created a notable 327 000 jobs in the year to the third quarter of 2018, while the formal non-agricultural sector shed 125 000 jobs. Annual employment gains occurred in the construction (137 000), community and social services (59 000), finance (38 000), agriculture (32 000), trade (20 000), transport (8 000) and electricity (3 000) sectors. However, job losses were observed in private households (46 000), mining (40 000) and manufacturing (30 000).

Annual job creation took place only in the unspecified contract category, with approximately 84 000 job gains. Discouragingly, there were 163 000 permanent jobs lost and a further 29 000 part-time contracts terminated in the year to the third quarter of 2018.

The number of unemployed South Africans increased by 127 000 from the second quarter of 2018 to approximately 6.21 million in the third quarter, while decreasing marginally by 1 000 from a year earlier.

The number of discouraged work seekers increased markedly by 297 000 (or 12.2%) to around 2.73 million in the year to the third quarter of 2018, but decreased by 88 000 from the second to the third quarter.

The increase in the number of new entrants to the labour force – 179 000 (or 7.8%) – in the third quarter of 2018 resulted in part from more discouraged work seekers engaging in renewed job searching activity, lifting the official unemployment rate. Within this context, the official unemployment rate increased from 27.2% in the second quarter of 2018 to 27.5% in the third quarter, marginally lower than the 27.7% recorded a year earlier.

Similarly, the seasonally adjusted unemployment rate increased from 27.0% in the second quarter of 2018 to 27.3% in the third quarter. The youth unemployment rate (for people aged 15 to 24 years) decreased from 53.7% in the second quarter of 2018 to 52.8% in the third quarter, marginally up from 52.2% a year earlier.

Constructive engagements between business, organised labour, the community and government at the 2018 Jobs Summit – prioritising the need to protect and create jobs – are encouraging to address South Africa's high unemployment rate.

Youth Employment Service

In March 2018, President Cyril Ramaphosa launched the Youth Employment Service (YES). The initiative aims to see more than one million young South Africans being offered paid work experience over the next three years, as part of placing the needs of and opportunities for young people at the

The initiative is a collaborative effort between government, business, labour and civil society. The initiative is informed by research, which has shown that one year of work experience, coupled with a curriculum vitae and reference letter, increases a young person's chances of finding employment by three times.

The programme has three channels through which employment opportunities can occur:

- Corporate work experiences: businesses that participate in the programme create one-year paid positions for youth aged between 18 and 35, in addition to these organisations' current employment numbers, YES is an additive
- SMME host placements: businesses that do not have the capacity to place more people in their organisations, have the option of sponsoring the salary for a one-year placement in small and medium enterprises (In year one for seven to 10 months)
- SMME development: young people are empowered to start and grow their own businesses, with support from YES in the form of training, seed funding and value-chain integration.

Compensation Fund (CF)

The Department of Labour administers the CF, which compensates workers who are victims of occupational disability, occupational disease and fatal work incidents.

The services of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act of 1993 were extended and are rendered at provincial level.

To further strengthen social protection, the fund is working on amendments to the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act of 1993 to include domestic workers as beneficiaries; develop a rehabilitation, reintegration and return to work policy for injured and diseased workers; and increase benefits.

The CF will work towards the continual enhancement and improvement of its claims registration, payments and automated adjudication systems to improve service delivery, and the marketing and promotion of its online claims registration portal.

These initiatives are expected to lead to an increase in spending over the medium term in the administration programme reaching R1,1 billion in 2018/19.

The Umehluko integrated claims management enables employers and medical service providers to report accidents and submit medical reports online. Using this system, the fund's clients can track the status of their claims at any time, and it is set to improve the percentage of medical claims finalised per year within a three-month period from 60% or 199 476 in 2015/16 to 80% or 313 783 in 2018/19.

In an effort to strengthen social protection and alleviate poverty, the fund's board reviewed the existing compensation and pension benefits, and increased the minimum payout by 7% from R3 878 to R4 151 per month. The fund also planned to increase the number of employers registered with the fund from 592 972 in 2015/16 to 719 126 in 2018/19 to increase the number of workers covered.

The fund's main source of revenue is the levies payable by employers based on a determined percentage of the annual earnings of their employees and the risk category of the employer.

Total revenue collected is estimated to grow to R20,3 billion in 2018/19. It is being used to pay benefits and cover the cost of administering the fund.

National Economic Development and Labour Council

NEDLAC requires organised labour, organised business, community-based organisations and government to work as a collective to promote the goals of economic growth, and social and economic equity.

Organised business is represented by Business Unity South Africa, which brings together the Black Business Council and Business South Africa.

Organised labour is represented by the three main labour federations in South Africa: the Congress of South African Trade Unions, the Federation of Unions of South Africa and the National Council of Trade Unions.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Education

Education

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa declares basic education as an inalienable basic human right for all South Africans. In 2015, UNESCO adopted the global education agenda, Education 2030, which is part of the 17 United Nations' Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) that make up the Agenda 2030 for sustainable development. SDG 4 calls for an "inclusive, quality and equitable education and lifelong opportunities for all". The National Development Plan (NDP): Vision 2030 states that "by 2030, South Africans should have access to education and training of the highest quality, leading to significantly improved learning outcomes. The education system will play a greater role in building an inclusive society, providing equal opportunities and helping all South Africans to realise their full potential".

Education is governed by two national departments, namely the department of Basic Education (DBE), which is responsible for primary and secondary schools, and the department of Higher Education and Training (DHET), which is responsible for tertiary education and vocational training.

Accessibility to education has improved significantly over the years ensuring that South Africans are exposed to education in all levels to ensure that socio-economic challenges in the country are addressed.

The Inclusive Education system plays a major role in ensuring that there is access to quality basic education for leaners with special needs. This inclusive education system contributes immensely towards the achievement of an inclusive economy and inclusive society.

The Early Childhood Development programme has ensured that early child development is expanded to all socio-economic levels of society. This programme ensures that school readiness is a priority among South Africans and equal basic education is achieved by the Government.

Evaluation and research has been a serious deficiency in the country and the education sector, but over the years with the introduction of Monitoring, Research and Evaluation in the sector, performance has also improved. There is substantial research conducted within the sector which assists in identifying gaps and also creates a platform to monitor the sector through evidence-based evaluations.

Basic education

The Government esteems the provision of quality basic education, free of discrimination, as its apex priority and as a national imperative advanced by its citizenry and provided for in the Constitution. It duly recognises the DBE as the authority responsible for guiding this national imperative into reality for more than 12 million learners from reception (Grade R) to matriculation (Grade 12). The Minister directs that standards of education provision, delivery and performance of learners be monitored and evaluated by the Department annually or at other specified intervals, with the object of assessing progress in complying with the provisions of the Constitution and with national education policy.

The DBE deals with all schools teaching curriculum from Grade R – 12, including adult literacy programmes. The aim of the DBE is to develop, maintain and support a South African school education system for the 21st century.

Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on accelerating delivery and improving school infrastructure; enhancing teaching and learning by ensuring access to high quality learner and teacher support materials; improving grade 12 completion rates; providing educational opportunities to learners with severe to profound intellectual disabilities; increasing the supply of quality teachers; monitoring performance; and providing nutritious meals to learners in schools through the national school nutrition programme.

Legislation and policies

Education in South Africa is governed by the following key policies and legislation:

- The fundamental policy framework of the DBE is stated in the White Paper on Education and Training in a Democratic South Africa: First Steps to Develop a New System, published in February 1995.
- The National Education Policy Act (Nepa), 1996 (Act 27 of 1996) brought into law the policies, and legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the Minister of Education, as well as the formal relations between national and provincial authorities. It laid the foundation for the establishment of the Council of Education Ministers (CEM), as well as the Heads of Education Departments Committee (HEDCOM), as intergovernmental forums that would collaborate in the development of a new education system. The Nepa of 1996, therefore, provided for the formulation of national policy in general, and Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET) policies for curriculum, assessment, language and quality assurance.
- The South African Schools Act (SASA), 1996 (Act 84 of 1996) is aimed at ensuring that all learners have access to quality education without discrimination, and makes schooling compulsory for children aged seven to 15.

  It provides for two types of schools, namely independent and public schools. The provision in the Act for democratic school governance, through school-governing bodies (SGBs), has been implemented in public schools countrywide. The school-funding norms, outlined in SASA of 1996, prioritise redress and target poverty regarding the allocation of funds for the public-schooling system.
- The Adult Basic Education and Training (ABET) Act, 2000 (Act 52 of 2000) regulates ABET; provides for the establishment, governance and funding of public adult learning centres; provides for the registration of private adult learning centres; and provides for quality assurance and quality promotion in ABET.
- The SASA of 1996 was amended by the Education Laws Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 24 of 2005), which authorises the declaration of schools in poverty-stricken areas as "no-fee schools", and by the Education Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 31 of 2007), which provides for the functions and responsibilities of school principals.
- The Employment of Educators Act, 1998 (Act 76 of 1998) regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities of educators, as well as teachers' competency requirements. The Act and the South African Council for Educators (SACE) regulate the teaching corps.
- The design of the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) was refined with the publication of the Higher Education Qualifications Framework in the Government Gazette in

October 2007, to provide 10 NQF levels.

- The National Curriculum Statement (NCS) grades R – 12 replaced the policy document, A Résumé of Industrial Programmes in Schools, Report 550 (89/03).
- The Education White Paper on Early Childhood Development (ECD) (2000) provided for the expansion and full participation of five-year-olds in pre-school Grade R education by 2010, and an improvement in the quality of programmes, curricula and teacher development for birth to four-year-olds and six- to nine-year-olds.
- The Education White Paper 6 on Inclusive Education (2001) describes the DBE's intention to implement inclusive education at all levels in the system by 2020. The system will facilitate the inclusion of vulnerable learners and reduce the barriers to learning through targeted support structures and mechanisms that will improve the retention of learners in the education system, particularly learners who are prone to dropping out.
- The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 50 of 2002) set the age of admission to Grade 1 as the year in which the child turns seven. However, the school-going age of Grade 1 was changed to age five, if children turned six on or before 30 June in their Grade 1 year.
- The Umalusi Council sets and monitors standards for general and TVET in South Africa, in accordance with the NQF Act, 2008 (Act 67 of 2008), and the General and FET Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001).
- The South African Standard for Principalship Policy was approved by the CEM in 2015. The policy was submitted to the Performance Monitoring and Evaluation unit in The Presidency to undergo a Socio-Economic Impact Assessment and Quality Assessment. The policy was gazetted on 18 March 2016.

Education Sector Lekgotla

The 2018 Basic Education Sector Lekgotla was held on 22 – 24 January, 2018 at the Saint George Hotel and Conference Centre in Irene. 450 delegates from various education sectors attended the event.

The stakeholders reflected on progress that the sector has made in relation to its commitments to the Sustainable Development Goal 4, the National Development Plan, the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) and Action Plan to 2019: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2030.

The theme for the Lekgotla was "Equipping Learners with Knowledge and Skills for a Changing World". Provincial Education Departments and Teacher Unions were given an opportunity to present under the sub-theme "Identifying Challenges/ Gaps and Strategies".

Key recommendations from the Lekgotla included:

• Continuing to "foster partnership and collaboration. Government, non-governmental organisations and other stakeholders need to work towards a common plan of action in the drive to improve reading and literacy, especially in the Foundation Phase

• In working towards decreasing the skills shortages in the country and meeting the NDP targets, there was a need to align the curriculum with industry and business to allow for synergy and collective agreement in meeting the skills needs

• Increasing the number of focus schools in respect of the critical skills focus areas;

• Integration of the Arts into the Mathematics, Science and Technology (STEAM)

• Continuing to focus on Inclusive Education to ensure education access to more learners with special needs in order to increase the number of learners who attain the necessary skills and a NSC qualification

• Developing a clear understanding of the African context, knowledge systems, values and how to utilise African ways and means of imparting knowledge in pursuit of the decolonisation agenda

• A need to prioritise Initial Teacher Training for Life Orientation and Teacher Development in dealing with all components of Life Orientation.

The recommendations will be developed into implementation plans that contain short, medium, and long term plans.

Action Plan to 2019: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2030

The Action Plan to 2019: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2030 is an update to the Action Plan to 2014. It is a reflection of how far the country has come in terms of planning service delivery, not just in basic education but in Government as a whole. The sector plan encapsulates the DBE's response to the priorities, targets and programmes articulated in the National Development Plan (NDP), 2030; and provides a detailed five-year plan and 15-year targets and programmes for the whole Basic Education sector.

The new sector plan replaces the 2014 Action Plan which detailed programmes that the department had initiated in the previous cycle and which were widely consulted in the basic education sector. In the next few years, the DBE will build on its successes in attaining the Millennium Developmental Goals for access, participation, and gender equity.

The emphasis will be on quality of schooling outcomes and better preparation of young people for the life and work opportunities after they leave school.

The DBE has, to this end, developed three streams of curricula (academic, vocational and technical), which address the diverse needs of young people for learning and development in all schools. The DBE is working with DHET to better influence the quality and preparation of teachers and ultimately, learners, in critical subjects including mathematics, science and technology, and African languages.

The department wants to ensure that every learner has access to the minimum set of textbooks and workbooks required according to national policy.

Making sure that every young South African receives quality schooling is an urgent need. The aim of the plan is to ensure that by 2030 the following happens in every South African school:

- Learners attend school every day and are on time because they want to come to school, the school is accessible and because they know that if they miss school when they should not, some action will be taken. Learners understand the importance of doing their schoolwork, in school and at home, and they know their school will do everything possible to get them to learn what they should. Much learning happens through the use of computers and, from Grade 3 onwards, all learners are computer literate. Part of the reason why learners want to come to school is that they get to meet friends in a

safe and secure environment where everyone is respected; they will get a good meal; they know they can depend on their teachers for advice and guidance; and they are able to participate in sporting and cultural activities organised at the school after school hours.

- Teachers who received the training they require are continuously improving their capabilities and are confident in their profession. Teachers understand the importance of their profession for the development of the nation and do their utmost to give their learners a good educational start in life. They are, on the whole, satisfied with their jobs because they feel their employer is sensitive to their personal and professional needs and that their pay and conditions of service in general are decent and similar to what one would find in other professions.
- The school principal ensures that teaching in the school takes place as it should, according to the national curriculum, and understands his or her role as a leader whose responsibility is to promote harmony, creativity and a sound work ethic within the school community and beyond.
- Parents, who are well informed about what happens in the school, are keen to be involved in school affairs and receive regular reports about how well their children perform against clear standards that are shared by all schools. These parents know that if something is not happening as it should in the school, the principal or someone in the department will listen to them and take steps to deal with any problems.
- Learning and teaching materials are in abundance and of a high quality. The national Minimum Schoolbag policy, which is widely understood, describes the minimum quantity and quality of materials that every learner must have access to. Computers in the school are an important medium through which learners and teachers access information.
- School buildings and facilities are spacious, functional, safe and well maintained. Learners, teachers and the school community as a whole look after their buildings and facilities because they take pride in their school.

National Integrated Assessment Framework

In May 2017, the DBE announced that the Annual National Assessments (ANAs) had been reviewed and reconceptualised as the National Integrated Assessment Framework (NIAF).

The new model comprises three distinct yet complementary assessments, namely:

- diagnostic tests to help teachers identify and fill gaps in the knowledge of learners
- a systematic evaluation will be conducted every three years on a sample of learners in grades 3, 6 and 9 at 2 000 schools across the country to report on learner achievement and link it to system-wide indicators
- a national summative assessment, which is to form part of the year-end examinations, will be conducted in all schools for learners in grades 6 and 9 each year.

The pilot of the systemic assessment was planned for October 2017, and the first systemic assessment will be implemented in 2018.

The new system comes with some notable improvements, among others:

- the use of a single assessment tool, as was in the case of ANA used for a variety of purposes, is now avoided through the three separate assessment tools, each with a specific purpose
- with the systemic assessment being administered once every three years, it gives the system ample time to remediate before the next assessment
- the assessment overload is avoided by the administration of the national assessment in selected grades and not on an annual basis
- the diagnostic role of the assessment is emphasised through the provisos of diagnostic assessment tasks for use by teachers in the classroom
- the use of the outcome of the summative examination for promotion purpose will ensure that the cost of a national examination is justified.

Some R282 million has been allocated for these assessments over the medium term.

> An approximate 11,1 million children aged between 7 and 17 years were attending school in 2015, according to the Survey of Activities of Young People (SAYP) 2015 Report released by Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) in March 2017.
>
> Releasing the Survey of Activities of Young People (SAYP) 2015 Report, Stats SA said of the 11,2 million children aged 7 to 17 years in South Africa, 11,1 million children were attending school, while 179 000 were not attending school in 2015.
>
> Among those attending school the number of girls (5 505 000) was slightly higher than that of boys (5 501 000)

National Curriculum Statement

The NCS grades R – 12, implemented between 2012 and 2014, represents a policy statement for learning and teaching in South African schools. It is the curriculum that underpins the various programmes followed in each grade from Grade R – 12.

It enables a learner to obtain a National Senior Certificate (NSC) after completing the full programme of the NCS Grade R – 12.

The NCS Grade R – 12 comprises three documents, namely:

- a Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement (CAPS) covering each approved school subject as listed in the National Policy Document pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the NCS Grade R – 12
- national policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the NCS grades R – 12, which describes the number of subjects to be offered to learners in each grade and the promotion requirements
- National Protocol for Assessment of grades R – 12, which standardises the recording and reporting processes for grades R – 12 within the framework.

National Senior Certificate

The NSC is a high school diploma and is the school-leaving certificate in South Africa.

This certificate is commonly known as the matriculation (matric) certificate, as Grade 12 is the matriculation grade. The NSC, previously known as the Further Education and Training Certificate, replaced the Senior Certificate with effect from 2008 and the curriculum for this certification was phased in starting with Grade 10 in 2006.

Pupils study at least seven subjects, including two compulsory official South African languages, either Mathematics or

Mathematical Literacy, Life Orientation and three elective subjects.

The class of 2017 sat for the NSC examinations in an extraordinary year, affirmed by South Africans as the year of OR Tambo, a centenary celebration of the birth of a profound struggle hero, people's president and astute academic who left an indelible mark on shaping the country's freedom.

The learners wrote the NSC examinations at a time when the standard and quality of the public examinations system is considered to be maturing and stabilising.

They were the tenth class to sit for the NSC and fourth to write a CAPS aligned NSC Examination. These candidates entered the formal schooling system in January 2006.

A total of 629 155 full time candidates enrolled for the NSC of which 534 484 wrote the examination. The highest proportions came from Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal. Of these, 2 777 were classified as special need learners. As was observed in 2016, more girls than boys enrolled for the NSC examination. Due to a strengthening of policy, in 2017, the number of Grade 11 learners that were progressed, decreased by 1 312 from 108 7 42.

The achievement rate of this class was a marked improvement from 2016 with an increase of 2,6 percentage points from 72,5% in 2016 to 75,1% in 2017.

The following data attest to the proficiency of the education system:

- An improvement in the pass rates for Mathematics and Physical Sciences
- An increase in the percentage of learners who achieved NSC
- An increase in the percentage of learners qualifying for Bachelors' Studies

Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement

CAPS is a single, comprehensive and concise policy document that replaces the Subject and Learning Area Statements, Learning Programme Guidelines and Subject Assessment Guidelines for all the subjects listed in the NCS Grade R – 12.

It comprises the following:

- CAPS for all approved subjects
- national policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the NCS Grade R – 12
- National Protocol for Assessment Grade R – 12.

The department's continued focus is on the phased-in implementation of the revised CAPS.

The first implementation was in 2012 with grades 1 – 3 and 10. Thereafter grades 4 – 6 and 11 implemented the CAPS in 2013 and grades 7 – 9 and Grade 12 completed the process in 2014.

The DBE has approved the introduction of the revised CAPS for Technology (technical subjects).

The CAPS for all technology subjects, including Technical Mathematics and Technical Sciences, that was promulgated in July 2014 was to be incrementally implemented in January 2016 from Grade 10, with grades 11 and 12 implemented in 2017 and 2018, respectively. The revised curriculum offers learners elementary engineering and technological skills that are suitable for the world of work, higher and/or further education and self-employment.

The changes introduced in the revised curriculum necessitated the need for the orientation of subject advisors and retraining of teachers on theory and practical teaching methodologies. The orientation and teacher training took place in June and September 2015 for subject advisors and teachers, respectively.

A National Training Team, comprising provincial officials specialising in the nine core areas of the curriculum and those with skills in Technical Mathematics and Science, was appointed to drive the training process.

The training manual for Civil, Electrical and Mechanical Technology had already been developed to standardise the training to be delivered by different service providers.

The orientation and teacher training processes form part of the implementation of the Mathematics, Science and Technology Strategy. Based on the nature and scope of the curriculum, the DBE is of the view that teacher training for technical subjects should be conducted in a technically oriented environment to expose teachers in the practical application and use of the subject-related equipment, tools and machinery. It is therefore in this context that skills training centres were recommended as the preferred training venues.

The Mathematics, Science and Technology Grant continues to strengthen the implementation of the NDP and the Action Plan to 2019 by increasing the number of learners taking the subjects, improving the success rate in the subjects, and improving teachers' capabilities in teaching these three gateway subjects. The grant will maintain its focus on the provision of information and communication technology (ICT) resources to schools and training of teachers, especially those teaching at Senior Phase and in technical schools during the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

Budget and funding

The Overall budget allocation for 2017/18 for the DBE was R23,4 billion – an increase of 5,1% from the 2016/17. The breakdown allocations by programme for the 2017/18 MTEF period are as follows:

- Administration was allocated R416,3 million – an increase of 9,2% from the 2016/17 allocation
- Curriculum Policy Support and Monitoring was allocated R1,9 billion – an increase of 7,4% from the 2016/17 allocation.
- Teacher Education Human Resource and Institutional Development was allocated R1,22 billion – an increase of 3,8% from the 2016/17 allocation
- Planning Information and Assessment was allocated R13,2 billion – an increase of 6% from the 2016/17
- Educational Enrichment Services received R6,7 billion – an increase of 6,9% from the 2016/17 allocation
- The Mathematics, Science and Technology Grant received R365,1 million – an increase of less than 1% from the 2016/17 allocation.

Role players/statutory bodies

Provincial departments of education

The role of the DBE is to translate Government's education and training policies and the provisions of the Constitution into a national education policy and legislative framework.

Therefore, the DBE works closely with the PEDs to ensure that provincial budgets and strategies are in line with and support national policies.

The national department shares a concurrent role with the PEDs for basic schooling and ECD, but it is the responsibility of

each PEDs to finance and manage its schools directly.

District offices are the PEDs' main interface with schools. Not only are they central to the process of gathering information and diagnosing problems in schools, but they also perform a vital support and intervention function.

This includes organising training for personnel; dealing with funding; resourcing bottlenecks; and solving labour-relations disputes. District offices are key to ensuring that school principals remain accountable to the PEDs and that accountability lines within the school to the principal and to the SGB are maintained.

Equity in education expenditure between and within provinces is achieved through the equitable division of national revenue between provinces, making use of the Equitable Shares Formula, the National Norms and Standards for School Funding, and the national post-provisioning norms.

The norms are progressive, with 60% of a province's non-personnel expenditure going to the poorest 40% of learners in public schools. The poorest 20% of learners receive 35% of non-personnel resources, while the richest 20% receive 5%.

Council of Education Ministers

The CEM – comprising the ministers of Basic Education, Higher Education and Training as well as the nine provincial members of the executive councils for education – meets regularly to discuss the promotion of national education policy, share information and views on all aspects of education in South Africa and coordinate action on matters of mutual interest.

Heads of Education Departments Committee

HEDCOM comprises the Director-General (DG) of the DBE, the deputy DGs of the national department and the heads of provincial departments of education.

The purpose of the committee is to facilitate the development of a national education system, share information and views on national education, coordinate administrative action on matters of mutual interest and advise the department on a range of specified matters related to the proper functioning of the national education system.

Umalusi

Umalusi is responsible for the development and management of a subframework of qualifications for general and TVET and for the attendant quality assurance. Umalusi means "herder" or "shepherd", which in Nguni culture is the person who is the guardian of the family's wealth.

The council is tasked with the certification of the following qualifications:

- in schools: NSC
- in TVET colleges: the National Technical Certificate (Level N3) and the National Certificate Vocational
- in adult learning centres: the General Education Training Certificate: Adults.

To issue learners with certificates that are credible, Umalusi:

- develops and evaluates qualifications and curricula to ensure that they are of the expected standard
- moderates assessment to ensure that it is fair, valid and reliable
- accredits providers of education and training, as well as assessment
- conducts research to ensure educational quality
- verifies the authenticity of certificates.

Umalusi is subsidised at R124,6 million for the 2017/18 financial year.

National Education Evaluation and Development Unit (NEEDU)

NEEDU ensures effective evaluation of all educators based on the extent to which learner performance improves. Its core responsibilities include:

- providing the Minister with an independent account of the state of schools, including the quality of teaching and learning in all schools
- providing an independent account on the development needs of the school education system
- accounting for the attainment of the standards by all schools through a monitoring and evaluation system
- identifying on a systemwide basis the critical factors that inhibit or advance school improvement and making focused recommendations for redressing problem areas that undermine school improvement
- proposing appropriate sanctions to ensure that schools offer effective education for all learners
- strengthening internal evaluation capacity within schools in ways that inform and complement external evaluation
- monitoring the different levels of school support and the extent action is considered on proposed interventions, whether in the form of developmental support or disciplined action
- reviewing and assessing existing monitoring, evaluation and support structures and instruments regularly, to ensure clarity and coherence in the way schools and teachers are assessed and supported
- providing schools with evidence-based advice on how to pursue school improvement in their particular context
- promoting school improvement through the dissemination of good practice.

In 2016, NEEDU presented on its work for the previous five years (2012 – 2016) and its plan for the following five years (2017 – 2021).

NEEDU completed its first five-year cycle of systemic evaluations by identifying, on a system-wide basis at school, district and provincial levels, the factors that inhibit or advance school improvement. The findings were in the following areas:

- Reading: Teachers in the 134 rural schools visited did not have a good method to teach foundational level learners how to read. Actions taken include a Reading Advisory Committee to advise on reading matters, prioritising reading support in the provinces, and piloting the Early Grade Reading Assessment.
- Curriculum delivery: Gaps such as the development and implementation of Provincial Literacy and Numeracy were observed in curriculum delivery. Actions taken included asking for learners' books to monitor quality of writing and held school management teams and principals accountable for curriculum delivery.
- Use of learning and teaching support materials: Most learners in primary schools did not have sufficient learning and teaching support materials as well as textbooks for Mathematics and languages due to an ineffective retrieval system from previous learners. Actions taken included developing policies that ensured that textbooks were retrieved from schools that

did not have a good retrieval system.

- Time management: Many schools experienced time management issues such as tardiness and absenteeism by learners and teachers; and teachers did not follow the time allocated to subjects on the timetable. Actions taken included monitoring of time management in schools by district and provincial officials. The DBE and the Minister engaged district and provincial officials in a discourse on time management.
- Assessment: Teachers in most schools were not able to construct/set assessment items of good quality. Learners perform "well" in school-based assessments but poorly in common and international assessments. Teachers assess what they have taught, not what they ought to have taught. Few schools had school improvement plans that were informed by assessments. Actions taken by the DBE included aligning PED school improvement plans with DBE plans. Subject committees and school-based assessment workshops were conducted in provinces to train advisors in setting up quality tasks.
- Special schools: The preliminary findings indicated that special schools did not have a systemic way of admitting learners and different curricula were used in each special school. Findings at the school level were presented to districts and PEDs to take necessary actions.

During the second five-year cycle (2017 – 2021), the focus will shift to development to ensure the system-wide impact of the NEEDU's findings.

Education Labour Relations Council (ELRC)

The ELRC serves the public education sector nationally. It is a statutory council, initially established by the Education Labour Relations Act, 1993 (Act 146 of 1993), but draws authority from the Education Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995).

The main purpose of the council is to maintain labour peace within public education through processes of dispute prevention and resolution.

These include collective bargaining between the educator unions and the DBE as the employer. The ELRC also conducts various workshops to increase the level of awareness and understanding of sound labour-relations procedures.

South African Council for Educators

The SACE is a professional council aimed at enhancing the status of the teaching profession and promoting the development of educators and their professional conduct. It was established in terms of the SACE Act, 2000 (Act 31 of 2000).

The SACE's functions are to:

- register educators
- promote the professional development of educators
- set, maintain and protect ethical and professional standards.

Before their employment, educators are required to register with the SACE, which has a register of about 500 000 educators.

The council has strengthened entry requirements by checking applicants' professional standing.

The SACE has a number of programmes that promote the development of educators and enhance the status and image of the teaching profession. These include:

- the Professional Development Portfolio Project, which aims to encourage educators to reflect on their practice and take responsibility for their own professional development
- teacher education and development research activities
- setting up the Continuing Professional Teacher Development System
- celebrating World Teachers' Day to acknowledge the work of educators
- ensuring that educators adhere to the SACE Code of Professional Ethics
- the Continuing Professional Teacher-Development (CPTD) System, which recognises professional development undertaken by educators on their own initiative.

Educator unions

Educators are organised into six educator unions:

- National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa
- National Teachers' Union
- South African Teachers' Union
- Professional Educators' Union
- Cape Professional Teachers' Association
- South African Democratic Teachers' Union.

A labour-relations framework was agreed on by the then Ministry of Education and the unions. This encompasses both traditional areas of negotiation and issues of professional concern, including pedagogy and quality-improvement strategies.

An agreement was reached on the framework for the establishment of an occupation-specific dispensation (OSD) for educators in public education. The OSD provides for dual career paths, where educators and specialists in classrooms can progress to levels where they earn salaries that are equal to or higher than those of managers without moving into management/supervisory posts.

It also provides for a new category of posts for teaching and learning specialists and senior learning and teaching specialists, as well as the creation of a cadre of education managers at school and office level.

Programmes and projects

Learning and teaching support material

Workbooks have proven to be essential learning and teaching resources for schools, including Braille workbooks for visually impaired learners.

The DBE aims to improve the learning and teaching of critical foundational skills by developing and printing workbooks in literacy/languages, numeracy/mathematics, and English First Additional Language from grades 1 – 9 and distributing these to all provinces each year over the medium term.

The 2017/18 allocation for workbooks is R1,05 billion – an increase of 4% from the 2016/17 allocation.

The DBE has developed a national reading diagnostics assessment tool to assist teachers in measuring the reading progress of learners at different intervals in grades 1 – 3.

The rollout of the assessment tool began in 2017 at 1 000 selected primary schools and will benefit an estimated 120 000 learners in Grade 1; R30,1 million has been allocated to the Curriculum Implementation and Monitoring subprogramme over the MTEF period for this.

The programme will then be introduced as a national programme in grades 1 – 3 at all 18 500 public primary schools over the medium term.

The department will also provide support and resources such as laboratories and workshop equipment, apparatus and

consumables, computer hardware, software, and learner and teacher support materials to 200 schools to improve skills in Mathematics, Science and Technology.

Incremental Introduction of African Languages (IIAL)

The African language pilot is a DBE initiative that was introduced in 10 schools per district in 2014, and is currently being implemented incrementally from Grade 1, continuing until 2026 with implementation in Grade 12. The department believes that promoting African languages could address some aspects of social cohesion.

The IIAL policy aims to promote and develop previously marginalised languages and increase access to languages beyond English and Afrikaans. Currently, the NCS requires that two languages be offered, one as a language of learning and teaching and the other as an additional language. One of the two languages should be offered at Home Language level, and the other at either Home Language or First Additional Language (FAL) level.

Schools, together with their SGBS, decide on the two languages to be offered at FAL level, one of which must be an African language. The choice of the three languages is largely going to be determined by the demographics of the school population.

IIAL was piloted in grades 1 and 2 in 264 public schools across all provinces in 2014 and 2015. In 2016, the programme was implemented in 842 public schools. The reach increased to 973 schools in 2017 which is about 27% of schools which are set to implement the IIAL programme. The long-term target is to reach 3 558 public schools across all grades by 2029.

To ensure the IIAL programme roll-out runs smoothly, the department has identified three key deliverables: the provision of teachers, learner/teacher support materials and the finalisation of policy.

The IIAL's success depends on teacher availability. An audit by the department revealed that provinces are at different levels of teacher provision.

The Free State, Limpopo, Northern Cape, and KwaZulu-Natal provided African language teachers in all former Model C schools. Mpumalanga and Gauteng had teachers in some schools, while the Eastern Cape and North West were putting plans in place to provide teachers for African languages. In the Western Cape schools share an African language teacher. Learners could choose indigenous languages in

To date, the foreign languages most extensively offered in South African schools are German followed by French and other languages such as Portuguese, Urdu, Tamil and Arabic.

In March 2017, the DBE announced that 27% of public schools nationally are implementing the IIAL programme in grades 1 and 2 in 2017 despite challenges, which include an inadequate number of willing and competent teachers as well as negative attitudes and misconceptions about African languages being inferior in the global scheme.

The programme aims to:

- strengthen the use of African languages at a home language level
- improve proficiency in and use of the previously marginalised African languages
- increase access to languages by all learners, beyond English and Afrikaans
- promote social cohesion
- expand opportunities for the development of African languages to help preserve heritage and cultures
- ensure that all learners offer at least one previously marginalised official African language as part of their curriculum requirement.

According to the DBE's Annual Performance Plan 2016/17, 60 schools (20 a year) that are implementing the IIAL would be monitored as part of the medium-term targets for 2016/17, 2017/18, 2018/19 and 2019/2020. Schools will be monitored during April, May and August.

In April 2018, the DBE hosted a National Reading Workshop in Pretoria to develop a National Framework that will strengthen the teaching of reading in African Languages.

Satellite broadcasting programme

The satellite broadcasting service broadcasts Mathematics for grades 8 and 9 directly to priority high schools during lesson time so that teachers can integrate the broadcasts with their teaching time. Broadcasts are automatically recorded for revision or afternoon lessons.

Eco-school programme

The Eco-Schools programme is an international programme of the Foundation for Environmental Education that was developed to support environmental learning in the classroom.

The programme is active in 64 countries around the world. Locally, it was implemented by the Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa in 2003.

The programme is aimed at creating awareness and action around environmental sustainability in schools and their surrounding communities as well as supporting Education for Sustainable Development in the national curriculum.

With over 50% of the content in some CAPS subjects being environmental in nature, Eco-Schools makes a positive contribution towards improving education in South Africa.

Since 2003, more than 10 229 schools across all nine provinces have participated in the programme, reaching 400 000 learners and 16 000 teachers.

The programme accredits schools that make a commitment to continuously improve their school's environmental performance. The Eco-Schools programme is operational in both supported and unsupported schools.

Student Sponsorship Programme (SSP)

The SSP assists academically distinguished learners to realise their potential during their high school years with scholarships and bursaries. To find the country's brightest kids, SSP searches schools in the major townships.

The focus is on giving learners from low-income families a great education to improve their chances of a bright and prosperous future.

The learners have to be academically distinguished to be considered. Once selected, they are placed in the top high schools in Gauteng, the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and the Western Cape.

More than 850 scholars have directly benefitted from this programme since its inception in 2000, with over 550 alumni. The SSP partners with top high schools that obtain high matric

pass rates and university passes in the four provinces.

The programme commits to funding the learners for five years of high school by matching each child with either an individual or a corporate sponsor. Many of the learners who have been part of the programme have passed matric and are now studying at tertiary institutions.

The organisation's vision is to produce leaders who are committed to creating a society that is non-racist, non-sexist, democratic and prosperous. In addition to the quality education and enrichment provided by the partner schools, SSP supports its learners by assigning a student programme officer to them and finding a corporate mentor for each pupil.

The SSP also runs a parallel programme that focuses on leadership development, study skills, life skills, career guidance and assistance with applications to tertiary institutions and bursaries for further studies. The mentors also help the learners cope and adjust in their new schooling environment and guide them throughout high school.

They run leadership development programmes that offer learners regular compulsory leadership workshops. This approach has produced an incomparable track record for SSP, with 94% of their scholars completing the programme (matric pass) and 91% going on to pursue a tertiary qualification.

Learners who wish to apply for the programme must be in Grade 6 and not more than 12 years old. The learners must have attained an overall average of 70% or more in Grade 5.

They must achieve a 70% minimum grade for Mathematics, English and Science. Their families must earn less than R200 000 in combined annual incomes. In addition, the applicants must show leadership potential and be community-service orientated.

Successful applicants will be placed in a year-long bridging programme that seeks to improve their abilities in English, Mathematics, Science and Technology. The scholar development programme consists of Saturday classes, academic camps and personal development workshops.

The SSP's focus for 2017 was going "Back to Basics".

Educational portal

The educational portal *www.thutong.doe.gov.za* offers a range of curriculum and learner-support material, professional development programmes for educators, and administration and management resources for schools.

Thutong – meaning "a place of learning" in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

The portal is a free service to registered users, who must go through a once-off, no-cost registration process. The portal is a partnership venture between the DBE and various role players in the field.

The department also revitalised and revised the content of the portal. It has over 31 000 registered users and more than 22 000 curriculum resources.

Improving access to free and quality basic education

School fees are set at annual public meetings of SGBs, where parents vote on the amount to be paid. Parents who cannot afford to pay or who can only afford a smaller amount are granted an exemption or reduction in fees.

The threshold target allocation for no-fee schools for operational expenditure has increased to R880 per learner. The national per-learner target amount for Quintile 1 schools is R960.

Total expenditure for school allocation on no-fee schools at the national target level is projected to be in excess of R7,7 billion.

Early Childhood Development

In respect of ECD, the NDP underlined the need for access for all children to at least two years of pre-school education.

By mid-2016, approximately 1,5 million children were accessing ECD services, of whom 593 405 were receiving an ECD subsidy.

Government aims to provide the subsidy to all children accessing ECD services in registered centres. Over the MTEF period, R1,1 billion is allocated to ensure an estimated 113 889 more children receive the subsidy.

Many ECD facilities find it difficult to meet the minimum infrastructure requirements to become fully registered in terms of the Children's Act of 2005.

Over the MTEF period, R230,6 million has been allocated for minor upgrades to facilities that are conditionally registered to allow them to comply with norms and standards, and improve the quality of their services. Approximately 1 993 facilities will be targeted for minor upgrades by 2019/20.

The expansion of subsidies and the upgrades to ECD centres will be funded from 2017/18 through a new conditional grant to provinces, the ECD grant.

Government is committed to ensuring that ECD is linked to other development-based programmes, particularly within the context of the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme, and integrates other services that flow from different departments and relevant stakeholders.

This is done through an education campaign focused on women in rural areas, and selected peri-urban and urban areas such as informal settlements, which are generally regarded as focal points for Government's poverty and malnutrition eradication programmes.

ECD centres play an integral part in providing children with tools to cope socially, especially where there is a lack of parental supervision at home. More than 20 000 ECD practitioners have, therefore, been equipped with the necessary skills to nurture, instil discipline and care for children in ECD centres.

The DBE will continue to work with sister departments to formalise Grade R and will ensure that the provisioning of appropriately qualified and experienced ECD practitioners, as well as age-appropriate learning and teaching support materials, are prioritised.

Over the past few years, there has been an increase in the number of learners in Grade 1 who have attended Grade R. The medium-term goals for the sector will be to ensure that there are sufficient readers and other learning materials for Grade R, and that the qualifications of ECD practitioners are upgraded.

The Department of Social Development leads government departments regarding services to children under the age of four years. In terms of the Children's Act of 2005, it is the Department of Social Development's responsibility to manage the registration of ECD sites, monitor their functionality and impact, and provide a subsidy for those children where a need exists.

Early Grade Reading Programme

The programme aims to improve learner's reading proficiency levels in the Foundation Phase. The roll-out of an assessment tool, was set to begin in 2017 at 1 000 selected primary schools, and expected to benefit an estimated 120 000 leaners in Grade 1.

For the 2017/18, this new programme was allocated R4,1 million, which will increase by R26 million over the outer two years of the 2017 MTEF period.

Education of learners with special needs

In July 2001, the then Department of Education gazetted White Paper 6, Special Needs Education: Building an Inclusive Education and Training System. This White Paper provided strategies for developing an inclusive system and increasing access to quality education for children experiencing barriers to learning.

The DBE's approach to inclusive education is geared toward promoting the democratic values enshrined in the Constitution. PEDs provide a wide range of education services to learners who, owing to a range of factors, experience barriers to learning and participation.

These factors include:

- autism
- behavioural problems
- visual and hearing impairments
- tuberculosis
- conflict with the law
- physical disabilities
- neurological and specific learning disabilities
- intellectual disabilities
- communication disorders
- epilepsy
- over-aged learners.

In November 2015, the Policy on Screening, Identification, Assessment and Support (SIAS) was passed in to ensure that no child will be refused admission to a school and that children who are exempted from school attendance are captured on a list so as to ascertain that they also have access to other government services.

By mid-2016, there were 453 special schools in the country, with 18 of them still under construction. Only two of the 82 education districts did not have special schools.

The DBE will implement the first NSC examination on South African Sign Language ((SASL) at the end of 2018. Teachers have been trained for the implementation of the curriculum. The writing teams have completed 21 differentiated subjects for learners with severe intellectual disability for Grades R to 5. A national training was conducted in June 2017, followed by provincial training between July and September. The subjects would be introduced in 155 schools for learners with severe intellectual disability on a pilot basis in 2018. The expected outcome of the programme is the standardisation of the quality of curriculum delivery for learners with severe intellectual disability.

In addition, the Minister has established an advisory committee made up of stakeholders in visual impairment communities who are advising the DBE on the acceleration of the production of braille material given the limited capacity in the country; 223 textbooks have been adapted to braille and provinces source the textbooks directly from producers.

The following are key priorities in the inclusive education sector plan for 2017/18:

- Accelerated institutionalisation of the SIAS Policy and curriculum differentiation – to be facilitated by filling of posts in inclusive education at all levels
- Mobilising out-of-school children with disabilities – assess children in care centres, place learners on waiting lists and monitor admissions
- Strengthening the implementation SASL Curriculum Assessment Policy Statements at grade 12
- Preparing the system for the implementation of the technical occupational programmes – auditing schools, equipping workshops, training teachers
- Home Education Policy finalisation and implementation
- Progressive designation of full service school and special schools as resource centres – funding, infrastructure and transport
- Promulgation of funding and human resource provisioning
- The incremental establishment and capacity building of support structures at district, circuit and school levels will be scaled up and monitored to ensure full-scale implementation by 2021. School managers will be capacitated to implement inclusive education from a whole school development perspective.

In 2017, the National Treasury introduced a new conditional grant for learners with profound intellectual disabilities. This grant is aimed at providing access to quality publicly-funded education and support to 8 000 learners with profound intellectual disabilities. The grant was allocated R78 million for 2017/18, which will increase to R190,5 million and R209 million for the 2018/19 and 2019/20 financial years respectively.

Educator development

Absa and the DBE has partnered to improve the financial management skills of thousands of education officials and members of SGBs at public schools across the country. The School Governing Body Financial Management Programme functions to strengthen financial management and improve accountability of schools.

The School Governing Body Financial Management Programme aims to:

- be at the level where everyone, even an SGB member from the most rural of areas, could easily understand it
- support and highlight the current financial processes within schools – it was therefore not meant to change any policies or processes within schools
- highlight the importance of proper governance procedures and financial management in running a school to perform well.

The initiative has already been implemented in four provinces: Limpopo, Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

School infrastructure

In November 2013, Government published the Regulations Relating to Minimum Uniform Norms and Standards for Public School Infrastructure. This was the first time that Government had set itself targets of this nature in terms of school infrastructure.

These targets included the provision of water, sanitation and electricity to all schools as well as the eradication of

inappropriate structures, such as mud schools, asbestos schools and the "plankie" schools (schools that are old and do not have even the most basic of infrastructure such as running water, sanitation and electricity).

In acknowledging the backlogs and in a bid to fast-track the provision of school infrastructure, a multitude of programmes specifically targeted at the provision of infrastructure have been undertaken by Government.

The sector provides infrastructure through two programmes – the provincial infrastructure programmes and the Accelerated School Infrastructure Delivery Initiative (ASIDI).

The Provincial Schools Build Programme is implemented by provinces and it targets the provision of basic services, new schools, additions to existing schools, new and upgrading of services and maintenance. It is funded through the Education Infrastructure Grant and the provincial contribution through the equitable share.

Each PED is required to submit its infrastructure plan to the DBE on a set of scheduled dates. The PED identifies its targets in terms of the three-year MTEF and progress is monitored and reported on a quarterly basis.

ASIDI addresses schools infrastructure backlogs on all schools that do not meet the basic safety norms and standards. It is funded through the Schools Infrastructure backlogs grant.

The aim of the programme is to eradicate schools made entirely of inappropriate structures and to provide basic level of water, sanitation and electricity to schools that does not have these services.

The targets, as set out in the Regulations Relating to Minimum Uniform Norms and Standards for Public School Infrastructure, was to attain universal access to basic services provision.

Significant progress has been made in provision of the services in the sector. According to the norms and standards for the three-year target, all schools which did not have some form of sanitation facilities were prioritised.

By March 2018, ASIDI had delivered 189 schools replacing inappropriate structures, provided water to 666, sanitation to 453 and electricity to 372 sites around the country with the majority being in the Eastern Cape.

The provision of water and electricity requires an infrastructure network that lies outside the provision of what the DBE can supply. In this regard, the department relies heavily and works closely with Eskom and the various municipalities.

Government employs a full team of experts who work to design and deliver these schools – which include science labs, computer labs, nutrition centres, rainwater harvesting tanks, decent sanitation, administration blocks with staff room and offices for educators as well as dedicated Grade R centres for the best foundation basis.

Infrastructure delivery continues to be funded through the Education Infrastructure Grant (EIG) and the ASIDI which were allocated R10,05 billion and R2,6 billion, respectively – and increase of 4,5% and 9,5% respectively from the 2916/17 financial year. As from the 2018/19 the EIG and ASIDI will be merged into the Infrastructure delivery programme, which will be funded at a total of R27,4 billion.

ICT infrastructure at schools

ICT has been significant in simplifying learning. In particular, ICT in education forms part of Government's Operation Phakisa, which is designed to fast-track the implementation of solutions on critical service-delivery issues highlighted in the NDP.

Operation Phakisa ICT in Education aims to fast-track the development and distribution of education-related digital content, with a specific focus on 15 gateway subjects, including Mathematics, Science, and Accounting.

The monitoring of the programme is guided by the provinces; they are expected to finalise their provincial frameworks and provide monthly reports to the DBE by the 28th of every month.

Thus far, most provinces have provided their ICT sector plans and aligned them with the Operation Phakisa Framework.

Approximately 54% of the more than 25 000 schools had acquired connectivity through various technologies. A total of 31 800 teachers have been trained in various levels of ICT skills.

Devices and connectivity progress is monitored against the Universal Services Access Obligation project, which compels the country's main four network operators (Vodacom, MTN, Cell C and Neotel) to connect schools and provide them with end-user devices.

The connectivity solution includes, for each school, a mobile trolley with devices: 24 tablets for learners, three laptops for teachers, two printers, one projector, one server, a wireless access point and one e-Beam.

Operation Phakisa ICT in Education was allocated R7 million during the 2017/18 financial year. This amount will increase by R35 million over the two outer years of the 2017 MTEF period.

National School Nutrition Programme

The NSNP in South Africa caters for primary school and secondary school pupils, providing daily hot meals to over nine million children in more than 21 000 schools in all nine provinces.

About 64 000 volunteer food handlers continue to prepare meals for children; while 8 000 small, medium and micro-sized enterprises, locally-based community cooperatives, and other service providers continue to supply the prescribed NSNP foodstuff to schools.

Each meal served contains protein, starch and a fresh vegetable.

The NSNP annually embarks on advocacy and nutrition education campaigns such as National Nutrition Week, World School Milk Day and also a number of workshops.

Every day, 370 million children around the world receive food at school provided by their governments. More than half the children are assisted worldwide by the World Food Programme (WFP) with school meals live in Africa.

School meals encourage attendance and reduce drop-outs, keeping children well-nourished, focused and healthy, ensuring they become productive adults.

The WFP is working with the Government on a study commissioned by the African Union (AU) to document the impact of school feeding in AU member states. This study will be the entry point for discussing the next steps in scaling up and improving school feeding programmes in Africa.

The NSNP is a leading safety net programme in southern Africa. Both the WFP and the Government are committed to sharing technical knowledge and best practices from this programme with the wider region.

For the 2017/18 financial year, the NSNP was been allocated R6,8 billion – an increase of 5,9% from the 2016/17 allocation.

School enrichment programmes

Sport is set to become an integral part of the school curriculum, with different sporting codes to be offered at every school in South Africa. This will culminate in the annual National Olympics Championship, with stakeholders such as trade unions, universities and the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee supporting the programme.

Some of the arts, culture and music flagship programmes the DBE coordinates, in collaboration with the Department of Arts and Culture, include the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the National Indigenous Games, the Music and Movement Festival, and the National Language Festival and Concert.

To boost the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the DBE trained 359 adjudicators, 509 conductors, 82 data capturers and 15 programme directors, most of whom were educators.

Learner health

Integrated School Health Programme (ISHP)

Key among the DBE's successes is the ISHP that will offer, over time, a comprehensive and integrated package of health services to all learners.

Health promotion aims to create a healthy school environment by promoting the general health and wellbeing of learners and educators, and by addressing key health and social barriers to learning to promote effective teaching and learning.

Its strategic objectives are to:

- increase knowledge and awareness of health-promoting behaviours
- develop systems for the mainstreaming of care and support for teaching and learning
- increase sexual and reproductive health knowledge, skills and decision-making among learners, educators and school support staff
- facilitate early identification and treatment of health barriers to learning
- increase knowledge and awareness of health-
- promoting behaviours.

The departments of basic education and health are jointly implementing the ISHP that will extend, over time, the coverage of school health services to all learners in primary and secondary schools.

The programme offers a comprehensive and integrated package of services, including sexual and reproductive health services for older learners.

The Health Services Package for the ISHP includes a large component of health education for each of the four school phases (such as how to lead a healthy lifestyle and drug and substance abuse awareness), health screening (such as screening for vision, hearing, oral health and tuberculosis) and onsite services (such as deworming and immunisation).

The National Department of Health and the DBE continues to implement the ISHP, which contributes to the health and wellbeing of learners by screening them for health barriers to leaning. In 2016/17, the ISHP exceeded its target to screen 28% of Grade 1 and 12% of Grade 8 learners.

A total of 3 330 926 learners has been screened through this programme since inception, and 352 766 learners were identified with health problems, and referred for intervention. The human papilloma virus (HPV) vaccine targeting girls in Grade 4 was introduced to protect them against cervical cancer – a major cause of death especially among black women.

The programme has been largely successful, reaching 420 356 targeted girls for the first dose HPV immunisation, and 327 460 for the second dose HPV immunisation coverage.

Alcohol and Drug Use Prevention and Management Programme

The DBE runs an alcohol and drug use prevention and management programme. The programme is integrated into the school curriculum via the Life Orientation/Life Skills subject area.

This is supported by co-curricular activities implemented through Peer Education programmes. The programme adopts a public health approach and involves interventions to creating an enabling environment for policy implementation, prevention interventions, early detection and treatment, as well as care and support.

The thrust of interventions by the department are on the prevention of alcohol and drug use. However, partnerships are set up with other government departments and non-governmental organisations to facilitate access to treatment, care and support where required.

Care and Support for Teaching and Learning (CSTL) Programme

The CSTL Programme is a Southern African Development Community (SADC) initiative that was adopted by education ministers in 2008.

The goal of the CSTL Programme is to realise the educational rights of all children, including those who are most vulnerable, through schools becoming inclusive centres of learning, care and support.

The CSTL Programme intends to prevent and mitigate factors that have a negative impact on the enrolment, retention, performance and progression of vulnerable learners in schools by addressing barriers to learning and teaching.

South Africa is one of six countries (along with Swaziland, Zambia, Madagascar, the Democratic Republic of Congo and Mozambique) participating in the programme.

To realise its goal, nine priority areas were identified in Phase 1 of the programme. These were: nutritional support, health promotion, infrastructure, water and sanitation; safety and protection, social welfare services, psychosocial support, material support, curriculum support, co-curricular activities.

Over the next five years, during Phase 2, the CSTL programme will build on the experiences, successes and lessons learnt from the previous phases of CSTL. In this next phase of the journey, a number of the foundation strategies of CSTL will continue, as CSTL programmes in member states are consolidated and expanded.

However, there are certain critical challenges affecting children and youths – in particular those who are vulnerable and marginalised – and since these compromise their right to education, they will, in future programming, be given prominence and special attention.

To remain responsive and relevant, the specific challenges that demand attention as CSTL enters a new phase are twofold:

- HIV and AIDS: As the region most affected by HIV and AIDS,

education sectors in all member states, like other sectors, must respond to the enormous prevention, care and support demands that exist. This is clearly articulated in the SADC Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan, in which HIV and AIDS is a priority area and the critical need for coordination and implementation across sectors is emphasised. For the 2017/18 financial year, the HIV and AIDS conditional grant was allocated R245,3 million – an increase of 6,3% from the 2016/17 allocation.

- Vulnerable groups of children and youths: While the groups that are assessed as vulnerable children and youths differ from country to country, every member state has, in common, the fact that large numbers of children and youths cannot realise their right to education for one or many reasons; at times simply as a result of belonging to an identifiable group. CSTL will adopt relevant, sustainable strategies – where necessary in partnership – to address these realities and to enable all children and youths to realise their rights to education, safety and protection, and care and support.

Peer Education Programme

Peer education is used as a strategy to role model health promoting behaviour and to shift peer norms on HIV and AIDS and other health and social issues as a support to curriculum implementation.

Physical education at schools

The DBE and the Physical Education Institute of South Africa (PEISA) hosted the the fourth Physical Education Symposium from 6 – 7 April 2018 as part of Physical Education Month. The theme for 2018 symposium was “Quality Physical Education in Action!”

The symposium was hosted by the Northern Cape Department of Education (NCED). During the symposium, the DBE, NCED and PEISA also hosted the first ever Physical Education Teacher Awards – recognizing excellence in the teaching of Physical Education.

This annual event is central to a series of established Physical Education advocacy and sector mobilisation campaigns. The DBE-PEISA annual calendar also includes the national Physical Education Month and Physical Education Day celebrations, observed annually from 6 April to 10 May.

Learner Safety

The Safe Scholars programme aims to create a platform for further education around road safety for young learners between the ages of six and 13 who walk long distances to and from school. The aim is to reach children at a grass root level, which is imperative in developing responsible road safety behaviour that will last a lifetime.

The programme, sanctioned by the DBE, teaches the fundamentals of safe road practices and provides learners with reflective sashes which, thanks to the DBE, has been made a mandatory part of these children’s school uniform.

The Safe Scholars programme is an extension of Imperial Road Safety’s Scholar Patrol Improvement Project.

The Safe Scholars programme is supported by Imperial’s road safety mascot, Bongie – Buckle Up Buddy, a fun loving bush baby character that help to bring the message of road safety across in a way to which the children can relate.The mascot creates an active and fun method of learning that makes it easier for children to connect, engage with and remember road safety principles.

The Safe Scholars team ensure an engaging and interactive experience for the children through question and answer sessions, colouring in images and using stickers to reinforce troad safety. Posters are put up around the school to serve as an ongoing awareness platform.

Funza Lushaka Bursary Programme (FLBP)

The FLBP – in its eleventh year, was allocated R1,1 billion for the 2017/18 financial year – an increase of 5% from the 2016/17 allocation.

The NDP enjoins the DBE to strengthen and expand the programme to attract learners into the teaching profession.

The number of applications for the bursary have grown from 2,801 in 2008 to 44,736 in 2013, and stood at 92,928 in 2017. Approximately 15,147 students were recruited and funded in the 2017 academic year.

A total of 91,8% of FLBP graduates are employed as teachers. The majority of these graduates are teaching priority subjects they specialised in. The placement rate stands at 89%. The North West and the Northern Cape Provinces have the highest placement rate at 100% whilst the KwaZulu-Natal and Western Cape Provinces have the lowest placement rate at 81%. A total of 5,012 students were expected to graduate in 2017.

The DHET’s 2015 report titled “Relationships between teacher supply and demand and the size, shape and substance of teacher education in South Africa” revealed that by 2020, relative shortages in teacher supplies will still be evident, but that an absolute teacher supply shortage will no longer be a concern as the FLBP has made a considerable contribution to improving the attractiveness of teaching as a choice for many South African youth. The merit-based criteria for awarding the bursary have also contributed to a higher calibre of students entering initial teacher education programmes.

The roles and responsibilities of PEDs in the FLBP have been broadened to include the co-ordination of the identification, recruitment, selection, monitoring and supporting the programme

Secondary School Improvement Programme (SSIP)

Under SSIP, Grade 12 learners received extra classes on Saturdays and during school holidays.

SSIP has become an important element in improving the quality of education in Gauteng schools by giving support to educators and school managers to ensure better curriculum delivery.

SSIP, which is the major strategic intervention for progressed and high-risk learners, is ongoing every Saturday and everyday over the school holidays.

National Senior Certificate Learner Retention Programme (Second Chance Programme)

The National Senior Certificate Learner Retention Programme (Second Chance Programme) was introduced in January 2016 as a direct response to the NDP’s injunction that retention rates should be increased and drop-out rates reduced.

The Second Chance Programme provides support to matric

candidates who could not meet the pass requirements of the National Senior Certificate Examinations.

Candidates are subjected to strict conditions before they are allowed to sit for the Second Chance Programme.

The programme was allocated R45 million for the 2017/18 financial year, which will increase by R223,8 million over the two outer years of the 2017 MTEF period.

National Education Collaboration Trust (NECT)

The NECT also aims to advance the goals of the NDP of 90% of learners mastering at least 50% of the curriculum by 2030, and creating a better balance between unionism and professionalism.

The initiative will improve teachers' subject knowledge as well as inculcate effective daily teaching routines critical for quality education.

The first union to finalise a collaboration partnership with NECT is the South African Democratic Teachers' Union (SADTU).

SADTU is to identify the relevant lead teachers and principals to drive the initiative. The NECT would then step in to conduct the first level of training of lead teachers and principals and also provide the materials (hard and soft copies to each lead teacher/principal).

During the Phase 1 of this partnership, the NECT targeted 348 primary and secondary schools in Butterworth in the Eastern Cape and 437 primary and combined schools in Sekhukhune, Limpopo. The pilot phase involved 700 teachers – 390 from Limpopo and the balance from the Eastern Cape. This included 160 primary school principals.

The importance of public-private partnerships is a prevalent theme of the NDP.

For the 2017/18 financial year, the NECT was allocated R94,2 million – an increase of 30,7% from the 2016/17 allocation.

Higher education and training

The DHET was established in 2009 when the then Department of Education was divided into two sections.

The NDP and Government's 2014 – 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework envisage that by 2030, South Africans should have access to education and training of the highest quality, leading to significant improvements in what learners know and can do on completion of their education or training.

Over the medium term, the DHET will focus on expanding access to universities, expanding access to technical and vocational education and training colleges and improving their performance, boosting the development of artisans, and re-establishing and improving the governance of community education and training colleges.

Expanding the higher education system to produce mid- to high-level skills is an ongoing pursuit. The number of students enrolled in higher education institutions is projected to reach 1,1 million in 2020/21, moving towards the NDP's target of 1,6 million by 2030. Transfers and subsidies to universities for operations and capital projects account for the bulk of the department's spending, increasing from R31,6 billion in 2017/18 to a projected R45,1 billion in 2020/21, at an average annual rate of 12,6%.

This increase is due to an additional R11,3 billion that government has allocated to university subsidies over the medium term. This allocation is expected to cover the 8% tuition fee increase in the 2018 academic year for undergraduate students from families with a combined annual income of between R350 000 and R600 000, and ensure that university operating costs are adequately covered.

Allocations to the National Student Financial Aid Scheme are set to increase at an average annual rate of 51,6% from R10,1 billion in 2017/18 to R35,3 billion in 2020/21.

Over the medium term, the department also aims to improve the public skills development system by managing the performance of service level agreements with sector education and training authorities more effectively, and by providing funding to trade institutions and quality assurance institutions for occupational qualifications. These institutions play a pivotal role in ensuring that the increasing number of qualified artisans and the creation of more work-based learning opportunities for university and TVET college students meet the requisite quality standards.

In line with the NDP's objective of increasing the number of skilled individuals in the country, the number of qualified artisans is projected to increase from 22 110 in 2017/18 to 25 000 in 2020/21, and the number of work-based learning opportunities created from 130 000 to 140 000 over the same period. The skills development levy is transferred directly to sector education and training authorities and the National Skills Fund, and is projected to increase at an average annual rate of 7,9% from R15,8 billion in 2017/18 to R19,8 billion in 2020/21. Sector education and training authorities offer skills programmes, learnerships, internships and apprenticeships, whereas the National Skills Fund provides funding for various skills development projects and bursaries for universities and TVET college programmes. An estimated 4 200 learners and 4 200 workers are expected to benefit from the fund over the medium term.

By 31 March 2020, seven teaching and learning support plans for TVET colleges will have been developed and implemented to upskill lecturers and provide a technical and practical training.

Community education and training colleges also fall within the realm of higher education, and primarily target youths and adults who did not complete or attend school. In line with the NDP's vision, the department will aim to expand the sub-sector. It is projected that enrolments at these institutions will increase steadily from 320 000 learners in 2017/18 to 350 000 learners in 2020/21. In contributing to improved governance and performance, previously developed regulations and policies for community education and training colleges will be implemented over the medium term, and annual oversight reports will be produced to monitor and evaluate their performance.

Legislation and policies

Some key policies and legislation relating to higher education and training in South Africa include:

- The Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997), in accordance with which private institutions offering higher education must register with the DHET
- The Council on Higher Education, which was established in terms of the Higher Education Act of 1997.
- The Higher Education Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 39 of 2008), and the NQF Act of 2008, implied a significant change for the council.

- The National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS) Act, 1999 (Act 56 of 1999), which is responsible for administering and allocating loans and bursaries to eligible students; developing criteria and conditions for granting loans and bursaries in consultation with the Minister; raising funds; recovering loans; maintaining and analysing a database; and undertaking research for the better use of financial resources
- The FET Colleges Act, 2006 (Act 16 of 2006), regulates TVET to provide for the:
  - establishment, governance and funding of public TVET institutions
  - registration of private TVET institutions
  - quality assurance and quality promotion in TVET
  - transitional arrangements and the repeal of laws.
- The General and TVET Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001), which provides for the establishment, composition and functioning of the General and TVET Quality Assurance, Council. It also provides for quality assurance in general and TVET, providing for control over norms and standards of curriculum and assessment; the issue of certificates at the exit points; and the conduct of assessment and repealing the South African Certification Council Act of 1986
- SAQA Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995), which provides for the establishment of the NQF forms the foundation for a national learning system integrating education and training at all levels.

National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS)

The DHET is responsible for ensuring the development of a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path.

The key driving force of the NSDS 3 (2011 – 2020) is improving the effectiveness and efficiency of the skills development system. It promotes the linking of skills development to career paths, career development and promoting sustainable employment and in-work progression. The emphasis is particularly on people who do not have relevant technical skills or adequate reading, writing and numeracy skills to enable them to find employment.

The development strategy promotes partnerships between employers, public education institutions (TVET colleges, universities of technology and universities) and private training providers to ensure that cross-sectoral and intersectoral needs are addressed.

The NSDS 3 is guided by, and measured against, several key developmental and transformation imperatives, such as race, class, gender, geographic considerations, age differences, disability, and HIV and AIDS.

NSDS 3 addresses the scope and mandate of the SETAs. The SETAs are expected to facilitate the delivery of sector-specific skills interventions that help achieve the goals of NSDS 3, address employer demand and deliver results. They must be recognised experts in relation to skills demand in their sectors.

The strategy emphasises the relevance, quality and sustainability of skills training programmes focusing on eight goals, namely:

- establishing a credible institutional mechanism for skills planning, and ensuring that the national need in relation to skills development is researched, documented and communicated to enable effective planning across all economic sectors
- increasing access to occupation-specific programmes targeting intermediate and higher-level professional qualifications
- promoting the growth of a public TVET college system that is responsive to sector, local, regional and national skills needs and priorities
- addressing the low level of youths and adult language and numeracy skills to enable additional training
- encouraging better use of workplace-based skills development
- encouraging and supporting co-operatives, small enterprises, worker-initiated NGOs and community-training initiatives
- increasing public-sector capacity for improved service delivery and supporting the building of a developmental state
- building career and vocational guidance.

The DHET has been increasing access to higher education programmes by expanding spaces and options available at TVET colleges and universities.

The move is part of the department's plan to shift learner focus from traditional institutions such as universities and universities of technology to TVET colleges, where training is vocationally based.

In March 2018, the DHET launched 26 Centres of Specialisation (COS) aimed at prioritising 13 occupational trades in high demand to curb trade skills shortages as well as reduce unemployment and poverty in the country.

The COS are located at 26 TVET colleges across the country.

The colleges were selected through a vigorous process undertaken by teams of education and industry experts to identify trades that are in demand for the infrastructure programmes as well as for other strategic programmes such as the Oceans Economy Programme.

The selected colleges will be provided with resources to upgrade workshops and equipment to deliver effectively on selected skills.

The centres are also positioned to prepare students for the workplace or self-employment through the maintenance of close working relationships with employers in their areas of study.

Partnerships between colleges and employers will assist the institutions to locate opportunities for work-integrated learning and help them to place students when they complete their qualifications.

The trades which are highly needed to grow the economy include Electricians, Millwright, Boilermakers, Plumbers, Diesel mechanics, Fitter and turner, Pipe fitters and Welders, Riggers and Mechanical fitters among others.

Budget and funding

The department's budget for the 2017/18 financial year was R68.1 billion.

Free higher education

In December 2017, government announced the introduction of free higher education for the poor. As such, government will spend R57 billion on free higher education over the next three years – the largest largest reallocation of resources towards government's priorities over the medium term .

Government will phase in fee-free higher education and training to students from poor and working-class families. This means that all new first-year students with a family income below R350 000 per annum at universities and TVET colleges in the 2018 academic year, will be funded for the full cost of study.

This will then be rolled out in subsequent years until all years of study are covered.

Returning National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS) students at university will have their loans for 2018 onwards converted to bursaries. The move is expected to contribute to greater economic growth, the reduction of poverty and inequality while also enhancing earnings and increasing the competitiveness of the economy.

Additional government funding of R7,166 billion has been allocated in 2018 to fund bursaries for children of poor and working class families entering universities and TVET colleges – with R4,581 billion set aside for qualifying university students and R2,585 billion allocated for TVET college students.

The increase in funding for 2018/19 will support 458 875 students to receive tuition bursaries. Based on historical data and the enrolment targets for 2018/19, it is estimated that more than 90% of TVET college students will benefit.

University subsidies

Subsidies to universities will increase by R11,3 billion over the MTEF period. This amount covers an 8% increase in tuition fees for students from families with household incomes of between R350 000 and R600 000 a year.

Qualifying students will pay the tuition fee set in 2015, because government has absorbed the increases for the 2016, 2017 and 2018 academic years. The subsidy amount includes a general increase to cover university operating costs.

Higher subsidies for TVET colleges will cover 80% of the cost of providing programmes by 2022/23, from the current level of 54% of total programme cost.

Baseline funding of R4,4 billion for TVET infrastructure over the medium term will support refurbishment of existing campuses, and the purchase of workshop equipment and maintenance.

The 2018 Budget has allocated R351,1 billion for learning and culture.

Resources

Universities

South Africa's higher education landscape comprises the following institutions:

Cape Peninsula University of Technology
Central University of Technology, Free State
Durban Institute of Technology
Mangosuthu University of Technology
National Institute for Higher Education, Northern Cape
National Institute for Higher Education, Mpumalanga
Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
North-West University
Rhodes University
Sefako Makgatho Health Sciences University
Sol Plaatje University (SPU), Northern Cape
Tshwane University of Technology
University of Cape Town (UCT)
University of Fort Hare
University of the Free State
University of Johannesburg
University of KwaZulu-Natal
University of Limpopo (UL)
University of Mpumalanga (UMP)
University of Pretoria
Unisa
University of Stellenbosch
University of Venda
University of the Western Cape
University of the Witwatersrand (Wits)
University of Zululand
Vaal University of Technology
Walter Sisulu University, Eastern Cape.

In April 2017, the DHET announced a spending of R7 billion on a range of projects countrywide on university infrastructure.

The investment will be spent over the following two years on new student housing, laboratories, communications technology and other essential facilities, as well as essential maintenance and the further expansion of the new universities.

A further R2,5 billion has been targeted to historically disadvantaged universities over the next five years.

The number of students enrolled in universities is projected to increase from 1 020 000 to 1 053 000 over the medium term.

Further education and training

The NDP mandates the DHET to expand access to skills programmes that address the labour market's need for intermediate skills and include a practical component.

Over the medium term, the DHET will continue to increase the public provision of technical and vocational education and training by expanding skills training, work opportunities and work placements for artisans.

Enrolments in TVET colleges are anticipated to reach 1,1 million in 2018/19 from 900 000 in 2015/16, an increase of 150 000 over the medium term. Transfer payments to these colleges grow at an average annual rate of 5% over the period, in the TVET programme, from R1,3 billion in 2015/16 to R1,4 billion in 2018/19.

The DHET's top priority is to expand and improve the quality of TVET colleges. This will be done by focusing on the following key areas:

reviewing the policy for the National Certificate (Vocational) and other programmes

lecturer development, and improving student academic success

college improvement plans

capacity-building initiatives for student representative councils.

The expansion and improved performance of TVET colleges will also be supported by partnerships with the SETAs and funding from the NSF. This support will contribute to the projected increase in the number of new artisans registering for training each year, from 29 750 in 2015/16 to 32 750 in 2018/19, an increase of 3 000 over the medium term.

The DHET aims to improve learner throughput rates by developing five teaching and learning support plans for TVET colleges over the medium term. These plans aim to improve the skills of lecturers and the performance of students.

The DHET assumed full responsibility for the TVET college function from provincial authorities in April 2015. Additional administrative capacity was brought in to manage and oversee the 50 public technical and vocational education and training colleges and their 264 campuses across the provinces.

Adult education and training

The FET Colleges Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 1 of 2013) provides for the creation of a new institutional type, to be known as the Community Education and Training (CET) college, targeting youths and adults who did not complete school or never attended school.

It was projected that enrolments at community education and training colleges would increase gradually from 310 000 learners in 2016/17 to 340 000 learners in 2019/20. As the number of enrolments increases, expenditure in the CET programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7% over the medium term, reaching R2,5 billion in 2019/20. The DHET plans to introduce new legislation over the MTEF period to regulate and improve the governance of the community education and training system.

Spending on compensation of employees constitutes the largest portion of the CET programme's budget, and is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7,2% over the medium term, reaching R2,3 billion in 2019/20. The 17 939 employees in this programme are mainly community education and training educators based in the 3 276 former community learning centres, which now fall under nine established community education and training colleges.

Programmes and projects

Thusanani Foundation

Thusanani Foundation is a non-profit organisation aimed at bridging the ever widening educational and technological information gap between rural youths and their urban counterparts to create an equal opportunity for all to access and succeed in institutions of higher learning (both universities and TVET colleges). The Thusanani Foundation does this through an integrated and holistic approach tailor-made to address the socio-economic, educational, infrastructural and technological needs of rural and township high schools.

Since 2011, the Thusanani Foundation has evolved from a two-man initiative into a registered organisation with volunteers in six institutions of higher learning across South Africa, reaching out to over 35 000 high school learners in rural KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Eastern Cape, Free State and some Gauteng townships.

Operating on a budget of R300 000 a year for the first three years, the foundation managed to attract a range of partners and funders to ensure that the 541 students who are currently in 20 South African universities are fully funded through bursaries and loans. Fifty percent of these students are women and over 50% of funded through the NSF.

The foundation currently has 1 200 volunteers and they are working towards assisting 1 000 students.

In partnership with universities, TVET colleges, non-governmental organisations, Government and the private sector, the foundation aims to reach out and empower over 100 000 rural and township youths by 2017.

Due to lack of access to accurate information, technology and educational resources, many talented young South Africans living in rural and township areas either do not consider or are unable to access institutions of higher education and many other post-schooling opportunities. There is a very big educational information gap that exists between rural high school learners and their urban counterparts.

This lack of information and motivation creates a spirit of hopelessness and discouragement among rural youths, which in turn impacts negatively on their academic performance and results.

To achieve its core objective, Thusanani Foundation offers the following services to rural and township youths:

- career guidance and motivational mentorship programmes
- promotion and improvement of performance in Mathematics, Science, Engineering and Technology
- winter and spring school revision programmes
- facilitation of admission into institutions of higher learning and TVET colleges
- higher education funding opportunities awareness
- promotion of vocational and artisan skills
- continuous on-campus social and academic support programmes
- industry-based mentorship and professional development
- entrepreneurship and leadership development.
-

National Skills Fund

The mission of the National Skills Fund (NSF) is to provide funding for national skills development towards a capable workforce for an inclusive growth path.

Over the five-year strategic period from 2015/16 to 2019/20, the NSF's allocation of funds will be focused on the education and training, including bursaries and scholarships, occupational programmes, skills programmes, workplace-based learning and worker education. The remainder of the funds will be allocated to developing and expanding the capacity of the Post-School Education and Training system, as well as skills infrastructure development and skills development research, innovation and communication.

The NFS will continue to fund initiatives that develop skills that considered national priorities such as those of artisans. Through this, the fund aims to contribute to reducing the skills gap and creating greater opportunities for out-of-school youth in need of skills interventions.

It will also support initiatives aimed at enhancing quality in the post-school education and training system. Through its work, the fund aims to fulfil objectives of the NDP and outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path) of government's 2014-2019 medium-term strategic framework.

The fund aims to assist 4 200 learners in acquiring skills through community-based initiatives such as entrepreneurial development; and educate 4 200 workers through initiatives such as the provision of bursaries, and occupational training and skills development programmes. Spending on these initiatives is through transfers and subsidies, mainly to private skills development providers and higher education and training institutions, and accounts for 96% (R15,1 billion) of the fund's total projected expenditure over the medium term.

This spending is set to decrease from R10,2 billion in 2017/18 to R3,7 billion in 2020/21 in line with the expected decrease in income from the skills development levy, which is the fund's primary source of revenue.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme

The National Student Financial Aid Scheme is responsible for providing loans and bursaries, developing criteria and conditions for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students in

consultation with the Minister of Higher Education and Training, raising funds, recovering loans, maintaining and analysing a database of funded students, undertaking research for the better use of financial resources, and advising the minister on matters relating to student financial aid.

The NSFAS act will be reviewed in line with the announcement of fee free higher education and training. The National Student Financial Aid Scheme aims to support the targets of government's 2014 – 2019 medium term strategic framework, specifically outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path), through strategic objectives aligned with the scheme's mandate. The need for increased student funding and improved loan recoveries has taken centre stage in the context of factors such as escalating university fees, student protests, and poor recoveries by scheme.

The focus of the scheme over the medium term will continue to be on ensuring access to higher education and training for students who cannot afford to pay for their own studies. The scheme will also continue implementing its funding and recovery strategies, and research plan.

The R37,2 billion that government appropriated to the scheme in the 2017 MTEF period has been supplemented by a further allocation of R43,3 billion over the medium term for the implementation of the recently announced policy of fee free higher education and training for poor and working class students.

As a result, expenditure on student bursaries is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 55,7% from R10,1 billion in 2017/18 to R38,1 billion in 2020/21. This allocation will fund undergraduate university and TVET college students from households with a combined annual income of up to R350 000 – starting in 2018 with students in their first year of study, and extending to second, third and fourth year students in subsequent years. For these students, all tuition fees, prescribed study materials, meals, accommodation and/or transport costs will be fully paid for.

More than 340 000 students at universities and over 420 000 full-time equivalent students at TVET colleges will be funded through this new bursary scheme in the 2018 academic year.

Meanwhile, returning NSFAS students from families with household incomes below R122 000 per year in their second, third or fourth year of university study in the 2018 academic year will also be supported. These students will have their loans converted into bursaries under the same conditions as when they first received the financial support.

NSFAS will also receive an additional R105 million over the MTEF period to cater for the additional administration costs of the expanded bursary scheme.

A projected 1 123 212 undergraduate students in universities and 1 137 204 students in TVET colleges will be supported by this allocation over the medium term. This represents a 23% average annual increase in the number of university students provided with financial aid, and an average annual increase of 74,3% in the number of TVET college students provided with financial aid.

Transfers from the department, which amount to R95,4 billion over the medium term, constitute 94,3% of the scheme's total projected revenue. The scheme also derives revenue through administration fees charged for bursaries administered on behalf of various government departments and public entities, amounting to an estimated R74 million over the medium term; and interest earned on outstanding student loans and funds held in call accounts prior to disbursement, amounting to an estimated R5 billion over the same period. The scheme's total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 33,9%, from R16,7 billion in 2017/18 to R40,2 billion in 2020/21.

Ikusasa Student Financial Aid Scheme

The Ikusasa Student Financial Aid Programme was piloted in 2017 at six universities and one TVET college across South Africa.

The scheme funds students who come from families with income levels above the NSFAS threshold, but who cannot afford post-school education.

The pilot programme funded students studying in a number of general formative degrees, as well as seven professional qualifications and one artisan qualification for the duration of their studies.

Funding to enable the pilot has been sourced mostly from the private sector.

The universities and tertiary institutions participating in the pilot phase were: the University of Venda, Wits University, University of Pretoria, University of KwaZulu-Natal, Tshwane University of Technology, UCT and Orbit TVET College.

Role players

South African Qualifications Authority

SAQA, which is recognised nationally and internationally, focuses on upholding the principles of the NQF, including ensuring access, quality, redress and development for all learners through an integrated national framework of learning achievements.

The authority's main responsibilities include:

- registering qualifications and part-qualifications on the NQF
- maintaining and developing the National Learners' Records Database as the key national source of information for human resources and skills development in policy, infrastructure and planning
- maintaining and developing the authority's role as the national source of advice on foreign and domestic learning and qualifications
- conducting research
- monitoring and undertaking evaluation studies that contribute to the development of the NQF and a culture of lifelong learning
- registering professional bodies and professional designations on the NQF.

In terms of the NQF Act of 2008, the executive functions for setting standards and quality assurance will move to the three quality councils.

SAQA must advise the Minister of Higher Education and Training on NQF matters in terms of the NQF Act of 2008. SAQA must also perform its functions subject to the Act and oversee the implementation of the NQF and the achievement of its objectives.

SAQA offers leadership in the implementation of the national qualifications framework. The authority's focus over the medium term will continue to be on monitoring and evaluating the qualifications system. This is in line with outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an

inclusive growth path) of government's 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework. Over the medium term, the authority intends making the national qualifications framework more visible to and understood by the general public. It will do this by disseminating information on social media platforms and through structured communications to all government institutions through the Government Communication and Information System.

To maintain the comprehensiveness of the framework, the authority will continue to classify, register and publish qualifications and part qualifications. The authority aims to continue prioritising the recognition of professional bodies and their designations, and the verification of local and foreign qualifications.

The authority is set to receive 51,6% (R211,5 million) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department, increasing at an average annual rate of 4,6%. Other revenue is generated through fees for the evaluation and verification of qualifications, amounting to a projected R183 million over the period, and from collaborations with international institutions, estimated at R8,2 million.

The authority's total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6,6% from R118,7 million in 2017/18 to R143,6 million in 2020/21.

Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO)

The QCTO is a quality council established in 2010 in terms of the Skills Development Act, 2008 (Act 37 of 2008). Its role is to oversee the design, implementation, assessment and certification of occupational qualifications on the Occupational Qualifications Subframework.

The QCTO is one of three quality councils responsible for a part of the NQF. Collectively, the councils and SAQA all work for the good of both the learners and employers. Another important role of the QCTO is to offer guidance to service providers who must be accredited by the QCTO to offer occupational qualifications.

Following the format of the organising framework for occupations, occupational qualifications are categorised into the eight major employment groups:

- managers
- professionals
- technicians and associate professionals
- clerical support workers
- service and sales workers
- skilled agriculture, forestry, fisheries, craft and related trades
- plant and machine operators and assemblers
- elementary occupations.

Its vision is to qualify a skilled and capable workforce; its mission is to effectively and efficiently manage the occupational qualifications subframework to set standards, develop and quality assure national occupational qualifications for all who want a trade or occupation and, where appropriate, professions.

The QCTO will continue focusing on its core functions of certifying occupational qualifications; providing quality assurance; and evaluating, assessing and verifying the qualifications provided by registered providers of skills and training programmes. This is in line with outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path) of government's 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework, which highlights the need for an integrated approach to skills development.

Over the medium term, the council expects to evaluate and approve more than 150 occupational qualifications per year; develop and assure the quality of leading trades, occupations and professions; and accredit skills development providers. The council will also monitor its quality assurance partners against compliance standards.

For these activities, spending in the occupational qualifications management programme is set to increase at an average annual rate of 25,8%, from R19,5 million in 2017/18 to R38,7 million in 2019/20.

The council is set to generate 78,6% (R318.5 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period through programme quality assurance assessments undertaken by sector education and training authorities. Transfers from the department constitute 21,4% of total projected revenue, increasing at an average annual rate of 4,3% from R26,9 million in 2017/18 to R30,5 million in 2020/21.

The council's total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 18,2%, from R95,3 million to R157,5 million, over the same period, driven largely by income from sector education and training authorities, which are mandated to transfer 0,5% of their income from the skills development levy to the council.

Council on Higher Education

The Council on Higher Education is responsible for quality assurance and the promotion of higher education. In line with the NDP's vision of a South African higher education system that meets the knowledge and high-level human resource needs for 2030 and beyond, and outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path) of government's 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework, the council works to ensure that all institutions provide high quality education and training.

Over the medium term, the council will continue researching higher education sector issues such as the state of the academic profession, governance and management challenges, and the role played by private higher education institutions in Africa. The council will also monitor the state of higher education in South Africa by reporting on indicators such as student enrolment and completion rates, completion rates by qualification type and field of study, and the staff composition and financial performance of public universities.

The council plans to provide two proactive advice reports to the Minister each year over the medium term, and develop four qualification standards to ensure the relevance, comparability and currency of qualifications offered by public and private higher education institutions.

The council is set to receive 90,3% of its revenue over the MTEF period from the department, increasing at an average annual rate of 3,7% from R50,7 million in 2017/18 to R56,5 million in 2020/21. The remaining revenue is derived mostly from costs recovered from the accreditation services that the council provides to public and private universities, amounting to an estimated R13,5 million over the same period.

Universities South Africa (USAf)

USAf is the voice of South Africa's university leadership as it represents the vice-chancellors of public universities. The body was also refocused and rebranded in keeping with international conventions for similar organisations.

To that end, this association will strengthen and enhance the work started by Higher Education South Africa (as USAf was formerly known), which established in 2005 with the merger of the South African Universities Vice-Chancellors Association and the Committee of Technikon Principals.

Its mandate is to influence and contribute to policy positions regarding higher education, advocate and campaign for an adequately funded university sector, facilitate effective dialogue among universities, Government, business, parliament and other stakeholders on issues affecting universities and coordinate sector-wide engagement on major issues such as transformation, differentiation, internationalisation, etc.

USAf commissions and disseminate research on key issues with implications for universities; provides value-adding services to member institutions; speaks on behalf of universities on major issues with implications for their well-being, strengthens the creation of a Higher Education Governance System based on the principles of cooperative governance, institutional autonomy and academic freedom.

USAf seeks to enure that:

- quality teaching takes place in all institutions
- adequate resources are allocated to universities
- deserving students gain access to universities regardless of their social, cultural and economic background
- universities contribute significantly to the socio-economic and cultural development of South Africa
- higher education policy is evidence-based, informed by research of the highest quality
- university sector is sufficiently internationalised to benefit from a mobile global student and academic talent pool
- South Africa understands the value of universities in the economy.

Human Resource Development Council of South Africa (HRDCSA)

The HRDCSA is a national, multi-tiered and multi-stakeholder advisory body under the leadership and stewardship of the Office of the Deputy President of South Africa. It is managed by the Ministry of Higher Education and Training.

HRDCSA was established in March 2010. Membership is based on a five-year tenure and it is represented by a number of government ministers and senior business leaders, organised labour and representatives from academia and civil society who serve on the council.

One of the council's key responsibilities is to build the human resource development base required to ensure a prosperous and inclusive South African society and economy, focusing on the development of strategy and the creation of a platform where social partners can engage to find ways to address bottlenecks in the development of human resources and skills in South Africa.

In essence, it must ensure that all relevant policies, programmes, projects, interventions and strategies are streamlined and optimised to support overall Government objectives rather than merely sectoral imperatives.

The HRDCSA is supported by a Technical Working Group, which is co-chaired by business and labour. It emulates council's structure, but is supported by a team of experts consisting of technical task teams that are appointed on an issues basis to provide expert input in respect of all matters pertaining to human resources.

Nine technical task teams form the pillars of the HRDCSA plans, to drive forward the work of the five-point plan.

The HRDCSA Secretariat provides strategic, technical, administrative and logistic support, and assumes responsibility for, among other aspects, management of the multi-sectoral response to human resource development matters and of the allocated funds designated to fulfil HRDCSA's functions in terms of the multi-sectoral HRD implementation plan.

The Provincial Coordination Forum was established with the mandate of creating a link between the HRDCSA and activities at provincial level. It encourages provinces to form their own councils in the premiers' offices in view of the fact that all provinces have their own unique human resource issues.

Sector education and training authorities

SETAs were re-established by the Ministry of Labour in March 2005, to help implement the NSDS and to increase the skills of people in particular sectors. SETAs replaced and extend the work of the old industry training boards and are accredited by SAQA.

SETAs encourage skills development in specific economic sectors such as agriculture, banking and finance, arts and culture, construction, the chemical industry, education and training, energy and water, the food and beverage industry, health and welfare, local government, manufacturing and engineering, media and advertising, mining, safety and security, wholesale and retail, public services and others. Currently, there are 21 SETAs that focus on promoting skills development in their respective sectors.

The SETAs focus on providing skills development and training to people employed or seeking employment in their sectors. They are tasked with developing skills development plans in response to the skills needs in their sectors.

They then ensure that training in their sectors is of appropriate quality and at the skills levels needed. In addition, SETAs provide information on quality education and training offered by employers within their sectors.

Over the medium term, the 21sector education and training authorities will continue to focus on strengthening skills training programmes in the labour market. The authorities place particular emphasis on artisan development, apprenticeships, learnerships, internships, bursaries and partnerships with TVET colleges, universities and employers. Through their work, the authorities contribute to the realisation of outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path) of government's 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework. The number of bursaries awarded by the authorities to unemployed individuals to undertake higher education and training studies is projected to increase from 12 560 in 2017/18 to 14 113 in 2020/21.

The number of bursaries awarded to workers is set to increase from 8 809 to 9 898 over the same period. Sector education and training authorities support university and TVET college students whose qualifications have a practical component by

facilitating their placement in workplaces.

The number of university students placed in workplaces is expected to increase from 21 969 in 2017/18 to 24 377 in 2020/21, while the number of TVET college students placed is expected to increase from 12 563 to 14 116 over the same period.

An estimated 408 201 unemployed people and workers are expected to enter various skills programmes run by the authorities over the medium term. The skills programmes are funded through payments made to employers for training and developing the skills of their workers or of unemployed people, in line with the skills development levy.

Employers who contribute to the levy and provide skills development opportunities can claim back some of their contributions from the authorities. All the authorities, except the Public Service Sector Education and Training Authority, generate revenue from the skills development levy collected by South African Revenue Service and transferred to them as a direct charge against the National Revenue fund.

The Public Service Sector Education and Training Authority is set to receive a transfer of R337,2 million over the medium term from the department. Revenue from the skills development levy for the 20 other authorities is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7,9 %, from R12,6 billion in 2017/18 to R15,9 billion in 2020/21, constituting 96% of their total revenue.

National Skills Authority (NSA)

The role of the NSA is to:

- strengthen the capacity of the NSA and the Secretariat
- provide advice on the National Skills Development policies to the Minister and make inputs /participate in other DHET-related policy development processes
- review skills development legislative framework to support integration of education and training and the national priorities of Government
- develop capacity of skills development stakeholders and systems
- commission and initiate research, development and innovation to promote beneficiation and business enterprise development opportunities
- monitor and evaluate the work of the SETAs and the implementation of the NSDS III
- promote skills development and profile the work of the NSA through communication and marketing
- support post-school education and training to realise national priorities.

Institute for the National Development of Learnerships, Employment Skills and Labour Assessments (INDLELA)

This institute develops and implements an integrated learner registration management information system that is linked to provinces and regional structures.

To achieve its objectives, the INDLELA has the responsibility to:

- develop and maintain a database of learning programmes, including apprenticeships, learnerships and skills development programmes and training providers
- implement the national artisan development programme
- develop and implement a strategy to support the SETAs in the achievement of NSDS targets in relation to learning programmes
- ensure geographic access to and coordinate artisan trade testing nationally
- implement an efficient and effective policy and process for the Organising Framework for Occupations
- develop and implement accreditation and quality assurance systems for artisan skills development providers.

Work Integrated Learning

Linking the education and training institutions and the labour market is a priority. Workplace training is generally more effective if on-the-job training is combined with theoretical study and also because practical experience gained during training or immediately afterwards increases a student's chances of finding employment.

Government departments and agencies at national, provincial and local level as well as state-owned enterprises have increasingly been creating Work Integrated Learning programmes to ensure practical skills development in sync with theoretical knowledge by increasing their intake of young people for apprenticeships, learnerships and internships.

Libraries in the higher education sector

South Africa prides itself in having 26 higher education libraries (academic libraries), delivering services to approximately 1 020 000 students and 38 118 academic staff. The location of these higher education institutions and the population they serve is spread over nine provinces.

Higher education institutions, though largely autonomous, fall under the auspices of the National Ministry of Higher Education.

In their endeavour to live up to this mandate, several considerations are made to ensure that the bigger picture is encapsulated in shaping relevant Library and Information Services (LIS).

These include the NDP, individual higher education institutions' niche areas, and national and international LIS trends.

Academic and research libraries are increasingly playing a pivotal role in the support of teaching, learning and research. Technology, library space and design, dynamic user services and staff development have emerged as strong drivers for change in academic libraries.

The national research imperatives and the demand for more quality graduates have also influenced how academic and research libraries respond and align themselves to these institutional strategic imperatives.

Academic libraries in South Africa have emerged as intensely technologically enabled and driven environments. An assessment of the sector indicates that the predominant focus is aimed at strategic alignment of services and the broader information services environment.

Digital literacy has been introduced to support students with media literacy, information and communication technologies literacy, digital scholarship and communications and collaboration in an academic context.

This will enable students to participate in digital networks for learning and research, use of digital devices, study and learn in e-environments, and participate in emerging academic and

research practices in a digital environment.

Web tools such as Twitter, Facebook and other social media tools and applications greatly impact on the academic library environment.

These are considered as value-added services, or potentially value-adding applications for raising the visibility of institutional research output and communication with students as well as marketing.

South African academic and research libraries have recognised the importance of the global Open Access Movement for the dissemination of knowledge and cultural heritage, and increasing the visibility of its research output with the rest of the African continent and the world.

Many academic libraries have taken the lead in facilitating Open Access initiatives including its mandates, institutional repositories, observing Open Access Week and facilitating their institutions becoming signatories to the Berlin Declaration on Open Access to Knowledge in the Sciences and Humanities.

International cooperation

The DHET has signed a joint agreement with education ministers from Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) to develop a solid framework for future cooperation in education.

The agreement was signed in Moscow, Russia, in November 2015 and includes areas such as general education, educational policy strategy, TVET colleges and higher education.

It also commits the BRICS partners to support joint research projects, encourage more collaborative programmes at postgraduate, doctorate and postdoctorate levels and co-publishing of scientific results by BRICS universities.

The BRICS Network University (BRICS-NU) is a network initiative that presupposes real participation of 54 universities with all the resources (lecturers, materials, campus facilities). Within the frames of the BRICS-NU activities, it is planned to develop and launch completely new graduate programmes in six priority areas.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Energy

The Department of Energy (DoE) is mandated to ensure the secure and sustainable provision of energy for socio-economic development. This is achieved by developing an Integrated Energy Plan (IEP), regulating the energy industries, and promoting investment in accordance with the integrated resource plan.

The department's strategic goals are to:

- ensure that energy supply is secure and demand is well managed
- facilitate an efficient, competitive and responsive energy infrastructure network
- ensure that there is improved energy regulation and competition
- ensure that there is an efficient and diverse energy mix for universal access within a transformed energy sector
- ensure that environmental assets and natural resources are protected and continually enhanced by cleaner energy technologies
- implement policies that adapt to and mitigate the effects of climate change
- implement good corporate governance for effective and efficient service delivery.

The DoE places emphasis on broadening electricity supply technologies to include gas and imports, as well as nuclear, biomass and renewable energy resources (wind, solar and hydro), to meet the country's future electricity needs and reduce its carbon-dioxide emissions.

Goals beyond 2020 include contracting more than 20 000 megawatts (MW) of renewable energy, including an increasing share from regional hydro-electricity.

South Africa has committed to attain substantial reductions in carbon dioxide emissions by 2025. The country supports research, technology development and special measures aimed at environmentally sustainable economic growth.

Legislation and policies

The DoE derives its mandate from the White Paper on Energy Policy, 1998, the White Paper on Renewable Energy, 2003, and the National Energy Efficiency Strategy.

The following legislation regulates the energy sector:

- The National Energy Act, 2008 (Act 34 of 2008) ensures that diverse energy resources are available in sustainable quantities and at affordable prices in South Africa. In addition, the Act provides for the increased use of renewable energies, contingency energy supplies, the holding of strategic energy feedstock and carriers, and adequate investment in energy infrastructure.
- The Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006) establishes a national regulatory framework for the electricity supply industry to be enforced by the National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA). The Minister of Energy is empowered to make determinations for the establishment of independent power producers (IPPs) to increase the supply of electricity.
- The Petroleum Products Act, 1977 (Act 120 of 1977), as amended, provides for measures to save petroleum products and the economy in distribution costs, the maintenance and control of price, the furnishing of certain information regarding petroleum products and the rendering of service. It further provides for the licensing of people involved in the manufacturing, wholesale and retailing of prescribed petroleum products.
- The Central Energy Fund (CEF) Act, 1977 (Act 38 of 1977), as amended, provides for the determination of State levies.
- The Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999) provides for the establishment of the National Energy Corporation of South Africa (Necsa) and defines its functions, powers, financial and operational accountability, governance and management. It also regulates the acquisition and possession of nuclear fuel, nuclear and related material and equipment, and the import and export thereof.

Other relevant legislation:

- The National Nuclear Regulator (NNR) Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999).
- The National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act, 2008 (Act 53 of 2008).
- The Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003.
- The Petroleum Pipelines Levies Act, 2004 (Act 28 of 2004).
- The Gas Act, 2001 (Act 48 of 2001).
- The Gas Regulator Levies Act, 2002 (Act 75 of 2002).
- The National Energy Regulator Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004).
- The Electricity Act, 1987 (Act 41 of 1987), as amended.
- The National Environmental Management Act, 1999 (Act 107 of 1999).
- The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 (Act 28 of 2002).
- The Electricity Regulation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 28 of 2007).

In 2016, the DoE submitted the following legislation as well as amendmends to existing legislation for consideration by parliament. It was either to be introduced or concluded in the upcoming financial year.

- Amendment of the National Energy Regulation Act: A new proposed structure will create a two-tier energy regulatory structure, to enable the appeal of regulatory decisions through a body that is not conflicted by having participated in making the regulatory decision in the first instance. The Review Board will create such a body.
- Gas Amendment Bill: The Bill will largely introduce a mechanism that allows the Minister of Energy to direct the development of new gas infrastructure, including pipelines, storage and regasification technology for imported liquefied natural gas. The Bill will encompass the midstream elements of the gas value chain, whereas the upstream will be covered under amendments to the MPRDA of 2002. The plan involves separating from the mineral regulatory framework those elements that relate to the petroleum value chain.
- Upstream Gas Bill: The Gas Amendment Upstream elements of the gas values chain, including the exploration and concessioning of conventional and unconventional gas will fall under the purview of the Upstream Gas Bill, the legislation which will be derived from the MPRDA of 2002 separation process.
- Petroleum Agency of South Africa Establishment Bill: Seeks to establish the upstream gas regulator separately from its incumbent CEF state-owned company location. This will conclude the regulatory and institutional arrangements that are necessary to facilitate the concessioning, licensing and exploitation of the shale gas resource that offers so much potential for South Africa.
- The Petroleum Products Amendment Bill seeks to improve

the enforcement elements in the licensing framework for wholesalers and retailers in the liquid fuels sector.

- IPP Office Establishment Bill: The IPP Office Establishment Bill will formally create the IPP Office and define its role and mandate in regard to private-public sector programmes in the power sector.

Budget and funding

The department's budget allocation for the 2017/18 financial year was R8.1 billion.

Role players

National Energy Regulator of South Africa

NERSA was established in terms of Section 3 of the National Energy Regulator Act of 2004. NERSA's mandate is to regulate the electricity, piped-gas and petroleum pipelines industries in terms of the Electricity Regulation Act of 2006, the Gas Act of 2001 and the Petroleum Pipelines Act of 2003.

Revenue is generated from levies paid by the regulated industries. All costs of NERSA are shared between the electricity, piped-gas and petroleum pipelines industries using a ringfencing methodology.

NERSA has formulated the following five strategic outcome-oriented goals to support sustainable socio-economic development in South Africa:

- facilitate investment in infrastructure in the energy industry
- promote competitive and efficient functioning of the energy industry
- facilitate affordability and accessibility in the energy industry to balance the socio-economic interests of all stakeholders
- facilitate security of supply of energy resources
- position and establish NERSA as a credible and reliable regulator to create regulatory certainty.

NERSA's total budget for 2016/17 was R295,4 million.

National Nuclear Regulator

The NNR is responsible for safety standards and regulatory practices for the protection of people, property and the environment against nuclear damage.

Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa

The Nuclear Energy Act of 1999 provides for the establishment of the South African Nuclear Energy Corporation (Necsa) and defines its functions, powers, financial and operational accountabilities, governance and management.

Necsa is a wholly SOE reporting to the National Department of Energy.

Necsa is mandated to conduct R&D in nuclear energy and radiation sciences, acquire and process nuclear materials, perform decommissioning and decontamination as well as manage radioactive waste. On behalf of the South African government, Necsa discharges South Africa's international nuclear obligations such as the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty and the Comprehensive Safeguards Agreement under the auspices of the International Atomic Energy Agency.

Necsa undertakes the commercialisation of nuclear related products and services while cooperating with other institutions, locally and abroad. The company's Pelchem subsidiary produces fluorochemicals while, NTP Radioisotopes markets a range of medical and industrial radiochemicals. Through its NTP subsidiary, the corporation contributes to the national health priority as its medical radioisotopes are used to diagnose diseases such as cancer.

Ongoing research focuses mainly on applications in radiopharmaceuticals, waste management, neutron beamlines as well as uranium and fluorine chemistry.

The centrepiece of Necsa's Pelindaba facility in the scenic landscape of the Magieliesberg is the SAFARI-1 research reactor. Since 1965 this reactor has been the premier nuclear research installation in Africa welcoming researchers from all over the world. In addition, it is intensively used for providing irradiation services in the production of medical radioisotopes.

- undertake and promote research into nuclear energy and radiation sciences and technology
- process source, special nuclear and restricted material including uranium enrichment
- collaborate with other entities.

The Nuclear Energy Act of 1999 provides for the commercialisation of nuclear and related products and services, and delegates specific responsibilities to Necsa, including the implementation and execution of national safeguards and other international obligations.

The Nuclear Energy Policy of 2008 elaborated on Necsa's mandate relating to research and development and nuclear fuel-cycle responsibilities.

Necsa is responsible for research on nuclear energy and radiation science, the development and innovation of nuclear-related products in South Africa, and the execution of nuclear fuel cycle activities. Subsidiaries include Pelchem and Nuclear Technology Products (NTP) Radioisotopes.

Necsa's main function is to serve as the anchor for nuclear energy research and development, as well as innovation in South Africa. The research focuses mainly on nuclear technology applications such as:

- the production of medical isotopes
- applied chemistry with an emphasis on uranium chemistry
- the application of radiation and nuclear technologies
- aspects of the nuclear fuel cycle, including waste.

The corporation is also responsible for:

- operating the SAFARI-1 research reactor to undertake nuclear science research and development
- providing irradiation services for the production of medical radioisotopes
- decommissioning and decontaminating nuclear facilities
- implementing the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty and the Comprehensive Safeguards Agreement with the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA); the Africa Regional Cooperative Agreement for Research, Development and Training related to Nuclear Science and Technology; and the Pelindaba Treaty.

The corporation contributes to the health component of the NDP's priorities through NTP Radioisotopes, which produces medical radioisotopes, some of which are used in South Africa's health system for diagnostic studies and cancer treatments. This accounts for the largest proportion of spending within the corporation, with the radiation products and services programme expected to grow from R1,2 billion in 2015/16 to R1,5 billion in 2018/19 at an average annual rate of 7%. This will allow the SAFARI-1 reactor to be operationally available for 287 days per year, and will allow the corporation to maintain performance

safeguards and radiation doses within acceptable limits.

In the medium term, Necsa will focus on:

- radiation research, products and services
- nuclear fuel research and development in relation to low-enriched uranium research-reactor production facilities
- nuclear component manufacturing to support future nuclear programmes and future power reactors
- contributing to higher industrial manufacturing standards and sustainable job creation.

International Nuclear Cooperation

South Africa has been a member of the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA) and permanent member of its Board of Governors for decades and has been both a recipient and provider of services emanating from the agency. Through its active participation in nuclear energy, safety, technology, security and disarmament, South Africa has contributed to efforts of ensuring that nuclear energy is used only for peaceful purposes like power generation as well as medical, industrial and agricultural initiatives. [CONTRIBUTOR]

National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute (NRWDI)

The National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act of 2008 provides for the establishment of the NRWDI to manage radioactive waste disposal on a national basis.

In addition to radioactive waste management and disposal, one of the NRWDI's major activities is to plan, design, construct, operate, manage and monitor any new radioactive waste disposal facilities.

South African National Energy Development Institute

Sanedi is mandated to stimulate innovation in energy research and development, transform the gender and race profile of researchers in the sector, and improve South Africa's competitiveness in energy research internationally.

Operations includes:

- undertaking measures to promote energy efficiency throughout the economy
- ensuring uninterrupted supply of energy to the country
- promoting diversity of supply of energy sources
- facilitating effective management of energy demand and its conservation
- promoting energy research
- promoting appropriate standards and specifications for the equipment, system and processes used to produce, consume and supply energy
- providing for certain safety, health and environmental matters that pertain to energy
- facilitating energy access to improve the quality of life of the South African people
- commercialising energy-related technologies
- ensuring effective planning of energy, supply, transportation and consumption, and contributing to the sustainability of development of the South African economy.

Sanedi's total budget for 2016/17 was R191,2 million.

Central Energy Fund

The CEF is listed in the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999) and is governed by the CEF Act of 1977 and and the Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 0f 2008). Its mandate is to research, finance, develop and exploit appropriate energy solutions across the spectrum of energy sources to meet South Africa's future energy needs.

Through its eight operating subsidiaries, the fund is also mandated to finance and promote the acquisition of coal; exploit coal deposits; manufacture liquid fuel, oil and other products from coal; and market these products. It is also mandated to acquire, generate, manufacture, market, distribute or research any other form of energy.

The CEF's subsidiaries are: the Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa, the South African Gas Development Company, the Petroleum Agency of South Africa, Oil Pollution Control South Africa, the Strategic Fuel Fund Association, African Exploration, ETA Energy and CCE Solutions.

In line with the Presidential Review Commission on SOEs, the CEF has been working towards the review of the composition of the CEF Group of companies. Work in this area includes the strengthening of the entities in the oil and gas sector and the stated policy objective of the creation of a stand-alone National Oil Company, using PetroSA as a nucleus. This was expected to be finalised by October 2016.

The fund's Vision 2025 strategy was completed in 2014 with the aim of restructuring the organisation.

The stabilisation phase included the following, among other things:

- PetroSA's turnaround project, which aims to steady its financial and operating environment
- tank refurbishment at Milnerton and Saldanha to enable the Strategic Fuel Fund to increase the storage of crude oil in line with Government policy
- the consideration of a gas to power project to divert tail gas to Eskom's Gourikwa power station
- and a condensate project (a process of extracting raw gas and turning it into a liquid state), which seeks to address feedstock challenges.

The lead phase seeks to achieve the long-term objective of making the fund a market leader in the security of energy supply, and to generate investment income from the refinery, gas infrastructure and renewable energy projects.

In particular, the Strategic Fuel Fund, the Petroleum Agency South Africa (PASA), iGas and PetroSA will be involved in increasing storage capacities, holding increased volumes of strategic stocks, and distributing petroleum products.

iGas will be positioned to become an active infrastructure partner for increased gas supply into South Africa, as market indications showed that global demand for gas would grow at about 2,5% per year until 2018. The CEF also aims to comply with the ministerial directive of maintaining 10,3 million barrels of crude oil per year, and to supply the South African market with 4,8 million barrels of liquid fuel per year over the medium term, made possible by the increased coal production at Vlakfontein in Mpumalanga.

Integrated energy centres (IECs)

The DoE, in collaboration with oil companies, have since 2002 been establishing the IECs in poverty nodal areas around the country as part of the its mandate to promote access to energy services, such as petroleum products in rural areas where the

volumes of sales are too low for a normal commercial operation to be established.

An IEC is a one-stop energy shop owned and operated by a community co-operative and organised as a community project.

The objectives of the IEC Programme are to:

- provide access to safe and affordable energy resources to poor households
- provide information regarding the safe, efficient and environmentally sustainable use of energy sources and available energy options such as renewable and non-grid energy
- provide information on how to handle and use energy resources, including illuminating paraffin and LPGas
- enable a strong social responsibility aimed at poverty alleviation, job creation and capacity-building
- stimulate the rural economy.

To date there are nine operational IECs across four provinces: The Eastern Cape, Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal, North West and the Northern Cape.

The DoE has aligned the IEC programme to the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme, which is aimed at improving socio-economic conditions of rural communities.

Sasol

Sasol is a leader in various energy fields, including the Sasol Slurry Phase Distillate Process (SPD process). Through this process, natural gas is transformed into energy and chemical products, including transport fuels, base oils, waxes, paraffin and naphtha.

Sasol is listed on the JSE Limited in South Africa and on the New York Stock Exchange in the United States of America (USA).

The company is one of the world's largest producers of synthetic fuels. It mines coal in South Africa and produces natural gas and condensate in Mozambique, oil in Gabon and shale gas in Canada.

Sasol continues to advance its upstream oil and gas activities in West and southern Africa, the Asia Pacific region and Canada. In South Africa, Sasol refines imported crude oil and sells retail liquid fuels through its network of some 400 service stations and supplies gas to industrial customers. It also supplies fuels to other licensed wholesalers in the region.

Through Sasol Synfuels International, Sasol is pursuing international opportunities to commercialise its gas-to-liquids (GTL) and coal-to-liquids (CTL) technology.

Sasol's energy cluster focuses on the manufacturing, refining and marketing of automotive and industrial fuels, oils and gas.

End products include petrol; diesel; jet fuel; fuel oil; illuminating paraffin; liquefied petroleum gas; pipeline gas; lubricants and greases; bitumen and naphtha.

Sasol's local energy cluster comprises the following:

- Sasol Oil, which handles crude oil refining activities as well as the blending and marketing of liquid fuels and lubricants
- Sasol Gas, which supplies pipeline gas to industrial and commercial customers
- Sasol Mining, which produces about 40 million tons (Mt) of saleable coal a year
- Sasol Synfuels, which operates the coal-based synfuels manufacturing facility at Secunda, Mpumalanga.

Eskom

Eskom began its journey of contributing to the growth and development of the people of South Africa and the country's economy over 90 years ago. Today, the company generates 95% of the electricity used in the country and approximately 45% of electricity in Africa.

More than five million household within Eskom's licensed areas of supply have been electrified since 1990.

Eskom generates approximately 90% of the electricity used in South Africa. The balance is produced by independent power producers and municipalities. Eskom directly provides electricity to about 45% of all end-users in South Africa. The other 55% is resold by redistributors, including municipalities.

Eskom generates, transmits and distributes electricity to about 5,6 million customers in the industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential sectors, and to redistributors.

Eskom sells electricity directly to about 3 000 industrial customers, 1 000 mining customers, 50 000 commercial customers, 82 000 agricultural customers and more than 5,5 million residential customers (of whom the majority are prepaid customers). Most of the sales are in South Africa, with other southern African countries accounting for a small percentage.

The power utility is also building new power stations and high-voltage power lines to meet South Africa's growing energy demand. The capacity expansion programme is expected to be completed in 2022.

Recent successes have been the commercialisation of Unit 6 of the Medupi Power Station, which was commissioned in August 2015, adding nominal capacity of 720 MW to the national grid. All the units at the new Ingula pumped storage scheme, totalling 1 332 MW, have been synchronised to the grid.

Eskom maintains approximately 377 287 km of power lines and substations with a cumulative capacity of about 244 637 MVA.

Job creation, social development

Eskom contributes to job creation, skills development, transformation and broad-based black economic empowerment in support of the National Development Plan. The company is involved in stimulating the small and medium enetrprise sector, particulalrly black-owned, black-women-owned and black-youth-owned companies through the creation of opportunities for entreprenuers to become suppliers or contractors for Eskom and other industries.

The company supports soci-economic programmes by targeting communities where Eskom operates. It continues to address specific development needs, including enterprise development in the economic sector, education, health care, energy and environment, rural school infrastructure development, and welfare in the social sector. This is done through iniatives such as:

In an effort to boost enterprise development, the Eskom Development Foundation has been running the annual Eskom Business Investment Competition (BIC) since 2008. The BIC provides a great platform for South African owners of SMEs to become part of a community of like-minded entrepreneurs as they look to build on their businesses' solid foundation and realise their true potential.

Simama Ranta School Entrepreneurship Education

Competition

"Simama Ranta" means empowering the South African economy through entrepreneurship education. The competition aims to identify, honour and showcase those South African secondary schools that are exemplars in entrepreneurship education.

The competition encourages learners to consider entrepreneurship as a career choice, taking charge of their career path by becoming job creators rather than job seekers. It is managed by Education With Enterprise Trust (EWET) – a non-profit organisation that has devoted their knowledge, skills and talent to enhance enterprise education in high schools over a number of years. They work in over 800 schools throughout South Africa, empowering educators to promote entrepreneurship and enhance teaching and learning in economic and management sciences.

In addition, the Eskom Contractors' Academy trains emerging and suppliers on fundamental business skills over an month period. This is in support of government's initiative to create jobs, develop skills alleviate poverty. Students are trained in finance, project management, safety, and people management. The programme is run in all provinces but the focus are is around Eskom's new build sites.

The initiative has resulted in R2,3 billion worth of contracts being awarded to contractors who graduated from the academy in a period of five years, between 2010 and 2015. In 2017, 150 prospective entrepreneurs graduated from the academy.

Eskon also gives priority to rural infrastructure and food security aimed at addressing inadquate infrastructure by contributing to the building of schools, the renovation and construction of multipurpose centres, the construction of access roads and food markets among others.

The Eskom Development Foundation runs four mobile health clinics that provide health care to approximately 15 000 rural school children per year.

Eskom is making significant strides in promoting maths and science fields and making them exciting and popular among learners. In this regards, 55 353 learners and teachers benefited from the conpany's maths and science programmes. Furthermore, through the Eskom Expo for young scientists, R4 million worth pf prizes, including bursaries were awaedrd to learners at the International Science Fair (IFS) held in October 2017.

Through its vertically integrated business model of generation, transmission and distribution, Eskom significantly plays a role as an employer, job creator and skills developer. The company provides direct employment to over 47 000 employees. The company also created an enabling environment for further 39 277 job opportunities through its capacity expansion programme at Medupi, Kusile and Ingula new build sites and power delivery projects as at end of March 2017.

Environment

While coal will always be part of the Eskom energy mix, the company is active in the global efforts to identify and mitigate the impact of climate change, The company is committed to use cleaner ways with less environmental impact when burning coal. It prioritises reducing its carbon print and greenhouse gas emissions. The company is also implementing pioneering technologies to generate electricity using cleaner coal technology.

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP allows the free trading of electricity between Southern African Development Community (SADC) member countries, providing South Africa with access to the vast hydropower potential in the countries to the north, notably the significant potential in the Congo River (Inga Falls).

The SAPP has made it possible for members to delay capital expenditure on new plants due to the existence of interconnections and a power pool in the region.

SAPP member countries are Angola, Botswana, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

Other role players

- iGas is the official state agency for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry in southern Africa.
- PetroSA is a government-owned oil and gas company mandated by Cabinet to lead developments in gas infrastructure in the Western Cape.
- The Petroleum Agency of South Africa promotes the exploration and exploitation of natural oil and gas, both onshore and offshore, in South Africa and undertakes the necessary marketing, promotion and monitoring of operations.
- Petronet owns, operates, manages and maintains a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines, on behalf of the Government.

Energy resources

South Africa produces about 5% of its fuel needs from gas, about 35% from coal and about 50% from local crude oil refineries. About 10% is imported from refineries elsewhere in the world. The country has a sizeable capital stock and management capacity to produce fuel from gas. The DoE's Hydrocarbons and Energy Planning Branch is responsible for coal, gas, liquid fuels, energy efficiency, renewable energy and energy planning, including the energy database.

To meet the country's future energy requirements, Government is implementing an energy mix which comprises coal, solar, wind, hydro, gas and nuclear energy. In future, biomass, wind power, solar power and hydro-power will contribute 11,4 GW of renewable energy to the grid.

Biomass for energy is restricted due to water availability in South Africa, but energy from waste, using the estimated 60 million m^3 to 70 million m^3 of waste generated annually, is more readily available and exploitable.

The DoE is developing a gas utilisation master plan, which will take a 30-year view of the gas industry from a regulatory, economic and social perspective.

The integrated resource plan targets new gas-fired power generation capacity, plus the supply of gas for converting gas to liquid petroleum products at the plant of the state-owned company, the Mossel Bay Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa.

The department has designed a programme to procure 3 126 MW of electricity produced from gas from selected providers, and a request for information for gas to electricity was expected to be released by the end of April 2016.

Liquid fuels

The recommendations made in the Energy, Security Master Plan for Liquid Fuels, approved by Cabinet in 2007, continue to be implemented, with the focus primarily on addressing short to medium-term infrastructural constraints within the liquid fuels sector.

South Africa faces a number of specific challenges in the liquid fuels sector:

- Gas stocks for the existing gas-to-liquids plant from offshore fields are declining.
- Refining capacity has run out and South Africa now has to import a share of its refined fuel needs. There are five options to deal with this, namely:
  - building a new oil-to-liquid refinery (such as the proposed Mthombo Project in Coega)
  - building a new CTL refinery
  - upgrading the existing refineries; allowing significant expansion of one or more of the existing refineries
  - importing refined products
  - building a refinery in Angola or Nigeria and buying a share of the product of that refinery.

Other issues related to liquid fuels include:

- clean fuel standards
- vehicle carbon tax
- electric vehicles
- use of public transport.

The South African liquid-fuels sector presents several opportunities for investors throughout the petroleum value chain.

A key feature of the South African liquid-fuels sector is that most transport fuel is produced in the coastal areas, about 68% of which is consumed in Gauteng. This requires investments in storage and distribution facilities for the supply of petroleum products at the point of need.

The construction of a multi-product pipeline, which was funded under the DoE through Transnet, was completed. The 555-km pipeline, which has a 70-year design life, runs from Durban to Gauteng. It can transport jet fuel, 93-grade and 95-grade unleaded petrol, low-sulphur diesel and ultra-low-sulphur diesel.

The trunk pipeline, with pump stations, terminals and a 160-km inland pipeline network, came into operation at the end of 2013, increasing capacity from the existing 4,4 billion litres to 8,4 billion litres.

These mega infrastructural projects and related support infrastructure require a close and ongoing partnership between state-owned enterprises and private companies.

Oil and natural gas

South Africa has very limited oil reserves. About 60% of its crude oil requirements are met by imports from the Middle East and Africa.

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, LPG and refinery gas are produced by the following methods:

- crude oil refining (oil refineries)
- CTL and GTL fuels (Sasol)
- natural GTL (PetroSA).

Government regulates wholesale margins and controls the retail price of petrol. The industry has entered into product-exchange agreements to serve different markets.

Together, these controls provide for access to fuel throughout the country and protect consumers, while rendering a reasonable return on investment to the oil industry and enhancing opportunities for employment.

Refineries and Sasol produce LPG and illuminating paraffin (kerosene). Most LPG is consumed in the country and the rest is used in refineries as fuel and/or exported regionally.

The DoE views natural gas as an evolving energy source, despite the country's limited gas reserves. There are projects underway to explore the potential of importing natural gas, both as liquid natural gas and compressed natural gas.

To this end, the Integrated Resources Plan (IRP) was developed, which incorporates gas among alternative energy sources for electricity generation. The IRP presents a 20-year view on South Africa's energy mix that seeks to balance growth in demand with South Africa's commitments to reduce its dependence on coal and to lower climate-changing emissions.

The IRP aims to:

- improve the country's global competitiveness
- support job creation
- improve the management of natural resources
- reduce and mitigate greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions in line with reduction targets.

The IRP's development and update processes aim to balance security of supply, cost of electricity, job creation and localisation, minimal negative environmental impact, minimal water usage, to diversity of supply sources (energy mix) and promotion of energy access.

Against these objectives, the DoE set four key milestones:

- settling the key assumptions
- developing a base-case
- modelling and analysing the scenarios and sensitivities
- developing the final plan taking into account the various scenarios and policy positions.

The first and second milestones have been completed and are the basis of the planned public consultation process. The third milestone, which involves testing various scenarios and sensitivities was implemented in 2016/17, and the fourth milestone that relates to policy adjustment will follow once public consultations and scenario analysis are done.

Alternative gas resources

Experiments are underway to assess the potential for mining coal-bed methane gas.

Underground coal gassification technology is also being developed.

According to the USA Energy Information Administration, technically recoverable shale-gas resources in South Africa form the fifth-largest reserve globally.

Since the publication of draft regulations on shale gas development, substantive inputs have been received from interested and affected stakeholders.

The Department of Mineral Resources first halted new applications for exploration rights in 2011 to investigate the impact that the process would have on the environment, and an interdepartmental task team was set up to head this process.

Government is clear that shale gas will form a part of the energy mix going forward.

Following the gazetting of Regulations for Petroleum

Exploration and Production, the Department of Mineral Resources has insituted research on shale gas. Research will be carried out with the objective to enhance current knowledge on shale gas as well as identify other unknown shale gas occurrences.

The sensitive nature of the process, possible negative environmental impacts associated with the process and lack of information and knowledge on technical aspects of the hydraulic fracturing process in South Africa will be taken into consideration.

This plan will see the Department of Mineral Resources in partnership with its SOEs, namely the Council for Geoscience (CGS) and the PASA undertaking a research programme on petroleum exploration and exploitation of shale gas resources during the MTEF period.

A shale gas workshop was held with both the CGS and PASA to finalise a shale gas development plan considering the budget allocation sitting under the Department of Mineral Resources and the CGS. In implementing the plan, PASA hosted a training session on the Development of Unconventional Gas and Gas to Liquids Projects course offered by a leading international trainer in January 2016.

The Department of Mineral Resources, together with the two institutions, underwent a visit to Canada to formalise bilateral cooperation in the area of shale gas development, since Canada is a well-established authority on this area.

The research element of the plan is still ongoing and on track with a water-sampling process being undertaken. The Department of Mineral Resources also held a shale gas imbizo with the community of Cradock as well as a business session in Cape Town in January 2016.

The Department of Mineral Resources, in conjunction with the Government Communication and Information System and other stakeholders, will conduct a communication and marketing campaign planned for 2017 to generate and popularise awareness of shale gas and hydraulic fracturing.

The strategic aim is to inform, educate and create an understanding among South Africans of the potential of the energy resource to contribute to realising the objectives of the NDP, as well as the Nine-Point Plan aimed at growing an inclusive economy.

Electricity

Electricity demand is expected to double over the next 20 years as Government implements its Programme of Action, including the Infrastructure Development Programme, to put the country's economy onto a higher growth path.

To this end, more than R340 billion will be spent on Eskom's New Build Programme. This will bring on line a further 11 641 MW of new capacity in the short term, adding to Eskom's existing 40 000 MW of capacity.

The DoE has procured private peaker stations to the capacity of nearly 1 000 MW that can be used when there is a larger demand than what the Eskom generators can produce. The Avon plant in Eastern Cape was completed in September 2015 and can produce 330 MW. The Dedisa plant in KwaZulu-Natal, when completed by the end of 2016, will produce 630 MW. Total projects costs were R8 billion, while 210 permanent jobs and 6 190 temporary jobs were created at both plants.

Coal

South Africa's indigenous energy resource base is dominated by coal.

Internationally, coal is the most widely used primary fuel, accounting for about 36% of the total fuel consumption of the world's electricity production.

About 77% of South Africa's primary energy needs are provided by coal. This is unlikely to change significantly in the next two decades owing to the relative lack of suitable alternatives to coal as an energy source.

Many of the deposits can be exploited at extremely favourable costs and, as a result, a large coal-mining industry has developed.

In addition to the extensive use of coal in the domestic economy, about 28% of South Africa's production is exported, mainly through the Richards Bay Coal Terminal, making South Africa the fourth-largest coal exporting country in the world.

South Africa's coal is obtained from collieries that range from among the largest in the world to small-scale producers. As a result of new entrants, operating collieries increased to 64 during 2004. Of these, a relatively small number of large-scale producers supply coal primarily to electricity and synthetic fuel producers.

About 51% of South African coal mining is done underground and about 49% is produced by open-cast methods. The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with five companies accounting for 85% saleable coal production.

These companies are:

- Ingwe Collieries Limited, a BHP Billiton subsidiary
- Anglo Coal
- Sasol
- Eyesizwe
- Kumba Resources Limited, accounting for 85% of the saleable coal production.

Production is concentrated in large mines, with 11 mines accounting for 70% of the output.

South African coal for local electricity production is among the cheapest in the world. The beneficiation of coal, particularly for export, results in more than 65 Mt of coal discards being produced every year.

About 21% of the run-of-mine coal produced is exported, and 21% is used locally (excluding power-station coal). The rest is not saleable and is discarded.

The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries:

- 62% is used for electricity generation
- 23% for petrochemical industries (Sasol)
- 8% for general industry
- 4% for the metallurgical industry (Mittal)
- 4% is purchased by merchants and sold locally or exported.

The key role played by South Africa's coal reserves in the economy is illustrated by the fact that Eskom ranks first in the world as a steam coal user and seventh as an electricity generator. Sasol is the largest coal-to-chemicals producer.

By international standards, South Africa's coal deposits are relatively shallow with thick seams, which make them easier and, usually, cheaper to mine. At the present production rate, there should be more than 50 years of coal supply left.

The DoE was expected to announce the preferred bidders from the first bid submission for domestic coal projects in July

In April 2017, a R2,4-billion programme for the electrification of 119 informal settlements across Ekurhuleni was annopunced, with over 16 000 households to be completed by the end of 2016/17.

The five-year programme started in the informal settlements located on state-owned land, while legalities to roll out the programme in privately owned informal settlements is being reviewed.

To date, 9 943 households have been electrified in informal settlements such as Langaville, Inxiweni, Marikana, Winnie Mandela and Ekurhuleni.

The installation of streetlights is currently being rolled out with 2 263 streets lights of the targeted 3 000 and 156 of the targeted 400 high mast lights already installed.

2016. Bids with a combined capacity of 900 MW were received and evaluated. The projected investment commitment from these coal projects is in the region of R45 billion, and will be rolled out over the next four years.

An additional 3 750 MW of power will be generated using coal technology, through cross border projects that will augment the local coal IPP procurement programme. The rationale behind the cross-border coal programme is that it facilitates the construction of the transmission interconnectors between South Africa and its neighbours. Transmission interconnectors are critical if the country is to import power from the hydropower projects in the DRC, the Grand Inga, and in Zambia and Mozambique such as Cahora Bassa North Bank and Mpanda Nkuwa.

This also gives the respective transit countries the necessary comfort that the interconnections are in their national interest and not just for the benefit of South Africa.

Renewable and alternative fuels

South Africa's National Development Plan has stressed the importance of a greater mix of energy sources and a greater diversity of IPPs in South Africa's energy mix.

This has been made a reality through the DoE's Renewable Independent Power Producer Programme (REIPP).

The renewables programme, which is seen as an example for other African countries, has resulted in over 6 000 MW of generation capacity being allocated to bidders across a variety of technologies, principally in wind and solar.

In November 2016, Eskom said it had spent approximately R9,5 billion in IPP renewable energy, while some 2 000 MW is already connected to the grid.

REIPPP is aimed at bringing additional megawatts onto the country's electricity system through private sector investment in wind, biomass and small hydro, among others.

The Eastern Cape's renewable energy projects has created 18 132 jobs since its inception. The province was awarded 16 wind farms and one solar energy farm, with a total investment value of R33,7 billion.

The province has been able to reduce loadshedding because it received an additional boost for its energy security when the R3,5 billion, 342 MW DEDISA peaking power station achieved commercial operation in October 2015.

On renewable energy such as solar and wind, the DoE has procured over 3 900 MW of renewable energy with about 1 000 MW already in operation and 1 400 MW planned to come online during 2016.

Work is underway to procure the remaining megawatts in line with the IRP 2010. About 2 500 MW has been allocated for coal programme procurement from IPPs.

Work on the Grand Inga Project to secure 2 500 MW is continuing, while an energy agreement between South Africa and the DRC has been signed.

The agreement, which was signed in September 2014, provides a legal framework for cooperation between the two countries.

Biofuel

The South African Cabinet approved the national Biofuels Industrial Strategy in December 2007. The regulations for mandatory blending of biofuels with petrol and diesel were promulgated in August 2012 and came into effect in October 2016.

The Biofuels Regulatory Framework was submitted to Cabinet during 2016. It outlined how the nascent biofuels industry will be financially supported and how the projects would be selected and supported.

The blending of biofuels reduces the impact of fuel emissions. In addition, the benefits arising from biofuels include:

- the potential for a biofuels manufacturing industry to create a captive market for the agricultural sector, especially for new black or small farmers
- the opportunity of a biofuels industry to create jobs in rural areas
- the reduction in imports of refined liquid transport fuel, which is good for the country's balance of payments savings.

The production of 460 million litres of biofuels can create 15 000 new permanent direct jobs in the biofuels manufacturing plants and agriculture; plus over 3 000 temporary jobs during the 24 months of construction.

A 460 million litres a year, the biofuels industry can immediately improve the country's annual balance of payments by over R2,5 billion at the current crude oil prices and exchange rate.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries played a key role in designing the biofuels feedstock protocol for mitigating the possible impact of biofuels production on food security. This will prevent the use of staple food crops and land currently used for these crops from being used for biofuels production other than as a result of crop rotation.

Hydropower

Energy from water can be generated from waves, tides, waterfalls and rivers and will never be depleted as long as water is available. South Africa has a mix of small hydroelectricity stations and pumped-water storage schemes.

Pumping uses some electricity, but this is done in off-peak periods. During peak hours, when extra electricity is needed, the water is released through a turbine that drives an electric generator. Peak hours are usually from 06:00 to 08:00 and 18:00 to 20:00.

South Africa used to import electricity from the Cahora Bassa hydropower station in Mozambique and will do so again once the transmission line is repaired. There is also the potential to import more hydropower from countries such as Zambia, Zimbabwe and DRC, which could make South Africa less dependent on coal-fired power stations.

Irrespective of the size of its installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National

Water Act 1998, (Act 36 of 1998).

The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are endowed with the best potential for the development of small, i.e. less than 1 MW, hydropower plants. These plants can either be stand-alones or in a hybrid combination with other renewable energy sources. Advantage can be derived from the association with other uses of water – such as water supply, irrigation and flood control – which are critical to the future economic and socio-economic development of South Africa.

Ocean energy could potentially be derived from the various characteristics of the sea.

Eskom is continuing resource surveys of the Agulhas Current on the east coast of South Africa and of wave energy, in partnership with the DEA and the Bayworld Centre for Research and Education.

Results have proved the technical feasibility of extracting significant large-scale renewable energy from the current.

According to the IRP's 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand, about 6% of electricity generated in the country will be required to come from hydro resources.

Solar power

South Africa boasts one of the best solar regimes in the world. Most areas in the country average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 kWh/m^2 and 6,5 kWh/m^2 in one day. The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, is well endowed with sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m^2 for South Africa. The solar resource is the most readily accessible in South Africa. It lends itself to a number of potential uses.

In November 2014, SolarReserve, a global developer of solar power projects and solar thermal technology, announced that the 96 MW photovoltaic (PV) Jasper Solar Power Project was fully operational.

Jasper is located in the Northern Cape in a solar park that also includes the 75 MW Lesedi solar power project, which came online in May 2014.

In addition to helping South Africa meet its electricity needs, the Jasper Project will bring long-lasting economic benefits to the region.

With over 325 000 PV modules, the Jasper Project will deliver 180 000 MW hours of renewable electricity annually for South African residents.

The power generated is enough to power up to 80 000 households through a 20-year power purchase agreement with Eskom.

The project also marked Google's first renewable energy investment in Africa – the Internet search invested US$12 million in the solar project.

In August 2014, China-based solar PV giant, Jinko Solar, has officially opened a state-of-the-art factory in Cape Town, creating 250 jobs and producing 1 300 solar PV modules a day.

To boost renewable energy development in South Africa, the DoE, in partnership with the NERSA, aims to generate 1 500 MW from new solar technologies in a Northern Cape Solar Park.

The Solar Park will stimulate investment in new and expanding industrial and manufacturing facilities, the development of local supply chains and entrepreneurial and employment opportunities for South Africans in general and for the people of the Northern Cape in particular.

The Solar Park will be developed in a clustered fashion, sharing common infrastructure and services such as access to land, water supply, feeder lines to electricity transmission system, roads and support industries. The area has been included in one of the newly promulgated Renewable Energy Development Zones.

The Solar Water Heater Programme has been implemented in 2016/17, with contracts placed for the supply of baseline systems under the social programme.

Approximately 9 000 systems have been secured through this programme, in terms of which the local content of these products exceeds 75%.

The next step is to commence with the training of local communities in the installation of the solar water systems, with clear objectives set for skills and enterprise development, job creation and the targeting of the youth, women and other designated groups.

Another priority for the DoE is to address defective installations from the initial solar water heater rollout programme to ensure continued operation of the installed systems and service delivery to the recipients.

This corrective Solar Water Heater Programme has been identified to serve as incubator for suitably skilled and experienced solar water heater installers and installation businesses. It provides a platform for technical training at different skills levels and an opportunity for work-based experience with respect to all aspects of solar water heater installation; from identifying installation and system defects, to repairs and doing new, replacement installations.

Targets for installing solar water heaters had not been met due to delays in finalising the implementing contract with Eskom and the local content verification outcomes projected by the South African Bureau of Standards.

The Solar Water Heater Programme will now be managed by the DoE. Spending of R1,2 billion over the medium term on 131 146 solar water heaters is projected. The budget for solar water heater service providers is in the Energy Efficiency subprogramme of the Clean Energy programme and is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 49,8% over the medium term.

Wind power

The R3-billion Jeffrey's Bay wind farm, located between the towns of Jeffreys Bay and Humansdorp in the Eastern Cape, was officially inaugurated in July 2014.

Built by a consortium led by British company Globeleq, the 138 MW wind farm is one of Africa's biggest – larger than the 120 MW Ashegoda windfarm that was unveiled by Ethiopia in October 2013, though not as big as the Tarfaya wind farm in south-western Morocco, which started producing energy in April and will eventually generate up to 300 MW of electricity.

The Jeffrey's Bay wind farm, comprising sixty 80-metre high turbines spread over 3 700 hectares, will supply enough clean, renewable electricity to power more than 100 000 homes a year, helping South Africa to avoid production of 420 000 tonnes of carbon dioxide annually.

The facility was built under the Government's renewable energy programme for independent power producers, which aims to add 3 725 MW of wind, solar photovoltaic and

i In March 2017, Minister of Energy handed over and launched a number of energy projects in the Vryburg area in the North West.

- The handover the Greening Technologies to Tygerkloof Combined School, including a central water purification system, solar water heaters, a biogas digester,
- A visit to the smart grid intervention project (pilot site) in the Naledi Local Municipality to switch on the Naledi substation. The station will provide electricity to 5 000 households in the area.

concentrating solar power to South Africa's energy mix.

Hybrid systems

Hybrid energy systems are a combination of two or more renewable energy sources such as photovoltaic, wind, micro-hydro, storage batteries and fuel-powered generator sets to provide a reliable off-grid supply.

There are two pilot hybrid systems in the Eastern Cape at the Hluleka Nature Reserve on the Wild Coast and at the neighbouring Lucingweni community.

Tradable renewables

The White Paper on Renewable Energy Policy proposed that tradable renewable energy certificates be investigated to find out whether these could be one of the funding streams to support the implementation of the renewable energy programme in South Africa. This would be in addition to other funding options, i.e. sale of physical electrical power through a power purchase agreement into the electrical grid at prevailing electricity market prices and certified emission reductions trading through the clean development mechanism, a UN framework mechanism that encourages developing countries to implement emission-reduction projects to earn certified emission reductions.

A tradable renewable energy certificate is an electronic record that verifies the origin of energy by a registered renewable energy entity. It is also referred to as a green certificate or green tag. Tradable renewable energy certificates are based on separating the various attributes of renewable resource-based energy provision from the physical energy carrier, electric or otherwise. It is another revenue stream for renewable energy IPPs and its major advantage is that, apart from potential extra income, certificates can be traded worldwide and separately from the electricity grid infrastructure.

Nuclear

South Africa's vision for nuclear power is based on the Nuclear Energy Policy of 2008 that provides a framework within which the following is to take place: prospecting, milling, mining, the use of nuclear materials, and the development and use of nuclear energy for peaceful purposes.

Government has committed itself, by means of its Nuclear Energy Policy and Integrated Resource Plan, to an energy mix consisting of coal, gas, hydro, nuclear, solar and wind in order to meet the country's future electricity needs and reduce its carbon dioxide emissions. [CONTRIBUTOR]

Government remains firmly committed to an open, fair and transparent procurement process with due regard to implementing the programme at a scale and pace that South Africa can afford.

The RFP for the Nuclear New Build Programme (NNBP) of 9 600 MW was released to the market during 2016/17.

A Section 34 Ministerial Determination in terms of the National Energy Regulator Act of 2004 on the NNBP was also gazetted in December 2015.

As part of procurement preparation for the NNBP, the DoE has appointed transaction advisors to conduct an independent assessment of the RFP and other pre-procurement activities to ensure the state of readiness before testing the market.

The national electricity utility company, Eskom, operates the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station near Cape Town, the only nuclear power station in South Africa and the entire African continent, which supplies power to the national grid. By March 2018, the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station was supplying approximately 4,1% of the power (1940 MW) used in South Africa, while adding diversification to the energy mix. [Contributor]

In March 2016, Eskom, the owner and operator of the nuclear plants, as part of the regulatory process submitted a final environmental impact assessment to the Department of Environmental Affairs for approval. In addition, a nuclear installation site licence application had been submitted to the NNR for assessment.

Extensive nuclear skills development and training is taking place both in South Africa and in countries abroad to ensure that the country has a sufficient supply of skills and expertise to meet the human resource needs required by the NNBP.

By March 2017, the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station was supplying approximately 5,6% of the power (1 860 MW) used in South Africa and 50% of Western Cape's energy demand, while adding diversification to the energy mix.

According to KPMG, between 2013 and 2016, Koeberg contributed R29 billion to the GDP of the Western Cape – 1,4% of the provincial Gross Domestic Product (GDP) – and R23 billion to the rest of the South African economy.

The nuclear power station is expected to add R27 billion to the Western Cape provincial GDP and an additional R22 billion to the South African economy between 2016/17 and 2019/20.

Koeberg (and its web of suppliers and service providers) contributed R8 billion to Western Cape provincial revenue between 2012/13 and 2015/16 through direct and indirect tax collection. Koeberg contributed another R9 billion to the fiscus over the same period.

Boiling it down to household level – the coalface of poverty, inequity and unemployment – the Koeberg project added R20 billion to household income between 2012/13 and 2015/16. Some R3 billion (13%) went to low-income households in the Western Cape.

Programmes and projects

National Energy Efficiency Strategy

The National Development Plan (NDP) envisages that by 2030 South Africa will have an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to ensure that economic activity and welfare are not disrupted, and that at least 95% of the population will have access to grid or off-grid electricity.

The NDP proposes that gas and other renewable resources such as wind, solar and hydro-electricity will be viable alternatives to coal and will supply at least 20 000 MW of the additional 29 000 MW of electricity needed by 2030.

Other recommendations in the NDP include diversifying power sources and ownership in the electricity sector, supporting cleaner coal technologies, and investing in human and physical capital in the 12 largest electricity distributors.

The DoE will continue to address these proposals through a combination of new and existing programmes.

Funds will continue to be allocated to the Sanedi for research and development into a carbon capture and storage project, and for a hydraulic fracturing pilot to assess the potential for shale gas.

The DoE will also continue implementing the pilot approach

to the distribution asset management programme, by providing capital subsidies to nine municipalities to address maintenance, refurbishment and backlog concerns to improve the quality of electricity supply.

The objectives of the revised energy efficiency strategy are to:

- promote and develop energy efficiency practices, norms and standards in different energy sectors, including industries, commercial buildings, households, transport and agriculture
- develop energy efficiency policies and guidelines
- facilitate information awareness and capacity-building campaigns concerning energy efficiency and environmental issues
- promote energy for sustainable development
- mitigate negative impacts of energy use on the environment
- promote energy efficiency technologies and clean energy technologies, including environmentally sound energy technologies
- promote and facilitate international collaboration and cooperation
- ensure the DoE's participation at international forums on energy efficiency and the environment, including the United Nations (UN) Commission on Sustainable Development, the Kyoto Protocol and the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change.

The strategy includes Eskom's demand-side management.

Municipalities are also implementing their own energy efficiency strategies. In addition, 32 large companies have joined forces with the DoE and Eskom by signing an energy efficiency accord, committing themselves to targets contained in the strategy.

To assist households in becoming more energy efficient, the DoE initiated an appliance-labelling campaign. Labels on household appliances inform consumers of the energy efficiency of the appliances.

National building standards

Energy-efficient regulations for new buildings form part of the deliverables of South Africa's National Energy Strategy to strengthen standards and regulations for energy efficiency.

The energy-efficient regulations apply to residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of building.

The regulations make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. This will save energy significantly, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid.

In addition to temperature regulations, all buildings will also have to be fitted with renewable-energy water-heating systems such as solar systems, which also have to comply with South African national standards.

An excellent example of the power of energy-efficient buildings and the power-savings they can effect can be found in Bayside Mall in Cape Town.

Bayside Mall is saving 2 200 units of electricity each day due to the installation of renewable energy systems.

As part of its Going Green project, Bayside Mall harvests rainwater and generates solar electricity. Through this system, the mall is reducing the electricity it needs from Eskom by about 2 200 units each day.

The mall had reported significant cost-savings since the installation of its rooftop photovoltaic (PV) system two years ago. The mall's rooftop PV system includes 2 000 solar panels.

Bayside Mall has saved R1 million through its reduced energy savings initiatives and used around 800 000 less kilowatts of energy over the same period. These figures show that energy efficiency is the responsible and moneywise way to operate.

Integrated Energy Plan

The IEP represents the DoE's overarching energy policy and strategy statement that has been under development since 2012, when Cabinet approved the commencement of the public consultation process. The following strategies and programmes all form part of this greater scheme towards energy self-suffiency and environmentally friendly energy resources.

Integrated Resource Plan (IRP) and the Gas Infrastructure Plan

The IRP 2010 – 2030 envisages 9 600 MW additional nuclear capacity by 2030. The IRP is a 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand. It aimed to reduce South Africa's primary reliance on fossil fuels such as coal and diesel, and diversify the national energy mix to produce 41,8% from renewable energy sources and a further 6,1% from hydroelectricity within two decades.

The updated IRP process was to be submitted to the economic sector and infrastructure development cluster at the end of 2017.

Similarly, the Gas Infrastructure Plan will take its lead from the IEP regarding gas pipelines, storage and other infrastructure that is necessary for meeting the energy demand through gas supply.

Going forward, it is becoming more and more apparent that future energy demand will be a mix of electricity, gas and liquid fuels and, depending on the relative cost competitiveness of each of these, an equilibrium between the three will be established.

National Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) Strategy

LPG is commonly used in mines to power smelting furnaces that are processing materials, such as platinum and vanadium, as well as domestically for cooking.

The LPG strategy's main objectives are to provide access to safe, cleaner, efficient, portable, environmentally friendly and affordable thermal fuel for all households, and to switch low-income households away from the use of coal, paraffin and biomass to LPG.

The strategy highlights strategic options that could be adopted for the orderly development of the LPG industry in South Africa to make LPG an energy carrier of choice for thermal applications.

The domestic LPG price is regulated through the DoE by the Minister of Energy.

Wind Resource Map

The DoE launched the country's first Large Scale High Resolution (250 m) Wind Resource Map in July 2013. The data is based on the Verified Numerical Wind Atlas for South Africa (WASA).

It includes important information such as ground surface terrain effects that determine the local wind climate and, in turn, can be used to identify high-yielding wind development zones; and the estimation of available wind energy and capacity which

can be used by prospective wind farm developers of all sizes in their planning process.

The Wind Resource Map offers important benefits for planners, policy makers and industry. These benefits include cost and timing savings as the viability, in terms of wind speed, of a potential site can be predicted with known and traceable accuracy, while it also levels the playing field between small or large industry players to identify and develop project sites for wind farms.

It will also assist Government in calculating the potential yield of wind energy resources, among other things.

The Large Scale High Resolution Wind Resource Map is available to the public from the WASA's online portal http://wasadata.csir.co.za/wasa1/WASAData.

The purpose of the WASA is to improve knowledge and the quality of resource assessment methods and tools, to make available this knowledge and tools free of charge for planning and development of wind farms and off-grid electrification, and to build capacity of local institutions to do wind resource measurements.

The country has a reasonable wind energy resource (an average of 8 m/s measured at 80 m) is available in geographically dispersed locations, alllowing for security of supply.

Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme

The REIPPPP is a flagship programme of the DoE and falls under the mndate of the Electricity Regulation Act of 2006.

The DoE, National Treasury and the Development Bank of Southern Africa established the independent power producer procurement programme at the end of 2010 to secure electrical energy generated from renewable and non-renewable sources from the private sector. The programme is designed to be self-funding through revenue derived from development fees paid by bidders and investors.

By December 2015, the department had procured 6 377 MW of renewable energy through the programme and connected 44 projects with a capacity of 2 021 MW to the national grid. The energy contribution of independent power producers was expected to grow to approximately 7 000 MW with the first 47 renewable energy independent power producers fully operational by mid-2016.

The programme also seeks to procure energy from small-scale independent power producers, with projects that generate between 1 MW and 5 MW of energy from solar, wind, biomass and landfill gas projects.

Additional funding of R200 million in the Nuclear Energy programme was made available in 2016/17 for a transactional advisors and consulting services for the new nuclear build programme. The advisors were to assist with the call for proposals for procuring nuclear energy and provide transactional advice to the department as a procuring agent for the new nuclear build programme.

Private investment in the programme currently exceeds R194 billion.

The DoE remains on track to meet its national commitment to transition to a low-carbon economy with the target of 17 800 MW of renewable energy power by 2030.

In March 2018, the DoE signed project agreements of 27 Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Projects (REIPPP), including the power purchase agreements with Eskom. The initiative reconfirms government's commitment to renewable energy and a solid partnership with the private sector in pursuing energy transition objectives in the future. It also creates policy and regulatory certainty, and maintain South Africa's position as an energy investment destination of choice.

The agreements will also will enable R56 billion of new investment in the economy over the next two to three years. It will also have a significant contribution in job creation across the energy value chain including the re-establishment of industrial development and support to the technical training of young people to be absorbed in the labour market.

The usage of different types of energy supply, which includes renewable forms of power generation, is in line with the energy policy. It will also ensure the reduction of carbon emissions, whilst complying with the South African environmental standards.

These programmes will contribute towards competitive market pricing of electricity, both for the household consumer as well as for industrial usage. Lower electricity will assist indigent households to cope with the rising cost of living.

The projects will also provide 61 600 full time jobs of which 95% is for SA citizens, with a focus on youth employment. Northern Cape will have 59% of the jobs created, followed by Eastern Cape with 15% and North West 13% of jobs created.

The Renewable Energy Programme has empowered South Africans to own on average 48% of the equity in all of the Independent Power Producers (IPPs) projects. About 25% of the project equity is owned by foreign investors acting as a catalyst by providing investment and skills transfer to the establishment of the new green economy while enhancing opportunities for economic transformation.

The Renewable Energy Programme is embracing local community development as well as socio-economic and enterprise development. Through the geographic spread of the projects, opportunities are created across the country – mostly in rural areas.

Local community shareholding (equity share) in the 27 projects amounts to 7,1% (R1,6 billion). The local community shareholders for the 27 projects will receive R5,9 billion net dividends over the 20 year lifetime of the projects.

Communities through Community Trusts have full control over how the money will be spent in their areas. The department through the IPP Office will monitor participation by these communities and measure the impact thereof. In addition, the IPPs will enable local communities to further benefit directly from the investments attracted to the areas through the R9,8 billion to be spent on socio-economic development initiatives and R3,4 billion to enterprise development over the 20 year.

Integrated National Electrification Programme

INEP and its implementing agencies – Eskom, municipalities and non-grid service providers – have made remarkable progress in increasing access to electricity in South Africa and have connected over 6,7 million households between 1994 to March 2016.

Access to electricity was at 88% by March 2016. R5,6 billion has been appropriated by 2015/16 on the Electrification Programme, to delivering 260 000 connections using both grid and non-grid technologies.

At the end of March 2016, INEP achieved 231 012 (grid) and 25 076 (non-grid) connections. This results is 256 088 new connections as part of allocations for 2015/16. The target for May

2016 stood at 260 000 new connections.

The Non-Grid Electrification Programme has progressed well in the last financial year and has overachieved its target by achieving 25 076 connections. Since the inception of Non-Grid Electrification Programme, INEP achieved more than 123 379 installations of non-grid systems mainly in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Northern Cape and Limpopo.

Non-grid systems consisting of solar cells converting sun energy into electrical energy are now also being considered for implementation in urban areas of the country with a view of increasing the basic electricity services in the informal settlements.

The European Union (EU) is also assisting the DoE to develop a sustainable delivery model and sustainable non-grid entities around the country. In addition, INEP has developed the first draft of the Electrification Master Plan to ensure better cooperation between the different implementing entities, as well as different technologies, and grid and non-grid roll-out in unserviced areas, to ensure that universal access is reached by 2025/26.

The INEP programme was allocated R5,5 billion in 2016/17 to deliver 235 000 connections for both grid and non-grid. Over the MTEF, an estimated amount of R17,6 billion will be appropriated.

New Build Programme

Eskom's New Build Programme was launched in 2005 with the aim of adding more than 17 000 MW to the national electricity grid by 2018. Two new coal power stations are the 4 800-MW Medupi Power Station near Lephalale in Limpopo and Kusile in Emalahleni, Mpumalanga, which is also expected to have an output of 4 800 MW.

Carbon capture and storage roadmap

Although South Africa has a programme to increase the use of renewable energy and energy efficiency, coal is likely to provide most of the country's primary energy for the next few decades.

The displacement of fossil fuels by renewable and nuclear energy is seen as a gradual task. Carbon capture and storage (CCS) is a transition measure from fossil fuel to nuclear and renewable energy. To this end, the South African Centre for Carbon Capture and Storage was established in March 2009.

The mandate of SACCCS is to develop and implement a roadmap for the commercial application of CCS in South Africa. The first and second phases of the roadmap have been completed and now the preparation for the Pilot Carbon Dioxide Storage Project (PCSP) is the focus for the centre.

SACCCS's role in the South African CCS Roadmap is as follows:

- 2004: Assessment of the potential for CCS in South Africa (completed)
- 2010: Development of a South African Carbon Dioxide Geological Storage Atlas (complete)
- 2017: Commencement of a Pilot Carbon Dioxide Storage Project storing about 10 000 t to 50 000 t carbon dioxide (underway)
- 2020: Facilitate the commencement of a CCS demonstration plant (in the order of 100 000 t carbon dioxide per year)
- 2025: Inform the implementation of commercial CCS deployment (over 1 000 000 t carbon dioxide per year).

Working for Energy Programme

The Working for Energy Programme is a social programme mainly intended to provide energy services derived from renewable resources to rural and urban low-income houses. In this manner it facilitates job creation, skills development, community-based enterprise development and the emancipation of youths, women and people with disabilities.

The major focus area is the provision of sustainable energy solutions (supply side) with special emphasis on the youth, women and people with disabilities in rural areas and low-income urban communities in terms of:

- labour-intensive options, targeting short-term employment opportunities
- sustainable employment opportunities, and enhancing stimulated local economic activity
- community development initiatives and cross-cutting human capital development.

The 20-Year Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Plan

The 20-Year Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Plan forms the basis for the implementation of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission Strategic Implementation Project regarding refinery upgrades and development, and make recommendations on the future of the refinery infrastructure in the country.

As a further response to the global situation and domestic development imperatives, the department decided to strengthen the Strategic Fuels Fund, a subsidiary of the CEF. The DoE will position the Strategic Fuels Fund to improve the country's strategic petroleum reserves and enable the country to better respond to catastrophic global events that impact on the petroleum trade.

Renewable energy programmes from Eskom

Eskom has an active research programme investigating ways to harness South Africa's renewable energy sources for power generation. Eskom is looking to increase the renewables component of its supply mix.

The long-term strategic energy plan includes a mix of all viable sources, including renewables, to be implemented where commercially viable. The two most advanced areas under investigation are wind-generated and concentrated solar thermal power.

Eskom's renewable energy journey has been affected by several factors, including the changing nature of power generation, environmental concerns and procuring loans that will fund solar and wind-electricity generation.

Underground coal gassification

Eskom also has an underground coal gassification project in the pilot stage, with a test plant next to the Majuba Power Station in Mpumalanga. The gas produced is co-fired with coal in Majuba's Unit Four, and contributes 3 MW to the station's output.

The process entails using coal seams that cannot be mined for various reasons – they may be too deep, fractured, or of poor quality – and turns the coal into clean gas on site. With the region's substantial coal reserves, there is potential in this source of power. Eskom has developed a 10-year transmission development plan which includes renewable energy integration.

Sere Wind Farm

Eskom's Sere Wind Farm was completed in 2015 and is

delivering 100 MW to the national grid.

Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme near Van Reenen in KwaZulu-Natal, consists of an upper and a lower dam; both with the capacity to hold about 22 million m² of water capacity.

The dams, 4,6 km apart, are connected by underground waterways, through an underground powerhouse accommodating 4 x 333-MW pump turbines.

During times of peak energy consumption, water will be released from the upper dam through the pump turbines to the lower dam to generate electricity.

During times of low-energy demand, the pump turbines are used to pump the water from the lower dam back up to the upper dam. The project came on line during 2013/14. The synchronisation of the first two units of the Ingula pumped storage scheme was expected to take place in 2016.

Concentrated solar power

A solar park is a concentrated zone of solar plants that are built in clusters, sharing common transmission and infrastructure.

Together, these clusters generate thousands of megawatts of electricity. The types of technology used are solar PV and concentrated PV, which operate with semiconductors and solar panels; as well as concentrated solar power, which uses mirrors to reflect the sun's rays.

PV systems make a direct conversion into electricity, and are ideal to use at peak load times. However, there is no cost-effective way to store this power.

Concentrated solar power, on the other hand, captures the sun as heat and turns it into steam to power turbines, which in turn generate electricity – much like coal-fired plants. Its advantage is that it is cheap and efficient to store heat, so power can be supplied around the clock.

Skills development and job creation

The challenges of technical skills required in the Energy Sector have continued to be of concern to the DoE. In response to these challenges; the DoE has developed a Workplace Skills Development Plan (WSP), based on the training needs of individual employees and their managers.

As part of the implementation of the WSP, a number of training and development interventions have been identified. The DoE has also offered 32 new bursaries to serving employees of the department.

In addition, the department will contribute with the implementation of youth development intervention programmes such as the provision of bursaries to external applicants. Eleven external applicants within the youth programme were offered bursaries sponsored by the Chemical Industries Education and Training Authority, including four integrated learners, 32 interns and 15 people on learnership programmes.

In preparation for the rollout the nuclear build programme, the Nuclear Skills Development and Training programme is underway with various countries including China, the Russian Federation and South Korea.

International cooperation

South Africa is a member of the International Energy Forum (IEF), which aims to foster greater mutual understanding and awareness of common energy interests among its members.

The 74 member countries of the forum are signatories to the IEF Charter, which outlines the framework of the global energy dialogue through this intergovernmental arrangement.

South Africa is a member state of the International Renewable Energy Agency (IRENA). IRENA seeks to make an impact in the world of renewable energy by maintaining a clear and independent position, providing a range of reliable and well-understood services that complement those already offered by the renewable energy community and gather existing, but scattered, activities around a central hub.

The country has been a member of the IAEA for decades and has been both a recipient and provider of services emanating from the agency.

As a member state of the IAEA, permanent member of the board of directors and actively participating in nuclear energy, safety, technology, security and disarmament, South Africa has contributed to efforts of ensuring that nuclear energy is used for peaceful purposes like power generation as well as medical, industrial and agricultural initiatives.

Sustainable development in Africa

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Western Power Corridor Project was signed in October 2004.

This New Partnership for Africa's Development flagship programme intends to pilot the use of hydro-electric energy obtained from the Inga rapids site in the DRC to ensure the security of supply in the SADC.

The participating utilities are those of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental MoU signed between the utilities of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River, will be the first of these projects.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources would constitute a significant infusion of renewable-energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project could contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term.

Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale.

Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act of 1998.

Cross-border gas trade agreement

To facilitate the movement of gas across international borders, cross-border gas trade agreements have been signed with Mozambique and Namibia. Since the arrival of natural gas

from Mozambique in 2004, the contribution of natural gas to the primary energy supply has risen from 1,5% to 3,3% (2005).

This figure is expected to rise to 4,3% when the new Mozambique-South Africa gas-transmission pipeline reaches maximum capacity.

The Tete-Maputo Power Transmission Line, also known as the Centre-South Project (Cesul), in Mozambique, will improve the ability to evacuate power from the projects in the northern Mozambique complex, particularly releasing the hydropower potential relating to Mpanda Nkuwa and Cahora Bassa.

The South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission addresses harnessing the natural gas reserves in the Kudu Gas Field.

In March 2017, Eskom signed a five-year electricity sales agreement with Namibia's national electricity utility, NamPower.

Eskom will supplement generation capacity for South Africa's neighbour with its surplus electricity, providing Namibia with energy security and allowing for economic development and growth.

NamPower has also concluded a number of projects to establish renewable energy projects in Namibia and to enhance its local production.

Eskom and Botswana Power Corporation signed a three-year firm power supply agreement in April 2017.

This is in line with Eskom's plan to increase its electricity exports to South Africa's neighbouring states. Eskom currently has excess capacity of about 4 000 MW, excluding an operating margin.

Import and export of fuel products

The import of refined products is restricted to special cases where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to state control to promote local refinery usage.

When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met. More diesel than petrol is exported, due to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations.

Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland.

Energy and the global environment

South Africa is classified as a developing country or a non-Annex 1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions.

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of GHGs in the world and the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. It emits more than 400 Mt of carbon dioxide per year.

The National Climate Change Strategy, developed by the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus.

The South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption, and is subsequently a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emission intensity and emissions per capita.

Therefore, South Africa is proactively moving the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the DoE playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the clean development mechanism of the Kyoto Protocol. It developed the White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development, together with an energy efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

The Grand I MoU signed with the DRC is an important milestone in working towards sustainable African partnerships aimed at developing strategies for low-carbon economies and interconnected energy systems.

The South African Renewables Initiative secures international financing partnerships in investment in deploying renewable energy and develops renewable supply chains through securing a critical mass of renewable energy, without imposing undue burden on the fiscus or the South African consumer.

In line with this objective, the DoE has signed a Declaration of Intent with Germany, the United Kingdom, Denmark, Norway and the European Investment Bank. This agreement will lead to the establishment of a fund to assist in the deployment of renewable energy.

Further, the department participates in structures such as the:

- International Renewable Energy Agency
- International Energy Forum
- International Partnership for Energy Efficiency Cooperation
- UN Industrial Development Organisation
- Clean Energy Ministerial
- African Union-EU Energy Partnership.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Environment

The Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) is mandated to realise the right of citizens to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being, and to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations.

To this end, the department provides leadership in environmental management, conservation and protection towards sustainability for the benefit of South Africans and the global community.

Strategies are therefore in place to:

- ensure that the department has optimal capacity to deliver services efficiently and effectively
- ensure that South Africa's environmental assets are conserved, valued, sustainably used, protected and continually enhanced for the benefit of both current and future generations
- enhance socio-economic benefits and employment creation in a safe, clean and healthy environment for both present and future generations
- provide leadership in environmental management, conservation and protection towards sustainability for the benefit of both current and future generations
- manage the interface between the environment and development to encourage the transformation of the development trajectory to an environmentally sustainable, inclusive, low-carbon and green economic growth path
- promote compliance with environmental legislation, and act decisively against transgressors
- develop and facilitate the implementation of a climate change adaptation and mitigation regulatory framework
- facilitate the transition to an environmentally sustainable, job-creating and low-carbon green development pathway through the Green Fund and environmental projects in the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)
- improve the provision of quality waste- management services across the country with clear environmental health benefits for communities, particularly those with no previous access to waste-management services.

The medium-term policy focus of the DEA is on job creation and sustainable development. The National Development Plan (NDP) aims to create five million jobs by 2030, and the department will contribute to this aim by creating jobs in the environment sector.

The DEA's sustainable development work over the medium term supports the NDP's aim to make interventions to ensure environmental sustainability and resilience to future shocks.

The environmental sector continues to be a source and facilitator of investment, job creation, entrepreneurship and skills development – in line with the key objectives of the National Development Plan (NDP).

The DEA has adopted a three-pronged strategic approach to facilitate the government's long-term radical economic transformation goals – the Phakisa Strategic Approach, Environmental Justice Strategic Approach and Economy-wide Service Delivery Strategic Approach. The approaches work in pursuit of low-carbon, inclusive and climate resilient growth.

Legislation and policies

The framework within which the department fulfils its mandate is guided by a number of policies and legislation:

- The National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 46 of 2003); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 8 of 2004); the National Environment Laws Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 44 of 2008); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 62 of 2008) and the National Environment Laws Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 14 of 2009) establish the concepts of participatory, cooperative and developmental governance in environmental management, as well as principles for environmental management and provides for structures to facilitate these.
- The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA), 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), reformed South Africa's laws regulating biodiversity. It sets out the mechanisms for managing and conserving South Africa's biodiversity and its components; protecting species and ecosystems that warrant national protection; the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bioprospecting, including indigenous biological resources; and the establishment of the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI).
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act 57 of 2003)provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas, the establishment of a national register of protected areas, as well as the proclamation and management of these areas.
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 15 of 2009) provides for the assignment of national parks, special parks and heritage sites to South African National Parks (SANParks).
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 31 of 2004) provides for a national system of protected areas in South Africa as part of a strategy to manage and conserve the country's biodiversity.
- The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (AQA), 2004 (Act 39 of 2004)reforms the law regulating air quality to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation and for securing ecologically sustainable development.
- The National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008) establishes a system of integrated coastal and estuarine management in the country, ensuring socially and environmentally responsible development and use.
- The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008) reforms the law regulating waste management to protect health and the environment.
- The World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999) provides for the cultural and environmental protection and sustainable development of, and related activities in a world heritage site.
- The South African Weather Service (SAWS) Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001).
- The Sea Shores Act, 1935 (Act 21 of 1935).
- The Sea Birds and Seals Protection Act, 1973 (Act 46 of 1973).
- The Dumping at Sea Control Act, 1980 (Act 73 of 1980).
- The Sea Fishery Act, 1988 (Act 12 of 1988).

- The Antarctic Treaties Act, 1996 (Act 60 of 1996).
- The Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998).
- The Prince Edward Islands Act, 1948 (Act 48 of 1948).
- The National Environmental Management: Waste Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 449 of 2014)

Other policy frameworks include:

- The White Paper on National Climate Change Response, 2011.
- The White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Management, 2000.
- The White Paper on Environmental Management, 1998.
- The White Paper on Conservation and Sustainable Use of Biodiversity, 1997.
- The White Paper for Sustainable Coastal Development in South Africa, 2000.

The following legislation was amended or pending promulgation:

- Draft regulations on the format of the atmospheric impact report.
- Draft notice on the amendment of the national list of activities, which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social, economic and ecological conditions or cultural heritage published for public comment.
- Draft notice on the declaration of small boilers as controlled emitters published for public comment.
- Draft national dust control regulations published for public comment.
- Under Section 62 of the NEMBA of 2004, the summary of the non-detriment findings made by the Scientific Authority published for public comment.
- The Biodiversity Management Plan for Pelargonium Sidoides.
- Under Section 97 of the NEMBA of 2004, the regulations related to listed threatened or protected species were published for public comment.
- The National Environmental Management Laws Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 14 of 2013).
- The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 20 of 2014).
- The National Environmental Management: Waste Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 26 of 2014).
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 21 of 2014).
- In terms of Section 97 of the NEMBA of 2004, the Draft Regulations for the Registration of Professional Hunters, Hunting Outfitters and Trainers were published for public participation.

The Waste Classification and Management Regulations and the Norms and Standards for the Assessment of Waste for Landfill and the Norms and Standards for the Disposal of Waste to Landfill were published.

Budget and funding

Due to Cabinet-approved budget reductions to lower the expenditure ceiling, the budget for compensation of employees is set to decrease by R11,5 million in 2017/18, R12,2 million in 2018/19 and R12,9 million in 2019/20.

The goods and services budget is also set to decrease by R10,6 million in 2017/18, R8,6 million in 2018/19 and R11,1 million in 2019/20, and the budget for capital expenditure by R1,7 million in 2017/18, R1,6 million in 2018/19 and R2 million in 2019/20.

The DEA is implementing cost-containment measures to ensure the reductions do not adversely affect service delivery.

The DEA also plans to expand the proportion of the country's land under conservation from 12,2% in 2016/17 to a projected 13,7% by 2019/20. This work is budgeted for in the Biodiversity and Conservation programme and is allocated R143,1 million of the programme's total budget of R2,2 billion over the medium term.

The department's budget allocation for the 2017/18 financial year was R6.8 billion.

International environment days

South Africa has adopted the entire month of June to heighten awareness of environmental issues through various pertinent activities. It is during the month of June thatthe country celebrates the World Environment Day, World Oceans Day and the World Day to Combat Desertification.

World Environment Day

World Environment Day is the biggest, most globally celebrated day for positive environmental action.

Through World Environment Day, the United Nations (UN) Environment Programme enables everyone to realise not only the responsibility to care for the Earth, but also reminds one and all of their individual power to become agents of change.

In South Africa, World Environment Day is a key driver of this month-long Environment Month celebrations in June.

Each World Environment Day is organised around a theme that focuses attention on a particularly pressing environmental concern. The theme for 2018 was "beating plastic pollution".

The theme urges governments, industry, communities and individuals to come together and explore sustainable alternatives and urgently reduce the production and excessive use of single-use plastic products polluting the environment and oceans, damaging marine life and threatening human health. Littering and illegal dumping are some of the most common problems in South Africa affecting all provinces alike irrespective of the size and extent of the area.

The success of beating plastic pollution demands that every citizen takes part in ensuring that pollution is prevented towards combating plastic pollution.

The DEA has a national waste awareness Mascot "Billy Bin"' which is aimed at being an image which will send a strong message to all citizens to ensure that they keep their environment clean.

World Oceans Day

South Africa joined the rest of the world to mark the annual celebration of World Oceans Day on 8 June 2018. The day is aimed at appreciating, protecting, restoring and honouring ecosystem services and resources provided by oceans.

The 2018 World Oceans Day was held under the theme "Prevent Plastic Pollution and encourage solutions for a healthy ocean."

Plastic pollution is a worldwide problem that affects human health and safety, endangers marine wildlife and costs states and nations countless millions in wasted resources and lost revenue. Globally and locally, plastic and synthetic materials are the most common types of marine litter that cause the most problems for marine animals and birds.

Plastic in the oceans eventually moves up the food web,

from plankton to larger animals and as it moves up in the food chain, toxic chemicals get more and more concentrated and pose serious danger to humans and top predators since they are at the top of the food chain. Plastic pollution is therefore a complex environmental challenge that requires joint efforts at the local, regional and global level.

The country has a jurisdiction over one of the largest exclusive economic zones in the world, as it is uniquely surrounded by three ocean spaces (directly by the Atlantic and Indian oceans and in close proximity to the Southern Ocean, which has not yet formally finalised and globally acknowledged) offering a resource rich and biologically diverse environment.

The oceans are vital to human survival and economic development. The protection of ocean ecosystems is the cornerstone of sustainable ocean development, underpinning many economic opportunities that provide significant job creation and livelihood security. Approximately 40% of South Africa's population lives within 100 km of the coastline and coastal resources are relied on for commercial opportunities as well as for food, recreation and transport.

In order to realise the full socio-economic potential of the ocean resources, it is necessary to strengthen management efforts to control negative human impacts on our ocean resources. The UN has identified pollution, especially pollution originating from land, as a one of the "big stressors" to the health and integrity on marine ecosystems. Globally, it is estimated that roughly 80% of all marine pollution stems from activities carried out on land.

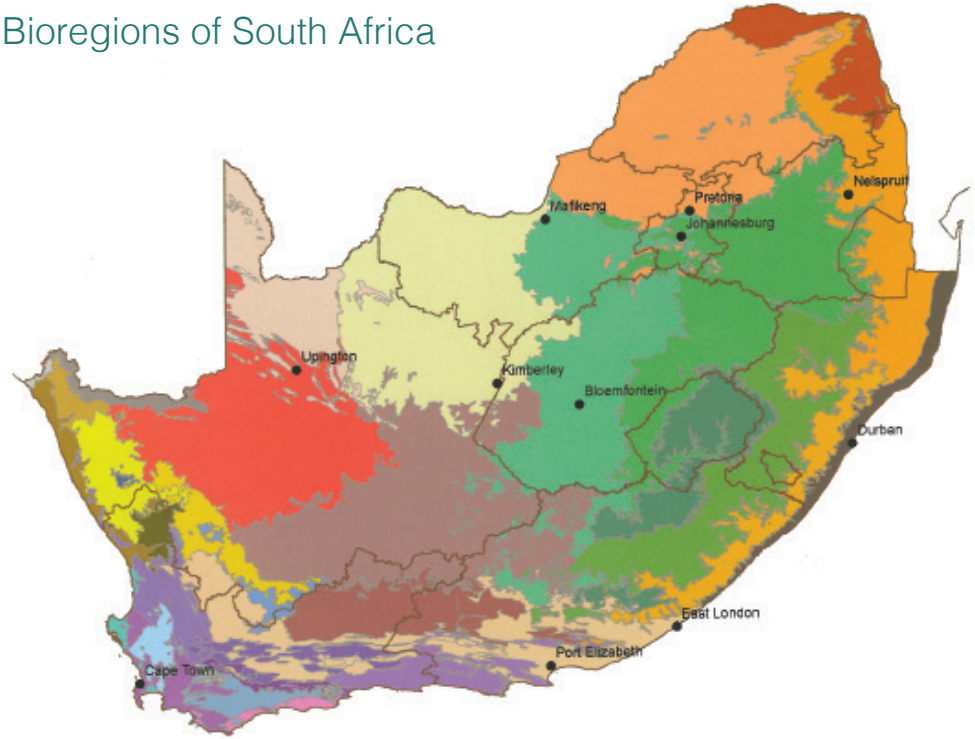
South Africa participates in the Global Programme of Action for the Protection of the Environment from Land-based Activities, which has identified litter as one of the key sources of pollution in the ocean environment.

World Day to Combat Desertification

On 19 June 2018, the DEA celebrated the World Day to Combat Desertification jointly with the Limpopo Provincial Department of Agriculture and Rural Development and the Collins Chabane Local Municipality. The day was celebrated under the theme "Land has true Value, Invest in it".

The theme calls upon producers, consumers, communities and policy makers to utilise land in a sustainable manner. The event focused on raising public awareness on the importance of investing on land, its benefits and role it plays in people's livelihoods as well as reminding the world that land is a tangible asset with measurable value beyond just cash.

Bioregions of South Africa



- Northwest Fynbos Bioregion
- Southwest Fynbos Bioregion
- Southern Fynbos Bioregion
- South Coast Fynbos Bioregion
- Western Fynbos-Renosterveld Bioregion
- Eastern Fynbos-Renosterveld Bioregion
- West Coast Renosterveld Bioregion
- East Coast Renosterveld Bioregion
- Karoo Renosterveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Cape Shrublands Bioregion
- Dry Highveld Grassland Bioregion
- West Strandveld Bioregion
- Richtersveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Hardeveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Sandveld Bioregion
- Knersvlakte Bioregion
- Trans-Escarpment Succulent Karoo Bioregion
- Rainshadow Valley Karoo Bioregion
- Southern Namib Desert Bioregion
- Gariep Desert Bioregion
- Bushmanland Bioregion
- Upper Karoo Bioregion
- Lower Karoo Bioregion
- Drakensberg Grassland Bioregion
- Dry Highveld Grassland Bioregion
- Mesic Highveld Grassveld Bioregion
- Sub-Escarpment Grassland Bioregion
- Central Bushveld Bioregion
- Mopane Bioregion
- Lowveld Bioregion
- Sub-Escarpment Savanna Bioregion
- Eastern Kalahari Bushveld Bioregion
- Kalahari Dunneveld Bioregion
- Albany Thicket
- Indian Ocean Coastal Belt

World Wildlife Day

The 2018 World Wildlife Day official celebrations we held at OR Tambo International Airport.

The day is celebrated annually on 3 March with countries around the world turning their attention to the role played by human beings in the protection of wildlife and their habitat. The theme for World Wildlife Day 2018 was "Big cats: predators under threat".

The day was first proclaimed in 2013 at the 68th session of the United National General Assembly (UNGA), and aims to raise awareness of the world's wild animals and plants. Among the actions required to advance the 2030 Agenda and Sustainable Development Goals is raising public awareness on the links between wildlife conservation, rural livelihoods and sustainable development, as well as the role of governance and public-private partnerships.

Marine Week

Each year, the DEA observes National Marine Week to highlight the importance of oceans and the role they play in the life of all citizens.

Important dates on the world's environmental calendar	
2 February	World Wetlands Day
20 March	Earth Day
22 March	World Water Day
23 March	World Meteorological Day
27 March	Earth Hour
22 April	Earth Day
22 May	International Day for Marine Biological Diversity
5 June	World Environment Day
8 June	World Oceans Day
17 June	World Day to Combat Desertification
5 – 11 September	World Water Week
16 September	International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer
18 September	International Coastal Clean-up Day
22 September	World Car-Free Day
5 October	World Habitat Day
11 December	International Mountain Day

National Strategy for Sustainable Development (NSSD)

Following the World Summit on Sustainable Development held in South Africa in 2002, the then departments of environmental affairs, tourism and foreign affairs were mandated to formulate the NSSD. The first phase of this process culminated in the adoption of the National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD) in 2008.

To remain within the prevailing and flexible context, the NFSD strategic priorities were reformulated to form the NSSD. The NSSD builds on the NFSD and a number of existing initiatives by business, government, non-governmental organisations, academia and other key role players to address sustainability issues in South Africa.

The goals of the NSSD are to:

- develop and promote new social and economic goals based on ecological sustainability and build a culture that recognises that socio-economic systems are dependent on and embedded within ecosystems
- increase awareness and understanding of the value of ecosystem services to human well-being
- ensure effective integration of sustainability concerns into all policies, planning and decision-making at national, provincial and local levels
- ensure effective integration and collaboration across all functions and sectors
- monitor, evaluate and report performance and progress in respect of ecological sustainability.

Mining and Biodiversity Guideline

The Mining and Biodiversity Guideline: Mainstreaming Biodiversity into the Mining Sector, launched in May 2013, is a product of the collaboration between the South African Mining and Biodiversity Forum as well as the departments of environmental affairs and mineral resources. The guideline seeks to find a balance between economic growth and environmental sustainability and is a key outcome of the Outcome 10 Delivery Agreement.

The Life: State of Biodiversity Report is symbolic of the culmination of 100 years of science in assessing biological resources and highlighting the status of water resources in the country.

The key points in the report are:

- Wetlands, which make up only a little over 2% of the country's footprint, perform irreplaceable functions, such as purifying water and slowing down flood waters. Many wetlands have already been lost; of those which remain, nearly half are endangered.
- Areas with high natural runoff, such as the Drakensberg, the Soutpansberg and the Wolkberg in Limpopo gather and channel the water on which the semi-arid country depends. Only about a fifth of these areas are formally protected.
- All those smaller rivers, which feed into the country's main arteries such as the Orange and the Vaal rivers, are needed to keep water supplies in good health.
- Nearly a fifth of the coastline has some form of development within 100 m off the shoreline, which means nature's buffers against storm surges and rising seas may have been stripped away and paved over in parts. This puts people and property at risk in the face of climate change. Coastal and inshore ecosystems are more threatened than offshore marine ecosystems.
- Further out to sea, offshore ecosystems are the most poorly protected of all South Africa's ecosystems. Yet, these are the lifeblood for healthy and productive fisheries. Marine protected areas (MPAs) are essential for keeping both the ecosystems and the fisheries safe.
- Biodiversity stewardship programmes, where private landowners enter into an agreement with State conservation bodies to protect a section of their land and biodiversity, are making headway, in terms of national protected area targets. This is more affordable than when the State buys land for conservation purposes. With modest increases in resources, this scheme could make an even larger contribution.
- Some parts of the country have lost more natural habitat than others. If Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and North West keep losing natural landscapes to cultivation, mining and urban expansion at the current rate, these provinces will

have almost no natural habitat left outside protected areas by 2050. Where natural vegetation is being converted to other land uses at a high rate, it is important to use maps of biodiversity-priority areas to guide decisions about where best to locate development.

- With an uncertain and extreme climate in the future, natural habitats should be kept healthy so they can support functional, stable landscapes in the long term, which can then better support human activities. Scientists have drawn up a new national map that identifies areas that are important for climate change resilience and which need to be kept intact.
- South Africa has over 2 000 plant species that are used for medicinal purposes, about a third of which are traded commercially; some are threatened.
- Invasive alien plants increased their footprint in South Africa in about a decade. The country loses about R6,5 billion worth of ecosystem services to them each year.
- Scientists have made great strides in mapping and classifying South Africa's ecosystems. This has provided the foundation for meaningful assessment, planning and monitoring of ecosystems. The first maps by which to identify marine and coastal habitat types and wetland ecosystem types have been completed.

Projects, programmes and initiatives

Low carbon and climate resilient economy

South Africa is a Board member of three significant funding bodies: namely the Green Climate Fund (GCF); the World Bank's Climate Investment Fund and the Global Environment Facility .

The memberships enable the country to shape the policies, programming and governance of these respective institutions. The country is also a member of the Partnership for Action on Green Economy and will be hosting the Third Ministerial Conference in September 2018.

During the 2016/17 financial year, the department was instrumental in mobilising US$ 119,720 million of which US$ 21,2 million was grant funding.

SANBI and the Development Bank of Southern Africa are accredited as South African Direct Access Entities of the GCF.

The increasing frequency and intensity of extreme weather events around South Africa – from flash flooding in some parts of the country to devastating drought in other parts, has prompted the government to sign the Paris Agreement to Combat Climate Change as an acknowledgement that the problem requires a global effort.

The country continues to play an active role on the international stage through participation in a number of key multilateral environmental agreements and their associated negotiations.

In addition to finalizing the National Climate Change Adaptation Strategy, the country has developed a draft Climate Change Bill to provide effective national response for both mitigation and adaptation action.

South Africa is also in the process of implementing Phase One of the Greenhouse Gas Emission Reduction system, with carbon budgets already allocated to most of the significant emitters.

South Africa's Green Economy Strategy

There is increasing global recognition that today's economic growth and development trajectory is driven by the worldwide shift towards sustainable green economies.

Through the DEA's Green Economy Strategy, the department continues to work towards promoting equitable, inclusive, sustained and environmentally sound economic growth and social development to the benefit of all.

The Green Economy Strategy has eight key pillars, namely:

- green buildings and the built environment
- sustainable transport and infrastructure
- clean energy and energy efficiency
- natural resource conservation and management
- sustainable waste management
- water management
- sustainable consumption and production
- agriculture food production and forestry.

As outlined in the Integrated Resource Plan, by 2030 the DEA aims to have sliced the country's energy demand significantly through technological innovation, good behavioural practice and public commitment to more efficient, sustainable and equitable energy use.

National Green Fund

The Green Fund focuses on innovative projects that require financing to cover funding gaps. The fund has a portfolio of 20 active and 2 completed investment projects, representing investment of R679,8 million since the fund's inception.

Established in 2011, the Green Fund is a national fund providing catalytic finance for investment in green initiatives that will support South Africa's transition towards a green economy.

The fund is additional and complementary to existing fiscal allocations, focusing on innovative projects that need to cover a funding or financing gap.

The fund is managed by the Development Bank of Southern Africa on behalf of the DEA. By March 2017, it had a portfolio of 29 investment projects, 16 research and policy-development initiatives and eight capacity-development initiatives approved for implementation.

Over the medium term, the Green Fund is expected to receive additional allocations from the economic competitiveness and support package of R95 million in 2018/19, R111 million in 2019/20 and R117,1 million in 2020/21. Direct investment into projects, including co-investments and additional support realised thus far, amount to R285 million, with contributions from the private sector amounting to R91 million.

Drawing investment from the private sector is one of the key mandates of the fund. As investments begin to show favourable returns, it is expected that private sector investors will invest without any state involvement. As a result, direct investment is expected to exceed R500 million over the medium term.

Over 1 600 direct job opportunities and at least 11 300 indirect job opportunities have been created. The majority of these job opportunities are created under the investment projects portfolio. More than 7 400 individuals have been directly trained and capacitated in the area of green skills.

Sustainable Development and the Green Economy

South Africa continues to play an instrumental role within other global coordination mechanisms.

The final adoption of the Paris Climate Change in December

2015 represented a major step forward in international cooperation towards sustainable green, low-carbon and climate-resilient economies globally. During the Paris negotiating process, South Africa played a key role as Chair of the Group of 77 plus China, representing 134 developing countries, and as lead negotiator for the Africa group.

In April 2016, South Africa joined 174 other countries in New York as a proud signatory to the Paris Agreement. The DEA has started domestic ratification processes to enable the entry into force of the agreement in 2020.

This new legal framework will guide international efforts to limit greenhouse gas emissions, and enable the transition to climate resilient societies and economies, particularly through the commitment by developed countries to provide financial, technology and capacity building support to developing countries in their effort to address the climate change challenge.

In the lead-up to the Paris climate change negotiations, South Africa submitted its Intended Nationally Determined Contribution (INDC) to the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC). South Africa's INDC is guided by the National Climate Change Response Policy and outlines the national goals for the country's adaptation effort; and it clearly outlines that South Africa will peak and plateau its greenhouse gas emissions by 2030.

Managing waste

The Waste Management Bureau was established in 2016 in terms of the National Environmental

Management: Waste Management Act. The bureau is tasked with promoting and facilitating the minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste by providing specialist advice and support for the development of integrated waste management plans for industry and municipalities. The bureau is also tasked with monitoring the implementation of industry waste management plans, and managing the disbursement of revenue generated from charges for waste management. To carry out these and other related activities, the bureau received an allocation of R1,2 billion over the medium term.

In 2017, the CEO of the iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, the environmentalist Andrew Zaloumis was awarded the prestigious 2017 KfW-Bernhard-Grzimek-Preis for his outstanding commitment and visionary management of the iSimangaliso Wetland Park World Heritage site in South Africa. The award is presented every two years to honour individuals and organisations for their commitment to protecting the world's globally significant biodiversity, and comes with a prize of €50 000.

Climate Change Response Policy

The national Climate Change Response Policy is guided by the vision of the NDP of a transition to an inclusive, equitable, low-carbon and climate-resilient economy and society by 2030.

By 2030, South Africa will have an efficient, lower-carbon public transport system that makes everyday use of private vehicles an unnecessary extravagance.

The development of the first phase of desired emission reduction objectives and carbon budgets are well underway. The Carbon Budget system will be introduced in five-year phases – an initial phase from 2016 to 2020, and the subsequent phases from 2021 onwards.

Priority focus areas are communities most vulnerable to the impacts of climate change, namely the indigent, rural dwellers and women.

Given its demonstrated capacity, SANBI has been appointed the national implementing entity of the Global Adaptation Fund.

Pilot projects include the Greater uMgeni Catchment area in KwaZulu-Natal, the Mopani District in Limpopo and the Namaqua District in Northern Cape.

These projects, to the value of US$10 million, include the enhancement of early warning systems, protecting local communities from extreme weather events, and promoting climate smart agriculture practices.

The SAWS continues to host the Global Atmospheric Watch Station at the Cape Point, one of only three in Africa. This network arose from the need to understand and control the increasing influence of human activity on the global atmosphere and provide climate change information and services.

People and parks

South Africa is home to more than nine million hectares of protected areas network, which includes national parks, nature reserves and world heritage sites, equating to about 8% of the country's land.

These protected areas, among other things, serve as sites for conserving South Africa's ecosystems, protecting high biodiversity value and providing ecosystem services. Most of these protected areas are geographically located in rural areas, forming an integral system with rural communities whose livelihoods and cultures are closely dependent on by these communities.

Wildlife Economy

South Africa is the third most biologically diverse country in the world, and therefore has one of the largest natural capital assets. This biodiversity is not only economically viable to the economic wellbeing of the country but can be used as a vehicle for social upliftment.

The country's biodiversity comes with a number of challenges, ranging from poaching to overexploitation. The Wildlife Economy in South Africa is centred on the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources, including biodiversity-derived products for trade and bio-prospecting, the hunting industry, agriculture and agro-processing of indigenous crops and vegetables and livestock breeds and indigenous marine resources and fisheries.

The focus of the Wildlife Economy is centred on the socio-economic benefits of eco-tourism, co-managed conservation areas and ancillary services to protected areas.

Harvesting indigenous biological resources is a significant source of income for communities. In many cases, one harvester supports an entire household, but the overdependence on these have led to the depletion and at the extreme the extinction of some of the biodiversity.

For example, the existing commercial market for trade in South African bitter aloe, or Aloe ferox is well established, as is the trade in Pelargonium sidoides, buchu, rooibos, honey bush, Devil's Claw and crocodile fat/oil. These indigenous biological resources are predominantly used in the manufacturing of herbal medicines, cosmetics, food flavours and fragrances.

Additional products with commercial potential for industrial or pharmaceutical application are micro-organisms, marine organisms, gums and resins, and venoms.

Other significant drivers of the biodiversity economy include trophy hunting and the associated industry of taxidermy, sale of live game and sale of game meat. Further opportunities exist in the sale of game meat and skins for leather, bones and horns.

Another example of biodiversity-based industry is in silk production. Other biodiversity-based products include bee-keeping products (honey, wax, propollis and royal jelly), Mopane worms, and ostrich egg shells and feathers.

South African Carbon Disclosure Project (CDP)

The CDP is a UK-based not-for-profit organisation holding the largest database of corporate climate change information in the world. Established in 2000, the CDP, on behalf of 551 institutional investors, challenges the world's largest companies to measure and report their carbon emissions.

A decade of CDP data shows that South African companies responding to CDP are consistently ahead of their responding global peers across many metrics. In 2017, the distribution of South African company performance scores remained extremely positive. There was a decline in the companies scoring an A, down from 37% in 2016 to 28% in the JSE 100 sample and 20% in the full sample.

The decrease is partially due to the strengthening of the CDP scoring criteria in 2017. The majority of companies scored a B (45% in the JSE sample and 41% in the full sample) and the rest scored a C with only 1% of the JSE 100 sample scoring a D and 6% of the full sample. The response rate of 74%, although down compared to 2016's 78% and 2013's peak response rate of 83%, is still the second highest response rate of all CDP samples around the world.

A total of 92 South African companies provided climate data to CDP. This data is also amongst the most complete in the world with 100% of responding companies disclosing scope 1 and 2 data and 91% disclosing two or more scope 3 categories. 99% of companies disclosed information in their mainstream filings or other external communications. 85% of the respondents undertake third party verification (4th highest of the 27 CDP samples).

There was also a high level of engagement with 97% of companies engaging with policy makers and 80% of companies engaging with their value chain. 97% of respondents said they integrated climate change into risk management while 100% integrated climate change into strategy. 87% of South African respondents reported that they have incentives in place to drive climate performance. Companies listed on the global A List are: Harmony Gold Mining Company, Nedbank, and Capital and Counties Property Group. This is down from 11 companies in 2016.

Role players

South African National Biodiversity Institute

In support of the NDP, Government is working through SANBI to spearhead an innovative programme of work on analysing ecological infrastructure and costing natural capital. This body of knowledge will empower the DEA to make informed development-related decisions.

SANBI is a respected authority in research and has an unmatched research record in the indigenous, naturalised and alien flora of southern Africa and beyond.

Its research management covers systematics and collections expansion, conservation and applied biodiversity science, and climate change. SANBI is also responsible for ensuring that biodiversity knowledge influences policy, management and decision making.

Its biome programmes, which focus on South Africa's biodiversity hotspots, ensure that the country's most important biodiversity regions such as the grasslands, wetlands and succulent Karoo are protected in a sustainable and beneficial way.

SANBI is increasingly embracing biodiversity in its broadest sense through the inclusion of the country's fauna as part of its taxonomic research mandate. It is coordinating a catalogue of all South Africa's species (at least 100 000), including animals, through the South African Tree of Life Project.

The institute operates environmental education programmes within its national botanical gardens, while outreach greening programmes focus on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

SANBI is South Africa's official body for facilitating access to the Adaptation Fund, set up to help developing countries cope with climate change. It was established by the parties to the Kyoto Protocol of the UNFCCC to finance concrete adaptation projects and programmes in developing countries that are parties to the protocol.

In 2017, the Department of Science and Technology, the DEA, the National Research Foundation and SANBI signed a business transfer agreement to enable the transfer of the national zoological gardens in Pretoria from the National Research Foundation to SANBI with effect from 1 April 2018.

For this purpose, amounts of R69,7 million in the 2018/19 financial year, R73,6 million in the 2019/20 financial year and R77,6 million in the 2020/21 financial year are being shifted from the foundation to the institute.

Through its Kids in Gardens Programme, SANBI has reached over 50 000 beneficiaries in 2017. While many of the participating schools and organisations are regular clients to the programme, plans were made to market the programme to new schools, resulting in 173 schools with almost 15 000 learners visiting the National Botanical Gardens in Pretoria for lessons for the first time. Further steps were taken targeting designated groups, including learners with physical and mental disabilities.

Managing oceans and coastal conservation

The department continues to support annual research voyages to Antarctica, Marion Island and Gough Island.

Servicing the contract with African Marine Solutions for the manning and operation of two research vessels, SA Agulhas II and SA Algoa, is one of the major cost drivers in the Oceans and Coasts programme, amounting to a projected R557 million over the medium term.

Implementing the oceans economy strategy forms part of Operation Phakisa, a fast results delivery programme launched by government in 2014. An estimated R311,1 million is provided over the MTEF period in the Oceans and Coasts programme for implementing the oceans economy strategy, which includes activities in marine transport and manufacturing, offshore oil and gas exploration, aquaculture, marine protection services, ocean

governance, small harbours, and coastal and marine tourism.

South African Weather Service

The SAWS provides useful and innovative weather, climate and related products and services by:

- enhancing observational data and communications networks
- developing and managing talent within the sector
- enhancing collaborative partnerships and disseminating weather services products to their users
- using cutting-edge technology to convert data into meaningful products and services for risk mitigation
- advancing the science of meteorology, research and relevant applications
- enhancing fiscal discipline and resource mobilisation to ensure sustainability.

In its continued efforts to carry out its legal mandate, the work of SAWS is guided by four key strategic goals:

- ensuring the continued relevance of the organisation in delivering meteorological- related products and services in compliance with all applicable regulatory frameworks
- ensuring effective management of stakeholder, partner and key client relations
- addressing the short-term viability and long-term sustainability of the entity's revenue and ensuring continued fiscal discipline
- ensuring the availability of strategy-driven human capital capacity for the performance of the SAWS.

In an effort to combat climate change, the SAWS recently adopted the approach of building "a WeatherSMART nation". This is expected to enhance the early warning system to ensure that climate and weather data, products and applications are available to all South Africans. The SAWS's total budget for 2017/18 is R380,6 million.

Environmental resources

National botanical gardens

SANBI manages the 10 national botanical gardens, classified as conservation gardens, in seven of South Africa's nine provinces. Together, they conserve more than 7 500 ha of natural vegetation and associated biodiversity within their boundaries.

South Africa's Ramsar sites include:

- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nature Reserve
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- Wilderness Lakes.

The national botanical gardens are natural escapes close to some of the country's urban centres, offering visitors a taste of the country's uniquely rich and colourful biodiversity. They feature facilities such as restaurants, function rooms and conference venues and include activities such as hikes, picnics and shopping.

The botanical gardens are:

- Kirstenbosh, Cape Town
- Pretoria, Tshwane
- Harold Porter, Betty's Bay
- Walter Sisulu, Roodepoort
- Hantam, Nieuwoudtville
- Free State, Bloemfontein
- Karoo Desert, Worcester
- KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg
- Lowveld, Nelspruit
- Kwelera, East London.

National Herbarium

The National Herbarium, situated within the Pretoria National Botanical Garden, houses over one million scientific plant specimens in southern Africa.

The Crompton Herbarium in Cape Town focuses mainly on the flora of the winter rainfall region of southern Africa, while the KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium in Durban primarily focuses on the flora of the subtropical eastern region of South Africa, in particular the flora of the province.

Protected areas

The Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), founded in 1992 at the Rio Summit, is the legally binding agreement on the use and conservation of biological diversity.

The CBD provides the framework for 196 parties to guide efforts to conserve and sustainably use biological diversity and equitably share the benefits from the use of genetic resources. In October 2010, the parties approved the Strategic Plan for Biodiversity for 2011 – 2020, including 20 Aichi Targets. There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN).

South Africa has 528 protected areas, of which 20 are marine, totalling 7,5 million ha or 6,2% of the country's land area.

Over the medium term, the DEA aims to increase the percentage of land under conservation from 11,3% (13 774 798 ha out of the total land area of 121 991 200 ha) in 2014/15 to 13,2% (16 121 794 ha) in 2018/19 – improving the size of state-managed protected areas that are effectively managed to 90% (5 873 300 ha out of 6 525 889 ha) by 2018/19.

South Africa aims to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. The DEA works closely with landowners to ensure their participation in the Stewardship Programme, which allows land owners to use their land for biodiversity and conservation purposes. This is aimed at expanding the country's conservation estate.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources.

Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped. Access is strictly controlled, with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

South African National Parks

SANParks' primary mandate is to oversee the conservation of South Africa's biodiversity, landscapes and associated heritage assets through a system of national parks. Its mandate is based on the following core values:

- conservation management through the national parks system
- constituency building and people-focused eco-tourism management
- corporate governance and sound business and operational management.

SANParks manages a system of parks, which represents the indigenous fauna, flora, landscapes and associated cultural heritage of the country.

SANParks is responsible for 21 national parks in seven of the nine provinces of South Africa, with a total area of just over 4 million ha and comprising 67% of the protected areas under state management.

SANParks has increased the area of land under its protection by 360 000 ha over the past 20 years. In 2016/17, 3 874 ha were added to national parks and plans are underway to acquire 3 569 ha in 2017/18.

This revenue funds activities and projects, mostly infrastructure, which could not be accommodated in the budget allocations.

The national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

Tourism activities within the parks include self-drive safaris, game-viewing, accommodation tariffs, adventure activities such as guided walks and hiking, birdwatching, 4x4 trails, sightseeing, cultural and historical experiences, mountain biking, golf, canoeing and swimming.

By March 2017, SANParks' national parks received 6,7 million visitors into its 19 parks generating approximately R2,6 billion. A total of 77 340 people visited the various parks for free during SANParks week in the 206/17 financial year.

The organisation is working to increase the number of visitors to national parks from 5,9 million in 2016/17 to 6,5 million in 2019/20, with the aim of increasing commercial activities revenue from R1,4 billion in 2017/18 to R1,6 billion in 2019/20.

Spending on tourism infrastructure improvements and extensions is projected at R422 million over the medium term.

SANParks will also manage and monitor protected areas and raise awareness about national parks through the biodiversity and conservation programme, with an allocation of R893 million, growing at an average annual rate of 3,4%.

SANParks plays a key role in employment creation through implementation the EPWP.

Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural resource management areas to hunting-concession areas. Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources.

Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible. TFCAs facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development.

The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

The seven TFCAs are:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld (Namibia, South Africa)
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa, Zimbabwe)
- Greater Mapungubwe
- Kavango-Zambezi (Angola, Botswana, Namibia, Zambia, Zimbabwe)
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa)
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area (Mozambique, South Africa, Swaziland)
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area (Lesotho, South Africa).

Biosphere reserves

A biosphere designation is given by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) to special landscapes where people are collaborating to ensure their environmental integrity as the basis for their economic development. Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere Programme.

Whether they are terrestrial, freshwater, coastal or marine in nature, all are experimental areas where different approaches to integrated environmental management are tested. This helps to deepen knowledge of what works in conservation and sustainable development.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- Vhembe, situated in the north-east of Limpopo, which includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke

Wetland, which is protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hot spots; and the Makgabeng Plateau.

- The 100 000-ha Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to a penguin colony.
- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.
- In the north there is the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, an area of some 400 000 ha in Limpopo. It is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.
- The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.
- The Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve is recognised by UNESCO in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

World heritage sites

A UNESCO World Heritage Site is listed by UNESCO as being of special cultural or physical significance.

It catalogues, names and conserves sites of outstanding cultural or natural importance to the common heritage of humanity.

While each World Heritage Site remains part of the legal territory of the province wherein the site is located, UNESCO considers it in the interest of the international community to preserve each site.

For a site to be deemed as a world heritage site, it has to be recognised as having global historical or environmental significance, signify a phenomenal achievement of humanity, or reveal ancient civilisations. The recognition allows the country to access funds for conservation from the World Heritage Fund. To be accepted onto the list, a country must meet stringent criteria and show how the site will be conserved.

> The animal collections of the National Zoological Gardens are the direct responsibility of the Animal Collection and Conservation Department. The department operates in two facilities: the main facility in Tshwane and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, 200 km north of Tshwane.
>
> The facility in Tshwane is an 84-ha ex situ-based facility, which is home to approximately 5 000 different mammals, birds, fish, reptiles, amphibians and invertebrates, comprising of around 600 species and subspecies. One of its unique features is that it has the largest inland aquarium in Africa, which also has a marine fish component. It is also the only zoo in South Africa that is home to koalas, okapi, Komodo dragons and forest buffalo, to name but a few.
>
> The second facility, the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, has both an ex situ and in situ component. The centre is 1 394 ha in size and hosts approximately 830 animals of 42 different species and subspecies directly in its care. In the reserve component, 105 tree species, 71 grass species and 173 free-ranging bird species have also been identified. In 2007, the MBCC was proclaimed as a protected area as a Fossil Hominid Site of SA: Mokopan Valley.

South Africa has 10 world heritage sites proclaimed by UNESCO:

- Robben Island: situated 11 kilometres (km) offshore from Cape Town, the island is most famous as the place where Nelson Mandela was imprisoned. It is now home to the world-renowned Robben Island Museum and has become a popular tourist attraction.
- The iSimangaliso Wetland Park was listed as South Africa's first World Heritage Site in December 1999 in recognition of its natural beauty and unique global values. The 332 000-ha park contains three major lake systems, eight interlinking ecosystems, 700-year-old fishing traditions, most of South Africa's remaining swamp forests, Africa's largest estuarine system, 526 bird species and 25 000-year-old coastal dunes – among the highest in the world. The name iSimangaliso means "miracle" and "wonder". The park also has four Ramsar sites.
- The Cradle of Humankind consisting of the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai. The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung skull fossil site in North West and the Mokopane Valley in Limpopo. The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils that provide evidence of human evolution over the past 3,5 million years. Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are encased in a bed of dolomite deposited around 2,5 billion years ago. In April 2010, a new species of hominid, Australopithecus sediba, estimated to be two million years old, was discovered in the Cradle of Humankind.
- The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site) is a world heritage site covering 242 813 ha (2 428 km²). The park spans parts of both South Africa and Lesotho. The park includes the Royal Natal National Park, a provincial park, and the Drakensberg National Park, which covers part of the Drakensberg, the highest mountain in southern Africa. Under the Ramsar Convention, the park is in the List of Wetlands of International Importance.
- Mapungubwe Heritage Site: in September 2011, the DEA, SANParks and Coal of Africa Limited signed an historical Memorandum of Agreement (MoA) as part of the environmental authorisation issued in accordance with Nema of 1998, to ensure the integrity of the Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape World Heritage Site. According to the MoA, the integrity of the World Heritage Site will be maintained through comprehensive biodiversity offset programmes, thereby optimising benefits to local communities.
- Cape Floral Region, the smallest of the six recognised floral kingdoms of the world, is an area of extraordinarily high diversity and home to more than 9 000 vascular plant species, of which 69% are endemic. Much of this diversity is associated with the fynbos biome. The economical worth of fynbos biodiversity, based on harvests of fynbos products (e.g. wildflowers) and ecotourism, is estimated to be in the region of R77 million a year. In July 2015, UNESCO approved the extension of the Cape Floral Region Protected Areas World Heritage Site. At the time of inscription, the site was made up of eight protected areas comprising about 553 000 ha. The eight protected areas are located in the Eastern Cape and

the Western Cape. The extension brings the size of the World Heritage Site to 1 094 742 ha and increases the number of protected area clusters making up the Cape Floral Region from eight to 13.

- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape: The site covers 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-west of South Africa. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or Iharu oms.
- Vredefort Dome, about 120 km south-west of Johannesburg, is a representative part of a larger meteorite impact structure, or astrobleme. Dating back more than two million years, it is the oldest astrobleme yet found on Earth. With a radius of 190 km, it is also the largest and the most deeply eroded. Vredefort Dome bears witness to the world's greatest known single energy release event, which had devastating global effects including, according to some scientists, major evolutionary changes. It provides evidence of the Earth's geological history and is crucial to understanding of the evolution of the planet. Despite the importance of impact sites to an the planet's history, geological activity on the Earth's surface has led to the disappearance of evidence from most of them, and Vredefort is the only example to provide a full geological profile of an astrobleme below the crater floor.
- The Khomani Cultural Landscape covers 959 100 ha, forming part of the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park and including the whole Kalahari Gemsbok National Park, associated with the former San hunter-gatherers. It is a vast desert area associated with Khomani San culture since the Stone Age.

10th World heritage site for South Africa

The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains were added to the prestigious World Heritage List in July 2018, becoming the 10th World Heritage Site for South Africa. The mountains were inscribed at the 42nd UNESCO World Heritage Committee session held in Manama, Bahrain.

Situated in Mpumalanga Province, the site comprises 40% of the Barberton Greenstone Belt, one of the world's oldest geological structures. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3,25 to 3,6 billion years. It features meteor-impact fallback breccias resulting from the impact of meteorites formed just after the Great Bombardment (4,6 to 3,8 billion years ago). It has attracted researchers from all over the world because of its most exposed layers of rock formations. Scientists found fossilised bacteria under thin layers of rock thought to be 3,2 billion years old. The intensive work which culminated in a ground breaking research on the site and to nominate it for world heritage recognition started in the early 2000s.

The recognition by UNESCO is expected to unlock the potential of Makhonjwa Mountains and contribute to socio-economic development, attesting to the strategic value of heritage in economic development. It is also expected to boost local eco-tourism development and provide job creation opportunities for rural communities.

Before this new addition, South Africa was tied with Morocco and Egypt with nine World Heritage sites each.

Habitat and wildlife management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary landowner in conservation. Landowners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.

Wetlands

The IUCN identifies wetlands as the third most important support system on Earth.

Wetlands make up only 2,4% of South Africa's surface area but they are responsible for a disproportionately high value of "ecological infrastructure" that provides critical ecosystem services such as water purification and flood regulation, among others.

Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows. Of special importance is the role wetlands play in ensuring a steady supply of clean water for communities and helping Government save hundreds of millions of rands that would be required to set up

In South Africa, numerous private bodies are involved in conservation activities. More than 400 organisations concentrate on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, while more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations concentrate on the conservation of the country's fauna and flora. These include the:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- EWT
- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa
- World Wildlife Fund of South Africa.

purification plants/facilities.

South Africa was one of the first six countries to become a signatory to the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, called the Ramsar Convention, when it came into force in 1975. It is an intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

South Africa has 22 Ramsar sites.

The DEA is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme, which ensures that South Africa's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

South Africa's Ramsar sites include:

- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nature Reserve
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- Wilderness Lakes.

South Africa is seen as a leader in the rehabilitation of wetlands. The damage done to wetlands can be reversed, as is seen at Rietvlei Dam in Gauteng.

Government has pledged more than R75 million to rehabilitating wetlands. Rehabilitation is ongoing, with attention given to poverty-stricken areas.

World Wetlands Day is annually celebrated on 2 February. The 2018 World Wetlands Day was held under the theme, "Wetlands for a sustainable urban future". This has been selected to highlight the important role of urban wetlands in making cities liveable. They reduce flooding, replenish drinking water, filter waste, provide urban green spaces, and are a source of livelihoods.

Marine protected areas

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. They are also used to develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include:

- Aliwal Shoal, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay, Western Cape
- Bird Island, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe, Eastern Cape
- False Bay, Western Cape
- Goukamma, Western Cape
- Hluleka, Eastern Cape
- iSimangaliso, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island, Western Cape
- Pondoland, Eastern Cape.
- Robberg, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai, Western Cape
- Table Mountain, Western Cape
- Trafalgar, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma, Western Cape.

Zoological gardens

Established in 1899 in Pretoria, and given national status in 1916, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa is the largest zoo in the country and the only one with national status. Over 600 000 people visit it every year.

The 85-ha NZG is the largest zoo in the country and houses 3 117 specimen of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimen of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimen of 190 fish species, 388 specimen of four invertebrate species, 309 specimen of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimen of seven amphibian species.

It plays a major role in the conservation of wildlife, maintaining one of the largest animal collections in Africa.

The species are managed across two facilities stretching into Gauteng (Pretoria) and Limpopo (Mokopane). About 70% of the species are of African origin and 30% of global representation.

As a member of the World Association of Zoos and Aquariums and the African Association of Zoos and Aquaria, the NZG participates in several endangered species management programmes and successfully breeds several endangered species of both continental and global significance.

Among the endangered species the NZG contributes to conserving are the cheetah, rhino, ground hornbill, red-billed oxpecker and several endangered antelope species.

The animal collections of the NZG are the direct responsibility of the Animal Collection and Conservation Department. The department operates in two facilities: the main facility in Tshwane and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, 200 km north of Tshwane.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens' core business is the accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It also plays an important role in conservation projects of both indigenous and internationally endangered animals. The zoo joins other conservation organisations in programmes involving:

- wattled crane recovery
- amphibian conservation
- ground hornbill breeding and off-site surveys
- vulture conservation
- chimpanzee conservation with the Jane Goodall Institute.

The Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT) is a major partner. Mitchell Park in Durban is the country's second oldest zoo after the NZG. There are about 30 projects on the cards for the zoo, including cheetah and chimpanzee enclosures.

Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering

1 333 ha.

The centre supplement the NZG's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and its own animal collection.

The Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as the lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino.

The De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Centre near Pretoria, is best known for its captive breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list in the South African Red Data Book – Terrestrial Mammals in 1986.

De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species.

The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation in coat pattern and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs.

It has donated breeding nuclei of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Limpopo was established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah.

The centre caters for, among other animals, five species of vulture: Cape griffins as well as white-backed, hooded, whiteheaded and lappet-faced vultures.

The centre is also known for its wild dog breeding programme.

The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme includes the rare black-footed cat, vulnerable African wild cat, ground hornbills (in cooperation with the NZG), the bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal, sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there.

The Cape Vulture Breeding and Reintroduction Programme celebrated the first release of three different ages of captive-bred Cape vultures into the Magaliesberg Mountains in February 2015. Each bird was fitted with a solar-powered GPS tracking unit to enable post-release monitoring as a vital part of the reintroduction and research programme. The chicks are being monitored to follow their integration into wild populations by observing ranging and roosting behaviours, competitive behaviours, weight gain and body condition.

Aquariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, Durban and East London.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG in Pretoria is the largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish.

It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water and the only inland aquarium housing ragged-tooth sharks.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays. East London aquarium was 84 years old in 2015, making it South Africa's oldest aquarium.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast.

The aquarium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water species, and is the fifth largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet and Wild World.

Sea World has a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium, the largest dolphinarium in Africa.

Snake and reptile parks

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and deadly venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers. Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations.

The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast.

The CrocRiver Enviro Park in Nelspruit is the largest facility of its type in Africa. The park offers, among other things, turtle, crocodile and fish ponds; the water monitor lizard pond; and the Desert House, in which a desert-like atmosphere has been created, and which is home to the reptile gallery where indigenous and exotic reptiles from all over the world are displayed.

Khamai Reptile Centre's primary aims are conservation, breeding of endangered reptiles and education. Located outside Hoedspruit in Mpumalanga, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

Managing environmental resources

Wildlife protection

The Convention on the International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) states that big cats, which are among the most widely recognised and admired animals, are facing many and varied threats caused mostly by human activities worldwide.

South Africa adheres to the principle of sustainable utilisation of natural resources, as well as principles set out in the NDP aimed at creating a climate-resilient society while growing the economy and increasing jobs. As such, a range of measures have been introduced to ensure that lion, leopard and cheetah populations are conserved and properly managed. This includes the implementation of a Biodiversity Management Plan for the African Lion. The Scientific Authority of South Africa conducted a Non-Detriment Finding (NDF) as required by CITES. The final NDF was published for implementation in January 2018.

The NDF for lion states that there are currently no major threats to the wild and managed lion populations in South Africa, although the management of re-introduced wild lion needs some improvement. Minor, but non-detrimental threats include over-utilisation, disease, poaching and conflict with

communities around protected areas.

Wildlife crime not only threatens natural resources, but also the economy through financial burdens and the loss of economic and development opportunities. As a country richly endowed with natural resources, South Africa is not immune to these challenges with criminal syndicates targeting iconic species, such as the cycad, rhino, elephant and lion, as well as species not often considered as being under threat – birds, tortoises, lizards and snakes.

The declaration of wildlife crime as a priority crime in South Africa has resulted in a multidisciplinary, multi-sectoral approach focused on collaboration through our national security structure. This involves border and customs officials, the National Prosecuting Authority, the Police and institutions such as the Airports Company of South Africa which manages international airports.

The country has also introduced the development of critical skills aimed at increasing its capacity to detect and investigate these crimes. The Department of Environmental Affairs is currently working with World Wide Fund for Nature on a project to increase the country's ability to tackle wildlife trafficking. This project, funded by the US Department of State's Bureau of International & Law Enforcement Affairs, focuses on the development of further training materials to bolster the country's national compliance and enforcement programme, including an e-learning platform for officials, audio visual materials, specific curriculum and manuals.

Traveller awareness material has also been developed to highlight the threat that wildlife crime poses to the rich biodiversity and encouraging people not to support the illegal trade in wildlife.

The DEA"s Environmental Management Inspectors (EMIs) check consignments of wildlife for exports from South Africa to ensure that that they meet all legal requirements. About 300 legal wildlife-related consignments are exported/imported on a monthly basis at the OR Tambo International Airport. The EMIs inspected and endorsed approximately 4 200 CITES permits during 2017.

The SARS K9 unit at O R Tambo International Airport use specialist sniffer dogs to detect attempts to smuggle wildlife into South Africa.

Rhino poaching

South Africa's largest game reserve, the Kruger National Park, now houses a court which will combat rhino poaching. The Skukuza Regional Court was opened by the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development in April 2017 and periodically sits once a week.

Rhino poaching has been declared a National Priority Crime, and government continues to work as a team in the implementation of the Integrated Strategic Management of Rhinoceros.

This is a multi-sectoral, interdisciplinary approach involves other stakeholders such as SANParks, the Department of Home Affairs, the Department of Defence (as a leader of the SANDF), the South African Police Service and the Hawks, the State Security Agency, the South African Revenue Service, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, and the provincial conservation authorities.

The number of rhinos poached in 2017 was down to 1 028 from 1 054 the previous year. The decline is due to the multifaceted government interventions.

Marine pollution and sustainability

South Africa has one of the world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism developed the National Contingency Plan for the Prevention and Combating of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport. This includes disposing of, recovering or stabilising spilt oil and rehabilitating the environment.

With 80% of marine pollution emanating from land-based activities, the DEA will be implementing the national Programme of Action for land-based sources of pollution, while refining strategies for combating marine pollution from oil spills.

The department has embarked on a process to adopt a new protocol on land-based sources of marine pollution under the amended Nairobi Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the Western Indian Ocean.

The department has also developed the Cape Zone Oil Spill Plan.

Protecting the coastline

To counter illegal activities along the coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km^2 Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery-control officers and 100 honorary fishery-control officers, after the implementation of the Honorary Fishery-Control Officers Policy.

The department took delivery of four environmental protection vessels as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources, namely the Lillian Ngoyi, Ruth First, Victoria Mxenge and Sarah Baartman. They patrol up to the 200 nautical mile limit from the shore and the most remote reaches of the EEZ as well as around the Prince Edward Islands.

The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the SADC coastal states.

The Phakisa Approach

Operation Phakisa was launched in 2014 as a new approach to enable government to implement its policies and programmes better, faster and more effectively.

The initiative was designed to fast-track the implementation of solutions on critical development issues. This is a unique initiative to address issues highlighted in the NDP Vision 2030 such as poverty, unemployment and inequality.

The department has registered notable progress with regards to Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy; Chemicals and Waste Phakisa, and Operation Phakisa: Biodiversity Economies.

Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy

The department to continues to unlock the economic potential of South Africa's oceans, growing the GDP and creating more sustainable jobs – while ensuring that the country's oceans and coastal ecosystems are sustainably managed.

Highlights include the development of a National Guideline Towards the Establishment of Coastal Management Lines. This is intended to minimise risks posed by short and long term coastal processes such as storm surges, erosion and sea level rise. A National Coastal Access Strategy is also being development to provide guidance around the public's access to closed off beaches.

The Marine Spatial Planning Bill was approved by the National Assembly on 24 April 2018 and is expected to undergo procedures of the National Council of Provinces. The department continued to enhance legislation for the Integrated Coastal and Oceans Management Act or Oceans Act. It has finalised an associated Marine Spatial Planning Framework, and is working on the development of sub-regional marine spatial management plans.

In 2017, researchers from the DEA participated in the Second International Indian Ocean Expedition. This UN led expedition currently in its second year, is aimed at improving scientific knowledge of the Indian Ocean with a view to advancing Oceans Economy for South Africa and other members of the Indian Oceans Rim Association.

Marine pollution is another challenge that threatens fragile ecosystems. South Africa has a number of measures in place to tackle this problem, including the National Pollution Laboratory operated by the Walter Sisulu University which is expected to start working in the near future. The lab will allow for in depth analysis of the samples that could not be done through mobile laboratories.

In addition, South Africa is amongst the countries that have endorsed the UN Environmental Programme's Clean Seas Campaign. The campaign is aimed at stepping up international, regional and national efforts to combat marine litter. As part of the campaign, the department has announced the piloting of its Source to Sea Initiative – new strategy to investigate and combat pollution, in particular plastic pollution which threatens both freshwater and marine ecosystems.

The oceans have the potential to contribute up to R177 billion to the GDP and create just over one million jobs by 2033.

Operation Phakisa: Biodiversity Economy

South Africa has a multi-faceted approach to the management of its rich natural heritage. The approach focuses on an inclusive, value-chain approach to the development of the biodiversity economy, taking into consideration the fact that communities are the primary custodians of the country's biodiversity.

In 2017, the department identified two million hectares of land suitable for biodiversity economy activities, and updated its National Biodiversity Economy Strategy to include specific, measurable and achievable targets.

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act was also amended to specifically address the bio prospecting and bio trade sectors.

In 2017, 292 permanent jobs were created in the bio trade and bio prospecting sector, while and 989 jobs were created in wildlife economy pilot projects such as Balepye, Double Drift and Mfolozi Big Five.

In the 2018/19 financial year, the department plans to increase the supply of indigenous species by availing at least 500 ha of land for the production of high value species. This will be complemented by ongoing implementation of a game donation and custodianship policy framework.

In line with the President' investment drive, the department plans to launch a Biodiversity Economy Investment Catalogue, that will profile investment-ready biodiversity economy projects.

Operation Phakisa: Chemicals and Waste

Waste economy has the potential to address inequality, poverty alleviation and create jobs. The department continues to support waste pickers through various programmes such as the Recycling Enterprise Support Programme which has already made a material impact to the lives of 12 black-owned and managed enterprises.

The primary objective of the programme is to provide developmental funding for projects in the form of start-up grants. These projects are either start-up or pre-existing enterprises establishing buy-back centres, material recovery facilities, construction & demolishing solutions and plastic palletisation plants in line with the Operation Phakisa initiatives.

The programme has been allocated a budget R194 million over a three-year period.

With regards to chemicals, Cabinet has recommended that South Africa should ratify the Minamata Convention on Mercury and the Kigali Amendment to the Montreal Protocol on the Protection of the Ozone Layer. The Kigali amendment will have co-benefits for mitigating climate change and ozone-depletion. In the 2017/18 financial year, the country met its targets to reduce the consumption of Hydrochlorofluorocarbons by 20%.

The South African government is also committed to minimize plastic pollution. The department recently conducted a Plastic Material Study and is in the process of consulting with the cosmetics industry to phase out the use of micro beads in cosmetics. Plans are also underway to review the impact of the implementation of plastic bag policies.

In addition, the DEA will continue to work with the packaging sector (paper, glass, plastic and metal) to increase over and above 58% the amount of waste diverted from landfill.

The DEA is expected to launch the Keep South Africa Clean campaign with the aim of mobilizing citizens to become environmentally conscious and create a South Africa free of litter and illegal dumping.

Vessel monitoring

The department is making it obligatory for fishing vessels to have satellite technology on board so that their movements can be monitored.

Five coastal nations in the SADC have taken the innovative step of linking their vessel-monitoring systems. Angola, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa and Tanzania have signed a MoU that will allow them to share information about the movement of licensed boats along the southern African coast.

Chemicals and waste management

South Africa has taken a number of steps to promote environmentally sound management of chemicals and waste throughout the life cycle, including being a party to a range of multilateral environment agreements and an active member in instruments on chemicals and waste. These include the:

- Rotterdam Convention on the Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides

in International Trade
- Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants
- Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer
- Basel Convention on the Control of Trans-boundary Movement of Hazardous Wastes
- Strategic Approach to International Chemicals Management, which is governed by the International Conference on Chemicals Management.

South Africa had a significant role in the ongoing negotiations concerning the Intergovernmental Negotiating Committee to Prepare a Globally Legally Binding Instrument on Mercury, including research into coal-dependent power/electric stations and the situational analysis of mercury in the country.

To align fragmented legislation, the department established a National Multi-Stakeholder Committee for Chemicals Management to facilitate coordination.

The National Waste Management Strategy has eight key goals:
- promoting waste minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste
- ensuring effective and efficient delivery of waste services
- growing the contribution of the waste sector to the green economy
- ensuring that people are aware of the impact of waste on their health, well-being and the environment
- achieving integrated waste management planning
- ensuring sound budgeting and financial management for waste services
- providing measures to rehabilitate contaminated land
- establishing effective compliance with and enforcement of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act of 2008.

The DEA established the Waste Management Bureau in April 2016. The programme is aimed at reducing waste through recycling. The bureau monitors recycling plans, and provides specialist services to government and recycling companies.

Over the medium term, the bureau plans to introduce tyre recycling initiatives, which are set to receive operational funding of R210 million in 2017/18, R230 million in 2018/19 and R245 million in 2019/20.

The bureau also plans to introduce the recycling enterprise support programme, which will provide support services, training and advice to transporters, storage depot operators and tyre recyclers.

An amount of R155 million over the medium term has been allocated to the plastics programme, which will promote waste minimisation, create awareness in the plastics industry, expand collector networks and support rural collection through building the capacity of small, medium and micro-enterprises.

The National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications also receives transfers of R22,5 million over the medium term to implement compulsory specifications for plastic bags.

Youth Jobs in Waste and Township Greening Projects

These projects are funded by the DEA through its EPIP and aim to contribute towards poverty alleviation while empowering beneficiaries to participate in the mainstream economy.

The youths will benefit from this project through the formation of self-help groups, which will positively impact on their knowledge of financial literacy and self-empowerment.

The Youth Jobs in Waste initiative is focused on landfill operation and management, planning administration relating to waste collection and planning and undertaking waste awareness campaigns. The people who will be assisting with the activities will be located in the municipalities for a year.

The DEA aims to create eco-friendly greener open spaces that are safe, attractively designed, well managed for the benefit of all the country's communities as well as promoting maximum use of alternative energy sources and promote an environment that is clean, green and healthy for all.

The waste sector has been identified as a key role player in achieving the goal of economic upliftment through job creation as the DEA works towards reaching the NDP's goal of creating an environmentally sustainable, climate change resilient, low-carbon economy and just society by 2030.

The Youth Jobs in Waste Programme was designed to address some of the critical areas of assistance including capacity-building, where youths are placed in municipalities for a period of a year to assist with administration relating to waste collection and planning.

Recycling

The National Recycling Forum (NRF) is a non-profit organisation created to promote the recovery and recycling of recyclable materials in South Africa.

Members of the NRF include representatives of:
- the formal recycling industry in South Africa
- government departments
- regional recycling forums
- local government-based organisations
- local government utilities and co-opted advisory members.

To promote the interests of its members and the formal recycling industry in South Africa, the NRF:
- provides a national communication forum for key players in the field of recycling
- interacts with central and provincial government to encourage the recycling of glass, paper, plastics, tin plate steel, used oil and electrical and electronic waste
- facilitates the formation of regional forums that draw their memberships from enthusiastic and interested volunteers as well as small recyclers, in the major centres of South Africa
- encourages the establishment of buy-back centres and drop-off points through the activities of its members in the various centres.

Collect-a-Can, one of the oldest recycling initiatives in South Africa, has been instrumental in creating a culture of recycling in South Africa. It has obtained local and international acclaim for its contribution towards protecting the environment, as well as its significant contribution to job creation and poverty alleviation.

Collect-a-Can has introduced millions of schoolchildren to the idea of caring for the environment through its schools competition.

Recycling has been valued at a contribution of as much as R50 billion to the South African economy. In effect, waste is now a renewable resource and not something to throw away.

Climate change and air-quality management

South Africa is making steady progress in implementing the National Climate Change Response Policy, despite having to balance its economic aspirations and environmental protection.

Government continues to engage actively and meaningfully

in international climate change negotiations, specifically with the UNFCCC.

The policy implementation actions and activities flowing from this include the analysis of mitigation potential in key economic sectors as the basis for the establishment of desired emission reduction outcomes, and defining the optimal mix of measures for achieving those outcomes, with the greatest benefit and least cost to the economy.

Air quality remains an important and challenging environmental issue in South Africa.

Technical and legislative tools have been developed to roll-out and monitor the implementation of national environmental management including the:

- National Framework for Air Quality Management
- air quality model by-laws
- Air-Quality Management Planning Manual
- National Ambient Air Quality Standards and Listed Activities and the Minimum Emission Standards.

Several of these tools were under review accelerate the ongoing implementation of the AQA of 2004.

The South African Air Quality Information System (Saaqis) contains the latest updated data on locations and can give the status of air quality or pollution for a specific day and time on its website: www.saaqis.org.za. The DEA and the SAWS have upgraded the Saaqis . South Africans can now view the state of air live from the government monitoring network on their smart phones and other gadgets.

A number of air-quality monitoring stations, mostly in Mpumalanga, eThekwini Municipality, the City of Johannesburg and the City of Tshwane, report to Saaqis.

South Africa reached legally binding climate change agreement at the 21st Conference of the Parties (COP 21) to the UNFCC in Paris, France in December 2015.

The agreement was the culmination of a four-year negotiation process that was initiated in Durban in 2011 at the 17th Conference (COP17) of the Parties to the UNFCCC.

The conclusion to the Durban Mandate, which was to develop a protocol, legal instrument or an agreed outcome with legal force, under the convention, by no later than 2015, will see the new agreement come into effect from 2020.

In April 2016, South Africa joined leaders from across the globe in signing the Paris Agreement at the UN in New York. South Africa committed to ensure that the country continued to play a positive role in the building of a low-carbon, job-creating and pro-development green economy.

To manage climate change and air quality effectively, the department aims to increase the number of government-owned air quality monitoring stations reporting to the South African air quality information system from 116 in 2017/18 to 125 in 2020/21.

Other activities include rolling out the Let's Respond toolkit in 40 municipalities to provide a process map for integrating responses to climate change into municipalities' integrated development plans. To achieve this, R924 million is provided over the MTEF period.

Environmental impact management

2018 marks 20 years since the adoption of the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) as a tool to advance sustainable development.

In the 2016/17 financial year, a total of 1 238 EIA applications were finalised by all competent authorities. Of these, 1 190 were finalised within the regulated time frames – with only 48 finalized outside the regulated timeframes. This translates to 96% efficiency in the processing of applications. The DEA aims to reach a 100% target in the 2017\18 financial year.

South Africa's EIA regulations are:

- streamlining the EIA process
- introducing an approach where impact on the environment gets more attention
- introducing a listing notice dedicated to activities planned for predefined sensitive areas.

The Environmental Assessment Practitioners' (EAP) Association of South Africa aims to:

- achieve effective quality assurance in environmental assessment practice in South Africa
- promote the empowerment of black and female professionals within the environmental assessment field
- encourage continued professional development for EAPs
- promote awareness of the purpose and practice of environmental assessment in South Africa.

The DEA has a new and improved EIA and management approach. In addition, the department is using alternative approaches to environmental impact management.

The department is already fully integrating impact assessments on waste and EIA.

To advance and fast-track environmental authorizations for key infrastructure projects, the department continues to undertake Strategic Environmental Assessments (SEAs).

The vast scientific information from these assessments have aided in the streamlining of decision-making for South Africa's Strategic Infrastructure Projects (SIPs) led by The Presidency.

South Africa is one of the top investment destinations globally for renewable energy, and over the past financial year, SEAs were conducted for renewable energy, shale gas and electricity grid infrastructure. Work is also underway on the Gas Pipeline SEA. In the past financial year, the department authorized in excess of 53 828 Megawatts of renewable energy applications drawn from solar, wind, hydro, concentrated solar and cogeneration.

Aquaculture

Government showed its dedication to aquaculture with the launch of Operation Phakisa in July 2014. The operation will look to unlock the growth potential of the country's coastline, which is in line with the NDP.

It will also implement policies and programmes faster and more effectively. As a result, it can unlock the ocean's potential to contribute up to R177 billion to the country's GDP and create as many as one million direct jobs.

Aquaculture is a big part of that plan and Government recognises the industry as a way of contributing to food security since it has shown strong growth of 6,5% a year. Operation Phakisa will look to grow all segments of the aquaculture industry, especially by creating jobs within processing and marketing.

Despite aquaculture's advantages, the wild capture sector remains fishery's biggest contributor. According to the WWF-SA, wild capture fisheries include commercial, recreational and subsistence fisheries. It estimated about 500 000 people fished

recreationally in South Africa. Commercially caught line fish was about 16 000 tons, which placed pressure on fish resources.

National Environmental Impact Assessment and Management Strategy (EIAMS)

The EIAMS consists of voluntary and regulated instruments where:

- regulated EIAs are used only when it is the most appropriate tool
- EIAM occurs within the strategic context of environmentally informed spatial instruments, sector strategies and policies
- authorities have enough capacity with skilled and experienced officials
- other stakeholders have the capacity and skills to ensure maximum impact on the effectiveness and efficiency of the strategy
- government regulatory processes have been integrated and aligned
- government, EAPs, developers and the community are equally committed to making it work.

4x4 regulations

The Strategy Towards Co-Regulation of the Off-Road Sector in South Africa is aimed at minimising the impact of off-road driving on the environment by giving direction to off-road users and owners to develop and use inland routes in sensitive areas responsibly. The strategy applies to the inland recreational use of off-road vehicles, including two-wheel, three-wheel and four-wheel vehicles, which include 2x4 and 4x4 motor vehicles, quad bikes and motorbikes.

A key outcome of the strategy was the development, drafting and implementation of national norms and/or standards, with a supportive enabling legislative framework, to facilitate environmental compliance, responsible tourism and the long-term sustainability of the offroad industry.

The banning of off-road vehicles in coastal zones has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially the Damara tern and the African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches again. The number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on KwaZulu-Natal's northern beaches has also increased since the ban was enforced.

Coastal management

The ocean covers three quarters of the Earth, hence the importance of its protection. The DEA recognises the challenges regarding the management of ocean spaces in South Africa's adjacent ocean areas.

Of the 200 estuaries found along the South African coast, 25% are in a degraded state. This is due to inappropriate developments along the banks of estuaries and in their catchment areas. The department is focusing its attention proactively on these degraded systems and prioritising developing management plans to improve the functioning of estuaries in associated hinterlands.

The Buoy Oceans Monitoring System, which provides information on the state of the oceans at Storms River in the Tsitsikamma National Park, is the first in a series of observation and monitoring platforms, which will form the basis of the South African National Oceans and Coastal Monitoring System. The DEA reviewed the Recreational Water Quality Guidelines for Coastal Waters intending to develop effective early warning systems to pre-empt the catastrophic impacts of possible hazards.

Erosion and desertification

According to the UN Environment Programme, desertification affects 900 million people in 99 countries with 24 million tons (Mt) of topsoil being lost to erosion annually. The resultant land degradation costs Africa about US$9 billion every year.

Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 Mt of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of South Africa's total land area is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa.

South Africa is a signatory to the UNCCD. Its main objectives include cooperation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

South Africa also acts as the coordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification.

The group consists of Argentina, Australia, Brazil, Chile, New Zealand, South Africa and Uruguay. The aim is, among other things, to foster scientific and technological cooperation.

South Africa has introduced legislation such as the NEMBA of 2004 to promote the conservation of biodiversity, and fight desertification and land degradation.

Biodiversity

South Africa is home to some 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5,5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described).

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians found in South Africa, the country ranks as the fifth richest in Africa and the 24th richest in the world.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

South Africa ratified the Nagoya Protocol on Access to Genetic Resources and the Fair and Equitable Sharing of Benefits Arising from their Utilisation to the Convention on Biological Diversity, popularly referred to as the Nagoya Protocol on ABS. The Nagoya Protocol is a legally binding agreement outlining a set of terms prescribing how one country will gain access to another country's genetic resources and how the benefits derived will be shared.

The aim of the National Biodiversity and Business Network is to assist businesses from various sectors to integrate and mainstream biodiversity issues into their strategies and operations.

Government and businesses are realising that the economic and social development of the country depends on healthy ecosystems and biodiversity. The South African NDP: Vision 2030 confirms that national economic growth depends on the environmental sustainability of the country's proposed

development path.

South Africa is the third most biodiverse country in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. These countries harbour most of the Earth's species and collectively accommodate more than two thirds of global biodiversity.

South Africa is a signatory to several biodiversity-related multilateral agreements such as the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
- Ramsar Convention
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES)
- UNCCD
- Convention on Migratory Species.

The National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP) 2015 – 2025 is aimed at establishing a framework and plan of action for the conservation and sustainable use of South Africa's biodiversity and the equitable sharing of benefits derived from this use.

The National Biodiversity Framework (NBF), published in 2009, provides a framework to coordinate and align the efforts of the many organisations and individuals involved in conserving and managing South Africa's biodiversity, in support of sustainable development. The NBF is a requirement of the NEMBA of 2004.

Three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots are found in South Africa. They are the:

- Cape Floral Kingdom (equivalent to the fynbos biome)
- Succulent Karoo (shared with Namibia)
- Maputaland-Pondoland-Albany Centre of Plant Endemism, which stretches from the Albany Centre in the Eastern Cape, through the Pondoland Centre of Plant Endemism and KwaZulu-Natal, and the eastern side of Swaziland, into southern Mozambique and Mpumalanga.

The Succulent Karoo Biome is one of only two arid biodiversity hotspots in the world, the other being the Horn of Africa.

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which are divided into 70 veld types.

National biodiversity biomes

Savanna Biome

The Savanna Biome is the largest biome in southern Africa, occupying 46% of its area, and over a third of South Africa. It is an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (acacia erioloba) and the camphor bush (tarchonanthus camphoratus).

In Limpopo, the portly baobab (adansonia digitata) and the candelabra tree (euphorbia ingens) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (acacia nigrescens), bushwillow (combretum spp.), monkey thorn (acacia galpinii), mopani (colophospermum mopane) and wild fig (ficus spp.). In the valley bushveld of the south, euphorbias and spekboom trees (portulacaria afra) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the Savanna Biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions.

The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons. Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhino, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck and hippopotamus.

About 8,5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, iSimangaliso Wetlands Park and other reserves lie in the Savanna Biome.

Nama-Karoo Biome

The Nama-Karoo is the third largest biome in South Africa, covering about 20,5% of the country or more than 260 000 km^2. It stretches across the vast central plateau of the western half of the country. This semi-desert receives little rain in summer.

Rainfall varies from about 200 mm a year in the west to 400 mm a year in the north-east. Summer is very hot and winter is very cold with frequent frost.

Most of the plants are low shrubs and grass. Many plants are deciduous. Trees such as the sweet thorn (acacia karoo) are usually only found along rivers or on rocky hillsides.

Common animals include the bat-eared fox, ostrich, spring hare, tortoises and brown locust. The riverine rabbit is a threatened species found in the Nama-Karoo Biome.

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the central Karoo area of South Africa.

Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptation by plants.

Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo Biome falls within officially protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest.

Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to advance slowly on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

Grassland Biome

The Grassland Biome is the second largest biome in South Africa, covering an area of 339 237 km^2 and occurring in eight of South Africa's nine provinces. It is one of the most threatened biomes in South Africa, with 30% irreversibly transformed and only 1,9% of the biodiversity target for the biome formally conserved.

The Grassland Biome provides essential ecosystem services, such as water production and soil retention necessary for economic development. It holds important biodiversity of global and domestic significance and value.

Trees are scarce and found mainly on hills and along riverbeds. Karee *(rhus lancea)*, wild currant *(rhus pyroides)*, white stinkwood *(celtis africana)* and several acacia species are the commonest.

The Grassland Biome has the third largest number of indigenous plant species in the country.

Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in the wild in this biome.

The area is internationally recognised as an area of high species endemicity for birds. The black korhaan, blue crane and guinea fowl are among the birds found in the area.

Succulent Karoo Biome

The Succulent Karoo Biome covers a flat to gently undulating plain, with some hilly and "broken" veld, mostly situated to the west and south of the escarpment, and north of the Cape Fold

Belt.

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family asteraceae), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairyland. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered with a multicoloured carpet of flowers (from August to October, depending on the rainfall). This is a winterrainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers. Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (aloe dichotoma) and the human-like elephant's trunk (pachypodium namaquanum) are prominent in the Richtersveld. Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of the neighbouring Fynbos and Nama-Karoo biomes.

The biome includes 2 800 plant species at increased risk of extinction.

Fynbos Biome

The Fynbos Biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms of the world. This region covers only 0,04% of the Earth's land surface.

Fynbos, which is found mainly in the Western Cape, is the name given to a group of ever-green plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the Erica family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio, than 8 500 kinds, of which more than 6 000 are endemic).

The Fynbos Biome is famous for the protea, which is South Africa's national flower. The biome also contains flowering plants now regarded as garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others.

Protected areas cover 13,6% of the Fynbos Biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks.

This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, the Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. Baboon, honey badgers, caracal, the buck and several types of eagle and dassies are found in the mountains.

Forest Biome

South Africa's only significant natural forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape respectively. Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment (Drakensberg mountains), and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (podocarpus spp.), ironwood (olea capensis) and lemonwood (xymalos monospora) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

Thicket Biome

The Thicket Biome is the second smallest biome in South Africa, and is known for its high biodiversity. Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines.

It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species found there are endemic to the Thicket Biome.

The Thicket Biome, which is predominantly in the Eastern Cape, supports four species of tortoise: the leopard tortoise (geochelone pardalis), angulate tortoise (chersina angulata), tent tortoise (psammobates tentorius) and parrot-beaked tortoise (homopus areolatus).

Desert Biome

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the Succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year to year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the Desert Biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass, whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water from broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The Desert Biome incorporates abundant insect fauna, which includes many tenebrionid beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos.

Some areas in this Biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

International cooperation

In 2018, South Africa was expected to participate in a number of important international forums, including the 13th meeting of the Conference of the Contracting Parties to the Ramsar Convention on Wetlands and the 14th meeting of the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity, the 9th Meeting of the Parties to the Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety and the 3rd Meeting of the Parties to the Nagoya Protocol on Access and Benefit-sharing.

South Africa hosted the 7th Meeting of Parties to Agreement on African-Eurasian Migratory Waterbirds (AEWA) in Durban from 4 to 8 December 2018, developed under the framework of the Convention on Migratory Species. The theme of the meeting was: "Beyond 2020: Shaping Flyway Conservation for the Future".

AEWA is an intergovernmental treaty dedicated to the conservation of migratory waterbirds and their habitats in Africa, Europe, the Middle East, Central Asia, Greenland and the Canadian Archipelago. Seventy-seven countries and the European Union have signed the environmental treaty.

Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem (BCLME)

The BCLME is regarded as one of the richest ecosystems on Earth, with ecosystem goods and services estimated to be worth at least US$54,3 billion a year. Offshore oil and gas production,

marine diamond mining, coastal tourism, commercial fishing and shipping are some of the most important industrial activities that take place in the region.

The accord, signed in Angola, is a formal agreement between Angola, Namibia and South Africa that seeks to provide economic, environmental and social benefits for the three countries.

The Benguela Current Commission is a permanent intergovernmental organisation, with a mandate to promote the long-term conservation, protection, rehabilitation, enhancement and sustainable use of the BCLME.

South Africa has signed several international conventions, treaties, protocols and other agreements supporting the principles of sustainable development including the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity (ratified in 1995)
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety (South Africa became a party in 2003)
- Kyoto Protocol (signed in 2003)
- UNCCD
- World Heritage Convention (ratified in 1997)
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance (Ramsar Convention) (ratified in 1975)
- Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species (acceded in 1991).

UN Framework Convention on Climate Change

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997. The UNFCCC is aimed at:

- implementing urgent action, from 2013 to 2020, including the adoption of a second commitment period under the Kyoto Protocol and a number of institutional mechanisms such as the Green Climate Fund
- acknowledging the inadequate commitments to reduce emissions made thus far; a work programme was agreed upon to increase pre-2020 levels of ambition
- action for the future with the negotiation of a legal agreement for the period beyond 2020.

The UNFCCC entered into force in 1994. The COP to the UNFCCC meets annually to assess progress in dealing with climate change. The COP is the supreme body of the convention and is its highest decision-making authority.

With 195 parties, the UNFCCC has near universal membership and is the parent treaty of the 1997 Kyoto Protocol. The Kyoto Protocol has been ratified by 193 of the UNFCCC parties.

Under the protocol, 37 states, consisting of highly industrialised countries and those making the transition to a market economy, have legally binding emission limitation and reduction commitments.

The ultimate objective of both treaties is to stabilise greenhouse gas (GHG) concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will prevent dangerous human interference with the climate system.

The launch of negotiations to shape the new global climate change agreement and first discussions on how to raise ambition took place at the UNFCCC in Bonn in May 2012, which prepared decisions for adoption at the UNFCCC in Qatar later in 2012.

South Africa played a leading role at COP 21 in Paris, as the Chair of the Group of 77 and China, a group of 134 developing countries that are worst affected by climate change.

UN Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD)

The UN CSD was established by the UN General Assembly in December 1992 to ensure effective follow-up of the UN Conference on Environment and Development, also known as the Earth Summit.

From its inception, the CSD was highly participatory in structure and outlook, by engaging in its formal proceedings a wide range of official stakeholders and partners through innovative formulae.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora

South Africa was a founding member of the CITES Treaty, which was adopted on 3 March 1973, but only came into force on 1 July 1975.

Signed by 149 countries, CITES is an international agreement between governments to protect endangered species against over-exploitation through regulations regarding imports and exports and in some cases prohibiting trade.

CITES was drafted as a result of a resolution adopted in 1963 at a meeting of members of the IUCN. CITES accords varying degrees of protection to more than 30 000 animals and plant species, whether they are traded as live specimens, fur coats or dried herbs.

The DEA, SANBI, the Scientific Authority and provincial authorities are working together to ensure full compliance with decisions taken at the 17th Conference of Parties to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora.

These include identifying and implementing protocols for the registration of over 1 000 facilities for breeding captive bred parrots; strengthening the monitoring of leopard populations to improve science based-decision making; and initiating a research project to understand how trade in lion bone may impact wild lion populations.

Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer

In 2017 Parties to the Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer celebrated the International Day for the Preservation of the Ozone Layer under the theme: “Caring for all life under the sun”.

The International Ozone Day is an annual event that commemorates the date of the signing the Montreal Protocol in 1987. South Africa, which became a signatory to the Montreal Protocol in 1990, has phased out CFCs, halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride.

World Summit on Sustainable Development

At the UN World Summit on Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) 2030 held in September 2015, world leaders adopted the 17 SDGs of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development. Over the next 15 years, with these new goals that universally apply to all, countries will mobilise efforts to end all forms of poverty, fight inequalities and tackle climate change, while ensuring that no one is left behind.

The SDGs build on the success of the Millennium Development Goals and aim to go further to end all forms of poverty. The new

goals are unique in that they call for action by all countries, poor, rich and middle income to promote prosperity while protecting the planet.

The 17 SDGs are as follows:

- Goal 1: End poverty in all its forms everywhere.
- Goal 2: End hunger, achieve food security and improved nutrition and promote sustainable agriculture.
- Goal 3: Ensure healthy lives and promote well-being for all at all ages.
- Goal 4: Ensure inclusive and equitable quality education and promote lifelong learning opportunities for all.
- Goal 5: Achieve gender equality and empower all women and girls.
- Goal 6: Ensure availability and sustainable management of water and sanitation for all.
- Goal 7: Ensure access to affordable, reliable, sustainable and modern energy for all.
- Goal 8: Promote sustained, inclusive and sustainable economic growth, full and productive employment and decent work for all.
- Goal 9: Build resilient infrastructure, promote inclusive and sustainable industrialisation and foster innovation.
- Goal 10: Reduce inequality within and among countries.
- Goal 11: Make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable.
- Goal 12: Ensure sustainable consumption and production patterns.
- Goal 13: Take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts.
- Goal 14: Conserve and sustainably use the oceans, seas and marine resources for sustainable development.
- Goal 15: Protect, restore and promote sustainable use of terrestrial ecosystems, sustainably manage forests, combat desertification, and halt and reverse land degradation and halt biodiversity loss.
- Goal 16: Promote peaceful and inclusive societies for sustainable development, provide access to justice for all and build effective, accountable and inclusive institutions at all levels.
- Goal 17: Strengthen the means of implementation and revitalise the Global Partnership for Sustainable Development.

UN Conference on Sustainable Development (Rio+20)

Rio+20 refers to the UN Conference on Sustainable Development that took place in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in June 2012. The meeting took place 20 years after the landmark 1992 Earth Summit in Rio, when more than 108 heads of State agreed to work together to develop national strategies to reduce carbon emissions, stabilise GHG, protect forests from destruction, and pay for their share of the damage caused to the Earth through pollution.

At the Rio+20 talks 50 of the 193 member states of the UN launched new energy strategies, and private investors pledged more than US$50 billion to carry out the goal of doubling the share of global renewable energy and the rate of energy efficiency improvement by 2030.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Finance

National Treasury's legislative mandate is based on the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which calls for the establishment of a national treasury to ensure transparency, accountability and sound financial controls in the management of the country's public finances.

This role is further elaborated in the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999). The department is mandated to:

- promote national Government's fiscal policy and the coordination of its macroeconomic policy;
- ensure the stability and soundness of the financial system and financial services;
- coordinate intergovernmental financial and fiscal relations;
- manage the budget preparation process; and
- enforce transparency and effective management in respect of revenue and expenditure, assets and liabilities, public entities, and constitutional institutions.

The Medium Term Budget Policy Statemтent (MTBPS) is a government policy document that communicates to Parliament and the country the economic context in which the forthcoming budget will be presented, along with fiscal policy objectives and spending priorities over the relevant three-year expenditure period.

The MTBPS is an important part of South Africa's open and accountable budget process. It empowers Parliament to discuss and shape government's approach to the budget. The Money Bills Amendment Procedure and Related Matters Act, 2009 (Act 9 of 2009) requires Government to table the MTBPS in Parliament at least three months before the National Budget is presented.

The National Development Plan (NDP) charts a growth trajectory to reduce poverty and inequality, and envisions a country in which citizens have the capabilities required to access available opportunities equitably.

These capabilities include education and skills, decent accommodation, nutrition, safe communities, social security and transport, facilitated by a capable State and a growing, resilient economy.

Government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) directs it to invest in infrastructure development, create jobs, transform South Africa to a low-carbon economy and bring about social transformation and unity. In the current tight fiscal environment, National Treasury will continue to channel resources towards the critical outcomes of the NDP and the MTSF.

The global economic crisis has caused a deceleration in economic growth, and South Africa's low gross domestic product (GDP) continues to place the fiscus under considerable pressure. This compels National Treasury to be vigilant in managing competing demands on public funds.

Following a difficult year for the economy and the fiscus, a sense of optimism has taken hold in the opening months of 2018. The economy has grown faster than projected at the time of the October 2017 MTBPS. Government is beginning to address the problems that have eroded domestic confidence, such as corruption and poor governance at several state-owned companies. The promise of improved political and policy certainty has provided a boost to investment and the rand.

The 2018 Budget outlines a series of measures to rebuild economic confidence and return the public finances to a sustainable path. The proposals build on government's renewed commitment to effective policy implementation, good governance and inclusive development.

In partnership with business and labour, government intends to set South Africa on a new path of growth, development and transformation.

The 2018 Budget further accelerates government's efforts to narrow the budget deficit and stabilise debt, laying the foundation for faster growth in the years ahead. It sets out a series of proposals to bolster the public finances by raising taxes and adjusting expenditure – decisions that involve difficult trade-offs.

Despite these positive signs, significant risks remain to economic and fiscal projections. Government is working to boost economic growth, promote more rapid investment to create employment, and stabilise the precarious finances of state-owned companies.

Entities

A total of 16 entities report to the Minister of Finance through governance arrangements that give them autonomy but also enable them to align their strategies with government policy.

Nine of these entities receive transfers from National Treasury. The remaining seven are self-funded and generate their own revenue. Each entity develops and reports on its own strategic and corporate plan.

Entities receiving transfers:

- Accounting Standards Board
- Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC)
- Government Technical Advisory Centre
- Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors
- Office of the Ombud for Financial Service Providers
- Office of the Pension Funds Adjudicator
- South African Revenue Service (SARS)
- Co-operative Banks Development Agency (CBDA)
- Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC).

Entities not receiving transfers:

- Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA).
- Financial Services Board (FSB).
- Government Pensions Administration Agency.
- Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa.
- Public Investment Corporation (PIC) Limited
- Sasria Limited
- South African Airways (SAA).

Funding the contribution to the New Development Bank (NDB)

In 2015, government proposed to use R2 billion from its sale of Vodacom shares for South Africa's initial capital contribution to the NDB.

The share sale was expected to yield total receipts of R25,4 billion, of which R23 billion has been provided to recapitalise Eskom.

The purpose of the NDB is to mobilise resources for infrastructure and sustainable development projects in BRICS (Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa) and other emerging markets and developing countries. The bank's headquarters are in Shanghai and the first regional office was established in

Johannesburg in August 2017.

The initial authorized capital of the bank is US$100 billion, and the initial subscribed capital is $50 billion – 20% paid-in shares (US$10 billion) and 80% callable shares (US$40 billion).

BRICS countries are the founding and only members of the bank, each with a shareholding of US$2 billion and equal voting power. In time the bank would be open to all members of the United Nations.

Jobs Fund

The objective of the Jobs Fund, which was launched in June 2011, is to co-finance projects by public, private and non-governmental organisations that will significantly contribute to job creation.

This involves the use of public money to catalyse innovation and investment on behalf of a range of economic stakeholders in activities that contribute directly to enhanced employment creation in South Africa.

To address the challenge of unemployment, South Africa requires high rates of sustained economic growth. The country's macro-economic policy environment, infrastructure asset base, schooling system and regulatory frameworks are all key to growth. However, improving and reforming these factors is a long-term process.

The Jobs Fund does not intend to tackle these long-term, structural causes of low growth and unemployment on its own.

Numerous government initiatives are already tasked with parts of that challenge. Nor does the Jobs Fund aim to replicate or substitute these initiatives; rather it presents an opportunity to complement them.

These funding interventions will seek to overcome some of the barriers to job creation that have been identified. Some of these relate to demand for labour, some to the supply of labour and some to the broader institutional environment.

The Jobs Fund has been designed specifically to overcome these barriers by providing public funding through four "funding windows" – Enterprise Development; Infrastructure Investment; Support for Work Seekers and Institutional Capacity Building.

Within the four identified broad windows, the Jobs Fund seeks to stimulate good ideas, risk-taking and investment to discover new ways of working, where the costs and risks may be unknown, and where the pro-poor impact, principally in the form of sustainable job creation, may be significantly larger than with conventional approaches.

At its core, the Jobs Fund seeks to operate as a catalyst for innovation and investment in activities which directly contribute to sustainable job creation initiatives, as well as long term employment creation.

By mid-2018, the Jobs Fund had a portfolio of 127 approved projects with a total allocation of R6.8 billion in grant funds. These projects will potentially leverage an additional R9.7 billion from its partners to create 229 610 permanent jobs.

Budget framework

Consolidated government expenditure, which includes the main budget, social security funds and public entities (but not state-owned companies) is set to grow at 7,6% per year, reaching R1,94 trillion in 2020/21.

National Treasury projects real GDP growth of 1,5% in 2018, 1,8% in 2019 and 2,1% in 2020. The growth forecast has improved by an average of 0,4 percentage points since the 2017 MTBPS, but remains lower than projected in the 2017 Budget.

The global economy continues to provide a supportive environment for expanded trade and investment.

Following a difficult year for the economy and the fiscus, a sense of optimism has taken hold in the opening months of 2018. The economy has grown faster than projected at the time of the October 2017 MTBPS.

Government is beginning to address the problems that have eroded domestic confidence, such as corruption and poor governance at several state-owned companies. The promise of improved political and policy certainty has provided a boost to investment and the rand. In combination with the improved growth outlook, the 2018 budget proposals will result in a considerably narrower budget deficit than was presented in October 2017, and a clear path to debt stabilisation.

Despite these positive signs, significant risks remain to economic and fiscal projections. Government is working to boost economic growth, promote more rapid investment to create employment, and stabilise the precarious finances of state-owned companies.

At the time of the 2017 MTBPS, gross national debt was projected to breach 60% of GDP in 2021/22, and continue rising thereafter. This projection reflected major revenue shortfalls, anaemic economic growth and a limited policy response. The outlook also represented a major departure from the 2017 Budget figures, which showed the debt-to-GDP ratio declining from 2018/19 onwards.

In the 2018 Budget, the combination of higher GDP growth, a narrower deficit, a stronger currency and lower borrowing rates results in an improved debt-to-GDP outlook, with debt stabilising at 56,2 % of GDP in 2022/23.

Short term confidence-boosting measures

In July 2017, Cabinet announced steps to restore the sustainability of fiscal policy, promote transformation by implementing sector reforms, manage risks associated with state-owned entities and create policy certainty. Progress to date is as follows:

- A new board and acting chief executive officer have been appointed at Eskom. The Minister of Energy has instructed Eskom to conclude all power-purchase agreements with independent power producers.
- The Budget Facility on Infrastructure received 64 large infrastructure project submissions. Of these, 38 projects that met submission requirements were assessed.
- Government is working to ensure that the public-service wage agreement does not disrupt compensation ceilings.
- A Public Procurement Bill will be presented to Cabinet in 2018.
- The Financial Sector Regulation Act, signed into law in August 2017, aligns South Africa with global best practice. It creates prudential and market conduct authorities and gives the South African Reserve Bank a financial stability mandate.
- The Financial Sector Codes have been gazetted.
- The Insurance Act, signed into law in November 2017, strengthens the insurance market through higher prudential standards, makes the industry more accessible to new entrants and aligns the sector with international standards.
- Work has been completed on a fund to benefit small and

medium enterprises, with a particular focus on start-ups.
- Government granted SAA R10 billion to settle its short-term debt obligations. A new board, chief executive officer and restructuring officer have been appointed. A turnaround strategy is being implemented.
- Cabinet has approved a private-sector participation framework for state-owned companies.
- The Council for Scientific and Industrial Research completed a study on spectrum availability and open access.
- The Competition Commission's market inquiry to investigate data prices will be complete by end of August 2018.
- Draft legislation is being prepared to allow Postbank to apply for a banking licence. National Treasury and the Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services have met the Banking Registrar to discuss a Postbank structure.

Medium Term Strategic Framework 2014 – 2019

The MTSF is structured around 14 priority outcomes, covering the focus areas identified in the NDP, namely:
- Quality basic education.
- A long and healthy life for all South Africans.
- Safety, and sense of safety, for all people in South Africa
- Decent employment through inclusive growth.
- A skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path.
- An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network.
- Vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all.
- Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life.
- A comprehensive, responsive and sustainable social protection system.
- Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government.
- Protected and enhanced environmental assets and natural resources.
- An efficient, effective and development-oriented public service.
- A diverse, socially cohesive society with a common national identity.
- A better South Africa contributing to a better Africa and a better world.

Sustaining social progress

Creating work and improving education to eliminate poverty and build a more equitable society are at the heart of the long-term reforms set out in the NDP.

Yet despite continuing economic and social hardship, the lives of millions of South Africans have improved markedly over the past decade.

Access to social infrastructure – formal housing, potable water, sanitation and electricity – has increased substantially. Social grants continue to make a meaningful contribution to reducing extreme poverty.

Enrolments in early childhood development and post-school education continue to expand.

Government is working to increase life expectancy to at least 70 years by 2030 through interventions such as the continued expansion of antiretroviral therapy and implementing national health insurance.

Child mortality has been halved over the past decade, and there has been a substantial reduction in cases of severe malnutrition among children.

These achievements were made possible by Government's sustainable approach to allocating public funds. Good fiscal planning supports Government's ability to act on its constitutional mandate to realise fundamental social and economic rights in a progressive and affordable manner.

Over the past decade, public spending has doubled in real terms, funding a large expansion of social and capital budgets.

The proposed medium-term fiscal framework was expected to enable Government to continue supporting social and economic development in a weak economic environment.

Economic development

Government support through the budget for economic development is wide-ranging, as it seeks to diversify growth and broaden participation.Innovation and technology changes are at the heart of this development strategy. South African science and technology also continues to benefit from the country's leading role in the Square Kilometre Array astronomy partnership, which will spend approximately R2,1 billion over the next three years.

Some R2,7 billion has been allocated over the medium term under the Mineral Policy and Promotion programme to promote investment in mining and petroleum beneficiation projects.

A total of R108 million was allocated for research and regulatory requirements for licensing shale gas exploration and hydraulic fracturing.

Government continues to strengthen support for agricultural development and trade. The projected conditional allocation to provinces over the medium term is R7 billion. Access to finance by emerging farmers would be expanded, in collaboration with the Land Bank.

Since the inception of the recapitalisation and development programme in 2008, some 1 459 farms have been supported and 4,3 million hectares acquired for redistribution.

A further 1,2 million hectares would be acquired over the next three years, and R4,7 billion is allocated for recapitalisation and development of farms.

In April 2018, President Cyril Ramaphosa appointed special snvoys on Investment to spearhead an investment drive with a target of US$100 billion over the next five years.

The appointment of the investment envoy was in line with the commitment made the President during his maiden State of the Nation Adress (SoNA) in February 2018 to increase investment and boost the country's economy.

By mid-2018, in a bid to cut the red tape and attract investors, work was underway to rationalise and streamline investment regulations, and reduce the cost of establishing and running businesses.

The government aims to increase investment in manufacturing and related sectors through the more effective use of industrial incentives, Special Economic Zones and local procurement requirements.

The inaugural South Africa Investment Conference was held at the Sandton Convention Centre from 25 to 27 October 2018 under the theme: "Accelerating Growth by Building

Partnerships".

The conference, which was first announced by President Ramaphosa in his 2018 SoNA, aims to mobilise R1.2 trillion in new investments over the next five years.

International Development and Cooperation

The International Development Cooperation (IDC) unit is responsible for coordinating, mobilising and managing official development assistance (ODA). The IDC enhanced ODA coordination through continuous engagements with development partners on various platforms, including annual consultations, high-level bilateral meetings and official visits.

Within government departments, the IDC has enhanced coordination by organising national and provincial ODA coordinators' forums, and has facilitated greater accountability and transparency by reporting on ODA programmes to the budget-allocation decision-making process.

Through a series of community practice sessions and manuals, the unit has also developed capacity within line departments to report on and manage ODA programmes.

Combating corruption

Prevention of fraud and corruption remains high on the agenda of National Treasury. The establishment of an anti-corruption database which will improve fraud profiling and proactively reduce the risk of fraud has further enhanced the unit's functionality.

National Treasury uses a two-step approach to vet its employees, which forms part of prevention of fraud and corruption. All candidates who attend interviews are pre-screened, followed by a full vetting process.

The recent revelations about various instances of collusion between auditors and auditees as well as general lapses have tarnished the image of auditors in general and cast a bad light on the whole profession. To address this challenge, the Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors is working with the office of the Accountant General, housed within National Treasury, to amend the Audit Professions Act, 2005 (Act 26 of 2005) to restore the credibility of and public trust in the audit profession.

The amendments include strengthening sanctions in line with international best practice, strengthening the regulatory board's powers in its investigations process, and reducing the complexity of disciplinary hearings ensure a swift, fair and due process.

Improving government services

Public procurement reforms

In 2018, government budgeted about R938 billion for goo Development of Bank of Southern Africa ds, services and infrastructure across national, provincial and local spheres of government, including public entities and State-owned Enterprises. Initiatives led by the Office of the Chief Procurement Officer aim to deliver lower-cost goods and services more efficiently and transparently through streamlined processes, strategic sourcing, transversal tenders and improved use of technology. The goal is to reduce bureaucratic inertia and red tape, and stamp out corrupt procurement practices.

Central Supplier Database (CSD)

The CSD has been in operation since September 2015. At the end of February 2018, more than 648 000 users had already registered on the site, with 461 000 suppliers successfully registered.

This is expected to reduce the administrative and cost burden of procurement, as the requisite documents will only need to be submitted once for a predetermined period.

eTender portal

The portal provides a single point of entry to identify business opportunities with government. Between April 2015 and February 2018, more than 35 000 tenders worth about R50 billion per annum were posted onto the portal.

Vulekamali portal

In an effort to ensure that its services are accessible to the broader South African society, National Treasury launched an online portal that will make information on the country's budget more accessible to ordinary South Africans. The portal called Vulekamali presents information in a simplified format and shows citizens how public resources are generated and used.

The portal will enable the public to make their inputs, not only in influencing government policy directive as articulated through the budget but also having access to the budget process and the information contained in the budget.

The portal, which was launched in February 2018, is a private-public partnership between Imaliyethu and National Treasury. It will be a good platform for young South Africans, especially the academia, to access budgeting information to help them gain critical insights.

Reviewing the incentives programme

Government provides a range of direct support to business. For example, the Clothing and Textiles Competitiveness Programme has helped to stabilise the sector.

The Manufacturing Competitiveness Enhancement Programme has approved projects worth about R28 billion, supporting an estimated 200 000 jobs. The Automotive Production and Development Programme has contributed to increased exports.

Given increased pressures on the fiscus, these incentives, including direct transfers, tax and tariff rebates and concessional financing are being reviewed. The review is intended to assess performance, determine value for money, and analyse how the system as a whole supports the economy and job creation. The review was expected to be completed by October 2017.

Building a platform for collective action

To promote a faster-growing, more inclusive economy, government has strengthened its active collaboration with business, trade unions and civil society to restore confidence and reduce constraints to growth. The Presidential Business Working Group and the CEO Initiative are generating targeted support for the economy.

Initiatives include a R1,5 billion fund to support small firms with the ability to scale up and create jobs, and a private-sector programme to create one million internships over a three-year period, focused on improving the job-readiness of young work seekers. To complement these efforts, government will

strengthen its agencies that support small business.

Government continues talks with business and labour to reduce workplace conflict and protracted strikes. An independent panel has been established to support work on a national minimum wage.

Government has proposed to extend the employment tax incentive and the learnership allowance, and will continue to monitor the impact of these incentives.

Legislation and policies

- The PFMA of 1999 ensures that public funds are managed by a less rigid environment for financial management, with a stronger emphasis on the prudent use of tate resources, improved reporting requirements and the use of management information to enhance accountability.
- The Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003) applies to all municipalities and municipal entities, and national and provincial organs of State, to the extent of their financial dealings with municipalities.
- The Co-Operative Banks Act, 2007 (Act 40 of 2007) provides for the establishment of the CBDA as a public entity under the executive authority of the Minister of Finance.
- The South African Reserve Bank (SARB) Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989)
- The Division of Revenue Act, 2012 (Act 5 of 2012).
- The Appropriation Act, 2012 (Act 7 of 2012).
- The Rates and Monetary Amounts and Amendment of Revenue Laws Act, 2012 (Act 13 of 2012).
- The Adjustments Appropriation Act, 2012 (Act 17 of 2012).
- The Division of Revenue Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 18 of 2012).
- The Financial Markets Act, 2012 (Act 19 of 2012).
- Tax Administration Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 21 of 2012).
- Taxation Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 22 of 2012).
- The Credit Rating Services Act, 2012 (Act 24 of 2012).
- The DBSA Act, 1997 (Act 13 of 1997).
- The Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002).
- The FSB Act, 1990 (Act 97 of 1990).
- The Financial Advisory and Intermediaries (FAIS) Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002).
- The FIC Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001).
- The PIC Act, 2004 (Act 23 of 2004).
- The SARS Act, 1997 (Act 34 of 1997).
- The Tax Administration Act, 2011 (Act 28 of 2011)
- The Lotteries Act, 1997 (Act 57 of 1997).
- The National Gambling Act, 2004 (Act 7 of 2004).
- The Lotteries Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 32 of 2013).
- The National Credit Act (NCA), 2005 (Act 34 of 2005).

Financial institutions

Financial Intelligence Centre

The FIC is South Africa's national centre for the receipt of financial data, analysis and dissemination of financial intelligence to the competent authorities. The FIC was established by the FIC Act (FICA), 2001(Act 38 of 2001) and has the mandate to identify the proceeds of crime, combat money laundering and terror financing. It does this by seeking to:

- supervise and enforce compliance with the FIC Act of 2001
- facilitate effective supervision and enforcement by supervisory bodies
- receive financial data from accountable and reporting institutions
- share information with law enforcement authorities, intelligence services, the SARS, international counterparts and supervisory bodies
- formulate policy regarding money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- provide policy advice to the Minister of Finance
- uphold the international obligations and commitments required by the country in respect of anti-money laundering and combating financing of terrorism (AML/CFT).

The FIC Act of 2001 introduces a regulatory framework of measures requiring certain categories of business to take steps regarding client identification, record-keeping, reporting of information and internal compliance structures. The Act obliges all businesses to report to the FIC various suspicious and certain other transactions.

The FIC uses this financial data and available data to develop financial intelligence, which it is able to make available to the competent authorities and supervisory bodies for follow-up investigations or administrative action.

All accountable and reporting institutions are required to register with the FIC. The FIC and supervisory bodies have the authority to inspect and impose administrative penalties on non-compliant businesses. The Act also introduced an appeal process and an appeal board.

South Africa is a member of the Financial Action Task Force, an international body that sets standards and policy on AML/CFT. In addition, it is also a member of the Eastern and Southern Africa Anti-Money Laundering Group, a regional body of the FATF which aims to support countries in the region to implement the global AML/CFT standards.

The FIC is a member of the Egmont Group, which is made up of financial intelligence units from 153 countries. The primary aim of the organisation is to facilitate cooperation and sharing of financial intelligence information among its members.

Financial and Fiscal Commission

The FFC is an independent, objective, impartial and unbiased constitutional institution.

It is a permanent expert commission with a constitutionally defined structure, a set of generic responsibilities and institutional processes.

The FFC submits recommendations and advice to all spheres of Government, based on research and consultations on a range of intergovernmental fiscal issues.

The research includes:

- developing principles for intergovernmental fiscal relations, based on analysis of international best practice
- analysing local, provincial and national government budgets to understand revenue and expenditure trends
- identifying and measuring factors influencing provincial and local revenues and expenditures
- assessing fiscal policy instruments, such as conditional grants, equitable share transfers and taxes.

The Constitution and other legislation requires government to consult with the FFC on issues such as provincial and local government revenue sources, and provincial and municipal

loans. Consultation about the fiscal implications of assigning functions from one sphere of government to another is also required.

Public Investment Corporation

The PIC is a state-owned asset management firm that invests across various sectors of the economy. PIC's clients are mostly public sector entities. It has exposure to such asset classes as listed equities, bonds, real estate, private equity and developmental investments. Majority of its investments are in South Africa but now has the mandate to invest in the rest of the African continent and globally.

Established in 1911 as Public Debt Commissioners, the PIC became corporatised on 1 April 2005, following the promulgation of the PIC Act of 2004.

As a financial services provider, registered with the FSB, the PIC's investment activities are governed FAIS Act of 2002.

In terms of financial management and accountability, the PIC is regulated by the PIC Act of 2004, PFMA of 1999, the Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008), the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998) and also adheres to the provisions of FICA of 2001.

PIC clients include the Government Employees Pension Fund, Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF), Associated Institutions Pension Fund, Compensation Commissioner: Pension Fund and Compensation Commissioner Fund.

The PIC's objective focus is to invest for inclusive growth, for the benefit of all its stakeholders.

It is one of the largest investment managers in Africa, managing assets worth more than R1,9 trillion.

South African Revenue Service

SARS is the nation's tax collecting authority established in terms of the South African Revenue Service Act 34 of 1997 as an autonomous agency. It is responsible for administering the South African tax system and customs service.

SARS's outcomes are:

- Increased Customs and Excise compliance
- Increased tax compliance
- Increased ease and fairness of doing business with SARS
- Increased Cost effectiveness and Internal Efficiencies
- Increased public trust and credibility.

SARS's mandate is to:

- collect all revenues due
- ensure optimal compliance with Tax, Customs and Excise legislation
- provide a customs and excise service that will facilitate legitimate trade as well as protect our economy and society

SARS is driven by the aspiration to contribute directly to the economic and social development of the country by collecting the revenue due to enable government to deliver on its constitutional obligations, policy and delivery priorities in pursuance of better life for all in South Africa.

By encouraging tax and customs compliance, SARS also aspires to contribute to the building of fiscal citizenship reflected by a law abiding society.

Tax administration

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues that arise in local, provincial and national government. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil their revenue-raising function and policy objectives. These tax instruments must be aligned to the goals of Government's economic and social policy.

A single, modern framework for the common administrative provisions of various tax acts administered by SARS, excluding customs and excise, was established by the Tax Administration Act of 2011. The Act simplifies and provides greater coherence in South African tax administration law. It eliminates duplication, removes redundant requirements and aligns disparate requirements that previously existed in different tax acts administered by SARS.

The Act provides for common procedures across the various tax acts, and strives for an appropriate balance between the rights and obligations of SARS and the rights and obligations of taxpayers in a transparent relationship.

Office of the Tax Ombud

In terms of the Tax Administration Act of 2011, the Minister of Finance appointed South Africa's first Tax Ombud on 1 October 2013. The Office of the Tax Ombud is intended to provide taxpayers with an impartial and low-cost mechanism to address service, procedural or administrative difficulties that taxpayers have not been able to resolve through SARS's complaints management channels.

South African tax system

South Africa has a residence-based income tax system. Residents are, subject to certain exclusions, taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source.

The liability of taxpayers is determined subject to the provisions of International Agreements for the Avoidance of Double Taxation. Tax is levied on taxable income, which is calculated as gross income, less exemptions and permissible deductions, plus the applicable percentage of the net capital gain, for the year.

The main tax revenue sources are Income tax (individuals, trusts and companies), Value-Added Tax (VAT), as well as customs and excise duties. Relief is often available from any consumption-based tax when the goods are exported under certain terms and conditions.

Taxes on income and profits

This is the largest category of tax revenue and accounted for 58.1% of total tax revenue in 2016/17. This category comprises taxes on persons and Individuals; taxes on companies ((both inclusive of Capital Gains tax (CGT) and withholding tax on royalties)); interest on overdue income tax; Dividends tax (DT); small business tax amnesty proceeds and withholding tax on interest which was introduced in March 2015.

Personal income tax (PIT)

PIT is South Africa's largest source of tax revenue and contributed 37.2% of total tax revenue collections in 2016/17. PIT is a tax levied on the taxable income of individuals and trusts.

It is determined for a specific year of assessment. Taxable capital gains form part of taxable income. The main contributor

to PIT is employment income from salary earners and income generated from sole-proprietor activities.

The tax rate applicable to PIT-related taxable income is progressive, ranging from marginal rates of 18% to 45% for 2017/18 onward.

As a means of collecting PIT from salary and wage income, a mechanism known as Pay-As-You-Earn (PAYE) is in operation that enables employers to withhold tax due to SARS from employees and pay this over to SARS monthly and reconciled biannually.

Company Income Tax (CIT)

CIT is a tax levied on the taxable income of companies and close corporations. After PIT and VAT, CIT has been the largest contributor to total tax revenue for the past decade.

Although the current headline CIT rate is 28%, some sectors of the economy have different effective tax rates due to sector-specific tax dispensations and deductions.

Exceptions to the rule are the lower, progressive tax rates that apply to small and micro-enterprises, as well as the reduced rate that applies to companies operating in designated special economic zones.

Dividends tax

Dividends tax is a final tax at a rate of 20% from 22 February 2017 on dividends paid by resident companies and by non-resident companies in respect of shares listed on the JSE. Dividends are tax exempt if the beneficial owner of the dividend is a South African company, retirement fund or other exempt person.

Non-resident beneficial owners of dividends may benefit from reduced tax rates in limited circumstances. The tax is to be withheld by companies paying the taxable dividends or by regulated intermediaries in the case of dividends on listed shares.

The tax on dividends in kind (other than in cash) is payable and is borne by the company that declares and pays the dividend

Taxes on payroll and workforce

Taxes on payroll and workforce comprise the Skills Development Levy (SDL) and the UIF.

Skills-development levy

Affected employers contribute to a Skills Development Fund that is used for employee training and skills development.

This SDL is payable by employers at a rate of 1% of the total remuneration paid to employees.

Employers paying annual remuneration of less than R500 000 are exempt from the payment of this levy.

Unemployment Insurance Fund

The UIF insures employees against the loss of earnings due to termination of employment, illness or maternity leave.

The contribution to the UIF is shared equally by affected employers and employees at a rate of 1% of remuneration each. The employee share of 1% is withheld by the employer and paid to SARS, together with the employer share of 1%, monthly.

Taxes on property

Taxes on property comprise Donations tax, Estate Duty, Securities Transfer Tax (STT) and transfer duties.

Donations tax

Donations tax is levied at a rate of 25% on the value of the donation. An annual exemption of R100 000 is available to natural persons.

Estate duty

Estate duty is levied at a flat rate of 25% on the dutiable amount of the deceased estate. Specific deductions and abatements are allowed from the total value of the estate.

Securities Transfer Tax

STT is levied at a rate of 0,25% on the transfer of listed or unlisted securities. Securities consist of shares in companies or members' interests in close corporations.

Transfer duty

Transfer duty is the largest source of revenue in this category. It is levied on the acquisition of property at a progressive rate for all persons including companies, close corporations and trusts.

From 1 March 2016, a marginal rate of 13% applies to the portion of the value of property exceeding R10.0 million.

Domestic taxes on goods and services

Domestic taxes on goods and services comprise VAT, specific excise duties, ad valorem excise duties, fuel levy, Road Accident Fund (RAF) levy, environmental levies and health promotion levy. VAT is the largest source of revenue in this category with a share of 71,8% in 2017/18.

Value-added Tax

VAT is levied at a rate of 15% on goods and services with some exemptions and zero-ratings, and is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. The quoted or displayed price of goods and services must be VAT-inclusive.

A person who supplies goods or services is liable to register for VAT, if the income earned is more than R1 million in a 12-month period, or when there is a reasonable expectation that the income will exceed this amount.

A person can also register voluntarily for VAT, if the income earned from supplying goods or services for 12 months exceeded R50 000.

Excise duties

Excise duties are levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents. Specific excise duties are levied on tobacco and liquor products. Ad valorem excise duties are levied on products such as motor vehicles, cellular telephones, electronics and cosmetics.

Fuel taxes

The fuel levy is imposed on petrol and diesel (including biodiesel) manufactured in or imported into South Africa. The fuel levy is not earmarked, but it implicitly increases the cost of road transport to encourage more efficient and sustainable road use. The fuel levy was increased to R337/litre for petrol and R3.22/litre for diesel from April 2017.

The RAF levy is imposed on petrol and diesel manufactured in or imported into South Africa. The RAF levy funds the RAF's motor vehicle accident insurance scheme. It was increased to

R1.93/litre for both petrol and diesel from April 2017.

Environmental levies

Environmental levies are imposed on plastic bags, electricity generated, electric filament lamps, carbon dioxide (CO2) emissions of motor vehicles and tyres.

Plastic bag levy

The plastic bag levy was introduced to reduce litter and encourage plastic bag reuse. It was increased to 8 cents per bag as from April 2016.

Electricity generation levy

The electricity generation levy was Introduced to encourage sustainable electricity generation and use. The levy is applied to electricity generated from non-renewable sources and was increased in 2012 to 3,5 cents per kWh.

Additional revenue generated by this levy is now used to fund energy-efficiency initiatives such as the solar-water heater programme.

Electric filament lamp levy

The electric filament lamp levy was introduced to promote energy efficiency by discouraging the use of incandescent light bulbs. The levy increased on 1 April 2018.

CO2 motor vehicle emissions levy

The CO2 motor vehicle emissions levy on passenger and double-cab vehicles was introduced to encourage the manufacture and purchase of more energy efficient motor vehicles. The rate was increased on 1 April 2018.

Tyre levy

The tyre levy on new pneumatic tyres was introduced to encourage efficient tyre use. Although the tyre levy is not earmarked, it indirectly supports the responsible recycling of obsolete tyres. The levy was implemented in 2017 at a rate of R2,30/kg.

Health promotion levy

The sugary beverages levy took effect on 1 April 2018 at a rate of 2,1 cent/gram of the sugar content that exceeds 4g/100 ml.

The levy applies to specific sugary drinks and concentrates used in the manufacture of sugary drinks to combat obesity and promote healthier consumer beverage choices.

Taxes on international trade and transactions

Taxes on international trade and transactions comprise import related taxes and export duties. Import duties are levies imposed on goods imported into South Africa and are intended to protect local producers.

This category also includes miscellaneous customs and excise receipts that have not yet been allocated to the appropriate import tax types as revenue income from smaller categories under this section. Also allocated in this category is the Diamond Export Levy which was imposed to stimulate the local diamond polishing Industry.

Customs duty

Customs duties are imposed by the Customs and Excise Act. Customs duty is a tax levied on goods imported and collected by the customs unit within SARS. Customs duty rates and trade remedies relating to the importation of goods into South Africa are set by the International Trade Administration Commission under the authority of the Department of Trade and Industry.

The Customs Control Act, 2014 (Act 31 of 2014) and Customs Duty Act, 2014 ((Act 30 of 2014) were promulgated in July 2014 to provide a platform for the modernisation of customs administration that achieves a balance between effective customs control, the secure movement of goods and people into and from the Republic and the facilitation of trade and tourism. The new Acts will come into operation on a date to be determined by the President.

In addition, VAT is also collected on goods imported and cleared for home consumption.

Other taxes

Rates on property

Property-related taxes include municipal rates and charges for refuse and sewerage which are collected by municipalities.

Southern African Customs Union (SACU)

Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa, and Swaziland are signatories to the SACU Agreement. They apply similar customs and excise legislation and the same rates of customs and excise duties on imported and locally manufactured goods.

Applying uniform tariffs and harmonising procedures simplifies trade within the SACU area by enabling the free movement of goods for customs purposes.

However, all other national restrictive measures such as import and export control, sanitary and phytosanitary requirements and domestic taxes apply to goods moved between member states.

The 2002 SACU Agreement is in force and provides a dispensation for calculating and effecting transfers based on customs, excise and a development component of the Revenue-Sharing Formula.

The SACU heads of state and government endorsed an ambitious SACU regional trade facilitation programme that is focused on creating common information technology platforms to allow:

- interconnectivity
- enforcement strategies to be harmonised to curb illicit trade
- improved border efficiencies to facilitate seamless trade.

Compliance levels

Registration compliance

SARS continues to broaden the tax base and expand its taxpayer and trader register. Contributing positively to the ease of registration are bulk registrations at places of employment and an online facility to register staff when submitting their monthly PAYE returns.

In 2016/17 automatic merging of almost 1,5 million tax and customs products was done for more than 650 000 unique taxpayers. This single taxpayer profile view greatly improved the quality of information SARS holds about each taxpayer and will facilitate an improved and tailored service offering. Registration compliance improved with 6% in the 2016/17 financial year.

SARS continues to broaden the tax base and expand its taxpayer and trader register. It stipulates that all individuals who are formally employed must register with SARS and not, as in

the past, only those individuals above the tax threshold.

Measures implemented by SARS to increase registration compliance include the introduction of bulk registration at places of employment and the launch of an online facility that enables employers to register staff when submitting their monthly PAYE returns. A compliance level of more than 99% has been achieved among individuals required to register for PIT.

PIT filing compliance

PIT filing compliance is calculated by comparing the total number of returns received on time for a particular filing season (From 1 July to end November when taxpayers must submit income tax returns) with the expected total number of returns for the same filing season.

Voluntary Disclosure Programme

A permanent VDP was introduced in terms of the Tax Administration Act of 2011, in October 2012. The permanent VDP is part of a package of compliance measures aimed at encouraging non-compliant taxpayers to regularise their tax affairs.

In addition, the Minister of Finance announced a Special VDP for non-compliant taxpayers to voluntarily disclose offshore assets and income. The SVDP was introduced ahead of the first annual automatic exchange of third party information between more than 90 jurisdictions in September 2017. The SVDP was available for a limited window period – from 1 October 2016 to 31 August 2017.

International tax treaties

In 2014, the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), working with G20 countries, developed the Standard for Automatic Exchange of Financial Account Information in Tax Matters (the Standard) also known as the OECD's Common Reporting Standard (CRS).

The Standard requires the reporting to tax authorities by financial institutions of information in relation to financial accounts they hold for non-resident taxpayers. This information is then automatically exchanged between tax authorities each year in order to tackle cross-border tax evasion.

South Africa is an early adopter of the Automatic Exchange of Information which includes both the initiative stemming from South Africa signing an Inter-Governmental Agreement with the US Internal Revenue Service (on their Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act as well as the CRS.

National Gambling Board (NGB)

The NGB is governed by the National Gambling Act of 2004. The Act makes provision for the coordination of concurrent national and provincial legislative competence over matters relating to casinos, racing, gambling and wagering; and provides for the regulation and development of uniform norms and standards.

The NGB maintains a national gambling database that contains information on national gambling statistics such as turnover, gross gambling revenue, gambling taxes and levies, as well as returns to players and punters.

Provincial licensing authorities are required to submit statistics to the NGB quarterly for consolidation and reporting on the national status.

Responsible gambling

The NGB has a legislated responsibility to educate the public about gambling and the negative socio-economic impact of the gambling industry on society.

The National Responsible Gambling Programme (NRGP) integrates research and monitoring, public education and awareness, training, treatment and counselling.

The NRGP is managed by the South African Responsible Gambling Foundation. The main thrust of the NRGP's prevention programme is to educate gamblers, potential gamblers and society as a whole about responsible gambling.

The NRGP has various operational components, such as public awareness and prevention, the toll-free counselling line, a countrywide treatment network for outpatient counselling and therapy, research and monitoring initiatives, training for regulators and industry employees, a crisis line service available to gambling industry employees and management, as well as the Taking Risks Wisely life-skills programme – a teaching resource for grades 7 to 12.

National Lotteries Commission (NLC)

The NLC was launched in June 2015 with the mandate to regulate the National Lottery as well as other lotteries, including society lotteries to raise funds and promotional competitions.

The NLC evolved out of the National Lotteries Board. NLC members are also trustees of the National Lottery Distribution Trust Fund (NLDTF), into which National Lottery proceeds that are intended for allocation to good causes are deposited.

The NLC does not adjudicate applications for funding or make allocations to organisations. This is done by committees known as distributing agencies which are also appointed by the Minister of Trade and Industry, in conjunction with other relevant ministers, after a process of public nomination. The NLC provides administrative support to the distributing agencies.

The NLC is mandated to:

- advise the Minister of Finance on the issuing of the license to conduct the National Lottery.
- ensure that the National Lottery and Sports Pools are conducted with all due propriety.
- ensure that the interests of every participant in the National Lottery are adequately protected.
- ensure that the net proceeds of the National Lottery are as large as possible.
- administer the NLDTF and hold it in trust.
- monitor, regulate and police lotteries incidental to exempt entertainment, private lotteries, society lotteries and any competition contemplated in Section 54 of the the Lotteries Act of 1997.
- advise the Minister on percentages of money to be allocated in terms of Section 26(3) of the the Lotteries Act of 1997.
- advise the Minister on the efficacy of legislation pertaining to lotteries and ancillary matters.
- advise the Minister on establishing and implementing a social responsibility programme in respect of lotteries.
- administer and invest the money paid to the board in accordance with the Lotteries Act of 1997.
- perform such additional duties in respect of lotteries as the Minister may assign to the board.
- make such arrangements as may be specified in the licence for the protection of prize monies and sums for distribution

- advise the Minister on any matter relating to the National Lottery and other lotteries or any other matter on which the Minister requires the advice of the Board.

Ithuba Holdings was announced as the third national lottery operator and began operations in June 2015.

Auditor-General of South Africa

The AGSA strengthens South Africa's democracy by enabling oversight, accountability and governance in the public sector through auditing, thereby building public confidence.

The AGSA is one of the Chapter 9 institutions mandated by the Constitution to fulfil certain functions. These institutions are not part of Government and do not have a duty to be part of the mechanisms of cooperative government. The independence of the AGSA is, therefore, respected and strengthened.

As mandated by the Constitution and the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act 25 of 2004), the AGSA is responsible for auditing national and provincial State departments and administrations, all municipalities and any other institution or accounting entity required by national and provincial legislation to be audited by the AGSA.

Various business units provide auditing services, corporate services and specialised audit work, such as performance audits, information system audits and audit research and development. The AGSA also has an international auditing complement.

Financial sector

South African Reserve Bank

The primary purpose of the SARB is to achieve and maintain price stability in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth in South Africa. Together with other institutions, it also plays a pivotal role in ensuring financial stability.

The SARB is the central bank of South Africa. It was established in 1921, in terms of a special Act of Parliament and the Currency and Banking Act, 1920 (Act 10 of 1920), which was the direct result of abnormal monetary and financial conditions that had arisen during and immediately after World War I.

The SARB is governed by the SARB Act of 1989, as amended. In terms of the Constitution, it has been given an important degree of autonomy in the execution of its duties.

Since its establishment, the SARB has always had private shareholders who have limited rights. It has more than 700 shareholders. Its shares are traded on the over-the-counter (OTC) share-trading facility managed by the SARB. Its operations are not motivated by a drive to return profits, but to serve the best interests of all South Africans.

The SARB's head office is in Pretoria and it has branch offices in Cape Town, Durban and Johannesburg. The bank must submit a monthly statement of its assets and liabilities to National Treasury and an annual report to Parliament. The Governor of the SARB holds regular discussions with the Minister of Finance and appears before the Parliamentary Portfolio and other select committees on finance, from time to time.

The SARB has a unique position in the economy, as it performs various functions and duties not normally carried out by commercial banks. Although the functions of the SARB have changed and expanded over time, the formulation and implementation of monetary policy has remained one of the cornerstones of its activities.

The SARB publishes monetary-policy reviews, and regular regional monetary-policy forums are held to provide a platform for discussions on monetary policy with broader stakeholders from the community.

Functions

The primary function of the SARB is to protect the value of South Africa's currency. In discharging this role, it takes responsibility for:

- ensuring that the South African money, banking and financial system as a whole is sound, meets the requirements of the community and keeps abreast of international developments
- assisting the South African Government, as well as other members of the economic community of Southern Africa, with data relevant to the formulation and implementation of macroeconomic policy
- informing the South African community and all stakeholders abroad about monetary policy and the South African economic situation.

System of accommodation

The SARB's refinancing system is the main mechanism used to implement its monetary policy.

Through its refinancing system, the SARB provides liquidity to banks, enabling them to meet their daily liquidity requirements. "Liquidity" refers to the banks' balances at the central bank, which are available to settle their transactions with one another, over and above the minimum statutory level of reserves that they have to hold.

The main instrument for managing liquidity in the money market is repurchase (repo) transactions conducted at the prevailing repo rate. The repo rate is the price at which the SARB lends cash to the banking system and is the key operational variable in the monetary-policy implementation process.

The objective of the monetary policy implementation framework is to ensure that the money market interest rates are aligned to changes in the repo rate.

The refinancing system also provides for supplementary and automated standing facilities in the end-of-day square-off to bridge the banking sector's overnight liquidity needs, as well as a concession to banks to use their cash-reserve balances with the SARB to square off their daily positions.

Creating a liquidity requirement

The underlying philosophy of the refinancing system is that the SARB has to compel banks to borrow a substantial amount (the liquidity requirement or the money-market shortage) from the SARB.

The SARB, therefore, creates a liquidity requirement (or shortage) in the money market, which it then refinances at the repo rate – a fixed interest rate determined by the Monetary Policy Committee, comprising the SARB governors and other senior officials.

After each meeting, the Monetary Policy Committee issues a statement indicating its assessment of the economy and announces policy rate changes.

To manage the day-to-day, liquidity requirement, the SARB uses other open-market operations in its liquidity management strategy.

The open-market operations refer to the selling of SARB

debentures, longer-term reverse repos, money-market swaps in foreign exchange and the movement of public-sector funds, for example, the Corporation for Public Deposits and central government funds, as well as changes in the cash-reserve requirements for banks.

These operations are conducted to neutralise or smooth the influence of exogenous factors on the liquidity position in the money market and to maintain an adequate liquidity requirement in the market, which has to be refinanced from the SARB.

Through this mechanism, the bank can exert influence over interest rates in the market.

Promoting the efficient functioning of domestic financial markets

To promote price discovery in the domestic money market, the SARB calculates the South African benchmark overnight rate on deposits (Sabor) and the average rate on funding in the forward foreign exchange market, the Overnight Foreign Exchange (FX) rate, on a daily basis, in addition to conducting surveillance on the calculation of the Johannesburg Interbank Average Rate (Jibar).

To keep the refinancing system effective, the SARB stays abreast of market and other structural developments.

In this regard, the refinancing system is currently under review, with the aim of enhancing the price transparency in the money market, and for the SARB to better monitor the interest-rate transmission.

Following the review of the rate setting of the Jibar and the subsequent Code of Conduct, additional initiatives involve the improvement and broadening of existing money-market benchmark and reference rates according to global guidelines.

The SARB also engages with other stakeholders to promote the efficient functioning of markets.

In terms of its "lender-of-last-resort", the SARB may in certain circumstances provide liquidity assistance to banks experiencing liquidity problems, for example to provide liquidity against a broader range of collateral as was the case in 2007.

The type and conditions of emergency assistance will vary according to specific conditions. Also, as part of the broader mandate of the SARB and the upcoming Financial Sector Regulations Bill, resolution planning, crisis preparedness and monitoring systemic risks in the financial sector are priority, all aimed at protecting and enhancing financial stability, as well as to deepen South Africa's resilience to external shocks.

In view of the interrelationship between price and financial system stability, the bank monitors the macro-prudential aspects of the domestic financial system. The objective of financial stability is to prevent costly disruptions in the country's financial system.

Service to government:

The SARB manages the country's official gold and foreign exchange reserves. In addition, the SARB provides portfolio management, debt issuance, and custody and settlement services to the government and other clients/counterparties, while also managing the inherent market and operational risks associated with these services.

Gold and foreign-exchange reserves:

The Bank is the custodian of the country's official gold and foreign-exchange reserves. Subsequent to the conversion of the negative net open foreign currency position in May 2003 into a positive position, foreign reserves grew until 2011 and have remained stable since then.

The accumulation and management of reserves is guided by the risk tolerance of the Bank through the Strategic Asset Allocation, which seeks to ensure capital preservation, liquidity, and return.

Banker and adviser to government as well as funding agent:

As funding agent for government, the main services provided are administering the auctions of government bonds and Treasury bills, participating in the joint standing committees between the SARB and National Treasury, and managing the flow of funds between the exchequer account and tax and loan accounts. The SARB also acts as banker to government and as such, manages the Exchequer and Paymaster General Accounts in the books of the SARB.

Administration of exchange control:

The SARB is responsible, on behalf of the Minister of Finance, for the day-to-day administration of exchange controls in South Africa.

Provision of economic and statistical services:

The bank collects, processes, interprets and publishes public information, economic statistics and other information, and uses this information in policy formulation.

Bank supervision:

The mission of the department is to promote the soundness of the banking system and contribute to financial stability.

The national payment system:

The bank is responsible for overseeing the safety and soundness of the national payment system. The main aim is to reduce interbank settlement risk, with the objective of reducing the potential of a systemic risk crisis emanating from settlement default by one or more of the settlement banks.

Banker to other banks:

The bank acts as the custodian of the cash reserves that banks are legally required to hold or prefer to hold voluntarily, with the bank.

Banknotes and coins:

The South African Mint Company, a subsidiary of the SARB, mints all coins on behalf of the SARB. The South African Bank Note Company, another subsidiary of the SARB, prints all banknotes on behalf of the SARB.

Banknotes are distributed to the commercial banks through the bank's three branches. Coins, however, are distributed by SBV. It is the responsibility of the SARB to ensure that there is an adequate supply of new banknotes available to meet peak demand, and also to replace unfit banknotes. The SARB is responsible for the quality of banknotes in circulation.

Monetary policy

The SARB is responsible for monetary policy in South Africa.

Its constitutional mandate in this regard is "to protect the value of the currency in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth in the Republic".

To give effect to this mandate, the SARB uses a flexible inflation targeting framework with a continuous target for consumer price inflation of 3-6%.

Inflation has decelerated quite steadily since the start of 2017. It fell back within the inflation target in April 2017 and as of early 2018 was close to the 4.5% midpoint of the target. This slowdown in inflation has mainly been due to a strong exchange rate recovery, supported by moderating food prices.

Inflation for services has been more stable at around 5.5%. Economic growth picked up slightly in 2017, with the economy expanding by nearly 1.0% (estimated) versus 0.3% in 2016.

This pace of growth is nonetheless well below longer term trends. The combination of slowing inflation and continued growth weakness prompted a reduction of the repo rate to 6.75% in July 2017.

However, the Monetary Policy Committee has had to proceed cautiously given both the persistence of inflation – which is expected to accelerate back towards the upper end of the target range over the medium term – and an elevated risk profile.

The banking industry

As at the end of December 2017, 34 banking institutions were registered and supervised by the Bank Supervision Department of the SARB: 19 banks and 15 local branches of international banks.

South Africa's banking sector is dominated by the five largest banks, which collectively held 90,5% (December 2016: 90,7 %) of the total banking assets as at 31 December 2017.

Local branches of international banks contributed 5,9% (December 2016: 5,8%) as at 31 December 2017. The remaining banks operating in South Africa represented 3,7% (December 2016: 3,5%) at the end of December 2017. In addition, as at the end of December 2017, three mutual banks and three cooperative banks were registered and supervised by the Bank Supervision Department of the SARB. At that date, there were also 31 authorised representative offices of international banks in South Africa:

2016	
Banks[1]	19
Mutual banks	15
Cooperative banks	3
Cooperative banks	3
Representative offices	31

Exchange rates

Following the depreciating trend during 2015, the South African rand recovered and strengthened by 14,3% against the US$ during 2016, a trend which continued in 2017 as the rand appreciated by another 10,9%.

On a trade-weighted basis, the rand improved by 18,7% in 2016 and 2,5% in 2017. During 2017, the exchange rate of the rand displayed some volatility as domestic geopolitical development created investor uncertainty.

The credit rating agencies Standard and Poor's and Fitch also downgraded South Africa's sovereign long-term foreign currency credit rating to sub-investment grade. The year was marked by continued deterioration in both consumer and business confidence. Nevertheless, the exchange value of the rand continued to receive support from the global search for yield by international investors.

The exchange rate of the rand ended the year on a positive note following the election of President Cyril Ramaphosa as the ANC president, which investors viewed in a positive light.

Exchange controls

Exchange control regulations are administered by the SARB, on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The Minister has delegated to the Financial Surveillance Department of the SARB the responsibility of appointing certain banks to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange, as well as certain entities to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange with limited authority, which gives them the right to buy and sell foreign exchange, subject to conditions and within limits prescribed by the the department. Authorised dealers are not agents for the Financial Surveillance Department, but act on behalf of their customers.

As at the end of February 2018, a total of 27 banks were authorised to act, for the purposes of the regulations, as authorised dealers; one bank as a restricted authorised dealer in respect of permissible credit card transactions and 17 entities as authorised dealers in foreign exchange with limited authority.

In terms of exchange control policy, there are no limitations as to how much money may be brought into South Africa, but there are certain limitations on the amount of money that may be transferred out of South Africa.

For all non-South Africans, there is no limitation on transferring money out of South Africa that has been previously introduced into the country.

Up to R25 000 in cash, per resident (natural person), may be taken when proceeding on visits outside the common monetary area, to meet travellers' immediate needs on return to South Africa. Foreign visitors to South Africa may introduce foreign currency in any amount and in any form (e.g. foreign bank notes, travellers cheques) and may export any funds originating from instruments of foreign currency (including foreign bank notes) imported into South Africa on their arrival. No more than R25 000 may be exported in SARB notes.

South Africans (including emigrants and South African residents who are temporarily abroad), for example, are currently able to transfer up to R10 million, per calendar year, out of the country for investment purposes, subject to a tax clearance certificate being provided. In addition, South Africans can transfer up to R1 million abroad for any legal purpose, including investments, without the requirement to obtain a tax clearance certificate.

Companies may transfer up to R1 billion per calendar year for outward foreign direct investments.

Requests by individuals and companies to transfer additional funds are considered by the Financial Surveillance Department.

The Special VDP that commenced in October 2016 for South African residents to disclose and regularise their unauthorised foreign assets, ended in August 2017.

Since 2014, companies listed on the JSE Limited have been permitted to secondary list and/or list depository receipt programmes on foreign exchanges to facilitate local and offshore foreign direct investment expansions.

Non-resident entities, local Authorised Dealers and the JSE Limited are allowed to issue inward listed instruments referencing foreign assets on the JSE Limited. Local collective investment scheme management companies registered with the FSB and regulated under the Collective Investment Scheme Control Act, are allowed, with the prior approval of the Financial Surveillance Department, to inward list exchange traded funds referencing foreign assets on the JSE Limited.

In the 2017 Budget Speech, the Minister of Finance announced South Africa's undertaking to review and benchmark its capital flows management framework against best practices in other developing economies and other fast-growing markets.

Pursuant to the announcement, the Financial Surveillance Department and National Treasury are collaborating on a project to bring about the benchmarking of South Africa's capital flows management framework against international standards.

The Financial Surveillance Department, in close cooperation with National Treasury, the FIC and SARS is taking several steps to detect, disrupt and deter illicit financial flows (IFFs).

These steps include a collaborative approach to sharing information and working with other authorities/agencies, with a view to mitigating IFFs, as well as an awareness campaign involving authorised dealers to promote early detection and the reporting of suspicious cross-border transactions or activities involving their clients.

Regulating cross-border transactions, preventing the abuse of the financial system and supporting the prudential regulation of financial institutions remain priorities in the modernising of capital flow management.

The microlending industry

The Department of Trade and Industry introduced the NCA of 2005 to allow the credit market to function in a robust and effective manner.

The NCA of 2005 replaced the Usury Act, 1968 (Act 73 of 1968), and the Credit Agreements Act, 1980 (Act 75 of 1980).

The NCA of 2005 regulates the granting of consumer credit by all credit providers, including micro-lenders, banks and retailers.

The National Credit Regulator (NCR) and the National Consumer Tribunal play a vital role in ensuring enforcement, promoting access to redress and adjudicating contraventions of the Act. Out of a population of 54 million, South Africa has just over 18 million credit-active consumers.

The NCR is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. Its mandate includes:

- carrying out education, research and policy development
- registering industry participants
- investigating complaints
- ensuring that the Act is enforced.

In terms of the Act, the NCR has to promote the development of an accessible credit market to meet the needs of people who were previously disadvantaged, earn a low income or live in remote, isolated or low-density communities.

The National Consumer Tribunal adjudicates various applications and hears cases against those who contravene the Act. The Act provides for the registration of debt counsellors to assist over-indebted consumers. Debt counsellors are required to undergo training approved by the NCR through approved training service providers appointed by the regulator.

Other financial institutions

Co-Operative Banks Development Agency

The CBDA was established to regulate, promote and develop co-operative banking, including deposit-taking and lending co-operatives.

The agency envisages a strong and vibrant co-operative banking sector that broadens access to and participation in diversified financial services towards economic and social well-being.

The functions of the CBDA are to:

- register, regulate and supervise co-operative banks.
- promote, register and regulate representative bodies.
- facilitate, promote and fund education and training to enhance the work of co-operative financial institutions.
- accredit and regulate support organisations.
- provide liquidity support to registered co-operative banks through loans or grants.
- manage a deposit insurance fund.

Development Bank of Southern Africa

The DBSA Act of 1997 stipulates that the DBSA's main role is to promote economic development and growth, human-resource development and institutional capacity-building.

The DBSA achieves this by mobilising financial and other resources from the private and public sectors, both nationally and internationally, for sustainable development projects and programmes.

The DBSA will take the lead in developing South Africa's municipal debt market to accelerate both public and private sector investment in urban renewal.

The DBSA will continue to manage the Infrastructure and Investment Programme for South Africa, which is a partnership with the European Commission to strengthen project preparation and co-funding arrangements.

It also provides support to the Independent Power Producer Programme, which will be extended to include new generation capacity from hydro, coal and gas sources to complement Eskom's base-load energy capacity.

Co-generation and demand management initiatives are also being supported.

During the 2017/18 financial year, a total of R8,7 billion was committed to funding, of which R3,5 billion was allocated to municipalities. This will benefit approximately 77 580 households. The remaining R5,2 billion will be allocated to renewable energy and is expected to finance about 42 Megawatts of energy.

The bank also provided support to secondary and under-resourced municipalities – helping them complete 13 infrastructure master plans with an estimated project value of R26,7 billion and that will impact an estimated 776 474 households and create 8 700 temporary jobs when implemented.

It supported the implementation of 12 infrastructure projects in electricity, water, sanitation, roads and storm water to various municipalities during the 2017/18 financial year. A total of 21 780 households benefitted and 672 temporary job opportunities were created.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank (Land Bank)

The Land Bank operates as a development finance institution within the agricultural and agribusiness sectors, and is regulated by the Land Bank Act of 2002.

The Land Bank provides a range of financing products to a broad spectrum of clients within the agricultural industry. Financing products include wholesale and retail financing to commercial and developing farmers, co-operatives and other agriculture-related businesses.

The Land Bank's objectives are defined within its mandate, which requires that it should achieve:

- growth in the commercial market
- growth in the development market
- business efficiency
- service delivery
- resource management
- sustainability.

The Land Bank is the sole shareholder in the Suid-Afrikaanse Verbandversekeringsmaatskappy Beperk, which provides insurance to people indebted to the bank through mortgage loans.

New banknotes to honour Madiba's centenary

The South African Reserve Bank (Bank) has issued a set of commemorative banknotes to honour the former statesman's centenary. The notes cover all denominations – R10, R20, R50, R100 and R200.

In addition, the South African Mint, a subsidiary of the SARB, will issue a new R5 circulation coin celebrating Mandela's birth centenary. The existing Mandela series of banknotes as well as the existing R5 coin in circulation will remain legal tender. The new commemorative banknotes and coins will circulate alongside the existing banknotes and coins.

The commemorative banknotes and coins are expected to be introduced into circulation from 18 July 2018, what would have been Mandela's 100th birthday.

Financial Services Board

The FSB is a regulatory institution, established in terms of the FSB Act of 1990.

The functions of the board include:

- supervising compliance with laws regulating financial institutions and the provision of financial services
- advising the Minister on matters concerning financial institutions and financial services
- promoting programmes and initiatives by financial institutions and bodies representing the financial services industry to inform and educate users and potential users of financial products and services.

The Financial Markets Act, 2012 (Act 19 of 2012) regulates financial markets and OTC derivatives. The Act brought South Africa in line with international norms and standards.

The Act ensures that financial markets in South Africa operate fairly, efficiently and transparently to promote investor confidence. It also ensures that the legislative and regulatory framework is brought in line with the recommendations of international standard-setting bodies such as the G20, Financial Stability Board, Basel Committee on Banking Supervision and the International Organisation of Securities Commissions.

The Act primarily focuses on the licensing and regulation of exchanges, central securities depositories, clearing houses, trade repositories and market infrastructure, as well as the prohibition of insider trading and other market abuses.

The Act also improves OTC trading in derivatives and does away with misleading and conflict-of-interest trading. This is one of several commitments made by the G20 countries.

Collective investment schemes (CIS)

CISes are investment structures where individual investor funds are pooled with those of other investors. Qualified asset managers regulated by the FAIS Act of 2002 invest these funds on behalf of the investor. Each investor owns units (participatory interest) in the total fund.

Financial advisers and intermediaries

The purpose of the FAIS Act of 2002 is to regulate, in pursuance of consumer protection, the provision of advice and intermediary services in respect of a range of financial products and services.

The FSB, through the FAIS Division, is responsible for regulating the rendering of financial advisory and intermediary services by FSPs, in respect of a wide range of financial products.

In terms of the provisions of the FAIS Act of 2002, before conducting any transaction, consumers should ensure that the FSP they are dealing with has obtained a licence from the FSB. Information on authorised FSPs may be obtained from the FSB website.

Recognised representative bodies

Section 6(3)(iii) of the FAIS Act of 2002 provides for the Registrar of FSPs to delegate any of its powers, in terms of the Act, to anybody recognised by the Act.

Two such functions, the consideration of applications for licences under Section 8 and the consideration of applications for approval of compliance officers under Section 17(2) of the Act, were delegated to two recognised representative bodies. As recognised examination bodies, another four bodies are responsible for developing and delivering the regulatory examination.

Advisory Committee on Financial Service Providers

The Minister of Finance appointed the Advisory Committee on FSPs, whose function, is to investigate and report, or advise on any matter covered by the FAIS Act of 2002.

The advisory committee comprises a chairperson, a representative of the Council for Medical Schemes, established by Section 3 of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), persons representative of product suppliers, FSPs and clients involved in the application of this Act. The members of the advisory committee, except for the Registrar and Deputy Registrar, who are ex officio members, hold office for a period determined by the Minister.

Licensing of financial service providers

The Registrar of FSPs authorises and renders ongoing supervision of the following FSPs:

- financial advisers and intermediaries who provide financial

services without discretion
- those who offer discretionary intermediary services, in terms of financial product choice, but without implementing bulking
- hedge-fund managers
- investment administrators specialising mainly in the bulking of collective investments on behalf of clients (linked investment services providers)
- those who represent assistance business administrators who render intermediary services, in terms of the administration of assistance business (funeral policies), on behalf of an insurer to the extent agreed to in a written mandate between the two parties.

Insurance companies

Insurance is an agreement between a policyholder and an insurance company. It is divided into long and short-term insurance.

In terms of the Long-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 52 of 1998) and the Short-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 53 of 1998), all insurance companies must be registered by the FSB and must comply with the provisions of these Acts.

The insurance industry has appointed a short-term and long-term insurance Ombudsman to mediate dispute resolution between insurers and policy holders.

Market abuse

The Directorate: Market Abuse is an FSB committee responsible for combating market abuse in the financial markets in South Africa. The three forms of market abuse prohibited in South Africa are: insider trading, price manipulation and publication of false or misleading statements.

All three forms of market abuse are criminal contraventions. In addition, an offender may be referred to the FSB Enforcement Committee, which can impose unlimited penalties. In the case of insider trading contravention, such penalties are distributed to people who were prejudiced by the offending transactions.

Retirement funds

To encourage South Africans to save more, employer contributions to retirement funds will become an employee fringe benefit for tax purposes from April 2015.

Individuals will be able to receive a tax deduction on employer and employee contributions to a pension fund, provident fund or retirement annuity fund up to 27,5% of the greater of remuneration and taxable income.

An annual cap on deductible contributions of R350 000 will apply.

In addition, Government is exploring ways to increase retirement fund coverage to all workers.

Enforcement

The Enforcement Committee of the FSB adjudicates on all alleged contraventions of legislation, regulations, and codes of conduct administered by the FSB within the South African non-banking financial services industry.

The FSB administers the following Acts:
- CIS Control Act, 2002 (Act 45 of 2002)
- FSB Act of 1990
- FAIS Act of 2002
- Financial Institutions (Protection of Funds) Act, 2001 (Act 28 of 2001)
- Financial Supervision of the RAF Act, 1993, (Act 8 of 1993)
- Friendly Societies Act, 1956 (Act 25 of 1956)
- Inspection of Financial Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 80 of 1998)
- Long-Term Insurance Act of 1998
- Pension Funds Act, 1956 (Act 25 of 1956)
- Short-Term Insurance Act of 1990
- Supervision of the Financial Institutions Rationalisation Act, 1996 (Act 32 of 1996)
- Securities Services Act, 2004 (Act 36 of 2004).

The committee considers cases of alleged contraventions of legislation administered by the FSB. The industries regulated by the FSB include: CISes, FSPs, insurance, nominee companies, retirement funds and friendly societies.

The committee may impose unlimited penalties, compensation orders and cost orders. Such orders are enforceable as if they were judgments of the Supreme Court of South Africa.

Government bonds

National Treasury has been working with the JSE, the SARB, STRATE, primary dealer banks and the World Bank to develop an electronic trading platform for government bonds. The pilot phase will be launched in 2018/19. The platform is expected to increase liquidity and transparency, and to reduce funding costs, by simplifying access to government bonds.

Foreign investor holdings of domestic government bonds reached 38,3% in March 2017 compared to 36% in 2016. In absolute terms, holdings by these investors increased to R602,4 billion in March 2017 from R557,6 billion in 2016.

By the end of 2017, global investors held 41,4% of domestic government bonds, a nominal increase of R147,8 billion from a year earlier.

The rise in non-resident holdings is partly a result of extremely low interest rates in advanced economies, which has prompted global investors to look for higher yields in developing countries. South Africa's sophisticated capital markets and strong institutions also support continued investment flows.

Domestic pension funds remain the largest holders of inflation-linked bonds which are used to match their long-term liabilities and hedge against inflation. Foreign investors hold only 2% due to the low liquidity of inflation-linked bonds and the fact that they offer lower returns than fixed-rate bonds.

Long-term insurers are the second-largest holders of domestic inflation-linked bonds. Similar to pension funds, long-term insurers use these instruments as a protection against inflation.

Domestic long-term borrowing

Long-term loans denominated in rands are government's primary debt instrument, accounting for 78,9% of the debt stock. Between April 2017 and January 2018, government issued R157,4 billion in long-term domestic bonds: R123 billion in fixed-rate bonds, R2,2 billion in retail savings bonds and R32,2 billion in inflation-linked bonds.

Weekly bond auction amounts increased in November 2017 to meet the higher borrowing requirement. The auction amounts will be reduced in 2018/19 as these requirements begin to decline.

Between February 2015 and January 2017, government's bond-switch programme exchanged a total of R130,4 billion in

short-dated debt for long-dated debt, reducing pressure on the loan portfolio over the next four years.

Over the medium term, fixed-rate bonds, which account for 80% of domestic bond issuance, will anchor the portfolio, allowing government to manage interest rate risk.

Issuance of inflation-linked bonds will be limited to 20% to minimise the effect of revaluation on debt stock. New issuance in domestic capital markets will increase from R173,1 billion in 2016/17 to R191,5 billion in 2017/18, reaching R197 billion in 2019/20.

Retail savings bonds, which encourage household savings, will provide funding of about R3,5 billion.

International borrowing

Government issues debt in global capital markets to meet part of its foreign-currency commitments, set benchmarks and diversify funding sources.

The rand equivalent of these loans and interest payments changes with the exchange rate. To manage this risk, portfolio benchmarks limit foreign-currency debt to 15 % of the portfolio.

Over the medium term, borrowing in global markets will average US$2 billion per year.

In September 2017, government started to fully finance its foreign currency commitments by borrowing in global capital markets. This marked a shift from previous practice. The rand value of this international debt fluctuates with exchange rates, which is why the strategic risk portfolio benchmark limits foreign currency debt to 15% of the total portfolio. This debt currently stands at 8,8%, and is expected to remain within the limit over the medium term.

To meet foreign currency commitments fully, government has increased its foreign financing levels to US$9 billion over the next three years. Government will continue to build up cash for a large redemption of US$3,5 billion due in 2019/20. By 31 January 2018, US$1,4 billion of cash had been accumulated.

Foreign Exchange

The Foreign Exchange (FX) Operations Section within the Financial Markets Department is entrusted with the responsibility of conducting foreign exchange operations of the SARB and monitoring foreign exchange activities of authorised dealers and the broader market participants. This function also involves engaging with various market participants locally and offshore, including official institutions to gather market information and intelligence to support internal decision-making in the implementation of monetary policy, exchange rate policy and management of the SARB's foreign exchange reserves. To this end, the FX Section performs the following functions:

- conducting spot and forward foreign exchange transactions for the purpose of accumulating foreign exchange reserves;
- conducting foreign exchange swap transactions in the domestic forward market for domestic liquidity management;
- management of the foreign exchange reserves working capital portfolio by investing funds in term deposit accounts with foreign banks and official institutions;
- servicing the foreign exchange needs of the SARB and its clients, including the government;
- conducting research and analysis into movements and trends across financial markets;
- analysing the impact of the SARB's foreign exchange operations;
- promoting the effective function of the domestic financial markets by monitoring and gathering of market information and market intelligence in developments in the local and international markets;
- providing management information on the foreign exchange markets to the Senior Management of the department as well as the Executive Management of the SARB; and
- performing administrative function of the South African Foreign Exchange Committee, which has been established under the sponsorship and leadership of the SARB.

Exchange controls

Exchange Control Regulations are administered by the SARB, on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The Minister of Finance has also appointed certain banks to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange, as well as authorised dealers in foreign exchange with limited authority, which gives them the right to buy and sell foreign exchange, subject to conditions and within limits prescribed by the Financial Surveillance Department of the SARB. Authorised dealers are not agents for the Financial Surveillance Department, but act on behalf of their customers.

Under exchange control regulations, there are no limitations as to how much money may be brought into South Africa, but there are certain limitations on the amount of money that may be transferred out of South Africa.

For all non-South Africans, there is no limitation on transferring money out of South Africa.

Foreign debt

South Africa's total external debt decreased notably from US$183.2 billion at the end of March 2018 to US$170.8 billion at the end of June due to non-residents' net sales of domestic randdenominated government bonds as well as valuation effects.

The increase in South Africa's total external debt, in rand terms – from R2 165 billion at the end of March 2018 to R2 347 billion at the end of June – reflected the valuation effect of the depreciation in the exchange value of the rand on foreign currency-denominated debt.

Foreign currency-denominated external debt increased from US$75.9 billion at the end of March 2018 to US$81.6 billion at the end of June. International bond issuances by national government and the domestic banking sector, together with long-term loans extended to the private sector contributed largely to the increase.

Johannesburg Stock Exchange Ltd

The JSE Ltd is privately owned and funded, and governed by a board of directors. Its activities are licensed and regulated by two Acts of Parliament, namely the Stock Exchanges Control Act, 1985 (Act 1 of 1985), which governs the equities markets, and the Financial Markets Control Act, 1989 (Act 55 of 1989), which governs the derivatives markets.

In keeping with international practice, the JSE Ltd regulates its members and ensures that markets operate in a transparent way, ensuring investor protection. Similarly, issuers of securities must comply with the JSE Ltd listings requirements, which ensure sufficient disclosure of all information relevant to investors.

The JSE Ltd's roles include regulating applications for listing and ensuring that listed companies continue to meet their obligations. The JSE Ltd monitors applications for alterations to existing listings, and scrutinises company disclosures to the public. It also provides the Stock Exchange News Service through which company news, including price-sensitive information, is distributed to the market.

The JSE Ltd has been bold in restructuring, in view of increasingly tough global competition, adopting new technologies and outsourcing aspects of its business.

The JSE Ltd opened to corporate membership, resulting in a stampede by foreign banks, which have bought out most of the major local broking firms, using these as platforms for other financial services, such as corporate and government advisory work.

The electronic settlement system, Share Transactions Totally Electronic (Strate), has replaced the previous manual settlement method. Strate Ltd is the licensed Central Securities Depository for the electronic settlement of financial instruments in South Africa.

The JSE Ltd's trading and information systems were replaced with the London Stock Exchange's (LSE) Sequence and the London Market Information Link or LMIL systems, branded JSE SETS and InfoWiz, respectively.

The trading engine and information dissemination feed-handler is hosted in London and connected remotely to the JSE Ltd 9 000 km away, via a transcontinental undersea cable and an innovative, integrated solutions design. More than 1 500 traders and information users access the system, using a sophisticated application service provider with subsecond response time.

The JSE Ltd has also aligned its equities trading model with that of Europe, and reclassified its instruments in line with the Financial Times of London Stock Exchange (FTSE) Global Classification System. This has led to the introduction of the FTSE/JSE Africa Index Series that makes the South African indices comparable to similar indices worldwide.

One of the most reliable trading platforms worldwide serves the investment community. The LSE can now disseminate trade information about instruments listed on the JSE Ltd to more than 104 000 trading terminals around the world, raising the profile of the JSE Ltd among the members of the international investor community.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Government Systems

South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of Government and an independent judiciary.

The national, provincial and local levels of Government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated.

Operating at both national and provincial levels are advisory bodies drawn from South Africa's traditional leaders.

It is a stated intention in the Constitution that the country be run on a system of cooperative governance.

Government is committed to the building of a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic, united and successful South Africa.

The Constitution

South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally. Human rights are given clear prominence in the Constitution.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or Government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution.

The signing of the Constitution was a commemorative gesture in remembrance of the people who died during a peaceful demonstration against the pass laws on 21 March 1960.

The Preamble

The Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which Government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign State in the family of nations.

Founding provisions

South Africa is a sovereign and democratic State founded on the following values:

- human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom
- non-racialism and non-sexism
- supremacy of the Constitution and the rule of law
- universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in Chapter 2 of the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals.

The Constitutional Court guards these rights and determines whether actions by the State are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the law-makers (legislative authorities), Government (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country, in accordance with the Constitution.

It consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public.

The role of Parliament, as the representative of the people, is to promote and oversee adherence to the values of human dignity, equality, non-racialism, non sexism, and all other rights enshrined in the Bill of Rights, and to oversee the implementation of constitutional imperatives. Through legislative and other measures, Parliament also ensures that the independence, impartiality, accessibility and effectiveness of the judiciary and other state institutions is upheld.

The mandate of Parliament is based on the provisions of chapter 4 of the Constitution, which establishes Parliament and sets out the functions it performs. Parliament is elected to represent the people, ensure government by the people under the Constitution, and represent the interests of provinces in the national sphere of government. Members of Parliament elect the president, provide a national forum for the public consideration of issues, pass legislation, and scrutinise and oversee executive action.

Parliament's policy priorities set out long-term policy and outcomes. These are aligned with the priorities and outcomes of the National Development Plan. To ensure that these outcomes are met over feasible timeframes, five-year, 10-year and 15-year milestones have been set.

Since 1994, a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process.

The official governmental website *www.parliament.gov.za* encourages comment and feedback from the public.

The Presidency, November 2018	
President	Cyril Ramaphosa
Deputy President	David Mabuza

Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President, ministers and deputy ministers, assigns their powers and functions, and may dismiss them.

The President may select any number of ministers from the members of the National Assembly, and may select no more than two ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the leader of government business in the National Assembly.

National Assembly

The National Assembly is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution.

It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation, and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation.

The National Assembly, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the Speaker, assisted by the Deputy Speaker.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP is mandated to represent the provinces to ensure that provincial interests are taken into account in the national sphere of Government.

The NCOP consists of 90 provincial delegates (10 delegates for each of the nine provinces). A provincial delegation consists of six permanent delegates and four special delegates. The permanent delegates, who are appointed by the nine provincial legislatures, are based at Parliament in Cape Town.

The four special delegates consist of the Premier of the province and three special delegates, assigned by each province from Members of the Provincial Legislature and rotated depending on the subject matter being considered by the NCOP.

The Premier of a province is the head of the province's delegation but he or she can assign any other delegate to lead the delegation in his or her absence.

Organised local government is also represented in the NCOP through the South African Local Government Association (SALGA). SALGA is entitled to 10 representatives who may participate in the debates and other activities of the NCOP, but may not vote.

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and represents provincial interests in the national sphere of government.

The NCOP must have a mandate from the provinces before it can make certain decisions.

Special calculations of the popular vote in elections make sure that minority interests are represented in each province's delegation to the NCOP.

The NCOP Online links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local government associations. It also provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions.

The NCOP came into existence in February 1997.

Legislative and policy framework

The mandate and functions of Parliament are based on the following core pieces of legislation:

- Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, which sets out the composition, powers and functions of Parliament.
- Powers, Privileges and Immunities of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures Act , 2004 (Act 4 of 2004), which defines and declares certain powers, privileges and immunities of Parliament, Provincial Legislatures, Members of the NA, delegates to the NCOP and Members of Provincial Legislatures.
- Money Bills Amendment Procedure and Related Matters Act, 2009 (Act 9 of 2009), which provides for a procedure to amend money bills before Parliament and for norms and standards for amending Money Bills before Provincial Legislatures.
- Financial Management of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures Act 2009 (FMPPLA) (Act 10 of 2009) as amended by Act 34 of 2014, which regulates the financial management of Parliament in a manner consistent with its status in terms of the Constitution. Its objective is to ensure that all revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of Parliament are managed efficiently.

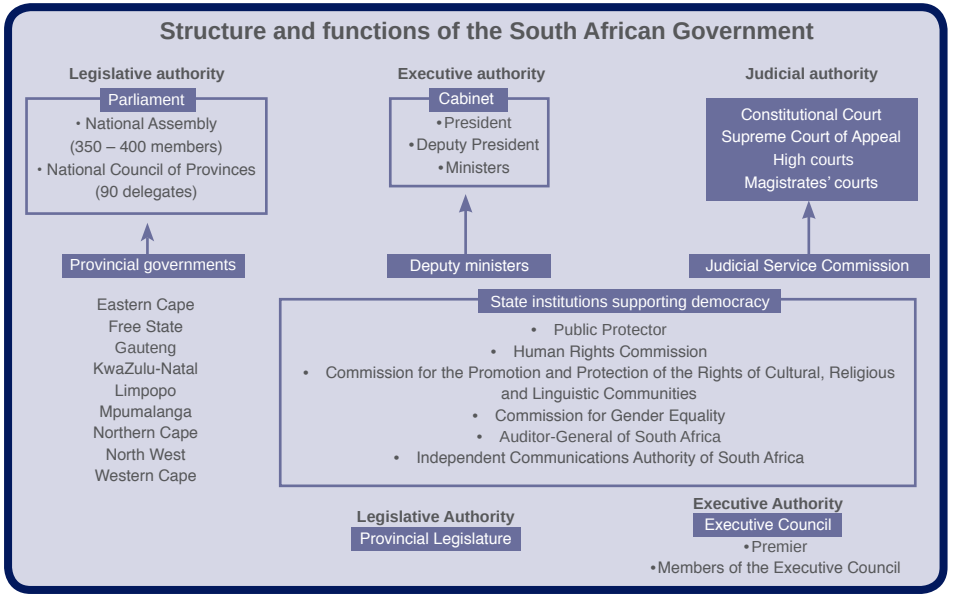
Other legislation relevant to the work of Parliament includes the National Council of Provinces (Permanent Delegates Vacancies) Act, 1997 (Act 17 of 1997); the Determination of Delegates (National Council of Provinces) Act, 1998 (Act 69 of 1998); the Mandating Procedures of Provinces Act, 2008 (Act 52 of 2008); and the Remuneration of Public Office Bearers Act, 1998 (Act 20 of 1998).

The Joint Rules of Parliament, Rules of the NA and Rules of the NCOP augment these Acts, as the Constitution empowers Parliament to make Rules and Orders concerning its business.

Additional frameworks of relevance to the work of Parliament include the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs), the African Union (AU) Agenda 2063, The Southern African Development Community (SADC) Regional Indicative Strategic Plan, the National Development Plan 2030 (NDP) and the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) 2014 – 2019.

Function of Parliament

The core functions of Parliament include making laws, overseeing the work of the Executive and State institutions, facilitating public participation, international participation and cooperative governance.



Law-making

Section 43(a) of the Constitution vests the legislative authority of the national sphere of Government in Parliament. This confers on the NA the power to consider, pass, amend or reject any legislation before the Assembly and to initiate or prepare legislation, except money Bills. It also confers on the NCOP the power to consider, pass, amend, propose amendments or reject any legislation before the Council and initiate or prepare legislation falling within a functional area listed in Schedule 4 of the Constitution or other legislation referred to in section 76(3), except money Bills.

The Constitution distinguishes between four categories of Bills:

- Bills amending the Constitution (section 74)
- Ordinary Bills not affecting provinces (section 75)
- Ordinary Bills affecting provinces (section 76)
- Money Bills (section 77).

Whilst any of these categories of Bills may be introduced in the NA, only Bills referred to in section 76(3) of the Constitution may be introduced in the NCOP.

Money Bills, such as the Appropriation Bill and the Division of Revenue Bill, may only be introduced in the NA and not in the NCOP.

The Constitution and the Rules of the NA and NCOP outline the processes that Parliament must follow when passing each category of Bills. Furthermore, section 18(1) of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 41 of 2003), obliges the Secretary to Parliament to refer any parliamentary Bill relating to customary law or customs of traditional communities to the National House of Traditional Leaders (NHTL) for comment before it is passed by the House of Parliament in which it was introduced. The NHTL has 30 days to comment on a Bill so referred.

As the representative of the people of South Africa, Parliament realises the importance of processing and/or passing quality legislation aimed at improving the quality of life of the people and involving the public in the processing of legislation. To this end, it plans to develop a legislative model to guide members of parliament and staff in the processing of legislation.

The main aim of the model is to enhance the law-making processes and procedures of Parliament to enable the institution to pass quality laws that will improve the quality of life of all.

During 2017 Parliament passed 18 of the 33 Bills under consideration and the President assented to 10 of these Bills. These Bills included:

- the Financial Intelligence Centre Amendment Bill (to strengthen South Africa's ability to prevent and punish financial crimes such as money laundering, illicit capital flows, tax evasion, corruption and bribery and financing of terrorism);
- the Protected Disclosures Amendment Bill (with extra safeguards for whistle-blowers); and
- the International Arbitration Bill (provides for recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitration awards).

The NA passed the Labour Laws Amendment Bill, a Private Member's Bill, which provides for parental leave for fathers and for adoption and surrogacy leave. The draft Political Party Funding Bill, introduced by the Ad Hoc Committee on Political Party Funding, aims to regulate the private and public funding of political parties. The proposal to amend the National Credit Act, aims to promote responsible

Cabinet Ministers and Deputy Ministers, as at November 2018

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	Senzeni Zokwana	Sfiso Buthelezi
Arts and Culture	Nathi Mthethwa	Makhotso Sotyu
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Enver Surty
Communications, Telecommunications and Postal Services	Stella Ndabeni-Abrahams	Pinky Kekana
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Zweli Mkhize	Obed Bapela Andries Nel
Defence and Military Veterans	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Kebby Maphatsoe
Economic Development	Ebrahim Patel	Madala Masuku
Energy	Jeff Radebe	Thembi Majola
Environmental Affairs	Nomvula Mokonyane	Barbara Thomson
Finance	Tito Mboweni	Mondli Gungubele
Health	Aaron Motsoaledi	Joe Phaahla
Higher Education and Training	Naledi Pandor	Buti Manamela
Home Affairs	Siyabonga Cwele	Fatima Chohan
Human Settlements	Nomaindia Mfeketo	Zoliswa Kota-Fredericks
International Relations and Cooperation	Lindiwe Sisulu	Reginah Mhaule Luwellyn Landers
Justice and Correctional Services	Michael Masutha	Thabang Makwetla John Jeffery
Labour	Mildred Oliphant	Patekile Holomisa
Mineral Resources	Gwede Mantashe	Godfrey Oliphant
Police	Bheki Cele	Bongani Mkongi
Public Enterprises	Pravin Gordhan	–
Public Service and Administration	Ayanda Dlodlo	Chana Pilane-Majake
Public Works	Thulas Nxesi	Jeremy Cronin
Rural Development and Land Reform	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Candith Mashego-Dlamini Mcebisi Skwatsha
Science and Technology	Mmamoloko Kubayi-Ngubane	Zanele kaMagwaza-Msibi
Small Business Development	Lindiwe Zulu	Cassel Mathale
Social Development	Susan Shabangu	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu
Sport and Recreation	Tokozile Xasa	Gert Oosthuizen
State Security	Dipuo Letsatsi-Duba	Ellen Molekane
The Presidency: Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation	Nkosazana Dlamini-Zuma	_
The Presidency: Women	Bathabile Dlamini	_
Tourism	Derek Hanekom	Elizabeth Thabethe
Trade and Industry	Rob Davies	Gratitude Magwanishe
Transport	Blade Nzimande	Sindisiwe Chikunga
Water and Sanitation	Gugile Nkwinti	Pamela Tshwete

lending and to protect vulnerable consumers. The legislative proposal to amend the Public Audit Act, aims to give the Auditor General the authority to deal effectively with adverse findings on public entities' management of public funds.

Oversight

The parliamentary oversight function is one of the cornerstones of democracy. It holds the Executive accountable for its actions and ensures that it implements policies in accordance with the laws and budget passed by Parliament.

The robust monitoring of the Executive by Parliament is an indicator of good governance, as it is through oversight that Parliament can ensure a balance of power and assert its role as the defender and/or the legitimate custodian of the people's interests. The Constitution envisages a specific oversight role for the NA and the NCOP, respectively.

To this end, it places an obligation on the NA to provide for mechanisms to ensure that all Executive organs of state in the national sphere of government are accountable to it and to maintain oversight of the exercise of national executive authority, including the implementation of legislation.

The Constitution requires the NCOP to exercise oversight over national aspects of provincial and local government.

The Oversight and Accountability Model makes provision for various oversight mechanisms, including exercising oversight through committees, oversight visits, the passing of budget votes, questions for executive reply, members' statements, notices of motion, debates on matters of public importance and constituency work. One of the significant features provided for in the Model is the establishment of a Joint Parliamentary Oversight and Governance Assurance Committee to pursue all assurances, undertakings and commitments given by ministers on the floor of the Houses and the extent to which these assurances have been fulfilled.

Public participation

Participatory democracy is based on the premise that public participation processes strengthen institutions of representative democracy by actively involving the public in the decision-making processes of Government. The Constitution requires the NA and the NCOP, respectively, to facilitate public involvement in the legislative and other processes of the houses and its committees by conducting its business in an open manner. Whilst Parliament may take reasonable measures to regulate access, it may only exclude the public from a sitting of a House or Committee if it is reasonable and justifiable to do so in an open and democratic society.

In an effort to streamline public participation processes and make it more effective, the Legislative Sector has developed a Public Participation Framework to guide the public participation activities of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures.

The Framework provides certain minimum norms and standards to ensure alignment in public participation processes and activities. Based on this Framework, Parliament has developed a Public Participation Model, which was adopted by the Joint Rules Committee in November 2017.

The model provides the institution with minimum requirements for public involvement and participation. Specific public participation mechanisms outlined in the model include the People's Assembly, the NCOP Taking Parliament to the People, Oversight visits by parliamentary Committees, Sectoral engagements such as youth and women's parliaments, petitions and other forms of participation in law making and other processes.

During 2017 Parliament conducted 28 public hearings on Bills before Committees. Country-wide hearings were held on the Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Bill [8238-2017], as well as the Communal Property Associations (CPA) Amendment Bill [812-2017].

Parliament also received the report of the High-Level Panel on the Assessment of Key Legislation and the Acceleration of Fundamental Change in November 2017. The work of the Panel included public hearings conducted in each of the nine provinces, drawing between 500 and 700 participants per hearing.

International participation

Historically, Parliaments had limited involvement in the international arena, as this was traditionally regarded as the domain of the Executive arm of the State. However, due to changes in the international system, such as a new wave of participatory democracy, globalisation and developments in global governance structures, the lines between what is regarded as national and international policy areas have become increasingly blurred, resulting in a greater impetus for parliamentary engagement in international relations.

To this end, and in giving effect to the need to democratise international decision-making and subjecting the Executive to the same degree of international oversight as is done over domestic matters, the South African Parliament participates in international relations through the traditional oversight approach and through parliamentary diplomacy.

At national level, Parliament engages in international relations through the work of the Portfolio Committee on International Relations and Cooperation and the Select Committee on Trade and International Relations. The commitees oversee the work of the Department of International Relations and Cooperation by monitoring its budget, holding hearings on pertinent international relations matters and engaging in site visits, amongst others. Various parliamentary committees also conduct study tours to different countries.

At the regional and international level, Parliament engages in bilateral and multilateral relations. Bilateral relations are fostered through official visits, courtesy call meetings and the conclusion of formal parliament-to-parliament cooperation agreements.

At the multilateral level, South Africa participates in the regional, continental and international parliamentary fora, such as the Southern African Development Community Parliamentary Forum, the Pan African Parliament, the African, Caribbean and Pacific-European Union Joint Parliamentary Assembly, the Commonwealth Parliamentary Association, the Inter-Parliamentary Union, the BRIGS Parliamentary Forum, and the Global Legislators' Organisation International.

Through these activities, South African parliamentarians actively pursue the country's foreign policy priorities of advancing and promoting the African Agenda, South-South cooperation, North-South dialogue, transforming and strengthening the multilateral system of governance, and

promoting global equity and social justice.

In line with South Africa's constitutional values and its African-centred foreign policy, Parliament successfully hosted an international women's conference from 29 to 30 August 2017 under the theme: "Women and the Changing World of Work – Giving Effect to the Sixty-First Session of the Commission on the Status of Women".

Cooperative governance

The Constitution creates three spheres of Government at national, provincial and local level as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. It enjoins all spheres of Government to observe and adhere to the principles of cooperative government.

Parliament plays a significant role in facilitating cooperative governance through its work with the other arms and spheres of Government. This includes the appointment and dismissal of office bearers of the Institutions Supporting Democracy, various Commissions, Boards and Councils. Parliament also ratifies International Protocols and Conventions, confirms the provisional suspension of magistrates, approves the salaries, allowances and benefits of magistrates and judges.

The NCOP provides a forum for the representation of local government at national level through SALGA. Specific cooperative governance mechanisms spearheaded by the NCOP include the NCOP Oversight Week, Provincial Week and Local Government Week. The NCOP Oversight Week was established to enable members to follow up on matters arising from the Taking Parliament to the People programme to verify information received.

During Provincial Week, permanent delegates return to the provinces to conduc joint oversight with the respective provincial legislatures on a theme decided upon in consultation with the relevant Provincial Legislature.

Local Government Week aims to strengthen the relationship between the NCOP and SALGA by, amongst others, debating matters relating to local government and seeking solutions to challenges facing the local sphere of government within the context of cooperative government and intergovernmental relations.

The NCOP conducted Provincial Week, which entails joint oversight visits between permanent delegates and their counterparts in the Provincial Legislatures, during the week of 9 to 13 October 2017. The theme for the week was "Advancing our Collective Efforts to Creating Work Opportunities for our People".

The NCOP processed eight section 139 interventions into municipalities during 2017. Half of these related to municipalities in KwaZulu-Natal, followed by three in the Free State and one in the Western Cape province.

Government clusters

Government clusters foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government planning, decision-making and service delivery. The main objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels.

The main functions of the clusters are to ensure the alignment of government-wide priorities, facilitate and monitor the implementation of priority programmes and to provide a consultative platform on cross-cutting priorities and matters being taken to Cabinet.

The clusters of the Forum of South African Directors-General (Fosad) mirror the ministerial clusters. The Fosad clusters provide technical support to the ministerial clusters.

The Director-General (DG) in the Presidency is the chairperson of Fosad. Ministers enter into delivery agreements with the President, having to give progress reports on their departments' set targets.

The 12 outcomes identified by Government include:

- improved quality of basic education
- a long and healthy life for all South Africans
- all people in South Africa are and feel safe
- decent employment through inclusive economic growth
- a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path
- an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network
- vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all
- sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life
- a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
- environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and continually enhanced
- a better South Africa and contributing to a better and safer Africa and world
- an efficient, effective and development-oriented Public Service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

Economic Sectors, Employment Infrastructure Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Rural Development and Land Reform (Chair)
- Science and Technology (Deputy Chair)
- Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
- Communications
- Economic Development
- Finance
- Higher Education and Training
- Labour
- Mineral Resources
- Public Enterprises
- Environmental Affairs
- Transport
- Water and Sanitation
- Public Works
- Human Settlements
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Energy
- Small Business Development
- Telecommunications and Postal Services
- Public Works
- The Presidency: Planning, Performance Monitoring and Evaluation.

Governance and Administration Cluster

The cluster deals with governance issues, including Government's planning framework, and the monitoring

and evaluation of Government's performance. It is through this cluster that the Government is able to monitor how the interventions resulting from its various policies affect citizens and what further interventions are necessary to enhance policy efficacy.

The departments in this cluster are:

- Home Affairs (Chair)
- Public Service and Administration (Deputy Chair)
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Justice and Constitutional Development
- Finance
- The Presidency: Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation and Administration
- Communications.

Social Protection, Community and Human Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Social Development (Chair)
- Basic Education (Deputy Chair)
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- The Presidency: Women
- Human Settlements
- Labour
- Public Works
- Rural Development and Land Reform
- Social Development
- Transport
- Sport and Recreation
- Water and Sanitation
- Arts and Culture
- Basic Education
- Health
- Higher Education and Training
- Science and Technology.

International Cooperation, Trade and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Defence and Military Veterans (Chair)
- Telecommunications and Postal Services (Chair)
- International Relations and Cooperation (Deputy Chair)
- International Relations and Cooperation
- Finance
- Trade and Industry
- Tourism
- Environmental Affairs
- State Security.

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Justice and Constitutional Development
- Defence and Military Veterans (Chair)
- Police (Deputy Chair)
- Defence and Military Veterans
- Home Affairs
- State Security
- Police
- Correctional Services.

Izimbizo

Government embarked on the 6th National Imbizo Focus Week of the current administration from 17 to 23 April 2017.

Fomer President Jacob Zuma had declared 2017 as the Year of Oliver Reginald Tambo. The year marked the centenary of the late President and national Chairperson of the ANC, an international icon and hero of the South African liberation struggle. In celebrating his legacy, the National Imbizo Focus Week focused on the implementation of the National Development Plan (NDP) Vision 2030, which underpins the Medium Term Strategic Framework 2014 – 2019

Law-making

Any Bill may be introduced in the National Assembly. A Bill passed by the National Assembly must be referred to the NCOP for consideration.

A Bill affecting the provinces may be introduced in the NCOP. After the council passes it, it must be referred to the National Assembly.

A Bill concerning money must be introduced in the assembly and referred to the NCOP for consideration and approval after being passed.

If the NCOP rejects a Bill or passes it subject to amendments, the assembly must reconsider the Bill and pass it again with or without amendments.

There are special conditions for the approval of laws dealing with provinces.

The Presidency

As the executive manager of Government, The Presidency is at the apex of South Africa's government system. It is situated in the Union Buildings in Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

The Presidency comprises five political principals:

- The President, who is the Head of State and Government
- The Deputy President, who is the Leader of Government Business (in Parliament)
- The Minister of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation as well as Administration
- The Minister of Women
- The Deputy Minister for Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation.

The Presidency has three structures that support governance operations directly. They are:

- Cabinet Office, which provides administrative support to Cabinet. It implements administrative systems and processes to ensure the overall optimal functioning of the Cabinet and its committees. It also facilitates the management of decision-making processes of the Cabinet and its committees.
- Policy Coordination Advisory Services comprises a Deputy DG and five chief directorates, which support policy processes developed by respective clusters of DGs.
- Legal and Executive Services provides legal advice to the President, Deputy President, the Minister, as well as The Presidency as a whole, and is responsible for all litigation involving the political principals.

The President, as the Head of State, leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly from among its members and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

National Development Plan (NDP) 2030

The NDP is South Africa's socio-economic policy blueprint that focuses, among other things, on:

- eliminating poverty by reducing the proportion of households with a monthly income below R419 per person from 39% to zero and the reduction of inequality
- increasing employment from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million by 2030
- broadening the country's ownership of assets by historically disadvantaged groups
- ensuring that all children have at least two years of pre-school education and that all children can read and write by Grade 3
- providing affordable access to healthcare
- ensuring effective public transport.

Monitoring and evaluation

Institutional Performance Monitoring and Evaluation (IPME)

IPME monitors the quality of management practices in government departments through the Management Performance Assessment Tool.

The Frontline Service Delivery Monitoring programme of IPME is responsible for designing and implementing hands-on service delivery monitoring activities with Offices of the Premier and for setting up and supporting the implementation of citizens-based monitoring systems.

The Presidential Hotline is also located in this branch.

Programme of Action

Government's Programme of Action reflects its strategic plan for the 2014 – 2019 MTSF – the first five-year implementation phase of the NDP.

It is structured around 14 priority outcomes which cover the focus areas identified in the NDP and Government's electoral mandate: education, health, safety and security, economic growth and employment, skills development, infrastructure, rural development, human settlements, local government, environment, international relations, public sector, social protection, nation-building and social cohesion.

Operation Phakisa was designed to fast-track the implementation of solutions on critical development issues. This is a unique initiative to address issues highlighted in the NDP such as unemployment and poverty.

Elections

National and provincial elections are held once every five years.

All South African citizens aged 18 and over are eligible to vote.

The Constitution places all elections and referendums in the country in all three spheres of Government under the control of the Electoral Commision of South Africa (IEC), established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

The obligations of the IEC are to:

- manage elections of national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies
- ensure that those elections are free and fair
- declare the results of those elections
- compile and maintain a voters' roll.

The duties of the IEC are to:

- compile and maintain a register of parties
- undertake and promote research into electoral matters
- develop and promote the development of electoral expertise and technology in all spheres of Government
- continuously review electoral laws and proposed electoral laws, and make recommendations
- promote voter education
- declare the results of elections for national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies within seven days
- appoint appropriate public administrations in any sphere of Government to conduct elections when necessary.

The IEC manages an average of approximately 130 by-elections a year. By-elections are held when ward councillors vacate their seats for a variety of reasons including death, resignation or expulsion from the party or the council.

Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (DCoGTA)

The DCoGTA is responsible for facilitating cooperative governance, to support all spheres of Government and to assist the institution of traditional leadership with transforming itself into a strategic partner of Government in the development of communities.

The department's mission is to ensure that all municipalities perform their basic responsibilities and functions consistently by:

- putting people and their concerns first
- supporting the delivery of municipal services to the right quality and standard
- promoting good governance, transparency and accountability
- ensuring sound financial management and accounting
- building institutional resilience and administrative capability.

Legislation and policies

The department oversees the implementation of, among other things, the following legislation:

- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005).
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004).
- Municipal Property Rates Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 19 of 2009).
- Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003).
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002).
- Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2002).
- Municipal Systems Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 7 of 2011).
- Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998).
- Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998).
- National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 2009 (Act 22 of 2009), and Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 49 of 2003), which were consolidated by the National Traditional Affairs Bill to simplify the process. In September 2013, the National Traditional Affairs Bill was published in the *Government Gazette* for public comment. The amendment

of the legislation will also ensure, among other things, that traditional affairs, rather than only traditional leaders, will take centre stage. The Khoisan communities will also be fully represented in the National House of Traditional Leaders.

The Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 29 of 2014) seeks to:

- regulate the categories of property in respect of which rates may be levied
- regulate the time frames of publication of the resolutions levying rates and what must be contained in the promulgated resolution
- provide for the exclusion from the rates of certain categories of Public Service infrastructure
- give powers to a municipality to levy different rates on vacant land
- give power to the MEC of Local Government to extend the period of validity of a valuation roll by additional two years
- amend the dates on which a supplementary valuation takes effect
- address the problems that have been experienced in the implementation of the Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act of 2004.

- White Paper on Local Government (1998).

Budget

The department's initial budget for the 2017/18 financial year was R78.414 billion. During the 2017/18 Adjusted Estimates of National Expenditure, the department received an additional appropriation of R49.5 million, which increased the appropriation to R78.463 billion.

Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each province has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members.

The number of members is determined according to a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of MECs. Premiers are appointed by the President. Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet.

Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

A provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution.

According to the Constitution, provinces may have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, excluding university and university of technology education
- environment
- health services
- human settlements
- language policy
- nature conservation
- police services
- provincial public media
- public transport
- regional planning and development
- road traffic regulation
- tourism
- trade and industrial promotion
- traditional authorities
- urban and rural development
- vehicle licensing
- welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas, which include:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreational activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Coordinating Council (PCC)is a statutory body established in terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005, which brings together the three spheres of Government on matters of common interest and national importance, thereby strengthening cooperative government. Among other things, the forum looked at:

- mechanisms for monitoring job creation and implementation of the New Growth Path in all spheres of Government
- shared experiences in creating an environment for job creation in provinces
- specific provincial matters
- monitoring and evaluation.

Provincial Spatial Development Framework

The Provincial Spatial Development Framework aims to:

- be the spatial expression of the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
- guide (metropolitan, district and local) municipal IDPs and spatial development frameworks and provincial and municipal framework plans
- help prioritise and align the investment and infrastructure plans of other provincial departments, as well as national departments' and parastatals' plans and programmes in the provinces
- provide clear signals to the private sector about desired development directions
- increase predictability in the development environment, for example by establishing "no-go", "conditional" and "go" areas for development and redress of the spatial legacy of apartheid.

Local government

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997), up to 10 part-time representatives may be designated to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

The DCoGTA aims to build and strengthen the capability and accountability of provinces and municipalities.

This includes:

- continued hands-on support through the established system and capacity-building programme, focusing on critical areas such as integrated development planning, local economic development (LED), financial management, service delivery and public participation
- evaluating the impact of government programmes in municipal areas, enhancing performance and accountability by improving the quality of reporting on the Local Government Strategic Agenda and improving the monitoring, reporting and evaluation of capacity in local government
- coordinating and supporting policy development, implementing the Local Government Strategic Agenda, and monitoring and supporting service delivery.

Municipalities

The Constitution provides for three categories of municipality. There are 278 municipalities in South Africa, comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 226 local municipalities. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and service.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities).

The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems, and single-employer bodies.

South Africa has eight metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwini (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions. However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, or the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils. District councils are primarily responsible for capacity-building and district-wide planning. The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- prepare, implement and review IDPs
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems
- monitor and review municipalities' performances
- prepare municipalities' budgets
- participate in decisions about the provision of municipal services
- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.

Local Government Turnaround Strategy

The Local Government Turnaround Strategy was introduced as a government programme of action and a blueprint for better service delivery aimed at responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government. Five focus areas aimed at fast-tracking implementation of the strategy have been identified. These are:

- service delivery
- governance
- financial management
- infrastructure development
- fighting corruption.

The department aims to review all pieces of legislation that impede service delivery. In this regard, more than 300 sections of legislation that fall under this category have been identified and reviews undertaken.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant

The MIG aims to eradicate municipal infrastructure backlogs in poor communities to ensure the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, roads and community lighting.

The DCoGTA is responsible for managing and transferring the MIG and provides support to provinces and municipalities on implementing MIG projects.

Community Work Programme

The CWP aims to create one million work opportunities by 2018/19, covering all local municipalities. The CWP is a key Government initiative aimed at mobilising communities to provide regular and predictable work opportunities at the local government level.

The purpose of the programme is to provide an employment safety net for those without access to opportunities designed to lift them out of poverty.

The programme recognises that policies to address unemployment and create decent work will take time to reach people living in marginalised areas where few opportunities exist.

Local economic development

LED is an approach towards economic development that allows and encourages local people to work together to achieve sustainable economic growth and development, thereby bringing economic benefits and improved quality of life to all residents in a local municipal area.

LED is intended to maximise the economic potential of municipal localities and enhance the resilience of macro-economic growth through increased local economic growth, employment creation and development initiatives within the context of sustainable development. The "local" in economic development points to the fact that the political jurisdiction at local level is often the most appropriate place for economic intervention, as it carries alongside it the accountability and legitimacy of a democratically elected body.

LED programmes provide support in the following areas:

- developing and reviewing national policy, strategy and guidelines on LED
- providing direct and hands-on support to provincial and local

government
- managing the LED Fund
- managing and providing technical support to nodal economic development planning
- facilitating, coordinating and monitoring donor programmes
- assisting LED capacity-building processes.

Through these interventions and resources, local role players and interest groups are mobilised to achieve economic growth and creating jobs to reduce poverty.

Municipal Demarcation Board

The Municipal Demarcation Board is an independent authority responsible for the determination of municipal boundaries. The board's status as an independent authority is also protected by Section 3 of the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act of 1998 and various judgements by the Constitutional Court.

In addition to the determinations and re-determinations of municipal boundaries, the MDB is also mandated by legislation to declare the district management areas; to delimit wards for local elections; and to assess the capacity of municipalities to perform their functions.

South African Local Government Association

SALGA is a listed public entity, established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), and recognised by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, in terms of the Organised Local Government Act of 1997.

SALGA represents local government on numerous intergovernmental forums such as the PCC, Minister and MECs (MinMec) forum, the Budget Forum, the NCOP and the Financial and Fiscal Commission.

SALGA aims, among other things, to:
- transform local government to enable it to fulfil its developmental role
- enhance the role of provincial local government associations as provincial representatives and consultative bodies on local government
- raise the profile of local government
- ensure full participation of women in local government
- act as the national employers' organisation for municipal and provincial member employers
- provide legal assistance to its members, using its discretion in connection with matters that affect employee relations.

SALGA is funded through a combination of sources, including a national government grant, membership fees from provincial and local government associations that are voluntary members, and donations from the donor community for specific projects.

The Human Resource (HR) Management and Development Strategy aims to turn municipalities into professional and responsive entities.

The strategy is intended to help municipalities make better use of the human capital at their disposal, for them to be able to fulfil their important objective of accelerating service delivery as well as promoting development in local government as a whole.

The strategy emphasises employing individuals who are prepared to extend themselves in serving the needs of people, are professional, and are constantly learning and developing themselves.

One of SALGA's achievements was the establishment of public accounts committees on municipalities, which allowed councils themselves to exercise accountability.

Disaster management

The Disaster Management Act of 2002 was promulgated in 2003. The National Disaster-Management Centre and functional disaster-management centres and advisory forums were established in eight provinces.

The National Disaster-Management Advisory Forum was recognised by the United Nations (UN) as the national platform for reducing disaster risk.

Through the National Disaster-Management Centre, the DCoGTA registered unit standards for levels three to seven with the South African Qualifications Authority for a national certificate in disaster risk management.

The department also developed regulations for recruiting and using disaster-management volunteers.

Traditional affairs

In September 2013, Cabinet approved the publication of a Bill that would pave the way for the Khoisan people to be recognised. The Bill makes statutory provisions for the recognition of the Khoisan and also addresses limitations of existing legislation relating to traditional leadership and governance. The Bill will contribute to the NDP's key target relating to broadening social cohesion and unity while addressing the inequalities of the past.

South Africa also has provincial houses of traditional leaders in the following six provinces: Eastern Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

National and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government.

Local houses of traditional leaders deepen and cement the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Traditional leadership

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised.

Government acknowledges the critical role of traditional leadership institutions in South Africa's constitutional democracy and in communities, particularly in relation to the rural-development strategy.

It therefore remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leadership.

To this end, numerous pieces of legislation have been passed and various programmes implemented to ensure that traditional leadership makes an important contribution to the development of society.

The department is also working on a range of issues, which include policies on unity and diversity, initiation, traditional healing, traditional leaders' protocol, family trees, the remuneration and benefits of traditional leaders based on uniform norms and standards, and involving the Khoisan people in the system of governance in South Africa.

Parliament extended the term of the Commission of Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims, which ended in 2015, from 2016 to 2020 – to allow the commission time to finalise outstanding disputes and claims, and deal with the 320 traditional leadership disputes and claims per year that

were envisaged.

Traditional councils

Legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy. It states that 40% of members must be elected and that one third of members must be women.

Legislation has also opened up an opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve cooperative governance.

Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with Government in all spheres.

The National Khoisan Council aims to unite the Khoisan communities and create a platform through which they can raise issues affecting them as a group of communities. The most important issue is the statutory recognition and inclusion of the Khoisan people in formal government structures.

Houses of traditional leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation.

The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the then National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997).

Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003.

It is tasked with restoring the dignity of traditional leaders and their communities by investigating and ensuring that the institution of traditional leadership is restored to where it belongs. It also investigates all claims to any position of traditional leadership (king/queen/principal/senior traditional leader, as well as headmen and headwomen), including disputes over the boundaries of traditional councils.

Section 25 of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003 requires that the commission investigate and make recommendations on cases where there is doubt as to whether a kingship, principal traditional leadership or senior traditional leadership and headmanship was established in accordance with customary law and customs.

Department of Public Service and Administration (DPSA)

The DPSA is at the centre of Government. It plays a major policy role in establishing norms and standards for the Public Service, which ensure that service-delivery mechanisms, integrated systems and access, HR, institutional development and governance initiatives are responsive to the needs of citizens.

This mandate has evolved over the years from transforming and modernising the Public Service through the development and implementation of policies and frameworks, to providing implementation support to ensure compliance, improve service delivery and strengthen monitoring and evaluation.

In terms of the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended, the Minister of Public Service and Administration is responsible for establishing norms and standards relating to:

- the functions of the Public Service
- organisational structures and the establishment of departments and other organisational and governance arrangements in the Public Service
- labour relations, conditions of service and other employment practices for employees
- the health and wellness of employees
- information management
- electronic government in the Public Service
- integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption
- transformation, reform, innovation and any other intervention to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

The DPSA has identified the quintessential focus areas that will form part of the overall work of the Public Service and Administration Portfolio over the next four-year period. These will serve as the main strategic indicators that will point to whether the Public Service is effective, efficient and development-oriented.

The focus areas are to ensure that the following is done and made available:

- services rendered with speed
- services easily accessible to citizens
- services provided at lower cost
- appropriately skilled public servants to render services.
- competitive conditions of service for public servants and the achievement of labour peace.
- no corruption
- a positive impact on the lives of people and the economy.

The Minister of Public Service and Administration and union leaders launched the Public Service Charter in August 2013. The Public Service Charter is a commitment between the State as the employer and labour, which seeks to professionalise and encourage excellence in the Public Service and improve service delivery. It also introduces service standards in the Public Service, with a call to public servants to meet and exceed them.

The department's budget allocation for the 2017/18 financial year was R877.1 million.

Anti-corruption bureau

The Minister of Public Service and Administration launched the anti-corruption bureau to fast-track disciplinary cases in the public sector. The bureau forms part of amendments to the Public Service Act of 1994.

The amendments also include banning all public servants from doing business with the Government.

Cabinet and provinces have adopted a manual on procedures

for recruiting, and/or retaining officials that resign.

Uniform standards will be applied to all public servants across Government.

The bureau will conduct investigations, institute disciplinary proceedings and work with existing law enforcement agencies, such as the Special Investigating Unit and National Prosecuting Authority, and the other related agencies such as the Financial Intelligence Centre and the South African Revenue Service.

Criminal cases will be referred to law enforcement agencies.

The bureau also has to provide technical assistance and advisory support to deal with disciplinary matters in the public administration, while ensuring that the public sector applies uniform disciplinary standards.

A case management system allows officials to monitor the progress of cases to ensure that they are finalised speedily. By 2014, an agreement was already in place with the National Prosecuting Authority to ensure that whistle-blowers were protected.

The passing of the Public Administration Management Bill in March 2014 was expected to change the face of the state at national, provincial, and local levels. The Bill was a major step forward in the building of an effective, efficient, and ethical Public Service.

An effective, efficient and ethical Public Service is a central element in the building of a democratic developmental state as mandated by the NDP.

Among other things, the Public Administration Management Bill prohibits public administration officials from conducting business with the State and officials in public administration are required to declare the financial and business interests of their immediate family members.

By prohibiting officials from conducting business with the State, Government is eliminating incentives and opportunities for corruption and unethical conduct.

Role players

Community development workers (CDWs)

CDWs link early childhood development centres with programmes of the Department of Social Development. In the area of HIV and AIDS, CDWs disseminate user-friendly information on these conditions and mobilise communities to actively participate in HIV and AIDS-related awareness programmes, including World AIDS Day.

To promote food security, CDWs identify indigent households and mobilise them to benefit from the departments of agriculture and rural development's food security programmes.

To contribute to job creation, CDWs identify and link unemployed youths to Government's Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and Community Works Programme.

CDWs are agents of participatory democracy. Their functions include:

- communicating information from and about Government and other information to communities in an accessible way
- providing feedback to Government regarding community experiences of service delivery and governance
- providing early warning to Government of any obvious reduction in service standards and performance that could lead to the collapse or significant impairment of overall service functions
- reporting any corruption or irregularity encountered within the sphere of Government, government departments, community organisations or the private sector.

Public Service Commission (PSC)

The PSC is tasked and empowered to, amongst others, investigate, monitor, and evaluate the organisation and administration of the Public Service.

This mandate also entails the evaluation of achievements, or lack thereof of government programmes. The PSC also has an obligation to promote measures that would ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service and to promote values and principles of public administration as set out in the Constitution, throughout the Public Service.

The PSC has an obligation to promote measures that will ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service and to promote values and principles of public administration, as set out in the Constitution, throughout the Public Service.

The Constitution mandates the commission to:

- promote the values and principles governing public administration
- investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation, administration and the personnel practices of the Public Service
- propose measures to ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service
- give directions aimed at ensuring that personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals comply with the constitutionally prescribed values and principles
- report its activities and the performance of its functions, including any findings it may make and to provide an evaluation of the extent to which it complies constitutionally with the prescribed values and principles
- either of its own accord or on receipt of any complaint:
  - investigate and evaluate the application of personnel and public-administration practices, and report to the relevant executive authority and legislature
  - investigate grievances of employees in the Public Service concerning official acts or omissions, and recommend appropriate remedies
  - monitor and investigate adherence to applicable procedures in the Public Service
- advise national and provincial organs of State regarding personnel practices in the Public Service.

To be effective, the Public Service has to develop a deeper understanding of the constitutional imperatives and Government mandate of providing a better life for the country's citizens.

This would make it easier for Government to develop the necessary skills in its human capital to deal with the challenges faced by South Africans across the board.

Government Employees Medical Aid Scheme (GEMS)

GEMS was registered on 1 January 2005 specifically to meet the healthcare needs of government employees. Its mission is to provide all Public Service employees with equitable access to affordable and comprehensive healthcare benefits.

As the second largest medical scheme in South Africa, GEMS remains the fastest growing medical scheme.

In terms of accessibility; GEMS has made considerable

inroads in covering lower level employees, with 45% of Level 1 to Level 5 employees now covered by the scheme. Approximately R1 in every R5 spent on private healthcare is spent by GEMS, and approximately R1 out of every R10 spent on healthcare (private and public) in South Africa is spent by GEMS.

The scheme's key future priorities include :

- reducing medical scheme costs through strategic sourcing and specialist networks
- promoting member retention
- introducing workplace-based exercise and health programmes for Public Service employees.

Centre for Public Sector Innovation (CPSI)

The CPSI was established to identify, support and nurture innovation in the public sector to improve service delivery.

The CPSI works through partnerships with other departments and state-owned enterprises to, for example, enhance the productive capacity of visually impaired educators by providing data-card devices for them to access teaching material without the use of Braille.

The CPSI runs targeted innovation programmes to support the outcomes of rural development, accelerated service delivery at local government level, as well as human settlement.

National School of Government

The National School of Government offers training and development opportunities to public servants at national, provincial and local level of government.

This includes training of new Public Service employees as part of their probation, re-orientation of senior managers and orientation of unemployed youth graduates, preparing them for Public Service employment opportunities.

The school is intended to educate, train, professionalise and develop a highly capable, skilled and committed Public Service cadre, with a sense of national duty and a common culture and ethos.

It will nurture a culture of professionalism and innovative thinking and serve as a catalyst for reform and modernisation, in pursuit of a performance-oriented Public Service. Core training is not outsourced, but is performed internally.

The school provides everything from adult basic education and training to higher education courses, and is registered to carry out the necessary accreditation.

The school runs like a customer-focused business, with participants having to pay tuition fees. It is funded by the Public Service Sector Education and Training Authority (known as Pseta) and skills development levies are drawn from departments' payrolls.

All new public servants are required to undergo induction training.

Public Service Month

South Africa marks Public Service Month in September each year.

It is a regular national event that requires all the national and provincial departments to participate by putting in place activities and campaigns to improve service delivery. Public Service Month is a follow-up to and mirrors the UN and Africa Public Service Day, which takes place on 23 June every year.

Batho Pele

The *Batho Pele* Campaign is, aimed at improving service delivery to the public.

Batho Pele is a Sesotho phrase meaning "People First".

From this concept, eight principles were derived and made known in a White Paper as the principles for transforming public service delivery, which are:

- regular consultation with customers
- set service standards
- increased access to services
- higher levels of courtesy
- more and better information about services
- increased openness and transparency about services
- remedying failures and mistakes
- giving the best possible value for money.

Batho Pele Awards

The annual National *Batho Pele* Excellence Awards serve to recognise public servants who are selfless, dedicated, committed and who go the extra mile in servicing the citizens. Eligible to public servants across the three spheres of Government, the awards seek to entrench the transformation and professionalisation of the Public Service.

The awards reward excellent service delivery and recognise the contribution by public servants across Government in their service delivery improvement initiatives.

Department of Public Works (DPW)

The DPW is mandated to be the custodian and portfolio manager of national government's immovable assets.

Following the operationalisation of the Property Management Trading Entity, the department's role will now be policy formulation, coordination, regulation and oversight relating to the provision of accommodation and expert built environment services to client departments at the national government level; as well as, through the Property Management Trading Entity, the planning, acquiring, managing and disposing of immovable assets in the department's custody.

The DPW is further mandated to coordinate and provide strategic leadership in job creation initiatives through the implementation of the EPWP. Public works is constitutionally designated as a concurrent function exercised by both the national and provincial spheres of Government.

Expanded Public Works Programme

The EPWP is a government initiative aimed at alleviating poverty and unemployment within the South African communities through the provision of short term to medium term work opportunities to unskilled and unemployed South Africans.

The EPWP participants' employment period is determined by the project implementation period. Besides, the number of work opportunities created, the programme has successfully made a significant socio-economic impact to the communities through the creation and maintenance of community assets.

The EPWP's training focus, which is in partnership with a number of training providers, remains as one of the most significant parts of the programme.

Department of Home Affairs (DHA)

The DHA is the custodian of the identity of all South African citizens, critical to which is the issuance of birth, marriage and death certificates; identity documents (IDs) and passports; as well as citizenship; naturalisation and permanent residency certificates.

This goes beyond merely issuing documents. It encompasses the safe maintenance and archiving of biometric and demographic records of citizens and residents of the country.

The department is also responsible for the effective, secure and humane management of immigration.

Statutory bodies falling under the department include the following, among others:

- Immigration Advisory Board
- Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs
- Refugee Appeal Board.

A major focus for the DHA is the transformation of the department, so that it can deliver a service that is efficient, accessible and corruption-free. Several closely related strategic drivers are used in this regard.

The department's budget for the 2017/18 financial year R8.3 billion.

Legislation and policies

The mandate of the DHA is derived from the Constitution and various Acts of Parliament and policy documents. The department's services are divided into two broad categories: civic services and immigration services. Both must ensure the efficient determination and safeguarding of the identity and status of citizens, and provide for the regulation of immigration to ensure security, promote development and fulfil South Africa's international obligations.

The department oversees the implementation of, among others, the following legislation:

- South African citizenship is regulated by the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), and regulations issued in terms thereof.
- South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 17 of 2010)
- Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 18 of 2010)
- Immigration Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 13 of 2011) which provides for, among others, revising provisions relating to the Immigration Advisory Board
- Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998) gives effect within South Africa to the relevant international legal instruments, principles and standards relating to refugees; provides for the reception into South Africa of asylum seekers; regulates applications for and recognition of refugee status; and provides for the rights and obligations flowing from such status, and related matters
- Refugee Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 12 of 2011), which contains certain amendments to eliminate abuse of the asylum system and redefines in a clear and transparent manner the criteria for refugees seeking asylum
- Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), as amended by the Immigration Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 19 of 2004), provides for a stricter immigration policy to control illegal immigration. Implementation of administrative fines and other measures came into effect in 2003; the Act was later amended to clarify and revise immigration and permit procedures to facilitate importing skills

Citizenship

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act of 2010 amends provisions of the South African Citizenship Act of 1995 that deal with citizenship by birth and naturalisation, and the loss of citizenship in terms of the mandate of the DHA.

South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- birth or descent
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship
- registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South African fathers or mothers
- an application for exemption, in terms of Section 26(4) of the Act.

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act of 2010, among others, ensures that a child:

- born to a South African parent inside or outside the country is a South African by birth, as long as the child is registered according to South African law
- born of non-South African parents, but adopted by South African parents is a citizen by descent
- born of non-South African parents in South Africa, may, at the age of 18 years, apply for naturalisation; while they are minors, such children will retain the citizenship of their parents
- with no claim to any citizenship will be given South African citizenship, in accordance with international law and practice.

National Population Register

Government aims to ensure that registration at birth is the only entry point to the national population register. This will be achieved by increasing the number of births registered within 30 calendar days from 750 000 in 2016/17 to 950 000 in 2018/19.

The DHA commits to finalising the design of a National Identity System (NIS) that will replace the National Population Register, which dates back to the 1980s.

The NIS will be a secure integrated system recording identities and status of all people who visit or reside in South Africa.

All systems of the DHA will be automated and connected to the NIS. In this regard, one of the new targets for 2017/18 will be piloting of the full scope of biometrics at a port of entry. This entails improving the movement control system and digitising citizenship and amendment processes.

As part of this process, the DHA discontinued the manual processing of passports. Passports can only be acquired through the 179 live capture offices across the country.

Immigration

The DHA's National Immigration Branch is responsible for control over the admission of foreigners for residence and departure from South Africa. The immigration policy aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for relevant permits to legalise their stay in the country
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa
- attract scarce skills required by the economy, in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment

- temporary and permanent residence permits issue as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures
- ensure that security considerations are fully satisfied and the State regains control over the immigration of foreigners to South Africa
- ensure that economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour; foreign investment is facilitated; the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled and academic exchange programmes in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) are facilitated
- ensure that tourism is promoted
- ensure that the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers
- ensure that a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens
- ensure that a human-rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

The department prioritised the issuance of quota work permits to foreigners who fall within specific occupational classes or specific professional categories.

In this context, details of specific occupational classes and specific professional categories and the applicable quotas are published annually in the *Government Gazette*, after consultation with other stakeholder departments.

The Immigration Amendment Act of 2011 provides for, among other things:

- revising provisions relating to the Immigrating Advisory Board
- revising provisions relating to the making of regulations
- the designation of ports of entry
- revising provisions relating to visas for temporary sojourn in South Africa
- the mandatory transmission and use of information on advance passenger processing
- the transmission of passenger name record information
- revising provisions relating to permanent residence
- revising penal provisions.

Visas

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid and acceptable travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits, which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry.

The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreigners at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry; therefore, no additional permit will be issued.

In October 2015, new visa changes were introduced to address concerns raised by tourists, South African travellers and stakeholders in the tourism sector regarding revisions to regulations introduced in 2014.

The amended allowances now require South African children travelling through South African borders to have their parents' identification and citizenship details printed in their passports, doing away with the requirement to carry unabridged birth certificates on entry or exit.

For school tours and other group tours including under-age children, entry and exit regulations now only require confirmation letters from the school principals or a similar authority, along with the amended passport requirements. This authority will also be extended to include registered sports bodies on tour.

In respect of inbound travellers (international visitors) where visas are required, provision of original birth certificates or certified copies of required documents would be continued during the visa application process, as this is in line with practice in many other countries.

Travellers from visa-exempt countries travelling with children should bring with them proof of the relation and consent from the absent parents or guardians.

The DHA outsourced the handling and processing of visa applications to Visa Facilitation Services (VFS) Global. VFS Global has opened 12 offices in nine provinces and 11 cities within South Africa.

Visa and permit applications will be accepted across these 12 centres and subsequently assessed by the DHA head offices in Pretoria. Non-South Africans with a legal residency permit in South Africa can apply for a visa or permit at these centres.

These could be found at:

- Bloemfontein, Free State
- Bruma (Bedfordview), Gauteng
- Cape Town, Western Cape
- Durban, KwaZulu-Natal
- George, Eastern Cape
- Johannesburg, Gauteng
- Kimberley, Northern Cape
- Nelspruit, Mpumalanga
- Port Elizabeth, Eastern Cape
- Pretoria, Gauteng
- Polokwane, Limpopo
- Rustenburg, North West.

Zimbabwean nationals on the Special Dispensation for Zimbabweans Project, Asylum and Refugee cases will still be directly handled by the DHA. The VFS does not have the authority to grant or refuse visas as that decision still lies with the DHA.

New regulations state that one cannot change from a visitor's visa to another type of visa; these applications for change of conditions must be made at a mission abroad, i.e. an embassy or consulate, where the applicant is an ordinary resident or holds citizenship. However, exceptional circumstances include if an applicant is in need of life-saving medical treatment or is an accompanying spouse or child of a business or work visa holder who wish to apply for a study or work visa.

Life partners looking to apply for temporary residency in South Africa based on a life partner visa will need to prove that they have been together for two years; those applying for permanent residency will need to prove that they have been together for five years.

Spouses looking to apply for temporary residency in South Africa based on a spousal visa will not need to prove that they have been in a previous relationship for a certain number of years. If a partner or spouse was in a previous marriage, it is necessary to provide official documents that prove the dissolution of such marriage either by divorce or the death of the other spouse. Life partners will need to attend separate but

simultaneous interviews to determine the authenticity of the existence of their relationship.

The DHA has officially eradicated the exceptional skills and quota permit categories. Current exceptional skills and quota permit holders will not be able to renew their permits going forward.

Those looking to renew their visa while in the country must do so 60 days before the current one expires.

Applications for a general work visa will have to include a certificate from the Department of Labour confirming the following:

- despite a thorough search, the prospective employer could not find a South African employee with the skills and experience equivalent to those of the applicant
- the applicant has proven skills and experience in line with the job offer
- the salary and benefits of the applicant are not inferior to those of citizens or permanent residents
- the contract signed by both the employer and applicant stipulates conditions that are in line the labour laws of South Africa.

The applicant will need a document to prove that their qualifications have been approved by the South African Qualifications Authority. This document must be translated into one of the official languages of South Africa by a sworn translator. The work visa will be valid for a maximum of five years.

The critical skills work visa is based on a list of occupations that are considered critical (examples include agricultural engineers, land surveyor and forestry technicians) in South Africa. To apply for a visa in this category, the applicant does not need a job offer, but within one year of being granted a visa, will need to prove that he or she is gainfully employed within their field. This visa replaced the exceptional skills and quota visas.

Holders of visitor's visas who wish to change the terms or status of their visa must submit an application no less than 60 days prior to the current visa's date of expiration. It is no longer possible to change from a visitor's visa to another visa category within South Africa.

It is a requirement for businesses to get a recommendation letter from the Department of Trade and Industry for a business visa. The Department of Trade and Industry will conduct a thorough forensic assessment of the feasibility of the business entity as well as the contribution to the national interest of South Africa.

A minimum of R5 million must be invested into South Africa. Any accountant registered with the South African Institute of Professional Accountants or the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants can verify the availability of funds for a business visa.

The business owner's workforce must be 60% South Africans or must be permanent residents employed in various positions. Business visas will be granted for no longer than three years at a time. No business visa will be issued to a foreigner who intends to establish or invest in a business that is listed as an undesirable business undertaking.

To obtain an intra-company visa the employee in question must be employed with the foreign office/business for a minimum of six months before being eligible for transfer to South Africa. This visa will now be available for four years but is non-renewable.

Holders of a study visa may not conduct part-time work exceeding 20 hours of labour a week. Both study and exchange visas will only be issued for the duration of the study period or exchange programme, respectively.

An exchange visa (for people under 25 years) will not be granted to conduct work pertaining to what is inconsiderate an undesirable work as published by the Minister in the gazette, after consultation with the Minister of Trade and Industry.

An asylum transit visa issued at a port of entry will be valid for a period of five days to enable the holder to report at a nearest refugee reception office.

Fines will no longer be charged for overstaying. People who overstay for a prescribed number of times will be declared as undesirable.

South Africa's new Passport and Travel Documents Act, 1994 (Act 4 of 1994) officially came into effect in June 2015. Under the new legislation, South Africans and foreign nationals travelling with children under the age of 18 are required to produce unabridged birth certificates.

It is part of government's commitment to safeguard the best interests of children and prevent child-trafficking.

Parents who needed to travel with their children and could not get unabridged birth certificates in time, would be able to leave the country if they had a letter indicating that they had applied for the documents.

The requirements were aimed at establishing the principle that all children must have the consent of their parents when travelling into or out of South Africa.

The Chinese government consented to increasing the Visa Facilitation Centre footprint in China from four to nine, which is unprecedented given China's strict regulations on foreign visa issuance.

The DHA is committed to contributing to regional integration in Africa and efforts to ease the movement of Africans on the continent.

The department also initiated the first ever community border crossing point between South Africa and Botswana at Tshidilamolomo in the North West, with the aim to roll these out to other border crossings with selected other neighbouring countries.

The DHA has implemented biometric capture at OR Tambo, King Shaka, Cape Town and Lanseria international airports, which has enabled it to abolish the transit visa and allow prospective travellers – mainly from China – to apply for visas through accredited tourism operators.

Control of travellers

People arriving in South Africa by air, sea or land have to pass through customs control, where they may be questioned and their baggage scanned or searched for dutiable, restricted or prohibited goods. Visitors found with undeclared, restricted or prohibited goods could be fined or may face prosecution.

South Africa acceded to the Admission Temporaire/ Temporary Admission (ATA) convention in 1975, which means foreign visitors companies and individuals can approach their local chambers of commerce for advice regarding the issuing of an ATA Carnet for the temporary import of certain goods in a simplified method. An example would be broadcasters or

sponsors of international sporting events taking place in South Africa.

Control of sojourn

Foreigners who are in the country illegally and are, therefore, guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, such as holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, people who are in South Africa illegally are prosecuted, removed or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the department are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The DHA is responsible for:

- processing applications for immigration permits for consideration
- admitting people suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa.

The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns, or to establish new concerns in South Africa.

The DHA is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently and, in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits.

The DHA considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. In terms of new regulations, regions will be responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees, in respect of permanent residence. They will also do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries in this regard may be made to the nearest office of the DHA in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the DG of the DHA for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting, in Pretoria.

The department has prioritised temporary residence permits, as this category of foreigners is at risk of being in the country illegally, if their applications are not finalised in time.

The DHA will prioritise applications for permanent residence permits from holders of quota work permits and exceptional skills work permits, in line with the country's objective of attracting critical skills.

Temporary residence

The Zimbabwean Special Dispensation Permit (ZSP) was announced in March 2014, replacing the Dispensation for Zimbabwe Project (DZP) which officially closed on 31 December 2014.

Under the DZP, Zimbabwean nationals, who were in the country illegally, were granted an opportunity to legalise their stay. The special dispensation was introduced in 2009 to regulate the stay of Zimbabweans working illegally in South Arica because of the political and socio-economic situation in their country.

Approximately 295 000 Zimbabweans applied for the permit. Just over 245 000 permits were issued, with the balance being denied due to lack of passports or non-fulfilment of other requirements.

The new ZSP was accepted by Cabinet in August 2014. Zimbabwean nationals who were in possession of the DZP permits were eligible to apply for the ZSP if they wished to extend their stay in South Africa. Certain conditions applied, which included a valid Zimbabwean passport; evidence of employment, business, or accredited study, and a clear criminal record.

The ZSP allowed permit-holders to live, work, conduct business and study in South Africa for the duration of the permit, which would be valid until 31 December 2017.

In August 2017, Cabinet approved the reopening of the application process for the current ZSP holders, under certain conditions. The ZSP allows applications from Zimbabweans with a valid Zimbabwean passport, evidence of employment, business or accredited study and a clear criminal record and if successful grants them a permit to stay and work, study or run a business in South Africa.

VFS Global managed applications for ZSP permits while the DHA adjudicated applications. VFS opened four new offices in provinces where it was anticipated that there would be large numbers of applicants. These were Gauteng, Western Cape, Limpopo and Mpumalanga. The new offices were in addition to the 11 offices already opened, all of which dealt with ZSP applications.

ZSP permit-holders, who wished to stay in South Africa after the expiry of their ZSP, would need to return to Zimbabwe to apply for mainstream visas and permits under the Immigration Act.

In January 2016, the Lesotho Special Permit (LSP) was launched. The purpose of the programme is to to regularise the stay of Lesotho nationals currently residing in South Africa illegally.

It is meant to document Lesotho nationals who are working, studying or running businesses in South Africa, without appropriate documentation.

The special permits will be valid for four years. They will expire on 31 December 2019. More than 400 000 Lesotho nationals stood to benefit from the LSP.

Digital records

The DHA aimed to digitise 286 million records at its disposal through the digitisation project launched in November 2016, in partnership with Statistics South Africa (Stats SA).

Birth certificates would be prioritised, followed by other documents.

The digitisation project, converting information into a digital format process, follows close collaboration between the DHA and Stats SA. It signifies a transition from the old systems of record-keeping to a modern, efficient and secure storage method.

Digitising records will make them more easily accessible.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Health

Significant progress has been made over the last decade and more towards ensuring a long and healthy life for all South Africans, which is Outcome 2 of Government's 2014 – 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

Over the medium term, the Department of Health (DoH) will continue to contribute to increased life expectancy and improved quality of life for South Africans through sustaining the expansion of the HIV and AIDS treatment and prevention programme, revitalising public healthcare facilities, and ensuring the provision of specialised tertiary hospital services.

The year 2016 marked the second year of the first five-year building block towards the achievement of the 2030 vision and goals of The National Development Plan (NDP).

The 2030 vision for health in Chapter 10 of the NDP is to achieve a health system that works for everyone and produces positive health outcomes.

In support of this vision, the strategic thrust of the health sector continue to focus on four outcomes:

- Outcome 1: Increase the life expectancy of all South Africans.
- Outcome 2: Decrease maternal, child and infant mortality.
- Outcome 3: Combating HIV and AIDS, and decreasing the burden of disease from tuberculosis (TB).
- Outcome 4: A strengthened health system.

The NDP 2030 identified a set of nine priorities that highlight the key interventions required to achieve a more effective health system.

The nine priorities aim to:

- address the social determinants that affect health and diseases
- strengthen the health system
- improve health information systems
- prevent and reduce the disease burden and promote health
- finance universal healthcare coverage
- improve human resources in the health sector
- review management positions and appointments, and strengthen accountability mechanisms
- improve quality by using evidence
- establish meaningful public-private partnerships.

The DoH's five-year strategic goals to be achieved by 2022 are as follows:

- prevent disease and reduce its burden, and promote health
- make progress towards universal health coverage through the development of the National Health Insurance (NHI) scheme, and improve the readiness of health facilities for its implementation
- re-engineer primary healthcare by increasing the number of ward-based outreach teams, contracting general practitioners and district specialist teams, and expanding school health services
- improve health facility planning by implementing norms and standards
- improve financial management by improving capacity, contract management, revenue collection and supply chain management reforms
- develop an efficient health management and information system for improved decision-making
- improve the quality of healthcare by setting and monitoring national norms and standards, improving system for user feedback, increasing safety in healthcare, and by improving clinical governance
- improve human resources for health by ensuring adequate training and accountability measures.

Legislation and policies

The legislative mandate of the DoH is derived from the Constitution and several pieces of legislation passed by Parliament.

These include the following:

- The National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003): Provides a framework for a structured health system within the Republic, taking into account the obligations imposed by the Constitution and other laws on the national, provincial and local governments regarding health services.
- The Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965 (Act 101 of 1965): Provides for the registration of medicines and other medicinal products to ensure their safety, quality and efficacy, and also provides for transparency in the pricing of medicines.
- The Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973): Provides for the control of hazardous substances, in particular those emitting radiation.
- The Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1973 (Act 78 of 1973): Provides for medical examinations on people suspected of having contracted occupational diseases, especially in mines, and for compensation in respect of those diseases.
- The Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act 53 of 1974): Provides for the regulation of the pharmacy profession, including community service by pharmacists.
- The Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act 56 of 1974): Provides for the regulation of health professions, in particular medical practitioners, dentists, psychologists and other related health professions, including community service by these professionals.
- The Dental Technicians Act, 1979 (Act 19 of 1979): Provides for the regulation of dental technicians and for the establishment of a council to regulate the profession.
- The Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982): Provides for the regulation of health practitioners such as chiropractors, homeopaths, etc., and for the establishment of a council to regulate these professions.
- The South African Medical Research Council (SAMRC) Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991): Provides for the establishment of the MRC and its role in relation to health research.
- The Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996 (Act 92 of 1996): Provides a legal framework for the termination of pregnancies based on choice under certain circumstances.
- The Sterilisation Act, 1998 (Act 44 of 1998): Provides a legal framework for sterilisations, including for people with mental health challenges.
- The Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998): Provides for the regulation of the medical schemes industry to ensure consonance with national health objectives.
- The Tobacco Products Control Act, 1993 (Act 83 of 1993): Provides for the control of tobacco products, the prohibition of smoking in public places and of advertisements of tobacco products, as well as the sponsoring of events by the tobacco industry.
- The National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS) Act, 2000 (Act 37 of 2000): Provides for a statutory body that offers

In 2016, plans were set in place to address the high fatality rate caused by acute malnutrition among children in Gauteng.

The Department of Health's (DoH) annual report revealed that about 3 040 new cases of acute malnutrition were identified in 2015/16. About 1 512 children were admitted at different health facilities and about 113 deaths were recorded as a result of acute malnutrition.

In an effort to fight malnutrition, the DoH's antenatal care will identify women at risk of malnutrition due to low income and provide them with food supplementations. The Department of Social Development will continue to provide food parcels."

The DoH will continue to train doctors and nurses in all healthcare facilities on the correct classification of severe acute malnutrition for early diagnosis and immediate access to appropriate treatment.

Early childhood development centres in Gauteng with children from low-income households are also trained to identify children vulnerable to malnutrition.

laboratory services to the public health sector.

- The Council for Medical Schemes (CMS) Levy Act, 2000 (Act 58 of 2000): Provides a legal framework for the CMS to charge medical schemes certain fees.
- The Mental Health Care Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002): Provides a legal framework for mental health in the country and, in particular, the admission and discharge of mental health patients in mental health institutions, with an emphasis on human rights for mentally ill patients.
- The Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005): Provides for the regulation of the nursing profession.
- The Traditional Health Practitioners Act, 2007 (Act 22 of 2007): Provides for the establishment of the Interim Traditional Health Practitioners Council, and registration, training and practices of traditional health practitioners in the country.
- The Foodstuffs, Cosmetics and Disinfectants Act, 1972 (Act 54 of 1972): Provides for the regulation of foodstuffs, cosmetics and disinfectants, in particular quality standards that must be complied with by manufacturers, as well as the importation and exportation of these items.
- The Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), Sections 212 4(a) and 212 8(a): Provides for establishing the cause of non-natural deaths.
- The Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005): The Act gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution; to set out principles relating to the care and protection of children, to define parental responsibilities and rights, to make further provision regarding children's court.
- The Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993): Provides for the requirements with which employers must comply to create a safe working environment for employees in the workplace.
- The Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993): Provides for compensation for disablement caused by occupational injuries or diseases sustained or contracted by employees in the course of their employment, and for death resulting from such injuries or disease.
- The National Roads Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996): Provides for the testing and analysis of drunk drivers.
- The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 108 of 1996): Pertinent sections provide for the rights of access to healthcare services, including reproductive health and emergency medical treatment.
- The Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998): Provides for the measures that must be put into operation in the workplace to eliminate discrimination and promote affirmative action.
- The State Information Technology Act, 1998 (Act 88 of 1998): Provides for the creation and administration of an institution responsible for the State's information technology system.
- The Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998) Provides for the measures that employers are required to take to improve the levels of skills of employees in workplaces.
- The Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999): Provides for the administration of state funds by functionaries, their responsibilities and incidental matters.
- The Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000): Amplifies the constitutional provision pertaining to accessing information under the control of various bodies.
- The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000): Amplifies the constitutional provisions pertaining to administrative law by codifying it.
- The Promotion of Equality and the Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000): Provides for the further amplification of the constitutional principles of equality and elimination of unfair discrimination.
- The Division of Revenue Act, 2015 (Act 1 of 2015): Provides for the manner in which revenue generated may be disbursed.
- The Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003): Provides for the promotion of black economic empowerment in the manner that the State awards contracts for services to be rendered, and incidental matters.
- The Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995): Establishes a framework to regulate key aspects of relationship between employer and employee at individual and collective level.
- The Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act 75 of 1997): Prescribes the basic or minimum conditions of employment that an employer must provide for employees covered by the Act.

Budget

From a total allocation for the year under review amounting to R42,646 billion, the department spent R42,425 billion, which is 99.5% of the available budget.

Departmental structure of the DoH

The DoH has structured it functions according to related programmes and subprogrammes to ensure optimal service delivery and comprehensive cover of the challenges faced by the department, as well as the implied functions as set out by legislation and the Constitution.

HIV and AIDS, TB and Maternal and Child Health

Subprogrammes include the following:

Between January 2016 and August 2016, the Gauteng Department of Health recruited 3 256 medical doctors and nurses in an effort to capacitate employees at public health facilities.

An open-ended block advertisement for clinical posts was expected to run throughout 2016/17 for all vacant funded posts for doctors and nurses.

There was a net gain of 2 227 nurses and 1 029 medical practitioners by the end of August 2016.

- HIV and AIDS
- TB
- Maternal and Child Health
- Youth and School Health
- Global Fund.

Primary Healthcare

This programme comprises a variety of related subprogrammes:

- District Health Services
- Environmental Health and Port Health
- Communicable Diseases
- Non-Communicable Diseases (NCDs)
- Health Promotion and Nutrition
- Mental Health
- Malaria
- Immunisation.

Hospitals, Tertiary Health Services and Human Resource Development (HRD)

Subprogrammes under this programme include:

- Tertiary Healthcare Planning and Policy
- Violence, Trauma and Emergency Medical Services
- Forensic Pathology Services
- HRD for Health Planning, Development and Management
- Office of Nursing Services
- Health Facilities Infrastructure Management.

Health Regulations and Compliance Management

The following subprogrammes are run under this programme:

- Food control; as well as Pharmaceutical and Traditional Product Regulations
- Uniform Patient Fee Schedules.

Corporate Services

This involves subprogrammes regarding legal service and parliamentary affairs.

National Health Insurance

This programme has as its focus health information monitoring and evaluation.

HIV, AIDS and TB

South Africa has rolled out the world's largest treatment programme, with over 3,4 million people initiated on anti-retroviral (ARV) treatment.

At the end of March 2016, there were 3 407 336 clients remaining on ARV treatment. The DoH revised the HIV guidelines to align them with the World Health Organisation (WHO) HIV Guidelines.

The 2016 International AIDS Conference was held in Durban, with South Africa hosting it for the second time since 2000. The four-day conference was held at the Inkosi Albert Luthuli International Convention Centre from 18 to 22 June 2016 under the theme: "Access Equity Rights Now".

Held every two years, the conference has become a barometer for government and South Africans to track advances made in controlling HIV infections.

It also provides an opportunity for people working with HIV and AIDS, sexually transmitted infections (STIs) and TB to share experiences and insights.

Key successes in the fight against HIV and AIDS have been the reduction of mother-to-child HIV transmission, which has resulted in lower child mortality rates; increasing ART coverage, which resulted in lower adult mortality rates; increasing the number of medical male circumcisions, and maintaining HIV testing at high levels.

Key challenges included strengthening prevention programmes and decreasing the numbers of new infections, scaling up the numbers of people on ART, and retaining those on treatment over time.

Research into the prevention of HIV is at the centre of government's strategy aimed at ending the pandemic that has held the world hostage for many years.

Research has shown that early treatment of infections in HIV-positive people can reduce the risk of transmission of HIV, and that the use of ARV treatment in HIV-negative people can reduce the risk of infection.

South Africa has made major gains in the fight against HIV and AIDS in the past 10 years, with infections dropping from 681 434 in 2006 to just 150 375 in 2016. Deaths due to TB dropped from 69 916 in 2009 to 37 878 in 2015.

HIV, one of the most severe diseases globally, claimed the lives of 1,1 million people worldwide in 2015 alone. TB is the main cause of death among HIV-infected people, accounting for around one in three AIDS-related deaths.

South Africa is one of the recipients of Global Fund against AIDS, TB and Malaria, which was established in 2002.

The fund is used for HIV and AIDS, TB and malaria initiatives in developing nations. The report also declared that AIDS-related deaths in children under five years of age had decreased from 25 000 in 2000 to 3 800 in 2014.

March is the annual TB awareness month, and Government used the opportunity to launch the new five-year National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV, TB and STIs for the period 2017 to 2022.

South Africa's response to HIV and TB epidemics means that the average South African now lives nearly a decade longer than they did in 2004.

World AIDS Day

World AIDS Day is commemorated each year on 1 December and is an opportunity for every community to unite in the fight against HIV, show support for people living with HIV and remember those who have died.

The slogan for World AIDS Day 2016 was "It is in Our Hands to End HIV and TB". World AIDS Day 2016 presented the chance to reflect on the achievements of the NSP on HIV, STIs and TB, 2012 to 2016, which was coming to an end; as well as plan ahead for the next five-year NSP on HIV, STIs and TB.

Population statistics

For 2017, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) estimates the mid-year population at 56,52 million. Approximately 51% (approximately 28,9 million) of the population is female.

Gauteng comprises the largest share of the South African population. Approximately 14,3 million people (25,3%) live in this province. KwaZulu-Natal is the province with the second largest population, with 11,1 million people (19,6%) living in this province. With a population of approximately 1,21 million people (2,1%), Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest

share of the South African population.

About 29,6% of the population is aged younger than 15 years and approximately 8,1% (4,60 million) is 60 years or older. Similar proportions of those younger than 15 years live in Gauteng (21,1%) and KwaZulu-Natal (21,1%).

Of the elderly aged 60 years and older, the highest percentage 24,0% (1,10 million) reside in Gauteng. The proportion of elderly persons aged 60 and older is increasing over time.

Migration is an important demographic process in shaping the age structure and distribution of the provincial population. For the period 2016–2021, Gauteng and Western Cape are estimated to experience the largest inflow of migrants of approximately, 1 595 106 and 485 560 respectively.

Life expectancy at birth for 2017 is estimated at 61,2 years for males and 66,7 years for females.

The infant mortality rate for 2017 is estimated at 32,8 per 1 000 live births.

The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 12,6% among the South African population. The total number of people living with HIV is estimated at approximately 7,06 million in 2017. For adults aged 15–49 years, an estimated 18,0% of the population is HIV positive.

Findings from the South Africa Demographic and Health Survey (SADHS) 2016 Key Indicator Report showed that in the previous three years, on average the number of children ever born per woman was 2,6 compared to an average of 2,9 over a three-year period ending in 1998.

As of 2016, the average for the year is at 2,4 children per woman – 0,2 children lower than the three-year average based on the Community Survey of 2016.

The survey observed a drop in the under-5 mortality and the infant mortality rates to 42 deaths and 35 deaths per 1 000 live births, respectively, for the five years preceding the survey. The neonatal mortality rate has also dropped to 21 deaths per 1 000 live births, accounting for about half of under-5 deaths.

The number of people living with HIV was estimated at approximately 7,03 million in 2016. For adults aged 15 to 49 years, an estimated 18,9% of the population was HIV-positive. Improved access and uptake of ART over time in the public and private sector in South Africa has enabled HIV-positive people to live longer and healthy lives, resulting in gradual decline in AIDS-related deaths between 2006 (48%) and 2016 (28%).

> According to Statistics South Africa, the national disability prevalence rate is 7,5%. Disability is more prevalent among females compared to males (8,3% and 6,5% respectively). Persons with disabilities increase with age. More than half (53,2%) of persons aged 85 and above, live with disabilities.
>
> The prevalence of a specific type of disability shows that 11% of persons aged five and above have eyesight difficulties, 4,2% have cognitive difficulties (remembering/concentrating), 3,6% have hearing difficulties, and about 2% have communication, self-care and walking difficulties.
>
> Persons with disabilities experience difficulty in accessing education and employment opportunities.
>
> Households headed by persons with disabilities were found to have less access to basic services compared to those headed by persons without disabilities.

Budget and funding

In line with the vision of the NDP and the MTEF, the DoH will focus over the medium term on sustainably expanding HIV and AIDS and TB treatment and prevention, revitalising public healthcare facilities, and ensuring the provision of specialised tertiary hospital services. Spending on these three areas would take up 85,1% (R109 billion) of the DoH's total budget over the MTSF period.

The DoH transferred 88,2% (R112,8 billion) of its budget over the medium term to provincial departments of health in the form of conditional grants.

Increased funding of R1,9 billion has was allocated for 2017/18 and 2018/19 to support the implementation of two HIV and AIDS and TB investment cases thjat has been in development over the last two years and to ensure the sustained expansion of antiretroviral treatment.

Of the R1,9 billion, R240 million in 2017/18 and R500 million in 2018/19 will be dedicated to support the recommendations of the TB investment case, such as intensified screening campaigns to ensure early detection and treatment. The spending is expected to increase the TB treatment success rate from the current 83% to 90% in 2018/19.

The DoH expects ARV treatment to reach five million South Africans by 2018/19, supported by an increase in the grant of R1 billion in that year as part of the additional R1,9 billion.

This expansion is part of South Africa's progressive scaling up towards 90-90-90 targets for 2020 of the Joint United Nations Programme on HIV and AIDS (UNAIDS), namely: 90% of all people living with HIV will know their HIV status, 90% of all people with diagnosed HIV infection will receive sustained antiretroviral therapy, and 90% of all people receiving ARV treatment will have viral suppression.

Quality health infrastructure and health technology are essential for delivering quality health services at all levels of care. Subsequently, the DoH will be investing R19,8 billion in health infrastructure over the MTEF period.

These funds will be managed as two conditional grants. he health facility revitalisation direct grant is transferred to provincial departments of health to fund new facilities and refurbishments. Some R17,1 billion is allocated for this grant over the medium term.

The health facility revitalisation component of the NHI indirect grant is allocated R2,7 billion over the medium term. This grant is exclusively for infrastructure improvements in the 11 health insurance pilot districts. The DoH is working closely with implementing agents to ensure that all 872 primary healthcare facilities in these districts, which are distributed nationally, are refurbished, and that 216 primary healthcare facilities are constructed or revitalised by 2019/20.

Tertiary health services are for inpatients in hospitals that have specialised personnel and facilities for advanced medical investigation and treatment. These services are unevenly distributed across South Africa's nine provinces, causing people to seek specialised care in provinces other than the one in which they reside. To compensate provinces for treating patients coming from other provinces, the DoH will continue to subsidise funding for tertiary health services in 28 hospitals and hospital complexes over the medium term.

The DoH will also continue to modernise tertiary facilities by upgrading medical equipment on an ongoing basis. These activities are funded through the national tertiary services grant to provincial departments of health. R10,8 billion is allocated for 2016/17.

When it comes to the NHI, the DoH aims to achieve universal health coverage through the phased in implementation of the NHI Scheme. A number of health system reforms has been proposed, including:

- re-engineering the primary healthcare approach
- implementing Operation Phakisa's ideal clinic realisation and maintenance programme
- implementing various quality and management improvement initiatives across all health facilities
- transforming emergency medical services
- improving human resources for health
- improving the strategic management and functioning of central hospitals.

Over the medium term, a key strategic intervention is the creation of the NHI Fund, which will strategically purchase health services from selected public and private healthcare providers on behalf of the population.

The NHI indirect grant (previously named the national health grant) aims to contract private health professionals to provide primary healthcare services in public facilities, and to continue piloting a central chronic medicines dispensing and distribution model, which already gives 380 000 patients access to their chronic medications at alternative pick-up points, such as private sector pharmacies, without having to visit a public health facility.

The DoH is currently piloting an integrated patient-based information system for primary healthcare facilities in the NHI pilot districts.

In addition, the department will establish an electronic stock management system, including an early warning system for stock-outs of medicine in primary healthcare clinics and hospitals.

Provinces will continue to pilot health system reforms and innovation at the district level through funds from the direct NHI conditional grant. However, this grant will end after 2016/17.

The department is also developing a new diagnosis-related groups model, which will be used to reimburse central hospitals based on patient volumes and case mix. Some R80 million over the MTEF period is earmarked for this. The model is expected to be completed by 2018/19.

A new component has been added to the NHI indirect grant for the rollout of the Ideal Clinic programme. This programme aims to improve all 3 500 primary healthcare facilities nationally to reach the determined ideal status by addressing infrastructure backlogs, reducing queues, improving information systems, integrating services, and implementing uniform protocols, guidelines and staffing norms. Some R90 million over the medium term is allocated to this component.

Role players

South African National AIDS Council (SANAC) Trust

SANAC is a voluntary association of institutions established by Cabinet to build consensus across Government, civil society and all other stakeholders to drive an enhanced country response to the scourges of HIV, TB and STIs.

Under the direction of SANAC, Government created the SANAC Trust as the legal entity that is charged with achieving its aims.

The UNAIDS has welcomed the roll-out of South Africa's National Sex Worker HIV Plan 2016 – 2019, which will ensure equitable access to health and legal services for sex workers in South Africa.

Sex workers experience a disproportionate burden of HIV, STIs, TB, violence, and stigma and discrimination. This progressive plan outlines a comprehensive and nationally coordinated response that is tailored to their specific needs and includes a core package of services for sex workers, their partners, their clients and their families.

As well as delivering access to health services to prevent and treat HIV, STIs and TB, the plan also aims to provide sex workers with access to justice and legal protection services.

Medicines Control Council

The Medicines Control Council (MCC) was a statutory body tasked with regulating the performance of clinical trials and registration of medicines and medical devices for use in specific diseases. In June 2017, the MCC was replaced by the South African Health Products Regulatory Authority (SAHPRA).

South African Health Products Regulatory Authority

SAHPRA officially replaced the MCC in June 2017 after government signed the Medicines and Related Substances Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 72 of 2008).

South Africa has the largest medical device market and manufactures a range of devices, although it is primarily reliant on imports from Germany and the USA.

Until now, medical devices and complementary medicines have gone unregulated as the MCC could only deal with medicines.

SAHPRA is intended to be the solution to the extensive delays that beset the MCC, which took much longer compared to US or European regulators to approve new medicines and clinical trials. SAHPRA will also be responsible for regulating foodstuffs, cosmetics, disinfectants and diagnostics.

The new structure will be able to generate its own income, allowing SAHPRA to use modern systems and retain staff that were often overwhelmed with volumes of work. Based on industry figures, registering new products with the MCC took an average of three to five years, but could exceed seven. Among the new regulator's first tasks will be clearing a backlog of more than 2 000 applications awaiting registration by the MCC.

SAHPRA's new structure will follow a similar model to the US Food and Drug Administration in that it will be more independent than the MCC. It will only be partly funded by the government, with approximately 70% of funds coming from industry bodies.

Compensation Commission for Occupational Diseases (CCOD)

The CCOD was established to compensate ex-miners and miners for the impairment of lungs or respiratory organs and to reimburse them for loss of earnings incurred during TB treatment.

If the ex-miner is deceased, the CCOD compensates the beneficiaries of the ex-miner.

i By mid-2017, plans were underway to build the Limpopo Central Hospital and Medical School at the University of Limpopo.

The medical school will be the first one to be built since the advent of democracy.

The CCOD also administrates the Government's grant for pensioners from the collective mining sector.

Council for Medical Schemes

The CMS provides regulatory supervision of private health financing through medical schemes. Its objectives include:

- protecting the interests of medical schemes and their members
- monitoring the solvency and financial soundness of medical schemes
- controlling and coordinating the functioning of medical schemes
- investigating complaints and settling disputes in the affairs of medical schemes
- collecting and disseminating information about private healthcare in South Africa
- making rules regarding its own functions and powers
- making recommendations to the Minister of Health on criteria for the measurement of the quality and outcomes of the health services provided by medical schemes.

The CMS regulates the medical schemes industry in a fair and transparent manner and achieves this by:

- Protecting members of the public and informing them about their rights, obligations and other matters in respect of medical schemes
- Ensuring that complaints raised by members of the public are handled appropriately and speedily.
- Ensuring that all entities conducting the business of medical schemes and other regulated entities comply with the Medical Schemes Act of 2008.
- Ensuring the improved management and governance of medical schemes.
- Advising the Minister of Health on appropriate regulatory and policy interventions that will assist in attaining national health policy objectives.

South African Medical Research Council

The SAMRC funds and conducts medical research to respond to the health priority areas of South Africa, with a specific focus on the 10 highest causes of mortality in the country. The short and medium term research agenda of the organisation is informed by the following four strategic goals:

- Administer health research effectively and efficiently in South Africa;
- Lead the generation of new knowledge and facilitate its translation into policies and practices to improve health;
- Support innovation and technology development to improve health; and
- Build capacity for the long-term sustainability of the country's health research.

Intra- and extra-mural research units, centres and offices of the SAMRC, funding of self-initiated projects, Request for Applications (RFAs) and capacity development initiatives are the mechanisms through which the research agenda is being realised. Research units are founded on scientific excellence and leadership.

These units are led by internationally recognised researchers and team mandated to develop the next generation of research leaders.

The scope of the organisation's research projects includes tuberculosis, HIV/AIDS, cardiovascular and NCDs, gender and health, and alcohol and other drug abuse. With a strategic objective to help strengthen the health systems of the country – in line with that of the DoH, the SAMRC constantly identifies the main causes of death in South Africa. By analysing the causes and categories of death, data would become available to formulate suitable interventions to either prevent diseases in a certain population group or improve the standard of living of people living with existing medical conditions. [contributor]

> The global struggle to end HIV and AIDS received a huge boost with the start of ground-breaking HIV vaccine trials in South Africa in November 2016.
>
> The vaccine trial is regarded as the most scientific study on HIV in the world. Significantly, it is led by South African scientists in almost all aspects of the research being done.
>
> The research and the trial of the HIV vaccine will enrol 4 500 HIV-negative South Africans between the ages of 18 years and 35 years in 18 sites across the country. It will take place over 20 months.
>
> Half the participants will receive five doses of the vaccine, while the other remaining 2 250 will receive a placebo. The participants will be followed up for three years to ensure the efficacy of the vaccine.
>
> The estimated costs of the trial is around R135 million, through a partnership of the private and public sectors.

Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPSCA)

The HPCSA is committed to promoting the health of the population, determining standards of professional education and training, and setting and maintaining excellent standards of ethical and professional practice.

To safeguard the public and indirectly the professions, registration in terms of the Act is a prerequisite for practising any of the health professions with which the Council is concerned.

The council guides and regulates the health professions in the country in aspects pertaining to registration, education and training, professional conduct and ethical behaviour, ensuring continuing professional development, and fostering compliance with healthcare standards.

All individuals who practise any of the healthcare professions incorporated in the scope of the HPCSA are obliged by the Health Professions Act of 1974 to register with the council. Failure to do so constitutes a criminal offence.

Its mandate includes:

- coordinating the activities of the professional boards
- promoting and regulating interprofessional liaison
- determining strategic policy
- consulting and liaising with relevant authorities
- controlling and exercising authority over the training and practices pursued in connection with the diagnosis, treatment or prevention of physical or mental defects, illnesses or deficiencies in people
- promoting liaison in the field of training
- communicating to the Minister information that is of public importance.

Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA)

The AHPCSA is a statutory health body established in terms of the Allied Health Professions Act of 1982 to control all allied

health professions, which includes ayurveda, Chinese medicine and acupuncture, chiropractic treatment, therapeutic reflexology, therapeutic massage therapy, homeopathy, naturopathy, therapeutic aromatherapy, osteopathy, phytotherapy and Unani-Tibb:

The AHPCSA is mandated in terms of Allied Health Professions Act of 1982 to:

- promote and protect the health of the public
- manage, administer and set policies relating to the professions registered with the AHPCSA
- investigate complaints relating to the professional conduct of practitioners, interns and students
- administer the registration of people governed by the AHPCSA
- set standards for the education and training of intending practitioners.

South African Dental Technicians Council (SADTC)

The SADTC controls all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians or dental technologists and practices in the supply, making, altering or repairing of artificial dentures or other dental appliances.

Its mandate includes:

- promoting dentistry in South Africa
- controlling all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians, dental technologists and practitioners who supply, make, alter or repair artificial dentures or other dental appliances
- promoting good relationships between dentists, clinical dental technologists, dental technicians and dental technologists.

South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC)

The SAPC is the regulator established in terms of the Pharmacy Act of 1974 to regulate pharmacists, pharmacy support personnel and pharmacy premises in South Africa. Its mandate is to protect, promote and maintain the health, safety and well-being of patients and the public by ensuring quality pharmaceutical service for all South Africans.

The council is tasked with:

- assisting in promoting the health of South Africans
- promoting the provision of pharmaceutical care with universal norms and values
- upholding and safeguarding the rights of the general public to universally acceptable standards of pharmacy practice
- establishing, developing, maintaining and controlling universally acceptable standards
- maintaining and enhancing the dignity of the pharmacy profession.

South African Nursing Council (SANC)

The SANC is the body entrusted to set and maintain standards of nursing education and practice in South Africa. It is an autonomous, financially independent, statutory body, initially established by the Nursing Act, 1944 (Act 45 of 1944), and operating under the Nursing Act of 2005.

The SANC controls and exercises authority, in respect of the education, training and manner of practices pursued by registered nurses, midwives, enrolled nurses and enrolled nursing auxiliaries.

The council's mandate includes:

- inspecting and approving nursing schools and nursing education programmes
- conducting examinations and issuing qualifications
- registering and enrolling nurses, midwives and nursing auxiliaries and keeping registers
- removing or restoring any name in a register
- issuing licences to nursing agencies
- requiring employers to submit annual returns of registered and enrolled nurses in their employ.

National Health Laboratory Service

The NHLS is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, with the responsibility of supporting the national and provincial health departments in the delivery of healthcare. The NHLS provides laboratory and related public health services to over 80% of the population through a national network of laboratories.

The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines, including anatomical pathology, haematology, microbiology, infectious diseases, immunology, human genetics, chemical pathology, epidemiology, occupational and environmental health, occupational medicine, tropical diseases, medical entomology, molecular biology and human nutrition.

The NHLS has laboratories in all nine provinces, with approximately 7 000 employees. Its activities comprise diagnostic laboratory services, research, teaching and training, and production of sera for anti-snake venom, reagents and media.

Its specialised divisions comprise the:

- National Institute for Communicable Diseases, whose research expertise and sophisticated laboratories make it a testing centre and resource for Africa, particularly in relation to several of the rare communicable diseases. Also forming part of the NICD is the National Cancer Registry, which provides epidemiological information for cancer surveillance [CONTRIBUTOR]
- National Institute for Occupational Health, which investigates occupational diseases and has laboratories for occupational environment analyses
- South African Vaccine Producers, which is the only South African manufacturer of antivenom for the treatment of snake, scorpion and spider bites.

Non-governmental organisations

Many NGOs at various levels play a crucial role in healthcare, and cooperate with government's priority programmes.

They make an essential contribution, in relation to HIV and AIDS and TB, and also participate significantly in the fields of mental health, cancer, disability and the development of primary healthcare systems.

The involvement of NGOs extends from national level, through provincial structures, to small local organisations rooted in individual communities. All are important and bring different qualities to the healthcare network.

Resources

Medical practitioners

By mid-2017, a total of 44 949 medical practitioners were registered with the HPCSA. These include doctors working for

the State, those in private practice and specialists. The majority of doctors practise in the private sector.

In selected communities, medical students supervised by medical practitioners provide health services at clinics.

In terms of the continuing professional development system, all doctors, irrespective of earlier qualifications, must obtain a specified number of points to retain their registration.

The system requires that doctors attend workshops, conferences, refresher courses, seminars, departmental meetings and journal clubs. Non-compliance with the requirements of the system could result in a doctor being deregistered.

Applications by foreign health professionals are subject to assessment by the Examinations Committee of the Medical and Dental Professions Board. Those admitted have to write an examination, after which they can be registered in the particular category for which they applied and were assessed.

Oral health professionals

By mid-2017, there were 6 333 dentists, 3 550 dental assistants, 1 226 oral hygienists and 708 dental therapists registered with the HPCSA.

Pharmacists

All pharmacists are obliged to perform one year of remunerated pharmaceutical community service in a public health facility. By mid-2017, there were 14 484 pharmacists registered with the SAPC.

Nurses

Nurses are required to complete a mandatory 12-month community service programme, whereafter they may be registered as nurses (general, psychiatric or community) and midwives. There are 287 458 registered nurses in 2016. This figure included registered, enrolled and auxiliary nurses, but excludes students and pupils.

Health facilities

There are 4 200 public health facilities in South Africa. The number of people per clinic is 13 718, exceeding WHO guidelines of 10 000 per clinic.

Provincial hospitals

Provincial hospitals offer treatment to patients with or without medical aid cover. Patients are classified as hospital patients, if they can't afford to pay for treatment. Their treatment is then partly or entirely financed by the particular provincial government or the health authorities of the administration concerned.

Provincial hospital patients pay for examinations and treatment on a sliding scale in accordance with their income and number of dependants.

Patients with medical aid are charged a private rate that is generally lower than the rate charged by private hospitals.

Medical schemes

By September 2017, there were 87 medical schemes in South Africa, with around 8,8 million beneficiaries. These schemes have a total annual contribution flow of about R129.8 billion.

Tariffs for admission to private and provincial hospitals differ. Cost differences also exist between various provincial hospitals, depending on the facilities offered.

Programmes and projects

Anti-Substance National Plan of Action

Government and its partners are implementing the Anti-Substance National Plan of Action.

The plan focuses on enabling policy and legislation, reducing the supply and demand of drugs, as well as treatment and rehabilitation of addicts.

The SAPS plays a key role in the fight against drug, substance and alcohol abuse.

Operation Phakisa

Operation Phakisa was launched in 2014 to boost delivery initially in the oceans economy, education and health. The programme has since been expanded to mining and agriculture, in particular aquaculture.

Operation Phakisa 2 is a government programme aimed at prioritising 3 500 primary healthcare facilities.

By the end of 2016, 65 clinics and community health centres were under construction across the country, which also contributed to job creation.

> By March 2017, the Department of Health had made great progress in eradicating backlogs at health facilities.
>
> This included progress in the maintenance of about 70 clinics and community health centres.
>
> Maintenance also took place at at least 18 hospitals and 67 health facilities in districts where the National Health Insurance Scheme was being piloted. This included the construction of three primary healthcare centres and three community care centres, while the construction of four community healthcare centres was in progress.
>
> A total of 3 022 988 people were tested for HIV, against the target of 2 500 000. In addition, 221 201 467 male condoms and 6 403 730 female condoms were distributed against the targets of 150 000 000 and 4 500 000, respectively. About 155 188 medical male circumcisions were performed against the target of 250 000.
>
> The tuberculosis new-client treatment success rate was 84,2%, which exceeded the target of 84%.
>
> In late 2016, about 66,3% of pregnant women visited health facilities before 20 weeks, exceeding the target of 63.

Overall life expectancy had steadily been increasing from 60 years in 2012 to 62,9 years in 2014 due to improved healthcare provision.

The health sector has recorded good progress in managing communicable diseases, inclusive of HIV and AIDS and TB. During the second quarter of 2016/17, 2 416 020 clients were tested for HIV. Some 3 520 305 patients remained on ARV treatment. The number of male clients who underwent medical male circumcision improved from 124 762 in Quarter 1 to 245 599 in Quarter 2.

Some 12,9 million people were screened for high blood pressure, which exceeded the set target of eight million. Some 10 million people were screened for raised blood glucose levels, which exceeded the set target of eight million.

Related operations in other sectors of Operation Phakisa during 2016/17 included the following:

- To improve the health of learners in schools, the departments of basic education, health and social development jointly ran the Integrated School Health Programme in schools and reached 949 138 learners.

- The Department of Basic Education also ran a successful National School Deworming Programme. A total of 3 523 794 (57%) learners were dewormed. Government has put through a request to the WHO for deworming tablets for the 2017 roll-out.
- To date, almost 15 000 military veterans are being provided with free healthcare support. The Department of Military Veterans is working to sort out its database so that more deserving veterans would be able to receive much needed care and support.

National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV, TB and STIs 2017 – 2022

The new five-year NSP for HIV, TB and STIs for the period 2017 to 2022 was launched in March 2017. The purpose of the NSP is to enable the many thousands of organisations and individuals who drive the response to HIV, TB and STIs to work as a concerted force and moving towards the same direction. It is the third NSP to be unveiled following the first one 10 years ago.

The document sets out intensified prevention programmes that combine biomedical prevention methods such as medical male circumcision and the preventative use of antiretroviral drugs and TB medication, with communication designed to educate and encourage safer sexual behaviour in the case of HIV and STIs.

The goals of the NSP 2017 – 2022, among others, include:

- accelerating prevention to reduce new HIV and TB infections and new STIs
- reducing illness and deaths by providing treatment, care and adherence support for all infected
- addressing social and structural drivers of HIV and TB infections
- grounding the response to HIV, TB and STIs in human rights principles and approaches
- mobilising resources to support the achieving of NSP goals and ensure sustainable responses
- strengthening strategic information to drive progress towards achieving the NSP goals.

The plan will draw on the vision of the UN programme of zero new HIV infections, zero preventable deaths associated with HIV and zero discrimination associated with HIV. It is also in line with the WHO's goals for reducing TB incidents and mortality.

The NSP serves as the strategic guide for the national response to HIV, TB and STIs in South Africa. One of the objectives of the plan is to intensify focus on geographic areas and populations most severely affected by the epidemics.

The slogan of this new NSP is: "Let Our Actions Count".

National Health Insurance

In 2015, the Ministry of Health published the Cabinet-approved White Paper on the NHI for public comment. The NHI Scheme is a health-financing system that is designed to pool funds to provide access to quality, affordable personal health services for all South Africans based on their health needs, irrespective of their socio-economic status.

The year 2016/17 marked the end of a five-year preparatory phase for the NHI, guided by the NHI White Paper.

Phase 2 will be carried out from 2017/18 to 2020/21.

The initial activities will focus on ensuring that the population is registered and issued with an NHI card at designated public facilities using a unique Patient Identifier linked to the National Population Register of the Department of Home Affairs.

Registration will start with children, orphans, the aged, adolescents, persons with disabilities, women and rural communities. Phase 2 will also prioritise the establishment of a transitional fund that will purchase health services from certified and accredited providers.

Phase 3 is scheduled to be implemented between 2021/22 and 2024/25 and will focus on ensuring that the NHI Fund is fully functional. It is envisaged that eligible health services would be certified by the OHSC and accredited by the NHI Fund.

The proposed NHI Fund will be prospectively financed by the roughly R50 million in tax credits given annually to tax payers who are part of and contribute to a private medical aid.

The following beneficiaries have been identified to benefit from the NHI Fund once it is established:

- The 500 000 school children who were screened and found to have physical challenges that might negatively affect learning.
- The DoH aims to provide free ante-natal care in the form of eight visits to a doctor to each of the 1,2 million women who fall pregnant annually. They will also be provided with family planning, breast and cervical cancer screening as well as treatment, where appropriate.
- Better services will be provided for people with mental health issues, including screenings and subsequent treatment.
- The DoH will help the elderly with assistive devices like spectacles, hearing aids and wheelchairs.
- The NHI Fund will also contribute towards clearing the backlog of blindness caused by cataracts. The backlog currently stands at 270 000 elderly people who are presently blind and are awaiting cataract removal. The DoH can perform 90 000 operations a year for the next three years to clear the backlog.
- The DoH will be able to provide assistive devices to people living with disabilities.

Infrastructure development

Within 10 pilot districts, the DoH completed the building of 34 new and replacement clinics, and was in the process of completing 48 others. This would be a total of 82 new and replacement clinics.

Outside the 10 pilot districts, the DoH completed 96 clinics and were busy with an additional 132, giving a total of 228 new and replacement clinics. Once all are completed, there will be a total of 310 new and replacement clinics.

In the same period within the pilot districts, the department completed the refurbishment of 154 clinics and are busy with refurbishing 192 others. This will give a total of 346 refurbished clinics in the 10 pilot districts.

Outside the pilot districts, 135 clinics had been refurbished and 220 others were still in the process. This would give a total of 355 refurbished clinics.

All in all, some 701 clinics would be open for service, whether new or refurbished.

The DoH has also separately put up consulting rooms for doctors who visit clinics on a contract basis. Some 142 have been completed with 21 others still in progress, giving a total of 163 doctor consulting rooms.

Within this preparatory period, government spent R40 342 973 108 on infrastructure as well as R1 706 562 156

on equipment.

Access to medicine

To ensure that the necessary medicine is always in stock, the department has undertaken three initiatives:

- SVS or stock visibility system
- Rx Solution and other electronic stock management systems (ESMS)
- Central Chronic Medicines and Dispensing and Distribution Programme.

Record management and Unique Patient Identifier

A system whereby patients are registered on a central database, which enables quick and effective dispense of the right medicication to the right client, as well as serving as a deterrent to people visiting multiple clinics and medical centres on one day and collecting absurd and often illegal amounts of medication, has been developed and implemented.

Working with CSIR as well as the departments of science and technology and home affairs, the DoH has rolled out this system as part of the NHI.

As of May 2017, the system had reached 1 859 clinics, 705 of which are in the NHI pilots. Some 6 355 759 South Africans had already registered in this system in preparation for NHI. The DoH was registering people in these 1 859 facilities at the rate of 80 000 to 100 000 people per day.

The Unique Patient Identifier is linked to a person's ID number at the Department of Home Affairs and is valid for life: as soon as you register, you will keep it until you die.

It takes five minutes to register, but after that it will take only 45 seconds to retrieve a patient's file in subsequent visits.

School health: Integrated School Health Programme

The departments of basic education and health jointly implemented the ISHP that will extend, over time, the coverage of school health services to all leaners in primary and secondary schools. The programme offers a comprehensive and integrated package of services, inclusing sexual and reproductive health services for older learners.

The Health Services Package for the ISHP includes a large component of health education for each of the four school phases (such as how to lead a healthy lifestyle and drug and substance abuse awareness), health screening (such as screening for vision, hearing, oral health and TB) and onsite services such as deworming and immunisation).

The ISHP services contribute to the health and well-being of learners by screening them for health barriers to learning.

The DoH undertook a reorganisation in School Health during 2016. Some 3,2 million learners were given complete screens for physical barriers to learning, such as eyesight, hearing, speech and oral health. The findings were as follows:

- 8 891 learners have speech problems that will need a speech therapist
- 34 094 learners have hearing problems that will need an audiologist and possibly hearing aids
- 119 340 learners have eyesight problems that will need an optometrist, ophthalmologist and possibly spectacles
- 337 679 learners have oral health problems that may need a dentist, dental therapist or oral hygienist.

During 2016/17, the ISHP exceeded its targets for screening of 25% of Grade 1 learners and 10% of Grade 8 learners during 2015/16 by reaching 29,2% of the Grade 1s, and 12,8% of the Grade 8s. A total number of 2 283 245 learners were screened through this programme since its inception and 352 766 learners were identified with health problems and referred for intervention.

The HPV vaccine targeting girls in Grade 4 was introduced to protect them from acquiring cervical cancer (cancer of the womb) – a major cause of death especially among African women.

The programme was largely successful, reaching 85,3% (427 400) targeted girls for the first dose HPV immunisation, and 63,6% (318 422) for the second dose HPV immunisation coverage.

The purpose of this intervention is to implement one of the four basic components of cervical cancer control, namely primary prevention. The vaccination protects girls before they are sexually active from being infected by HPV and reduces the risk of developing HPV-related cervical cancer later in life.

According to International Agency for Research on Cancer, cancer of the cervix is among the common cancers affecting women in sub-Saharan Africa. Compared to Europeans, women in sub-Saharan Africa are five times more at risk. In South Africa, cervical cancer is ranked as number 13 on the list of causes of deaths among females; resulting in 67 000 cases and 3 498 annual deaths. In the North West, for the women above the age of 45 years, it is among the top 10 causes of death.

PASOP Campaign

The PASOP Campaign – P (prevent new infections and transmissions), A (avoid re-infections, Deaths, Mother to child), S (stop risky behaviour and practices), O (overcome living with HIV and the stigma) and P (protect yourself, loved ones and others) – was launched in an effort to call on all communities to join hands with Government in the fight against HIV and AIDS and TB.

PASOP targets all but with a distinct focus on LGBTI, men-sleeping-with-men, the youth, commercial sex workers, migrant workers, informal settlements, women and drug users.

The campaign places high emphasis on the responsibility of self and non-stigmatisation.

The highest rates of new HIV infections are still found among young single women who have older boyfriends and/or multiple sex partners.

The department is set to intensify the PASOP campaign by reaching men who are partners to young women, especially the "3Ms" or Mobile Men with Money and men that have sex with men, but do not identify as gay or bisexual.

Managing communicable and NCDs

The main NCDs in the country include diabetes, cancer, chronic respiratory diseases, mental disorders and cardiovascular diseases.

Africa remains the only WHO region where communicable diseases still account for more deaths than NCDs, according to a 2010 global status report.

The main risk factors associated with NCDs are tobacco use, alcohol abuse, an unhealthy diet and physical inactivity.

Hepatitis B is widespread in sub-Saharan Africa and South Africa. Past studies have found that about 8% of children under the age of one and almost 16% of children under the age of six are infected with Hepatitis B.

Between 10% and 18% of South African adults are Hepatitis B virus carriers. Infection has been more common in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

Since 1995, all children have been vaccinated against hepatitis B. Blood safety in South Africa has effectively reduced hepatitis B and hepatitis C transmission.

Improving human resources planning, development and management

Albertina Sisulu Executive Leadership Programme in Health (ASELPH)

The ASELPH aims to:

- strengthen health policy transformation and service excellence in South Africa
- strengthen human-resource capacity in the health system, which is needed to deliver high-quality, cost-efficient services through strengthened, executive-level training of health leaders and managers
- organise and host university forums, policy seminars and round tables to address key policy debates, as identified by the DoH and focus on issues that will present the greatest challenges to implementation
- use new teaching and learning strategies.

The programme is responsive to emerging initiatives in the South African health sector through a combination of strategies that include:

- targeted training of executive, district and hospital managers who are responsible for services related to the NHI
- strengthened management capability of current and emerging district, health-related leaders who are responsible for the implementation of the NHI and the re-engineering of the primary healthcare system
- advancement of sustainable, relevant, educational and training capacity for health executives responsible for the management of large public health programmes such as HIV and AIDS, STIs and TB.

The programme is a partnership between the universities of Pretoria, Fort Hare and Harvard, represented by Harvard School of Public Health and South Africa Partners in collaboration with the South African national and provincial departments of health.

The ASELPH is seen as a local flagship programme capable of setting the standard for executive-level health leadership and management training in South Africa.

Treatment and cure of TB

South Africa intensified the fight against TB as part of the World TB Day 2016.

The World TB Day commemoration took place on 24 March 2016. A mass TB screening campaign dominated this year's World TB Day activities.

South Africa is one of 14 African countries to have received recognition for its fight against malaria during the 2016 African Leaders Malaria Alliance (Alma) meeting on 30 January 2016 as part of the 26th African Union Summit in Ethiopia.

The 2016 Alma Awards for Excellence were given to:

- Botswana, Cape Verde, Eritrea, Namibia, Rwanda, São Tomé and Príncipe, South Africa, and Swaziland for achieving the Millennium Development Goal target for malaria
- Rwanda, Senegal and Liberia for Performance in Malaria Control between 2011 and 2015
- Mali, Guinea and Comoros for being the Most Improved in Malaria Control between 2011 and 2015.

In South Africa, cases of malaria have decreased by 82%; and the malaria-related death rate has dropped by 71% since the year 2000.

The decrease is attributed to a sound malaria vector control programme, in which the country has used dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane or DDT odourless insecticide for indoor residual spraying, coupled with other WHO recommended interventions.

Since 2000, malaria mortality rates in Africa had fallen by 66% overall and 71% among children under the age of five.

Innovative health solutions

By mid-2016, the DoH was piloting a self-service dispensing machine for medicines at the Thembalethu Clinic in Johannesburg.

The Pharmacy Dispensing Unit (PDU) is a self-service machine where patients can obtain their medication in the same way people withdraw money at an ATM. To use the machine, a patient needs to register for the service and receive a PIN-protected card similar to a bank card.

To "withdraw" their medication, users simply insert their card into the PDU machine, enter their PIN and select the medication they require from their prescription list.

The machine immediately dispenses the selected medication, thus eliminating the need for the patient to wait in queues. The PDU also allows patients to communicate directly with a trained pharmacist directly from the machine using a built-in video conferencing function.

Other technologies include the Stock Visibility System, a mobile application that enables medicine availability information at primary healthcare clinics to be uploaded to a central online data repository.

The camera on the phone can be used to scan the medicine barcode and update stock levels, thus enabling healthcare workers to easily monitor the quantity of medication they have in stock and timeously order medication that might be running low. This will help to reduce the number of stock-outs at clinics.

The DoH has also launched MomConnect, a free SMS service that provides pregnant mothers with regular foetal development updates throughout their term of pregnancy. By mid-2016, the service had more than 800 000 registered users.

The Mother2Mothers is a service that connects new mothers to experienced mentors to help them through their pregnancy.

The Medication Adherence app reminds users of their clinic or hospital visits and to take their scheduled medication.

The B-Wise is a youth focused online service that provides young people with health information and allows them to have their health-related questions answered by an expert adviser within 48 hours.

Demographic and Health Survey (SADHS)

The DoH commenced the SADHS in 2015/16, to track progress in the health status of the people of South Africa against the

NDP. This critical survey was to provide essential data to inform policy and management of strategic programmes.

It covers demographic indicators, maternal, newborn and child health programme indicators, reproductive health and contraception, management of noncommunicable diseases and risk factors, as well as women's status in the society.

The SADHS covered 15 000 households, selected to be nationally representative, which will be visited by teams of trained interviewers who will collect information in a face-to-face interview and take certain measurements such as blood pressure, heights and weights.

The following highlights emerged from the survey:

- South Africa is approaching a demographic winter, wherein women are giving birth to fewer and fewer children. In the last three years, on average the number of children ever born per woman was 2,6 compared to an average of 2,9 over a three year period ending in 1998. As of 2016, the average for the year is at 2,4 children per woman – 0,2 children lower than the previous three year average.
- South Africans are aware of HIV and AIDS testing and in this regard 93% of them are aware of this medical condition. Although 81% have ever tested for HIV and AIDS, in the age group 15 – 24, 31% have never tested for HIV and AIDS.
- South Africans engage in multiple sexual partnerships. Overall, 5% of women reported that they had two or more partners in the past 12 months, and 45% had intercourse in the past 12 months with a person who was neither their spouse nor lived with them. On the other hand, three times the proportion of female experience, that is 17% of men age 15 – 49, reported that they had two or more partners in the past 12 months, and 55% had intercourse in the past 12 months with a person who was neither their spouse nor lived with them.
- By 2016, 96% of delivery of children was in a clinic compared to 83% in 1998. Of these, 97% were with a skilled health provider compared to 84% in 1998. However, stunting remains real as children under five fail to grow at the corresponding pace to their age. Among boys, almost one in three is stunted and among girls, one in four is. On the other end of the scale, South Africans remain obese, especially among the black population (20%) and by race and sex, it is highest among women in the coloured population at 26%.
- Among the white population, smoking and alcohol practices among women is five times more than the 3% among black and Indian/Asian women. Coloured women are an outlier, however. Some 38% of them enjoy a puff. On the other hand, their male counterparts show no major racial differences.
- In relation to alcohol consumption, the differences between men and women and across races is not as pronounced compared to racial and sex-based differences in smoking. However, the differences still remain significant. Drinking starts at a level where 25% of youths among girls have at least taken alcohol by the age of 15 – 19 and the percentage rises sharply to more than one in three by the age of 20 – 35 before it drops to one in five by age 65.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Human Settlements

The Department of Human Settlements (DHS)derives its core mandate and responsibilities from Section 26 of the Constitution and Section 3 of the Housing Act, 1997 (Act 107 of 1997), read in conjunction with approved policies and Chapter 8 of the National Development Plan (NDP).

This allows the department, in collaboration with provinces and municipalities, to establish and facilitate a sustainable national housing development process.

The DHS does this by:

- determining national policy and national norms and standards for housing and human settlements development
- setting broad national housing delivery goals
- monitoring the financial and non-financial performance of provinces and municipalities against these goals.

In executing these roles and responsibilities, the DHS also builds capacity for provinces and municipalities, and promotes consultation with all stakeholders in the housing delivery chain, including civil society and the private sector.

Legislation and policies

Building on the 2004 Breaking New Ground strategy, the DHS expects to produce a new White Paper on Human Settlements by 2017/18. The document is intended to formalise the shift in the department's approach from providing housing to developing sustainable human settlements.

Under the new approach, the State seeks to develop partnerships with the private sector, communities and individual households to deliver sustainable and affordable accommodation in close proximity to social and economic opportunities.

When approved, the White Paper will form the basis of new human settlements legislation to replace the Housing Act of 1997. Development of the White Paper will be funded through the Human Settlements Policy, Strategy and Planning programme.

Further legislation guiding the mandate of the DHS include:

- The Sectional Titles Schemes Management Act, 2011 (Act 8 of 2011), which provides for the establishment of bodies corporate to manage and regulate common property in sectional title schemes and the establishment of an advisory council to advise the Minister.
- The Community Schemes Ombud Service (CSOS) Act, 2011 (Act 9 of 2011), which could fundamentally change the lives of people living in high-rise flats, inner-city buildings, townhouse complexes and other gated communities. The Act establishes an ombud service to resolve disputes emanating from within community schemes. The Act is aimed at addressing any problems and disputes among participants involving the control and administration of finances, facilities and behaviour.
- The Estate Agency Affairs Act, 1976 (Act 112 of 1976), the Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP) and the Mortgage Default Insurance are expected to address challenges associated with the upgrading of slums, access to basic services, accreditation of key municipalities and land acquisition for human settlements. The programme of improving property markets remains a major challenge.
- The Housing Act of 1997 provides for, among other things, facilitating a sustainable housing development process. For this purpose, it lays down general principles applicable to housing development in all spheres of Government; defines the functions of national, provincial and local government in respect of housing development; and provides for the financing of national housing programmes.
- The Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999), defines the responsibility of Government in respect of the rental housing market. It creates mechanisms to advance the provision of rental housing property and promotes access to adequate housing by working to ensure the proper functioning of the rental housing market. It furthermore provides for the establishment of rental housing tribunals. The Act gives tribunals the power to make rulings, which are deemed to be rulings of a magistrates' court in terms of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1993 (Act 120 of 1993), and which are enforced in terms of the Act. The Act provides for the facilitation of sound relations between tenants and landlords and for this purpose lays down general requirements relating to leases. Among other things, the Act prescribes that: leases may be oral or in writing; tenants can demand a written lease; the landlord must give the tenant a written receipt for all payments received by the landlord from the tenant; the landlord may require that the tenant pay a deposit before moving in; the balance of the deposit and interest must be refunded to the tenant by the landlord not later than 21 days after the expiry of the lease.
- The Rental Housing Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 43 of 2007), among other things, provides for rulings by rental housing tribunals to expand the provisions pertaining to leases and to extend the period allowed for the filling of vacancies in rental housing tribunals.
- The Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008), aims to establish and promote a sustainable social housing environment. It defines the functions of the national, provincial and local spheres of Government in respect of social housing. It provides for the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) to regulate all social housing institutions obtaining or having obtained public funds, and it allows for the undertaking of approved projects by other delivery agents with the benefit of public money. The DHS has taken steps to assist governance and regulatory processes through the promulgation of the Social Housing Act of 2008 and the establishment of the SHRA. The Act provides for the recognition and accreditation of social housing institutions. Provincial governments are given responsibilities to approve, allocate and administer capital grants, as well as administer the Social Housing Programme. Local governments are required to ensure access to land, municipal infrastructure and services for approved projects in designated restructuring zones. Local governments are also responsible for initiating the identification of these restructuring zones. The Act's major purpose is the establishment of the SHRA.

Human Settlements Vision 2030

Human Settlements Vision 2030: On the Road to 2050 aims to provide houses and services in rural and urban areas. It focuses on the total eradication of backlogs of more than 2,1 million housing units, which translates to about 12,5 million people.

Under Vision 2030's framework, most South Africans will have affordable access to services and a quality environment; instead of living in isolation on the periphery of cities.

The DHS is a key player in the property market. A study found that of the six million registered residential properties in

the Deeds Registry, 1,44 million were government-subsidised houses. This represents just less than a quarter of registered residential properties and could increase to 35% if the backlog in issuing title deeds is overcome.

The value of a title deed provides the following:

- protection of rights to a property
- asset security
- facilitation of entry of ordinary South Africans as players in both the property as well as the financial markets.

What is least understood yet nevertheless a major contribution to asset formation by beneficiaries is that each time Government facilitates the acquisition of a house, it comes with its own land.

Nationally, the acquisition of houses were financially assisted by the National Housing Finance Corporation through FLISP, which gives all qualifying beneficiaries the certainty of being granted loans, bonds or mortgages by banks and other financial institutions.

The DHS has also been buying up high-rise buildings in inner cities and refurbishing and transforming them from office space to rented family units. This form of social housing has become popular with young couples, students and single mothers.

Areas close to townships, known as “no man’s land” that were used as buffer zones to separate black townships from white areas, are being eradicated. The land is being used for housing with occupants being moved closer to cities.

New non-racial towns and cities are constantly being developed to fulfil the principle of a united people in non-racial residential areas.

Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF)

South Africa’s grand plan to change the face of urban development is set to create vibrant spaces that are geared towards inclusive living and growth in the country’s towns and cities.

In April 2016, South Africa adopted the IUDF to steer urban growth towards a sustainable model of “compact, connected and coordinated towns and cities”.

The IUDF provides a roadmap to implement the NDP vision for spatial transformation.

It addresses issues such as densification, the delivery of basic services, infrastructure development and rural-urban linkages. Through the plan, Government aims to promote urban resilience, create safe urban spaces and ensure that the needs of the most vulnerable groups are addressed. The objective is to transform urban spaces by:

- reducing travel costs and distances
- preventing further development of housing in marginal places
- increasing urban density to reduce sprawling
- improving public transport and the coordination between transport modes
- shifting jobs and investment towards dense peripheral townships
- rapid urbanisation in Africa.

According to the United Nations (UN), 54% of the world’s population lives in urban areas and this will increase to 66% by 2050.

Continuing population growth and urbanisation will add two-and-a-half billion people to the world’s urban population by 2050.

The UN states that Africa is expected to be one of the fastest urbanising regions between 2020 and 2050.

Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery

The Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery was conceptualised to support the implementation of Government’s Breaking New Ground strategy, which was launched in 2004 with the aim to accelerate the delivery of housing as a key strategy for poverty alleviation.

In 2014, the DHS together with private sector partners and stakeholders recommitted and signed a Social Contract for the Development of Sustainable Human Developments and Improved Quality of Household Life.

Through the contract, the partners set an ambitious target to deliver 1,5 million housing opportunities over the following five years.

The partners, including the private sector, mining sector, banking sector; as well as national, provincial and local spheres of government, signed the contract during the National Human Settlements Indaba held in Johannesburg.

The signatories of the social contract jointly undertook to work together to deliver 110 000 affordable housing opportunities for the gap market, 70 000 affordable rental opportunities, undertake 50 catalytic projects and install basic services and infrastructure in 2 000 informal settlements.

This formed part of their plan to ensure that by 2030 all South Africans live in adequate housing.

Inclusionary Housing Policy

The New Economic Growth Path identified energy, transport, roads, water, communication and housing as key areas in its strategy to fast-track sustainable growth, employment and equity creation.

This was given a boost by the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Committee (PICC) and was a breakthrough in the effort to reverse the system of apartheid infrastructure and its spatial planning. The introduction of the PICC means the beginning of the end for Government operating in silos.

Sanitation, which provides the most basic protection to the private dignity of citizens, is an internationalised programme through the UN Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) as agreed to by all UN member states. In the PICC, this programme has been made a national priority. This is also one of the key recommendations of the Ministerial Sanitation Task Team’s preliminary findings.

Private-sector developers, in collaboration with financial institutions, have undertaken several inclusionary housing initiatives.

These included housing projects in areas such as Bertrams and Cosmo City, Johannesburg; Olievenhoutbosch, Pretoria; Hlanganani, Springs; and Blythedale outside Durban. Multiple housing projects such as these that are designed as mixed-income housing developments ensure cross-subsidisation and achieve inclusive housing objectives.

Human Settlements Development Bank

The Human Settlements Development Bank was established in May 2017.

Supporting effective transformation of the human settlements sector is a key focus and this will be enabled by the provision of equity finance especially for emerging black entrants in the

property industry, in line with Government's transformation objectives. This would require a fundamental shift from the ordinary banking mindset.

The bank will faciltate the scaled-up delivery of FLISP to qualifying benefiaries in the so-called gap market (an as yet unmet consumer need or a group of potential customers who are not yet purchasing a good or service, in this case buying property), including the Goverment Employees Housing Scheme (GEHS).

The strategic focus of the Human Settlements Development Bank will be to faciliate the increased provision of finance across the human settlements value chain, and the specific priority for the bank in this respect is the mobilisation of and the provision of finance for all planned catalytic projects.

National Housing Needs Register

The National Housing Needs Register is a database that links transparent processes of applying for a housing opportunity. It has 2,22 million records, with each record representing a household that has registered a housing need over the last seven years. This places the DHS in a stronger position to address people's needs.

The department has established a single national housing needs register (or database) that will be a single central reference platform and assist in monitoring all housing programme planning and housing allocations. It is possible to know and prioritise all people based on which type of housing they need, in which area and what they are able to contribute.

The DHS is working together with Statistics South Africa and the Department of Science and Technology to build and govern the housing needs register.

Budget

The department's budget for the 2017/18 financial year was R33.5 billion. It's total expenditure for the period ending 31 March 2018 was R33.3 billion, representing approximately 99.7% of the vote's allocationThe budget is expected to increase to R37,4 billion in 2019/20.

Over the next three years, the department plans to initiate 50 catalytic projects that it will use as the main driver for delivering housing opportunities. Housing opportunities are implemented by provinces, metropolitan municipalities and public entities that are funded through conditional grants and transfers to departmental agencies and accounts.

The budget for these transfers is located in the Housing Development Finance Programme and is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7% over the medium term, from R29,8 billion in 2017/18 to R36,6 billion in 2019/20.

As a result, the DHS expects to facilitate the delivery of 368 530 fully subsidised units, disburse 66 554 finance-linked individual subsidies and upgrade 623 635 houses in informal settlements by 2019.

This will be funded through the Human Settlements Development Grant, which is expected to increase from R18,3 billion in 2017/18 to R22,3 billion by 2019/20, at an average annual rate of 6,9%.

The cost of delivering these programmes in metropolitan municipalities will be supported through the urban settlements development grant, a supplementary capital grant to the eight metropolitan municipalities that focuses on providing land, bulk infrastructure and basic services to poor households, and, in particular, for the upgrading of households in informal settlements. This grant is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5,2% to R12,6 billion by 2019/20.

In addition, 55 171 social rental housing units are expected to be delivered by 2019. This will primarily be funded and facilitated through the Social Housing Regulatory Authority's capital programme, which is expected to total R3,2 billion over the medium term.

This budget is the largest and most rapidly growing component of the DHS's transfers to departmental agencies and accounts over the period, increasing at an average annual rate of 42,9%.

Another of the DHS's focus areas through its implementing agencies is providing title deeds for subsidised housing beneficiaries.

The title deeds restoration programme, which is funded through the provincial Human Settlements Development Grant, is expected to deliver 701 646 title deeds related to the backlog (pre-1994), as well as 510 721 title deeds linked to new beneficiaries.

Subsidies and funding

Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme

The South African Constitution enshrines the right of everyone to have access to adequate housing and makes it incumbent upon Government to take reasonable measures to achieve this.

Among Government's many programmes, FLISP is specifically intended for the market segment whose income is inadequate to qualify for a home loan, but exceeds the maximum limit applicable to access Government's "free basic house" subsidy scheme. This market segment, generally known as the "affordable/gap" market, earns between R3 501 and R15 000 per month.

Households in this segment, if buying a home for the first time, may apply for a FLISP subsidy.

The subsidy attaches to the beneficiary and not to the property. This is used to decrease the mortgage bond and applies only to people who have never been assisted by Government. It is disbursed as a once-off subsidy.

An estimated 70 000 finance-linked subsidies are expected to be disbursed to qualifying beneficiaries by 2019 through funding provided in the Human Settlements Development Grant.

FLISP's allocations made to provinces by the Human Settlements Development Grant was R71,6 million. The actual spending at the end of the financial year had been R35,5 million, with four provinces reporting no expenditure at all.

Housing subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant by Government to qualifying beneficiaries to be used for housing purposes. The subsidy is either paid to a seller of a house or, in new developments, it is used to finance the construction of a house that complies with the ministerial minimum norms and standards. The house is then transferred to the qualifying beneficiary.

One of the DHS areas of responsibility in the delivery of human settlements relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor.

This is where the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

A total of 563 000 fully subsidised housing units are expected to be built by 2019.

Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of improved residential properties (a stand or house) or to finance the acquisition of a serviced site linked to a house-building contract that is not part of an approved housing-subsidy project.

The latter option is only available to beneficiaries with access to housing credit. The subsidy amount of R84 000 comprises R6 000 for the raw land cost, R22 162 for internal municipal engineering services and R55 706 for the cost of constructing the top structure.

Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism gives former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

Housing Development Finance Programme

The grant aims to improve access to housing finance, through collaborations with the private sector and other related entities.

The DHS expects to facilitate the delivery of 368 530 fully subsidised units, disburse 66 554 finance-linked individual subsidies and upgrade 623 635 houses in informal settlements by 2019.

Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying housing institutions.

The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options.

This is done on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy. Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

Subsidies for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy receive additional amounts to improve their houses with special additions such as paving and ramps to their doors, grab rails in bathrooms, and visible door bells for the deaf.

Enhanced Extended Discount Benefit Scheme

The Enhanced Extended Discount Benefit Scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of state-financed rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites.

The scheme is only available to beneficiaries who took occupation of such rented houses before 15 March 1991.

Rural subsidies

These housing subsidies are available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. This land belongs to the State and is governed by traditional authorities.

These subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents. Beneficiaries also have the right to decide how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, for the building of houses, or for a combination of these.

Farm resident subsidies

The housing subsidy programme for farm residents addresses the wide variety of housing needs of people working and residing on farms by providing a flexible package of housing models to suit the local context.

In most instances, the programme is applied where farm residents are required to reside close to their employment obligations and where the farm land is distant from the nearest town, rendering the settlement of the farm residents in town impracticable.

Farm residents play an important role in all aspects of their housing solutions regarding the selection of options, the design and implementation phase, as well as the ongoing management of the housing stock.

Human Settlements Development Grant

This grant reflects the conditional allocation that is transferred to all provinces for delivering housing projects as per the National Housing Code.

National Housing Finance Corporation

The National Housing Finance Corporation is one of several development finance institutions created by Government to improve the socio-economic challenges of the country.

It is mandated to broaden and deepen access to affordable housing finance for low to middle-income households by facilitating private sector lending for housing purposes.

Rural Housing Loan Fund

The Rural Housing Loan Fund is a wholesale lending institution. It is mandated to facilitate access to housing credit to low-income rural households by providing wholesale finance through a network of retail intermediaries and community-based organisations.

Role players

Enhanced People's Housing Process

The Enhanced People's Housing Process is a government housing delivery mechanism that supports households who wish to enhance their subsidies by building their own homes or organising between themselves the building of their homes. The process allows beneficiaries to establish a housing-support organisation that will provide them with organisational, technical and administrative assistance.

The assistance includes training and guiding the beneficiaries in building their own homes. The subsidy is available to beneficiaries enjoying functional tenure rights to the land they occupy.

The land is normally in rural areas and belongs to the State and is allocated by the State and the authorities. Unlike the project-linked subsidy, where a contractor builds houses for a number of people, this housing mechanism allows people or beneficiaries to build or organise the building of their homes.

The Enhanced People's Housing Process is a useful tool for community involvement.

In June 2016, Government set itself a target to deliver six million houses and housing opportunities by 2019.

Housing institutions

The DHS's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, and making housing more accessible to all South Africans.

The institutions also facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role that provincial governments and municipalities play. These institutions are accountable to the Executive Authority of the DHS.

These institutions are the National Home Builders Registration Council, the National Housing Finance Corporation, the National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency, the Social Housing Regulatory Authority, Rural Housing Loan Fund, the Housing Development Agency, the Estate Agency Affairs Board, and the Community Scheme Ombud Service.

Stakeholder management

Increased operations through new partnerships would address the challenges of rapid urbanisation. The DHS has been at the forefront of addressing this challenge in South Africa.

The Chief Directorate: Stakeholder Management's primary objective is to mobilise sector stakeholders to partner with Government to fast-track housing delivery.

The unit facilitates stakeholder engagement through various dialogue forums, which has led to collaboration in the implementation of the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery and Rural Housing Contract, Stakeholder Engagement, Youth Build, Women's Build and the Govan Mbeki Housing Awards.

Women in housing

The DHS is working on a range of measures that are geared to support women in human settlements and emerging contractors in the housing sector.

These measures will look at addressing issues such as access to bridging finance, credit, lack of skills and lack of supportive institutional arrangements within human settlements value chain.

The NHBRC Women Empowerment Programme, which was formed in partnership with the Gordon Institute of Business Science, comprises a developed and customised programme for women entrepreneurs in the construction industry.

As part of the initiative, one hundred women who own construction-related businesses are taken through a 10-month programme that includes business skills training, mentorship, coaching, access to finance and new markets, as well as peer-learning opportunities.

Training and modules are customised based on the particular challenges and requirements of the industry. They also include practical support that facilitates application of the lessons learned throughout the programme.

National Home Builders Registration Council

The NHBRC was established as a Schedule 3A public entity in terms of the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998).

The entity is mandated to represent the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes, and to regulate the home-building industry. The council provides training and capacity-building to promote and ensure compliance with technical standards in the home-building environment.

This contributes to the realisation of the NDP's vision of adequate housing and improved living environments, and Outcome 8 (sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life) of Government's 2014 – 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

The NHBRC's total expenditure is expected to increase to R1 billion over the medium term, at an average annual rate of 8,4%. Spending on consumer protection was estimated to increase to R450 million in 2019/20. This increase is expected to result in 399 903 subsidy home enrolments and 177 616 non-subsidy home enrolments over the medium term.

In terms of providing regulation, spending is projected to increase to R235,3 million in 2019/20 because of an expected increase in activities related to inspections, training and registrations. In the subsidy market, 1,7 million inspections are expected, while 728 309 inspections are expected in the non-subsidy market. Training in home-building skills related to government housing projects is expected to be provided to 6 000 home builders and 3 600 youth, women, people with disabilities and military veterans; and 16 240 new homebuilders are expected to be registered by 2019.

The NHBRC spent more than R30 million in 2017 in its efforts to bring about transformation in the home-building industry.

The announcement was made during the launch of the NHBRC Transformation Charter.

The NHBRC Transformation Charter seeks to address pertinent issues that relate to the advancement of equal economic opportunities to optimise the meaningful participation of priority and vulnerable groups including women, youth, people with disabilities and military veterans.

The launch was hosted in partnership with the DHS, as part of the International Women's Day celebrations.

Youth Build

The Youth Build SA Programme is a community-based national youth service initiative that integrates academic achievement, work experience, social action, leadership development and personal transformation in a single project for volunteers.

The National Youth Development Agency (NYDA) implements the following two types of Youth Build projects in support of this programme:

- The comprehensive model where 100 youths, all of them volunteers, spend between eight and 12 months in class and on site learning the construction trade using the Youth Build model which is adopted from Youth Build International.
- A model is done in partnership with the DHS where volunteers are recruited within identified communities, orientated by NYDA and then sent straight to site to build houses. When they complete the houses, they go into training with the NHBRC for six weeks. The NYDA then prepares volunteers to look for jobs or start their own businesses based on the skills they' would have acquired through Youth Build.

The difference in the two approaches is that on the first one, the NYDA can fund the project up to 100% and the second one is mostly funded by the DHS.

The volunteers are empowered with house construction skills such as bricklaying, plastering and plumbing.

More than 1 400 young South Africans are enrolled in 13 Youth Build programmes. Apart from the DHS, other key partners

include municipal governments, Technical and Vocational Education and Training centres, the Sector Education and Training Authority, and private sector companies.

After seven years of experience in managing Youth Build programmes, the NYDA is working on opening a Youth Build school to strengthen education outcomes, improve private sector links, and provide professional development to Youth Build teams around the country.

The agency's strategic re-orientation prioritised the expansion of Youth Build to 50 communities with the goal of engaging 5 000 to 7 000 youths each year.

National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency

NURCHA provides bridging finance to contractors building low to moderate income housing, infrastructure and community facilities, and provides account administration and support services.

NURCHA works in partnership with all role players in these markets to maximise the development of sustainable human settlements provides bridging finance to contractors.

Social Housing Regulatory Authority

The SHRA is mandated to regulate the social housing sector, and to ensure a sustainable and regulated flow of investment into the social housing sector to support the restructuring of urban spaces through capital grant provisions to accredited social housing institutions.

Housing Development Agency

The Housing Development Agency is mandated to identify, acquire, hold, develop and release state and privately owned land for residential and community purposes and to create sustainable human settlements.

The agency provides project-management expertise in human-settlement projects and facilitates the development of projects through accelerated and innovative project packaging.

The Community Schemes Ombud Service

The CSOS provides an alternative, impartial and transparent service for the resolution of unresolved disputes in community schemes. Established in terms of the CSOS Act of 2011, the service regulates the conduct of parties within community schemes and ensures their good governance.

The CSOS is mandated to:

- provide a dispute resolution service for community schemes
- regulate, monitor and control the quality of all sectional title schemes' governance documentation
- take custody of, preserve and provide public access to scheme governance documentation.

In terms of the CSOS Act of 2011, any person in a community scheme may apply to the CSOS, if such a person is a party to or is materially affected by a dispute, for mediation and adjudication.

The National Human Settlements Land Inventory (NaHSLI)

The NaHSLI and the Land and Property Spatial Information System are fully developed and operational.

NaHSLI is a comprehensive, multidimensional catalogue of habitable land. NaHSLI presents a national tool based on the geospatial analysis of the natural, regulatory, structural and social environment context within which a habitable land profile for South Africa is being developed.

It facilitates the identification of suitable, available, accessible land that can be used to earn a livelihood, thereby demarcating non-habitable land and risk-prone areas and informing potential users where human settlements could be located best.

NaHSLI also provides insight into the development potential of habitable land and lends itself to the functions of choice, governance and sustainability.

In total, seven implementation protocols have been signed and further agreements are under negotiation with a number of municipalities and provinces.

The Estate Agency Affairs Board

The Estate Agency Affairs Board is mandated to regulate, maintain and promote the conduct of estate agents, issue certificates from the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund, prescribe the standard of education and training for estate agents, investigate complaints lodged against estate agents, and manage and control the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund.

Resources

One of the major constraints in housing delivery is the lack of capacity in terms of an efficient workforce and the installation of appropriate technology, equipment and systems for monitoring, evaluation and reporting purposes.

The DHS continues to assist provinces in ensuring effective and efficient implementation of the National Housing Programme.

The strategy and guidelines for capacity building, and guidelines for provincial housing-capacity business plans, have been developed.

The DHS undertook several initiatives to support small enterprises within housing and to promote Black Economic Empowerment and gender mainstreaming.

Based on extensive consultation with stakeholders in the construction and housing industry, the DHS developed a framework for emerging contractor support that resulted in a support programme that focuses on training emerging contractors.

Programmes and projects

Sustainable human settlements

Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life are defined by:

- access to adequate accommodation that is suitable, relevant, appropriately located, affordable and fiscally sustainable
- access to basic services such as water, sanitation, refuse removal and electricity
- security of tenure irrespective of ownership or rental, formal or informal structures
- access to social services and economic opportunities within reasonable distance.

Strategic Integrated Project 7 (SIP7)

The SIP7 is part of the 18 SIPs contained in the Presidential Infrastructure Plan.

They incorporate a range of economic and social infrastructure projects and cover all nine provinces with the emphasis on poorer regions.

Investment in rail, water pipelines, energy generation and transmission infrastructure have been identified for Limpopo.

SIP7 focuses on 12 of the country's major cities in Gauteng, the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, North West and the Western Cape.

The cities include major metropolitan municipalities such as Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni and Tshwane in Gauteng, Buffalo City and Nelson Mandela Metro in the Eastern Cape, eThekwini in KwaZulu-Natal, Cape Town in the Western Cape and Mangaung in the Free State.

The cities were chosen because of their demographic and economic significance. They will be given implementation powers, with the PICC expected to exercise an oversight role.

In Gauteng, some of the projects that are in operation include the implementation of the Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) System in the province's three metropolitan cities. Tshwane is expected to spend more than R1,6 billion on its BRT System.

Johannesburg finalised plans for a major rehabilitation of Diepsloot and Ivory Park townships, including the construction of clinics, schools and community libraries.

About R45 million has been set aside to turn Ekurhuleni into an aerotropolis – a new urban form where cities grow around airports, connecting workers, suppliers, executives and goods to the global marketplace.

An amount of R2 billion has been earmarked for a new rail link connecting Cape Town International Airport and the city centre while in other provinces such as the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, the focus will be on expanding ports and rail services.

Comprehensive Housing Plan (CHP)

The CHP for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements (the Breaking New Ground strategy) is aimed at eradicating informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

It incorporates principles such as:

- integrating subsidised, rental and bonded housing
- providing municipal engineering services at a higher level, applying them consistently throughout townships
- providing ancillary facilities such as schools, clinics and commercial opportunities
- combining different housing densities and types, ranging from single-stand to double-storey units and row houses.

The CHP is being implemented through informal settlement upgrading pilot projects in each province.

These projects provide for phased, area-based development, and emphasise community participation and social and economic development as an integral part of housing projects.

The CHP focuses on:

- accelerating housing delivery as a key strategy for poverty alleviation
- using housing provision as a major job-creation strategy
- ensuring that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- leveraging growth in the economy, combating crime and promoting social cohesion
- using housing development to break down barriers between the first-economy residential property boom and the second-economy slump
- using housing as an instrument for the development of sustainable human settlements in support of spatial restructuring
- diversifying housing products by emphasising rental stock.

The DHS developed and launched a number of instruments to guide the implementation of the comprehensive plan in all three spheres of Government. These include the monitoring, evaluation and impact-assessment policy and implementation guidelines, and the operating system for the policy and guidelines.

The department also initiated a project-monitoring process to measure the performance of provincial housing departments against targets set in their business plans, to identify constraints and assist with addressing them swiftly.

Rental housing for the poor

The National Rental Housing Strategy, which was approved in 2008, provides for people in the low-income bracket and living under the following conditions:

- provisions made by previous departments
- community residential units (formerly known as hostels) for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock that has not been transferred to the households who inhabit the units, and which will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock to be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Many job seekers in urban areas require rental accommodation. There has been an increased public hostels owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities:

- "grey" hostels that have both private and public ownership
- public housing stock that cannot be transferred and has to be managed as rental accommodation
- post-1994 newly developed public residential accommodation owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities
- dilapidated, derelict and dysfunctional buildings.

Units provide secure and stable rental tenure for lower-income earners. Potential tenants are selected according to specific criteria such as: they must be a South African citizen, not an owner of any property in the municipality, earn between R1 600 and R3 500 per month (gross income), not owe the municipality any services money, pass an affordability check, and they must be a major to be able to sign the legal documents.

Emergency housing

The main objective of this programme is to provide temporary housing relief to people in urban and rural areas who find themselves in emergency situations, such as when:

- their existing shelters have been destroyed or damaged
- their prevailing situation poses an immediate threat to their lives, health and safety
- they have been evicted or face the threat of eviction.

Assistance involves prioritising funds from the provincial housing allocations to municipalities to accelerate land development, as well as the provision of basic municipal engineering services and temporary shelter.

Government Employees Housing Scheme

In May 2016, an initiative to help low-earning public servants to

purchase homes was launched. The GEHS is meant to service 1,3 million public servants who earn too little to qualify for a bond.

Civil servants already qualified for a R1 200 housing subsidy if they owned their property but this did not help employees who earned too little to qualify for a home loan.

In terms of a Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council resolution, the programme included advice to employees on home ownership options and how to go about renting to buy.

The GEHS would help employees with their finance applications, facilitate access to housing subsidies, and help negotiate favourable lending terms with financial institutions.

Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)

The IRDP provides for the acquisition of land, servicing of stands for a variety of land uses, including commercial and recreational purposes, schools and clinics, as well as residential stands for low, middle and high-income groups. The land use and income group mix is based on local planning and needs assessment.

Social Housing Regulatory Authority

Social housing is a rental or cooperative housing option, which requires institutionalised management. Social housing is provided by accredited social housing institutions or in accredited social housing projects in designated restructuring zones. Social housing provides good quality rental accommodation for the upper end of the low-income market (R1 500 — R7 500).

The primary objective of urban restructuring is creating sustainable human settlements. Social housing is not just about building houses; it is also about transforming residential areas and building communities.

An additional 27 000 households are expected to be living in affordable social rental units by 2019. Over the medium term, 16 204 such units were expected to be built, funded through the restructuring capital grant of the SHRA and the provincial institutional subsidy.

International relations

The South African Government is party to the UN MDGs, which provide for the significant improvement in the lives of at least 100 million slum dwellers by 2020.

In addition to these conventions, South Africa adheres to the following declarations under the UN Habitat programme: the Vancouver Declaration on Human Settlements of 1976, the Istanbul Declaration on Cities and other Human Settlements of 1996 and the Habitat Agenda of 1996, the focus of which is to address the plight of people without adequate housing.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

International Relations

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, the President is ultimately responsible for the country's foreign policy and international relations. It is the President's prerogative to appoint heads of mission, receive foreign heads of mission, conduct state-to-state relations, and negotiate and sign all international agreements.

International agreements that are not of a technical, administrative or executive nature will only bind the country after being approved by Parliament. Parliament also approves the country's ratification of or accession to multilateral agreements. All international agreements must be tabled in Parliament for information purposes.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation is entrusted with the formulation, promotion, execution and daily conduct of South Africa's foreign policy.

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's (DIRCO) overall mandate is to work for the realisation of South Africa's foreign policy objectives. This is done by:

- coordinating and aligning South Africa's international relations abroad
- monitoring developments in the international environment
- communicating government's policy positions
- developing and advising government on policy options, creating mechanisms and avenues for achieving objectives
- protecting South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity
- contributing to the creation of an enabling international environment for South African business
- sourcing developmental assistance
- assisting South African citizens abroad.

DIRCO's strategic objectives are to:

- protect and promote South African national interests and values through bilateral and multilateral interactions
- conduct and coordinate South Africa's international relations and promote its foreign policy objectives
- monitor international developments and advise government on foreign policy and related domestic matters
- contribute to the formulation of international law and enhance respect for its provisions
- promote multilateralism to secure a rules-based international system
- maintain a modern, effective department driven to pursue excellence
- provide a world-class and uniquely South African state protocol service.

The National Development Plan (NDP) is the overarching apex policy framework that guides the work of the fifth administration. In the area of international relations, the NDP states:

"… in order for South Africa to achieve its national goals of eradicating poverty, lowering inequality, creating jobs and making the transition to a resilient carbon economy, foreign relations must be driven by the country's domestic economic, political and social demands, as well as our regional, continental and global obligations."

In pursuance of this injunction, DIRCO has translated the NDP goals into a strategic programme that seeks to:

- sustain political, economic and social relations
- strengthen political and economic integration and development of the Southern African Development Community (SADC)
- consolidate the African Agenda
- strengthen and consolidate South-South relations
- leverage relations with the North in advancement of national and continental priorities and the agenda of the South
- advocate for the reform and strengthening of the global system of governance.

South Africa maintains diplomatic relations with countries and international organisations through 124 missions in 107 countries abroad, and through the accreditation of more than 160 countries and international organisations resident in South Africa.

South Africa's diplomatic and consular missions implement the country's foreign policy to enhance its international profile and serve as strategic mechanisms for the achievement of national interest.

In addition, training and policy analysis remain of strategic importance for the execution of DIRCO's mandate.

Legislation

The DIRCO derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- The Foreign States Immunities Act, 1981 (Act 87 of 1981), regulates the extent of the immunity of foreign states from the jurisdiction of the South African courts and provides for matters connected therewith.
- The Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001), provides for the immunities and privileges of diplomatic missions and consular posts and their members, heads of state, special envoys and certain representatives of the United Nations (UN) and its specialised agencies, and other international organisations and certain people.
- The African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund (ARF) Act, 2001 (Act 51 of 2001), establishes an ARF to enhance cooperation between South Africa and other countries, in particular African countries, through the promotion of democracy, good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflict, socio-economic development and integration, humanitarian assistance and human resource development.
- International agreements (multilateral and bilateral): International agreements concluded by South Africa in terms of sections 231(2) and 231(3) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

Enhancing economic diplomacy

In anticipation of growth in the African and Asian regions, South Africa took a conscious decision to expand and strengthen its diplomatic missions in the two regions.

As South Africa consolidated its political relations on the continent by expanding its diplomatic footprint through 47 embassies, high commissions and consulates general, South Africa has also rapidly advanced her economic relations in Africa, through the expansion of its trade volumes, investment portfolio and economic relations across the length and breadth of the continent.

South Africa has grown her bilateral trade portfolio with countries on the continent from R11,4 billion in 1994 to the current R429 billion.

This has resulted in Africa becoming a prime destination of South African-originated goods and services, especially value-added goods, which assists in contributing to the R198-billion trade surplus, creating much-needed jobs and opportunities for our people within the manufacturing, retail, fast-moving

Introducing the Ubuntu brand

Ubuntu magazine

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation (DIRCO) introduced its quarterly magazine Ubuntu – South Africa's Public Diplomacy in Action, in August 2012 to:

- communicate with and educate stakeholders on South Africa's foreign policy positions, achievements, objectives and goals
- give in-depth analysis and information on key departmental issues ranging from current affairs, bilateral and multilateral milestones, upcoming key events, as well as international work done by other government departments, business and parastatals.

The high-quality glossy magazine spreads South Africa's foreign policy message quarterly around the world. Its footprint extends across the globe. The magazine is also available online on *www.dirco.gov.za*.

Annual Ubuntu Awards

The Ubuntu Awards, introduced in 2015, are aimed at recognising South African industry leaders and eminent persons for their distinguished service and contribution towards promoting South Africa's national interests and values across the world.

Awards are given in various categories to organisations/individuals who have through excellence, innovation, creativity, inventiveness, social responsibility or patriotism distinguished themselves as true ambassadors of South Africa.

Ubuntu Radio

Ubuntu Radio was launched in October 2013 as an online, 24-hour radio station aimed at enhancing communication on South Africa's foreign policy.

The first of its kind on the African continent, it is accessible on the Internet at www.ubunturadio.com and on DSTV Audio Bouquet Channel 888. The objective of Ubuntu Radio is to create a platform to exchange views and opinions by various stakeholders.

consumer goods, financial services and transport/logistics sectors. It is also worth noting that the SADC accounts for approximately 80% of our total trade with the continent.

With regard to Asia and the Middle East, South Africa's trade and investment in these regions have grown considerably and continue to do so. In 1994, trade with Asia and the Middle East combined was approximately R45 billion and has increased to approximately R760 billion for Asia and R116 billion with the Middle East. South Africa can achieve a trillion rand trade with this region by 2019.

There is a direct correlation between the growth of South Africa's diplomatic missions and the phenomenal expansion of its trade and investment relations on both the African continent and in Asia and the Middle East. The same applies to the Americas and Europe. With additional economic diplomacy efforts and enhanced national coordination, South African trade with the world can reach R2 trillion by 2019.

As South Africa explores new markets, it continues to maintain close economic ties with the industrialised economies of the North, which provide, among others, preferential market access to some of South Africa's exports. Enhancing the economic and political dialogue is an important part of South Africa's economic diplomacy strategy as they remain a primary source of foreign direct investment (FDI) and official development assistance (ODA) flows into South Africa.

DIRCO also uses international summits - Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa (BRICS), Group of Twenty (G20) SADC, Indian Ocean Rim Association (IORA) as well as State Visits and Bilateral Consultation mechanisms to promote the trade and investment case for South Africa.

Budget, funding and trade

DIRCO's budget allocation for the 2017/18 financial year was R6.4 billion.

With regard to Asia and the Middle East, South Africa's trade and investment in these regions have grown considerably and continue to do so. In 1994, trade with Asia and the Middle East combined was approximately R45 billion and has increased to approximately R760 billion for Asia and R116 billion with the Middle East. Working together with other government departments, DIRCO can achieve a trillion rand trade with this region by 2019.

Foreign policy

South Africa's foreign policy outlook is based on South Africa's foreign policy outlook is based on its commitment to the values and ideals of Pan-Africanism, solidarity with people of the South and the need to cooperate with all peace-loving people across the globe in pursuit of shared prosperity and a just, equitable and rules-based international order.

Thus, the country's diplomacy of Ubuntu continues to place cooperation with partners as the thrust of its foreign policy endeavours above all forms of competition. South Africa therefore strive to address its domestic imperatives as enunciated in the NDP and national interest while taking into cognisance the needs and aspirations of others.

South Africa's diplomatic efforts over the past two decades include conflict resolution, prevention, mediation, peacekeeping and peacebuilding.

Global Governance and Continental Agenda

Global Governance

South Africa participates in a rules-based multilateral system to achieve global political and socio-economic stability and security.

Multilateralism, and by implication the commitment to a rules-based, just, and equitable international order, remains a focal point of South Africa's foreign policy. Consequently, South Africa will continue to engage the multilateral system, particularly the UN, through its agencies, funds, programmes and processes, to advance South Africa's foreign policy priorities.

These engagements take into account that the multilateral system still does not fully reflect global political and economic realities and is in need of reform. A key priority for South Africa is to regain lost momentum that would accelerate the reform of the UN Security Council (UNSC), as well as to advance the reform of the broader global governance architecture with a view to improving its representivity and focus its responsiveness to the needs of, and challenges faced by, developing states.

The current unpredictable global environment poses a number of risks to the UN and the global governance system, particularly as it relates to, among others, the dynamics within the UNSC on issues of peace and security (including the situation in the Middle East), promotion and protection of human rights, funding for multilateral processes and honouring commitments to enable national implementation of multilateral decisions such as the 2030 Agenda and its Sustainable Development Goals

(SDGs) as well as the Paris Agreement on Climate Change.

Ensuring sustainable development in the current global environment will require concerted engagement in the UN system and other multilateral structures such as the G20, on economic growth and the improvement of social well-being and infrastructure through increased trade and investment as well as the fair and equitable movement of goods and services.

Furthermore, in the wake of numerous terror attacks across the world, countering international terrorism remains a priority on the agenda of the UN, particularly with regard to the abuse of cyber platforms for propaganda, recruitment and planning of attacks, radicalising of the youth and inciting extremism leading to terrorist attacks.

Development, human rights, security and international law are promoted through international forums such as the UN and its agencies:

United Nations

The UN occupies the central and indispensable role within the global system of governance. South Africa looks to the UN to advance the global peace and security and development agenda and address underdevelopment, social integration, full employment and decent work for all and the eradication of poverty globally.

Through its participation in multilateral forums, South Africa also upholds the belief that the resolution of international conflicts should be peaceful and in accordance with the centrality of the UN Charter and the principles of international law.

South Africa was one of the 51 founding member of the UN in 1945. Since then, UN membership has grown to 193 states. After being suspended in 1974, owing to international opposition to the policy of apartheid, South Africa was readmitted to the UN in 1994 following its transition to democracy.

UN General Assemby (UNGA) and the UNSC

Then President Jacob Zuma attended the 72nd Session of the UNGA from 19 to 25 September 2017. The theme for the session was “Focusing on People: Striving for Peace and a Decent Life for all on a Sustainable Planet”. This was the first General Debate for the newly appointed Secretary-General, António Guterres, who started his term on 1 January 2017. Mr Guterres identified his major priority as the achievement of sustainable peace and security through conflict prevention by establishing a “culture of prevention” in the UN – which South Africa fully supports.

For South Africa, this General Debate coincided with the centenary anniversary of Mr Oliver Reginald Tambo. Then President Zuma hosted an event on 20 September 2017, at the UN, in honour of this global icon of the struggle against apartheid in South Africa.

In addition to addressing the General Debate, he also signed the Treaty on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons on 20 September 2017. Signature of the treaty reflects South Africa’s continued commitment towards the achievement of a world free from the threat posed by nuclear weapons and ensuring that nuclear energy is used for peaceful purposes only.

South Africa has been elected overwhelmingly to serve on the UNSC for the term 2019 – 2020. This will be South Africa’s third term on the UNSC, having previously served in 2007 to 2008 and 2011 to 2012. South Africa’s tenure on the UNSC will be dedicated to the legacy of former President Nelson Mandela and his commitment to peace.

South Africa will also use its experience in the prioritisation of diplomacy, mediation, the pacific settlement of disputes, conflict resolution and peacebuilding through inclusive dialogue and negotiations with the ultimate aim of supporting parties to achieve sustainable peace, national unity and reconciliation; will also actively contribute to achieving a Africa at peace by 2063 by pursuing and promoting Africa’s goal of “silencing the guns by 2020”, but also to promote and achieve peace in all the regions of the world.

In continuing its legacy from the two previous terms on the UNSC, South Africa will advocate for closer cooperation between the UNSC and the African Union (AU) Peace and Security Council (AUPSC).

Disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control

A primary goal of South Africa’s policy on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control includes reinforcing and promoting the country as a responsible producer, possessor and trader of defence-related products and advanced technologies.

In this regard, the department continues to promote the benefits that disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control hold for international peace and security.

As a member of the supplier’s regimes and of the Africa Group and the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), the importance of non-proliferation is promoted, taking into account that export controls should not become the means whereby developing countries are denied access to advanced technologies required for their development.

In seeking solutions to intractable disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control challenges in the international arena, a bridge-building approach has been followed in order to seek realistic and achievable solutions. Whilst dealing with challenging issues from a pragmatic perspective, due recognition has been given to the role that civil society can play in partnership with the governments of the world, especially in the context of seeking solutions to the divergent views that often characterise international negotiations.

UN Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC)

ECOSOC is a premier organ of the UN responsible for the economic and social development matters of the world.

Having served at a strategic juncture during the adoption of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development from 2013 – 2015, South Africa was re-elected on 21 October 2015 to continue its role on the implementation of the 2030 Agenda and the SDGs. South Africa, in July 2018 concluded its tenure as Vice-President of ECOSOC and as council member.

South Africa regards sustainable development as a collective opportunity and responsibility that can be achieved through multilateral cooperation, and will continue its active role in the ECOSOC mandated processes to address the follow-up and review of financing for development outcomes and the means of implementation of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, all of which are crucial to the realisation of the SDGs.

South Africa further actively participates in the functional commissions of ECOSOC such as the Commission for Social

Development, the Commission on the Status of Women as well as the Commission on Population and Development (of which it is a member for the term 2015 – 2018).

UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)

South Africa is an active participant in key UNESCO governance structures such as the General Conference and the World Heritage Committee, and is currently serving on the organisation's Executive Board (for the term 2015 to 2019). South Africa is also serving on the following UNESCO bodies until 2017:

- the International Bureau of Education
- the Intergovernmental Council on the Management of Social Transformation (MOST)
- the Intergovernmental Committee for Physical Education and Sport (CIGEPS)
- the International Coordinating Council of the Programme on Man and Biosphere (MAB).

Since its return to UNESCO in 1994, South Africa has ratified a number of UNESCO conventions, including the:

- Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (July 1997)
- Convention Against Discrimination in Education (March 2000)
- International Convention Against Doping in Sport (November 2006)
- Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions (December 2006).

South Africa also acceded to the Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict (December 2003) and the Convention on the Protection of Underwater Cultural Heritage (May 2015).

Since South Africa ratified the World Heritage Convention in 1997, it has inscribed 10 world heritage sites under the convention, namely the:

- Fossil Hominid Sites of South Africa (1999)
- Robben Island Museum (1999)
- iSimangaliso Wetland Park (1999)
- Maloti-Drakensberg Park (2000)
- Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape (2003)
- Cape Floral Region Protected Areas (2004)
- Vredefort Dome (2005)
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape (2007).
- ǂKhomani Cultural Landscape (2017).
- Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains (2018).

The ǂKhomani Cultural Landscape was inscribed as South Africa's ninth World Heritage Site, the 1 073rd world heritage site in 167 countries, at the 41st session of the UNESCO World Heritage Committee in Poland in July 2007.

The landscape, which covers an area of 959 100ha in Dawid Kruiper District Municipality covers the entire Kalahari Gemsbok National Park and forms part of the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park which is bordered by Botswana in the east and Namibia in the west.

The boundary is large enough to accommodate a reasonably complete representation of the landscape values, features and processes which convey the special way in which the ǂKhomani people were linked with the land.

National interaction with UNESCO's various areas of work is coordinated through the South African National Commission for UNESCO, whose secretariat is hosted by the Department of Basic Education.

The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains were added to the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization's prestigious World Heritage List in July 2018, becoming the 10th World Heritage Site for South Africa.

The site comprises 40% of the Barberton Greenstone Belt, one of the world's oldest geological structures. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3,25 to 3,6 billion years.

Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs

South Africa played a leadership role In several intergovernmental processes at the UN pertaining to norms and standard setting in international human rights and humanitarian law, law of international protection for asylum seekers, refugees, including migrants, the empowerment of women and gender equality, the protection of the rights of the child and persons with disabilities, as well as food security and nutrition.

To this end, the South African delegation to this system took leadership roles such as chairing relevant intergovernmental working groups, initiating and negotiating flagship resolutions, influencing as well as impacting the agenda setting in these areas.

In the above context, the most important initiative entails the leadership role in the work of the Ad-hoc Committee on the Elaboration of Complementary Standards to the International Convention for the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination aimed at combating contemporary forms of racism.

UN-South Africa Strategic Cooperation Framework (UNSCF)

The UNSCF 2013 – 2017 is the overall framework for the work of the UN system in South Africa. DIRCO and the UN Country Team developed the UNSCF in 2012 through a participatory and consultative process.

The UNSCF includes the presentation of the situation in South Africa overall, as reflected in the New Growth Path, the NDP: Vision for 2030, as well as the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) and the 2010 Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) Country Report. These informed the identification of the four pillars of UN cooperation:

- inclusive growth and decent work
- sustainable development
- human capabilities
- governance and participation.

The UNSCF also considers the role of South Africa on the continent and globally. The UNSCF has been extended to 31 March 2019 to align it with South Africa's MTSF and fiscal cycle.

World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is one of the 194 member states that constitute the WHO. The country takes part in the annual World Health Assembly (WHA), which is the WHO's supreme decision-making body, as well as in its Executive Board meetings.

South Africa also participates in the WHO's Regional Committee for Africa, which convenes annually after the WHA to reflect on the decisions taken at the WHA (particularly those

relevant to the continent) and plan for the following year's WHA.

Through its participation in these structures, South Africa contributes to setting international norms and standards on key issues regarding global and public health such as:

- the implementation of the International Health Regulations
- addressing antimicrobial resistance
- the fight against HIV and AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria
- building resilient healthcare systems in developing states
- ensuring access to medicines
- achieving Universal Health Coverage (National Health Insurance in South Africa)
- contributing to economic growth through health employment.

Group of 20

South Africa has been a permanent member of the G20 since its inception in 1999 following the Asian financial crises.

The G20 was established to increase multilateral cooperation for the recovery of the global economy, to bring stability to the global financial system, to promote long-term sustainable growth and to strengthen global economic governance.

The G20 economies account for 85% of the global Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 80% of world trade and two-thirds of the world's population. Since the escalation of the G20 to Leaders' Summit level in 2008, the agenda has significantly expanded to include issues of geo-political, development and trade significance. South Africa's participation in the G20 has sought to provide strategic foresight in establishing an economic and financial international policy platform that will drive and negotiate the best possible outcomes for South Africa, Africa and the developing world.

South Africa has been the permanent Co-Chair of the Development Working Group (DWG) since 2010 for the promotion of national and continental priorities. A key priority has been to ensure that the scourge of Illicit Financial Flows (IFFs) receives priority and for the World Customs Organisation (WCO) to submit a report on trade mis-invoicing that was commissioned by G20 Leaders in 2016. Addressing the scourge of IFFs has the potential to unlock billions of dollars that could be utilised to fund Africa and the developing worlds' development.

In addition, South Africa has consistently advanced G20 support for industrialisation in Africa and Least Developed Countries (LDCs), the implementation of the G20 Partnership with Africa and enhanced G20 support to developing countries by providing the means of implementation for achieving the 2030 Sustainable Development Agenda. These initiatives are aimed at positively impacting the development trajectory of Africa and the developing world and contribute positively to achieving the global commitment of leaving no one behind.

The G20 is unique in its composition of countries of the North and South and therefore as a collective body tends to carry significant profile and influence. South Africa, as the only permanent African member of the G20, has used its participation to advance national priorities, the African agenda of sustainable development, inclusive growth, the reduction of inequality and the promotion of a just economic world order.

In the future, the strategic trajectory of the G20 is anticipated to transform from a crisis response mechanism focusing on short-term policies to one of long-term governance that shapes medium- to long-term policies, and will solidify its role as the premier forum for international economic governance.

South Africa also works together closely with the following international bodies and organisations:

- World Trade Organisation (WTO)
- World Economic Forum (WEF)
- Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD)
- International Labour Organisation (ILO)
- World Intellectual Property Organisation (WIPO).

The country continues to engage with key global economic institutions such as the WTO, the OECD, the ILO and WIPO to ensure that South Africa benefits from trade, investment, industrialization and innovation to address the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and unemployment as espoused in the National Development Plan.

South Africa pursues a system that is sensitive to the needs of the poorest, while leaving policy space at national level to address the development challenges of the South and Africa.

Continental Agenda

African Union

The establishment of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU) in 1963 by 32 countries in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia was intended to continue the fight against colonialism and apartheid on the African Continent, promote unity and solidarity, safeguard the sovereignty and territorial integrity of Member States and coordinate and intensify cooperation for development.

Following the realization of the objectives that were set during the advent of the OAU, particularly the mission to emancipate the African Continent from the shackles of colonial and apartheid rule, the AU was formed and brought to force in 2002, wherein 54 countries agreed to chart a new path for the Continent, more specifically its economic development.

This new path which was set in 2002 by the AU was underpinned in the determination to tackle and address the multifaceted social, economic and political challenges, through forging an integrated Continent that can ultimately realize its full economic potential and play its rightful role in the global economy.

To this end, the AU is making progressive strides and moving towards the right direction in its mission to address the long-standing challenges of underdevelopment, and consequent poverty, unemployment and inequality on the continent.

The AU recognised the need to develop a long-term strategy resulting in the adoption of Agenda 2063, in January 2015 by the Heads of State and Government during the 24th Ordinary Session in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.

Agenda 2063 has identified 7 cardinal aspirations which provide an indication what the Continent should achieve by the year 2063:

1. A prosperous Africa based on inclusive growth and sustainable development;
2. integrated Continent, politically united based on the ideals of Pan-Africanism and the vision of Africa's Renaissance;
3. An Africa of good governance, democracy, respect for human rights, justice and the rule of law;
4. A peaceful and secure Africa;
5. An Africa with a strong cultural identity, common heritage, values and ethics;

6. An Africa where development is people driven, unleashing the potential of its women and youth; and
7. Africa as a strong united and influential global player and partner

Appreciating the need that the realization of the objectives set by Agenda 2063 should be fulfilled; there was a formulation its First Ten-Year Implementation Plan.

Thus far, there's has been progress made in this regard, as evidenced by the adoption of a (a) Protocol on the Free Movement of Persons in Africa, (b) Member States have committed to the African Continental Free Trade Area (AfCFTA) and the (b) Single African Air Transport Market (SAATM) has been launched.

These flagship programmes of Agenda 2063 are the catalyst which will ensure the acceleration of integration within the Continent and will further enable the African countries to maximise the economic opportunities, particularly trade amongst them.

The objective of the AfCFTA is to promote intra-African trade and offer an opportunity to create larger economies of scale, a bigger market and improve the prospects of the African Continent to attract investment. In addition, the AfCFTA will bring together the 55 Member States of the AU, covering a market of more than 1.2 billion people, including a growing middle class and a combined gross domestic of more than US$3.4 trillion.

Furthermore, the AU has noted that in order to successfully move the Continent forward, it has to transform the manner in which it conducts its business. By mid-2018, the AU was undergoing a rigorous process of reviewing how it had been operating, through engaging the recommendations made during the Institutional Reform process. The successful implementation of the agreement borne out of this process would ensure that the AU becomes more effective and efficient in carrying out its mandate.

The Republic of South Africa, as a Member State of the AU, remains committed to the organisation and it has demonstrated its desire to ensure that the AU succeeds. Currently, South Africa is hosting the Pan African Parliament (PAP), African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development (NEPAD), amongst others. Additionally, the country continues to play a steering role in matters related to Peace and Security on the Continent.

In January 2018, then President Zuma led the South African Government delegation to the 30th Assembly of Heads of State and Government of the AU IN Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. It was held under the theme "Winning the Fight Against Corruption: A Sustainable Path to Africa's Transformation".

The Summit took a number of important decisions that demonstrated the readiness of AU member states to fully implement the commitments made in the continental organisation's flagship programme, Agenda 2063, relating to, amongst other things, the sustenance of peace and security; free movement of people, good and services; and improving political and democratic governance on the continent.

The summit elected President Paul Kagame of Rwanda as Chair of the AU for the year 2018, taking over from President Alpha Conde of the Republic of Guinea. South Africa will continue to work with the leadership of the AU. South Africa was elected to serve as one of the Vice Chairs of the Bureau of the AU, representing the Southern African region. The other member states of the Bureau are Libya (North Africa), Republic of Congo (Central Africa) and the Republic of Guinea (West Africa).

The summit emphasised the need for continuous engagement and cooperation between the AU and the UN. In this regard, the summit re-appointed then President Zuma to continue his role of championing this initiative. Then President Zuma met the Secretary General of the UN, Mr Antonio Guterres, on the margins of the Summit. The two leaders re-committed themselves to fostering closer cooperation between the AU and the UN.

A dinner to commemorate the centenary celebrations of former President Nelson Mandela was also hosted on the sidelines summit where he thanked the AU and its member states for keeping Mandela's legacy alive.

In March 2018, Trade and Industry Minister Rob Davies and his Deputy Bulelani Magwanishe attended the AU Ministers of Trade (AMOT) two-day meeting in Kigali, Rwanda. Delegates reached an angreement to establish the AfCFTA) which is envisaged to offer opportunities to create large economies of scale.

The AfCFTA, also offers an opportunity to create a bigger market and to improve the prospects of the African continent's ability to attract investment. The ministers approved, for submitting to the Extra-Ordinary Summit of the AU Heads of State and Government, the agreement sstablishing the AfCFTA as well as the Protocols on Trade in Goods and Trade in Services that will form part of the agreement. They also approved a Work Programme for concluding the outstanding issues for implementation that will start after the Extra-Ordinary Summit of the AU Heads of State and Government that will take place on 21 March 2018 in Kigali.

Negotiations of the AfCFTA were launched in Johannesburg, in June 2015.

South Africa is committed to a coordinated strategy to boost intra-Africa trade and to build an integrated market in Africa that will see a market of over 1 billion people with a GDP of approximately US$2,6 trillion. Beyond the Tripartite Free Trade Area, the AfCFTA will provide new export opportunities for South African products and services in West Africa and North Africa.

The AfCFTA is being pursued under the development integration approach. This approach combines market integration with industrial and infrastructure development to address Africa's productive capacity and supply side constraints.

The AfCFTA is also expected to facilitate the movement of goods and services among African countries. It will also result in harmonisation of customs documentation and processes thus enhancing trade facilitation.

Peace and Security Council

South Africa continues to promote peace and stability on the African continent through preventative diplomacy, peace-making, peace-building and peacekeeping efforts. In this context, the country's approach to peacekeeping resonates strongly with the AU's aspirational goal adopted by the AU Assembly African Heads of State and Government on 25 May 2013 in Addis Ababa of "Silencing the Guns by the year 2020".

The AU's flagship project on addressing peace and security issues in the context of the African Peace and Security Architecture (APSA), is built around structures, objectives,

principles and values, as well as decision-making processes relating to the prevention, management and resolution of crises and conflicts and post-conflict reconstruction and development (PCRD) on the continent.

Furthermore, the AUPSC remains the main pillar of the APSA and is supported by various structures, including the AUC, the Panel of the Wise, the Continental Early Warning System, the African Standby Force and the Peace Fund.

The relationship between the AU and the regional economic communities/regional mechanisms for conflict prevention, management and resolution (RECs/RMs) remains crucial for the success of the APSA.

South Africa has actively participated, through both bilateral and multilateral efforts, to resolve some of the continent's pressing conflict areas.

These countries include: Lesotho, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Madagascar, Burundi, South Sudan, Somalia, Central African Republic, Mali and Libya. South Africa also remains engaged in the peace and security dynamics of the Horn of Africa, the Sahel, the Great Lakes Region and the Lake Chad Basin.

South Africa will continue to play its part in conflict resolution in these countries and respective regions. In addition, South Africa reaffirms its continued solidarity to assist the people of Western Sahara in pursuit of their inalienable right to self-determination and decolonisation. South Africa remains steadfast in its rejection of all acts of terrorism and extremism that have increasingly affected countries on our continent, contributing negatively to internal instability.

AU regional economic communities (RECs)

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, as well as integrating African economies.

RECs are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must coordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as coordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future RECs, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives.

Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the Permanent Representatives Committee.

South Africa's development is intertwined with that of the southern Africa region and the African continent at large. The country's efforts at ramping up industrialisation should be viewed within the overall framework of the SADC Industrialisation Strategy and Roadmap as approved by the SADC Extra-Ordinary Summit in April 2015. South Africa seeks to industrialise the regional and continental economies in order to develop its own manufacturing capacity.

In addition, the country seeks to radically alter the colonial/post-colonial pattern where Africa was a supplier of raw materials. Africa should produce value-added goods for exports into the global economy.

It is only in this way that Africa can address the paradox of a rich-resource continent inhabited by a poverty-stricken population, and make a decisive break with the past.

New Partnership for Africa's Development

NEPAD, an AU strategic framework for pan-African socio-economic development, is both a vision and a policy framework for Africa in the 21st century. NEPAD provides unique opportunities for African countries to take full control of their development agenda, to work more closely together, and to cooperate more effectively with international partners.

NEPAD manages a number of programmes and projects in six theme areas namely:

- agriculture and food security
- climate change and national resource management
- regional integration and infrastructure
- human development
- economic and corporate governance
- cross-cutting issues, including gender, capacity development and information and communications technology (ICT).

South Africa, as one of the initiating countries, played a key role in the establishment of NEPAD and the APRM, and hosts the NEPAD Agency and APRM Secretariat in Midrand, Gauteng.

The APRM process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. It encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices, and is important to the sustainability of NEPAD.

NEPAD remains the main programme of reference for intra-African socio-economic and developmental relations and Africa's partnerships with international partners such as the:

- EU-AU Strategic Partnership
- Forum on China-Africa Cooperation (FOCAC)
- Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia (G8)
- Tokyo International Conference on African Development (TICAD)
- New Asian-African Strategic Partnership (NAASP)
- Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.

Through NEPAD, Africa has expanded its development priorities. Development and funding in agriculture, ICT, science and technology, infrastructure and education have improved the quality of life for millions of Africans.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC developed from the Southern African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC), which was established in 1980. It adopted its current name during a summit held in Windhoek, Namibia, in August 1992.

Before 1992, the aim of the SADCC was to forge close economic cooperation with southern African countries, excluding South Africa, to bolster their economies and reduce their dependence on the South African economy.

From 1992, when the organisation became SADC, its mandate changed to the following:

- Promoting and defending peace and security
- Evolving common values, systems and institutions
- Establishing an open economy based on equality, mutual benefit and balanced development
- Breaking down tariff barriers
- Promoting trade exchanges and mutual investment

- Realising the free movement of goods, personnel and labour services
- Achieving the unification of tariffs and currencies
- Establishing a free trade zone.

The initial member states were Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Eswatini, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. South Africa became a member after 1994.

South Africa has consistently sought to nurture regional integration at three levels: the Southern African Customs Union (SACU), SADC and the Tripartite FTA between the SADC, Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa and East African Community (EAC). In particular, South Africa has championed a "developmental regionalism" approach that combines market integration, cross-border infrastructure development as well as policy coordination to diversify production and boost intra-African trade.

South Africa contributed to the development of SACU's Five-Point Plan, which aims to transform the customs union from a tariffs and a revenue-sharing agreement to an integrated institution capable of promoting true regional economic development.

SACU held its fifth SACU Summit on 23 June 2017 in Eswatini and among the key issues discussed was the need for SACU to pursue regional economic development for the benefit of its member states through the implementation of a six point work programme.

In addition, the summit agreed to review elements of the SACU Agreement to facilitate implementation of this work programme with a view to:

- review and develop a suitable architecture for tariff-setting, rebates, duty drawbacks and trade remedies;
- review of the Revenue Sharing Formula and the long-term management of the Common Revenue Pool;
- establish a Stabilisation Fund and explore the feasibility of a financing mechanism for regional industrialisation;
- identify financing options for regional projects; and
- develop public policy interventions to promote industrial development and value chains.

The 37th SADC Summit took place from 9 to 20 August 2017 under the theme: "Partnering with the Private sector in Developing Industrial and Regional Value Chains". South Africa took over from Eswatini as the chair of SADC from August 2017 to August 2018.

During its tenure as Chair, South Africa aims to harness the participation and involvement of the regional private sector in the implementation of the SADC Regional Industrialisation Strategy and Roadmap.

Work in SADC continues to focus on consolidating the SADC FTA launched in 2008, before considering deeper forms of integration in the region. The ongoing negotiations to establish the Tripartite FTA will combine the three major RECs of 600 million people and a combined GDP of USD$1 trillion, as building blocks towards continental integration.

Once established, the T-FTA will contribute to economies of scale, the building of new distribution channels, value addition and manufacturing in Africa.

One of the key areas to stimulate regional economic development has been the finalisation of the SADC Regional Infrastructure Development Master Plan, which will focus on the following six priority sectors: energy, transport, ICT/communications, water, tourism and meteorology.

South Africa has played a critical role in promoting peace, security and political stability in the SADC Region including participation in peace missions. This includes creating an environment conducive to regional political integration, facilitation, and the promotion of democracy and good governance.

As Chair of SADC, South Africa co-chaired with Angola, Chair of the Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation several Summits convened to deal with the political and security situation in the Kingdom of Lesotho, Democratic Republic of the Congo and the Republic of Madagascar.

In the Kingdom of Lesotho, South Africa has contributed personnel experts to the South African Development Community Preventive Mission in the Kingdom of Lesotho (SAPMIL), deployed to strengthen peace, security and implement reforms, Constitutional, Security, Parliamentary, Media and Public Sector forms.

Development partners

South Africa has key partnerships such as FOCAC, Africa's comprehensive partnership with India, and the Korea-Africa Forum. South Africa's Government spares no effort in strengthening the progressive forums of the South such as the NAM, G77+China, Africa-South America Summit and the NAASP. These forums have demonstrated that they are trusted allies and partners in South Africa's aim for a better Africa in a better world

Relations with countries of the South remain strong and South Africa's Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) membership has yielded benefits for the country and is expected to do so for the rest of the continent. Efforts continue within BRICS on common objectives, including addressing challenges in respective regions and the world at large. BRICS also continues to provide alternative market access as well as strategic political support in pursuit of a just and equitable world.

In the same vein, South Africa continues to support the consolidation of the India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Dialogue Forum. IBSA serves as an intimate platform from which to coordinate matters of common interest and concern, and to promote development through the IBSA Fund for the Alleviation of Poverty and Hunger.

The Indian Ocean region is of vital importance and of growing geostrategic significance. South Africa views the IORA as the pre-eminent regional organisation linking Africa, the Middle East and Asia via the Indian Ocean. The association is growing in stature and prominence, and South Africa is chairing the IORA in its 20th year of existence from October 2017 to 2019.

Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa trade alliance (BRICS)

Since its formation, BRICS has seen its work evolve and expand from its initial economic mandate to also include a focus on global political-security issues.

As such, the grouping is a strong and vocal promoter and supporter of multilateralism with the UN playing the central role in dealing with global challenges and threats and of the WTO as the institution that sets multilateral trade rules.

This position of the BRICS was again reinforced by the BRICS

Leaders during the 10th BRICS Summit in Johannesburg.

In its 10 years of existence, BRICS has achieved a number of milestones that clearly illustrate that the Grouping has significantly strengthened and delivered on its agenda. The implementation of the "Strategy for BRICS Economic Partnership" (2015), is vigorously pursued and encourages measures that support greater participation, value addition and upward mobility in the global value chains of BRICS firms, including through the preservation of policy space to promote industrial development.

BRICS' commitment to the enhancement of intra-BRICS trade, investment, and financial cooperation is further strengthened and supported through the establishment of the Contingency Reserve Arrangement (CRA) and the New Development Bank (NDB) that focusses on financing infrastructure and sustainable development projects in BRICS countries, as well as in Emerging Markets and Developing Economies (EMDEs).

In addition, the NDB's Africa Regional Centre (ARC) was established in Johannesburg, and will furthermore streamline financing projects in South Africa and in the region.

The forum also derives benefits through the BRICS Track II institutions such as the BRICS Business Council; BRICS Think-Tank Council; and the BRICS Inter-Bank Cooperation Mechanism.

People-to-people engagements have also flourished and various forums for business people, academics, civil society, youth, and parliamentarians have been established.

Initiatives such as the BRICS Film Festival, Cultural Festival and Sports Games are exciting highlights of the annual calendar of events.

South Africa assumed the rotational Chairship of BRICS on 1 January 2018 and successfully hosted the 10th BRICS Summit in Johannesburg from 25 to 27 July 2018, under the theme: "BRICS in Africa: Collaboration for Inclusive Growth and Shared Prosperity in the 4th Industrial Revolution."

As part of its Chairship, South Africa proposed new areas of BRICS cooperation, which also formed the outcomes of the 10th Summit. These include:

- 4th Industrial Revolution: As part of the key deliverables, the BRICS Leaders endorsed the establishment of a BRICS Working Group on the 4th Industrial Revolution through the BRICS Partnership on New Industrial Revolution (PartNIR).
- BRICS Networks of Science Parks, Technology Business Incubators and SMEs: In further support of the above point, BRICS Networks of Science Parks, Technology Business Incubators and Small and Medium-sized Enterprises, is to be established.
- Vaccine Centre: A BRICS Vaccine Research Centre is to be established in South Africa to address common challenges in health.
- Women's Forum: To promote inclusive growth in the development of the BRICS societies, the Forum's work in establishing a BRICS Women's Forum and the BRICS Women's Business Alliance, is ongoing.
- Peacekeeping: BRICS leaders recognized the importance of UN peacekeeping for the maintenance of international peace and security and the contribution of BRICS countries to UN Peacekeeping.
- BRICS Working Group on Tourism: In order to increase economic development and people-to-people relations to further grow intra-BRICS tourism, a BRICS Working Group on Tourism is to be established.
- Foreign Affairs Spokespersons: Work is ongoing in the establishment of the BRICS Foreign Affairs Spokespersons Platform.

In addition, the following agreements were signed during the 10th BRICS Summit:

- The Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Regional Aviation Partnership
- The MoU on Environment
- Agreement between Brazil and the New Development Bank on the Hosting of the New Development Bank Americas Regional Office in Brazil.

A key element for South Africa since joining BRICS in 2011, was to strategically position Africa on the Agenda of BRICS through expressions of support for the continent's objectives of development and industrialisation.

In 2013 during its first tenure as BRICS Chair South Africa introduced the BRICS-Africa Outreach Dialogue – an initiative which South Africa again elected to host in 2018 albeit in an extended format that also included the BRICS Plus format, represented by Jamaica, Argentina, and Turkey.

Heads of State and Government of SADC were also in attendance. The 2018 edition was thus a joint meeting with Leaders from the continent and those from the Global South, discussions were centred on (i) BRICS support for Africa's industrial and infrastructure as contained in the NEPAD programmes and the AU's Agenda 2063; and (ii) on the implementation of the UN's 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development and the building of broad partnerships for development.

India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA) Forum

The IBSA Dialogue Forum brings together three large pluralistic, multicultural and multiracial societies from three continents as a purely South-South grouping of like-minded countries committed to inclusive sustainable development, in pursuit of the well-being of their peoples and those of the developing world.

The principles, norms and values underpinning the IBSA Dialogue Forum are participatory democracy, respect for human rights, the Rule of Law and the strengthening of multilateralism.

The realisation of the trilateral alliance between IBSA stems from three commonalities between the three countries, namely: all three countries are vibrant democracies, they share common views on various global issues and are substantial emerging economies within their sub-regions.

The engagement process of the IBSA countries takes place on a number of levels, namely: Summit (Heads of State and Government), the IBSA Trilateral Ministerial Commission meeting - ITMC (Ministers), Senior Officials (Sherpas), and Technical (through various working groups).

An informal meeting of IBSA's Foreign Ministers met on 4 June 2018 and adopted the IBSA Declaration on South-South Cooperation.

IBSA continues to play its unique role as a body bringing together three democracies of the South from three continents as well as representing the interests of the continents in which they reside, in issues such as the reform of the UNSC, as well as the global financial institutions such as the International

Monetary Fund and the World Bank.

Indian Ocean Rim Association

IORA is a charter-based regional organisation is an economic cooperative community of 21 littoral and island states around the Indian Ocean and seven dialogue partners. It represents one of the most diverse and geo-strategically important regions of the world, with a heterogeneous mix of developed, developing, LDCs and Small Island Developing States.

South Africa plays a leading role in IORA and assumed the Chair at the 17th Meeting of the IORA Council of Ministers (COM) in Durban on 18 October 2017 under the theme: "IORA – uniting the peoples of Africa, Asia, Australasia, and the Middle East through enhanced co-operation for peace, stability and sustainable development". This theme encompasses South Africa's view that the Indian Ocean Region should be characterised as a region of peace, stability and development.

The 17th Council of Ministers meeting followed-on the historic IORA Leaders' 20th Commemorative Summit held in Jakarta, Indonesia on 7 March 2017 at which "The Jakarta Concord" was adopted. South Africa was at the forefront of drafting the IORA Concord's Action Plan (2017-2021) which provides a firm set of realistic and measurable commitments.

Milestones include an agreement to establish a new Working Group on the Blue Economy as a means to strengthening the Blue Economy as a common source of growth and development, innovation and job creation; the importance of addressing security challenges in the region through a new Working Group on Maritime Safety and Security; and commitment to gender equality and women's economic empowerment through the creation of a new Working Group on Women's Economic Empowerment.

South Africa also prioritized IORA's relations with other international multilateral bodies such as the UN and the AU through the 2050 African Integrated Maritime Strategy (AIMS) and Agenda 2063, as well as deepening and broadening IORA's engagement with its Dialogue Partner countries.

Dr Nomvuyo Nokwe South Africa's former High Commisisoner to Mauritius, Ambassador is the current Secretary-General of IORA.

South Africa successfully hosted the 8th Biannual meeting of the IORA Committee of Senior Officials (CSO) in Durban from 30-31 July 2018 and the 18th meeting of the IORA Council of Ministers on 2 November 2018 in Durban.

Commonwealth

The modern Commonwealth is a voluntary association of 53 independent member countries. Membership is diverse and includes developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific.

Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa has interacted closely with the work of the Commonwealth, contributing politically, financially and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation.

A South African delegation led by President Cyril Ramaphosa attended the Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM 2018), under the title "Towards a Common Future" that took place in London on 19 and 20 April 2018.

South Africa actively participated through interventions delivered at the Executive Sessions of the CHOGM, the Pre-CHOGM Foreign Ministers Meeting as well as side-events arranged during this period.

CHOGM 2018 provided South Africa with an opportunity to market and promote South Africa as an investment destination. The South Africa delegation also utilised the opportunity to continue to lobby for South Africa's candidature to the UNSC for the term 2019 – 2020. It further provided an ideal opportunity to promote the centenary year of the birth of President Nelson Mandela.

On 20 April 2018, the meeting adopted the Final Communiqué, a Leaders' Statement as well as the Commonwealth Blue Charter on Oceans Economy; the Commonwealth Cyber Declaration on Security in the Cyber Space; the Commonwealth Guidelines on Election Observation on Electoral Support and the Declaration on the Commonwealth Connectivity Agenda for Trade and Investment on Promotion of Trade and Investment.

Non-Aligned Movement

The NAM, consisting of 120 members, is chaired by the Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela until 2019. It is the largest political grouping of countries outside the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

Deputy Minister Landers led the South African delegation to attend the 18th Mid-term Ministerial Conference that was held in Baku, Azerbaijan, from 5 to 6 April 2018. The meeting took place under the theme: "Promoting International Peace and Security for Sustainable Development".

South Africa actively participated through statements delivered by the Deputy Minister during the General Debate and the NAM Ministerial Committee on Palestine.

South Africa also introduced a Special Declaration on the Commemoration of the Centenary of the Birth of Nelson Mandela, which was adopted by consensus.

The Ministerial Conference concluded on 6 April 2018 with the adoption of the Baku Final Document; The Baku Declaration; Political Declaration of the Committee on Palestine and the Special Declaration on the Commemoration of the Centenary of the Birth of Nelson Mandela South Africa's participation was guided by her own national priorities, namely consolidation of the Africa agenda, close South-South cooperation and countering the marginalisation of the South.

South Africa's main priority still remain the monitoring of the debate on Palestine and to actively show solidarity with the Palestinian people.

As a member of the NAM Committee on Palestine, South Africa supports all initiatives of the Movement aimed at the realisation of the inalienable rights of the Palestinian people, including their right to return to their homeland.

Group of 77 (G77) and China

The G77 was established on 15 June 1964 by 77 developing countries, signatories of the "Joint Declaration of the Seventy-Seven Developing Countries" issued at the end of the first session of the UN Conference on Trade and Development, held in Geneva, Switzerland.

Although the members of the G77 have increased to 134 countries, including China as the associate member, the original name was retained due to its historic significance.

The G77 and China is the largest intergovernmental organisation of developing countries in the UN system, provides

the means for countries of the South to promote their collective economic interests, enhances its joint negotiating capacity on all major international economic issues within the UN system and promotes South-South cooperation.

South Africa chaired the Group of 77 (G77) and China in 2006 and 2015. Significant during South Africa's chairing of the G77 was the adoption of the landmark 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, which builds on the MDGs and sets the global development trajectory until 2030.

As Chair of the G77, South Africa was also at the forefront of the negotiations and successfully carried out its mandate to ensure that the positions of developing countries were advanced.

Additionally, during South Africa's chairing of the G77 developing countries were able to influence the outcomes of the Paris Climate Change negotiations, and international outcomes on development financing.

West Africa

Senegal

Senegal and South Africa are bound by their historic ties of friendship that were established during the struggle against colonialism and apartheid. Full diplomatic relations were established on 6 May 1994.

Senegal is a bastion of stability in Francophone West Africa. It is a strong constitutional democracy and one of the only African countries that have never experienced a coup d'état or any type of violent transition since its independence from France in 1960.

South Africa and Senegal enjoy cordial bilateral political, economic and social relations underpinned by strong historical ties dating back to the years of the liberation struggle.

Then President Zuma hosted the President of the Republic of Senegal, Mr Macky Sall, for a State Visit to South Africa in Cape Town on 24 October 2017.

The visit took place after the successful commemoration of the 30th Anniversary of the Dakar Talks of 1987 which were held in Senegal in July 2017.

The Dakar Talks are widely considered to have paved the way towards a negotiated settlement between the African National Congress and the then Government in South Africa.

South Africa and Senegal conduct their bilateral relations through a Joint Commission for Bilateral Cooperation and 14 bilateral agreements have been signed since 1996.

Mali

South Africa and Mali established bilateral relations in May 1994. The bilateral relations between the two countries are conducted through the Joint Commission for Cooperation (JCC) signed in December 2000.

South Africa assisted the Government of Mali in the preservation of the Ahmed Baba Institute of Higher Learning and Islamic Research in Timbuktu through an African Renaissance Fund contribution.

Peace, security and stability remain a challenge in Northern and Central Mali. South Africa supports the current peace process in Mali and encourages all the parties involved to remain committed to the implementation of the Peace Agreement in an effort to ensuring lasting peace.

The Gambia

South Africa and The Gambia established formal diplomatic relations on 7 August 1998. The South African Ambassador in Dakar, Senegal, is accredited to The Gambia on a non-residential basis.

Guinea-Bissau

South Africa and Guinea Bissau established formal diplomatic relations on 11 October 1994, even though the relations between South Africa and Guinea-Bissau date back to the common struggle against apartheid and colonialism.

Cabo Verde

South Africa and Cabo Verde exchanged diplomatic notes to establish diplomatic relations in 1994 followed by the signing of the Agreement on the Establishment of a Mechanism for Bilateral Consultation during an AU Summit in June 2015. It is expected that this agreement will strengthen bilateral relations between the two countries.

Guinea-Conakry

Then President Zuma undertook a Working Visit to the Republic of Guinea from 12 to 13 January 2015. During this visit, the two Presidents exchanged views on bilateral, regional and international issues of common interest.

At bilateral level, the two Heads of State expressed satisfaction at the excellent relations of friendship and cooperation existing between the two countries and reaffirmed their commitment to reinforce and consolidate them by regular holding of the JCC.

In March 2017, South Africa handed over the Rice and Vegetable Project to the Republic of Guinea. The main objective of the project, which began in 2008 as a trilateral arrangement involving South Africa, Vietnam and Guinea, was aimed at ensuring food security for the Republic of Guinea through the African Renaissance Fund.

Farmers in Guinea were trained on the use of more effective techniques for farming. The Project was a resounding success, and it generated interest from other countries in the West African region.

Liberia

The formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and Liberia were established in 1997. The Liberian Government opened its Embassy in Pretoria in October 1997 while South Africa opened a resident diplomatic mission in Monrovia in October 2010.

In August 2017, former President Zuma hosted the former President of the Republic of Liberia, Ellen Johnson Sirleaf, for a State Visit to South Africa, in Pretoria.

The visit was an important vehicle for economic growth and cooperation between the two countries and further contributed to strengthening intra-trade relations in the continent of Africa.

South Africa and Liberia maintain good diplomatic and political relations since the attainment of freedom and democracy in South Africa. South Africa provided technical support and assistance for the Presidential and Legislative Elections in Liberia held in October 2017. The technical support and assistance provided was in line with South Africa's Foreign Policy to support the Continent in ensuring free, fair and democratic electoral processes in pursuit of the goals outlined in Agenda 2063.

The Government of the Republic of South Africa and the Government of the Republic of Liberia signed an Agreement on Visa Exemption for Holders of Diplomatic and Official Passports on 3 May 2018.

The two countries have also since the establishment of diplomatic relations signed a General Cooperation Agreement, the MoU on Economic and Technical Cooperation.

These agreements allow the two countries to engage on a number of areas of possible cooperation, including agriculture, energy, infrastructure development, capacity and institutional building and trade as well as in the health sector.

Sierra Leone

The diplomatic relations between South Africa and Sierra Leone were established in 1998 through the exchange of diplomatic notes.

In August 2017, the South African Government expressed its deepest and heartfelt condolences to the Government and people of the Republic of Sierra Leone following one of the worst floods on the African continent.

This natural disaster devastated significant parts of the country, resulting in massive loss of life, destruction of property and leaving behind a catastrophic humanitarian crisis. Through DIRCO, South Africa pledged R8 million to assist in disaster relief.

In April 2018, President Ramaphosa congratulated Julius Maada Bio on his election as President of the Republic of Sierra Leone.

President Ramaphosa also commended the outgoing President, Mr Ernest Bai Koroma, after serving two five-year terms and stated that the peaceful and democratic manner under which these elections were conducted signify yet another positive step towards the deepening of democracy on the African continent.

President Ramaphosa concluded by assuring President Bio of his commitment to strengthen bilateral relations between South Africa and Sierra Leone.

Niger

Diplomatic relations were established in May 1994. In March 2008 South Africa opened an Embassy in Niamey which is headed by a Chargé d 'Affaires. Niger opened its Embassy in Pretoria during the last quarter of 2012.

An Agreement on the Establishment of a Joint Commission of Cooperation (JCC) was concluded on 8 May 2007 and the inaugural session of the JCC took pace in October 2013.

Côte d'Ivoire

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Côte d'Ivoire were established in May 1992. The Agreement on the Establishment of a Joint Commission of Cooperation (JCC) was concluded in December 2015.

At a political level, given South Africa's firm commitment to the African Renaissance and its attendant features of stability and democratisation on the continent, South Africa previously played an important role in assisting to find a peaceful resolution to the stalemate following the disputed Presidential Elections in Cote d'Ivoire.

Bilateral trade between South Africa and Cote D'Ivoire has experienced an upward trend. South African investors are present in the following sectors: banking, transport and telecommunications, namely: Standard Bank, SAA and the MTN Group.

South Africa was invited to be the featured country at the 4th Biannual Edition of the International Exhibition of Agriculture and Animal Resources (SARA) that was held in Abidjan in November 2017.

The Departments of Trade and Industry (the dti), Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF), the Mpumalanga Province and other small and medium businesses active in the agricultural sector participated in the SARA Exhibition.

Nigeria

President Ramaphosa undertook a Working Visit to Nigeria from 10 to 11 July 2018, during which he met with his counterpart, President Muhammadu Buhari.

During the visit, President Ramaphosa also participated in the 2018 Annual Meeting and 25th Anniversary Celebrations of the African Export-Import Bank (Afreximbank) hosted by Nigeria.

As the continent's two largest economies, South Africa and Nigeria enjoy good political, economic and social bilateral relations formally established in 1994, immediately after South Africa's first democratic elections.

Formal relations between South Africa and Nigeria have been conducted through the BiNational Commission (BNC), established in 1999 as a structured bilateral mechanism to promote political, economic, social, cultural, scientific and technical cooperation between the two countries.

Through eight (8) successful biennial sessions over the years, the BNC has deepened and solidified the relations between the two countries, and laid the foundation for increased bilateral political and economic cooperation.

There are a number of signed bilateral agreements between the two countries which cover various areas such as arts and culture, education, agriculture, trade and investment, mining, defence, policing, immigration, taxation, science and technology, health, tourism, environment and energy amongst others.

There are over 120 South African companies currently doing business in Nigeria in various sectors, mainly in telecommunications, banking, retail, hospitality, mining, tourism, agriculture and construction and tourism.

Some of the South African companies that have invested in Nigeria include MTN, Multichoice, Stanbic Bank, Shoprite Checkers, South African Airways, Sasol and Bon Hotels.

Ghana

On 5 July 2018, President Ramaphosa hosted President Nana Addo Dankwa Akufo-Addo from Ghana on a State Visit to South Africa. This was the first State Visit that President Ramaphosa hosted since he became President of the Republic of South Africa.

The State Visit strengthened the already good political, economic and social relations that South Africa and Ghana enjoy, which were formalised at the advent of democracy in South Africa. The two countries established in May 2007 a Permanent JCC (PJCC), as a structured bilateral mechanism to provide for political, economic, social, cultural, scientific and technical cooperation between the two countries. During the

State Visit in July 2018, and after four (4) successful biennial sessions, the PJCC was elevated to become a BNC at the presidential level.

The PJCC essentially oversees the implementation of more than 20 bilateral agreements and memoranda of understanding, which cover various fields, including trade and investment, avoidance of double taxation, information and communication, transport, electricity, oil and gas, tourism, environment, science and technology and arts and culture.

There are over 80 South African companies that have invested in Ghana, which include MTN, Anglo-Gold Ashanti, Goldfields, SABMiller, Woolworths, Engen, Hytech Engineering, Afripa African Explosives Limited, Multichoice, Alliance Media, Broll, Group Five Steeldale, Stanbic Bank, Shoprite Checkers, Sherwood, Steers, South African Airways, 3M and First National Bank.

Benin

South Africa and Benin established formal diplomatic relations in May 1994. South Africa opened an Embassy in Cotonou in 2007 and Benin opened its Embassy in Pretoria in January 1999.

The Agreement for the Establishment of a Joint Commission on Cooperation (JCC) was concluded on 14 June 2015.

Burkina Faso

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Burkina Faso were established in May 1995. South Africa has an Embassy in Ouagadougou since February 2007 and Burkina opened an Embassy in Pretoria in June 2007.

An Agreement to Establish a Joint Cooperation Commission (JCC) was concluded in April 2007.

South Africa and Burkina Faso work closely through regional bodies, SADC and ECOWAS, as well as the continental body, the AU, to address all challenges that hinder Africa's development and to ensure that the set objectives in relation to the Agenda 2063 are achieved without fail.

Togo

Relations between South Africa and Togo were established in 1997. The South African Ambassador in Benin is accredited to Togo on a non-residential basis. South Africa and Togo are currently negotiating a Framework Agreement for Cooperation.

The agreement will establish cooperation in a number of fields including agro-processing, port management, mining and energy. Nedbank and the Public Investment Corporation (PIC) are the second and third largest shareholders respectively in the Lomé Head-Quartered West African Bank, Ecobank.

East Africa

Burundi

South Africa's relations with Burundi are sound and cordial. South Africa participated as the mediator in the AU-led Burundi Peace Process, which was first led by former President Nelson Mandela, followed by former President Thabo Mbeki and then by then Deputy President Zuma. The process led to the Arusha Peace Accords in 2000 – 2005 that brought an end to the long civil war.

South Africa has invested significantly in Burundi's peace and stability and it closely follows developments in Burundi, a small but key role player in the Great Lakes Region.

Peace and stability in Burundi are seen as crucial factors to the achievement of peace in the entire region.

South Africa strongly supports the current mediation efforts in Burundi as led by the EAC under former Tanzanian President Benjamin Mkapa.

In this regard South Africa stands ready to assist and support the mediation process, if and when it is called upon. South Africa continues to stand by the people of Burundi in their search for sustainable peace, security and development.

Djibouti

South Africa and Djibouti enjoy excellent relations. Current infrastructure development programmes, including the free development zones, provide fertile ground for active investment by South African companies.

Eritrea

Eritrea serves as one of the fastest-growing economies in the Horn of Africa with a GDP growth rate of 8,5%. The country is rich in mineral resources, including copper, gold, granite, marble, oil and gas reserves. The promotion of trade and investment between South Africa and Eritrea is important, especially in the fields of tourism and infrastructure development.

Ethiopia

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia, which were revived in 1995 when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa, remains strong.

The two countries have a number of bilateral agreements in place that establish a regulatory framework to facilitate political, economic and social interaction such as an agreement on the avoidance of double taxation. The umbrella agreement provides for the establishment of a Joint Ministerial Commission (JMC) that will meet every two years.

In April 2018, President Ramaphosa extended his warm congratulations to Abiy Ahmed on being chosen to lead Ethiopia's Ethiopian People's Revolutionary Democratic Front (EPRDF) ruling coalition on 28 March 2018, and his subsequent swearing-in as Prime Minister on Monday, 2 April 2018.

A South Africa-Ethiopia Senior Officials Meeting was held in March 2018 and that was followed by the JMC in August 2018.

Indian Ocean Islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with the Comoros, Madagascar, Mauritius and Seychelles remain strong.

Greater emphasis is being placed, in terms of South Africa's Operation Phakisa, on building partnerships with the islands in respect of the Ocean Economy to enhance trade and investment in areas such as, among others, marine manufacturing and transport; aquaculture; offshore oil and gas exploration; and marine protection and governance.

The South Africa-Seychelles Senior Officials Meeting, which was held in March 2018, was upgraded to a Joint Commission due to the increased bilateral interaction between the two countries.

Further emphasis on South Africa's relations with the islands is being provided through the IORA, which is chaired by South Africa.

South Africa and Seychelles established formal relations in 1992. The relationship has been progressive, with a display of support for strategic tourism events hosted in each country and a shared vision for regional tourism development and integration. South Africa and the Seychelles will this year mark the 25th anniversary of the establishment of their diplomatic relations.

In March 2018, International Relations and Cooperation Deputy Minister Landers hosted the Executive Head of the Seychelles Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Ambassador Barry Faure, for the second session of the Joint Commission of Cooperation (JCC) between South Africa and the Seychelles on Friday.

The meeting reaffirmed the close friendship and common interests and values that are the foundation of the strong relationship between the two countries.

The two countries used the occasion to review bilateral political and economic relations, expressing satisfaction at the progress achieved in various areas of cooperation since the last session of the JCC in 2014. The parties demonstrated their commitment to increase cooperation.

They agreed to explore other areas of cooperation over the coming years in trade and investment; agriculture and fisheries; education and human resource development; environment and the blue economy; youth and sports; defence and police; tourism and culture; health; science and technology; maritime and air transport; higher education; and social development.

Kenya

At the end of May 2018, Deputy President David Mabuza arrived in Nairobi, Kenya, on a Working Visit that also coincided with the Madaraka Day (Freedom Day) celebrations, marking the day when Kenya attained internal self-rule in 1963 from Britain.

South Africa and Kenya enjoy strong bilateral relations, with the two countries' heads of state meeting on the margins of various international and multilateral engagements to discuss matters of mutual interest. South Africa also undertook a State Visit to Kenya on 11 October 2016 in Nairobi.

Following his re-election in November 2017, President Uhuru Kenyatta undertook a Working Visit to South Africa during January 2018 to attend the African National Congress annual anniversary celebrations in East London.

During the Working Visit, President Kenyatta and former Deputy President Ramaphosa discussed issues of mutual concern, including the proposed reform initiatives of the AU, the ongoing security challenges in South Sudan and Somalia, as well as mutually beneficial economic opportunities between the two countries.

Rwanda

Since the establishment of diplomatic relations in 1995 between South Africa and Rwanda, the two countries continue have close interaction at a high political level.

Rwanda is an important partner in the advancement and the championing of the African Agenda by being among the first countries to volunteer for the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) and by actively contributing troops to the African Peacekeeping Missions in Sudan and the African Central Republic (CAR).

In January 2018, President Ramaphosa met the President of Rwanda, Mr Paul Kagame during several High Level meetings, which included the WEF's Annual Meeting in January which was held in Davos, the 10th Extraordinary Summit of the AU which took place in Rwanda in March 2018 and the G20 Summit in Canada in June 2018. In his capacity as the Chairperson of the AU, President Kagame also participated in the BRICS Africa Outreach meeting as part of the 10th BRICS Summit in South Africa in July 2018.

South Africa and Rwanda signed over 20 bilateral Agreements in various fields and continue to enjoy cordial relations

Somalia

In January 2013, South Africa pledged its support for Somalia's new government and the country on its road towards a prosperous and stable democracy.

On 8 February 2017, President Mohamed Adullahi Mohamed was elected as President of Somalia, which is expected to pave a new path towards political stability in the country and further strengthen relations between South Africa and that country.

Sudan

The relations between South Africa and Sudan remain cordial. South Africa is also playing a key role in the resolution of conflicts and the post-conflict reconstruction efforts in that country. Moreover, Sudan serves among key African countries with the potential for increased trade and investment. South Africa and Sudan are in the process of finalizing an Agreement on JCC.

South Sudan

On 29 January 2018, the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula, visited the capital of South Sudan, Juba, to meet with her counterpart, Lt. General Kuol Manyang Juuk, and sign a MoU on Cooperation in the field of Defence between the Government of the Republic of South Africa and the Republic of South Sudan.

The MoU is a product of long existing bilateral relations between the two countries dating back to the liberation struggles and South Sudan's independence, in which South Africa played a critical role.

It is intended that the MoU will facilitate better relations between the two countries, enhance security sector reforms as well as ensure peace and stability in South Sudan.

Uganda

South Africa and Uganda have enjoyed good political and economic relations since 1994. The relations were cemented when the South Africa-Uganda JCC was inaugurated in Pretoria during November 2012.

South Africa and Uganda continue to cooperate closely and coordinate their positions on issues in a number of regional and multilateral forums, such as the AU and the UN, and share similar perspectives, particularly on the political and economic integration processes on the African continent.

North and Central Africa

Egypt

South Africa and Egypt have a Joint Bilateral Commission (JBC), convened at ministerial level, for enhancing and strengthening bilateral relations.

South Africa is committed to forging closer strategic cooperation bwith Egypt, focusing in particular on economic and security cooperation, and to continue working together in pursuance of continental integration, peace and security as well as the fight against all forms of terrorism and extremism.

Libya

South Africa is deeply concerned over the prevailing political and security situation in Libya, which has gravely affected peace and security in the region.

At the same time, South Africa has also noted, with satisfaction, the positive developments regarding the UN Political Agreement to establish a Government of National Accord in Libya.

In this regard, South Africa urges the Libyan people and its leaders to set aside their differences and unite in the interest of peace, stability and prosperity in Libya. Further, South Africa is ready to assist the Libyan people by sharing her experiences on democratic transition and reconciliation.

Algeria

South Africa enjoys historic and cordial relations with Algeria and regards it as a strategic partner in the region and continent. Since the establishment of the Presidential BNC in 2000, bilateral political trade and economic links have been growing steadily.

Algeria's relations with countries of the Maghreb, the Mediterranean, the Arab Peninsular and the Sahel regions serves as a platform to promote joint Algeria-South Africa partnerships/ventures in the mutual interest of all parties.

Morocco

South Africa and Morocco enjoy cordial diplomatic relations. Morocco recalled her Ambassador to South Africa in 2004 following South Africa's recognition of the Sahrawi Arab Democratic Republic (SADR). Bilateral relations have since been maintained at the level of a Chargé d'Affaires en titre (Morocco) and Chargé d'Affaires ad interim (South Africa).

In December 2017, then President Zuma held a historic bilateral meeting with King Mohammed VI of Morocco on the sidelines of the 5th Joint AU-EU Summit underway in Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire.

During the meeting, the two Heads of State agreed to work together for a promising future, especially as South Africa and Morocco are two important poles of political stability and economic development, respectively in the extreme north and the extreme south of the continent.

They also agreed to maintain direct contact and to launch a fruitful economic and political partnership in order to build strong, lasting and stable relations, and to go beyond the situation that had characterised bilateral relations for decades.

In this regard, then President Zuma and King Mohammed have decided to raise the level of diplomatic representation through the appointment of high level ambassadors in Rabat and in Pretoria.

President Zuma also reaffirmed South Africa's unwavering support for the Saharawi people's struggle for independence.

Western Sahara is Africa's longest-running territorial dispute and an issue of continental and international law and diplomatic controversy, having been on the decolonisation agenda of the UN and AU for more than 50 years.

Morocco contends that the Western Sahara, a former Spanish colony, is an integral part of its kingdom. On the other side, the Polisario Front, which is campaigning for the territory's independence, demands a referendum on self-determination.

The SADR is a full member of the AU, while Morocco withdrew from the AU, then the OAU, in protest at the SADR's inclusion. Morocco was only re-admitted as a member of the AU this year.

Throughout the years, Pretoria has maintained the same position on the right to self-determination for the Saharawi people, as enshrined in the UN Charter and the AU Constitutive Act.

During the meeting, the two leaders agreed that there should be continuous engagement on this matter.

The move to rebuild relations is part of Morocco's new policy of opening up to other African nations.

Western Sahara

Formal diplomatic relations were established at ambassador level in 2004. South Africa continues to render political support and humanitarian assistance to the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic. Through the African Renaissance Fund, South Africa supports projects that aim to benefit the Saharawi population.

South Africa's international solidarity and support for the self-determination of Western Sahara is based on:

- the principles of multilateralism and international legality in seeking a just, lasting and mutually acceptable political solution, which will provide for the self-determination of the people of Western Sahara;
- the centrality of the AU and UN in the resolution of the conflict;
- the Constitutive Act of the AU, in particular the principle of the sanctity of inherited colonial borders in Africa and the right of peoples of former colonial territories to self-determination and independence;
- respect for international human rights law in the occupied territories, notably the right to freedom of association, assembly, movement and expression;
- respect for international humanitarian law and support for the provision of humanitarian assistance to the Saharawi refugees in a way that is predictable, sustainable and timely;
- an end to the illegal exploration and exploitation of the natural resources of Western Sahara in the illegally occupied territory and the discouragement of the involvement of foreign companies in such activities; and
- support for the integration and stability of the Maghreb Union as a building block of the AU.

South Africa reiterate its call for two parties to return to a discussion table and have constructive direct dialogue.

Gabon

Relations between South Africa and Gabon are sound and the visit aims to further strengthen and expand the partnership. The visit also provides an opportunity for the exchange of views on regional, continental and international issues of mutual concern.

Mauritania

South Africa made a constructive contribution in Mauritania in support of the implementation of the democratic road map undertaken by the military transitional government following the coup d'état of August 2005.

These efforts contributed to the restoration of constitutional

order and stability in Mauritania, leading to South Africa's support for the lifting of the AU suspension of the country on 10 April 2007.

In terms of economic relations, progress has been recorded between the two countries in the areas of fisheries and mining. In addition, the Economic Cooperation Agreement will facilitate the opening of trade and investment opportunities for the two countries.

Tunisia

The South African Embassy in Tunisia was officially opened in 1994. South Africa and Tunisia enjoy a very healthy and mutually beneficial political and economic relationship.

Chad

South Africa and Chad established diplomatic relations in 1994, but it was only in 2013 that both countries appointed resident ambassadors.

Chad is a member of the Economic Community of Central African States (CEMAC), the Community of Sahel-Saharan States, the Grouping G5 of the Sahel, the Lake Chad Basin Commission, member and host of the Multi-National Joint Task Force (in the fight against Boko Haram) and is the designated Chair of the CEMAC. On 25 January 2017, South Africa signed a Bilateral Air Services Agreement with Chad. South Africa and Chad are currently engaged in finalising an Economic Cooperation Agreement.

Democratic Republic of São Tomé and Príncipe

Following its independence in 1975, the Government of the Democratic Republic of São Tomé and Principe expanded its diplomatic relationships. Since the establishment of full diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1994, the relations between the two countries have grown significantly.

Republic of the Congo

Bilateral cooperation between the two countries takes place within the framework of the GPA, signed in 2003 and which establishes a JCC, the deepening of bilateral relations between the two countries have seen the signing of a number of agreements.

The Joint Trade Committee (JTC) is playing an important role in facilitating the trade and investment relationship.

Equatorial Guinea

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Equatorial Guinea were established on 5 May 1993. South Africa and Equatorial Guinea enjoy cordial bilateral relations.

Cameroon

South Africa and Cameroon enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Cameroon is the economic hub of the Central African Region.

The seaport of Doualla in Cameroon is used to import goods to landlocked countries in the region such as Chad and the Central Africa Republic (CAR).

Central African Republic

South Africa opened its Embassy in Bangui in 2017 and the two countries enjoy cordial relations.

Southern Africa

Angola

South Africa and Angola continue to work together in maintaining peace, stability and regional integration and promoting the SADC Agenda.

Angola is one of South Africa's major trading partners in Africa with almost 90% of Angolan exports to South Africa being petroleum-related products.

President Ramaphosa, in his capacity as Chair of the SADC, was in Angola on a Working Visit in April 2018.

The President held a consultative meeting with President João Lourenço of Angola.

Namibia

South Africa and Namibia enjoy strong and fraternal relations that are characterised by regular and increasing interaction at all levels. The economies of South Africa and Namibia are interlinked with South Africa being one of Namibia's major trading partners.

Namibia imports 80% of its consumables from South Africa. South African companies have a large presence in Namibia and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, hotels and leisure, banking and medical services.

In March 2018, President Ramaphosa paid a courtesy visit to Namibia.

Lesotho

South Africa's bilateral relations with the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho remain strong and are based on a shared language, history and culture. Lesotho is landlocked in South Africa, creating a unique dependence.

South Africa supplies nearly 90% of Lesotho's total imports and it is critical to the economic success of the Kingdom. In this regard, total trade between the two respective countries reached R22, 10 billion in 2017, with exports by South Africa totalling R17, 96 billion and imports from Lesotho, R4,14 billion.

The last session of the Joint BNC of Cooperation (JBCC) met in 2013 in South Africa, and the agreement expired in 2017. Due to political instability since 2014 the JBCC has not taken place. It was agreed between the respective countries that the JBCC is to be resuscitated and will convene in the latter part of 2018 in Lesotho.

The strong cooperation that exists between the two countries cover a wide range of areas such as the Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP), the Metolong Dam Project and the revamping and upgrading of the Mokhotlong road and the Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier.

Eswatini

Bilateral relations between the Republic of South Africa and the Kingdom of Eswatini, reflected in the Joint Bilateral Commission for Cooperation (JBCC) Agreement, are amiable and informed essentially by historical and cultural affinities, including the geographical proximity between the peoples of the two countries.

Eswatini has from 2015 experienced devastating droughts from the El Nino effects, which resulted in the loss of thousands of livestock, crops and the ability to feed the vulnerable in the country.

South Africa, through the World Food Programme Project in

Eswatini, has offered assistance in the form of food aid for the vulnerable children.

Zambia

South Africa and Zambia maintain solid economic cooperation as evidenced by the presence of several South African companies in Zambia.

Improved cooperation in a variety of areas such as air services and infrastructural development present economic opportunities to the South African private sector and parastatals.

In March 2018, President Ramaphosa received a courtesy call by President Edgar Chagwa Lungu of the Republic of Zambia. President Ramaphosa had a working visit to Zambia on 9 August 2018.

The two Presidents committed that South Africa and Zambia would continue to work together on the region's common agenda relating to, among others, peace, security and economic integration.

Structured bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Zambia formerly took place under the framework of the JCC, which was signed on 18 October 2005.

During the Second Session of the JCC held in Zambia from 9 to 11 October 2017, the two countries agreed to elevate the JCC to a BNC which would be chaired at the level of Heads of State.

South Africa was expected to host the inaugural session of the BNC in 2018.

Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC)

South Africa and the DRC maintain good diplomatic and political relations. The highest expression of the quality and significance of these diplomatic relations is the annual BNC, co-chaired by the heads of state.

The General Cooperation Agreement, signed by South Africa and the DRC on 14 January 2004, is the principal agreement establishing bilateral cooperation between the two states in the form of the BNC, which provides the basis for political, economic and technical cooperation.

On 10 August 2018, President Ramaphosa undertook a Working Visit to the DRC as the country prepared for the elections scheduled for 23 December 2018.

The SADC is committed to assisting the Government and the people of the DRC to achieve sustainable peace, security and stability.

Zimbabwe

South Africa and Zimbabwe enjoy historic political and fraternal relations which also incorporate regional affiliation and cultural ties.

Zimbabwe is one of South Africa's main trade partners in Africa and several South African companies operate in Zimbabwe in sectors such as mining, tourism, agriculture, banking, manufacturing and retail.

In March 2018, President Ramaphosa as Chair of SADC visited Harare for a consultative meeting with President Emmerson Mnangagwa.

The meeting aimed to further strengthen the strong economic, political and social relations that exist between South Africa and Zimbabwe. The heads of state exchanged views on important regional, continental and global issues of mutual concern.

South Africa and Zimbabwe enjoy excellent bilateral relations which date back to the days of the liberation struggle.

On 2 August 2018, President Ramaphosa congratulated President Emmerson Mnangagwa on his election as the President of the Republic of Zimbabwe, following elections held on 30 July 2018.

Malawi

South Africa and Malawi enjoy cordial and fraternal bilateral relations inclusive of political, economic and cultural relations and within the context of regional integration and intra-Africa trade. These bilateral relations are conducted under the framework of the JCC.

Since its inception in May 2007, three sessions of the JCC were held in June 2008, September 2012 and April 2016, respectively. The fourth session of the JCC was held in South Africa in 2018.

Mozambique

President Ramaphosa undertook a Working Visit to the Republic of Mozambique in March 2018 as the Chair of the SADC.

The visit formed part of a standing tradition in the SADC region, whereby newly elected heads of state pay courtesy calls to the neighbouring countries.

Tanzania

The bilateral relations have been characterised by high-level interaction between the two countries aimed at consolidating and strengthening political, economic and social cooperation.

Economic relations between South Africa and Tanzania have since 1994 grown significantly and continue to expand. The two countries have elevated their bilateral relations by signing a BNC Agreement in 2011, thus increasing the scope of areas of cooperation between the two countries.

Botswana

South Africa and Botswana cooperate in a wide range of areas, including transport, trade and investment, health, education, environmental affairs, water, science and technology, agriculture, justice, immigration, energy, finance, culture, security and sport.

In March 2018, President Ramaphosa paid a Working Visit to Botswana.

Relations with Asia and the Middle East

The People's Republic of China

South Africa and China are marking the 20th anniversary of the establishment of diplomatic relations between the two countries. They first established formal ties on 1 January 1998.

Over the past 20 years, the two countries achieved a significant number of bilateral cooperation agreements in areas including trade, investment, economic and people-to-people relations.

South Africa and China share a common developmental agenda based on the principle of internationalism and enjoy strong diplomatic and trade relations. China is South Africa's biggest trading partner and also the second biggest economy in the world.

The two countries share membership of and participate as partners in numerous international bodies, including BRICS, the

Group of 77+ China, G20 and are co-chairs of FOCAC.

The year 2017 saw South Africa and China strengthening their friendship through the inaugural South Africa-China High-Level People-to-People Exchange Mechanism, which took place in Pretoria, South Africa in April. The mechanism seeks to enhance mutual trust, friendship and strategic partnership between the people of both countries.

China successfully hosted the ninth BRICS Summit in Xiamen, with South Africa scheduled to host the 10th BRICS Summit in 2018.

South Africa's bilateral relations with China are guided broadly through mechanisms such as the Beijing Declaration establishing the Comprehensive Strategic Partnership, the BNC, Joint Inter-Ministerial Working Group on Cooperation (JWG), Strategic Dialogue Mechanism and the 5-10 Year Strategic Framework on Cooperation signed in 2014.

South Africa-China bilateral relations have grown from a partnership to a strategic partnership and subsequently to a comprehensive strategic partnership. South Africa and China have committed to building, developing and strengthening relations based on shared principles of friendship and mutual trust; equality and mutual benefit; coordination; mutual learning; and working together for development.

South Africa and China's bilateral relations are managed through structured mechanisms, including the BNC, the Joint Working Group (JWG) and the Strategic Dialogue. These mechanisms are chaired at the Deputy President, Ministerial and Deputy Ministerial level respectively.

South Africa is China's largest trading partner in Africa and China is also South Africa's largest trading partner as reflected in the total trade volume of R343 billion.

South Africa and China work together to improve the structure of bilateral trade by encouraging the trade of high value-added manufactured goods and increasing China's investment in South Africa.

The two sides continue to deepen their cooperation in infrastructure development, including the construction of roads, railways, ports, power plants, airports and housing.

It should be noted that the current bilateral trade volume is skewed in favour of China and through the numerous high-level engagements the leaders have sought to redress the trade deficit through signing of Agreements and MoUs among others which provide further opportunities for increased exports to China.

On 24 July 2018, President Ramaphosa hosted the President of the People's Republic of China, Xi Jinping, on a State Visit to South Africa.

The two Heads of State used the State Visit to engage in bilateral talks and evaluate the progress achieved by the two countries on the Strategic Programme of Cooperation with specific reference to the six priority areas identified in 2015.

They include the alignment of industries to accelerate South Africa's industrialisation process; enhancement of cooperation in special economic zones; enhancement of marine cooperation; infrastructure development; human resources cooperation; and financial cooperation.

President Ramaphosa paid a successful State Visit to China on 02 September 2018, to further deepen bilateral relations with China. South Africa signed several agreements with China during the two State Visits, with an overall investment commitment from China to the value of US$14,7 billion.

Japan

South Africa and Japan enjoy excellent diplomatic relations in the fields of trade and investment; science and technology cooperation; and skills development support.

Since 2010, the relations have been upgraded to that of a Strategic Cooperation Partnership.

Japan is a major investor in the South African economy, with a current presence of approximately 140 Japanese companies providing over 150 000 local job opportunities.

Total bilateral trade between the two countries in 2017 was R93,2 billion (in South Africa's favour by R17.8 billion), with exports to Japan of R55,5 billion and imports from Japan of R37,7 billion.

During 2017, South Africa exported mainly precious metals, minerals, as well as iron and steel products to Japan, whilst importing machinery, vehicles and equipment components from that country.

An average of approximately 28,751 Japanese tourists visit South Africa annually (period 2010-17). The number has been increasing over the last two years.

The TICAD is a strategic partnership between Africa and Japan that was launched in 1993, with a view to serve as a consultative forum for development assistance to Africa.

TICAD's 1st Japan-Africa Public-Private Economic Forum (JAPPEF) was held in Sandton, Johannesburg in 2018. The JAPPEF provides USD30 billion for joint public-private African development projects.

The Forum brought together Japanese and African Ministers of Trade and Investment, as well as captains of industries from both Japan and the African continent.

The primary aim of the Forum was to promote trade and investment between Japan and Africa, in further support of TICAD's development goals.

Republic of Korea (ROK)

Formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and the ROK were established in December 1992.

Increasingly, the focus of the bilateral relationship between South Africa and ROK is on trade and investment links, as the latter houses some of the world's leading companies such as Hyundai, Samsung, KIA, Daewoo and LG, which have been sources of investment into South Africa.

The ROK is South Africa's fourth-largest trading partner in Asia. Total bilateral trade between the two countries in 2017 was R39 billion (in South Africa's favour by R12 billion), with exports to the ROK of R25 billion and imports from the ROK of R13 billion. The trade relationship encompasses a wide variety of products, ranging from minerals to sophisticated high-technology electronic products.

By mid-2018, there were over 30 ROK companies in South Africa, with investments in the manufacturing, energy, science and technology, shipping and transport sectors. The ROK regularly makes technical skills training and development opportunities available to South Africa, from which many South Africans have already benefitted, including human resource capacity building programmes as part of rural development and rural teaching projects.

Structured South Africa-ROK bilateral relations have so far

been conducted within the Policy Consultative Forum (PCF) framework, co-Chaired at Deputy Ministerial level. The first PCF took place in Pretoria in 2003. The 8th PCF was held on 17 October 2014 in Seoul, ROK, where a decision was taken to elevate the PCF to a JCC, at Ministerial level.

Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK)

South Africa established diplomatic relations with the DPRK in August 1998 and the two countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Due to the imposition of various UNSC sanctions against the DPRK as a consequence of the country's controversial nuclear weapons and missile programmes, economic relations with South Africa remain limited.

South Africa is encouraged by the recent positive developments on the Korean Peninsula and the efforts on all sides to promote direct contact and dialogue to ensure holistic and durable solutions to the regional security tensions and welcomes the rapprochement, which culminated into two inter-Korean Summits between the DPRK leader Kim Jong-un and the ROK President Moon-Jae-in on 27 April 2018 and 26 May 2018.

The two leaders adopted the Panmunjom Declaration for Peace, Prosperity and Unification of the Korean Peninsula, followed by a Summit meeting between President Donald Trump of the United States of America (USA) and the DPRK leader Kim Jong-un in Singapore, which also adopted a Joint Statement in the interest of peace and security.

South Africa has consistently called for the denuclearisation of the Korean Peninsula, as it firmly believes that nuclear weapons and the pursuance of such capabilities do not enhance security, but rather constitute a source of regional and international insecurity.

Mongolia

South Africa and Mongolia established diplomatic relations on 25 May 1994. The Mongolian Embassy in Egypt is accredited to South Africa, while South Africa's Embassy in Beijing is accredited to Mongolia.

Mongolia's mining sector and its vast coal reserves potentially offer an opportunity for collaboration with South Africa, especially in terms of clean coal technologies.

South and Central Asia

Central Asia

The South African Ambassador to Kazakhstan is accredited to Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Kyrgyzstan, while the South African Ambassador in Turkey is accredited to Uzbekistan, both on a non-residential basis. Both Tajikistan's Ambassador to Egypt and Kyrgyzstan's Ambassador in Saudi Arabia are accredited on a non-residential basis to South Africa.

Kazakhstan

Kazakhstan and South Africa established diplomatic relations in March 1992. The South African Embassy in Kazakhstan was opened in December 2003 in Almaty, and relocated to Astana in February 2008. Bilateral relations are managed through annual political consultations at deputy ministerial level.

Total bilateral trade reached its highest level of R702 million in 2016, with South Africa enjoying a trade surplus of R338 million. In 2017, total bilateral trade registered at R274 million, with South Africa having a trade surplus of R95 million.

South African exports to Kazakhstan are mainly machinery; steel and steel products, vehicles, aircraft and vessels; whereas imports are primarily steel products and chemicals.

South Africa participated at EXPO 2017 in Astana from 10 June to 9 September 2017. The exhibition was focused on achievements with regard to the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) Project and showcased the largest science project in the world, illustrating how renewable energy technologies would support this project in the future.

The former Deputy Minister, Ms Nomaindiya Mfeketo paid an Official Visit to Astana, Kazakhstan, from 17 to 20 July 2017.

South Asia

South Africa's economic strategy in South Asia is strongly focused on deepening trade and investment linkages, particularly with countries that offer potential for future growth and where synergies and complementarities in products and technologies exist.

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Nepal, Afghanistan and the Maldives.

India

South Africa and India enjoy strong historical and fraternal bonds forged through India's steadfast opposition to racial discrimination and its support for the liberation struggle in South Africa.

Formal diplomatic relations were established in November of 1993 and close cooperation occurs within multilateral groupings such as BRICS, IBSA, IORA and the G20. Formal bilateral relations are structured via a JMC and Foreign Office Consultations (FOC), which takes place at a senior official's level. A FOC Meeting was held in New Delhi in January 2018.

A South Africa-India Business Summit was held in Johannesburg on 30 April 2018, and succeeded in promoting closer ties between the private sectors of both countries. Commercial relations have grown steadily over the last few years, especially in the areas of trade, investment and tourism.

The value of trade conducted in 2017, between India and South Africa, was R107 billion and scope exists to grow the trading relationship even further. Identified priority areas for future cooperation include the mining sector, agro-processing, infrastructure development, the defence sector, pharmaceuticals and financial services.

During the July 2018 BRICS Johannesburg Summit, President Ramaphosa and Prime Minister Modi signed a MoU establishing the Mandela-Gandhi Centre of Specialisation for Artisan Skills which will be situated at the Tshwane South TVET campus and which will specialise in skills training.

Pakistan

Pakistan and South Africa enjoy cordial bilateral relations and a strong historical bond. Bilateral relations are structured via a Joint Commission (JC). In 2015, a decision was taken to elevate the JC from senior officials' level to the level of Deputy Minister.

The Fifth South Africa-Pakistan JC is scheduled to be held in Pakistan in 2018. Bilateral trade has shown impressive growth and in 2017 reached R13 billion, with the trade balance being in South Africa's favour.

Both countries are keen to grow the trade relationship further

concentrating on deep mining and technology, energy and agro-processing.

Sri Lanka

The bilateral relations between the two countries are cordial and conducted under the umbrella of the structured Partnership Forum.

The two countries held the Sixth Session of the Senior Officials Meeting (SOM) of the Partnership Forum on 7 April 2017 followed by the Seventh Session of the Partnership Forum in Colombo, Sri Lanka, during October 2018.

Bilateral trade between South Africa and Sri Lanka has grown significantly since the establishment of diplomatic relations, from R 184 million in 1994 to R 3, 2 billion in 2017.

The major exports to Sri Lanka are the export of minerals, primarily coal. Bilateral relations have shown a marked strengthening as a result of growing collaboration over a wide spectrum of activities, most notably tourism, investment, trade, educational exchanges.

Bangladesh, Nepal and Maldives

The South African High Commissioner in Colombo, Sri Lanka, is accredited to Bangladesh, Nepal and Maldives on a non-residential basis.

The Fourth Senior Officials Meeting (SOM) was held in Pretoria on 12 July 2017, in Pretoria. Bilateral trade between South Africa and Bangladesh grew from R28 million in 1994 to R3,2 billion in 2017.

The trade balance is R1,149 billion, in favour of South Africa. Bangladesh has been identified as a country with enormous potential for the expansion of trade and economic relations with South Africa.

South Africa and Nepal share good bilateral relations, consolidated further through the exchange of high-level bilateral visits. Various visits from Nepal have also focused on learning from the South African model of transitional justice, best practices and good governance.

South Africa exports to Nepal stood at R41 million, and imports at R12 million in 2017. The major export product is base metals, and South Africa imports textiles from Nepal.

In 2017, 460 Nepalese tourists visited South Africa, while an estimated 3 000 SA tourists visited Nepal.

While bilateral relations between South Africa and the Maldives are cordial, there is currently no bilateral mechanism in place to advance relations between the two countries.

In an effort to enhance bilateral relations, the Maldives Government has made a request to open a Diplomatic Mission in South Africa during May 2018. In June 2018, the Government of South Africa has approved the request.

South-East Asia

ASEAN has dramatically outpaced the rest of the world in both economic and GDP per capita growth, since the late 1970s.

Already some 67 million households in the ASEAN member states are part of the consuming class, with incomes exceeding the level at which they can begin to make significant discretionary purchases.

That number could almost double to 125 million households by 2025, making ASEAN a pivotal consumer market of the future, and hence of strategic importance to South African trade.

Trade between South Africa and ASEAN is growing quickly. In 2017, total trade with ASEAN was R112 billion, but with a trade deficit of R42 billion. South Africa's largest trading partners in South East Asia are: Thailand, Indonesia, Malaysia, and Vietnam.

Thailand

South Africa is Thailand's largest trading partner in Africa, while Thailand is South Africa's largest trading partner in ASEAN.

For 2017 total bilateral trade was R41.4 billion, up from R38 billion in 2016.

South Africa imports from Thailand amounted to R33.2 billion, while South African exports amounted to only R8.2 billion, leaving the country with a large bilateral trade deficit of R25 billion, up from R24.6 bn in 2016.

The South African Embassy in Thailand is also accredited to Myanmar, Laos and Cambodia.

Malaysia

Malaysia is the fourth-largest new investor into the African continent.

Malaysia continues to remain an important partner to South Africa and is instrumental in working together with South Africa on the latter's Operation Phakisa initiatives.

Bilateral trade between South Africa and Malaysia is on an upward trend, growing from R18.6 billion in 2016 to R20.5 billion in 2017.

Singapore

Total trade between South Africa and Singapore was at R13.8 billion in 2017, exports to Singapore during 2017 amounted to R6.9 billion while South African imports from Singapore totalled R6.8 billion.

As a country, world-renowned as a centre of excellence, Singapore has been particularly involved in providing South Africans with skills development opportunities under the Singapore Cooperation Programme sponsored by the Singapore Ministry of Foreign Affairs.

Many South African public servants have attended training courses, including the Economic Diplomacy Leadership course in Singapore over the years, thereby improving skills levels in South Africa.

Indonesia

In July 2017, South Africa and Indonesia agreed to identify sectors with a view to maximise the existing investment opportunities in both countries. The Minister of Trade and Industry, Rob Davies, and his Indonesian counterpart, Enggartiasto Lukita, met during the Third Joint Trade Committee meeting that was followed by the South Africa-Indonesia Business Forum.

The total volume of bilateral trade between South Africa and Indonesia in 2017 was R15, 6 billion, with R5.76 billion exports from South Africa, and R9.88 billion imports from Indonesia (compared to R3.79 billion exports and R9.72 billion imports in 2016).

Vietnam

South Africa and Vietnam celebrate 25 years of diplomatic relations in 2018.

The former Minister of International Relations and

Cooperation, Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, undertook a Working Visit to the Socialist Republic of Vietnam from 6 to 7 September 2017 during which she met with Prime Minister Nguyễn Xuân Phúc and Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Foreign Affairs, Phạm Bình Minh, on 6 and 7 September 2017, respectively.

The talks between the two governments focussed on growing bilateral trade and investments, particularly in the oceans economy.

Bilateral trade between the two countries has been growing year-on-year and amounted to R16 billion in 2017.

Brunei-Darussalam, Cambodia, Lao People's Democratic Republic (PDR), and Timor-Leste

South Africa's relations with Brunei-Darussalam, Cambodia, the PDR and Timor-Leste are cordial.

The South African Mission in Thailand is accredited on a non-residential basis to Cambodia, Laos and Myanmar; the Mission in Malaysia is accredited on a non-residential basis to Brunei-Darussalam; and the Mission in Indonesia is accredited on a non-residential basis to Timor-Leste..

Philippines

South Africa and Philippines are celebrating 25 years of diplomatic relations in 2018. Strong relations have been established through a shared history and a friendship that goes back to the Asian-African Bandung Conference of 1955.

The Governments of South Africa and the Philippines established a structured Bilateral Consultative Forum (BCF) which aims at furthering cooperation between the two countries.

The last BCF was held in Manila on 9 November 2017 and has shown that the bilateral relationship between South Africa and the Philippines have improved not only in substance, but also in various areas of technical cooperation, such as mining, trade, agriculture and the Blue Economy, especially in aquaculture.

Australasia and the Pacific Islands

Australia

South Africa and Australia enjoy cordial relations and interact biennially through a Senior Official Meeting (SOM).

South Africa and Australia cooperate across a range of sectors and issues, including law enforcement, sport, tourism, education, defence relations, and science and technology.

Australia is South Africa's 23rd-largest trading partner. The majority of exports from South Africa to Australia are finished goods. Exports of high-quality passenger motor vehicles head the list. Total trade between South Africa and Australia amounted to R25, 2 billion in 2017.

New Zealand

At a bilateral level, South Africa and New Zealand enjoy close cooperation in business, tourism, agriculture, disarmament, fisheries, environmental protection, indigenous people and human rights issues.

Relations are coordinated through a biennial SOM. New Zealand is South Africa's 33rd-largest trading partner. Total trade between South Africa and New Zealand amounted to R3, 3 billion in 2017.

A significant feature of the South Africa-New Zealand relationship is its sporting ties, in particular, rugby, cricket, netball and in recent years, soccer. The two countries also enjoy productive cooperation at a multilateral level.

Both countries are members of the Valdivia Group (Group of Temperate Southern Hemisphere Countries on Environment), which aims to promote the Southern Hemisphere's views at international environmental meetings and enhance scientific cooperation.

They also work closely together within the context of the Antarctic Treaty and Southern Indian Ocean Fisheries Agreement, and interact regularly within the context of the WTO and the Cairns Group.

Relations with the Middle East

South Africa's relationship with the Arab States remains cordial, with ongoing engagements at various political and economic levels that are anchored by the strategic objective of strengthening South-South relations.

Palestine

South Africa and Palestine have enjoyed warm relations since the inception of democracy. Official diplomatic relations between a democratic South Africa and Palestine were established in 1995.

Bilateral relations between Palestine and South Africa are facilitated through a Joint Commission of Cooperation (JCC) that was established in 1995 and renewed in 2014.

Progress in consolidating bilateral cooperation agreements remain afoot and was demonstrated by the three agreements signed during President Mahmoud Abass' November 2014 visit, namely:

- Agreement for the establishment of a JCC;
- MoU on Political Consultations; and
- Agreement on Higher Education and Training.

In addition, South Africa supports international efforts aimed at the establishment of a viable Palestinian State, existing side by side in peace with Israel within internationally recognised borders, based on those existing on 4 June 1967, with East Jerusalem as its capital.

South Africa remains committed to the aspirations of the Palestinian people in their struggle to achieve freedom and independence. And continues to promote the peaceful resolution of the Middle East conflict utilising all international forums available.

Syria

Diplomatic relations between Syria and South Africa were established on 1 June 1994, with Syria having opened an Embassy in South Africa in 1998.

Since the start of the Syrian civil war in 2011, the two countries have continued to maintain diplomatic relations.

South Africa affirmed its support for Syria's territorial integrity and reiterated its support for a political solution to the conflict in Syria.

South Africa also declared its condemnation of all violence and human rights violations and remains concerned about the deteriorating humanitarian and security situation in Syria.

South Africa has called on all parties involved to work for a comprehensive and peaceful resolution of the conflict taking into account the legitimate aspirations of the people of Syria, through inclusive national dialogue and a Syrian-led political process.

Iraq

Iraq opened its Embassy in Pretoria in December 1999 and an Iraqi Ambassador was accredited to South Africa in 2001.

South Africa's intention to open a Mission in Baghdad in April 2003 was delayed because of the outbreak of the United States (US)-led war.

South Africa will resuscitate those plans once the security situation normalises in Iraq. The South African Ambassador to Jordan is accredited to Iraq on a non-residential basis.

An agreement on economic and technical cooperation was signed between the two countries and includes issues related to energy, agriculture, housing, transportation, tourism, healthcare and telecommunications, as well as practical steps to increase trade and enhance economic cooperation.

Jordan

Jordan was the first Arab country to establish diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1993. The Embassy of South Africa was established in Amman in December 1993, and the Embassy of Jordan was opened in Pretoria in June 1994.

In December 2018, South Africa and Jordan will celebrate 25 years of the establishment of diplomatic relations, a very important milestone in the relationship.

The two countries enjoy a warm and increasingly diverse relationship, underpinned by strengthening political ties. The relationship would be further strengthened by concluding a MoU on Bilateral Consultations between the two countries.

Lebanon

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the Republic of Lebanon, with formal diplomatic relations having been re-established on 27 June 1994.

At present South Africa has no residential diplomatic presence in Lebanon. The South African Ambassador in Syria is accredited to Lebanon on a non-residential basis. The Government of South Africa attaches great importance to the ties that have been built between the two countries.

A MoU on Bilateral Consultations is to be signed that would institutionalise regular and structured political engagement between the two countries.

In February 2017, the Lebanese Minister of Foreign Affairs and Emigrants, Gebran Bassil, undertook a Working Visit to South Africa, and met the former Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane.

The visit focused on enhancing an understanding of the developments in Lebanon and the region broadly, particularly insofar as it relates to the political, socio-economic and security challenges that confront Lebanon and the region.

The visit also identified areas of future co-operation and increasing trade, tourism and investment relations.

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

South Africa is committed to maintaining cordial diplomatic and trade relations with the UAE.

During the State Visit of President Ramaphosa to the UAE in July 2018. The country committed to invest US$10 billion in South Africa with a focus on targeted sectors, such as tourism and mining to support the sustainable development of the country.

The intention is to manage the investment through a Joint investment Fund which will coordinate the interest of both South Africa and the UAE in ensuring the investment meets its intended objectives.

Iran

The primary mechanism for engagement with Iran is the Joint Commission (JC), established in 1995 and allows for a high-level review of bilateral relations and considers areas to further strengthen relations.

This JC is supported by an inter-sessional mechanism, the Deputy Ministerial Working Group (DMWG) which further monitors the implementation of decisions and undertakings made during the JC.

On 23 October 2017, the former Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane hosted her counterpart, Dr Javad Zarif for the 13th JC between the Republic of South Africa and the Islamic Republic of Iran in Pretoria.

South Africa supports Iran's right to develop and use nuclear technology for peaceful purposes, whilst also encouraging it to increase its commitment to international verification and similar confidence building measures.

South Africa welcomed and will continue to support the Joint Comprehensive Plan of Action on Iran's nuclear programme.

Saudi Arabia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Saudi Arabia were formalised in November 1994. Economic Relations are managed through the Joint Economic Commission and will be invaluable in implementing the high-level decisions made during the State Visits of President Ramaphosa in 2018 and then President Zuma in 2016.

Saudi Arabia is a key economic partner for South Africa as a fellow G20 member state and South Africa's largest supplier of crude oil and related products since 2012.

Saudi Arabia is South Africa's largest trading partner in the Middle East with total trade in 2017 valued at R 55,5 billion rand – demonstrating a decrease in imports but an increase in exports due to diversification in South Africa's oil supply.

Saudi Arabia committed to invest US$ 10 billion into South Africa during the State Visit of President Ramaphosa during July 2018.

South Africa and Saudi Arabia are also increasing the people-to-people interaction through tourism initiatives and supporting pilgrims when performing their holy duties of Hajj and Umrah.

In addition, Saudi Arabia supports South Africa's application for observer status at the Organisation for Islamic Cooperation.

Qatar

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the State of Qatar were established in 1994. South Africa's political and economic relations with Qatar have diversified and grown significantly over recent years and have become more diverse.

The Emir of Qatar, His Highness Sheikh Tamim Bin Hamad Al-Thani undertook a State Visit to Pretoria in April 2017, followed by a visit to Qatar by the former Minister, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane in July 2017.

Trade between South Africa and Qatar amounted to R 4, 6 billion in 2017. Qatar has traditionally enjoyed a healthy trade

surplus owing to the high proportion of oil and petrochemical trade to South Africa.

Kuwait

Kuwait remains an important partner for South Africa in the Middle East, particularly in terms of economic relations.

Kuwait has become an increasingly important market for South African exports and several Kuwaiti companies have made multimillion-rand investments in the construction and development of hotels and real estate in South Africa, as well as investments on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange.

Kuwait is South Africa's largest source of FDI from the Middle East, especially in the hospitality industry, through the Zimbali Resort investment and the automotive component investment by KAPICO.

Oman

Diplomatic relations were established in 1995 and are managed through the South Africa-Oman Partnership Forum. Both countries are keen to attract further investment.

A primary project by Oman is the Port of Sohar Projects, which will facilitate the trade of agro-processed products from South Africa.

Yemen

Relations between South Africa and Yemen are cordial. Both two countries are members of UN, IORA and the NAM.

The continued civil war in Yemen has hindered the development and strengthening of bilateral relations.

North America

Canada

Canada has a long-standing and wide-ranging track record of constructive engagement, at bilateral and multilateral levels, in Africa, ranging from peacekeeping and development aid to FDI.

About two thirds of South African exports to Canada relate to minerals and mining equipment, with agricultural and chemical products making up the rest. Canada views South Africa as a gateway into the SADC and the rest of Africa.

Canada's cooperation with South Africa focuses on strengthening service delivery, support for HIV and AIDS programmes and rural development.

In June 2018, at the invitation of Prime Minister Justin Trudeau, President Ramaphosa paid a Working Visit to Canada where he participated in the G7 Leaders' Outreach Summit, held in Quebec City, under the theme "Healthy, Productive and Resilient Oceans and Seas, Coasts and Communities"

In line with the President's stated drive to attract investment to grow the economy and create jobs, as well as reduce poverty and inequality, the President had an opportunity to engage with representatives of the business community in Toronto.

On the side-lines of the G7 Summit, President Ramaphosa held a number of bilateral engagements with Heads of State and Government from various States including Norway, France, Germany, Vietnam, Rwanda, Kenya and the host country, Canada.

A successful meeting of the structured Annual Consultations took place on 8 and 9 May 2018 in Ottawa, Canada. Bilateral trade between the two countries is largely balanced.

United States of America

Formal relations between South Africa and the United States (US) are historic, dating back to 1789.

The bilateral relationship is broad and deep, covering political, diplomatic, economic, social, scientific, educational, cultural, as well as regional and global cooperation on issues of mutual interest.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the US are cordial. The US supports South Africa's domestic priorities and continues to align its assistance programmes to the NDP. The US contributes approximately US$541,681 million in ODA per year and is the biggest international donor to South Africa's HIV and AIDS efforts, via the President's Emergency Programme For Aids Relief (PEPFAR).

The US is a major economic partner for South Africa, an important export market for value-added goods, a source of FDI, technology and of tourists.

Trade and investment relations take place under the auspices of the African Growth and Opportunity Act, under which South Africa gains duty-free and quota-free access to the US market for value-added products.

The US is currently South Africa's 3rd largest trading partner, absorbing a substantial amount of manufactured exports from South Africa.

The trade relationship is mutually beneficial and the total two-way trade was valued at R153, 49 billion in 2016. US exports to South Africa grew to R72, 9 billion in 2017.

Similarly, South Africa's exports to the US grew to R88, 7 billion in 2017. Some of South Africa's largest corporations have also undertaken major investments in the US.

These investments, led by companies such as Sasol, Sappi and Naspers, are approaching US$7 billion.

South Africa continues to place a high premium on high-level political exchanges. In this regard, an invitation has been extended to the US Secretary of State to visit South Africa for the 4th meeting of the Ministerial-level South Africa – US Strategic Dialogue, which is a structured mechanism to strengthen bilateral relations and deepen cooperation on regional and global issues.

Regional Organisations

European Union (EU)

The EU remains a key strategic region for South Africa and a prominent dialogue partner from the global North.

Relations with the EU are structured in accordance with the Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement (TDCA), whereas trade relations are governed by the Southern African Development Community (SADC)-EU Economic Partnership Agreement (SADC-EU EPA). The South Africa-EU Strategic Partnership is the only strategic partnership the EU has with an African country, and one of only 10 globally.

The Strategic Partnership expanded the scope of the interaction beyond trade issues, to incorporate a much wider scope of cooperation with structured bilateral mechanisms and High-Level meetings (Summit, Ministerial Political Dialogue (MPD), Senior-Official meetings and Inter-Parliamentary meetings) to support South Africa's national, regional, continental, and global priorities and programmes.

The Joint Cooperation Council (JCC), Co-Chaired by the Director-General of the DIRCO and the EU counterpart, covers over twenty sectoral policy dialogues, including

diverse issues such as development cooperation, science and technology, space, migration, health, trade, education and skills development, peace and security, and human rights.

The EU is South Africa's largest trading partner, as a block of 28 Member States, and largest foreign investor representing 77% of total FDI stocks in the country.

South Africa enjoys strong economic ties with the EU, developed under the TDCA. Since the TDCA came into force, total trade has increased from R150 billion in 2000 to R599.86 billion in 2017, a growth of nearly 300%.

Despite the fact that South Africa is experiencing a negative trade balance, exports to the EU have been increasing steadily over the years.

South African exports to the EU increased from R64 billion in 2000 to R262 billion in 2017, a 309% increase. Over 2 000 EU companies operate in South Africa, creating more than 500,000 direct and indirect jobs.

Regarding ODA from the EU, the South Africa-EU Multi-Annual Indicative Programme (MIP) for South Africa, for the funding cycle 2014-2020, is € 241 million, and outlines three priority areas aligned with objectives of the NDP 2030, namely, (i) employment creation; (ii) education, training and innovation; and (iii) building a capable and developmental state.

South Africa-EU Development Cooperation, a pillar of the Strategic Partnership, remains centred on the concepts of value addition fostering innovation, piloting, capacity development and catalytic initiatives aimed at addressing the reduction of poverty and inequality in South Africa.

The EU's development cooperation with South Africa is informed by the NDP, and contributes substantially to the country's national priorities.

In addition, the Infrastructure Investment Programme for South Africa (IIPSA), of which DIRCO is a Committee Member, is a € 100 million (R1.8 billion) infrastructure investment programme developed jointly by the South African Government and the EU, and when fully implemented will go a long way in unlocking infrastructure backlogs, not only in South Africa but also in the SADC region.

Western Europe

Belgium

Relations between South Africa and Belgium are strong and dynamic, covering a number of areas that are important to South Africa's national development objectives.

Belgium serves as port of entry for the largest portion of South African exports to the European Union and beyond.

Belgium is South Africa's 12th-largest export destination globally and ranks sixth in the world in terms of FDI in South Africa, among other things focusing on mining, green energy, ports, logistics and agriculture.

South African exports to Belgium include, amongst others, manufactured goods such as vehicles, precious stones, organic chemical, iron ore and steel.

Belgian FDI into South Africa totalled R10.11 billion in 2017, creating about 1,380 jobs within the Software & IT, Business, Hotel & Tourism and Alternative/Renewable Energy sectors.

Belgium is also one of the leading sources of inbound tourism, with 54 048 Belgian tourists visited South Africa during 2017.

Belgium has allocated substantial resources to South Africa in the form of ODA since 1994. This support has covered such areas as health, ports management and logistics, education, rural development and further education and training.

For the period 2011-2016, assistance amounted to R327.3 million. However, in 2015 the Belgian Federal Council of Ministers adopted a new list of partner countries.

Belgium's development cooperation shifted to fragile states and post-conflict zones as well as LDCs.

Consequently development cooperation programmes in South Africa will be gradually phases out and terminated in 2019.

This will give way to other forms of cooperation, among others with stakeholders of the non-governmental cooperation, including non-goevrnmental organisations and universities.

The Netherlands

Since 1994, South Africa and the Netherlands have forged a solid partnership that covers many fields including Economic, Trade, Science and Technology, Education, Judicial, Multilateral and Culture. The Dutch Government has consistently supported South Africa in terms of bilateral and multilateral relations

There are approximately in existence 42 Agreements, Memoranda of Understanding and Letters of Intent in various areas, mainly in terms of Water Resource Planning, Science and Technology, Military Cooperation, Development Cooperation and Infrastructure Development. In 2017 exports to the Netherlands were R37.083 billion while imports from the Netherlands amounted to R16.393 billion.

The balance of trade is thus in South Africa's favour but these are not necessarily exports from South Africa heading into the Netherlands, but possibly goods heading to the Port of Rotterdam and then being distributed across Europe from there.

According to FDI Markets, a total of 50 FDI projects from the Netherlands into South Africa were recorded between January 2003 and December 2017.

These projects represented a total capital investment of R5.49 billion, an average investment of R915.19 million per project.

A total of 2 828 jobs were created in the sectors of Chemicals, IT services, Business services, Aerospace, Communications, Financial services, Food and Tobacco, Industrial machinery and Electronic components.

Luxembourg

Bilateral and economic relations, especially in the financial services and funds sectors, remain strong between Luxembourg and South Africa.

Germany

South Africa and Germany have a strategic relationship, with regular structured dialogue and cooperation engagements covering a broad range of areas, including political dialogue, trade and investment, science and technology, the environment, vocational education and training, development cooperation, energy, defence, labour and social affairs, as well as arts and culture.

Germany and South Africa continue to have a dynamic and robust growing trade relationship. In 2017, Germany became South Africa's 2nd largest trading partner with total trade growing by 11% over 2015 to R211.6 billion.

Germany also remained one of the largest foreign investors

in South Africa, with more than 600 German companies having subsidiaries or production in the country, sustaining approximately 100 000 jobs.

The BNC remains the only and most important structures mechanism steering relations between South Africa and Germany.

South Africa is scheduled to host the 10th South Africa-Germany BNC on 18 and 19 October 2018, which rotates between the capitals of the two countries on a biennial basis and co-chaired at Foreign Minister Level.

This year marked the centenary of former President Nelson Mandela and this led a Joint Commemorative Nelson Mandela Stamp, which was launched on 31 July 2018 in South Africa.

South Africa and Germany will both serve as Non-Permanent Members of the UNSC for the period of 2019 – 2020.

Switzerland

Relations between South Africa and Switzerland are based on equal partnership. There are some 200 Swiss companies in South Africa, employing around 36 000 South Africans.

Then Deputy President Ramaphosa led a South African delegation of Cabinet ministers and business leaders to the WEF in Davos, Switzerland, in January 2018. The four-day meeting was held under the theme "Creating a Shared Future in a Fractured World".

On 3 October 2017, Deputy Minister Luwellyn Landers co-chaired the 8th South Africa-Switzerland High-Level Consultation (HLC) with State Secretary, Ms Pascale Baeriswyl in Pretoria.

The HLC is the main structured mechanism steering bilateral relations between the two countries.

The purpose of the HLC is to take stock of relations and progresses made since the last sitting, as well as identify new areas of cooperation to continue strengthening relations.

Consultations take place at the level of Deputy Minister Level. The 9th South Africa-Switzerland HLC is scheduled to be hosted by Switzerland in Bern in October 2018.

South Africa hosted the 8th Session of South Africa – Switzerland Joint Economic Committee (JEC) on the 15th of June 2018.

Switzerland has transitioned from a purely Development Assistance Programme in South Africa to focussing on an Economic Cooperation.

The Swiss Strategy for Economic Cooperation with South Africa is implemented by the State Secretariat for Economic Affairs (SECO) and financed through the Swiss Framework Credit 2017-2020 for economic and trade policy measures.

The planned commitment for South Africa for the 2017-2020 period is 55 million Swiss Francs (approximately ZAR 740 million), which is allocated in close coordination with South Africa's National Treasury.

Switzerland has granted South Africa special status on the Swiss foreign-policy agenda as one of the focus areas for Swiss interests outside Europe.

South Africa is Switzerland's second largest trading partner in Africa after Ghana. In 2017 imports from Switzerland amounted to R10,234bn and exports to Switzerland were R11,705. The balance of trade is therefore in South Africa's favour.

Switzerland is the 7th largest foreign investor in South Africa, with more than 100 Swiss companies having subsidiaries of production in South Africa, sustaining approximately 33 000 jobs.

Austria

Apart from the political dialogue, the two Foreign Ministries have signed a MoU on the Establishment of Bilateral Consultation Mechanism between the Austrian Ministry for Europe, Integration and Foreign Affairs and DIRCO, which was signed during the second South Africa-Austria Senior Officials Dialogue meeting which was held on 3 June 2016 in Vienna, Austria.

The proposal of the MoU is based on the substantive trade and investment relationship between the two countries, growing tourism figures, as well as both countries respective regional and global roles.

The MoU allows for regular bilateral consultations at Senior Officials Level to review all aspects of bilateral relations, exchange views on regional and international issues of mutual interest as well as on developments taking place in regional and international fora.

Current bilateral programmes supported by the Austrian Embassy in South Africa are as follows:

- Supporting tourism schools and curricular developments in hospitality industry;
- Supporting renewable energy training, particular solar through the Soltrain II project;
- Providing vocational welding training through the Austrian Welding Academy and with the support of the Austrian Development Agency
- Supporting vocational training through the Ithuba College south of Johannesburg;
- Promoting Higher Education through university to university cooperation.
- Current partnerships include the Universities i.e. Western Cape – Linz, Wits – Vienna, Stellenbosch – Graze etc.

South Africa enjoys cordial bilateral relations with the Republic of Austria, focused primarily on economic exchanges.

The bilateral exchanges focus on trade and investment, tourism and technological co-operation as well as vocational training.

South Africa ranks sixth among Austria's overseas trading partners, and is by far Austria's major trading partner in Africa.

Some 400 Austrian companies are engaged in trade relations with South African companies. More than 50 Austrian companies have direct investments in South Africa.

South Africa is Austria's main trading partner in Africa and ranks 6th among Austria's overseas trading partners.

In 2017, total trade between South Africa and Austria amounted to Euro 403.4 million. South African exports to Austria amounted to Euro 186.1 million and Austria's exports to South Africa were Euro 217.3 million.

United Kingdom

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the UK cover a wide spectrum and have a far-reaching impact. Cooperation between the two countries is broad and includes health, education, science and technology, energy, the environment, defence, police, arts and culture, sports and recreation.

There is a healthy flow of investment in both directions. The UK is recognised as the foremost source of FDI into South Africa, while South African companies equally have made large

investments in the UK.

The United Kingdom was South Africa's 6th largest global trading partner in 2017, with total trade at R79,5 billion. The United Kingdom was South Africa's 8th largest global export market for SA goods in 2017 at R46,3 billion.

South Africa and the UK have important trade and economic relations, which continue to strengthen.

The United Kingdom remains a critical market for especially agriculture exports, accounting for over 20% of South Africa's exports of wine and 30% of fruit exports globally.

The United Kingdom remains a critical global investment partner for South Africa. The United Kingdom The UK is by far South Africa's most significant source of long-haul tourists, a position it has not relinquished for the past 15 years with nearly 448 000 visitors in 2017.

In April 2018, President Ramaphosa led a South African delegation to the Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM 2018) in London and also paid a Working Visit to the UK, holding bilateral talks with Prime Minister Theresa May.

He addressed, among others, the African Leaders' Roundtable of the Commonwealth Business Forum.

President Ramaphosa also engaged with senior international investors and business leaders hosted by Bloomberg and attended the Commonwealth Business Forum Heads of Government Roundtable with senior business leaders hosted by Prime Minister Theresa May.

Brexit is the key political topic in the United Kingdom and will overwhelmingly dominate political debate in the United Kingdom until well after the United Kingdom leaves the EU.

Ireland

The Republic of Ireland was the only EU member country that did not have full diplomatic relations with South Africa until the dawn of democratic South Africa.

Ireland continues to be a valued source of FDI in the following sectors: business services, alternative/renewable energy, software and information technology services, and plastics.

Deputy Minister Landers hosted the Minister of State for the Diaspora and International Development of Ireland, Ciarán Cannon, for the Fifth Session of the South Africa-Ireland Partnership Forum in Pretoria on 31 October 2017.

The meeting reaffirmed the historical ties, close friendship and common interests and values that are the foundation of the strong relationship between South Africa and Ireland.

During the Forum the parties had wide ranging discussions on political, economic and social developments in both countries, as well as current affairs in Africa and Europe.

They reviewed bilateral political and economic relations expressing satisfaction on the progress achieved in various areas of cooperation since the last Partnership Forum of 2015 and further agreeing to explore other areas of cooperation over the coming years including in agriculture, and education.

The Irish Government also provides assistance to South African students through the Kader Asmal Fellowship which has awarded scholarships to 53 students since 2013.

France

France is a significant technological, trade, investment, tourism and development cooperation partner for South Africa.

Bilateral technical cooperation between South Africa and France exist in various sectors, including energy, agriculture, manufacturing, transport, education and science and technology. About 250 French companies have invested in South Africa and employ around 300 000 people.

Greece

South Africa and Greece enjoy traditional and close ties of friendship and cooperation as well as a convergence of views and cooperation on various regional and international issues in general.

South Africa-Greece relations are, furthermore, underpinned by the presence of a substantial and influential Greek professional and business community in South Africa.

Bilateral relations between the two countries continue to grow in a number of strategic and mutually beneficial areas.

Cyprus

South Africa has excellent and long-standing bilateral relations with Cyprus. It has maintained strong ties with that country, partly because of a substantial and influential Cypriot community in South Africa.

Italy

South Africa enjoys constructive bilateral relations with Italy, based on a shared commitment to the values of freedom, democracy and a similar approach to a broad range of international issues.

This is due, in part, to the strong cultural links and long-standing diplomatic relations between the two countries underpinned by a dynamic, well-integrated and respected Italian community here which also contributes to the economy of the country.

A MoU establishing bilateral Consultation was signed and entered into force in 2003; with Senior Officials Meeting being a platform set to coordinate political relations at the Deputy Director-General level.

Spain

The Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Luwellyn Landers, hosted the Spanish Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs and Cooperation, Ildefonso Castro, on the occasion of the 11th South Africa-Spain Annual Consultations on 29 September 2017 in Pretoria.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Spain are strong and are anchored through the Annual Consultations held at Deputy Minister level.

The Annual Consultations take place under the auspices of the MoU signed in December 2000, which serves as the main forum for coordinating bilateral relations between the two countries on a wide spectrum of bilateral, regional and global issues of mutual concern.

Spin is active with regard to solar and wind renewable energy projects in South Africa.

Portugal

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Portugal are cordial and cover many areas, underpinned by the High-level Political Consultative Forum, which provides a platform for the two countries to explore the deepening of relations across the spectrum of South Africa's national priorities, political cooperation, the strengthening of trade and investment and

development cooperation.

A bilateral at Senior Official's level (SOM at DG level) was held on 22 and 23 October 2017 in Portugal. This is held on a biannual basis. A bilateral agreement was signed between the Department of Science and Technology and their Portuguese counterpart in 2015 and entered into force during the second half of 2017. At the SOM, it was agreed that an executive framework on implementation is in process.

By mid-2018, approximately 200 South African students were pursuing tertiary education vin arious fields in Portugal.

Holy See

South Africa opened a Mission at the Holy See during 2017. The Holy SEE is of strategic importance politically and in respect of Human Rights and International Humanitarian Law.

Central, Eastern Europe, Nordic And Baltic Countries

Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys good relations with all the Nordic and Baltic countries flowing from the strong grassroots support of these countries for democratisation in South Africa.

Relations have been established in various fields at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development cooperation is broad and has benefited civil society and government. Although Nordic countries stopped providing development assistance to South Africa in 2009, these countries continue to provide technical support and also partner with the South African Government and civil society in addressing development needs in various fields.

Relations in the international arena have seen close cooperation on multilateral issues. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of NEPAD and are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa.

This was reinforced by the signing of the Declaration of Intent on Partnerships in Africa in June 2008, which laid a framework for future trilateral cooperation.

Denmark

The bilateral relations between South Africa and Denmark are predicated on the historic Danish support and solidarity with the liberation struggle against apartheid in the early 1960's, leading to the eventual establishment of formal diplomatic relations at the advent of South Africa's democracy.

South Africa has close relations with Denmark dating back to the constant and strong support for democracy in South Africa. Bilateral political relations are warm and sound.

Denmark is also an important partner with regard to overseas development. South Africa's relations with Denmark are coordinated through the South Africa-Denmark Senior Officials Consultations and the main areas of cooperation include water-resource management, science and technology, maritime affairs, and environmental affairs.

Denmark supports South Africa in achieving the objectives of the NDP and National Water & Sanitation Master Plan (NW&SMP).

The Strategic Water Sector Programme addresses issues of financing and research and innovation. Other areas of support include exchange of expertise on affordable and clean energy and sustainable cities and communities.

Estonia

There is no resident Estonian Mission in South Africa, and the South African Embassy in Finland is also accredited to Estonia on a non-residential basis.

The ICT sector, Science and Technology and Tourism have been identified as potential areas for strategic bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Estonia.

Finland

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Finland were re-established in 1994. The bilateral relationship was given more definite structure with the signing of the Declaration of Intent at the Skagen Nordic Summit in 2000. Regular bilateral consultations are co-ordinated at Senior Officials' level.

The main areas of co-operation include education and skills development with special emphasis on the maritime sector and cooperation in the field of science, technology and innovation.

The blue economy is central to both countries and is also emphasised as an area with potential for future partnerships.

Finland supports Africa's infrastructure development through its funding of the EU-Africa Infrastructure Trust Fund.

It also supports the implementation of the Joint Africa-EU Strategy by promoting four of the eight thematic partnerships of the joint strategy in Africa; namely, peace and security, democratic governance and human rights, climate change and science, information society and space.

Iceland

Formal diplomatic relations were established in 1995 at an Ambassadorial level on a non-residential basis. The South African Embassy in Norway is accredited to Iceland on a non-resident basis.

In terms of trade cooperation, South Africa's exports to Iceland amount to R78 million and the Iceland's exports to South Africa amount to R70 million.

Latvia

Full diplomatic relations were established later in 1991. The South African Embassy in Sweden is accredited to Latvia on a non-residential basis. In terms of trade cooperation, South African exports to Latvia in 2017 were R 584 million and imports from Latvia amounted to R 638 million.

Lithuania

South Africa and Lithuania entered into diplomatic relations in 2008 and the first Lithuanian Ambassador to South Africa was appointed in 2015. The South African Embassy in Sweden is accredited to Lithuania.

Relations between South Africa and Lithuania are coordinated at Senior Officials level. The main areas of cooperation between South Africa and Lithuania include Trade and Investment, Energy, Transport, Science and Technology and Academic and Cultural cooperation.

Norway

South Africa opened a Consulate General in Oslo in September 1988 while Norway already had a Consulate General in Cape Town. On 1 January 1992, diplomatic relations were upgraded to ambassadorial level.

South Africa and Norway have a history of working together in the promotion of democracy; good governance and human rights. Both countries cooperate and support each other in bilateral and multilateral relations.

South Africa's relations with Norway are coordinated through the South Africa-Norway High Level Consultations.

South Africa and Norway cooperate in the field of Peace Building and Mediation. The Programme focusses on building capacities for female mediators in conflict situations.

Training provided includes women in Government and non-government organisations. In the area of the Blue Economy, South Africa and Norway have established a Fisheries Law Enforcement Academy at Nelson Mandela University (NMU) called FishFORCE.

The Norwegian Government has committed an amount of approximately R50 million (over the next five years) to the Academy. In the area of Science and Technology, South Africa and Norway have signed a new framework programme for joint research cooperation, referred to as "South Africa-Norway research co-operation, focusing on blue economy, climate change, the environment and sustainable energy (SANOCEAN). (The programme will run over a period of five years, starting from 2018 to 2023.

Sweden

Formal relations between Sweden and South Africa date back to the 1930s when a South African legation was opened in Stockholm. Relations were upgraded to Ambassadorial level in 1994. Bilateral Relations are coordinated through the South Africa – Swedish BNC, which was inaugurated in September 2000 by then President Thabo Mbeki and Prime Minister Göran Persson.

Areas of cooperation include science and technology, maritime affairs, and environmental affairs.

South Africa's relations with Sweden are coordinated through the South Africa-Sweden BNC at Deputy President's level and the main areas of cooperation.

The Swedish government has extended the 30 fully funded scholarships for South Africans to pursue post-graduate studies in Sweden until 2021. The programme offers 10 scholarships per annum over a period of three academic years.

Eastern Europe

The Eastern Europe region is of crucial importance to South Africa's strategic objectives, straddling a wide spectrum of political and economic interests.

The region is well endowed with strategic commodities and minerals that are of vital significance to South Africa's economy.

Cooperation in gas and oil and energy can go a long way towards alleviating South Africa's energy needs.

Azerbaijan

South Africa and Azerbaijan established diplomatic relations in 1991. The South African Embassy in Ankara is also accredited to the Republic of Azerbaijan on a non- residential basis.

Structured bilateral relations were established by means of an MoU on Regular Diplomatic Consultations that was concluded between South Africa and Azerbaijan on 21 February 2014. The MoU on Regular Diplomatic Consultations provides for the strengthening and broadening of the scope of bilateral co-operation in the political, economic, scientific, technological, cultural and humanitarian areas. Other areas of potential interests are energy, defence and air services.

Belarus

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Belarus were established in March 1993. Currently the South African Ambassador to the Russian Federation is the non-residential Ambassador to the Republic of Belarus. Belarus opened its Embassy in South Africa in January 2000 and the first South African Ambassador presented credentials in February 2000.

South Africa and Belarus mainly engage through the Inter-Governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation (ITEC) led by the Department of Trade and Industry.

ITEC is co-chaired at the level of Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs on the Belarusian side and at the Deputy Minister of the dti on the South African side.

The primary objective of ITEC is to strengthen and develop trade and economic cooperation on a long term and stable basis and on the principles of equality and mutual benefit.

Georgia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Georgia were established in 1992. The South African Embassy in Kyiv, Ukraine, is non-residentially accredited to Georgia. The Government of Georgia opened an Embassy in August 2011 in Pretoria.

The two countries have good bilateral relations and have been cooperating mainly through sport, culture and in the agricultural sector especially through wine making exchange programmes.

Through joint efforts, Georgian and South African links are deepening through increased interactions in culture and sports, such as rugby.

The two countries have established a Wine Makers exchange programme which has seen student and expert exchanges between Telavi State University (Faculty of Agra-Sciences) and the University of Stellenbosch (Faculty of Wine Sciences) During 2017 South African wine makers participated in the Georgia harvest season.

Russian Federation

South Africa regards the Russian Federation as an important strategic partner and close bilateral and multilateral ties exist between the two countries.

With the dissolution of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, South Africa became the first African state to recognise the independence of the Russian Federation. Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and the Russian Federation in February 1992.

Since the re-establishment of bilateral relations, South Africa's relations with Russia have evolved into a strategic relationship over the past few years through continued high level political engagements.

One of the primary mechanisms for improving the bilateral relationship and advancing the Government's development objectives is the Inter-Governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Co-operation (ITEC) which was established in 1999 The ITEC is the most important mechanism underpinning mutually beneficial trade and economic ties between the two countries.

ITEC has proven to be an effective instrument for effective engagement on trade and investment issues, as well as critical skills and technology transfers amongst others. ITEC has given practical substance to the political commitment on the part of the two countries to work together, as expressed in the Treaty of Friendship and Partnership signed by both countries.

Sectors covered within ITEC include Agriculture; Forestry and Fisheries; Energy; Education; Mineral Resources; Science and Technology; Transport; Water and Sanitation; Trade and Industry and the South Africa –Russia Business Council.

Further substance has been added to the growing relationship through the South Africa – Russia Friendship and Cooperation Agreement which was signed in 2006 and a Declaration on Strategic Partnership between the Republic of South Africa and the Russian Federation was signed in March 2013.

Serbia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Serbia were established in April 2002 when Serbia was still referred to as the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia.

Serbia regards South Africa as a strategic partner on the African Continent, a regional power and a leading economy that is playing a positive role in promoting peace, security and sustainable development in Africa.

South Africa's contribution to the advancement of multilateralism, the rule of law, human rights and an equitable global governance system is similarly appreciated.

Serbia opened its Embassy in Pretoria in June 1996. The South African Ambassador in Athens, Greece, is accredited to the Republic of Serbia on a non-resident basis.

Areas of cooperation are based on shared interests between the two countries, including consolidation of peace and security, the establishment of democratic values and observance of human rights as embodied in the UN Charter.

Turkey

The South Africa-Turkey strategic partnership is informed by the two countries' growing political and economic profile and their geostrategic location in Africa and Euro – Asia; Turkey's rapidly growing political and economic footprint in Africa, including the Africa-Turkey strategic partnership; the two countries' capacity to project their foreign policies regionally and globally; active participation and membership in various organisations such as the G20 and the UN.

Relations between South Africa and Turkey had since 2005 been co-ordinated through the South Africa-Turkey Joint Economic Commission (JEC).

An Agreement to elevate the relations to a BNC at Deputy President and Prime Minister levels respectively, was signed in Turkey on 7 June 2012 and ratified by the Turkish Parliament in July 2015.

On the economic front, Economic Relations between South Africa and Turkey are coordinated through the SA-Turkey JEC, led by the South African Minister of Trade and Industry on the South African side.

The primary objective of the JEC, which was established in 2005, is to promote and deepen bilateral trade relations and economic between the two countries.

The priority sectors for the JEC include Agriculture and Agri-business; automotives; infrastructure, energy and construction services; minerals resources; textile and clothing; as well as tourism.

Ukraine

Diplomatic relations between Ukraine and South Africa were established in March 1992. South Africa opened its Embassy in Kiev during October 1992 whilst Ukraine opened its Embassy in Pretoria during 1995.

The 16th of March 2017 marked the 25 years of the existence of diplomatic relations between the two countries. Both countries enjoy good bilateral relations.

Cooperation between the two countries is guided through regular Senior Officials' Political Consultations. Areas of cooperation between South Africa and Ukraine include Military Cooperation, Education and Science and Technology.

Central Europe

Central Europe has seen substantial improvement in relations with South Africa. A number of bilateral mechanisms with these countries were established at various levels.

The areas of cooperation have been considerable in, inter alia, the fields of Education, Arts and Culture, Science and Technology, Agriculture, Water Affairs, Trade, Tourism. South Africa works very closely with Central European countries on multilateral forums.

Bulgaria

South Africa and Bulgaria have maintained cordial and warm relations dating back to the liberation struggle as Bulgaria hosted a number of anti-apartheid activists.

Diplomatic relations at the level of Ambassador were established through the exchange of Notes in February 1992 and the South African Embassy in Sofia started functioning in 1992, while the Bulgarian Embassy in Pretoria was opened in February 1993.

During the history of formal relations, a number of official delegations were exchanged including the visit of the former Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, in 2011 and that of the Premier of the Free State in 2015. Key areas of cooperation between South Africa and Bulgaria are in the fields of Education and Agriculture.

Croatia

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Croatia have developed steadily since diplomatic relations were established in 1992. The South African Embassy in Hungary is accredited to Croatia whilst Croatia opened its Embassy in Pretoria in November 1995.

Bilateral relations between the two countries are co-ordinated at the level of Senior Officials with emphasis in various areas such as marine technology, higher education and training, science and technology, and tourism.

Czech Republic

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Czech Republic were established in 1991 and resident Embassies in each other's capitals were established soon after.

Bilateral relations have evolved to a level of maturity, underpinned by increasing commercial and business-to-business activities, as well as people-to-people exchanges.

Political consultations are coordinated at Deputy Ministerial level. Areas of cooperation between the two countries include tourism, defence, medical equipment, pharmaceuticals and agro-processing.

Hungary

Hungary was the first, among the Central European countries, to establish diplomatic ties with South Africa. Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Hungary were established in July 1991.

Both countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Hungary and South Africa cooperate in the fields of Education, Science and Technology. The co-operation on Higher Education and Training came into effect in 2016.

The first 85 students travelled to Hungary in August 2017 to study in various fields and at various levels of Bachelors, Masters and PhD.

The two countries also signed a bilateral agreement in the field of Water Resource Management in May 2017.

Poland

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Czech Republic were concluded on 18 December 1991 and Embassies were opened in each capital.

Political Consultations between the two countries were established thereafter and are co-ordinated at the Deputy Minister's level. Poland, with a population of 38 million people, is the 6th largest economy in the EU.

South Africa is Poland's top trade partner in Africa. Areas of co-operation between Poland and South Africa include aeronautics, automotives, defence and agriculture.

Tourism from Poland to South Africa has increased by 8.2% in 2016 and Poland now is the most important source of tourists to South Africa from Central and Eastern Europe.

Romania

South Africa and Romania established diplomatic relations in November 1991. The formal mechanism, legalising bilateral political consultations on an institutionalised basis between South Africa and Romania, was signed in September 2016. The protocol is crucial in strengthening bilateral relations as well as providing a political framework for other agreements and commitments.

South Africa and Romania signed an Agreement in the field of Science and Technology in September 2004. The partnership has successfully contributed to scientific advancement in both countries .

Other areas of cooperation between South Africa and Romania include energy, mining, agriculture, and marine technology.

Slovakia

Full diplomatic relations between the former Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia and South Africa were established in October 1991.

The dissolution of the Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia brought about the Slovak Republic as a separate sovereign state in 1993.

The bilateral diplomatic relations entered into with the Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia continued uninterrupted with the Slovak Republic. South Africa's bilateral relations with Slovakia are sound.

Whilst South Africa does not have an Embassy in Bratislava, South Africa's relations with Slovakia are managed on a non-resident basis by the South African Embassy in Vienna.

Areas of co-operation between South Africa and Slovakia are in the fields of automotives (including automotive components), agro-processing, medical equipment and pharmaceuticals.

Slovenia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Slovenia were established in 1992. However, both countries do not have resident diplomatic representation in each other's country.

Both countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Bilateral relations between the two countries exist at the level of Senior Officials with meeting taking place alternatively every two years.

Mexico

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Mexico are good and the two countries work closely together in multilateral forums on issues such as South-South cooperation and nuclear disarmament. South Africa is Mexico's biggest trading partner in Africa.

Latin America and the Caribbean

South Africa's bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean continue to advance the development agenda of the South, and strengthen cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, inter-regional and multilateral levels.

In this regard, the need to build stronger and balanced relationships with Latin American and Caribbean countries is of particular importance. South Africa has observer status in the Caribbean Community and Common Market (Caricom) and acts as the region's voice in the G20.

In June 2015, Deputy Minister Landers engaged with the heads of mission (ambassadors, high commissioners and/or their representatives) of the Latin America and Caribbean Group (GRULAC) accredited to South Africa in a discussion forum.

The discussions focused on opportunities for South Africa in Latin America and explored ways to expand relations between South Africa and GRULAC.

Brazil

The presidents of South Africa and Brazil meet regularly to discuss issues of mutual interest. South Africa maintains the view that the Rio+20 Conference, which took place in Brazil, helped to ensure that the issue of sustainable development remained a top priority on the agenda of the UN and the international community. .

Argentina

Argentina is South Africa's third-largest trading partner in the Latin American and Caribbean region after Brazil and Mexico. Regular ministerial meetings ensure continuous improvement in bilateral ties.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean. The majority of inhabitants of the Caribbean are of

African descent and have strong historical and cultural links to the continent.

South Africa's endeavour in conjunction with the AU and Caricom to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations. South Africa attaches importance to strengthening its relations with the Caribbean and developing common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial North, reform of international institutions and promoting the development agenda and protection of small island states.

Uruguay, Chile and Colombia

South Africa and Chile enjoy sound bilateral relations, which are conducted through the JCM at deputy ministerial level.

The JCM continues to serve a constructive purpose in the ongoing political dialogue between the two countries at bilateral, regional and multilateral levels.

South Africa is Chile's largest trading partner in Africa and South Africa is the biggest investor in Chile's mining sector. The biggest area of trade between South Africa and Chile is capital goods for mining.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Colombia are cordial and growing.

Peru

South Africa is one of the largest investors in Peru, with SABMiller and Anglo American operating in that country.

The main South African exports to Peru are mining equipment, paper and carton, metal sheeting and specialised structural steel.

A group comprising of 18 South African exporters of mining equipment and related services showcased their products at the 2017 Perumin Mining Convention from 18 to 25 September 2017 in Arequipa, Peru.

The convention takes place bi-annually and brings together the world's leading technology and services in the mining and metals sector. South Africa's participation will focus on machinery, equipment, technologies, services and supplies for the mining sector.

Venezuela

Minister Sisulu, on 6 July 2018, hosted the Venezuelan Minister of Foreign Affairs, Jorge Arreaza.

The visit took place after the Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela held its Presidential elections on 20 May 2018, which saw the re-election of President Nicolas Maduro as the Head of State and the re-appointment of Minister Arreaza to the portfolio of Foreign Affairs.

The visit was an opportunity to continue to strengthen the existing bilateral relations between South Africa and Venezuela, specifically in the areas of trade and investment; agriculture; energy; transport; mining, tourism and consular matters as the identified areas of focus for the relationship.

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela were established in 1993 and in 1995. The two countries share cordial relations premised on mainly political relations.

Cuba

Cuba remains a strategic partner of South Africa and the region.

In October 2017, Deputy Minister Landers travelled to Cuba to co-chair the 14th South Africa-Cuba Joint Consultative Mechanism (JCM). Deputy Minister Landers also met the Cuban Deputy Minister of Foreign Trade and Cooperation.

The JCM convenes annually, alternately in South Africa and Cuba. The JCM was established in 2001 to strengthen relations and further increase cooperation between the two countries.

This meeting serves to affirm the importance of bilateral relations between South Africa and Cuba and emphasise a desire to build on existing cooperation at various levels.

Relations between South Africa and Cuba are characterised by high-level political dialogues.

There are over 30 signed bilateral agreements in place between the two countries covering vast areas of cooperation. The most active of these agreements are in the areas of health cooperation, human settlements technical exchange, public works technical assistance, cooperation on water resource management and water supply and most recently, the agreement on professional services in the field of basic education.

In April 2018, President Ramaphosa congratulated the new President of the Republic of Cuba, His Excellency Miguel Diaz-Canel, after the Cuban National Assembly of People's Power announced on 19 April 2018 that First Vice President Miguel Diaz-Canel will replace President Raul Castro as the President of the Council of State and of the country.

In July 2018, Minister Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma attended the graduation ceremony of 700 medical students from the Nelson Mandela-Fidel Castro (NMFC) Programme in Cuba

The programme was forged by President Nelson Mandela and Fidel Castro in 1996 as part of the various bilateral agreements between South Africa and Cuba.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Justice and Correctional Services

The National Development Plan (NDP) highlights the need for Government to ensure that all people in South Africa are and feel safe. The NDP also emphasises that public confidence in the criminal justice system (CJS) is the most effective deterrent to criminality.

The DoJ&CD works closely with the Department of Correctional Services (DCS).

Until 1990, the two departments functioned as one entity. In late-1990, Government announced that it planned to introduce extensive reforms in the prison system.

The Prison Service was separated from the Department of Justice and renamed as the Department of Correctional Services. This triggered important changes to prison legislation.

An important milestone in this period was the introduction of the concept of dealing with certain categories of offenders within the community rather than inside prison – a system known as non-custodial "correctional supervision". This was introduced as a more cost-effective way of dealing with offenders and a response to overcrowding, as well as dealing with prisoners in a way more suited to the country's prioritisation of human rights.

In 2014, the two department were merged to become the Department of Justice and Correctional services on a ministerial level, yet still functioning as seperate departments in practice as well as when reporting in official capacity and in legislative terms.

In line with the NDP, government's Medium Term Strategic Framework 2014 – 2019 places the onus on the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DoJ&CD) to implement practical, short and medium-term measures to address backlogs in court cases and improve the all-round performance of the courts over the medium term.

The department's spending over the medium term will thus be focused on improving physical access to courts, including the rationalisation of magisterial districts and the alignment of the jurisdiction of magistrates' courts, and on improving services in courts.

The department also supports the NDP's vision of building a capable state, and to this end it will be re-engineering state legal services.

Department of Justice and Constitutional Development

In line with the NDP, government's Medium Term Strategic Framework 2014 – 2019 places the onus on the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DoJ&CD) to implement practical, short and medium-term measures to address backlogs in court cases and improve the all-round performance of the courts over the medium term.

The department's spending over the medium term will thus be focused on improving physical access to courts, including the rationalisation of magisterial districts and the alignment of the jurisdiction of magistrates' courts, and on improving services in courts.

The department also supports the NDP's vision of building a capable state, and to this end it will be re-engineering state legal services.

The DoJ&CD's plays a major and direct role in implementing the "safety for all" mandate of the NDP, which deals with the following, among other things:

- building safer communities
- promoting accountability and fighting corruption
- focusing on social protection matters
- focusing on transforming society and uniting the country.

In line with Chapter 13 and Chapter 14 of the NDP, the department has also included targets that cover departmental interventions regarding human capital development and targets to mitigate fraud and corruption, which include fraud and corruption awareness sessions and finalising the process of reviewing the Protected Disclosures Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000).

Legislation and policies

The following instruments of legislation are relevant to the successful functioning of the DoJ&CD:

- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the superior courts, magistrates' courts and special courts: the Constitutional Court Complementary Act, 1995 (Act 13 of 1995), the Supreme Court Act, 1959 (Act 59 of 1959), the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act 32 of 1944), and the Small Claims Court Act, 1984 (Act 61 of 1984).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of judges and other judicial officers, the conditions of service, discipline and training: the Judges Remuneration and Conditions of Employment Act, 2001 (Act 47 of 2001), the Judicial Service Commission (JSC) Act, 1994 (Act 9 of 1994) as amended, the South African Judicial Education Institute (SAJEI) Act, 2008 (Act 14 of 2008), and the Magistrates' Act, 1993 (Act 90 of 1993).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU); the conduct of criminal proceedings; the investigation of organised crime and corruption; and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means: the NPA Act, 1998 (Act 32 of 1998), the Criminal Procedure Act (CPA), 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), the Prevention of Organised Crime Act (POCA), 1998 (Act 121 of 1998), the Special Investigating Unit and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act 74 of 1996), and the Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule-making: the Legal Aid Act, 1969 (Act 22 of 1969), the South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC) Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973), and the Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985 (Act 107 of 1985).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of Masters of the High Court and the administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates: the Administration of Estates Act, 1965 (Act 66 of 1965), and the Insolvency Act, 1936 (Act 24 of 1936).
- Legislation regulating the provisioning of legal advisory services to government departments: the State Attorney Act, 1957 (Act 56 of 1957).
- Legislation relating to the promotion, protection and enforcement of certain human rights: the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000), the Promotion of Access to Information Act (PAIA), 2000 (Act 2 of 2000), and the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000), better known as the Equality Act of 2000.
- Legislation pertaining to the protection of vulnerable groups: the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and

Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), the Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act 99 of 1998), and the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998).
- Legislation providing support to Chapter 9 institutions: the Human Rights Commission Act, 1994 (Act 54 of 1994), and the Public Protector Act, 1994 (Act 23 of 1994).
- Legislation regulating the management and control of public expenditure: the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).
- Legislation regulating operations in the Public Service: the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended.
- Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 6 of 2012).
- Criminal Procedure Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 9 of 2012).
- Judicial Matters Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 11 of 2012).
- Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 20 of 2012).
- Sheriffs Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 14 of 2012).
- The Criminal Law Special Investigating Unit (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill 2013 paves the way to regulate and promote the use of DNA in combating crime, taking into account constitutional requirements. The use of DNA evidence holds the potential to alleviate bottlenecks in the CJS. Maximising the use of DNA evidence promotes fairness, confidence and certainty in the administration of South Africa's laws.
- The Constitution 17th Amendment Act of 2013 is implemented with the Superior Courts Act, 2013 (Act 10 of 2013), which repeals the Supreme Court Act of 1959.
- The Legal Practice Act, 2014 (Act 28 of 2014) establishes a new regulatory framework for the profession, enhances opportunities to enhance access to services of attorneys and advocates, and creates mechanisms to address the spiralling cost of litigation.

New legislation

Legislation that was finalised during the 2017/18 financial year included the following:
- The Protected Disclosures Amendment Act, 2017 (Act 5 of 2017), which was assented to in August 2017 and aims to give greater protection to whistle-blowers in the workplace by extending the application of the Protected Disclosures Act beyond the traditional employer and employee relationship. It also criminalises deliberate false disclosures.
- The Courts of Law Amendment Act, 2017 (Act 7 of 2017) protects the poor from actions of unscrupulous persons in the debt-collection industry. By aligning the 1944 Magistrates' Courts Act with the requirements of a Constitutional Court judgment affecting emolument attachment orders (EAOs), the Courts of Law Amendment Act seeks to ensure that presiding officers considering issuing an EAO take account of factors such as the size of a debt, the circumstances in which it arose, available alternative recovery options, a judgment debtor's income; the rights and needs of vulnerable people and children likely to be affected by an EAO and how much of the debtor's income is required to meet basic living expenses and those of his/her dependents.

Legislation that was under consideration by the end of the 2017/18 financial year included the Traditional Courts Bill, the Prevention and Combating of Hate Crimes and Hate Speech Bill and the Cybercrimes and Cybersecurity Bill.

Upcoming Bills for tabling in Parliament during the 2017/18 financial year

- The Lower Courts Bill, which aims to further regulate the structure and functioning of the lower courts and will replace the Magistrates' Court Act of 1944 and the Magistrates' Act of 1993.
- Magistrates' Remuneration and Conditions of Employment Bill, which aims to regulate the appointment, remuneration and conditions of service of judicial officers in the lower courts.
- The International Arbitration Bill, which aims to introduce a legislative framework that can be used by business to resolve their international commercial disputes and in terms of which parties can obtain arbitral awards that are legally enforceable. It is envisaged that the Bill will contribute to increased economic growth and investment as well as to build a positive image of South Africa in the rest of the world.
- The Protected Disclosures Amendment Bill, which is intended to provide greater protection to persons who report improprieties or irregularities in the workplace.

Human rights

The Bill of Rights is the cornerstone of South Africa's democracy. It enshrines the rights of all people in South Africa and affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom. While every person is entitled to these rights, they also have a responsibility to respect them.

The Bill of Rights binds the legislature, the executive, judiciary and all organs of State.

The rights contained in the Bill of Rights are subject to the limitations contained in or referred to in Section 36 of the Constitution, or elsewhere in the Bill of Rights.

They apply to all laws, administrative decisions taken and acts performed during the period in which the Constitution is in force. In terms of the Constitution, every person has basic human rights such as:
- equality before the law and equal protection and benefit of the law
- freedom from unfair discrimination
- the right to life
- the right to human dignity
- the right to freedom and security.

Budget and funding

The department's budget allocation for the 2017/18 financial year was R18.8 billion.

The number of posts is expected to be 27 374 at most in 2018/19. The DoJ&CD received increases in compensation of employees of R208 million in 2016/17, R543 million in 2017/18 and R669 million in 2018/19 towards the costs of the 2015 public sector wage agreement.

However, Cabinet approved budget reductions in compensation of employees of R429 million in 2017/18 and R671 million in 2018/19 as part of its decision to lower the national aggregate expenditure ceiling.

After consultation with the Department of Public Service and Administration and National Treasury, the department will develop and implement a plan to manage its personnel expenditure within its reduced personnel budget.

Role players

Legal Aid SA (LASA)

LASA is mandated to ensure access to justice and the realisation of the people's rights to have legal representation as envisaged in the Constitution.

To this end, LASA has identified the following priority groups: children's matters; detained persons, including sentenced prisoners; accused persons who wish to appeal or review a court's decision in a higher court; women, particularly in divorce, maintenance and domestic violence cases; and the landless, especially in eviction cases.

LASA met more than 90% of the set targets in the Business Plan for 2017/18 and spent 98.7% of the approved budget. Its staff establishment was reduced by 3.6% from 2 863 to 2 761, mainly due to budgetary constraints. The organisation was named a Top Employer in South Africa for the ninth consecutive year, as well as Industry Leader in the Public Sector for the third consecutive year as a measure of excellence in people management.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU is a public entity with powers of both investigation and litigation. Following the issuing of a presidential proclamation by the President, the SIU has powers to subpoena, search, seize and interrogate witnesses under oath.

The SIU was created in terms of the Special Investigating Unit and Special Tribunals Act of 1996. The SIU functions in a manner similar to a commission of inquiry in that the President refers cases to it by issuing a proclamation.

It may investigate any matter set out in Section 2 of the Special Investigating Unit and Special Tribunals Act of 1996, including:

- serious maladministration in connection with the affairs of any State institution
- improper or unlawful conduct by employees of any State institution
- unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property
- any unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice that has a bearing on State property
- intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property
- corruption in connection with the affairs of any State institution
- unlawful or improper conduct by any person who has cause or may cause serious harm to the interest of the public or any category thereof.

The SIU can also take civil action to correct any wrongdoing it discovers during an investigation. For example, it can obtain a court order to:

- compel a person to pay back any wrongful benefit received
- cancel contracts when the proper procedures were not followed
- stop transactions or other actions that were not properly authorised.

The SIU litigates its cases in the Special Tribunal, a specialised court that deals specifically with its cases. This avoids some of the delays usually associated with civil litigation.

Where criminal conduct is uncovered, it will bring the matter to the attention of its partners, the Hawks, an independent directorate in the South African Police Service (SAPS), as well as the NPA. It works closely with these institutions to ensure that there is an effective investigation and prosecution.

The SIU also works closely with the AFU in the NPA, where its powers are more appropriate or effective in recovering the proceeds of crime.

During the 2017/18 fiancial year:

- A total of 1 556 investigations closed out under a published proclamation.
- 15 final investigation reports were submitted to The Presidency.
- R299 million of money and/or assets potentially recoverable.
- R34 million of money and/or assets actually recovered.
- R407 million of potential loss prevented.
- The value of R 797 million of contract(s) and/or administrative decision(s)/ action(s) set aside or deemed invalid.
- The value of R2,7 billion of matters in respect of which evidence was referred for the institution or defence/opposition of civil proceedings (including arbitration or counter civil proceedings).

South African Law Reform Commission

The SALRC is a statutory body established in terms of the SALRC Act of 1973.

The mission of the SALRC is the continuous reform of the law of South Africa in accordance with the principles and values of the Constitution to meet the needs of a changing society operating under the rule of law.

The objectives of the commission are to do research with reference to all branches of the law of the country and to study and investigate all such branches to make recommendations for the development, improvement, modernisation or reform thereof.

The SALRC is chaired by a judge and consists of members from the judiciary, legal professions and academic institutions. It conducts research with reference to all branches of South African law to make recommendations to government for the development, improvement, modernisation or reform of the law. This includes the following functions:

- repealing obsolete or unnecessary provisions
- removing anomalies
- bringing about uniformity in the law
- consolidating or codifying any branch of the law
- making common law more readily available.

To achieve its objectives, the SALRC investigates matters appearing on a programme approved by the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development. Reports and other documents published by the commission are made available on the SALRC website for general information.

During the 2017/18 financial year, 16 research papers were completed and submitted to the SALRC) for consideration and approval. These included the:

- Discussion Paper on Project 25: Statutory Law Revision: Review of Legislation Administered by the South African Police Services.
- Draft report on Project 25: The Review of Legislation Administered by the Department of Public Service and Administration.
- Draft report on Project 138: The Practice of Ukuthwala.
- Draft report on Project 25: The Review of Legislation Administered by the Department of Social Development.

- Draft report on Project 25: The Review of Legislation Administered by the Department of Trade and Industry.
- Report on Project 25: Statutory Law Revision: Review of Legislation Administered by the Department of Arts and Culture.
- Report on Project 137: Review of the Expungement of Certain Criminal Records.
- Report on Project 139: Review of the Interpretation Act 33 of 1957.
- Issue Paper on Project 140 on the Right to Knowledge of One' s Own Biological Origins.
- Issue Paper on Project 141 on Medico-legal Claims.
- Issue Paper on Project 100: Review of Aspects of Matrimonial Property Law.
- Proposal Paper on Project 143: Maternity and Paternity Benefits for Self-employed Workers.
- Proposal Paper on Preliminary Investigation into the Regulatory, Compliance and Reporting Burden on Local Government.
- Proposal Paper on Preliminary Investigation into the Position of Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender and Intersex (LGBTI) Persons who are Incarcerated.
- Proposal Paper on the Development of Criminal Sanctions for Breach of the Constitution.
- Preliminary Investigation Proposal Paper on Judicial Interruption of Extinctive Prescription.

National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa

The NPA was established in 1998 and comprises the National Director, deputy national directors of public prosecutions, special directors and other members of the prosecuting authority appointed at or assigned to the NPA, and members of the administrative staff.

The NPA has the power to:

- institute and conduct criminal proceedings on behalf of the State
- carry out any necessary functions incidental to instituting and conducting such criminal proceedings (this includes investigation)
- discontinue criminal proceedings.

The deputy national directors of public prosecutions are responsible for the following divisions:

- National Prosecuting Service (NPS)
- AFU
- Legal Affairs
- Administration and Office for Witness Protection (OWP).

Special directors of public prosecution head the following specialised units:

- Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit (SOCA)
- Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU)
- Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU)

The NPA continued to provide a coordinated prosecution service, ensuring that justice is delivered to the victims of crime through general and specialized prosecutions; that profit is removed from crime and that witnesses and related persons are protected

The period 2017/18 was characterized by excellent performance in many spheres of the organization, notwithstanding the budgetary and resource constraints, which remain a challenge. Increased focus in the fight against crime, especially government priorities, remained a focal point for the organization.

Great strides have been made to ensure that high conviction rates were maintained and improved on, in all court forums.

Historically, the high courts have fluctuated from 91% in 2014/15, 89.9% in 2015/16, back to 91% in 2016/17 and then to 91.7% for the period 2017/18 against a target of 87%.

The regional courts have also gradually increased from 76.6% in 2014/15 to 78.4% in 2015/16, 80% in 2016/17 and 81% in 2017/18 against a target of 74%.

In the district courts, the DoJCD increased its performance from 94.2% in 2014/15 to 94.7% and 95.6% in the years thereafter, with 96.1% in 2017/18 against a target of 88%.

National Prosecuting Service

The NPS is a division of the NPA managing the performance of directors of public prosecutions and lower courts countrywide.

All the public prosecutors and state advocates manning the district, regional and high courts report to the directors of public prosecutions in their respective areas of jurisdiction.

Office for Witness Protection

Under the auspices of the NPA, the OWP provides specialised services to all law enforcement agencies in South Africa, the NPA and any judicial proceedings. The OWP provides the following:

- assistance and cooperation to other countries, tribunals and special courts in the field of witness protection
- support services to vulnerable and intimidated witnesses and related persons in any judicial proceedings and in the CJS.

All OWP functions and duties are classified secret in terms of the Witness Protection Act of 1998.

The OWP maintained its performance record for the last 17 years in ensuring that no witnesses and
related persons were harmed, threatened or killed whilst on the witness protection programme.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU was established in May 1999 as a division of the NPA to focus on the implementation of Chapter 5 and Chapter 6 of the POCA of 1998. The AFU was created to ensure that the powers in the Act to seize criminal assets would be used to their maximum effect in the fight against crime, in particular organised crime.

The AFU has set itself a number of key strategic objectives, namely to:

- develop the law by taking test cases to court and creating the legal precedents that are necessary to allow the effective use of the law
- build the capacity to ensure that asset forfeiture is used as widely as possible to make a real impact in the fight against crime
- make an impact on selected categories of priority crimes
- establish a national presence
- establish excellent relationships with its key partners, especially the SAPS, and the South African Revenue Service (SARS)
- build the AFU into a professional and representative organisation.

The AFU continued to play a critical role in the fight against

corruption and has delivered significant returns in the past few years showing that crime does not pay.

In the endeavour to curb the increase of corruption, the AFU obtained freezing orders to the value of R4.4 billion. An amount of R3.8 billion relating to corruption was frozen where the amount involved is more than R5 million.

Recoveries in terms of the POCA to the value of R302.8 million were also recorded during the financial year. In line with its operational plan, the AFU has adopted a strategy that not only seeks to extend the footprint of asset forfeiture in the fight against crime, but one that also seeks to deliver maximum impact in several identified focus areas. An overall success rate of 99,1% was recorded in the AFU.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

A division of the NPA, the SCCU's mandate is to prosecute complex commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS. The client base of the unit comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

The SCCU obtained a conviction rate of 94.1% in relation to complex commercial crime matters over the last year against a target of 93%.

Special focus was once again placed on the prosecution of cybercrime cases to curb this growing international phenomenon.

This is evident in the conviction rate of 98,5% in the prosecution of cybercrime cases which should be viewed against the nature and complexity of these crimes and the high level of technical evidence required in the prosecution of cybercrime cases.

Organised crime prosecution achieved a conviction rate of 93,8% and the number of convictions (346) exceeded the annual expectations of 269 convictions.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The PCLU is mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. It was created by presidential proclamation, falling under the NPA, and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director of Public Prosecutions.

The primary function of the PCLU is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the following areas:

- the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological)
- the regulation of conventional military arms
- the regulation of mercenary and related activities
- the International Court created by the Statute of Rome
- national and international terrorism
- prosecution of persons who were refused or failed to apply for amnesty in terms of the TRC processes.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

SOCA is a division of the NPA that acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. The unit develops strategy and policy, and oversees the management of cases relating to sexual offences, domestic violence, human trafficking, maintenance offences and children in conflict with the law.

SOCA aims to:

- improve the conviction rate in gender-based crimes and crimes against children
- protect vulnerable groups from abuse and violence
- ensure access to maintenance support
- reduce secondary victimisation.

One of the SOCA's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and gender-based violence (GBV) is the establishment of Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs).

TCCs are one-stop facilities located in public hospitals in communities where the incidence of sexual assault is particularly high. These one-stop facilities are aimed at reducing secondary victimisation, improving conviction rates and reducing the cycle time for the finalisation of rape cases.

Increased focus was placed on sexual offences and gender based violence matters. The improved conviction rate in sexual offences of 72,7% is an all-time high, reflecting a firm commitment to deliver justice for the most vulnerable members of society: the victims of sexual offences and GBV.

The SOCA unit established 55 operational TCCs, in support of the victims of crime, particularly the victims of sexual offences who are mainly women and children.

Funds have been allocated from the Criminal Assets Recovery Account for the rollout of another five TCC's over the next three years. A remarkable conviction rate of 74,5%, with 1 899 convictions, was recorded in relation to TCC reported cases.

The Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) units

The FCS employs a network of highly skilled forensic social workers to assist with assessment of abused children and the compilation of court reports, as well as for providing an expert testimony in court.

The FCS is involved in the policing of sexual offences against children, person-directed crimes, illegal removal of children under 12 and electronic media facilitated crime. Two areas of particular concern for the FCS are child pornography and sexual offences.

The SAPS currently has 1 045 designated victim-friendly rooms at police stations and police contact points all over the country. Victim-friendly rooms are an extension of the community service centres.

The value of a victim-friendly room is that it assists in preserving the dignity of victims by making space available where a statement can be taken in privacy, in accordance with the SAPS's mandate.

At those police stations that are not yet equipped with these facilities, a room is made available for victims to be interviewed in private.

Provision has also been made to create special sexual offences courts or establish facilities for the sensitive and safe treatment of victims of sexual offences.

Rules Board for Courts of Law

The Rules Board for the Courts of Law may review existing rules of Court to efficient, expeditious and uniform administration of justice in the Supreme Court of Appeal, high courts and magistrates' courts.

Subject to the approval of the Minister, it may enact, amend or

repeal rules for the above courts.

The board is headed by a Constitutional Court judge and includes experts in procedural law drawn from the judiciary, legal profession and academic institutions.

Its mandate includes:

- improving and modernising the rules of courts in accordance with technological changes and constitutional imperatives
- addressing challenges to the constitutionality of specific rules and effecting amendments precipitated by such challenges
- simplifying the courts' rules to promote access to justice
- harmonising rules of superior and lower courts
- reviewing the civil justice system to address inadequacies
- conducting legal and comparative research to determine viable solutions
- stimulating discussion with role players and interested and/or affected parties in the process of amending rules
- unifying and harmonising rules, regulations and procedures to transform the courts and to make justice accessible to all.

Judicial Service Commission

The JSC selects fit and proper people for appointment as judges and investigates complaints about judicial officers. It also advises government on any matters relating to the judiciary or to the administration of justice.

When appointments have to be made, the JSC publishes a notice giving details of the vacancies that exist and calls for nominations.It shortlists suitable candidates and invites them for interviews.

Professional bodies and members of the public have the opportunity to comment prior to the interviews or to make representations concerning the candidates to the commission.

The interviews are conducted in public, after which the commission deliberates and makes its decisions in private. Its recommendations are communicated to the President, who then makes the appointments.

In terms of the Constitution, the President, in consultation with the commission, appoints the chief justice and the deputy chief justice, and the president and deputy president of the Supreme Court of Appeal.

The President appoints other judges on the advice of the commission. In the case of the chief justice and the deputy chief justice, the leaders of parties represented in the National Assembly are also consulted.

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities (CRL Commission)

The CRL Commission's role of fostering social cohesion remains relevant as democracy continues to grow in South Africa. It is incumbent upon the CRL Commission to develop peace, friendship, humanity, tolerance and national unity among cultural, religious and linguistic communities. Its mandate is to make sure that democracy manifests itself in all aspects of the lives of South Africans.

There are still communities that feel marginalised because they are not part of the accepted, mainstream South African culture. However, most South Africans have gained awareness of their rights concerning language, religion and culture, and are beginning to make demands for better recognition.

Magistrates' Commission

The Magistrates' Commission ensures that the appointment, promotion, transfer or discharge of, or disciplinary steps against, judicial officers in the lower courts take place without favour or prejudice, and that the applicable laws and administrative directions in connection with such actions are applied uniformly and correctly.

In terms of the Magistrates' Act of 1993, the Minister appoints a magistrate after consultation with the Magistrates' Commission.

The commission also investigates grievances and complaints about magistrates and submits reports and recommendations to the Minister, who in turn tables them in Parliament.

The commission has established committees to deal with appointments, misconduct, disciplinary inquiries and incapacity, grievances, salary and service conditions, and the training of magistrates.

South African Board for Sheriffs

Significant strides have been made in transforming the sheriff's profession in the country. Sheriffs have an important role in the CJS, as they act as a third party to serve court process and execute the warrants and orders of the court, which are issued in terms of the regulations of the different courts.

In terms of transformation, the sheriff's profession is gradually becoming more representative. The sheriffs' profession plays an important part in justice service delivery because they serve court processes and execute warrants and orders of court.

In July 2017, some 33 sheriffs were appointed to serve a wide range of communities in our country.

The newly appointed sheriffs enhance transformation of the profession as they reflect the demographics of the country in respect of race and gender.

South African Human Rights Commission

As the independent national human rights institution, the SAHRC was created to support constitutional democracy by promoting, protecting and monitoring the attainment of everyone's human rights in South Africa without fear, favour or prejudice.

The values of the SAHRC are integrity, honesty, respect, objectivity, the Batho Pele principles and equality.

Each year, the SAHRC requires relevant organs of State to provide it with information on the measures taken towards the realisation of the rights contained in the Bill of Rights concerning housing, healthcare, food, water, social security, education and the environment.

The SAHRC has additional powers and functions prescribed by specific legislative obligations in terms of the Human Rights Commission Act of 1994, the PAIA of 2000 and the Equality Act of 2000.

The commission has to:

- promote awareness of the statutes
- monitor compliance with the statutes
- report to Parliament in relation to these statutes
- develop recommendations on persisting challenges related to these statutes and any necessary reform.

The SAHRC is actively involved in ensuring the ratification of international and regional human-rights instruments by advocating for the domestication of human-rights instruments.

At international level, the SAHRC is recognised by the United Nations (UN) Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights

as an A-status national human rights institution. As an A-status institution, the SAHRC has adhered to the Paris Principles, which are the guiding principles that set out the nature and functioning of a national human rights institution.

The SAHRC deals with a wide range of human rights complaints.

Public Protector

The President appoints the Public Protector on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution, for a non-renewable period of seven years.

The Public Protector is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government and any political party. No person or organ of State may interfere with the functioning of the Public Protector.

The Public Protector has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the Public Protector's recommendations are followed.

Section 182 of the Constitution mandates the Public Protector to:

- investigate any conduct in State affairs, or in the public administration in any sphere of government, that is alleged or suspected to be improper or to result in any impropriety or prejudice
- report on that conduct
- take appropriate remedial action
- be accessible to all people and communities.

The Public Protector has additional legislative powers contained in about 16 statutes. It must resolve disputes or grievances involving the State through mediation, consultation, negotiation and any other remedies. It also has a mandate to enforce executive ethics, the PAIA of 2000, the Protected Disclosures Act of 2000 and the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004).

The only matters excluded from the mandate of the Public Protector are court decisions, judicial functions and matters outside the public sector.

South African Judicial Education Institute

The SAJEI Act of 2008 established the institute to provide independent judicial education for judicial officers.

The SAJEI is responsible for the formal training of magistrates and legal practitioners in this legislation and other areas of judicial work.

Its purpose is to promote the independence, impartiality, effectiveness, accessibility and dignity of the courts by providing judicial education for judicial officers. In carrying out this function, the SAJEI is primarily directed and controlled by the judiciary. The institute provides education and training for aspirant and newly appointed judicial officers, as well as ongoing legal education and training for experienced judicial officers.

Court services

Legal practitioners

The legal profession is divided into two branches – advocates and attorneys – that are both subject to strict ethical codes.

Advocates are organised into bar associations or societies, one each at the seat of the various divisions of the High Court.

There are voluntary associations of advocates such as the General Council of the Bar and other formations of independent bars. There are four regional societies for attorneys, each made up of a number of provinces. A practising attorney is by the operation of the law a member of at least one of these societies, which promote the interests of the profession. The Law Society of South Africa is a voluntary association established to coordinate the various regional societies.

In terms of the Right of Appearance in Courts Act, 1995 (Act 62 of 1995), advocates can appear in any court, while attorneys may be heard in all of the country's lower courts and can also acquire the right of appearance in the superior courts. The Attorneys Amendment Act, 1993 (Act 115 of 1993), provides for alternative routes for admission as an attorney.

All attorneys who hold an LLB or equivalent degree, or who have at least three years' experience, may acquire the right of audience in the High Court.

State law advisers provide legal advice to ministers, government departments, provincial administrations and a number of statutory bodies. In addition, they draft Bills and assist the Minister concerned with the passage of Bills through Parliament. They also assist in criminal and constitutional matters.

Judicial system

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, is the supreme law of the country and binds all legislative, executive and judicial organs of State at all levels of Government.

The judicial authority in South Africa is vested in the courts, which are independent and subject only to the Constitution and the law. No person or organ of State may interfere with the functioning of the courts, and an order or decision of a court binds all organs of State and people to whom it applies.

The Constitution provides for the following courts:

- Constitutional Court
- Supreme Court of Appeal
- high courts, including any high court of Appeal that may be established by an Act of Parliament to hear appeals from high courts
- magistrates' courts
- any other court established or recognised in terms of an Act of Parliament, including any court of a status similar to either high courts or magistrates' courts.

Other courts include: Income Tax Court; Labour Court; Labour Appeal Court; Land Claims Court, Competition Appeal Court, the Electoral Court, Divorce Courts, Small Claims Courts, Military Courts and Equality Court.

Decisions of the Constitutional Court, the Supreme Court of Appeal and the high courts are an important source of law. These courts uphold and enforce the Constitution, which has an extensive Bill of Rights binding all State organs and all people.

The courts are also required to declare any law or conduct that is inconsistent with the Constitution to be invalid, and develop Common Law that is consistent with the values of the Constitution, and the spirit and purpose of the Bill of Rights.

In response to the constitutional requirement that everyone has the right to access to a court, the DoJ&CD will continue providing court infrastructure and improving access to courts.

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is the only court that may adjudicate disputes between

organs of State in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of State, or that may decide on the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution or any parliamentary or provincial Bill.

The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional.

It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges.

Supreme Court of Appeal

The Supreme Court of Appeal, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all matters other than constitutional ones. It consists of the President and Deputy President of the Supreme Court of Appeal, and 23 other judges of appeal. The Supreme Court of Appeal has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a High Court. Decisions of the Supreme Court of Appeal are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of high courts are binding on magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions.

Justice Mandisa Maya was appointed as President of the Supreme Court of Appeal in May 2017. She is the first woman to hold this position.

High courts

A high court has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area. These courts hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty.

Except where a minimum or maximum sentence is prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases.

The DoJ&CD's legislative mandate provides for a high court in every province. The Mpumalanga High Court was completed in 2016/17, bringing the total of high courts in the country to 14:

- the Eastern Cape has four high court located in Grahamstown, Port Elizabeth, Mthatha and Bhisho
- the Free State High Court in Bloemfontein
- Gauteng has two high courts, one in Pretoria (North Gauteng) and one in Johannesburg (South Gauteng)
- KwaZulu-Natal also has two high courts, in Pietermaritzburg and in Durban
- the Limpopo High Court in Polokwane
- the Northern Cape High Court in Kimberley
- the North West High Court in Mafikeng
- the Western Cape High Court in Cape Town.

During the 2017/18 financial year, the High Courts received 988 new cases and finalised 971 cases, which is a decrease of 9% compared to the previous financial year.

The decrease in the number of new cases received was mainly due to an increase in the number of long and intricate trials that are being conducted in the High Court.

Notwithstanding the decrease in the number of cases finalised, 49 more new cases were received during the current financial year.

The conviction rate also increased from 91% to 91.7%, exceeding the target of 87% by 5%. A comparative analysis of the performance of previous years indicates an overall improvement in the conviction rates achieved by High Court advocates.

This confirms their dedication to improve the level of service to the victims of serious crime. As depicted in the figure below, the High Court advocates improved the conviction rate with 3% from 88.8% obtained during 2013/14 to 91.7% during the 2017/18 financial year.

The number of formal bail applications in the High Courts decreased remarkably by 41% from 56 to 33. The reason for this decrease could mainly be attributed to the increase in bail applications in the lower courts before the cases are transferred to the High Courts. The number of appeals received and finalised decreased by 9%, from 2 439 to 2 225 appeal cases finalised.

Specialist high courts

The following specialist high courts exercise national jurisdiction:

- the Labour Court and Labour Appeal Court in Braamfontein, Gauteng adjudicate over labour disputes and hear labour appeals, respectively
- the Land Claims Court, in Randburg, Gauteng hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws
- the Competition Appeal Court in Cape Town deals with appeals from the Competition Tribunal
- the Electoral Court in Bloemfontein sits mainly during elections to deal with associated disputes
- the Tax Court in Pretoria deals with tax-related matters, including non-compliance with tax obligations.

Lower courts

Regional courts, magistrates' courts and periodical courts are all lower courts. During the 2017/18 financial year, there were 33 732 criminal backlog cases in the lower courts against a target of 30 344..

Circuit local divisions (periodical courts)

These itinerant courts, each presided over by a judge of the provincial division, periodically conduct hearings at remote areas outside the seat of the high court designated by the judge president of the provincial division concerned. This is with a view to enhancing access to justice.

Regional courts

Regional courts are established largely in accordance with provincial boundaries, with a regional court division for each province to hear matters within their jurisdiction. There are nine regional court presidents and 351 regional court magistrates. There are more than 1 886 courtrooms dealing daily with district and regional court cases across the country.

The regional courts adjudicate civil disputes by virtue of the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 31 of 2008).

The divorce courts were subsumed under the regional court divisions. The divorce court rules made under Section 10(4) of the Administration Amendment Act, 1929 (Act 9 of 1929), were repealed in 15 October 2010. Subsequently, regional courts started adjudicating divorce matters. This has addressed the jurisdictional challenges in terms of which litigants have to travel

to remote courts to get legal redress.

In the medium to long term, the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act of 2008 will reduce the workload in the high courts. In this way, divorce and other family-law matters and civil disputes of an amount determined from time to time is within the jurisdiction of regional courts.

This means that attorneys have the opportunity to represent their clients in matters where they ordinarily need to appoint and brief counsel, thus reducing the cost of litigation and increasing access to justice.

During the 2017/18 financial year, the Regional Courts enrolled 53 309 new cases compared to the previous financial year, 2 241 (4%) fewer cases were enrolled compared to the 55 550 new cases enrolled during the previous financial year.

Notwithstanding this decline in new cases received, the Regional Courts still effectively impacted on serious crime by finalising 33 246 cases, comprising 30 837 verdict cases and 2 409 alternate dispute resolution mechanism cases, as depicted in the figure below. This represents a finalisation rate of 0.6 cases per court per day.

Magistrates' courts

Magistrates' courts form an important part of the judicial system, as it is where ordinary people come into contact with the justice system daily.

For this reason, that the bulk of the department's budget and resources are concentrated here. Jointly with the Chief Justice, the department implements programmes aimed at supporting these courts. One such intervention is backlog courts.

This is with a view to widening access to justice, as more people will be able to access the magistrate's courts where it is cheaper and faster to obtain a legal recourse compared to the high courts.

In terms of the Magistrates' Act of 1993, all magistrates in South Africa fall outside the ambit of the Public Service. The aim is to strengthen the independence of the judiciary.

Full jurisdiction was conferred to courts in rural areas and former black townships that exercise limited jurisdiction and depend entirely on the main courts in urban areas to deliver essential justice services.

By the end of February 2018, there had been an increase of 163% of black magistrates and a 249% increase of women magistrates. The number of African female magistrates has increased from 62 in 1998 to 472 in 2018 – an increase of 661%.

Small Claims Courts

Small Claims Courts were established to adjudicate small civil claims. They were created to eliminate the time-consuming adversary procedures before and during the trial of these claims.

Small Claims Courts offer members of the public a quicker and easier way of resolving disputes that involve amounts limited to R15 000 and they can do so without the need for a legal representative.

The department continued to support and strengthen these courts. For the 2017/18 financial year, six new Small Claims Courts were established in Colenso in KwaZulu-Natal and Warden, Steynsrus, Petrus Steyn, Memel and Edenville in the Free State, bringing the total number to 411 Small Claims Courts countrywide by the end of the financial year.

In addition, nine inactive Small Claims Courts were revived between 1 April 2017 and 31 March 2018, and 14 inactive Advisory Boards were revived in the same period.

Labour courts and labour appeal courts

The labour courts have the same status as high courts. The labour courts adjudicate matters relating to labour disputes between employers and employees. Labour courts are mainly guided by the Labour Relations Act, (Act 66 of 1995), which deals with matters such as unfair labour practices, e.g. dismissing an employee without giving notice.

Labour courts can order an employer or employee or union to stop committing an unfair labour practice. Labour courts are empowered to give jobs back to employees who have lost their jobs unfairly. Labour appeal courts hear appeals against decisions in labour courts and are the highest courts for labour appeals.

Equality courts

The right to equality is protected by law in the Equality Act of 2000 and the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998). The two Acts work in synergy. The Equality Act of 2000 aims to:

- prevent and prohibit unfair discrimination and harassment
- promote equality
- eliminate unfair discrimination
- prevent and prohibit hate speech.

The Act also provides for:

- remedies for victims of any of the above
- compliance with international law obligations, including treaty obligations
- measures to educate the public and raise public awareness about equality.

Traditional courts

There are traditional courts in traditional community areas in rural villages.

These courts have jurisdiction to hear certain matters at the level of magistrates' courts. They are designed to deal with customary issues in terms of customary law.

An authorised headman or his deputy may decide cases using indigenous law and custom (for example, disputes over ownership of cattle or lobolo), brought before him by parties within his area of jurisdiction.

These courts were formerly known as chief's courts. A person with a claim has the right to choose whether to bring it to a chief's court or in a magistrates' court. Any person who is not satisfied with the decision in a chief's or headman's court can take their matter to the ordinary courts.

The judicial functions of traditional leaders are regulated in terms of the Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Act, 2005 (Act 28 of 2005).

The Traditional Courts Bill aims to affirm the values of customary law and customs in the resolution of disputes, based on restorative justice and reconciliation and to align them with the Constitution.

It seeks to regulate the structure and functioning of traditional courts. Traditional courts are still regulated by very old colonial legislation, namely the Black Administration Act of 1927. This legislation falls short in many respects. The result is that traditional courts currently have no statutory basis for its structure, functions and powers.

This lack of proper statutory regulation allows for all sorts of abuses and malpractices, bringing these important forums into disrepute.

Land claims courts

It specialises in dealing with disputes that arise out of laws that underpin South Africa's land reform initiative.

These are the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994) the Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act, 1996 (Act 486 of 1994) and the Extension of Security of Tenure Act, 1997 (Act 62 of 1997).

The Land Claims Court has the same status as the high courts. Any appeal against a decision of the Land Claims Court can be lodged with the Supreme Court of Appeal, and if applicable, the Constitutional Court.

The Land Claims Court can hold hearings in any part of the country if it believes this will make it more accessible and it can conduct its proceedings in an informal manner if this is appropriate, although its main office is in Randburg.

Community courts

South Africa has established community courts on a pilot basis to provide speedy resolution of certain types of community offences. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

These courts seek to assist the country's court case backlog. Community courts are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the local community and businesses.

The business community and other civil-society formations have contributed significantly to the establishment and sustainability of these courts.

Courts for income-tax offenders

In October 1999, SARS opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate's Office, dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders.

The court deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or to provide information requested by SARS officials.

It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud. Another SARS court operates twice a week at the Roodepoort Magistrate's Office.

Criminal jurisdiction of the respective courts

Apart from specific provisions of the Magistrates' Courts Act of 1944 or any other Act, jurisdiction regarding sentences imposed by district courts is limited to imprisonment of not more than three years or a fine not exceeding R60 000.

A regional court can impose a sentence of not more than 15 years' imprisonment or a fine not exceeding R300 000.

A magistrate's court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason, murder and rape. A regional court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason. However, the High Court may try all offences.

Depending on the gravity of the offence and the circumstances pertaining to the offender, the Directorate of Public Prosecutions decides in which court a matter will be heard and may even decide on a summary trial in the High Court.

The sentencing of "petty" offenders to do community service as a condition of suspension, correctional supervision or postponement in appropriate circumstances, has become part of an alternative sentence to imprisonment.

Sexual offences courts

Sexual offences courts were reintroduced by the DoJ&CD in August 2013 to provide specialised support services to victims of sexual offences, decrease turnaround times for finalisation of sexual offences cases and improve conviction rates in these cases.

These courts are specially designed for the delicate handling of sexual offences through the use of technology, intermediaries and an appropriate court environment for dealing with sexual offences.

An additional 17 court rooms were adapted in line with the sexual offences model and this brought the total number of court rooms adapted to 75 during the 2017/18 financial year.

Regarding child justice, 75% of preliminary enquiries for children were finalised within 90 days, against a target of 55%.

Areas of legislation

Sexual offences

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act of 2007 provides a legal framework to support an integrated approach to the management of sexual offences, thereby aiming to reduce secondary trauma to victims of such crimes.

National Register for Sexual Offenders (NRSO)

The department has developed the NRSO, which was established by an Act of Parliament in 2007.

It is a record of names of those found guilty of sexual offences against children and people with a mental disability.

The NRSO gives employers in the public or private sectors such as schools, crèches and hospitals the right to check that the person being hired is fit to work with children or mentally disabled people.

Information on whether a person is on the list is available on request, along with the relevant motivation, before any confirmation or information is released.

Maintenance

The main objective of the Maintenance Act of 1998 is to facilitate the securing of maintenance money from parents and/or other persons able to maintain maintenance beneficiaries, mainly children, who have a right to maintenance.

Parents and/or guardians must maintain children in the proportion in which they can afford. Therefore, both parents and/or sets of families need to take responsibility for the maintenance of the child or children concerned.

The Maintenance Amendment Act, 2015 (Act 9 of 2015) further ensures that maintenance systems are effective, putting the following measures in place, among others:

- A beneficiary will be able to claim maintenance where they work and not only where they live. This will make it easier for beneficiaries to go to the maintenance court during working hours.
- If the person from whom maintenance is sought cannot be located, despite all reasonable efforts, the court can grant an order directing electronic communication service providers to

provide the court with contact information.
- Maintenance courts must complete their enquiries as speedily as possible. The views of the person who is obliged to pay maintenance must be sought.
- If a person has defaulted on paying maintenance, their personal details will be submitted to all credit bureaus. This will prevent maintenance defaulters from continuing to receive credit while owing maintenance. They will effectively be blacklisted.

To reduce the maintenance queues at courts, the department installed technology to process payments through electronic financial transfers to replace the card-based manual system.

The courts are also increasingly making orders for payments to be deposited directly into the accounts of beneficiaries.

The replacement of the old Third Party Funds system with the new MojaPay system, from a technological perspective, is aimed at improving the turnaround time in the payment of maintenance beneficiaries and introducing effective financial controls for maintenance and other third party payments.

This initiative enables beneficiaries of maintenance to receive money within a few days and avoids manual intervention by DoJCD officials.

By the end of the 2017/18 financial year, the solution was implemented in eight provinces.

The Guardian's Fund is a fund created to hold and administer funds which are paid to the Master of the High Court on behalf of various persons known or unknown, for example, minors, persons incapable of managing their own affairs, unborn heirs, missing or absent persons or persons having an interest in the moneys of a usufructuary, fiduciary or fideicommissary nature.

Each Master of the High Court has its own Guardian's Fund. Through the Guardian's Fund, the department contributes substantially to poverty alleviation.

Sections 2, 11 and 13(b) of the Maintenance Amendment Act of 2015 were put into operation in January 2018 and provide, amongst others, that parents who default on child maintenance will have their personal information submitted to credit bureaus and face being blacklisted.

This will prevent maintenance defaulters from continuing to receive credit whilst owing maintenance.

The Guardian's Fund has grown by approximately 45% over the past five financial years to over 800 000 beneficiaries. This has necessitated investment in systems and personnel to ensure the continued safeguarding and service delivery to beneficiaries. The use of the Master's Own Verification Information Technology system in magistrates' courts increased from 183 in 2016/17 to 262 by the end of 2017/18. Completed applications for funds can be lodged directly at these offices, instead of travelling long distances to a handful of Master's offices.

Domestic violence

The rigorous steps the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster (JCPS) cluster is taking to root out GBV is the adoption of zero tolerance towards rape, violation of the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex people and other forms of violence towards women and children.

The Protection from Harassment Act, 2011 (Act 17 of 2011), is the first specific legislation to address sexual harassment in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region. The essence of the Act is to provide a quick, easy and affordable civil remedy in the form of a protection order for incidences of stalking. The legislation arose out of a SALRC investigation into the legal framework governing stalking and domestic violence.

A key component of the Act is that it seeks to cover all forms of stalking, not just that involving people engaged in a relationship.

A protection order can be issued instructing the harasser to cease harassment.

The Act sets out how a complainant is to apply for a protection order and the procedure to be followed in granting one. The legislation also provides for the issuing of an interim protection order without the knowledge of the respondent, given certain conditions.

A victim of cyberstalking can apply to a court for an interim protection order even when the identity of the alleged stalker is unknown. The law will also empower the police to investigate a stalker to identify the perpetrator even before a victim launches an application for a protection order.

Human trafficking

The Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act, 2013 (Act 7 of 2013) defines trafficking to include the recruitment, transportation, sale or harbour of people by means of force, deceit, the abuse of vulnerability and the abuse of power for exploitation. The Act addresses the scourge of trafficking in persons holistically and comprehensively.

Besides creating the main offence of trafficking in persons, the legislation creates offences such as debt bondage; the possession, destruction and tampering with travel documents and using the services of victims of trafficking all of which facilitate innocent persons becoming victims of this modern-day form of slavery.

The legislation gives effect to South Africa's international obligations in terms of UN Protocol.

South Africa fully recognises the existence of human trafficking and smuggling activities. These crimes are mostly perpetuated by transnational syndicates, hence the calls from many states for regional and international cooperation as well as the introduction of aligned legislation and immigration procedures.

To address those challenges, UN member states require fair, responsible, ethical and efficient criminal justice systems and crime prevention strategies that contribute to sustainable economic and social development. It also imposes a responsibility on states to work together.

These scourges have also had a negative impact on the people of South Africa, and Government therefore fully supports the UN's promotion of the objectives relating to the continued and focused national and international prevention and combating of these crimes.

South Africa has become a source, transit and destination country for trafficked and smuggled men, women and children. South African girls are trafficked or smuggled for the purposes of commercial sexual exploitation and domestic servitude, while boys are trafficked or smuggled for use in street vending, food service and agriculture.

The Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act of 2013 deals comprehensively with human trafficking in all its various forms and in particular provides for the protection of and assistance to victims of trafficking.

Persons engaged with trafficking will be liable on conviction to

a severe fine or imprisonment, including imprisonment for life or such imprisonment without the option of a fine or both.

Other existing laws being used to prosecute traffickers include the Children's Act of 2005, which provides for the criminalisation of the trafficking of children, while the Criminal Law Sexual Offences and Related Matters Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), contains provisions that criminalise trafficking in persons for sexual purposes.

South Africa has also been successful in using the racketeering offences in the POCA of 1998 to deal with criminal organisations involved in trafficking.

Under the common law, depending on the circumstances of each case, persons suspected of trafficking could be charged with kidnapping, common assault, assault with intent to do grievous bodily harm, extortion, attempted murder and murder.

Those involved in acts of trafficking in persons may be prosecuted using other acts that include the Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), the Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act 75 of 1997), the Intimidation Act, 1982 (Act 72 of 1982), the Domestic Violence Act of 1998, and the Films and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996).

State Legal Services

The purpose of this programme is to provide legal and legislative services to government, supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates and the Guardian's Fund, prepare and promote legislation and undertake research in support of this.

This programme is mainly aimed at transforming justice, the State and society. It deals with the following functions:

- constitutional development
- legislative development (including conducting legal research)
- the provision of legal advisory services to other organs of State (including Parliament)
- providing litigation services to protect the organs of State
- the provision of probate services
- administration of the Guardian's Fund
- regulation of insolvency and liquidation systems.

The State Legal Services Programme's objectives include:

- improving service delivery at the Master's Office service points
- increasing efficiency in the provision of services to beneficiaries of the Guardian's Fund, trusts, and insolvent and deceased estates
- promoting constitutional development and the strengthening of participatory democracy to ensure respect for fundamental human rights
- improving the provision of legal services to State organs
- improving the policy and legislative framework for the effective and efficient delivery of justice services.

The State Legal Services Programme is divided into the following subprogrammes:

- Legislative Development, the Law Reform Commission and the Rules Boards for Courts of Law prepare and promote legislation, conduct research and administer the Constitution.
- The Master of the High Court funds the Masters' Offices, which supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates, trusts, curatorships and the Guardian's Fund.
- Litigation and Legal Services provides attorney, conveyance and notary public services to the executive, all State departments, parastatals and other government bodies through the Office of the State Attorney, and provides legal support to the department and the ministry.
- State Law Advisers provides legal advisory services to the executive, all State departments, parastatals and autonomous government bodies.

Master of the High Court

The Master of the High Court serves the public in respect of:

- deceased estates
- liquidations (insolvent estates)
- registration of trusts', tutors' and curators' administration of the Guardian's Fund (minors and people with mental disabilities).

The Master's Office has five main divisions, which are all aimed at protecting the financial interests of people whose assets or interests are, for various reasons, managed by others.

The Paperless Estates Administration System (PEAS), which computerises the administration process related to deceased estates, enables people to deal with deceased estates in both the offices of the Master of the High Court and the magistrates' courts.

This system has been implemented to expand access to justice services and to enable the processing of small estates at the nearest magistrate's court as opposed to the 15 offices of the Master of the High Court, thus bringing justice services closer to the people.

The number of magistrates' courts implementing the PEAS was increased from 206 in 2016/17 to 237 in 2017/18.

In addition to the 15 Master of the High Court offices countrywide, 237 magistrates' courts handled deceased estate matters on behalf of the Master of the High Court. This brought the services of the Master of the High Court closer to the people, particularly those in remote areas

Office of the Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of the children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

This is achieved by monitoring pleadings filed at court, conducting enquiries, filing reports, appearing in court during the hearing of the application or trial, and providing mediation services in respect of disputes over the parental rights and responsibilities of fathers of children born out of wedlock.

In certain instances, the Family Advocate also assists the courts in matters involving domestic violence and maintenance. The sections of the Children's Act of 2005 that came into operation on 1 July 2007 have expanded the Family Advocate's responsibilities and scope of duties, as the Act makes the Family Advocate central to all family-law civil litigation.

Furthermore, litigants are obliged to mediate their disputes before resorting to litigation. Unmarried fathers can approach the Family Advocate directly for assistance without instituting any litigation.

Children's rights to participate in, and consult on, decisions affecting them have been entrenched; the Family Advocate is the mechanism whereby the voice of the child is heard.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission

The TRC was dissolved in March 2002 by way of proclamation in the Government Gazette. The TRC made recommendations

to government regarding reparations to victims and measures to prevent the future violation of human rights and abuses experienced during the apartheid years.

Government approved categories of recommendations in June 2003 for implementation, namely:

- final reparations
- TRC-identified victims
- symbols and monuments
- medical benefits and other forms of social assistance
- community rehabilitation.

The implementation of the recommendations of the TRC remains one of the important initiatives that could help bring about healing and closure for crimes committed during apartheid.

One of the key projects implemented has been education assistance for the next-of-kin of TRC-identified victims. For the academic year of 2018, a total of 1 200 beneficiaries for basic education and 457 for higher education were positively verified and referred for payment of benefits.

The Pretoria Gallows Exhumation Project which started in 2016 continued into the 2017/18 financial year. Of the remains of 83 people identified for this project, 46 remains have been exhumed, with 32 of these completed in the 2017/18 financial year.

The 32 of these included 15 UDF activists who were part of political turmoil in the Eastern Cape in 1985 and 1986.

The DoJCD plans to finalise the exhumation project in the 2018/19 financial year.

Child justice

Children's Act of 2005

The Department of Social Development is the lead department for the implementation of the Children's Act of 2005. The DoJ&CD's main responsibility is towards Children's Court operations relating to the Act.

Embracing information and communication technology (ICT) has allowed the DoJ&CD to extend its reach on modern-day platforms that are more accessible to children, thereby increasing access and engagement with potentially vulnerable or threatened children that would otherwise not have access to the department and, therefore, support and assistence.

The department has developed a child-friendly Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) link on its website. In addition, the department created an email address, children@justice.gov.za, which the public may use to contact the department on issues relating to children.

The Children's Court is the DoJ&CD's principal legal mechanism to intervene and assist children who are in need of care and protection. To gather statistics from the children's courts, the department developed the Children's Court Monitoring Tool. Data about matters coming to court relating to children in need of care is gathered monthly.

Section 14 of the Children's Act of 2005 states that every child has the right to bring a matter to the Children's Court.

This means that every Children's Court can serve as a direct entry point for a child to seek help and protection. Children's courts have been rendered highly accessible through the Act.

Child Justice Act of 2008

The Child Justice Act of 2008 promotes and protects the constitutional rights of children in conflict with the law. The Act provides special measures, designed to break the cycle of crime and restore in these children a lifestyle that is law-abiding and productive.

The department established governance structures to ensure the effective intersectoral implementation of the Act. Nine provincial child justice forums are coordinating and monitoring the implementation of the Act at provincial level.

Restorative justice

Restorative justice is a response to crime that focuses on the losses suffered by victims by both holding offenders accountable for the harm they have caused and building peace in communities.

Restorative justice strategies, programmes and processes in the CJS are in place to try and heal the harm caused by the crime or offence, from a holistic point of view, for the victim, the offender and the community concerned, which will lead towards rebuilding broken relationships and encouraging social justice and social dialogue.

Any restorative justice option is always voluntary for the victim involved. Therefore, such programmes and/or strategies will not be forced upon the victim of any crime or offence.

Alternative dispute resolution is defined as the disposal of disputes outside formal court proceedings. The processes and mechanisms may or may not include the restorative-justice approach.

Court performance

This subbranch of the DoJ&CD is responsible for:

- developing and monitoring processes and systems
- introducing case-flow management that facilitates efficient and effective court and case management
- developing and facilitating the implementation of a court-management policy framework
- evaluating the quality of services and performance within the courts
- facilitating the development of uniform performance standards to enhance institutional performance.

The Directorate: Court Efficiency's key priorities include:

- facilitating integrated case-flow management with stakeholders
- supporting the implementation of the Re Aga Boswa (meaning "We are Renewing") and court capacitation projects
- facilitating the implementation of multilingualism in courts and developing indigenous languages in line with constitutional imperatives
- facilitating the securing of standardised transcription services for courts across all regions
- rendering case-management business intelligence support to information system management in the development of ICT tools and systems
- supporting initiatives for the effective management of court records.

The directorate assists in court capacitation initiatives, namely:

- the UN Office on Drugs and Crime Court Integrity Project
- upgrading five pilot courts, namely Pretoria, Tembisa, Nelspruit, Mkobola and Kimberley with notice boards, flat-screen television sets and DVD players
- providing integrity training to 120 departmental, 15 NPA and

15 judicial officers
- conducting audits on the management of court records
- facilitating activities on the Court Capacitation National Centre for State Courts Project in consultation with all other stakeholders such as chief directors and regional heads
- engaging human resources and the Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority and securing learnership programmes for court interpreters
- engaging in legislation development and finalising the legislative and operational framework for implementing and institutionalising the lay assessor system.

Integrated Case-Flow Management Framework

The DoJ&CD and participants from other partner organisations is developing an enhanced version of case-flow management in the court environment.

To eradicate case-flow blockages workable solutions were adopted. These include:
- continuous cooperation of stakeholders to implement and maintain case-flow management at all courts
- establishing judicial leadership and case-flow management buy-in processes in the lower and higher courts in the form of case-flow management forums
- facilitating and monitoring the creation of case-flow management governance structures to sustain productivity in the courts' environment
- maintaining case-flow management.

Systems that support case-flow management in the courts include the Integrated Case Management System (ICMS). This system spans all disciplines of cases administered in the justice environment.

The ICMS draws on several core modules to perform basic functions such as information warehousing, case numbering and document scanning. The specific functionality for each court and office are then built on these foundations.

The further development of the ICMS Masters System aims to create a Paperless Estate Administration System for the Master's Office. This system will computerise the administration process in deceased estates, as all documentation will be scanned and stored electronically.

The DoJ&CD's aim over the medium term is to increase the percentage of new deceased estates registered on the paperless estate administration system from 95% in 2016/17 to 100% in 2019/20.

Audio-Visual Remand System

The Audio-visual Remand (AVR) project links magistrates' courts to correctional detention centres via closedcircuit television (CCTV).

With this system, the accused person is not required to be physically brought before the court, but may appear before the court via an audio-visual link, unless the court, in the interests of justice, directs that he or she be physically brought before it.

The business benefit of using such technology has been reflected in the reduction of case delays and detentions to minimum periods. This initiative is continuously monitored and an investment was made to replace the obsolete equipment.

In the 2017/18 financial year, 48 magistrates' courts were linked to 23 correctional facilities and 17 271 criminal cases were remanded using this technology. This represents a 44% increase in the use of this technology.

Case-Reduction Backlog Project

The JCPS cluster departments have introduced the case backlog reductes intervention, which reducing the number of backlog cases in the regional and district courts, providing additional capacity to the backlog priority sites. The backlog intervention ensures that the inflow of the number of new cases is balanced by the number of matters concluded. The project deliverables have been integrated into the outputs of the JCPS Cluster Delivery Agreement.

The department provided resources in the form of infrastructure, court personnel, the judiciary, magistrates and budget in support of the prosecution and judiciary to remove these cases from the backlog roll.

Integrated Justice System

The Integrated Justice System aims to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the entire criminal justice process by increasing the probability of successful investigation, prosecution, punishment for priority crimes and, ultimately, rehabilitation of offenders. Further issues receiving specific attention include overcrowding in prisons and awaiting-trial prisoner problems, as well as bail, sentencing and plea-bargaining.

Government wants to eliminate duplication of services and programmes at all levels.

The benefits of proper alignment include:
- less duplication of services
- the effective use of scarce and limited resources and skills
- joint strategic planning and a planned approach instead of simply reacting to problems.

The JCPS cluster has structured itself to focus on two main areas of responsibility, namely operational and developmental issues relating to the justice system, and improving the safety and security of citizens.

International legal relations

The main functions of the Chief Directorate: International Legal Relations in the DoJ&CD is to identify and research legal questions that relate to matters pertaining to the administration of justice between South Africa and other countries as well as international bodies and institutions.

The chief directorate is involved in direct liaison and negotiations at administrative and technical level with foreign countries to promote international legal cooperation, and for the possible conclusion of extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements. The chief directorate also aims to establish greater uniformity between the legal systems of southern African countries, especially within the SADC.

The chief directorate coordinates human rights issues at international level under the auspices of the UN and the African Union.

The functions of the chief directorate are divided into eight broad categories:
- regular liaison on international legal matters with SADC countries
- coordinating all Commonwealth matters pertaining to the administration of justice
- interacting with the UN, the Hague Conference and the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law

- interacting with foreign countries outside the SADC region
- preparing Cabinet and Parliament documentation for the ratification of human rights treaties, including report-writing
- processing requests for extradition, mutual legal assistance in criminal matters, interrogatory commissions and service of process processing requests for maintenance in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act 80 of 1963).

Owing to the number of departments and/or institutions involved in the execution of extradition and mutual legal assistance requests, and taking into consideration that diplomatic channels are followed to transmit documents, delays are experienced from time to time.

Provisions are included in extradition and mutual legal assistance agreements to provide for direct communication between central authorities.

The drastic reduction in the turnaround time for the processing of these requests should be a clear indication to the rest of the world that South Africa will neither be a safe haven for fugitives nor a breeding ground for transnational organised crime.

International Criminal Court (ICC)

South Africa remains committed to the global promotion of the rule of law, and will continue cooperating with the UN system to ensure the success of the international human rights architecture.

South Africa views the ICC as an important element in a new system of international law and governance.

In April 2017, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development opened the Skukuza Regional Court. This means that South Africa's largest game reserve, the Kruger National Park, now houses a court that will combat rhino poaching.

This is one of the measures being taken in terms of the Integrated Strategic Management approach to combat rhino poaching.

The regional court in Skukuza will help to expidite the case turnaround times for rhino poaching and related cases.

Rhino-poaching has been declared a National Priority Crime, and government continues to work as a team in the implementation of the Integrated Strategic Management of Rhinoceros.

Office of the Chief Justice (OCJ)

The mandate of the OCJ is to render support to the chief justice as the head of the judiciary, as provided for in the Constitution, read together with the Superior Courts Act of 2013.

The OCJ is also required to:

- provide and coordinate legal and administrative support to the Chief Justice
- provide communication and relationship management services, and intergovernmental and internal coordination
- develop courts administration policies
- support the development of judicial policy, norms and standards
- support the judicial function of the Constitutional Court
- support the JSC and SAJEI in the execution of their mandates.

Legislation and policies

The OCJ derives its mandate from several pieces of legislation which include the following:

- The Public Service Act of 1994, which provides for the organisation and administration of the Public Service.
- The Public Finance Management Act of 1999, which regulates financial management in the national government.
- The Superior Courts Act of 2013, which empowers the Chief Justice to exercise responsibility over the establishment and monitoring of norms and standards for the exercise of judicial functions for all courts. The Minister of Justice and Correctional Services has, in terms of this Act, delegated certain powers and functions to the Secretary-General (SG) of the OCJ for the purposes of providing administrative support functions to the Chief Justice and the Judiciary. This Act also regulates the allocation of financial resources of the OCJ and designates the SG as the Accounting Officer.
- The Judges' Remuneration and Conditions of Employment Act of 2001, which deals with the remuneration and conditions of employment of judges.
- The JSC Act of 1994, which deals with the appointment of judges and support to the JSC.
- The SAJEI Act of 2008, which provides for further training of judicial officers.
- The Public Service Act of 1994: In March 2015, the Minister of Public Service and Administration, in terms of this Act, determined the functions relating to the administration of the Superior Courts transferred from the DoJ&CD to the OCJ.

Department of Correctional Services (DCS)

The mandate of the Department of Correctional Services is derived from the Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 111 of 1998), as amended; the Criminal Procedure Act – or CPA – of 1977; the 2005 *White Paper on Corrections*; and the 2014 *White Paper on Remand Detention Management in South Africa*.

The legislation requires the department to contribute to maintaining and promoting a just, peaceful and safe society by correcting offending behaviour in a safe, secure and humane environment, thus facilitating optimal rehabilitation and reduced repeat offending.

The strategic goals of the department are to ensure that:

- the efficiency of the justice system is improved through the effective management of remand processes
- society is protected through incarcerated offenders being secured and rehabilitated
- society is protected by offenders being reintegrated into the community as law-abiding citizens.

Legislation and policies

In addition to its legislative mandate, the DCS is compelled by the Constitution to comply with the following rights in terms of the treatment of offenders:

- equality
- human dignity
- freedom and security of the person
- right to healthcare services
- children's rights
- right to education
- freedom of religion
- right to humane treatment and to communicate with and be visited by family and next of kin.

Section 63A, Chapter 28 and Section 299A of the CPA of 1977 are of particular importance to the department. It provides for a procedure in terms of which the court may, on application

by a head of a correctional centre and if not opposed by the Director of Public Prosecutions concerned, order the release of certain accused persons on warning in lieu of bail or order the amendment of the bail conditions imposed by that court on the accused person.

Section 63A also forms the basis of a protocol between JCPS cluster departments to encourage the use of this provision to assist accused persons who do not pose a danger to society to be released from detention in circumstances where the bail set by the court cannot be afforded by the accused person or his or her family.

Chapter 28 of the CPA of 1977 deals with sentencing and the entire chapter applies to the department's mandate. Offenders must be detained in accordance with the sentences handed down under this chapter.

The granting of parole and the conversion of sentences to correctional supervision is also done in accordance with this chapter, read together with the Correctional Services Act of 1998.

Section 299A of the CPA of 1977 regulates victim involvement in the decisions of parole boards.

The White Paper on Corrections in South Africa ushered in a start where prisons become correctional centres of rehabilitation and offenders are given new hope and encouragement to adopt a lifestyle that will result in a second chance towards becoming the ideal South African citizen.

The Second Chance Act of 2007 (borrowed from the United States) repudiates the notion that recidivism reduction is best achieved through deterrent threats alone, and calls for the delivery of services to former prisoners not in a minimal or grudging way but in a systematic, progressive fashion.

It is a re-entry movement that could be classified as therapeutic jurisprudence, restorative justice and to some extent victims' rights.

The Act provides programmes and services that will aid rehabilitation efforts and encourage positive participation in society upon release.

It eliminates "invisible punishment" by excluding access to public benefits such as social grants, general assistance, housing and jobs. The Act counters the effects of policies, which have made it extremely difficult for ex-offenders to re-enter the normative non-criminal community, and could explain why there are so many recidivists.

The Criminal Matters Amendment Act, 2015 (Act 18 of 2015) amends the CPA of 1977. The amendments provide for changes to the law pertaining to infrastructure-related offences by making stricter provisions for the granting of bail, the sentencing of offenders and creating a new offence to criminalise damage to, tampering with or destruction of essential infrastructure that may interfere with the provision of basic services to the public.

The Act also aims to create a new offence relating to the essential infrastructure as well as amend the POCA of 1998.

Budget

The DCS was allocated R22.8 billion for the 2017/18 financial year. During 2017/18, the DCS placed a partial moratorium on the filling of vacancies except for those posts that were regarded as critical.

Due to reductions in the baseline allocation for compensation of employees, the DCS was compelled to abolish posts by reducing the funded post establishment in line with the Human Resources Budgeting and Planning Tool.

Apart from the capacity challenges as a result of the partial moratorium on the lling of positions the DCS strived to achieve more with less. It has shown commitment in successfully implementing most of its programmes as planned.

Role players

National Council for Correctional Services (NCCS)

The NCCS is a statutory body to guide the Minister of Correctional Services in developing policy relating to the correctional system and the sentence-management process.

Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services

The Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services was established in 1998 with the statutory objective to facilitate the inspection of correctional centres so that the inspecting judge may report on the treatment of inmates and on conditions in correctional centres. The Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services is an independent office.

Medical Parole Advisory Board

The Correctional Matters Amendment Act of 2011 provides for a new medical parole policy and correctional supervision. A Medical Parole Advisory Board was appointed in February 2012 to look into all seriously and terminally ill inmates who have submitted reports requesting to be released on medical grounds.

Correctional supervision and parole board

Correctional supervision and parole boards are responsible for dealing with parole matters and matters of correctional supervision. The correctional supervision and parole boards have decision-making competency except:

- decisions regarding the granting of parole to people who are declared dangerous criminals in terms of Section 286A
- the converting of sentences of imprisonment imposed in terms of Section 276 (A) (3) of the CPA of 1998 into correctional supervision
- decisions with regard to those sentenced to life imprisonment.

In cases such as the above-mentioned, recommendations are submitted to the courts that in turn will make decision in respect of conditional placement.

There are 53 correctional supervision and parole boards countrywide. These boards are chaired by community members who are regarded as suitable and capable of carrying out the responsibilities by virtue of occupation, standing or cultural reverence. The DCS provides the members with intensive training in respect of the processes, legislative implications and relative policies.

In addition, two members of the community are appointed as members of the board. Trained staff members of the DCS fill the positions of vice-chairperson and secretary.

The board can also co-opt a representative of the SAPS and a representative of the DoJ&CD. However, if the representatives of SAPS and of DoJ&CD are not co-opted to participate in a board hearing, the chairperson of the board may request such departments to provide written inputs in respect of specific serious crimes.

The views of victims of crime are important. As a result, the numbers of victims participating in parole considerations increased eightfold over the past six years, from 253 to 2 279.

As part of its mandate, the DCS aims to improve the effectiveness of the parole system by increasing the percentage of offender profiles submitted by case management committees that have been considered by correctional supervision and parole boards from a projected 89% in 2016/17 to 93% in 2019/20.

In addition, to facilitate the possibility of successful parole, over the medium term the DCS aims to improve the effectiveness of the parole system by:

- increasing the number of persons placed under the electronic monitoring system, from 870 in 2015/16 to 1 000 in 2018/19.
- increasing the percentage of parolees and probationers without violations, from 95% in 2016/17 to 97% in 2019/20.

Programmes and projects

The Gallows Memorial

The Gallows Memorialisation Project at the Pretoria Central Prison was initiated to honour those political prisoners who were hanged and serve as a reminder to future generations not to take their freedom for granted.

It comprises a memorial and a museum, which includes the death row block housing the gallows where an estimated 130 political prisoners were hanged between 1961 and 1989.

As part of the museum, the chapel at the gallows was renamed the Steve Biko chapel, in memory of all those who died in detention. There is also a garden of remembrance.

A roll of honour with the names of all the political prisoners can be seen at the entrance to the gallows.

Operation Vala

The DCS's annual Operation Vala (meaning "close") security campaign results in numerous unauthorised items being confiscated from offenders, as part of search operations to counter offenders' smuggling contraband at the country's 243 correctional facilities.

Contraband items can include dagga, television sets, music systems, kettles, cellphones, sharp objects, electrical extensions, cigarettes and alcohol.

The Department continued to implement the annual 'Operation Vala' campaign as part of ongoing interventions under the Back-2-Basics security campaign.

This is aimed at ensuring tight security during the end-of-year period: based on historical incidents indicating a spike in escapes, attempted escapes and assaults during the December period. The department has also been actively involved in the development of the government-wide, integrated National Anti-Gang Strategy managed under the auspices of the National Intelligence Coordinating Committee (NICOC).

Mother and baby units

The mother and baby units are separate cells built for mothers incarcerated with babies in correctional centres. This is to allow children as close to normal an existence as possible even if this is under the conditions of incarceration of the mother, while at the same time providing rehabilitation programmes in a centre that enhances their capacity to care for their children.

These facilities were launched in response to the Child Justice Act of 2008. The Act created an imperative for the department to treat children incarcerated with their mothers in a humane manner.

The facilities cater for children up to two years, after which they are released to a legal guardian chosen or recommended by the mother, where possible.

Social reintegration

The community forms an integral part of the rehabilitation of offenders on parole to reintegrate them as law-abiding citizens. Parole is used internationally to place offenders under supervision within the community.

The parole policy provides for credible members of communities to chair the correctional supervision and parole boards, which have been allocated decision-making authority.

The department wants to return rehabilitated offenders to society as healthy and responsible community members.

Parolees who obtained skills in correctional centres are being provided with work tools and start-up kits to start their own businesses.

These include welding machines, sewing machines, car-wash machines and vacuum cleaners to create entrepreneurs and employment for parolees.

Rehabilitation activities in correctional centres include correctional programmes, skills development programmes, as well as psychological, social work and spiritual care services.

The department plans to increase the proportion of sentenced offenders assigned to correctional programmes from 72% in 2016/17 to 80% in 2018/19, and maintain the percentage of offenders participating in skills development programmes at 80% over the medium term.

This will be achieved through improving the marketing of programmes, and appointing external service providers to provide more training opportunities for offenders.

Halfway House Pilot Project

The DCS as a parallel intervention, has also partnered with Non-Profit Organisations and established eight Halfway Houses managed by these organisations on its behalf. The Halfway Houses are aimed at assisting the department's efforts of reintegrating offenders due for parole placement.

Residents of Halfway Houses are offenders who have no verifiable residential addresses or any other related support systems at the time. Since its inception, 342 parolees and probationers have been reintegrated with their families and communities of origin.

Victim-offender dialogue (VOD)

VODs are based on a theory of justice that considers crime and wrongdoing to be an offence against an individual or community, rather than the State. Restorative justice that fosters dialogue between victim and offender shows the highest rates of victim satisfaction and offender accountability.

Victim participation intended to facilitate dialogue between offenders and victims about the crimes committed has gained momentum. This is slowly but steadily resulting in the acceptance and successful reintegration of offenders into the communities from whence they come.

In this regard, the DCS has contracted an additional 50

Social Auxiliary Workers for a period of five years, to assist in the implementation of Restorative Justice Programmes. By mid-2018, a total of 6 250 targets were set for victim participation, 13 679 victims participated in the Restorative Justice programmes which represents a considerable achievement.

Educational programmes

As part of rehabilitation efforts, the DCS has established 14 formal schools that provide education up to grade 12 in line with the curriculum of the Department of Basic Education (DBE).

During the 2017 academic year, the DCS achieved a 77% pass rate for Grade 12 with four schools maintaining a 100% pass rate. The partnership with the DBE contributes to this achievement as the department's educationists are included in training and development opportunities.

The performance information of formal education is as follows:

- Adult Education and Training: 10 014.
- Further Education and Training Mainstream Education: 982.
- Amended Senior Certificate (Old Curriculum): 838.
- Higher Education and Training (post-matric studies): 524.
- Computer-Based Training: 453.

Therefore, the total number of offenders who participated in formal education programmes in the 2017 academic year is 12 811.

Various training interventions for educators who teach life sciences, maths and accounting were undertaken during the academic year.

Offender labour

During 2017/18, the average offender labour per day in production workshops was 1 546 offenders, which declined with 219 offenders as compared to the performance of 2016/17 financial year.

The decline could be attributed to the vacant artisans' posts, whereas, in agriculture, it was 3 307 offender labour per day, which improved slightly by 39 offenders per day as compared with the performance of 2016/17 financial year.

The improvement could be attributed to an increase in the number of offenders that were eligible to work on farms as part of a concerted effort to market agriculture as a viable source of income after release.

Electronic Monitoring System (EMS)

The EMS, which was launched in July 2014, has enabled the DCS to effectively track an offender or a person awaiting trial on a 24-7-365 basis.

In addition, body-scanning equipment had been installed at Kgoši Mampuru II, Johannesburg, Pollsmoor, St. Albans, Durban Westville, Groenpunt and Barberton correctional facitlities.

Cellphone detection systems were rolled out in new-generation correctional facilities including Tswelopele (Kimberley) and Brandvlei (Western Cape).

Other installations targeted the Johannesburg Management Area and Kgoši Mampuru II Management Area in Gauteng, Pollsmoor and Goodwood in Western Cape as well as Durban-Westville and Umzinto in KwaZulu-Natal. The long-term aim is to install cellphone detection in all correctional facilities.

Automated Fingerprint and Identity System (Afis)

The department initiated the roll-out of Afis in correctional centres around the country. The department's Automated Personal Identity System, which was developed through the Inmate Tracking Project, was implemented at 32 correctional centres and 99 community corrections offices.

This interfaces with the Department of Home Affairs' database to verify the identity of offenders.

Operational structure of correctional facilities

Inmates statistics

During the 2017/18 financial year, the DCS had an average inmate population of 160 583 with approved bed space of 118 723.

The department is still faced with a challenge of overcrowding within its correctional facilities, a situation that is exacerbated by the fact that it is compelled to provide accommodation for both sentenced and un-sentenced inmates within these facilities.

Incarceration of inmates

There was a considerable improvement in security which culminated in targets being met/ achieved by 0.030% (50/164 129) regarding escapes and 4.6% (7 474/164 129) regarding inmates injured as a result of reported assaults.

Review of the CJS

The three main streams of core business of the department are vested in the budget programmes:

- remand detention
- incarceration and corrections
- social reintegration.

Remand detention

The *White Paper on Remand Detention Management in South Africa* of 2014 is relevant to the mandate on remand detention and is consistent with the Correctional Matters Amendment Act of 2011 and other relevant national and international legislation and protocols.

The DCS has commenced with the operationalisation of the White Paper through the development of the overarching departmental policy and procedure manuals.

The CRA was successfully rolled out to 22 remand facilities within all six DCS regions across South Africa.

Remand detention facilities must, therefore, allow for the minimal limitation of an individual's rights, while ensuring secure, and safe, custody.

The White Paper is also a response to the challenges posed by a dramatic increase in remand detainees over the past years.

The DCS established a Remand Detention Branch, which became operational in April 2012.

Together with the Criminal Justice Review Committee, the department embarked on a process of tracking those remand detainees who have been detained the longest in correctional facilities.

The process assisted in determining the factors, which delay the finalisation of such cases, to ensure that these issues are addressed accordingly.

Health services

In line with the NDP, which envisages a health system that is accessible to all, the DCS provides a comprehensive package of healthcare services (nutrition and hygiene services,

pharmaceutical services and primary healthcare) to the inmate population.

In compliance to the National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV, TB and Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) 2017 - 2022, the DCS continued to strengthen mitigation efforts against the above mentioned epidemics.

The fight against the spread of communicable diseases such as TB and HIV in DCS facilities has improved significantly.

The department achieved a TB cure rate of 87% (636/728) of offenders against a set target of 86% for the 2017/18 financial year, as compared to 83% (1 034/1 250) for 2016/17.

The achievement can be attributed to the collaborative effort between the DCS, support partners and the Department of Health.

It has implemented the directive on Universal Test and Treat for all HIV-positive inmates so as to ensure improved health outcomes.

Thus the number of inmates initiated on antiretroviral treatment increased by 1 936 from 24 506 in 2016/17 to 26 442 in 2017/18.

In meeting the nutritional needs of inmates, 8% (13 489/164 129) of those who qualified were prescribed therapeutic diets.

This enhanced the effectiveness of the prescribed treatment for communicable as well as non-communicable diseases.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Mineral Resources

South Africa is a leading producer and supplier of a range of minerals, with over 1 700 mines and quaries across the country.

Mining contributes about 8% directly to South Africa's Gross Domestic Product (GDP) and just under 460 000 direct jobs, with an estimated US$2,5 trillion to US$3 trillion non-energy mineral resource base.

The Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) assumes the custodianship of all mineral resources in South Africa on behalf of its citizens.

To this end, the DMR promotes and regulates the minerals and mining sector for transformation, growth and development as well as ensures that all South Africans derive sustainable benefit from the country's mineral wealth.

Various specialised divisions of the DMR and associated institutions are responsible for the administration of the mining legislation and regulations and for promoting the development of the industry. The DMR's strategic goals are to:

- promote and facilitate an increase in mining activity and in value added to mineral resources extracted in South Africa
- implement transformation policies that redress past imbalances through broader participation in the mineral sector
- provide a framework for managing health and safety risks, enforce compliance and promote best practice in the mineral sector
- promote sustainable resource management, contribute to skills development and the creation of sustainable jobs in the mining sector
- contribute to a reduction in the adverse impacts of mining on the environment
- attract, develop and retain appropriate skills and ensure the optimal utilisation of resources
- implement risk-management strategies and promote corporate governance.

Mining is regulated by three branches: the Mineral Policy and Promotion Branch, the Mineral Regulation Branch and the Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate.

Mineral Policy and Promotion Branch

The Mineral Policy and Promotion Branch was created in April 2005, resulting from the split of the Mineral Development Branch. The strategic plan behind this restructuring was based on the fact that the functions performed by the former Mineral Development Branch could broadly be divided into three main streams: regulation, promotion and policy formulation.

The branch is responsible for formulating mineral-related policies and helps promote the mining and minerals industry of South Africa to make it attractive to investors.

Mineral Regulation Branch

The Mineral Regulation Branch consists of four chief directorates. Their functions are to:

- administer the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002) and other applicable legislation to ensure the granting of prospecting and mining rights in terms of the Act
- promote mineral development including urban renewal, rural development and black economic empowerment
- address past legacies with regard to derelict and ownerless mines and enforce legislation regarding mine rehabilitation by means of regulated environmental management plans
- coordinate and liaise with national, provincial and local government structures for efficient governance.

Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate

The Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate was established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996), as amended, for the purpose of executing the statutory mandate of the DMR to safeguard the health and safety of mine employees and communities affected by mining operations.

The activities of the inspectorate are geared to achieve the following strategic objectives:

- active contribution to sustainable development and growth
- regulation of the minerals sector
- promotion of health and safety in the minerals sector
- efficient and effective service delivery
- management of the culture, systems and people
- ensuring financial stewardship.

The main functions of the Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate are as follows:

- providing policy inputs for the establishment and application of mine safety standards at mining operations and promoting the application thereof
- providing policy inputs towards the establishment and application of mine equipment safety standards at mining operations and promoting their application
- establishing and applying mine health standards at mining operations and promoting these applications
- ensuring an effective support and inspection service.

Budget and funding

The department's budget for the 2017/18 financial year was R1.8 billion.

Role players

Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA)

Government's influence within the mineral industry is not only confined to orderly regulation and the promotion of equal opportunity for all its citizens and investors, but government also participates in mining operations through state-owned companies such as Alexkor, the African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation (Pty) Ltd and the Industrial Development Corporation.

All stakeholders in the industry need to intensify skills-development efforts to ensure that the mining industry operates in a sustainable and competitive environment.

The future of mining in the country largely depends on the successful implementation of skills development initiatives.

Particular focus is placed on artisans and artisan aid as well as other technical skills. Capacity-building within the department and associated institutions has also been prioritised in respect of identified critical areas of skills shortage; necessary interventions have been introduced, which include learnership programmes and bursary schemes.

The MQA was established as a sector education and training authority and facilitates the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors to:

- enable the development and transformation of the sector
- contribute to the health, safety and competitiveness of the sector

- improve access to quality education and training for all
- redress past inequalities in education and training.

The MQA is responsible for:

- developing and implementing a sector skills plan
- developing unit standards and qualifications for the sector
- establishing, registering, administering and promoting learnerships and apprenticeships
- maintaining the quality of standards, qualifications and learning
- disbursing grants from the skills-development levy.

Chamber of Mines

Corporate restructuring of the South African mining industry remains an ongoing exercise. The introduction of the Mining Charter in South Africa was aimed at transforming the mining industry to redress historical imbalances so that the industry is aligned with the changes in the country's overall transformation of its social, political and economic landscape

The transformation of the mining industry has included the consolidation of ownership through minority buy-outs, separation of large diversified companies into two or more specialised companies as well as the purchase of South African mining assets by foreign companies.

The Chamber of Mines of South Africa is a voluntary, private sector employers' organisation founded in 1889, three years after gold was discovered on the Witwatersrand.

It is an association of mining companies and mines operating in the gold, coal, diamond, platinum and other mineral commodity sectors. The organisation acts as the principal advocate of the major policy positions endorsed by mining employers. The organisation represents the formalised views of its membership to various organs and spheres of government, and to other relevant policy-making and opinion-forming entities, both within and outside the country.

South African Mining Development Association (SAMDA)

SAMDA, which was formed in 2000 as a junior mining initiative by a group of people associated with various South African junior and Black Economic Empowerment mining companies, aims to create an enabling environment for raising finance, developing technical and other skills, practising responsible environmental management and sustainable development as well as the maintenance of standards of good practice in the junior mining sector.

Voluntary associations

- The Southern African Institute of Mining and Metallurgy was founded in 1894. This is a professional institute with local and international links aimed at helping members to source news and views about technological developments in the mining, metallurgical and related sectors as well as embracing a professional code of ethics.
- The South African Colliery Managers Association represents eight mining houses and some smaller operators with 43 mine operations in four provinces. Current SACMA membership totals 434 coal mining. The association's operations have an annual turnover of over R35 billion with a labour bill contribution of over R6 billion to the South African workforce comprising 47 000 direct employees.
- The Association of Mine Managers South Africa provides a platform for mining industry professionals to discuss, evaluate and debate mining and minerals policy, technical innovations, safety and health challenges and advancements in mining in South Africa.Current membership stands at 825 in seven categories – candidate (student), junior associate, ordinary, associate, honorary life, honorary associate and retired members.
- Geological Society of South Africa was established in 1895 and is one of the oldest scientific societies in South Africa. It is a society that exists for geologists and earth scientists with an interest in southern Africa and has over 2 500 members and student members.
- The Engineering Council of South Africa is a statutory body established in terms of the Engineering Profession Act, 2000 (Act 46 of 2000). Its primary role is the regulation of the engineering profession in terms of this Act. Its core functions are the accreditation of engineering programmes, registration of persons as professionals in specified categories, and the regulation of the practice of registered persons.
- The South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions is a legislated regulatory body for natural science practitioners in South Africa. The natural sciences encompass a wide range of scientific fields covering basic sciences and many of their applied derivatives.

South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator

The SADPMR regulates the diamond, platinum and gold industries and accelerates beneficiation in the jewellery industry. The SADPMR's objectives are to:

- ensure that precious metal and diamond resources are exploited and developed in the best interests of all South Africans
- promote equitable access to and local beneficiation of precious metals and diamonds
- promote the development of precious metal and diamond enterprises
- advance broad-based socio-economic empowerment
- ensure compliance with the Kimberley Process Certification Scheme (KPCS).

Its functions regarding diamonds include:

- implementing, administering and controlling all matters relating to the purchase, sale, beneficiation, import and export of diamonds
- establishing diamond exchange and export centres to facilitate the buying, selling, export and import of diamonds.

While the South African Diamond Board essentially has a regulatory role, the SADPMR has a promotional role as well.

By administering licences and export approvals, the SADPMR ensures that local demand for diamonds and precious metals is catered for, and that there is growth in local beneficiation of diamonds and precious metals.

Council for Mineral Technology and Research

Mintek helps the minerals industry to operate more effectively by developing and making available the most appropriate and cost-effective mineral recovery and mineral beneficiation technologies.

It is engaged in the full spectrum of minerals research: from the mineralogical examination of ores to the development of

processing, extraction and refining technologies, as well as conducting research into the production of added value products and feasibility and economic studies. Much of this work is carried out in close liaison with the local and international minerals and metallurgical industries.

Mintek is involved in research into the use of nanotechnology for medical applications of gold as well as giving effect to the Hydrogen Strategy.

This is intended to create future demand for gold and platinum in keeping with the national objective of achieving 20% global market share of platinum catalysis by 2020.

Mine Health and Safety Council

The MHSC is a national public entity established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act of 1996, as amended.

The entity comprises a tripartite board represented by the State, employer, and labour members under chairmanship of the Chief Inspector of Mines.

The MHSC is funded by public revenue and is accountable to Parliament. Its main task is to advise the Minister of Mineral Resources on occupational health and safety legislation and research outcomes focused on improving and promoting occupational health and safety in South African mines.

In addition, the council is tasked with:

- overseeing the activities of its committees
- promoting a culture of health and safety in the mining industry
- arranging a summit every two years to review the state of occupational health and safety at mines
- liaising with the MQA and any other statutory bodies about mining health and safety.

With effect from 1 April 2016, the MHSC started doing business only with suppliers who are registered on the Central Supplier Database with National Treasury.

Council for Geoscience

The CGS undertakes geological mapping and carries out studies pertaining to the identification, nature, extent and genesis of ore deposits and also maintains national databases of the country's geoscientific data and information.

The CGS is also able to provide commercial geoscientific services.

The CGS participates in various Southern African Development Community (SADC) projects aimed at promoting the economic development of the southern African subcontinent.

International cooperative projects that have been carried out, or are in progress, include geological mapping, geochemical and geophysical surveys, and the production of maps in many countries, either on a bilateral basis or collaboratively in the SADC region.

State Diamond Trader

The SDT's main business is to buy and sell rough diamonds to promote equitable access to and beneficiation of diamond resources. The main aim of the SDT is to address distortions in the diamond industry and correct historical market failures to develop and grow South Africa's diamond cutting and polishing industry.

The SDT is a state-owned entity established in terms of the Diamonds Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 29 of 2005). The company is classified as a Schedule 3b entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).

The SDT sells to approved customers through the SDT's application and approval process. The entity is eligible by law and proclamation to purchase up to 10% of the running rights of all diamond-producing mines in South Africa.

Petroleum Agency South Africa (PASA)

PASA promotes exploration for onshore and offshore oil and gas resources, as well as their optimal development on behalf of Government, as designated in terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2002. The agency regulates exploration and production activities, and acts as the custodian of the national petroleum exploration and production database.

African Mining Partnership (AMP)

The AMP, whose main function is to drive the New Partnership for Africa's Development mining initiatives, was established during the African Mining Minister's meeting in Cape Town in February 2004. South Africa, as a major role player in this body, has played an important role as the Secretariat, in hosting as well as coordinating the affairs of the AMP. The AMP merged with the African Union Conference of Ministers Responsible for Mineral Resources Development.

African Diamond Producers Association (ADPA)

ADPA is an association of diamond-producing African countries, 11 of which have full membership while seven only enjoy observer status. The association is chaired on a rotational basis.

The main focus of the ADPA revolves around the implementation of aligned policies and strategies intended to maximise the benefits derived from revenue of diamonds across the African continent. In doing so, the ADPA explores the development of a best practice document that will promote the realisation of harmonised policies across Africa with a goal to increase foreign investment in the diamond sector for the benefit of all member states.

The Kimberley Process

South Africa is one of the founding members of the Kimberley Process, which brought into existence the KPCS or Kimberley Process Certification Scheme.

The Kimberley Process was established when diamond producing countries convened in Kimberley, South Africa, in May 2000, to discuss ways to stem the trade in "conflict diamonds" and ensure that the diamond trade was not fuelling armed conflicts.

In December 2000, the United Nations General Assembly adopted the landmark Resolution 55/56 of 2000, which supported the establishment of an international certification scheme for rough diamonds.

By November 2002, negotiations between governments, the international diamond industry and civil society organisations resulted in the creation of the KPCS, which was launched in Kimberley, South Africa, in 2003. As one of the founding members of the KPCS, South Africa played a pivotal role in the establishment of the KPCS as well as the harmonisation of the regulatory framework relating to the sale and export of diamonds. The KPCS has 54 participants representing 81

countries that counts for 99,8% of the global production of rough diamonds. The KPCS core document (statutes) governs the global production of rough diamonds and stipulates the objectives, definitions, internal controls and, with which most importantly, minimum requirements that each participant must comply.

The United Arab Emirates assumed KPCS Chairpersonship in January 2016 and will serve for 12 months.

Projects and initiatives

With significant resources of gold, uranium, chrome, manganese, Platinum Group Metals (PGM), titanium minerals, vanadium, coal, limestone, vermiculite and zirconium, South African mining real estate remains attractive for development.

South Africa has significant known reserves and resources of mineral commodities, with almost 60 minerals being actively mined and prospects for exploitation of an additional two new minerals over the short to medium term. A large number of these known reserves was discovered using conventional exploration methodologies. For this reason, there is still considerable residual potential for discovery of world-class deposits using modern exploration technology.

This is further supported by existing mining infrastructure, which enables investors to leverage maximum value from their investment while simultaneously contributing to socio-political improvement.

Shale-gas exploration

The potential of shale-gas exploration and exploitation provides an opportunity for South Africa to begin exploring the production of its own fuel and marks the beginning of the reindustrialisation of the economy.

The proposed regulations on petroleum exploration and exploitation prescribe good international petroleum industry practices and standards, which enhance safe exploration and production of all petroleum and will further ensure that petroleum exploration is conducted in a socially and environmentally balanced manner.

The technical regulations provide for the assessment of the potential impact of the proposed activities on the environment; the protection of freshwater resources and mechanisms for the co-existence of shale gas exploitation and the Square Kilometre Array project.

The South African Government would have a free-carried shareholding of 20% in entities producing shale gas in the Karoo in future.

The security of energy supply, in light of the demand, has galvanised the need for a diverse energy mix.

The DMR would therefore continue to promote, among others, exploration for shale gas. It would put in place the necessary legal framework to ensure that the exploration of resources is undertaken in a responsible manner, to ensure that the environment is protected for future generations.

Working with other government departments and institutions, the DMR will continue to promote mineral value addition, which would strengthen the interface between the industry and the socio-economic development of South Africa.

As part of improving the socio-economic development of mining towns, the department would continue to support the Special Presidential Package in distressed mining towns.

In 2016/17, five applications for mining shale gas were being considered for licensing. Research on shale gas is progressing, following the additional allocation in 2014/15 of R108 million for the department's shale gas project.

> Mineral sales increased by 17,4% year-on-year in May 2016. The largest positive contributors to the increase were:
> - Gold: 44,1%
> - PGMs: 20,1%
> - Coal: 13,8%
> - Manganese ore: 82,6%
> - Iron ore: 14,5%
>
> Seasonally adjusted mineral sales at the aforementioned prices increased by 20,6% in May 2016 compared with April 2016. This followed month-on-month changes of 1,2% in April 2016. Mining production had decreased by 2,5% year-on-year by June 2016.

Stability in the mining sector

Mining production picked up in the final quarter of 2015. Growth for the year accelerated from -9,8% in the third quarter of 2015 to 1,5% in the final quarter. This was supported by increased production of diamonds and nickel.

The production volumes of coal, PGMs and building materials increased at a more moderate pace despite further steps to enhance operational efficiencies, while the production of gold, manganese ore and other metallic minerals contracted over the period.

Although growth in the mining sector turned around from a decrease of 1,6% in 2014 to an increase of 3,0% in 2015, global demand for commodities remained weak during 2016, resulting in lower mining export volumes. Despite the weaker exchange rate and a recovery in commodity prices, the mining sector thus saw its share of South Africa's export basket decline marginally.

Stability within the mining industry remains imperative to ensure its sustainable growth and competitiveness. The importance of healthy relations between mining companies, communities and local government cannot be overstated. For mining to be sustainable, mutual respect and cooperation are critical. Right-holders must also engage continuously with the relevant communities, for the duration of their right, to pre-emptively address issues as they arise.

The DMR continues to engage various community structures, where discontent between mining companies and some host communities – often characterised by violence and destruction to property – has become more pronounced.

While employment of people living close to the mines remains important, South Africa belongs to all who live in it, and opportunities from mining cannot only be limited to those residing nearer mining operations. Mineral resources must be used to benefit the country as a whole.

Mine health and safety

The purpose of the Promotion of Mine Safety and Health programme is to ensure the safe mining of minerals under healthy working conditions.

In 2016/17, the DME promoted mine health and safety over the medium term by:

- conducting 8 396 inspections and audits, and implementing the occupational health and safety strategy to reduce occupational fatalities by 20% and occupational injuries by 20%

- reducing occupational diseases among mine workers by 10%
- implementing the occupational health and safety improvement strategy and enforcing its guidelines.

The Mineral Regulations and Mine Health and Safety programmes contribute 58,90% of the total budget for employees' compensation.

The higher contribution to compensation of employees is due to the labour-intensive nature of inspections and technical expertise required for the job.

Skills development

The DMR aimed to contribute to skills development in the mining sector by reviewing and implementing the certificate of competency model, developed with the MQA and universities, as well as improve healthcare turnaround times on an ongoing basis by:

- ensuring 80% adherence to prescribed timeframes for resolving medical appeals
- ensuring 90% adherence to timeframes for appeals to the Chief inspector of Mines
- ensuring 80% adherence to timeframes for applications in terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2002.

Illegal mining

Illegal mining is often organised and carried out by organised crime syndicates. Illegal miners, known as zama zamas, operate in disused mines and set ambushes and traps for employees, security and rival groups of illegal miners.

Illegal miners risk their lives by using explosives to open cemented shafts at abandoned mines or live underground for extended periods of time, without necessary protective gear, once they have gained access to operational mines.

The illegal mining market is a well-managed five-tier system.

The Chamber of Mines has recognised that the only way to deal with the problem is to focus on both the supply and demand side of illegal mining and all five levels of the syndicates need to be addressed, namely:

- the underground workers who do the physical mining – many have worked in the mines previously and use chemical substances to refine the products
- the buyers are on the surface around the mines and also organise the level one illegal miners and support them with food, protection and equipment
- the regional bulk buyers are usually entities which in most cases have permits issued in terms of the Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005) to trade in precious metals
- those who distribute nationally and sometimes internationally do so through front companies or legitimate exporters
- the top international receivers and distributors are usually international refineries and intermediary companies.

Integrated licensing

The construct of the Mining Regulatory Framework is fragmented and has been identified as one of the binding constraints to the growth and competitiveness of the South African mining sector. The departments of mineral resources, water affairs and environmental affairs have agreed on the modalities of integrating the timeframes and processes of environmental authorisation and water-use licensing for prospecting and mining operations.

The modalities include the departments implementing the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), for the industry to be regulated by a single environmental piece of legislation.

Processes of environmental authorisation will be contained within the same time frames that apply to prospecting and mining authorisations, and the process of approving water use licences will also be finalised within the same time frames.

This represents a significant improvement in service delivery, both in terms of certainty regarding security of tenure when mining or prospecting rights are issued and in terms of improved turnaround times resulting from the processes being finalised in parallel rather than sequentially as was previously the case.

Job creation and sustainable development

The South African Government is committed to ensuring a conducive environment for investment. The amendment of the principal legislation, the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2002, was expected to finalised in 2017.

The Mining Charter was expected to be gazetted by mid-March 2017.

Rehabilitation of mines

The mine rehabilitation programme has had a positive effect on communities where the projects include economic growth owing to sourcing labour and material locally. The programme also results in improved health and well-being of communities. The rehabilitation programme reduces the risk of humans and animals being exposed to asbestos fibres originating from sites where asbestos used to be mined.

Job creation is one of the key requirements of the rehabilitation project. This contributes to some of the priorities of the National Development Plan.

The DMR also develops reports on mine closures as well as derelict and ownerless mines. The strategy for managing and rehabilitating derelict and ownerless mines aims to guide the management of the environmental legacies of mining.

It proposes a prudent course of action for the state to discharge its responsibility regarding constitutional rights as contemplated in Section 24 of the Constitution.

The implementation of the strategy will continue with annual updates, completed by actuarial scientists commissioned by the department, estimating the State's liability for the rehabilitation of derelict or ownerless mines.

The DMR plans to rehabilitate 220 derelict, ownerless and dangerous mine sites by 2019.

Acid mine drainage (AMD)

By August 2015, harmful effects of AMD on the environment were being successfully mitigated by a drainage plant in Germiston, Gauteng, which contains a comprehensive mixing system. The plant consists of a combination of 53 specialised mixers.

In May 2016, the Department of Water and Sanitation announced that National Treasury would commit R600 million, annually, to the AMD initiative.

This long-term intervention will therefore turn the AMD problem into a long-term sustainable solution by producing

fully treated water that will significantly increase water supply to the Vaal River System and defer the need for further costly augmentation beyond Phase 2 of the Lesotho Highlands Water Project for at least 30 years.

Resources

South Africa's mineral wealth is typically found in the following well-known geological formations and settings:

- the Witwatersrand Basin yields some 93% of South Africa's gold output and contains considerable uranium, silver, pyrite and osmiridium resources
- the Bushveld Complex is known for PGMs (with associated copper, nickel and cobalt mineralisation), chromium and vanadium-bearing titanium-iron ore formations as well as large deposits of industrial minerals, including fluorspar and andalusite
- the Transvaal Supergroup contains enormous resources of manganese and iron ore
- the Karoo Basin extends through Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State as well as Limpopo, hosting considerable bituminous coal and anthracite resources
- the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex hosts extensive deposits of copper, phosphate, titanium, vermiculite, feldspar and zirconium ores
- kimberlite pipes host diamonds that also occur in alluvial, fluvial and marine settings
- heavy mineral sands contain ilmenite, rutile and zircon
- significant deposits of lead-zinc ores associated with copper and silver are found in the Northern Cape near Aggeneys.

Gold

South Africa dominated global gold production in the 20th century. There are 35 large-scale gold mines operating in South Africa, including the record setting TauTona mine, which extends 3,9 km underground. TauTona means "great lion" in Setswana. South Africa accounts for 11% of the world's gold reserves.

Gold production fell to 143 711 kg in 2015 compared to 151 622 kg mined the previous year. The seasonally adjusted production index decreased by 5,4% in 2015. Although the dollar price of gold decreased by 10,3% in 2015, the depreciation of the local currency saw the rand price of gold rising by 7,4% in 2015 (R474 090 per kg in 2015 compared with R441 246 per kg in 2014).

> In June 2016, the DMR's Deputy Minister together with the Mining Qualification Authority (MQA), the National Skills Fund and the Namakwa District Municipality launched the Transforming the Youth Through Artisan Skills Youth Development Programme in Springbok, Northern Cape.
>
> The programme aims to provide skills and training to unemployed youth over a three-year period. Some 500 artisan students were registered with the MQA on the same programme.

Coal

The accelerated demand for coal, accompanied by an increase in international coal prices, has invariably changed the buying patterns and structure of the local coal export industry.

The emergence of the export market for lower-grade coal has presented government with a challenge in that it has constrained the availability of coal that was historically sold to Eskom.

During the winter of 2015, coal production declined by 4,1% compared to 2014's winter. There was a 2,9% fall in national electricity generation and a 2,3% fall in electricity consumed. For the entire 2015, seasonally adjusted coal production fell by 3,3%.

Some other factors affecting the coal sector include:

- rapidly increasing production costs over the past few years
- the impact of declining reserves
- challenges with securing capital for future and expansion projects
- the impact of previous above-inflation increases
- a weak global thermal coal market, meaning slower commodity demand
- declining yields, ageing mines, more difficult geology, poorer quality coal reserves and rising regulatory costs.

Platinum group metals (PGMs)

Platinum, palladium, rhodium, osmium, ruthenium and iridium occur together in nature alongside nickel and copper. Platinum, palladium and rhodium, the most economically significant of the PGMs, are found in the largest quantities.

The remaining PGMs are produced as co-products. South Africa is the world's leading platinum and rhodium producer, and the second- largest palladium producer after Russia. South Africa's production is sourced entirely from the Bushveld Complex, the largest known PGM-resource in the world.

PGMs were the main contributor to the 3,5% rise in overall mining production. Of the four major minerals, the PGM group was the only one to record a production increase in 2015. The low base created in 2014 by the PGM miners' strike saw PGMs performing strongly year-on-year in the first half of 2015, with production rising by 46,2% for the year as a whole.

Platinum

South Africa accounts for 96% of known global reserves of the PGMs.

The Merensky Reef, stretching from southern Zimbabwe through to the Rustenburg and Pretoria regions, is the centre of platinum mining in South Africa, playing host to companies such as Rustenburg Platinum Mines and Bafokeng Rasimone Platinum Mines.

Amplats is the industry leader in the mining, marketing, and distribution of platinum. Amplats produces 40% of the world's total PGMs.

Other key platinum mining companies in South Africa include BHP Billiton and Impala Platinum.

Platinum mining in South Africa is growing. The establishment of projects such as the R7,1 billion Twickenham Expansion Project, 100 km south-east of Polokwane, will see the production of 250 000 t/m pure platinum.

The Impala Platinum No. 20 Shaft Project is geared to produce 185 000 ounces of platinum a year on the Bushveld Complex.

Many platinum mines are implementing mechanisation with about 30% of the country's current underground platinum production coming from mechanised mining. Mechanisation is difficult for the gold-mining industry because orebodies are steeper than those of platinum mines.

Palladium

South Africa is the world's second-largest palladium producer.

All of South Africa's production is sourced from the Bushveld Igneous Complex, which hosts the world's largest resource of PGMs.

Palladium and platinum are more abundant than any of the other PGMs.

Ferrous minerals

South Africa is the largest producer of chromium and vanadium ores and a leading supplier of their alloys. It is also a significant producer of iron and manganese ores, and a minor producer of ferrosilicon and silicon metal.

Ferrous minerals are produced from some 32 mines and 23 ferroalloys smelters.

Copper

Palabora, a large copper mine, smelter and refinery complex managed by the Palabora Mining Company at the town of Phalaborwa in Limpopo, is South Africa's only producer of refined copper. Producing about 80 000 t per year, it supplies most of South Africa's copper needs and exports the balance.

Useful byproduct metals and minerals include zirconium chemicals, magnetite and nickel sulphate as well as small quantities of gold, silver and platinum. Palabora's large block cave copper mine and smelter complex employs approximately 2 200 people. Palabora also owns a nearby vermiculite deposit, which is mined and processed for sale worldwide. Vermiculite is a versatile industrial mineral.

Chrome

South Africa accounts for 74% of chrome reserves globally.

Manganese

South Africa accounts for 26% of manganese reserves, but exploitation of the mineral has not reflected its development potential.

Diamonds

South Africa, the site of the biggest diamond discovery, plans to process a greater proportion of its gems locally to keep more profit in the country.

Government wants to cut and refine 70% of the diamonds mined in South Africa by 2023. Only 4% is processed locally.

Industrial minerals

There are some 680 producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, of which almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector.

There are some 153 producers of clays (brick-making and special), 40 limestone and dolomite, 79 dimension stone, 28 salt and 20 silica producers. Bulk consumption of industrial minerals is realised in the domestic market, as most are low-priced commodities and sold in bulk, making their economic exploitation highly dependent on transport costs and distance to markets.

Mineral Regulation

The purpose of the Mineral Regulation Programme is to regulate the minerals and mining sector to promote economic development and employment and also ensure transformation and environmental compliance.

There was a 5% increase in the budget allocation for Mineral Regulation.

Expenditure in the Management Mineral Regulation subprogramme is planned to almost double to R40 million. This subprogramme provides overall management of the programme.

Expenditure is planned to increase because of responsibilities transferred from the Department of Environmental Affairs.

The staff complement for the branch was expected to increase to 403 in 2015/16. This is a 35% increase over the staffing levels in 2013/14, and includes the appointment of environmental mineral resource inspectors who will work within the DMR to ensure that the provisions of national environmental legislation are applied across the mining sector.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back more than 3 700 billion years. Significant fragments of this geology have been preserved and, along with them, mineral deposits.

The preservation of Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved.

Barberton mountain land

This beautiful and rugged tract of country with some of the oldest rocks on Earth is found south of Nelspruit, Mpumalanga.

The greenstone formations represent the remains of some of the earliest clearly decipherable geological events on the Earth's surface.

Silica-rich layers within the greenstone have revealed traces of a very early life form – minute blue-green algae.

Granites surround the formations and gneisses that are more than 3 000 million years old. Gold, iron ore, magnesite, talc, barite and verdite are mined in the area.

Witwatersrand

The geology and gold mines of the Witwatersrand (Ridge of White Waters) are world famous.

More than 50 055 t of gold have been produced from seven major goldfields distributed in a crescent-like shape along the 350-km long basin, from Welkom in the Free State in the south-west, to Evander in the east.

The geology of the region can be seen at many outcrops in the suburbs of Johannesburg. The sequence is divided into a lower shale-rich group and an upper sandstone-rich group. The latter contains the important gold-bearing quartz-pebble conglomerates.

Bushveld Complex and escarpment

The Bushveld Complex extends over an area of 65 000 km^2 and reaches up to 8 km in thickness. It is by far the largest known layered igneous intrusion in the world and contains most of the world's resources of chromium, PMGs and vanadium.

The impressive igneous geology of the Bushveld Complex can best be viewed in Mpumalanga, in the mountainous terrain around the Steelpoort Valley. The imposing Dwars River chromitite layers, platinum-bearing dunite pipes, the discovery site of the platinum-rich Merensky Reef, and extensive magnetite-ilmenite layers and pipes near Magnet Heights and Kennedy's Vale are in this area.

The Great Escarpment of Mpumalanga is one of South Africa's most scenic landscapes. This area features the Bourke's Luck Potholes, which have become a major tourist attraction.

Drakensberg Escarpment and Golden Gate Highlands National Park

The main ramparts of the Drakensberg range, which reach heights of more than 3 000 m, lie in KwaZulu-Natal and on the Lesotho border. These precipitous mountains are the highest in southern Africa and provide the most dramatic scenery.

They were formed by the partial erosion of a high plateau of basaltic lava, which is more than 1 500 m thick, and covers the Clarens sandstones.

Prior to its erosion, the continental basalt field covered significantly more of the continent.

The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, which covers 243 000 ha, has been declared a world heritage site. More than 40% of all known San cave paintings in southern Africa are found here.

The scenic Golden Gate Highlands National Park in the Free State features spectacular sandstone bluffs and cliffs. The sandstone reflects a sandy desert environment that existed around 200 million years ago. Dinosaur fossils are still found in the area.

Karoo

Rocks of the Karoo Supergroup cover about two-thirds of South Africa and reach a thickness of several thousand metres. The sedimentary portion of this rock sequence reveals an almost continuous record of deposition and life, from the end of the Carboniferous into the mid-Jurassic periods, between 300 million and 180 million years ago.

Karoo rocks are internationally renowned for their wealth of continental fossils, and particularly for the fossils of mammal-like reptiles that show the transition from reptiles to early mammals, and for their early dinosaur evolution. During this long period of the Earth's history, southern Africa was a lowland area in the centre of the Gondwana supercontinent.

Initially, the prehistoric Karoo was a place of vast glaciation. It then became a shallow inland sea, before this was replaced by huge rivers, with lush flood plains and swampy deltas, which dried out to form a sandy desert. Finally, vast outpourings of continental basaltic lava accompanied by the break-up of Gondwana occurred.

Diamond fields

Kimberlite is the primary host-rock of diamonds and was first mined as weathered "yellow ground" from the Kimberley mines, starting in 1871 at Colesberg koppie, now the site of the Big Hole of Kimberley. At increasing depths, less-weathered "blue ground" that continued to yield diamonds was encountered.

The discovery of kimberlite-hosted diamonds was a key event in South Africa's economic and social development, and paved the way for the later development of the Witwatersrand goldfields.

The Orange and Vaal rivers' alluvial diamond fields and the rich West Coast marine diamond deposits all originated by erosion from primary kimberlite pipes.

Meteorite impact sites

Impacts by large meteoritic projectiles played a major role in shaping the surface of the Earth. The Vredefort Dome is the oldest and largest visible impact structure known on Earth and is a World Heritage Site. It lies some 110 km south-west of Johannesburg, in the vicinity of Parys and Vredefort in the Free State and North West.

About 40 km north of Pretoria is the small bowl-shaped Tswaing meteorite-impact crater. Just one kilometre in diameter, this is one of the best-preserved and accessible impact craters of its kind on Earth. It was created about 220 000 years ago when a meteorite, about 50 m, wide slammed into the Earth, and is one of the few impact craters containing a crater lake.

Pilanesberg

The Pilanesberg Complex and National Park in North West is a major scientific attraction which includes a number of unique geological sites.

The complex consists of an almost perfectly circular, dissected mountain massif some 25 km in diameter, making it the third-largest alkaline ring complex in the world. The geology reflects the roots of an ancient volcano that erupted some 1,5 billion years ago. The remains of ancient lava flows and volcanic breccias can be seen.

The dominant feature of the complex is the concentric cone sheets formed by resurgent magma that intruded ring fractures created during the collapse of the volcano. There are old mining sites for fluorite and dimension stone, and a non-diamond-bearing kimberlite pipe in the region.

Cradle of Humankind

This World Heritage Site extends from the Witwatersrand in the south to the Magaliesberg in the north, and is considered to be of universal value because of the outstanding richness of its fossil hominid cave sites.

The Sterkfontein area near Krugersdorp is the most prolific and accessible fossil hominid site on Earth. It comprises several scientifically important cave locations, including Sterkfontein, Swartkrans, Drimolen, Kromdraai, Gladysvale and Plover's Lake, all of which have produced a wealth of material crucial to palaeoanthropological research.

Table Mountain and the Cape Peninsula

Table Mountain is South Africa's best known and most spectacular geological feature, comprising a number of major rock formations.

The earliest of these are the deformed slates of the Malmesbury Group, which formed between 560 million and 700 million years ago.

Coarse-grained Cape granite intruded about 540 million years ago. The Table Mountain Group, which started forming about 450 million years ago, consists of basalt, reddish mudstone and sandstone that is well exposed along Chapman's Peak.

Overlying this is the light-coloured sandstone that makes up the higher mountains and major cliff faces of the Cape Peninsula, as far south as Cape Point.

Much younger sandy formations make up the Cape Flats and other low-lying areas adjacent to Table Mountain. The Table Mountain Group continues further inland across False Bay in the strongly deformed Cape Fold Belt.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Police, Defence and Intelligence

The National Development Plan (NDP) envisages a South African society which is safe at home, at school and at work and enjoying life free of fear. This is also in line with Outcome 3 (all people in South Africa are and feel safe) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

Department of Police

The South African Police Service (SAPS) derives its powers and functions from Section 205 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and from the SAPS Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995). This legislation regulates the SAPS in terms of its core function, which is to prevent, investigate and combat crime.

South African Police Service

The SAPS is South Africa's principal law-enforcement body.The objectives of policing are to prevent, combat and investigate crime; maintain public order; protect and secure the inhabitants of the Republic and their property; and uphold and enforce the law. The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa. The mission of the SAPS is to:

- Prevent and combat crime that may threaten the safety and security of any community.
- Investigate any crimes threatening the safety and security of any community.
- Ensure that offenders are brought to justice.
- Participate in efforts to address the causes of crime.

The National Commissioner is the Accounting Officer of the SAPS. Deputy National Commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and Provincial Commissioners (under whom the cluster and station commanders fall), report to the National Commissioner.

Code of Conduct

The Minister of Police is responsible for determining national policing policy and the overall execution of the department's mandate, in relation to the following key pieces of legislation:

- Civilian Secretariat for Police Service Act, 2011 (Act 2 of 2011).
- Control of Access to Public Premises and Vehicles Act, 1985 (Act 53 of 1985).
- Dangerous Weapons Act, 2013 (Act 15 of 2013).
- Explosives Act, 1956 (Act 26 of 1956).
- Firearms Control Act, 2000 (Act 60 of 2000).
- Game Theft Act, 1991 (Act 105 of 1991).
- Intimidation Act, 1982 (Act 72 of 1982).
- Independent Police Investigative Directorate Act, 2011 (Act 1 of 2011).
- National Key Points Act, 1980 (Act 102 of 1980).
- Private Security Industry Regulation Act, 2001 (Act 56 of 2001).
- Protection of Constitutional Democracy against Terrorist and Related Activities Act, 2004 (Act 33 of 2004).
- Regulation of Gatherings Act, 1993 (Act 205 of 1993).
- Second-Hand Goods Act, 2009 (Act 6 of 2009).
- South African Police Service Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995).
- Stock Theft Act, 1959 (Act 57 of 1959).
- Tear-Gas Act, 1964 (Act 16 of 1964).
- Transfer of the South African Railways Police Force to the South African Police Act, 1986 (Act 83 of 1986):

In the execution of its constitutional mandate, the SAPS derives its powers and functions from the following key legislation:

- Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007):
- Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008).
- Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005).
- Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977).
- Counterfeit Goods Act, 1997 (Act 37 of 1997).
- Customs and Excise Act, 1966 (Act 91 of 1966).
- Diamonds Act, 1986 (Act 56 of 1986).
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002).
- Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998).
- Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act, 1992 (Act 140 of 1992).
- Exchange Control Regulations, 1961.
- Films and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996).
- Financial Intelligence Centre Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001).
- Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002).
- Inquest Act, 1959 (Act 58 of 1959).
- Implementation of the Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court Act, 2002 (Act 27 of 2002).
- International Cooperation in Criminal Matters Act, 1996 (Act 75 of 1996).
- Liquor Act, 2003 (Act 59 of 2003).
- Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998).
- Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002).
- National Conventional Arms Control Act, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002).
- National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998).
- National Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996).
- National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994).
- Non-Proliferation of Weapons of Mass Destruction Act, 1993 (Act 87 of 1993).
- Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006).
- Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005).
- Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004).
- Prevention and Combating of Torture of Persons Act, 2013 (Act 13 of 2013).
- Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act, 2013 (Act 7 of 2013).
- Protection from Harassment Act, 2011 (Act 17 of 2011)
- Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998)
- Regulation of Interception of Communication and Provision of Communication-Related Information Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002).
- Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act, 2010 (Act 2 of 2010).
- South African Police Service Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995).
- State of Emergency Act, 1997 (Act 64 of 1997).

Code of Conduct

The SAPS Code of Conduct serves as a guideline for SAPS members to know and understand their responsibilities and obligations towards the general public.

Each member of the SAPS is obliged to give a written undertaking to adhere to the principles of the Code of Conduct, to ensure a safe and secure environment for all people of South Africa and to protect the life and property of the citizens of South Africa and all its inhabitants, including foreigners.

This ensures that all members are faithful to South Africa, honour the Constitution and abide by it in the performance of their duties and/or their daily tasks.

Resources

At the end of March 2018, the establishment of the SAPS was 193 297, including 150 791 SAPS Act members and 42 506 Pubic Service Act members, compared to 194 605 personnel, at the end of March 2017.

At the end of March 2018, the police/population ratio was 1:375. During the 2017/18 financial year, the average employee turnover rate was 2,7%. This represents a marginal increase of 2,4%, compared to 2016/17. The loss of critical skills is monitored monthly through a workforce analysis to ensure direct proactive interventions.

The filling of critical vacancies within six months, after the post became vacant, is prioritised. Resignations contributed the most towards the number of exits recorded in the 2017/18 financial year, followed by retirements.

Resignations increased from 1 889, recorded, in 2016/17 to 2 039 in 2017/18. The most prominent reasons for employees resigning from the service is due to more lucrative work prospects, including better compensation opportunities. Retirements increased from 1 331 in 2016/17 to 1 412 in 2017/18.

By the end of 2017/18, the SAPS had 52 385 transport assets, which consists of 48 337 vehicles, 1 040 motorcycles, 49 aircrafts, 136 boats, 142 pieces of machinery (e.g. forklifts) and 2 681 trailers.

At the end of the 2017/18 financial year, there were 1 146 police stations countrywide.

Budget

The SAPS was allocated a budget of R86 761 128 billion in 2017/18, broken down into the following five financial programmes:

- Administration – R18 500 073 billion
- Visible Policing – R43 946 295 billion
- Detective Service – R17 771 032 billion
- Crime Intelligence – R3 704 787 billion
- Protection and Security Services – R2 838 941 billion.

The total expenditure for the 2017/18 financial year amounted to R86 605 048 000, which represents a spending rate of 99,8%. An amount of R156 080 million remained from the voted allocation for the financial year.

Visible policing

The Visible Policing Programme comprises of the Crime Prevention, Border Security and Specialised Interventions Subprogrammes, which are managed by the Visible Policing and the Operational Response Services Divisions.

The Visible Policing Division provides direction on the effective combating of crime, through the provisioning of a visible policing service.

The purpose of the Division is to discourage all crime, by providing a proactive and responsive policing service, striving towards the reduction of crime levels and to instil community confidence in the SAPS.

The division renders its services by developing, implementing, monitoring and executing regulations, policies and acts.

It has four components: Proactive Policing Services, Firearms, Liquor and Second-Hand Goods (FLASH) Services; Rapid Rail, and Police Emergency Services and Social Crime Prevention.

Crime in South Africa

Serious crime include contact crime, contact-related crime, and property-related crime.

The SAPS uses enhanced police visibility and targeted crime prevention operations to deter and detect prevailing threats, within a particular policing precinct, either at police station, cluster or provincial levels.

Serious crime reduced by 4,3% from 1 745 385 reported serious crimes, in 2016/17 to 1 670 574, in 2017/18. Crimes against women indicated an increase of 2,7% from 172 961 reported crimes, in 2016/17 to 177 620, by the end of March 2018.

A decrease of 0,7% for crimes against children was recorded from 43 842 reported crimes, in 2016/17 to 43 540 reported crimes, in 2017/18.

Reported crime for unlawful possession and dealing in drugs, increased by 10,5% from 292 689, in 2016/17 to 323 547, in 2017/18.

Social Crime Prevention

Social Crime Prevention is responsible for the implementation of crime prevention awareness programmes and campaigns, the management of crimes against vulnerable groups, sexual offences, human trafficking, domestic violence and victim empowerment.

During the 2017/18 financial year, 88 community outreach campaigns were conducted, including 24 national and 64 provincial campaigns, compared to 83 campaigns in 2016/17.

School Safety Programme

The process of identifying schools for the implementation of the School Safety Programme, is done on crime prevalence or threats of crime and violence. The SAPS also uses crime threat and crime pattern analysis to identify hotspot schools to ensure focused police interventions.

During the 2017/18 financial year, 1 250 schools were identified for the implementation of the programme, as part of the School Safety Protocol, which was entered into by the SAPS and the Department of Basic Education in 2011.

The programme was implemented at 1 249 of the identified schools. The implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998) and the National Instruction on Domestic Violence, 1999 (Act 7 of 1999), is continuously monitored to identify critical gaps or challenges, in order to take corrective steps to reduce the number of SAPS members not complying with it and improve service delivery to victims.

The content of the Domestic Violence Learning Programme has been reviewed and incorporated in the new Domestic Violence and Vulnerable Groups Learning Programme, which was piloted during the 2017/18 financial year.

Victim-Friendly Rooms

The SAPS continues to make an effort to improve services rendered to victims of sexual offences and domestic violence, by ensuring that victim-friendly services are rendered and that Victim-Friendly Rooms are established at all police stations.

Victim-friendly services are aimed at reducing secondary victimisation and enabling victims to provide details that will assist in investigations.

The 1 146 SAPS police stations render a victim-friendly service. As at 31 March 2018, there were 968 Victim-Friendly Rooms at police stations.

Furthermore, there are 81 Victim-Friendly Rooms at satellite police stations, contact points, airports, railway coaches and at Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) units.

The SAPS **guidelines on the policing of older persons** were approved in the 2017/18 financial year. Subsequently, 50 000 booklets of the guidelines were procured and 40 500 copies were issued to all nine provinces.

The **guidelines on the policing of people with disabilities** were also finalised. The **guidelines on vulnerable groups** were developed with the input from disability organisations, including Chapter 9 institutions.

The guidelines would ensure that an effective and efficient policing service is rendered to older persons and people with disabilities.

Another project during the 2017/18 financial year was the SAPS Implementation Plan for Child Justice. The SAPS collaborated in the management of One-Stop Child Justice Centres with stakeholders in the criminal justice sector, as part of its interdepartmental obligation. In addition, the SAPS is part of the Intersectoral Committee on Child Justice, charged with the monitoring of the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008).

A total of 40 962 children were charged on 42 642 criminal charges, including 3 220 charges for sexual offences. Child Protection Week 2017 was launched, in the Western Cape, at Langa Township on 28 May 2017. The closing event took place at Lusikisiki Village in the Eastern Cape on 4 June 2017.

Emergency Response Services

10111 call centres

The SAPS's 22 10111 Command Centres received 12 635 519 calls in 2017/18 compared to 8 553 079 in 2016/17 – an increase of 32.30%. Approximately 3 753 621 or 29,71% of the 12 635 519 calls were registered as police-related emergency calls, compared to 2 917 831 or 34,11%, in 2016/17.

Flying Squad

Flying Squad units are used as force multipliers in support of police stations and other units.

The Flying Squad is mandated to ensure an effective response to priority or serious and violent crimes in progress, which require immediate response, as well as police assistance during less serious crimes/complaints, if no other response vehicle is available.

By mid-2018, there were 30 Flying Squad units countrywide. During the 2017/18 financial year, Flying Squad units attended to 69 763 complaints, secured 17 460 arrests, conducted 1 221 043 searches of vehicles and persons, conducted 108 518 patrols, 29 809 vehicle checkpoints and 748 roadblocks. Flying Squad units confiscated 1 101 illegal firearms and 5 919 hijacked or stolen vehicles.

Hostage negotiation

Hostage negotiators have been involved in hostage and related crisis incidents, including national and international negotiations.

These incidents, include hostage, barricade and kidnapping incidents, as well as abductions and domestic violence. Negotiators also dealt with suicidal persons.

In 2017/18, hostage negotiators attended to 541 incidents, compared to 579 in 2016/17. Hostage negotiators spent approximately 10 819.45 working hours on hostage negotiation in the 2017/18 financial year.

Water Policing and Diving Service

SAPS divers within the water policing and the diving services environment provides a diving-related response service.

These actions involve search, rescue and recovery operations. It entails the recovery of the bodies of drowned victims, exhibits submerged in water, hazardous liquids or substances and ensuring adherence to water safety regulations.

The SAPS currently has 203 trained and active divers and 97 trained vessel handlers. During the 2017/18 financial year, SAPS divers conducted 1 410 dive-related operations, amounting to 9 912.12 hours, during which 847 bodies of drowned victims were recovered.

A total of 573 bodies were recovered from frequently inaccessible locations and 355 persons were rescued (1 646.32 hours). A total of 8 150 hours were spent on crime prevention in the water policing and diving services environment.

Disaster management

The SAPS was represented in four National Disaster Management Forum meetings and three meetings, involving the South African Maritime and the Aeronautical Search-and-Rescue Organisation during the 2017/18 financial year.

Disaster Management attended oil spill contingency planning meetings, contributing to the Standard Operational Procedure related to the environment. Coordinators assisted in the deployment of SAPS members, where support in major incidents such as floods and veld fires were needed.

Accident Combating Service

The SAPS has six Accident Combating units and seven Accident Response teams countrywide.

Members of the various units and teams respond to and investigate culpable homicide and high-profile road crashes, including crashes involving state vehicles, in support of police stations.

A total of 11 519 culpable homicide road crashes were attended to in 2017/18 compared to 11 231 in 2016/17.

Mounted service

There are 20 Visible Policing Mounted units countrywide. By mid-2018, two Stock Theft units in Barkley East and Wakkerstroom were being converted into Visible Policing Mounted units.

Mounted units are used for high visibility crime-prevention patrols in identified problematic areas, crime prevention operations, crime combating, organised roadblocks, search-and-rescue operations, to locate lost and drowned persons, crime prevention operations to recover stolen stock, deployment at major events, visible policing patrols at identified crowd management events, as well as beach patrols during peak holiday periods.

Mounted units also patrolled various rural environments in

support of the Rural Safety Strategy. By mid-2018, the SAPS was researching the deployment of Mounted units at identified ports of entry, at certain identified land borders, as well as at major events for crowd control and medium-risk unrest situations.

During 2017/18, the Mounted Service assessed and provided work certificates for 192 visible policing horses. Approximately 194 980 horse hours were spent on horseback during 2017/18.

From 1 April 2017 to 31 March 2018, Mounted units conducted 58 533 searches, attended to 1 915 requests for assistance during events and performed 1 745 crime prevention operations.

By mid-2018, the SAPS was planning to ensure that sufficient mounted riders and police horses are available to attend to stock theft-related crimes in rural areas.

The improvement of the vehicle fleet within the Mounted Service environment is also a high priority, to ensure that mounted riders and their police horses are deployed effectively, where they are required.

K9 service

The SAPS has 106 K9 units. They include 92 Visible Policing units, nine Protection and Security Services units, three Presidential Protection Service units and two Operational Response Service units.

During the 2017/18 financial year, the service deployed active K9 handlers and dogs from 11 K9 disciplines (patrol, narcotic, tracker, explosives, search-and-rescue, biological body fluid, fire investigation, protected species, carcass and hide, currency and sheepdogs) from these units.

The K9 Service at the Visible Policing Division conducted compliance inspections at all the K9 units. The operational standards of 309 K9 handlers and their dogs were assessed at the various units.

Eight K9 handlers were appointed as K9 assessors to maintain national standards of dogs and handlers.

Four K9 moderators were appointed during this period. From April 2017 to March 2018, the K9 units conducted 545 191 searches, attended to 89 609 complaints and confiscated 2 466 stolen/robbed vehicles and 1 382 illegal firearms.

A total of 41 108 arrests were made. The K9 Service, performing duties at the South African borders, conducted 53 984 searches, recovered 45 stolen vehicles and 17 firearms and made 95 arrests.

Veterinary Services

The SAPS Veterinary Services renders a professional animal welfare service to all dogs and horses of the SAPS

It is imperative for the SAPS to have a suitable veterinary service model, adequate to provide a desired animal welfare service proportional to the total animal population on the inventory.

A need has been identified to extend the service to all provinces without a veterinary centre, to ensure adequate and convenient veterinary care, particularly in rural areas where the services of private veterinarians is limited or unavailable.

Coupled with this development should be the procurement of Veterinary Mobile Clinics and a Farrier Mobile Workshop, to ensure an effective animal welfare model, whereby it will be possible for animals to be attended to, from their own units, by suitable veterinary professionals and farriers.

This system will not only eliminate the loss of operational time by K9 handlers and horse riders, who often have to transport their dogs and horses for clinical/medical consultations, but will also lessen stress and pain experienced when a critically sick or injured animal has to be transported over long distances under poor veterinary care.

Police reaction time

The SAPS's reaction time to complaints remains an important factor in the services rendered by police stations. The reaction time is defined as the time it takes to respond to a complaint. It is measured from the time that the specific complaint is registered on the CAS/Global Emergency Mobile Communication Command and Control System to the time that the response vehicle arrives at the complaint.

Response times are based on the severity of the crime and are classified according to the Alpha, Bravo and Charlie System. Alpha complaints are crimes in progress, which require immediate police response or action.

Bravo complaints are crimes that have already taken place, with no immediate threat to the complainant or property, such as a report of a housebreaking that has already occurred. Charlie complaints are crimes of a less serious nature, e.g. loitering and trespassing.

During 2017/18, the national average reaction time was 17:11 minutes for Alpha complaints, 20:42 minutes for Bravo complaints and 18:47 minutes for Charlie complaints.

Drug eradication

Increased illicit drug use and alcohol consumption are some of the main contributors to the perpetration of violent crime.

In 2017/18, the SAPS maintained representation on the Central Drug Authority, overseeingthe implementation of the Departmental Drug Master Plan, which includes dealing with both national and transnational aspects of drug trafficking, law enforcement and the combating of substance abuse.

The South African Narcotics Enforcement Bureau (SANEB) dismantled a total of 53 clandestine laboratories, during 2017/18, compared to 45 in 2016/17.

Furthermore, SANEB successfully seized drugs valued at R238.6 million, ranging from cannabis, cocaine, methamphetamine, methaqualone, methacathinone, heroine, nyoape and ecstasy during the 2017/18 financial year.

The SAPS seized 216 654,278 kg cannabis, 864 451 Mandrax tablets, 392,945 kg crystal meth (Tik-Tik), 77,444 kg cocaine and 546,500 kg heroine during the same period

Vehicle Crime

From 1 April 2017 to 31 March 2018, a total of 63 839 vehicles were reported stolen or robbed.

From this figure, a total of 45 136 or 70,70% were reported stolen and 18 703 or 29,30% were reported robbed – an overall decrease of 3 526 or 5,23% compared to 2016/2017. A total of 27 747 stolen and robbed vehicles were recovered.

This figure includes 22 093 identified vehicles, 5 499 unidentified vehicles and 155 vehicles recovered during cross-border operations.

Firearms control

The Central Firearms Register is mandated to administer

firearm applications, in accordance with the prescripts of the Firearm Control Act, 2000 (Act 60 of 2000).

Its primary objective is to prevent the proliferation of illegally possessed firearms, providing for the removal of those firearms from society, improving control over legally possessed firearms and promoting responsible firearm ownership in South Africa.

The circulation of lost, stolen and found firearms plays an essential role in the investigation of firearm-related crime, in the efficient control of firearms and ultimately, in the reduction of the proliferation of firearms.

The details of 9 336 firearms were circulated as stolen and lost compared to 9 853 in 2016/17 and the details of 18 592 firearms owned by individuals, dealers and institutions were circulated as recovered. These include 14 627 firearms that were recovered/found/confiscated and forfeited. These firearms comprise of firearms found with serial numbers, but were never reported as lost/stolen, as well as those found with serial numbers filed off, that were issued with the firearm identification number.

The SAPS ensures that these types of firearms do not return to the illegal pool for use in criminal activities, by destroying them. No firearm destructions were scheduled in 2017/18.

A total of 800 SAPS-owned firearms and 186 firearms, owned by other government departments, were reported as stolen or lost in 2017/18.Of these, 469 were recovered – 358 SAPS-owned and 111 owned by other departments.

Firearm licences, competency certificates, permits and authorisations are issued by the SAPS to individuals and businesses, in terms of the provisions and subject to compliance with the prerequisites of firearm control legislation, after comprehensive assessment of the content of applications and supporting documentation.

Liquor control

The SAPS, in partnership with the Department of Trade and Industry, as well as provincial liquor boards/authorities, supports the implementation of national and provincial liquor Acts to ensure compliance to address liquor as a contributor to crime and to enhance the reduction of contact and other related-crimes by:

- conducting compliance inspections, to enforce legal compliance by macro manufacturers and distributors;
- conducting joint operations, in collaboration with identified stakeholders, to strengthen legal liquor trade and eradicate the proliferation of illegal trade; and
- creating awareness, to enhance compliance and address substance abuse.

The SAPS confiscated 1 294 076 litres of liquor countrywide, from 1 April 2017 to 31 March 2018.

A total number of 59 092 liquor operations were conducted, in order to eradicate the illegal trade in liquor and the closure of 19 965 identified illegal premises were facilitated and liquor traders were charged.

A total of 673 956 compliance inspections were conducted a retailers of liquor, in terms of provincial legislation.

Second-Hand Goods Services

At the end of March 2018, a total of 18 017 second-hand goods dealers were registered compared to 17 194 in 2016/17.

A total of 37 505 compliance inspections were conducted by designated second-hand goods officials at police station, provincial and at national levels, resulting in 75 arrests, the issuing of 143 warnings and 792 fines valued at R 1 094 820 and the closure of 80 premises. Various confiscations were made.

Mobilisation Support Services

The unit is responsible for rendering support to operational-related and national coordinated operations. This includes the coordination and deployment of the centralised armoured vehicle fleet in terms of its operability, transporting members across the country and the provisioning of accommodation, including tents and equipment.

Armoured vehicles play an important role in the SAPS and more specifically, in the Public Order Police environment, as a force multiplier and a vehicle capable of protecting occupants from gunfire and petrol bombs.

Reservists

The reservist system provides for the active involvement of the community in policing, ensuring a community-oriented policing approach.

Reservists are community members who volunteer their time and services to the SAPS for free; to create a safe and secure environment. By 31 March 2018, there were 12 138 active reservists.

Partnership Policing

Partnership policing is implemented to ensure a collaborative relationship between the SAPS and external stakeholders, including community organisations, business, the private sector, non-governmental organisations and civil society.

It is intended to encourage local communities to actively work with the SAPS to develop common approaches and objectives to fight crime.

As part of this partnership, community dialogues were conducted with identified community structures during the 2017/18 financial year.

The purpose of the community dialogues was to educate community structures on the community policing concept, the importance of establishing community and police partnerships and to encourage a shared responsibility and accountability in the prevention of crime and community safety.

Sector Policing is implemented by the SAPS, as a community-centred policing approach to enhance service delivery, police response and interaction, as well as the participation of the community in crime prevention.

By mid-2018, a total of 872 or 99,66% of the 875 identified police stations had implemented sector policing. At the end March 2018, a total of 1 140 or 99,48% of the 1 146 police stations had functional community police forums.

Police Safety

The National Police Safety Plan: Back-to-Basics has been implemented in all provinces. The National Police Safety Committee meets every quarter, to discuss issues surrounding police safety in all provinces.

The incidents of attacks on and off duty, which result in murders of police officers, take place when members are: responding to complaints; apprehending suspects; and during crime prevention operations (stop-and-searches, etc.).

A total of 85 police officers were murdered, during the 2017/18 financial year, including 29 on duty and 56 off duty, compared to 83, in 2016/17. In 2016/17, a total of 49 off-duty members were murdered. This indicate an increase of 14,29% in the murder of off duty police officers.

Rural safety

The SAPS prioritises the safety of the rural and farming communities as and continues to implement the comprehensive Rural Safety Strategy in accordance with Chapter 12 of the NDP which emphasises the need for all communities to be safe..

A total of 888 of the 1 146 police stations, are classified as rural or rural-urban mix police stations.

The Rural Safety Strategy has been fully implemented at 827 of the classified police stations, partially implemented at 25 police stations and not implemented yet at 36 police stations.

Emergency response services

Members of the SAPS are usually the first people to arrive at the scene of an accident and therefore, saving the life of a victim at an accident may become their primary goal. To facilitate this, the SAPS offers its members training in First Aid, Basic Ambulance Assistance and Ambulance Emergency Assistant.

The courses equip members with the relevant knowledge and skills to provide adequate emergency care and assistance when called on to do so.

Rapid Rail Police

Rapid Rail Police units cover about 33 000 km of rail lines. During 2017/18, a total of 31 821 crimes were reported within the rail environment, of which 21 106 were for less serious crimes and 10 715 were for serious crimes, including 2 381 contact crimes, 669 contact-related crimes, 320 property-related crimes, 1 789 crimes dependent on police action for detection and 5 556 for other serious crimes.

An overall decrease of 11,83% was recorded, compared to 2016/17. A total number of 19 365 arrests were made, including 400 for contact crime, 63 for contact-related crime, 234 for property-related crime, 2 340 for crimes dependent on police action for detection, 682 for other serious crime and 15 646 for less serious crime.

Operational Response Services

The responsibility of the division is to respond to and stabilise medium to high-risk incidents, to ensure that normal policing continue, falls under the broader tactical environment of the National Intervention units (NIU), the Special Task Force (STF) units, the Public Order Police (POP) units and Mobile Operations under the Operational Response Service Division.

This division is also responsible for:

- maintaining public order;
- conducting high-risk operations (by combating acts of terror and terrorism);
- executing search-and-rescue operations;
- stabilizing volatile situations;
- preventing cross-border crimes (by controlling legal/illegal cross-border movement of all persons and goods), at all acknowledged ports of entry;
- providing operational support to all divisions within the SAPS, including air support to operational requirements;
- rendering of support to operational-related and national coordinated operations;
- deploying members to neighbouring countries in peacekeeping missions; and
- developing, implementing and monitoring of an integrated all-of-government and police-specific operations to address SAPS and Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster priorities, as well as managing major events.

Specialised interventions

The responsibility to respond to and stabilise medium to high-risk incidents to enable normal policing to continue falls under the broader tactical NIU, the STF and the POP units. The SAPS has 28 POP units countrywide (one national unit in Pretoria and 27 provincial units).

SAPS Air Wing

The SAPS Air Wing provides air support for crime-related matters to police stations, other units and specialised forces.

The SAPS currently has 49 aircrafts, which include 37 helicopters and 12 fixed wing aeroplanes. By the end of March 2018, there were 50 pilots in the SAPS, including 33 helicopter pilots, 10 fixed-wing pilots and seven dual-rated pilots, who were flying both helicopters and fixed-wing aeroplanes.

A total of 4 854.8 hours were flown, during 2017/18, compared to 6 026.9 hours, in 2016/17. Nine female student pilot who were enrolled for training in March 2016 successfully obtained their private pilot's licences.

In 2017, the students started the second phase of their training, which was to obtain their Commercial Pilot's Licences.

Tactical Response Teams (TRTs)

TRTs are responsible for providing a tactical response capacity to resolve confirmed medium to high-risk serious and violent crimes.

It also provides tactical operational support through planned operations or specific requests within a province and a tactical intervention solution to safely resolve confirmed medium to high-risk crime threats, which have escalated beyond the capabilities of generic policing skills.

During the 2017/18 financial year, the 26 TRT units in the nine provinces performed the following duties, in line with their mandated functions:

- 304 tactical response activities, such as anti-poaching, cross-border operations, transport of dangerous criminals.
- 4 595 tactical operational support activities, such as active shooter incidents, cordon-and-search operations.
- 1 717 tactical intervention operations, such as persons, vehicles and premises searched.
- 869 self-initiated operations, focusing on trio-related crimes such as aggravated robberies, theft of motor vehicles, drug-related crimes, as well as firearms and ammunition.
- 70 717 day-to-day operations and generic activities.

A total of 2 528 arrests were made for various offences.

Mobile operations

The Mobile Operations units is responsible for the safeguarding of valuable and/or dangerous government cargo.

There are two Mobile Operation units, in Pretoria and Cape Town. A total of 206 valuable and/or dangerous cargo were protected by Mobile Operations in 2017/18, with no security

breaches. The units performed 10 self-initiated operations and executed 58 crime prevention operations.

International assistance

The SAPS renders specialised policing services to neighbouring countries, in fulfilment of Outcome 11 of the MTSF 2014-2019: "Create a better South Africa and contribute to a better Africa and a better world".

It includes the deployment of members on peacekeeping missions and other interventions, in accordance with the United Nations (UN) Security Council resolutions, the Consecutive Act of the African Union (AU) and Southern African Development Community (SADC) agreements.

In 2017/18, a total of 81 police officers were deployed to AU/UN peacekeeping missions –37 in Darfur, 36 in South Sudan, one in Somalia and five in Lesotho. Two officers were deployed to New York; one of them was appointed to the UN Office of Rule of Law and Security Institutions, in New York.

The other one was appointed as the UN Police Advisor and was nominated by the Under-Secretary-General, in the UN Department of Peacekeeping Operations Focal Point for the Women's Network, to serve as an additional resource and advisor in the UN Headquarters.

Ports of entry

There are 72 ports of entry in South Africa; consisting of 53 land ports, 10 international airports and nine seaports (inclusive of one dry port).

The SAPS is responsible for the control of cross-border movement of all persons and goods, including the monitoring of the movement of wanted persons, circulated stolen/robbed vehicles and the profiling of vehicles, containers and cargo.

A total n of 2 879 hits for wanted persons and 3 661 hits for circulated stolen/robbed vehicles were attended to in 207/18. These hits, resulted in the arrest of 789 wanted persons for whom a warrant of arrest had been issued and the recovery of 91 vehicles.

A total of 10 587 vehicles (land ports), 7 317 containers (seaports) and 3 521 cargo (airports) were profiled and searched in 2017/18.

To enhance the national security and territorial integrity at ports of entry, 3 796 planned crime prevention and combating actions were undertaken, comprising of 322 roadblocks, 44 401 vehicle patrols, 2 018 vehicle checkpoints, 60 295 foot patrols and 2 421 vessel patrols. This resulted in the arrest of 14 732 people for violating the Immigration Act of 2002.

National Intervention units

NIUs provide a rapid response capability for intervening in medium to high-risk incidents, where conventional policing has been compromised.

This includes interventions dealing with serious and violent crime, the escorting of dangerous criminals, the safeguarding of Very Important Persons the safeguarding of big events, specialised operational assistance to police stations, as well as to other government departments.

These units are situated, in Cape Town, Durban, Mthatha and Pretoria. A total of 555 members are deployed in the NIU environment. In 2017/18, the NIU successfully responded to 2 407 incidents compared to 2 204 in 2016/17.

Special Task Force

The primary function of the Special Task Force is to manage medium to high-risk incidents such as hostage situations and combat acts of terrorism, organised crime, serious and violent crime. The unit also offers protection to VIPs and high-risk persons, and operational support in anti-poaching activities and the transportation of ammunition and money. It also conducts search-and-rescue operations.

There are three STF units based in Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria. By mid-2018, a total of 191 police officers were deployed in the STF environment.

During the 2017/18 financial year, the STF responded to and successfully policed 222 incidents compared to 216 in 2016/17.

Public Order Police

POP is mandated to maintain public order, through crowd management and the combating of crime.

POP members are trained and equipped to effectively manage situations that police officials at police stations cannot deal with. A total of 14 393 crowd-related incidents were responded to and successfully stabilised by POP units in 2017/18.

In respect of the planned rollout strategy for POP, 11 additional units and three reserve units were established during the 2017/18 financial year. There are 38 provincial POP units nationally and four Reserve units, in Pretoria, Durban, Cape Town and Mbombela.

Detective services

The Detective Service Division is responsible for managing the activities of the Detective Servicein accordance with the mission and priorities of the SAPS and to actively implement and exercise effective control over these activities.

The purpose of the division is to enable the investigative work of the SAPS, including providing support to investigators, in terms of forensic evidence and criminal records.

The objective of the division is the successful prosecution of offenders by investigating, gathering and analysing evidence.

The division comprises: Crime Investigation Service, FCS Investigation Service; Specific Crime Investigations, Organised Crime Investigation, Commercial Crime Investigation and Anti-Corruption.

In addition to detective units at police stations, there 245 detective service centres that provide a 24-hour service at police stations in various provinces.

Police stations that have no 24-hour service, have standby police officers to give attention to cases that are reported after hours. To improve accessibility and communication between the SAPS and the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), the SAPS has appointed detective court case officers to act as a liaison between prosecutors and detectives, in the management of case dockets.

They screen case dockets to check if instructions that were issued by the prosecutor are complied with, as well as to ensure that timeous arrangements are made for identity parades, post-mortem reports, ballistic and laboratory reports. By mid-2018, the SAPS had 142 detective court case officers placed at 123 courts.

Crime detection

The detection of crime is the process that the SAPS undertakes, which extends from the time that the SAPS becomes aware of a crime and where a case docket is subsequently opened for investigation, until the time that a suspect has been arrested and charged or the case docket has been closed off as unfounded or as withdrawn before court.

This process includes the utilisation of recognised investigative aids, and the services of other divisions within the SAPS.

During the 2017/18 financial year, the detection rate for serious crime increased by 1,18% to 35,97% (property-related crimes increased by 1,21% to 14,74%, contact-related crimes by 1,03% to 48,06%, contact crimes by 0,47% to 51,12% and other serious crimes by 0,28% to 36,15%).

The trial-ready case docket rate for serious crime increased by 3,47% to 84,41% (other serious crimes increased by 10,05% to 84,21%, property-related crimes by 2,05% to 85,11%, contact crimes by 1,19% to 84,19% and contact-related crimes by 1,07% to 85,84%).

The conviction rate for serious crime increased by 0,56% to 89,40% (other serious crimes increased by 0,97% to 96,75%, contact crimes by 0,51% to 81,51% and property-related crimes by 0,24% to 89,29%, contact-related crimes decreased by 0,64% to 85,99%).

The detection rate for crimes dependent on police action for detection increased by 0,18% to 99,73%. The trial-ready case docket rate increased by 3,01% to 77,98% and the conviction rate increased by 0,07% to 97,51%.

Specific crime investigation

The **Vehicle Crime Investigations Unit** investigates the movement of stolen vehicles across South African borders and conducts operations, relating to the repatriation of recovered vehicles.

During the 2017/18 financial year, 175 184 transactions were performed on the system by the National Vehicle Information Control Centre. A total of 2 759 transactions were finalised for investigating officers who personally visited the centre, in order to verify circulated stolen vehicles. A total of 7 285 transactions were performed to assist the 300 vehicle clearance offices.

The **Stock Theft and Endangered Species Unit** is responsible for the effective investigation and detection of stock theft. Trans National Crime Investigations Section. The unit conducts executive bilateral operations with other Southern African Regional Police Chiefs Co-operation Organisation (SARPCCO) member countries, executes internal disruptive operations, targeting stolen vehicle routes to other SARPCCO member countries and other ad hoc operations.

The **National Investigation Unit** is responsible for the effective investigation of allocated/instructed case dockets. It is also responsible for preventing, combating and investigating robbers, who are following and robbing people from airports, the Cash Management System and ATM bombings, stock theft and crimes, which relate to endangered species and coal and copper theft.

Bureau for Missing Persons

The Bureau for Missing Persons provides investigative support to members, tasked with investigations into the disappearance of person(s), including people being sought by loved ones, as well as by law-enforcement agencies.

The support includes the circulation of information and photographs of missing and wanted persons, as well as unidentified bodies, both internally to SAPS members, as well as nationally and internationally, via printed and electronic media and mediums, to the general public.

The general support service offered by the bureau during the 2017/18 financial year includes the broadcasting of 1 117 missing and 512 wanted persons.

Crime Stop

The responsibility of Crime Stop is to provide ongoing support in the investigation, solving and prevention of crime.

Crime Stop receives and manages tip-offs through a toll-free number, SMS or electronic media.

On receipt of this information, it is transmitted to the relevant police station for the necessary attention. During 2017/18, the SAPS Crime Stop Centre received 95 697 inbound and outbound calls.

Harmful occult-related crime

Harmful Occult-Related Practices Section Harmful occult-related crime means any human conduct that constitutes a crime, the modus operandi of which is related to or emanates primarily from any belief or ostensible belief, in an occult. The main objective of the Harmful Occult-Related Practices Section, is to ensure the effective investigation of harmful occult-related crime; prevention of harmful occult-related crime; and effective gathering, management, use and dissemination of information on harmful occult-related crime, in order to meet the legal obligation of the harmful occult-related crimes investigation capacity, in collaboration with Crime Intelligence.

During the 2017/18 financial year, 493 life sentences were secured against a total of 373 persons, by general crime investigations.

Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences

FCS Investigation Service include FCS Investigations and Serial and Electronic FCS investigations.

This component emanates from the FCS mandate to ensure the effective and efficient investigation of crime that emerges from identified serial FCS offenders and electronic crimes (child pornography).

The Forensic Social Work Services Section is responsible for rendering forensic social work support to these investigations. It is a specialised investigation unit which was established to ensure effectiveness and efficiency in combating crimes against women and children, by means of both proactive and reactive strategies. .

The forensic social worker acts as a neutral independent fact finder, who tests multiple hypotheses, through techniques that are legally defensible in court.

During the 2017/18 financial year, a total of 5 312 cases were referred to the forensic social workers and 5 793 children were assessed. Forensic social workers compiled 3 881 court reports.

A total of 1 587 awareness campaigns, were held countrywide to educate learners at schools, churches and the general community about FCS-related crimes.

The aim of the awareness campaigns was to encourage communities to report such crimes to the SAPS. Furthermore,

FCS Units, countrywide, conducted a total of 5 322 suspect tracing operations, which resulted in a total of 9 553 arrests. A total of 1 824 life sentences were secured by FCS units in 2017/18.

Crimes against women and children

During the 2017/18 financial year, the detection rate for crimes against children increased by 0,22% to 69,90%. The trial-ready case docket rate increased by 2,24% to 80,17% and the conviction rate decreased by 1,96% to 81,07%.

The detection rate for crimes against women increased by 0,29% to 74,29%.

The trial-ready case docket rate increased by 1,77% to 83,56% and the conviction rate decreased by 0,52% to 84,02%.

Specialised investigations

The mandate of the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation (DPCI), known as the Hawks, is to prevent, combat and investigate national priority offences, focusing on serious organised crime, serious commercial rime and serious corruption.

Serious commercial crime

Serious commercial crime refers to serious and complex commercial fraud, serious commercial-related theft, complex commercial crimes, where the services of a chartered accountant or forensic auditor is required during investigation and contraventions to certain commercial-related statutes.

In 2017/18, Serious Commercial Crime units executed 1 506 arrests and secured 957 convictions for persons involved in serious commercial crime-related activities. These units also seized counterfeit goods, valued at R122.4 million.

The detection rate for serious commercial crime-related charges decreased by 5,7%; from 95,37% in 2016/17 to 89,67% in 2017/18 but reached the 80% target.

A total of 52 603 new charges/complaints were reported and 50 448 charges/complaints were referred to court for the first time.

The percentage of trial-ready case dockets increased from 66,43% in 2016/17 to 70,04%, in 2017/18, achieving the annual target of 53%.

Serious organised crime

The mandate of organised crime investigation is to effectively and efficiently manage organised investigations outside the mandate of the DPCI, in accordance with the relevant regulatory framework of the SAPS, aligned with national, regional and international protocols.

This component addresses national priority crime, including bank robberies, Cash-in-Transit (CIT) robberies, Automatic Teller Machine and cash machine robberies and bombings, taxi violence, gang violence and human trafficking/smuggling.

The **Operational Desk** supports with the creation of informer and suspect linkage databases and conducts inspections/ interventions. Violent Crime supports with gang violence, taxi violence, organised violent murders, mall robberies and human trafficking.

The **Narcotics Section** is responsible for disruptive operations, drug laboratories and pre-cursor chemical monitoring.

Project Investigations is responsible for illegal mining, CIT robberies, ATM bombings, diamond smuggling, non-ferrous metals and precious metals.

Commercial Crime Investigation

The purpose of the Commercial Crime Investigation component is to ensure effective and efficient investigation of commercial crime, outside the mandate of the DPCI, related to serious commercial crime.

This component is to ensure compliance, monitoring and evaluation of investigations pertaining to banking and electronic crime, compliance monitoring and evaluation of fraud and statutes investigation, to render a cybercrime and deep web investigation service and to assist with the development of policy and standards for the commercial crime environment.

The unit focuses on banking crime, electronic crime, fraud and statutes, intellectual property crime, cybercrime and national dark web investigations.

Anti-corruption

- The Anti-Corruption Section focuses on corruption by police officials, outside the mandate of the DPCI and the Independent Police Investigative Directorate. The section ensures that corrupt police officials are convicted and that the activities of others are disrupted. The scopes of the section's investigations include the following:
- Corruption-related cases where police officials are involved interprovincially.
- Other corruption-related offences, as determined by the National Commissioner and the Detective Service Divisional Commissioner.
- Fraud and theft-related corruption where police officials are involved.
- Perjury where police officials are involved.
- Defeating the ends of justice where police officials are involved.
- Corruption claims from the National Anti-Corruption Hotline and Crime Stop, whereby enquiries will be opened, investigated and converted to case dockets when the information is positive.

Cybercrime

The occurrence of cybercrime adversely affects national security, economic prosperity and the social well-being of the nation.

Cybercrime has evolved into a distinctive and highly sophisticated crime phenomenon, which requires a highly skilled and specialised law enforcement response.

Cybercrime is currently being addressed under the Electronic Communications Transactions Act, 2002 (Act 25 of 2002). The SAPS, in view of the prevailing threat posed by cybercrime and in order to effectively address cybercrime in all its unique manifestations, are developing a strategy, establishing a policing model and an implementation framework, to enhance operational and analytical capability.

The detection rate for cybercrime-related cases decreased by 8%; from 44,92% in 2016/17 to 36,92% in 2017/18, but reached the target of 34% .

Forensic services

Policing plays a major role in the combating of crime in the community, both reassuring and assisting persons affected by crime.

Increasingly, crime investigation depends on the collection and processing of the analysis of physical forensic evidence for the exoneration of the innocent or the conviction of the perpetrator.

The Forensic Services Division, comprising of the Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL) and the Criminal Record Centre, is an indispensable investigative aid in the investigation of crime. This is a highly regulated environment, which requires compliance to legislation, focusing on the Criminal Law (Forensic Procedure) Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 37 of 2013) (Fingerprint Act and DNA Act).

The accuracy and reliability of information provided by the SAPS's Forensic Service, is crucial to the success of crime investigations and prosecution.

The Forensic Services division has expanded its services, in relation to animal DNA, to address the scourge of wildlife crime or endangered species. The implementation of the legislative imperatives (DNA Act and Fingerprint Act) has necessitated the increased provision of resources into the division, such as human capital, physical resources, decentralisation of services, etc. in a continued endeavour to improve the turnaround time of the various services which are provided by this environment.

The safekeeping of exhibits is also critical to both forensic, as well as investigative procedures and outcomes, necessitating the improvement of security measures within all forensic laboratories.

Forensic Services is increasingly relied upon, by the law enforcement agencies, to solve crime and the judicial system in the adjudication of the matter. To this end, Forensic Services form an integral part of criminal investigations from the crime scene to the courtroom.

Forensic Science Laboratory

The FSL finalised 164 946 cases or 69,53% from a total of 237 225 routine case exhibits/entries received, within 28 working days in 2017/18.

During the same period, the FSL had experienced a 75,30% or 4 656 from a total of 6 183 completion rate, with regard to non-routine case exhibits/entries, within the planned turnaround time of 75 working days, compared to the 71,84% or 4 240 from a total of 5 902 non-routine case exhibits/entries received in the previous financial year, which amount to a 3,46% increase.

A total of 87,62% or 367 791 out of 419 765 biology intelligence case exhibits/entries was finalised within the planned turnaround time of 63 working days, during the 2016/17 financial year, compared to the 95,16% or 365 593 out of 384 182 exhibits in the 2017/18 financial year.

The number of forensic DNA cases submitted for analysis to the FSL increased significantly with the inception of the DNA Act; from 262 125 to 428 051 in 2017/18. The FSL has made commendable progress in the reduction of the backlog, sustaining it at less than the international norm of 10% of cases on hand.

Since the 2009/10 financial year, forensic laboratories reduced the backlog from 59 023 to a commendable level of about 7 164 case entries, which represent 87,86% overall backlog reduction to date.

Criminal Record (CR) and Crime Scene Management (CSM)

The CR and CSM division received 1 210 422 requests for previous conviction reports in 2017/18 – an increase of 6 043.

The CR and CSM processed 97,92% or 1 185 210 from a total of 1 210 422, of the enquiries received, within 15 calendar days. A total of 2 223 615 requests for fingerprint searches were received by the CR and CSM in 2017/18; 54,61% of the total of requests received were criminal fingerprint searches to determine whether an individual has a criminal record, whilst the remaining 45,39% or 1 009 403, were non-criminal fingerprint searches, such as in the case of applications for firearm licences, professional driver's permits and pre-employment screening.

The CR and CSM further received 148 214 requests for fingerprint searches related to firearm licence applications during the year under review.

The CR and CSM processed 97,70% of the workload (144 808 from a total of 148 214) of the requests related to firearm licence applications, within 15 calendar days.

Crime intelligence

The Crime Intelligence Division within the SAPS is responsible for the gathering, centralisation, integration, management and coordination of intelligence.

Legislative prescriptions require the division to confine all its intelligence activities, which are related to crime and/or criminal activities.

The division offers essential support to all operational divisions within the SAPS, to address crime, stability and related activities, with the ultimate purpose of neutralising threats to public safety.

Crime Intelligence conducts its intelligence gathering, intelligence analysis and supplementary activities within strict legal and regulatory parameters, with due regard to the constitutionally protected rights of individuals.

Intelligence operations

Network operations are undertaken by crime intelligence, on a provincial and cluster level, to gather intelligence/information so that a situation can be better understood or to generate intelligence/information on a criminal organisation, groups or individuals, which could be turned into evidence for use in a court of law. A total number of 887 network operations were conducted in 2017/18.

Vetting investigations means the systematic investigation/examination process to determine a SAPS person's competence, that is, his or her loyalty to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and his or her integrity and reliability, with regard to classified and confidential information. Vetting is one of the most basic defensive measures in the protection of classified and confidential information.

A total number of 1 356 vetting investigations were finalised during the period under review. A Vetting Revamp Strategy was implemented, during the 2017/18 financial year, to address identified deficiencies such as blockages within the process flow (investigation versus evaluation) and lack of targeted vetting.

Information and Communications Technology (ICT) security assessments are performed to identify the current security

posture of relevant information systems of the SAPS.

These assessments provide recommendations for improvement, which allows the SAPS to reach a security goal that mitigates risk and minimises security breaches. For the period under review, 2 996 ICT security assessments, from a total of 2 881, were finalised.

Physical security threat assessments are performed to identify the security posture of relevant facilities (buildings) of the SAPS. These assessments provide recommendations for improvement, which allow the SAPS to reach a security goal that mitigates risk and minimises security breaches. For the period under review, 830 physical security assessments, from a total of 834, were finalised.

Intelligence and Information Management

The Crime Intelligence Division generated a total number of 42 793 threat and risk assessment reports for proactive policing operations during 2017/18.

The purpose of threat and risk assessments is to provide intelligence/information to operational units for the purpose of preventing the perpetration of certain criminal acts.

It is also used to determine the force and resources required for deployment to effectively address identified crime threats/risks.

A total of 31 307 early warning reports for proactive policing operations were generated, during the 2017/18 financial year. Early warnings are reports containing proactive information of imminent threat, that is either being planned or is already emerging, that requires policing intervention.

In order to determine the quality and impact of proactive intelligence reports supplied to operational units, the measurement of proactive intelligence reports that were operationalised, was introduced, during the 2017/18 financial year.

From 1 April 2017 to 31 March 2018, only 48 512 proactive intelligence reports were operationalised.

Crime Intelligence generated a total number of 118 642 profiles for reactive policing operations, from 1 April 2017 to 31 March 2018. The purpose of a profile is to serve as an aid to the investigating/intelligence officer in locating a suspect and identifying him/her.

A profile is an explicit representation of a person's identity and it is a factual reflection of information/intelligence gathered on a suspect.

Intelligence analysis reports are factual reports based on evaluated information/intelligence, which identifies and explains specific individuals, criminal groups, suspects or trends, relevant premises, contact points, methods of communication and activities.

Crime Intelligence generated a total number of 146 676 intelligence analysis reports for reactive policing operations, during 2017/18.

In order to determine the quality and impact of intelligence reports on the investigation of crime, the measurement of reactive intelligence reports that were operationalised, was introduced during the 2017/18 financial year. A total of 106 903 reactive intelligence reports were operationalised.

A strategic intelligence report is a product that provides insight and understanding of crime and stability issues and contributes to broad strategies, policies and resources which are directed to achieve long-term goals.

The aim of strategic intelligence reports is to identify long-term issues, including projections of criminal activities.

Crime Intelligence generated a total of nine strategic intelligence reports, on request by the National Intelligence Coordinating Committee, during the 2017/18 financial year.

International police operations and arrests

Cross-border operations are conducted to neutralise transnational crime threats and to physically reduce transnational crimes, which are committed in the countries of participating law enforcement agencies.

A total number of eight cross-border operations were facilitated, in 2017/18. A total number of 18 of the arrests of identified transnational crime suspects were facilitated in 2017/18.

The purpose is to ensure that perpetrators are brought to book, for crimes committed in the requesting country, by arresting them in South Africa and extraditing them to stand trial in the requesting country.

Persons of interest reports were also introduced, during 2017/18. The purpose of these reports are to make the SAPS aware of any transnational criminals/suspects, who may possibly flee/or have fled to South Africa, in order to put measures in place to track, locate and apprehend such criminals. During the period under review, four persons of interest reports were compiled.

Protection and Security Services (PSS) Division

The PSS is a national competency with nine provincial offices, which are located throughout South Africa.

The division provides in-transit and static protection to all identified VIPs, including the Speaker/Deputy Speaker of the National Assembly, Ministers/Deputy Ministers, Premiers, Members of the Executive Council, the Chief Justice, Judge Presidents and ad-hoc VIPs, in terms of the RIMAS Policy and at national key points and identified strategic installations (national and provincial government departments).

The division also provides protection to identified foreign dignitaries, who are visiting South Africa. Part of the static protection, include the provisioning of static protection to the 10 parliaments (the National Assembly and the nine provincial legislatures).

Presidential Protection Service (PPS)

The PPS component is a national competency with Provincial offices, which are located in Gauteng, the Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

The component provides in-transit and static protection to the President, the Deputy President, former Presidents, former Deputy Presidents, their spouses, identified VIPs, including foreign Heads of State/Government, former Heads of State/Government and their spouses and at identified government installations.

The in-transit protection function is performed in Gauteng, the Western Cape and the KwaZulu-Natal Provinces. The static protection function is performed in the provinces, which are indicated above, as well as in the Eastern Cape Province and at national level.

During 2017/18, in-transit protection was provided to 17

presidential dignitaries. Presidential VIPs participated in 148 visits outside the borders of South Africa. Some of these visits, depending on the length of the flight, had to make refuelling stops. A total of 54 foreign Heads of State/Government were protected during the financial year, of which many were protected during various special events.

Static protection aims to create a sterile/secure zone around dignitaries in areas that are identified in the PPS Policy, such as residences and at identified government installations and to protect their lives, dignity and their property.

In 2017/18, a 24-hour static protection service was provided by four static units, which covered 16 identified VIP residences and three offices. These units provided 13 870 protection services. No security breaches occurred during these services. A total of 10 national key points were evaluated.

Department of Defence

The purpose of the DoD is to fefend and protect the Republic of South Africa, its territorial integrity and its people, in accordance with the Constitution and the principles of international law regulating the use of force, and provide for military veterans' benefits.

The DoD derives its mandate from section 200 of the Constitution, the Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002) as amended by the Defence Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 22 of 2010), the 1996 White Paper on Defence and the 2015 South African Defence Review.

The department is required to provide, manage, prepare and employ defence capabilities that are commensurate with the needs of South Africa.

Chapter 12 of the NDP calls for an integrated approach to building safety through a holistic view of safety and security.

This vision is expressed in terms of outcome 3 (all people in South Africa are and feel safe) and outcome 11 (create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF.

These outcomes are closely aligned with the functions of the DoD. Over the medium term, the department intends to focus on sustaining South Africa's defence capabilities, safeguarding South Africa's borders and territorial integrity, and implementing the maritime security strategy.

The department also plans to participate in peace support operations, internal operations, and expanding and maintaining infrastructure.

The Defence Review 2015 warned stated that no country could be considered immune from international acts of terror that were difficult to counter, owing to the international networks involved, and which may be perpetrated by individuals not affiliated to a specific country or group, but to an ideological cause. Terrorism poses a real danger to the region.

The SANDF has a defensive orientation and a non-threatening posture in accordance with the White Paper on National Defence of the Republic of South Africa.

The Defence Review 2014 embarked on a diagnostic of the defence function and analysed the strategic role that the SANDF should play.

While a number of the principles established during the 1998 Defence Review process remain relevant, strategic circumstances called for a far greater DoD contribution towards the continuance of South Africa's national security, the strengthening of democracy in Africa and meeting South Africa's international responsibilities. The Defence Review 2014 defines and expands on the guiding principles that will steer the SANDF through the next 20 to 30 years.

The Defence Review 2014 indicates the broader role of the SANDF within a developmental State. It does not focus purely on what the SANDF is against but additionally provides the framework for the what the SANDF is for and what the nation expects the SANDF to do. This includes the positive role it should play in support of nation building, as an adjunct to its traditional roles and functions.

Legislation, policies and strategies

The constitutional and primary legislative mandates governing the DoD are reflected below:

- Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002).
- Defence Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 22 of 2010).
- Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994).
- Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).
- National Conventional Arms Control, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002).
- National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994).
- Defence Special Account Act, 1974 (Act 6 of 1974).
- Military Ombud Act, 2012 (Act 4 of 2012).
- Castle Management Act, 1993 (Act 207 of 1993).
- Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor) Act, 2003 (Act 51 of 2003).
- Non-proliferation of Weapons of Mass Destruction Act, 1993 (Act 87 of 1993).
- Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000).

Military strategy

The Military Strategy was revised and amended to ensure that it is aligned with the National Security Strategy and the Defence Review 2014.

The Military Strategy of South Africa is derived from the Constitution, the *White Paper on Defence 1996*, the Defence Review 2014 and the National Security Strategy. The purpose of military strategic objectives is to defend South Africa in accordance with the UN Charter, which allows for any country to defend itself. This self-defence aims at protecting the country and its territorial integrity.

The SANDF uses a mission-based approach to achieve the military strategic objectives of the DoD and DMV. This approach allows for wartime and peacetime missions to direct the Peacetime Strategy for Force Preparation, and to guide joint, interdepartmental, inter-agency and multinational force preparation as well as force employment during times of conflict.

Force preparation

The chiefs of the South African Army (SA Army), South African Air Force (SAAF), South African Navy (SAN) and the South African Military Health Service (SAMHS) are responsible for providing combat-ready defence capabilities in accordance with the military strategic objectives and operational requirements.

Each division must structure, position and maintain itself to provide forces able to participate successfully, as part of a joint, interdepartmental and multinational grouping, in the execution of all missions.

Some group system/formations established by the different

services include:
- SA Army – infantry, artillery or armour formations
- SAAF – air capabilities within the air command
- SAN – fleet command
- SAMHS – military-health formations.

Budget and funding

The total budget for the DoD for 2016/17 was R49 billion.

Organisational structure

The DoD and DMV adhere to the principles of civil control and oversight through the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, various parliamentary committees such as the Joint Standing Committee on Defence and the Defence Secretariat.

While the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is responsible for providing political direction to the department, the Joint Standing Committee on Defence ensures that the Minister remains accountable to Parliament.

However, for day-to-day administration and the coordination of strategic processes, the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans relies on the Defence Secretariat, which is the civilian component of the department.

Secretary for Defence

The Secretary for Defence manages the Defence Secretariat and is the accounting officer of the DoD and DMV.

As head of the department, the Secretary for Defence is responsible for advising the Minister regarding defence policy by:
- enhancing civil control through briefings to the parliamentary committees having oversight over the department and the Minister over the department
- providing the Chief of the Defence Force with comprehensive instructions
- monitoring compliance with policies and directions issued by the Minister to the Chief of the Defence Force.

Chief of the SANDF

The Chief of the SANDF is appointed by the President.

These duties include:
- advising the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans on any military, operational and administrative matters
- complying with directions issued by the Minister
- formulating and issuing policies and doctrines
- exercising command by issuing orders, directives and instructions
- directing, managing and administrating
- executing approved programmes of the defence budget
- employing the armed forces in accordance with legislation
- training the armed forces
- maintaining defence capabilities
- planning contingencies
- managing the defence force as a disciplined military force.

Force Employment

The purpose of the programme is to provide and employ defence capabilities, including an operational capability, to successfully conduct all operations, as well as joint, interdepartmental, interagency and multinational military exercises.

The output of this programme is to ensure successful joint force employment over the medium term by:
- Providing and employing a special operations capability in accordance with national requirements
- Ensuring full participation in the number of peace missions as instructed by the President
- Conducting 12 joint, interdepartmental, interagency and multinational military force preparation exercises from the 2016/17 to 2018/19, excluding Special Forces exercises.
- Conducting four operations per year, protecting the territorial integrity and sovereignty of South Africa, supporting other Government departments and complying with international obligations on an ongoing basis.

The mandate for employment of joint forces is drawn from the Constitution, the Defence Act and the Defence Review 2015. In terms of these documents, the SANDF is mandated to be employed for the following functions:
- Service in defence of South Africa for the protection of its sovereignty and territorial integrity.
- Service in fulfilment of South Africa's international obligations to international bodies and other states.
- Service in the preservation of life, health or property.
- Service in the provision or maintenance of essential services
- Upholding law and order in South Africa in cooperation with the SAPS, under circumstances set out in legislation, where the SAPS is unable to independently maintain law and order
- Service in support of any department or state, for the purpose of socio-economic upliftment.

In 2017/18, the SANDF supported the people of South Africa in the following ways:
- In the domains of humanitarian assistance by providing helicopters to conduct medical evacuation in Nelspruit, Cape Town and the Magaliesberg mountain range. Blankets were airlifted to snow bound citizens in the Mount Fletcher area. Recovery and expert advice was provided during the recovery process of a child that fell into a mineshaft in the Doornpoort area.
- Search and Rescue tasks were conducted during which four members were safely evacuated from vessels in the RSA territorial water.
- Further incidents took place which resulted in the evacuation of four survivors of a light aircraft crash in the Drakensberg (Cathedral Peak) area. As a result of further search and rescue missions, six hikers experiencing difficulties in mountainous areas, were brought to safety.
- The SANDF also assisted with the fighting of field fires in Somerset West, Du Toits Kloof, Simon's Town, Glen Cairne, Paarl and Wellington. During this exercise, Oryx Helicopters delivered 1 388 Bambi Buckets of water over the affected areas.

Landward Defence Programme

The Landward Defence Programme provides prepared and supported landward defence capabilities for the defence and protection of South Africa. The output of this programme is to defend and protect South Africa and its territory over the medium term by:
- Providing an infantry capability, including C SANDF Reaction Force, for external deployment and internal safety and security, including border safeguarding;
- Exercising a tank and armoured car capability and providing

a squadron for internal deployment per year;
- Exercising a composite artillery capability and providing a battery for internal deployment per year;
- Exercising an air defence artillery capability and providing a battery for internal deployment per year;
- Providing a sustained composite engineer capability for external deployment, as well as for internal safety and security and exercising a field engineer capability per year;
- Providing a signal capability for external deployment and internal signal support and exercising a composite signal capability per year;
- Providing strategic direction by orchestrating and controlling the SA Army to achieve its mission to prepare and provide supported landward capabilities;
- Providing an operational intelligence capability for external deployment, internal operational intelligence support and exercising one composite intelligence troop per year;
- Providing combat-ready tactical command and control capabilities for integrated forces during force preparation exercises and force employment;
- Providing a support capability for external and internal deployment through first-, second- and fourth-line support by two first and second-line maintenance units and two field workshops and fourth-line depots;
- Providing general training capabilities through basic military training, junior leader training, common landward training, command and management training, force preparation exercises and training courses.

Air Defence

The purpose of the programme is to provide prepared and supported air defence capabilities for the defence and protection of South Africa.

The output of this programme is to defend and protect South Africa and its airspace over the medium term by providing:
- Four helicopter squadrons and one combat-support squadron per year.
- Three medium transport squadrons, including one VIP squadron, one maritime and transport squadron, one light transport squadron and nine reserve squadrons per year
- One air combat squadron per year.
- Twenty-four hour air command and control capability.

Maritime Defence

The Maritime Defence Programme provides prepared and supported maritime defence capabilities for the defence and protection of South Africa.

The output of this programme is to defend and protect South Africa and its maritime zones over the medium term by providing:
- A surface combat and patrol capability of three frigates, one combat support vessel, two offshore patrol vessels and three inshore patrol vessels in each annual operational cycle.
- A sub-surface combat capability of two submarines in each annual operational cycle.
- A mine warfare capability of two vessels in each annual operational cycle to ensure safe access to South Africa's harbours and mine clearance where required.
- A maritime reaction squadron capability, comprising an Operational Boat Division, an Operational Diving Division and a Naval Reaction Division in each annual operational cycle.
- A hydrographic survey capability to ensure safe navigation by charting areas and to meet international obligations.

Military Health Support

The Military Health Support Programme provides prepared and supported health capabilities and services for the defence and protection of South Africa.

The output of this programme is to ensure prepared and supported health capabilities and services over the medium term by providing:
- A health support capability of five medical battalion groups, including accompanying field hospitals and one specialist medical battalion group, for deployed and contingency forces.
- A comprehensive, multidisciplinary military health service to a projected patient population of 302 000 members per year.

The SAMHS contributed to "Support to the People" through various military community building projects and community outreach initiatives.

Defence Intelligence

The purpose of the programme is to provide defence intelligence and counter-intelligence capability.

The output of this programme is to ensure prepared and supported intelligence services over the medium term by providing:
- an intelligence capability
- a counter-intelligence capability
- a defence foreign relations capability.

General Support

The General Support Programme provides general support capabilities and services to the Department to enable the achievement of the Defence mandate. This programme is divided into the following subprogrammes, ie Joint Logistics Services, Command and Management Information Services, and the Military Police.

The output of this programme is to provide general support capabilities and services by means of the following:
- Joint logistics support capabilities and services.
- Command and management information systems capabilities and services.
- Military police capabilities and services.

During the period under review, the Logistics Division continued to manage the payment of accommodation charges, leases and municipal services on behalf of the DoD, thereby ensuring the provision of appropriate and sustained facilities for the DoD. Logistical support was provided to the SANDF in the participation and execution of defence ordered commitments.

The Command and Management Information Division established a reference model for the DoD Demilitarised Zone at the Interoperability Development Environment (IDE), located at the CSIR.

The Demilitarised Zone constitutes the first milestone in achieving the DoD Business Requirement for a mechanism to ensure a secure electronic communication capability between the DoD network and the external environment, including other government departments, allied forces as well as the private sector.

A Data Link Reference Station (DLRS II) Toolset Development

contract was finalised and is currently in the process of being delivered to the IDE section at the CSIR. The DLRS Toolset will be utilised by the DoD to ensure compliance with the *i*mplemented Combat Network Interoperability Standard.

Office of the Military Ombud

The Office of the Military Ombud was established in terms of the Military Ombud Act of 2012 to investigate and ensure that complaints submitted by members and former members, a member of the public regarding official conduct of a member or a person acting on behalf of a member with regard to their conditions of service are resolved in a fair, economical and expeditious manner.

Reserve Force Council (RFC)

The RFC is a statutory body under the Defence Act Section 48(4). The RFC is a consultative and advisory body and represents the Reserve Force to promote and maintain the force as an integral part of the Defence Force and must be consulted on any legislation, policy or administrative measures affecting the Reserve Force.

Defence Diplomacy

Consistent with the international relations policy of Government, which emphasises the interconnectedness of South Africa with other countries, and in particular the African continent, the DoD mantained its approach of a layered defence through a substantial footprint of defence attachés.

In 2017/18, diplomacy actions by the DoD varied between focussed efforts and indirect actions which had a defence diplomacy impact. Focussed efforts included defence representation abroad and bilateral and multilateral meetings. Indirect action included participation in functional and developmental training with foreign defence forces and attendance of conferences and seminars.

The benefits of international military cooperation gave impetus to the defence diplomacy agenda of the DoD.

Peace-Support Operations (PSOs)

The role of the SANDF in promoting peace and security in the region and African under the auspices of the UN, AU and hybrid PSOs, necessitates the enhancement of the SANDF's peacekeeping capability that will include the SANDF's Forward Deployment Capability.

Border safeguarding

During the 2017/18 financial year, the SANDF continued to register operational achievements, particularly in the area of stock theft, recovery of stolen vehicles, and prevention of cross-border crime.

It remains a priority for the DoD to increase the required number of companies deployed on South Africa's borders from 15 to 22, in order to make the borders more secure.

Military Skills Development System

The Military Skills Development System will, through professional education and training, result in all young officers being in possession of a bachelor's degree by the time they are promoted to the rank and level of major by 2020.

Joint Senior Command and Staff Programme graduates will attain a postgraduate diploma or honours degree that paves the way for Executive National Security Programme graduates to obtain master's degrees. These degrees will be awarded through institutions of higher education accredited by the Council of Higher Education.

Role players

National Conventional Arms Control Committee

The NCACC is a committee of ministers, of which the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is a member. The NCACC oversees policy and sets control mechanisms for the South African arms trade.

It also ensures that arms-trade policies conform to internationally accepted practices.

Companies interested in exporting arms have to apply for export permits, whereafter the Ministry of Defence and Military Veterans processes the applications. Each application is also sent for scrutiny to the relevant government departments, such as international relations and cooperation or trade and industry.

The application is then referred to the various directors-general for their recommendations, whereafter the NCACC makes the final decision.

An independent inspectorate ensures that all levels of the process are subject to independent scrutiny and supervision, and are conducted in accordance with the policies and guidelines of the NCACC.

The inspectorate submits periodic reports to the Joint Standing Committee on Defence.

Defence Force Service Commission (DFSC)

The DFSC was established under the Defence Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 22 of 2010), Section 62(b). The output of the DFSC is to make recommendations to the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans on improvements of salaries, service benefits, policies, and conditions of service as well as the effective and efficient implementation thereof.

South African Aerospace, Maritime and Defence Industries Association (AMD)

The AMD's primary objective is to represent the South African industry in matters of mutual interest in pursuit of profitability, sustainability and responsible corporate citizenship.

The association is acknowledged as the only trade association of South Africa's Defence Industry (SADI), and is mandated by its members to promote and champion the collective interests of the industry.

It comprises a cluster of leading companies in the South African private and public sector that supply defence materiel, products and services.

AMD member companies supply products and services to the DoD, government organisations and other contractors, locally and internationally, in the defence and security marketplace.

As Sadi is one of the cornerstones of a stable and growing South African economy, the AMD is responsible for ensuring that a world-class, indigenous defence industry capability is maintained in a sustainable manner.

The AMD's involvement in international marketing includes:

- co-hosting Africa Aerospace and Defence
- co-publishing the Sadi Directory
- negotiating the structuring of export incentives and the

sponsorship of international trade show pavilions.

Within an emerging Defence Industry Support Framework, the DoD, in collaboration with the Armscor and the AMD, will continue providing effective support to enable Sadi to exploit export opportunities within the South African political and legal context.

The services range from information sharing on possible opportunities to facilitating the provision of defence personnel, facilities and equipment for use by Sadi in demonstrations for export purposes.

The AMD, through its membership, is strategically well positioned and capable of supporting the Government in achieving its AU and New Partnership for Africa's Development objectives.

Castle Control Board (CCB)

The CCB as a public entity, under Section 1 of the PFMA of 1999, has the mandate to manage and protect the Castle of Good Hope on behalf of the MOD&MV, who has the ultimate ownership responsibility for the Castle of Good Hope.

The CCB is responsible for the following:

- Compliance with Regulatory Framework.
- Maintenance, preservation, interpretation and showcasing of the history of the Castle of Good Hope.
- Preserved and protected military and cultural heritage site.
- Optimised tourism potential of the Castle of Good Hope.
- Optimised accessibility to the Castle of Good Hope by the public.
- Increased public profile and positive perception across all sectors of the community..

Armaments Corporation of South Africa

The Armscor mandate is derived from the Armscor Act, 2003 (Act 51 of 2003). Armscor is to meet the:

- Defence matériel requirements of the DoD effectively, efficiently and economically; and
- Defence technology, research development, analysis, test and evaluation requirements of the DoD effectively, efficiently and economically.

Armscor is required to adhere to accepted corporate governance principles, best business practices and generally accepted accounting practices within a framework of established norms and standards that reflects fairness, equity, transparency, economy, efficiency, accountability and lawfulness.

To manage the acquisition and technology projects, the following themes underpin the current focus:

- Financial Turnaround and Business Re-orientation.
- Acquisition Excellence.
- Technology Advancement.
- Industry Sustainability.
- Stakeholder Engagement.

The corporation maintains strategic capabilities and technologies, and promotes the local defence related industry, ensuring that the SANDF receives quality equipment to carry out its mandate.

Denel Group of South Africa

Denel SOC Ltd is a state-owned commercially-driven company and strategic partner for innovative defence, security and related technology solutions. It groups together several defence and aerospace divisions and associated companies.

Denel provides turnkey solutions of defence equipment to its clients by designing, developing, integrating and supporting artillery, munitions, missiles, aerostructures, aircraft maintenance, unmanned aerial vehicle systems and optical payloads based on high-end technology.

The Defence Review 2014 calls for Denel to be the custodian of critical strategic and sovereign capabilities, especially in command and control and the maritime environment. The recent establishment of a Denel Integrated Systems and Maritime division enables it to move rapidly into areas that are of strategic importance for South Africa's future security.

The maritime division of the business has given Denel a strong initial foothold in the naval defence environment and the company is confident that it will become a catalyst in a number of maritime defence acquisition programmes that are currently in the pipeline. Denel is in the process of acquiring a stake in a defence command-and-control business in line with its strategic intent.

Youth empowerment

Denel youth projects empower young people with skills to meet the demands of the fast evolving global technology landscape and to fit in the Fourth Industrial Revolution.

The company supports innovation, research and development of younfg people in the broad South African defence, security, aerospace, maritime and advanced manufacturing sectors, thus shortening their path to success and amplifying their impact as innovators.

The project entails a series of programmes which provide support and resources to young innovators from discovery to accelaration, through education, mentorship and experiences.

Small African Regional Aircraft (SARA)

Denel is developing a new SARA to serve regional destinations that are currently not accessible for existing passenger planes. On this ground-breaking project, the company is collaborating with academics and post-graduate students at local universities to develop a technology demonstrator. The pocess creates new horizons fo young engineers and artisans.

Tactical observation ball system

Five interns developed a tactical observation ball that can be used by soldiers for surveillance without putting their lives in danger. The ball is equipped with a camera and feeds information back to a smart phone.

Robot to detect landmines

The robot was developed for Mechem, a division of Denel. The robot scans for landmines reducing the dependency on human beings and dogs as was the case. It is easily monitored through its on-board camera and has a wireless route that sends information back. It was developed by two young innovators.

Oryx Mission Planning System

Two young software engineers developed a computerised Oryx Mission Planning System used by the South African Air Force pilots on the Denel-manufactured Oryx aircraft to plan their missions and share information across locations.

Department of Military Veterans

In acknowledging the contribution military veterans made to the creation of a democratic South Africa, the department supports the realisation of the NDP's goals of a developmental, capable and ethical state that treats citizens with dignity.

This recognition can deepen social cohesion and national unity while redressing the inequities of the past.

Over the medium term, the Department of Military Veterans will focus on delivering benefits, including access to health care, housing, and education opportunities, to veterans and their dependants.

The department's programmes support the realisation of Outcome 1 (quality basic education), Outcome 2 (a long and healthy life for all South Africans), Outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path) and outcome 8 (sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF.

The DMV derives its mandate from the Military Veterans Act of 2011, which requires the department to provide national policy and standards on socio-economic support to military veterans and to their dependants, including benefits and entitlement to help realise a dignified, unified, empowered and selfsufficient community of military veterans.

The objectives of the DMV are to:

- provide socio-economic support services to military veterans over the medium term.
- develop strategic partnerships with other organs of the State and in broader society to advance delivery on social services to military veterans and their dependants.
- provide strategic leadership to the socio-economic sector by conducting ongoing research on pertinent issues affecting military veterans and by developing requisite policies; implementation norms and standards, strategies, guidelines and frameworks.

Department of State Security

The mandate of the State Security Agency (SSA) is to provide Government with intelligence on domestic, foreign or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order, and the safety and well-being of its people.

This enables Government to implement and improve policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats.

The SSA comprises the following divisions:

- Domestic Branch
- Foreign Branch
- Intelligence Academy
- National Communications.

The SSA focuses on matters of national interest including terrorism, sabotage, subversion, espionage and organised crime.

Legislation and policies

The SSA is governed by the following legislation and policies:

- The Constitution of South Africa, 1996.
- Proclamation: Government Gazette 32566.
- The Intelligence Services Act, 2002 (Act 65 of 2002).
- Ministerial Notices No 32576.
- Government Gazette No 25592: Intelligence Services Regulations 2003.
- The National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994).
- Intelligence Services Oversight Act, 1994 (Act 40 of 1994).
- The Intelligence Services Act, 2005 (Act 65 of 2005).
- The White Paper on Intelligence (1994)
- The Protection of State Information Bill, November 2011.
- The Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001).
- The Regulation of Foreign Military Assistance Act, 1998 (Act 15 of 1998).
- The Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002).
- The SAPS Act of 1995.
- The Financial Intelligence Centre Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001).
- The Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Information Act (RICA), 2002 (Act 70 of 2002.
- The Auditor-General Act, 1995 (Act 12 of 1995).

Functions

Domestic branch

The National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994), defines the primary functions of the Domestic Branch as gathering, correlating, evaluating and analysing domestic intelligence to:

- identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- supply intelligence regarding any such threat to the National Intelligence Coordinating Committee (NICOC)
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested national department and without delay to transmit such intelligence that constitutes departmental intelligence to the relevant department
- fulfil the national counter-intelligence responsibility and for this purpose to conduct and coordinate counter-intelligence to gather, correlate, evaluate, analyse and interpret information regarding counter-intelligence to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- inform the President of any such threat
- supply (where necessary) intelligence relating to any such threat to the SAPS for the purposes of investigating any offence or alleged offence.

In view of these functions, the Domestic Branch's responsibilities include:

- fulfilling a proactive, anticipatory or early warning role of scanning and assessing the total (economic, social, political and environmental) domestic security situation to identify and report to the policy maker or executive departments any signs or warning signals of threats or potential threats to the constitutional order and the safety of the people
- performing a reactive monitoring role in tracking events when a threat/crime has been identified or a crisis has already arisen, without duplicating the role of the other executive departments; the purpose of this monitoring role is mainly to enhance investigation and prosecution by providing tactical information and intelligence to enforcement and prosecution institutions and to decide the extent and the implications of threats or potential threats to national security and safety
- providing an integrated multi-analytical strategic projective assessment of patterns, trends and of security relevant issues, to provide strategic early warning and to enhance the Domestic Branch's support and involvement in policy formulation.

Foreign Branch

The Foreign Branch is a national intelligence structure. The National Strategic Intelligence Act of 1994, defines the functions of the Foreign Branch as:

- gathering, correlating, evaluating and analysing foreign intelligence, excluding foreign military intelligence, to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people and to supply intelligence relating to any such threat to the NICOC
- instituting counter-intelligence measures within the service and, in consultation with the service, counter-intelligence measures outside South Africa
- gathering departmental intelligence at the request of any interested national department, and without delay to evaluate and transmit such intelligence and any other intelligence at the disposal of the service and which constitutes departmental intelligence to the department concerned and to the NICOC.

In view of these functions, the Foreign Branch is responsible for:

- fulfilling a proactive, anticipatory or early warning role of scanning and assessing the total (economic, social, political and environmental) foreign environment to identify and report to the policy maker any signs or warning signals of threats or potential threats to the constitutional order and the safety of the people
- providing the Government with developments in the foreign environment that are likely to have an effect on the image, territorial integrity as well as the security of South Africa and its citizens
- advising on the opportunities that exist in the external environment that should be exploited to enhance South Africa's national interest, be it in the political, economic, social or international relations sphere
- advising on security threats against personnel, interests, strategic installations and assets of South Africa abroad
- conducting security screening investigations into its personnel as well as those of other departments identified for posting abroad.

Intelligence Academy

The Intelligence Academy under the SSA has a mandate to provide quality intelligence training to members of the Intelligence Community.

National Communications

The National Communications Branch of the SSA comprises Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd (Comsec), the National Communications Centre and the Office for Interception Centre (OIC). Comsec and the OIC are externally focused as they render services to the organs of State.

Comsec

Comsec was established in 2002 as a private company – Civilian Intelligence Community – with the primary purpose of ensuring that critical electronic communications of the State are secure and protected. Through presidential proclamation in 2009, Comsec was pronounced a Government component, effectively transferring its ICT functions to the SSA. Its functions include:

- protecting and securing electronic communications of national importance against security threats
- conducting periodic analysis of the state of ICT security and advising the Minister of such analysis
- identifying and providing security to the critical electronic communications infrastructure of organs of State.

Comsec offers the following ICT security services:

- managed security services
- secure communications
- risk management and assurance services.

Office for Interception Centre

The OIC was established in terms of the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-Related Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002.)

The OIC provides a centralised interception service to law enforcement agencies involved in combating threats to national security.

Interception was previously conducted independently by the Law Enforcement Agency, which may have resulted in duplication of work and resources.

The formation of the OIC centralises interception activities and paves the way for better management of interception in an effort to increase efficiency, minimise duplication of resources and costs, and regulate and control the interception environment.

Vetting

Part of the SSA's objective is to be able to conduct vetting for all government departments in a user-friendly and speedy manner, in line with its counter-intelligence mandate that ensures that the department creates conditions of security, which enable Government and key state entities to do their work.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Rural Development

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) has an ongoing commitment to building sustainable rural livelihoods that aligns the department's work with Chapter 6 of the National Development Plan (NDP) and Outcome 7 of Government's 2014 – 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

The NDP and the framework set out that sustainable rural livelihoods will depend on integrated spatial planning and land administration, land reform as well as sustainable rural enterprises and industries, among other things.

Over the medium term, the DRDLR will focus on:

- recapitalising and redeveloping redistributed farms
- establishing agri-parks
- the One Household, One Hectare programme
- socio-economic implications and the river valley catalytic programme
- animal and veld management projects
- extending the lodgement of land claims
- the national rural youth service corps
- security of tenure
- the Land Rights Management Facility
- establishing the South African Geomatics Council
- strengthening the relative rights of people working on the land.

In line with this, over the medium term the department will focus on implementing its Recapitalisation and Development Programme (RADP), establishing the Office of the Valuer-General, reopening the lodgement of land claims, increasing participation in the rural youth service corps and implementing spatial planning legislation.

The department's RADP is responsible for making redistributed land productive and profitable through mechanised irrigation, farmer mentorship and other interventions to improve farms. Since the programme's inception in 2008/09, just over 4,3 million hectares (ha) of land have been acquired for redistribution and 1 459 farms have been created through the department's recapitalisation and development interventions.

It is envisaged that over the medium term, an additional estimated 1,2 million ha of strategically located land will be acquired and an estimated 1 051 productive and profitable farms created. The estimated cost will be R4,7 billion.

Expenditure on consultants and professional services and travel and subsistence in the programme is expected to rise moderately to fund these reform activities.

Legislation and policies

The DRDLR executes its legislative mandate around the following Acts:

- The Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994) provides for the restitution of rights in land to persons or communities dispossessed of such rights after 19 June 1913. The Act makes provision for the establishment of the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights and the Land Claims Court. The Minister of Rural Development and Land Reform is authorised to purchase, acquire and expropriate land or rights in land for the purpose of restitution awards.
- The Provision of Land and Assistance Act, 1993 (Act 126 of 1993) provides for the designation of certain land, the regulation of the subdivision of such land and the settlement of persons thereon. It also provides for the acquisition, maintenance, planning, development, improvement and disposal of property and the provision of financial assistance for land reform purposes.
- The Communal Property Associations (CPA) Act, 1996 (Act 28 of 1996) enables communities to form juristic persons – to be known as communal property associations – to acquire, hold and manage property on a basis agreed to by members of a community in terms of a written constitution.
- The Transformation of Certain Rural Areas Act, 1998 (Act 94 of 1998) provides for the transfer of certain pieces of land to municipalities and certain other legal entities, as well as for the removal of restrictions on the alienation of land.
- The Physical Planning Act, 1991 (Act 125 of 1991) promotes the orderly physical development of South Africa, and for that purpose makes provisions for the division of the country into regions, and for the preparation of national development plans, regional development plans, regional structure plans and urban structure plans.
- The Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1937) provides for the administration of the land registration system and the registration of land rights.
- The Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act, 2014, (Act 15 of 2014) extends the deadline for land claims to June 2019. The amendment also criminalises false and fraudulent claims that have been deemed a waste of taxpayers' money, where people submit land claims, knowing that they do not have a valid historic claim to a piece of land. The Act reopens the window for people or communities dispossessed of their land due to past discriminatory laws and policies to lodge claims. Extending the deadline for the lodging of claims was in line with the proposals of the NDP, the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP) and other growth strategies intended to promote national reconciliation and social cohesion. Cabinet also approved the submission of the report on the Audit of Registered State Land and a desktop analysis of private land ownership in South Africa for submission to Parliament. The audit aims to determine the quantity of state-owned land and for what it was used. The land audit will be used to enhance the integrity of the land register, which will serve as the basis for enhanced land planning and administration, including other functions relating to property portfolio management and improved service delivery. About 1,15 million land parcels have been surveyed. The State owns 14% of land in South Africa, 79% is privately owned and 7% has not been registered. About four million ha of unregistered land in the former Transkei are occupied by citizens and will be transferred either by the State or private owners once the verification process has been concluded.
- The Spatial and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013) seeks to bridge the racial divide in spatial terms and transform the settlement patterns that put a considerable burden on public resources. The Act will also ensure that the restructuring of South African cities, towns and settlements is in line with the priorities and principles of the democratic Government. The objectives of the Act are to:

i The Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner in Limpopo distributed vouchers worth R35,3 million as financial compensation to 118 families of the Mamaila Bolobedu Tribe who were dislodged from their land of birth through dispossession. Each family received an amount of R299 093,68.

- provide for a uniform, effective and comprehensive system of spatial planning and land-use management
- ensure that the system of spatial planning and land-use management promotes social and economic inclusion
- provide for development principles, norms and standards
- provide for the sustainable and efficient use of land
- provide for the cooperative government and intergovernmental relations among the national, provincial and local spheres of government.
- redress the imbalances of the past and ensure that there is equity in the application of spatial development planning and land-use management.

- The Co-Operatives Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 6 of 2013). This is an amendment to the Co-Operatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005), which came into effect in May 2007. It provides for the establishment, functions and powers of the Co-Operatives Development Agency. Among other things, the amendment also provides for associate membership of co-operatives, the annual submission of information to the Companies and Intellectual Property Commission, categories of primary co-operatives and the national apex co-operatives. Besides providing for the establishment, composition and functions of the Co-Operative Tribunal, the Act provides for a co-operative to apply for a declaratory order in respect of the liquidation process, and for the registrar of the tribunal to order the winding-up of a co-operative. The legislation amends the accounting practices by providing for the audit and independent review of co-operatives, the payment of fees by the co-operative for the amalgamation, division and conservation, including the transfer of cooperatives. The Act states that the provincial departments of economic development, under which co-operatives in South Africa fall, will be responsible for coordinating and reporting all co-operative activities in the provinces involving other departments and stakeholders, while the municipalities will be responsible for coordinating activities within their area of jurisdiction.

Budget and funding

In terms of the budget allocated for 2017/18, the department spent R9.730 billion or 95.5% of the adjusted appropriation of R10.184 billion, leaving the total of unspent funds of R454.1 million.

Unspent funds were mainly due to vacant posts and the unspent funds allocated to the Public Private Partnership project for the construction of the office accommodation.

Role players

National Reference Group

The National Reference Group is an inclusive structure that represents varied interest groups ranging from beneficiaries, organised agriculture and civil society to academics and experts on land and agrarian issues.

National reference groups constitute five working groups in respect of policy proposals made by the department in the Green Paper, namely the Land Management Commission, the Land Rights Management Board and committees, the Office of the Land Valuer-General, the Three-Tier Tenure System as well as Legislative Amendments and communal tenure.

Geospatial and cadastral services

The national geospatial information component is responsible for the national control survey network, the national mapping and aerial imagery programmes and the provision of geospatial information services.

This component will continue its map literacy and map awareness training for adults, and support to educators and learners to promote the use of geospatial information. Priority will be given to rural communities.

Aerial imagery is a significant source of geospatial information and a record of the land at a given time. National geospatial information acquires aerial imagery annually. Selected CRDP sites have been prioritised.

The branch will also assist in creating orderly and sustainable rural settlements by ensuring alignment and harmonisation of rural development plans with existing planning frameworks, including provincial growth and development strategies and integrated development plans.

The DRDLR has considered the adverse effect that disasters have on rural areas and the lives of rural people, and included in its strategy a disaster management component, which, together with other sector departments, will coordinate responses to rural disasters.

The Braille atlas for the visually impaired is a first in South Africa and is primarily intended to give visually impaired people access to geospatial information (maps).

Cadastral surveys management

Cadastral surveying is the survey and demarcation of land for the purpose of defining parcels of land for registration in a land registry.

Cadastral surveying in South Africa is undertaken exclusively by or under the control of professional land surveyors.

South Africa not only allows the private ownership of property but also, in the case of land, actively encourages it. Initially, all land derives from the State but, should the State wish to give or lend a piece of land to one or more of its citizens to develop and to enjoy its use, cadastral surveying becomes necessary.

Later, should the owner wish to sell off part of that land, the cadastral surveyor is again tasked with partitioning the land to be sold. The services of the cadastral surveyor are required whenever a boundary beacon must be found or replaced.

Once the positions of the boundaries have been marked and recorded, the cadastral surveyor and the conveyancer work together to record ownership in a public register. This action ensures that the rights of the owner can be upheld against false claims and that who owns what is accessible public knowledge.

Deeds registration

The core responsibility of South Africa's deeds registries is to:

- register real rights in land
- maintain a public land register
- provide registration information
- maintain an archive of registration records.

There are deeds registries in Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Kimberley, King William's Town, Mthatha, Nelspruit, Pietermaritzburg, Pretoria and Vryburg.

These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings,

sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act of 1937 and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986 (Act 95 of 1986).

To take deeds registry services to the people, the department aims to establish a deeds registry in every province. The deeds registry is open to any member of the public to access information regarding:

- the registered owner of a property
- the conditions affecting such property
- interdicts and contracts in respect of the property
- the purchase price of the property
- rules of a sectional title scheme
- a copy of an antenuptial contract, deeds of servitude and mortgage bonds
- a copy of a sectional title plan
- township-establishment conditions
- information relating to a property or deed.

Deeds registration has progressively introduced e-Cadastre, which is aimed at improving cadastral surveys management and deeds registration as well as the consolidation of data stores.

As far as the e-Cadastre Project is concerned, the enterprise architecture investigation, which is aimed at consolidating cadastral surveys and deeds registration data stores, has been concluded. Digital scanning of the microfilm records is ongoing.

In April 2017, the DRDLR opened Limpopo's first deeds registry office, providing better access deeds services to the people of the province. Before the launch, approximately 361 672 land parcels of the Limpopo Deeds Registry were handled by the Pretoria Deeds Registry, and 2 226 land parcels of Limpopo Deeds Registry were handled by the Mpumalanga Deeds Registry.

Upon the separation of the land parcels from the Pretoria and Mpumalanga deeds registries, the Limpopo Deeds Registry will have an approximate total of 363 898 land parcels.

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights

The Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994 created a Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights under a chief land claims commissioner and seven regional commissioners. In addition, the Act established the Land Claims Court to address land claims and other land-related though later amendments enabled an administrative process of settling claims with court referrals only in cases of dispute.

The DRDLR is authorised to administer the Act, including by negotiating on behalf of the State, acting as a respondent before the court, and managing the implementation and finances of the restitution process. Legally, all land claims are against the State and not against past or current landowners.

In 2016, the Constitutional Court ruled the Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act of 2014 invalid and contrary to the Constitution. The Commission on Restitution of Land Rights was tasked to resubmit the Act within two years.

In the same period, the commission plans to settle claims lodged before 1998. In terms of the judgment, should all claims emanating from original lodgement be processed before the two-year period lapses, the commission may approach the Constitutional Court for a review of the judgment.

Consultants are extensively used as part of the pre-settlement of claims, and is a major cost driver in the restitution programme. Over the MTEF period, R503,7 million will be spent on consultants conducting research to confirm the validity of claims that have been launched.

The total number of claims over the two-year period, from 2017/18 to 2018/19, was expected to be 2 152. A total of R10,3 billion has been allocated for settling land restitution claims over the MTEF period, which constitutes 32% of the department's total budget.

Programmes and projects

Agri-Parks programme

The agri-parks initiative supports rural enterprises, develops rural industries and facilitates the efficient movement of rural produce to markets.

The initiative develops networked systems of agro-production, processing, logistics, marketing, training and extension services in district municipalities and developments on underused land.

Each agri-park supports smallholder farmers by providing capacity-building, mentorship, farm infrastructure, extension services, and production and mechanisation inputs. Smallholder farmers own 70% of an agri-park, while the remainder is owned by Government and commercial farmers.

Agri-parks are expected to contribute to Government's targets of creating one million new jobs in rural economies by 2030, through the development of 300 000 new small-scale farmers and the creation of 145 000 agroprocessing jobs by 2019.

Since the inception of the initiative in 2015/16, approximately 10 566 smallholder farmers have been identified to benefit from agri-parks, and 69 692 ha of land has already been distributed.

A total of R2 billion per year, over a 10-year period beginning in 2015/16, was allocated for the development of agri-parks in 44 districts. Over the medium term, R2,9 billion is allocated for the Rural Infrastructure Development subprogramme of the CRDP, which constitutes 9,2% of the department's budget.

Communal Property Associations

The CPA Act of 1996 is aimed at enabling communities "to form juristic persons, to be known as CPAs, to acquire, hold and manage property on a basis agreed upon by members of a community in terms of a written constitution and to provide for matters connected therewith."

A total of 1 483 CPAs have been registered since the passing of this Act, with 48 registered during 2015/16. These entities were established for projects designated under various departmental programmes.

The DRDLR has facilitated the establishment of CPA district forums to assist in the provision of support to CPAs and serve as a platform for the CPAs to share experiences, approaches and lessons on how to handle matters. Forums are fully operational in all provinces.

National Rural Youth Service Corps (NARYSEC)

The NARYSEC is a skills development initiative, which forms part of the CRDP's job-creation model. The initiative recruits unemployed youth from rural areas between the ages of 18 and 25, who have passed Grade 12 or have higher qualifications, and equips them with business and entrepreneurial skills. The initiative expects to increase the number of new participants by 2 700 each year over the medium term to reach 8 100 by 2019/20.

Land Reform Programme

The principles which underpin the new approach to sustainable land reform are:

- deracialisation of the rural economy
- democratic and equitable land allocation and use across gender, race and class
- strict production discipline for guaranteed national food security.

District land reform committees were established in 44 districts of the country. The committees completed a training programme that enables them to:

- identify farms that are suitable for acquisition by Government (the target is 20% of strategic agricultural farming land in the country by 2030)
- identify and interview potential candidates for farm allocation
- advise the Minister on the strategic support needs of identified farms
- advise the Minister on the strategic support needs of recommended candidates
- advise the Minister on resolving land rights conflicts.

The Land Reform Programme has been allocated R8,3 billion over the MTEF period for the acquisition of land and the creation of productive and profitable farms.

One Household, One Hectare

The One Household, One Hectare initiative is the key mechanism used to provide landless people access to land and promote agrarian transformation. The objective of the initiative is to create smallholder producer for the agri-parks initiative, focusing on the poorest districts in the country and other sites in densely populated areas.

The department projects that 16 500 households will participate in the One Household, One Hectare initiative over the MTEF period, at an estimated cost of R4,3 billion, budgeted for in the Agricultural Land Holding Account subprogramme.

Recapitalisation and development

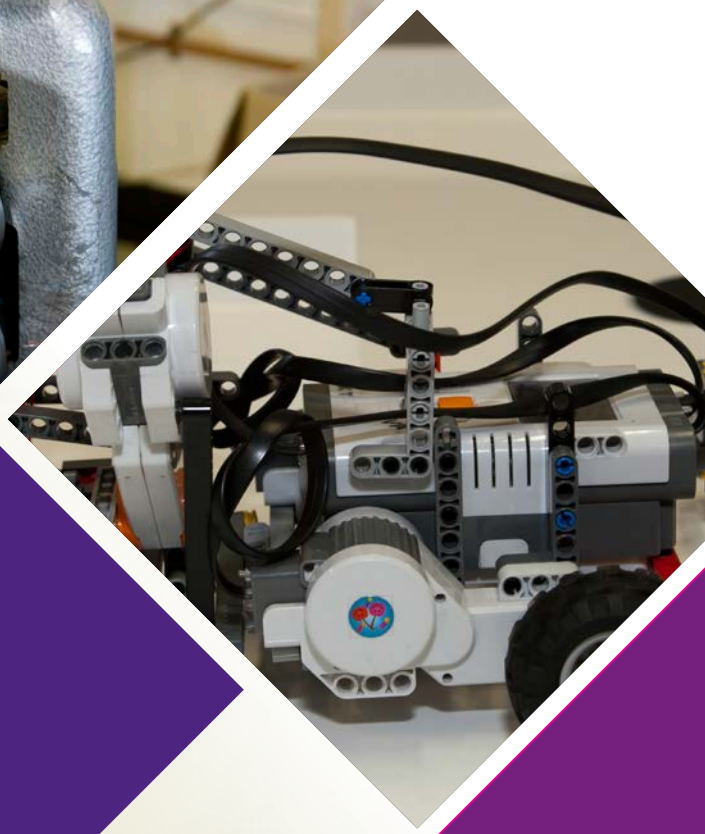
The Recapitalisation and Development Programme ensures that redistributed land becomes productive and profitable by providing mechanised irrigation, farmer mentorship and farm inputs.

Since the programme began in 2008/09, 1 496 farms have been created from more than 4,7 million ha of land acquired. Over the medium term, the department aims to acquire approximately 281 165 ha of strategically located land.

The Office of the Valuer-General, which has been operational since 2015/16, ensures efficient acquisition and equitable valuation of land.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Science and Technology



The Department of Science and Technology (DST) executes its mandate through the implementation of the 1996 White Paper on Science and Technology, the national research and development (R&D) strategy and the Ten-Year Innovation Plan (TYIP). The plan aims to make science and technology a driving force in enhancing productivity, economic growth and socio-economic development.

The department's strategic goals are to:

- develop the innovation capacity of the national system of innovation to contribute to socio-economic development
- enhance South Africa's capacity for generating knowledge to produce world-class research outputs and turn some advanced findings into innovation products and processes
- develop appropriate human capital in the science, technology and innovation (STI) sector to meet the needs of society
- build world-class infrastructure in the STI sector to extend the frontiers of knowledge, train the next generation of researchers, and enable technology development and transfer as well as knowledge exchange
- position South Africa as a strategic international R&D and innovation partner and destination through the exchange of knowledge, capacity and resources between South Africa and its regional and other international partners, thus strengthening the national system of innovation (NSI).

Legislation

The DST is governed by the following legislation:

- The Intellectual Property Rights from Publicly Financed Research and Development (IPR) Act, 2008 (Act 51 of 2008): Provides for the more effective use of intellectual property (IP) emanating from publicly financed R&D, through the establishment of the National Intellectual Property Management Office (NIPMO), the Intellectual Property Fund, and offices of technology transfer at institutions.
- The Technology Innovation Act, 2008 (Act 26 of 2008): Intended to promote the development and exploitation in the public interest of discoveries, inventions, innovations and improvements; and for that purpose establishes the Technology Innovation Agency (TIA).
- The South African National Space Agency (SANSA) Act, 2008 (Act 36 of 2008): Establishes the SANSA to promote space science research, cooperation in space-related activities and the creation of an environment conducive to the development of space technologies by industry.
- The Natural Scientific Professions Act, 2003 (Act 27 of 2003): Establishes the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions, and legislates the registration of professional natural scientists, natural scientists-in-training, natural science technologists and natural science technologists-in-training.
- The National Research Foundation (NRF) Act, 1998 (Act 23 of 1998): Establishes the NRF to promote basic and applied research, as well as the extension and transfer of knowledge in the various fields of science and technology.
- The National Advisory Council on Innovation (NACI) Act, 1997 (Act 55 of 1997): Establishes the NACI to advise the Minister of Science and Technology on the role and contribution of science, mathematics, innovation and technology in promoting and achieving national objectives.
- The Africa Institute of South Africa (AISA) Act, 2001 (Act 68 of 2001): Establishes the AISA to promote knowledge and understanding of African affairs by encouraging leading social scientists.
- The Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Act, 2008 (Act 17 of 2008): Provides for the HSRC, which carries out research that generates critical and independent knowledge relative to all aspects of human and social development.
- The Scientific Research Council Act, 1988 (Act 46 of 1988): Refers to the activities of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), one of the leading scientific and technological research, development and implementation organisations in Africa, which undertakes directed R&D for socio-economic growth in areas including the built environment, defence, the environmental sciences, as well as biological, chemical and laser technologies.
- The Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act 21 of 2007): Provides for the preservation and protection of areas in South Africa that are uniquely suited to optical and radio astronomy, and for intergovernmental cooperation and public consultation on matters concerning nationally significant astronomy advantage areas.
- The Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 12 of 2010), amends the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), to mandate the Council for Geoscience (CGS) to be the custodians of geotechnical information; to act as a national advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure and development; and to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors.
- Sanren, which is responsible for the roll-out of a high-speed broadband network to all academic and research institutions in the country, was awarded a private electronic communications network licence exemption under the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005).
- The Science and Technology Laws, Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 7 of 2014) seeks to, among other things, streamline the process for the nomination and appointment of members of the boards or councils of such entities as well as the filling of vacancies on the boards.

Budget and funding

The DST was allocated R7,5 billion in the 2017/18 financial year and used it to implement its Strategic Plan and Annual Performance Plan, strengthening the value of science, technology and innovation in society and contributing to various government priorities aimed at addressing poverty, inequality and unemployment, in particular through the Economic Sectors, Employment and Infrastructure Development Cluster.

A sum of R2 534 billion from the budget was allocated to parliamentary grants for the following institutions:

- The CSIR – R2,7 billion
- The NRF – R3,8 billion
- The HSRC – R510,5 million
- The TIA – R516,4 million
- SANSA – R296 million
- The Academy of Science of South Africa (ASSAf) – R27,9 million.

Policy mandate and strategies

The DST's major policy documents are the White Paper

on Science and Technology of 1996, the 2002 National Development Research Strategy (NRDS), the New Strategic Management Model for South Africa's Science and Technology System (2004) – with its Policy on Governance Standards for Science, Engineering and Technology Institutions and Framework for the Development of a National Science and Technology Expenditure Plan – and the 2007 TYIP.

The DST is the custodial coordinator for the development of the NSI and influences this system through key strategies such as the NRDS and the TYIP. The latter, particularly, seeks to contribute to the transformation of the South African economy into a knowledge-based economy, in which the production and dissemination of knowledge will lead to socio-economic benefits and enrich all fields of human endeavour.

National Research and Development Strategy

The NRDS as the basis for the NSI and requires performance and responses in three key areas:

- enhanced innovation
- providing science, engineering and technology Human Resources (HR) and transformation
- creating an effective government science and technology system.

A prime objective of the NSI was to enhance the rate and quality of technology transfer from the science, engineering and technology sector by providing quality HR, effective hard technology transfer mechanisms, and creating more effective and efficient users of technology in the business and government sectors.

The White Paper also set out the institutions to be established to promote the development of a well-functioning NSI. These were to be the national Ministry and DST, the NACI, the NRF, the Innovation Fund and national research facilities managed by Government.

The NRDS is aimed at being a key enabler of economic growth alongside other strategies, such as the HR Development Strategy, the Integrated Manufacturing Strategy and the Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture.

Ten-Year Innovation Plan

The TYIP, launched in 2008, aims to assist the establishment of a knowledge-based economy for South Africa, in which the production and dissemination of knowledge lead to economic benefits and enrich all fields of human endeavour.

The missions and platforms under the NRDS were expanded under the TYIP to include grand challenges in space science and technology, energy security, human and social dynamics in development, global change and the bio-economy.

The responsibility for addressing the grand challenges is spread across many government departments.

The TYIP includes long-term goals based on the challenges it identified, which includes:

- becoming one of the top three emerging economies in the global pharmaceutical industry, based on innovative use of South Africa's indigenous knowledge and rich biodiversity
- deploying satellites that provide a range of scientific, security and specialised services for all spheres of Government, the public and the private sector
- achieving a 25% share of the global hydrogen and fuel cell market with novel platinum group metal catalysts
- becoming a world leader in climate science and responding effectively to the multiple challenges associated with global and climate change.

National Nanotechnology Strategy

Nanotechnology promises smaller, cheaper, lighter and faster devices with greater functionality, using fewer raw materials and consuming less energy.

The strategy strengthens the integrated industrial focus of Government and advances the national technology missions that have been identified in the NRDS.

Nanotechnology cuts across biotechnology, technology for manufacturing and information and communications technology (ICT) to improve the country's natural resources sectors and technology to reduce poverty.

The DST, in partnership with the NRF, seeks to promote nanotechnology research through the Nanotechnology Flagship Project (NFP).

The flagship project aims to ensure that South Africa is able to optimally use nanoscience and nanotechnology to enhance the nation's global competitiveness and to promote innovation and economic growth.

Nanotechnology Flagship Project

The NFP was established with the objective of accelerating national efforts to build the excellence pipeline in R&D capacity by attracting and retaining young scientists and professionals of the highest calibre.

The NFP is a fundamental pillar in the implementation of the NNS. The project ensures that South Africa is able to optimally use nanoscience and nanotechnology to enhance the nation's global competitiveness and to promote innovation and economic growth.

It is geared towards demonstrating the benefits of nanotechnology and its impact on some of the key challenges facing South Africa, which relate to the areas of energy security, improved healthcare, water purification, mining and minerals, and advanced materials and manufacturing.

Since 2007, the NFP has generated an investment of R57 million in 25 research grants, comprising 13 full grants and 12 development grants. The rationale for introducing the development grants was to strengthen the nanotechnology research track record of emerging researchers.

The development grant afforded the emerging researchers in this field opportunities to receive mentorship and to access research infrastructure based at the Nanotechnology Innovation Centre at the CSIR.

The investment in the NFP has yielded locally relevant and internationally competitive outputs in pursuit of research excellence and capacity development.

National Bio-Economy Strategy

The science-based Bio-Economy Strategy replaced the National Biotechnology Strategy, which had been in place since 2001.

Through the Bio-Economy Strategy, bio-innovation is used to generate sustainable economic, social and environmental development. The DST is aiming to have biotechnology make up 5% of the country's gross domestic product (GDP) by 2050.

The Bio-Economy Strategy focuses on three important

economic sectors likely to benefit from key drivers on implementation, namely agriculture, health and industry, and environment.

The strategy also focuses on the coordination of numerous committees, government departments, R&D agencies, the private sector, public programmes and funding bodies to achieve its goals.

Role players

Academy of Science of South Africa

ASSAf was formed in response to the need for an academy of science congruent with the dawn of democracy in South Africa – activist in its mission of using science for the benefit of society.

The mandate of the ASSAf encompasses all fields of scientific enquiry and it includes the full diversity of South Africa's scientists. The Academy of Science of South Africa Act, (Act 67 of 2001) came into operation in May 2002.

ASSAf represents the country in the international community of science academies and in global academic dialogues.

Since its inception, ASSAf has grown from a small, emergent organisation to a well-established academy.

In 2016, 31 new members were elected, of which 35 were women and 32% black people. Of the total membership of 470, 25% of members are now women and 28% black people.

Transitioning to a green economy is one of the key imperatives of government, as highlighted in the NDP. The use of green technologies is an integral part of the green economy, making this study both timely and important.

The ASSAf celebrated 20 years in the service of society tin 2016.

South African Journal of Science

The South African Journal of Science (SAJS) is now in its 112 years of publication. There has been enormous growth in the number of formal submissions to the journal – an average of 20% per year over the past five years.

InterAcademy Partnership (IAP)

Academies of science and medicine have traditionally aligned themselves into three major global networks – the Global Network of Science Academies, the InterAcademy Council and the InterAcademy Medical Panel – to build on and amplify their individual strengths when facing pressing global issues. These three inter-related organisations have now formed an umbrella organisation – the IAP – which was launched in March 2016.

The IAP unites more than 100 science academies worldwide. It provides high-quality independent information and advice on science and development to policymakers and the public. It also supports programmes on scientific capacity-building, education and communication. The IAP leads efforts to expand international science cooperation. .

Africa Institute of South Africa

The AISA was first established in 1960 as a non-profit organisation. It is a statutory body following the Aisa Act of 2001.

Through the AISA campus, an annual training programme that educates students from universities in research methodologies, the AISA has contributed to fostering a new generation of research specialists. The AISA has also been able to produce some of the finest research on contemporary African affairs by having its dedicated and highly qualified researchers conduct field research every year throughout Africa.

The African Unity for Renaissance International Conference and Africa Day Expo is an annual conference hosted by the HSRC, together with the following partners: the Tshwane University of Technology, the NRF, the Thabo Mbeki African Leadership Institute, the DST, the Department of International Relations and Cooperation, the International Council for Science, the Regional Office for Africa, BrandSA, the Kara Heritage Institute, the City of Tshwane and the University of Johannesburg.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR is a world-class African research and development organisation established through an Act of Parliament in 1945. The CSIR undertakes directed, multidisciplinary research and technological innovation that contributes to the improved quality of life of South Africans. The organisation plays a key role in supporting government's programmes through directed research that is aligned with the country's priorities, the organisation's mandate and its science, engineering and technology competences.

The CSIR's objectives are to build and transform human capital; conduct high-quality research to foster scientific development; conduct relevant research to foster industrial development; infrastructure renewal and development and; financial sustainability and good governance.

Key issues that the CSIR seeks to address through various interventions include creating a vibrant economy and employment opportunities; building a capable state that is able to consistently deliver high-quality services for all South Africans; contributing to the development of economic and social infrastructure like transport, energy, water resources and ICT networks.

To improve its research focus and ensure that it achieves maximum impact in industry and society, the organisation has identified six research impact areas. These are: The built environment, defence and security, energy, health, industry and the natural environment. To make an impact in these areas, the organisation draws on a rich, multidisciplinary science base and proficiency in enabling technologies such as nanotechnology, materials science, synthetic biology, photonics and ICT.

The CSIR's state-of-the-art research infrastructure includes laboratories, testing facilities, scientific instruments, equipment, machinery, clean rooms and pilot plants that enable the translation of CSIR research into solid scientific output such as technology demonstrators and intellectual property.

Two-thirds of the CSIR's staff consists of scientists, engineers and technologists, who share a passion for shaping a better future through science and technology innovation. The organisation also invests in a myriad of training interventions to foster young talent and further develop expertise by providing bursaries, studentships, internships, exchange and sabbatical programmes.

In 2017, the CSIR reached a milestone in its attempts to produce primary titanium metal, adding value to the country's large reserves of titanium-bearing materials. Researchers overcame significant technical challenges to produce titanium metal powder for various downstream manufacturing processes at its pilot processing plant. The plant was constructed following

the development of a novel CSIR-patented process to produce primary titanium metal.

In a development that would benefit from the titanium advances, the CSIR and the Aerosud Innovation Centre developed an advanced 3D printer for metal components. Researchers succeeded in producing three titanium parts using the 3D printing system. During proof-of-concept trials, the machine achieved production speeds of up to 10 times faster than currently available commercial laser melting machines.

ICT remains an area in which the CSIR has sound skills and in which advances are making an impact in various sectors. Africa's fastest supercomputer, based at the CSIR offices in Cape Town, provides more than 700 registered users with access to high-performance computing. The CSIR has also taken into use a new software-defined networking laboratory to strengthen the competitiveness of SA networking products; and the development of a smart spectrum management tool is set to open up TV Whitespaces (under-utilised spectrum in the TV broadcasting frequency ranges) for commercial use.

It is this combination of excellence in research, highly skilled staff and world-class infrastructure that puts the CSIR at the cutting edge of research and technological innovation to ensure a better future through science.

Human Sciences Research Council

The HSRC was established in 1968 as South Africa's statutory research agency and has grown to become the largest dedicated research institute in the social sciences and humanities on the African continent, doing cutting-edge public research in areas that are crucial to development.

It's mandate is to:

- inform the effective formulation and monitoring of government policy
- evaluate policy implementation
- stimulate public debate through the effective dissemination of research-based data and fact-based research results
- foster research collaboration
- help build research capacity and infrastructure for the human sciences.

The council conducts large-scale, policy-relevant, social-scientific research for public sector users, non-governmental organisations and international development agencies.

Research activities and structures are closely aligned with South Africa's national development priorities.

The HSRC's integrated research programmes provide single points of entry – complete with a critical mass of researchers – for interdisciplinary and problem-orientated research.

The HSRC released the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study 2015 survey results in November 2016. The survey compared standardised mathematics and science test results of the country's Grade 9 learners with similar pupils in 36 countries. Results showed that South African learners were improving incrementally in mathematics and science, but their tests scores still ranked among the lowest in the world.

In February 2017, HSRC launched the 5th South African HIV study, with plans to visit 60 000 South Africans.

In March 2017, the 2015 South African Social Attitudes Survey at the Sowetan Dialogues was released. The survey was conducted by the HSRC in November and December 2015 on behalf of the Financial Service Board, with just shy of 3 000 respondents interviewed. The research was designed to be nationally representative of South Africans aged 16 years and older.

National Advisory Council on Innovation

The NACI Act of 1997 mandates NACI to advise the Minister of Science and Technology and, through the Minister, the Cabinet, on the role and contribution of innovation (including science and technology) in promoting and achieving national objectives.

These national objectives include the improvement of the quality of life of South Africans, the promotion of sustainable economic growth and international competitiveness.

The advice should be directed at, among other things:

- coordination and stimulation of the NSI
- promotion of cooperation within the NSI
- structuring, governance and coordination of the science and technology system
- revision of the innovation policy
- strategies for the promotion of all aspects of technological innovation
- identification of R&D priorities
- funding of the science and technology system.

The NACI hosted a stakeholders' workshop in November 2016 in Pretoria. The purpose of the workshop was to provide a platform to discuss the NACI draft report with various stakeholders of the NSI across public and private sectors.

National Research Foundation

The NRF is an independent statutory body established through the NRF Act of 1998, following a system-wide review conducted for the then Department of Arts, Culture, Science and Technology.

The entity incorporates the functions of research-funding agencies that were previously servicing various sections of the research community, namely the former Centre for Science Development of the HSRC and the former Foundation for Research Development, which comprised several national research facilities.

As a government-mandated research and science development agency, the NRF funds research and the development of high-end human capacity and critical research infrastructures to promote knowledge production across all disciplinary fields.

The goal of the NRF is to create innovative funding instruments, advance research career development, increase public science engagement and establish leading-edge research platforms that will transform the scientific landscape.

The NRF promotes South African research interests across the country and internationally.Together with research institutions, business, industry and international partners, the NRF builds bridges between research communities for mutual benefit.

The NRF supports a transdisciplinary research agenda at the iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences. This facility, which has developed a plan for the South African Isotope Facility, will support research in nuclear physics, materials sciences, radiobiology as well as the production of rare and exotic radio-isotopes for the medical industry.

South African National Space Agency

SANSA was created to promote the use of space and cooperation in space-related activities while fostering research in space science, advancing scientific engineering through the development of South Africa's human capital and providing support to industrial development in space technologies.

The objectives of SANSA are to:

- promote the peaceful use of space
- support the creation of an environment conducive to industrial development in space technology
- foster research in space science, communications, navigation and space physics
- advance scientific, engineering and technological competencies and capabilities through human capital development outreach programmes and infrastructure development
- foster international cooperation in space-related activities.

SANSA continues to provide state-of-the-art ground-station services to many globally recognised space missions, such as National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Nasa) from the United States (USA) and Indian Space Research Organisation Mars missions, as well as Nasa's Orbiting Carbon Observatory-2, which is giving scientists a better idea of how carbon is contributing to climate change, answering important questions about where carbon comes from and where it is stored.

The first remote sensing atlas to be launched in South African was launched by SANSA in May 2016. The atlas can be defined as the collection of data about an object from a distance.

Earth scientists use the technique of remote sensing to monitor or measure phenomena found on earth's surface and atmosphere, through satellite and camera technology.

The atlas was developed to cater for a wide range of audiences and has been simplified in such a way that it is easy to understand while getting the message cross.

The 40-page atlas covers broad areas such as history of space technology in South Africa, local satellites, application of satellite images, geology, mining, agriculture, woody-cover mapping, water quality, urban planning, urban development and post-floods analysis.

SANSA used Landsat data to identify algal concentrations and map the water quality in dams, such as the Vaal and Hartebeestpoort dams.

The Single Layer Model unit of the Department of Water and Sanitation uses these satellite data, provided by SANSA, to regulate and monitor water use in compliance with National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), authorise and license water use for irrigation and assess the status of small water bodies at municipal level.

SANSA supplied Rand Water with products to monitor algal bloom in the Vaal Dam and developed critical information on dam levels in the Free State during the severe drought experienced from 2015 to 2017..

Technology Innovation Agency

The TIA is a national public entity that serves as a key institutional intervention to bridge the innovation gap between R&D from higher education institutions, science councils, public entities and the private sector.

The mandate of the TIA is derived from the provisions of the Technology Innovation Act of 2008, which established TIA to support Government in stimulating and intensifying technological innovation to improve economic growth and the quality of life of all South Africans by developing and exploiting technological innovations.

National Intellectual Property Management Office

The NIPMO provides support to the offices of technology transfer at publicly funded research institutions. This has led to significantly improved IP management in State universities and other research institutions.

The NIPMO operational functions is set out in the the IPR Act of 2008. The act allows NIPMO to function independently of the department but operate as a subprogramme within the department in terms of support functions such as HR and ICT.

With the objectives of the IPR Act being to ensure that intellectual property (IP) resulting from publicly financed research and development (R&D) is identified, protected, utilised and commercialised for the benefit of the people of South Africa, NIPMO employs numerous tools to enable this mandate. Thise includes providing support to offices of technology transfer (OTT) at publicly funded research institutions (i.e. higher education institutions and science councils). These OTTs are regarded as extensions of NIPMO and implement the IPR Act in their own environment. This intervention has led to significant improvements in the management and utilisation of IP in these institutions. NIPMO also provides financial support to the institutions for the protection of their IP.

Since the IPR Act of 2008 came into effect in 2010, the number of disclosures made by technology transfer agencies has tripled, with the number of patents being managed by these agencies doubling. The absolutely number reveal that 1500 disclosures have been received by NIPMO from institutions, of which approximately 1300 are active. Of these, 7,5% have been licensed, with over R15 400 000 in revenue accruing to the institutions.

In August 2017 NIPMO participated in the DST Women in Science Awards (WISA) and awarded prize money in the categories of Distinguished Young Women in Research and Innovation to Dr Lepholo and Distinguished Women in Research and Innovation to Prof. De Kock.

Since 2011, over 1 000 disclosures have been received by the NIPMO from institutions, of which 71% relate to inventions for patent protection. Of these, 61 have been licensed, with over R4,4 million in revenue accruing to the institutions.

IP rights related to South Africa's valuable IKS will be better protected through the Indigenous Knowledge Systems Bill. This should facilitate economic growth and spin-offs resulting from the application of such knowledge.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC was established in 1990 through the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990), as amended by the Agricultural Research Amendment Act, 2001 (Act 27 of 2001), and it is the principal agricultural research institution in South Africa.

It is a Schedule 3A public entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), as amended by the Public Finance Management Amendment Act, 1999 (Act 29 of 1999).

Its core mandate is to act as the principal agricultural research institution in South Africa to conduct research, drive R&D, drive technology development and the dissemination of information to:

- promote agriculture and related industries
- contribute to a better quality of life
- facilitate and ensure natural resource conservation to alleviate poverty.

The ARC's main functions are to:

- undertake and promote research, technology development and technology transfer
- use the technological expertise in its possession and make it generally available
- publish information concerning its objectives and functions, and establish facilities for the collection and dissemination of information in connection with R&D
- publish the results of research
- establish and control facilities in the fields of research, technology development and technology transfer
- cooperate with departments of government, institutions, persons and other authorities for the promotion and conduct of research, technology development and technology transfer
- promote the training of research workers by means of bursaries or grants-in-aid for research, technology development and technology transfer
- support research, development and technology transfer programmes
- cooperate with persons and authorities in other countries conducting or promoting research, technology development and technology transfer in agriculture.

Council for Mineral Technology and Research (Mintek)

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral research organisation, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas. Working closely with industry and other R&D institutions, Mintek provides service test work, process development and optimisation, consulting as well as innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation that reports to the Minister of Mineral Resources. About 35% of the annual budget is funded by the State Science Vote.

As a global leader in minerals and metallurgical innovation, Mintek provides world-class R&D expertise, test work and process optimisation for all mineral sectors at interntional level. The activities range from initial bench-top investigations to full process flow-sheet development, pilot and demonstration plant design and optimisation of industrial plants.

Externally focused programmes are aimed at developing Mintek's future pipeline of science and engineering candidates by providing undergraduate and postgraduate bursary programmes for full-time study and internships supported by mentoring.

South African Medical Research Council (SAMRC)

The SAMRC is an independent statutory body that coordinates health and medical research activities throughout South Africa. The SAMRC's objectives are:

- promoting the health and quality of life of the population of South Africa
- performing such functions as may be assigned to the SAMRC by or under the MRC Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991).

The scope of the organisation's research projects includes tuberculosis, HIV and AIDS, cardiovascular and non-communicable diseases, gender and health, and alcohol and other drug abuse.

With a strategic objective to help strengthen the health systems of the country – in line with that of the Department of Health – the SAMRC constantly identifies the main causes of death in South Africa.

By analysing the causes and categories of death, data would become available to formulate suitable interventions to either prevent diseases in a certain population group or improve the standard of living of people living with existing medical conditions.

In addressing the ills of the people, the MRC, has set up a dedicated funding department to pay for the development of novel treatment regimens, especially vaccines, as well as improved diagnostic tools.

This project is intended to localise the production of new drugs and devices, and thereby allow the South African economy to grow.

The MRC awards scientific excellence with its annual Scientific Merit Awards Gala Ceremony. These awards acknowledge the contributions of established scientists as well as fresh scientists with ground-breaking efforts in their individual fields of science, engineering and technology.

In April 2017, it was announced that the SAMRC in collaboration with the Beijing Genomics Institute was to establish a Whole Genomic Sequencing research facility at its Cape Town facility. The venture aims to boost the provision of precision medicine in South Africa and to provide a positive step towards understanding the genetic composition of the population. Understanding a nation's genetic make-up enables scientists to develop medicine that targets its specific health challenges.

Council for Geoscience

The CGS is one of the national science councils of South Africa and is the legal successor of the Geological Survey of South Africa, which was formed in 1912 by the amalgamation of three former surveys, the oldest of which – the Geological Commission of the Cape of Good Hope – was founded in 1895. The Geoscience Act of 1993 established the CGS in its present form. The Act was later amended in 2010 to establish the Geoscience Amendment Act of 2010.

As a scientific research council, the CGS is mandated to provide for the promotion of research and the extension of knowledge in the field of geoscience as well as the provision of specialised geoscientific services. The CGS's head office is located in Pretoria, with regional offices located in Polokwane (Limpopo), Cape Town (Western Cape), Pietermaritzburg and Durban (KwaZulu-Natal), Port Elizabeth (Eastern Cape) and Upington (Northern Cape).

The CGS provides the following substantially different professional services:

- geophysical airborne and ground surveys
- geophysical data acquisition, processing and interpretation

(airborne and ground)
- engineering geosciences, including geotechnical services
- mineral resources development, including mining and minerals services
- water geoscience/hydrological services
- environmental management and rehabilitation
- marine geology, including port surveys
- spatial data and GIS services
- regional geological surveys and map compilations, including core-drilling services.

As the custodian of South Africa's geoscience data, the CGS has regional aeromagnetic, radiometric and gravity coverage of the country.

The CGS is involved in collaborative research projects that form part of its annual programme. These projects keep the CGS abreast with developments in the international geosciences field.

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS is a statutory body that operates as the national institution for the promotion and maintenance of standardisation and quality in connection with commodities and the rendering of services. The SABS:
- publishes national standards, which it prepares through a consensus process in technical committees
- provides information on national standards of all countries as well as international standards
- tests and certifies products and services to standards
- develops technical regulations (compulsory specifications) based on national standards, and monitors and enforces compliance with such technical regulations
- monitors and enforces legal metrology legislation
- promotes design excellence
- provides training on aspects of standardisation.

To maximise its service delivery to the industries it serves, the SABS aligned its activities with seven different industry sectors, each housing the whole range of the SABS services pertinent to a particular industry.

This change ensures easy access to products, faster reaction and turnaround times, and the creation of centres of knowledge excellence that will be easily available to clients.

The seven industry sectors are:
- chemicals
- electrotechnical
- food and health
- mechanical and materials
- mining and minerals
- services
- transportation.

Eskom

The electricity supply industry in South Africa consists of the generation, transmission, distribution and sales, as well as the import and export of electricity. Eskom is a key player in the industry, as South Africa operates most of the base-load and peaking capacity. The enterprise sells electricity to a variety of customers, including municipalities, who distribute power to end users under licence.

Sasol

Sasol's culture of innovation began in the 1950s when it developed its unique blend of coal gasification and Fischer-Tröpsch (FT) technology for its original coal-to-liquids operations at Sasolburg. It has since evolved these operations into fully fledged R&D facilities that form the heart of the Sasol technology R&D group.

Focused FT R&D in the 1980s and 1990s led to the development of the low temperature FT Sasol Slurry Phase process used at Sasolburg, and the high-temperature Sasol Advanced Synthol process used at Secunda.

Sasol Technology's Fuels Technology Division carries out work concerning fuels, lubricants, heating-fuel and road-binding material, R&D as well as new product formulation and testing.

In addition, Sasol opened the Sasol Fuels Application Centre (SFAC), a state-of-the-art engine and exhaust emission testing and research facility in Cape Town. The SFAC enables Sasol to conduct sea-level engine and emission tests in line with international standards.

ArcelorMittal

ArcelorMittal is a global steel-maker and with some 210 000 employees across 60 countries, the organisation is considered the world's leading steel and mining company.

ArcelorMittal is also the leader in all major global steel markets including automotive, construction, household appliances and packaging; with leading R&D and technology, sizeable captive supplies of raw materials and outstanding distribution networks.

The company has five main operations in South Africa.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa with the responsibility of supporting the national and provincial health departments in the delivery of healthcare.

The NHLS provides laboratory and related public health services to over 80% of the population through a national network of laboratories. Its specialised divisions include the National Institute for Communicable Diseases (NICD), the National Institute for Occupational Health, the National Cancer Registry and the Antivenom Unit.

The NHLS is a public health laboratory service with laboratories in all nine provinces, employing 6 700 people. Its activities comprise diagnostic laboratory services, research, teaching and training, and production of sera for anti-snake venom, reagents and media.

The African Society for Laboratory Medicine was established to evaluate and recognise the progress of laboratory Quality Management Systems using the World Health Organisation's Africa Stepwise Laboratory Improvement Process towards Accreditation checklist. The Northdale Laboratory in KwaZulu-Natal has obtained a five-star rating, which is the highest rating on the checklist.

Bureau for Economic Research (BER)

The BER monitors and forecasts macroeconomic economic and sector trends, and identifies and analyses local and international factors that affect South African businesses.

The organisation has built up and continues to expand its business tendency surveys and macroeconomic forecasting capabilities. Both are used for analysing and projecting South African macroeconomic trends. The BER uses a variety of internationally accepted methodologies and econometric

models for the generation and analysis of the data, as well as techniques developed specifically for the unique South African environment. Other activities include commissioned research, courses, conferences and training.

The BER's respected economic analysis and forecasting services are used by a wide range of clients, ranging from small to medium-sized firms up to very large JSE-listed companies, as well as public sector bodies and NGOs. Financial and investment companies, local and overseas banking groups, multilateral organisations and academic bodies all make use of the impartial economic information available from the BER.

Although the BER is part of the University of Stellenbosch, it has to fully fund all its expenses (such as salaries, a university levy, office rent, travel costs and other) from the sale of forecasts, sponsorships and customised research.

National Institute for Communicable Diseases

The NICD is a major global player in infectious disease intelligence. It is a resource of knowledge and expertise in regionally relevant communicable diseases to the South African Government, to SADC countries and the African continent.

The NICD assists in the planning of policies and programmes and supports appropriate responses to communicable disease problems and issues.

Control methods are assessed and recommendations are made to the appropriate authorities regarding equipment, insecticide usage and application.

Institute for Economic Research on Innovation (IERI)

IERI was established as a public-good research organisation with a core competence in the analysis of systems of innovation. Its mandate is to provide research, capacity-building and community engagement in this field of study.

Its tasks involve:

- conducting research into the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- contributing thought leadership on the relationship between knowledge and development across economic, social and political domains
- building capabilities and competencies in the understanding of the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- focusing across local, provincial, national, regional and international geographies.

Institute for Security Studies (ISS)

The ISS aims to enhance human security to enable sustainable development and economic prosperity in Africa. It works across the continent, doing authoritative research, providing expert policy advice and delivering practical training and technical assistance.

The ISS achieves its goal through the work of the following divisions and projects. The divisions are:

- governance, crime and justice
- conflict prevention and risk analysis
- peace operations and peacebuilding
- transnational threats and international crime.

The ISS is registered as a non-profit trust in South Africa and is accountable to a board of trustees. An international advisory council meets annually to advise the ISS on strategic policy and management issues.

South Africa's National Energy Development Institute (Sanedi)

The DST and the Department of Energy are joint custodians of Sanedi and assist in providing political and strategic focus for the company.

The institute is entrusted with the coordination and undertaking of public interest energy research, development and demonstration.

As such, it is responsible for enabling and implementing the energy technology roadmaps, which support long-term energy policies developed by the Department of Energy.

Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee

The activities of the Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee are aimed at advancing the safety of workers employed in South African mines.

The committee is a statutory tripartite committee of the Mine Health and Safety Council. It has a permanent research-management office managing the rock engineering, engineering and mine occupational health fields of research.

National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF)

The mission of the NARF is to facilitate consensus and integrate coordination in the fields of research, development and technology transfer to agriculture to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability.

NARF's activities are implemented by the NARF Secretariat, which is situated in the national Department of Agriculture.

The NARF Secretariat is responsible for providing sectoral support to the NARF Plenary and Steering Committee, composed of representatives of NARF's stakeholders headed by a chairperson who, in turn, is responsible to the NARF Plenary session. The Plenary is the highest organ of the NARF.

Water Research Commission (WRC)

The WRC was established in 1971 following a period of water shortages. The WRC is responsible for:

- promoting coordination, cooperation and communication in the area of water R&D
- establishing water-research needs and priorities
- stimulating and funding water research according to priority
- promoting the effective transfer of ICT
- enhancing knowledge and capacity-building within the water sector.

The WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water-use and waste management
- water use in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The main areas of research are surface hydrology, groundwater, hydrometeorology, agricultural water use, water pollution, municipal effluents, industrial water and effluents, drinking water, membrane technology, water ecosystems, hydraulics, mine-water management, water policy, developing communities and the transfer of technology.

Institute for Water Research

The Institute for Water Research is a multidisciplinary research department of Rhodes University in the Eastern Cape. Its main objective is to contribute to sustainable water-resource management in southern Africa.

This is achieved through scientific research into the structure and function of aquatic ecosystems; the application of research through specialist consultancy services; tertiary-level teaching and training; capacity-building for community development; and service on national and international management and policy-making committees.

South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI)

SANBI leads and coordinates research, and monitors and reports on the state of biodiversity in South Africa.

The institute provides knowledge and information, gives planning and policy advice and pilots best-practice management models in partnership with stakeholders.

SANBI engages in ecosystem restoration and rehabilitation, leads the human capital development strategy of the sector and manages the National Botanical Gardens as “windows” to South Africa’s biodiversity for enjoyment and education.

South Africa is one of the most biologically diverse countries in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. South Africa is surrounded by two oceans, occupies only about 2% of the world’s land area, but is home to nearly 10% of the world’s plants, 7% of the reptiles, birds and mammals as well as 15% of known coastal marine species. The country has nine biomes, three of which have been declared global biodiversity hotspots.

Coastal and marine research

The NRF supports marine and coastal research in partnership with the DEA and the South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research.

The Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and by monitoring the marine environment.

Sustainable use and the need to preserve future options in using marine ecosystems and their resources are guiding objectives in the research and advice provided by the chief directorate.

National research facilities

The national research facilities managed by the NRF are clustered on the basis of their areas of specialisation aligned to the science missions of the NRDS.

South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO)

The SAAO is the national centre for optical and infrared astronomy in South Africa. Its prime function is to conduct fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics by providing a world-class facility and by promoting astronomy and astrophysics in southern Africa.

The SAAO contributes to South Africa’s future development by creating and disseminating scientific knowledge, providing research infrastructure and providing an interface between science and society. It is also responsible for managing the operations of the South African Large Telescope.

Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO)

HartRAO is a national facility of the NRF. Its radio astronomy research focuses on stellar evolution, pulsars and masers; and its Space Geodesy research uses space-based techniques to study the earth. The facility is also used by university students for carrying out research, it also undertakes science awareness programmes for schools and the general public.

In 2016, the DST merged the HartRAO and the SKA project into a new South African Radioastronomy Observatory.

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (SAIAB)

A national facility of the NRF, the SAIAB is famous for its association with the discovery of the enigmatic coelacanth and is internationally recognised for ichthyological research, dynamic research staff and active postgraduate school. The SAIAB provides unique skills and infrastructure support in marine, estuarine and freshwater ecosystems research, molecular research, collections and bioinformatics.

South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON)

The SAEON is a business unit of the NRF and serves as a national platform for detecting, translating and predicting environmental change through scientifically designed observation systems and research. The SAEON also captures and makes long-term datasets freely accessible, and runs an education outreach programme. The SAEON has six nodes dispersed geographically across the country.

National Zoological Gardens (NZG)

The NZG is a rapidly transforming facility reporting to the NRF. It has an impressive animal collection, conservation centres, a Centre for Conservation Science as well as an NZG Academy. The NZG is well placed as an education and awareness platform for visitors comprising educators, learners, students, special interest groups and the general public.

iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences

The iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences is the continent’s largest facility for particle and nuclear research as well as one of only a handful of facilities in the world producing radionuclides for commercial, research and medical applications. In addition, its facilities include a full radiotherapy clinic for the treatment of certain cancers using both proton and neutron therapy.

South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP)

The SACNASP’s mandate is to provide a credible professional registration and regulatory body that allows natural scientists to establish, direct, sustain and ensure a high level of professionalism and ethical conscience in the natural scientific professions sector. The new council was appointed for four years, from May 2015 to April 2019.

Programmes and projects

Alternative energy solution

In November 2014, the DST officially launched the innovative 2,5 kW hydrogen fuel cell power generator prototype unit at the University of the Western Cape.

The generator demonstrates South Africa's innovative capabilities in the emerging hydrogen and fuel cell technologies space.

The prototype was developed by the HySA Systems Integration and Technology Validation Centre of Competence (HySA Systems) in

South African scientist Professor Robert Millar won the prestigious 2018 African Union (AU) Kwame Nkrumah Award in the Life and Earth Sciences category. The accolade was awarded during the opening ceremony of the 30th Assembly of Heads of State and Government of the AU which was held from 22 – 29 January 2018 in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. The awards which have been running since 2008, are in memory of Pan-Africanist and Ghana's first President Dr Kwame Nkrumah. Each winner received US$100 000 in prize money. collaboration with Hot Platinum (Pty Ltd), a local company involved in power management and control electronics.

The partners have been testing the unit at the Cape Flats Nature Reserve, at the Bellville campus of the University of the Western Cape.

All electrical power used in the reserve is generated from a bank of hydrogen cylinders, instead of from the national grid. The cylinders release hydrogen in the presence of a platinum catalyst (mined in North West) and a series of proton exchange membranes.

The hydrogen fuel cell power generator unit uses hydrogen to generate electrical power, with water vapour the only byproduct. In this way, electricity is produced in an environmentally friendly way without pollution or noise.

Furthermore, hydrogen can be used to produce electricity in remote areas that do not have access to the national grid. The decentralisation of energy generation by using hydrogen fuel cell systems is one of the few possibilities for providing efficient and cost-effective access to electricity.

The South African Government has rolled out several energy and energy-efficiency programmes and initiatives, such as HySA, with an emphasis on alternative energy opportunities and off-grid renewable energy solutions.

South Africa is one of the primary suppliers of platinum group metals to the world, but not much beneficiation is being done in the country.

The rise of hydrogen fuel cell technologies in various markets is about to change the global platinum landscape with the anticipated increase in platinum usage in this emerging market. There were significant opportunities for South Africa to partner with international fuel cell producers.These partnerships have the potential to make the country an established hub for the production of fuel cell components.

By May 2017, the DST had raised close to R40 million in support of the 2020 target for hydrogen fuel cell technologies. It plans to continue discussions with stakeholders across Government and the private sector to leverage the remaining R60 million needed to support the deployment of the technology.

Subprogrammes

The DST also has a number of subprogrammes that play a pivotal role in ensuring that the department meets its targets. They are:

- Human Capital and Science Promotion: Formulates and implements policies and strategies that address the availability of human capital for STI, and provides support for research activities.
- Science Missions: Promotes the development of research, the production of scientific knowledge, and the development of human capital within science areas in which South Africa enjoys a geographic advantage.
- Basic Science and Infrastructure: Facilitates the strategic implementation of research and innovation equipment and infrastructure to promote knowledge production in areas that are of national priority and to sustain innovation led by R&D.
- Astronomy: Supports the development of astronomical sciences around a research strategy on multi-wavelength astronomy, provides strategic guidance and support to relevant astronomy institutions in the implementation of the DST's astronomy programmes.
- Sector Innovation and Green Economy: Provides support in policy, strategy and direction setting for R&D-led growth in strategic sectors of the economy; supports the transition to a green economy.
- Innovation for Inclusive Development: Supports the development of science and technology-based innovations for tackling poverty, including the creation of sustainable jobs and sustainable human settlements, as well as the enhanced delivery of basic services.
- Science and Technology Investment: Leads and supports the development of indicators and instruments for monitoring investments in science and technology and the performance of the NSI, as well as ways of strengthening policy in relation to the NSI.
- Technology Localisation, Beneficiation and Advanced Manufacturing: Advances strategic medium and long-term priorities for sustainable economic growth and sector development, and public service delivery.

Research, Development and Innovation

This is at the heart of the DST's efforts to drive innovation in scientifically strategic areas.

The programme has five subprogrammes:

- Space Science and Technology
- Hydrogen and Energy
- Biotechnology and Health Innovation
- Innovation Planning and Instruments
- Radio Astronomy Advances.

Space science and technology

Square Kilometre Array

The multibillion-rand SKA, to be hosted in South Africa and Australia, will eventually extend into eight African countries and will be the world's biggest telescope. It is also one of the biggest-ever scientific projects and multinational collaborations in the name of science.

The radio telescope should be operationally mature by 2020. With thousands of linked radio wave receptors in Australia and in southern Africa, the SKA radio telescope will constantly scan space and feed the data to astronomers around the world.

The amounts of data being collected and transmitted by the SKA in a single day would take nearly two million years to play back on an iPod. This means the project requires supercomputing power and Big Data Management and Analytics capabilities on an unprecedented scale. The SKA is working with the world's most significant ICT powerhouses on the project.

One aspect of the project will see the Netherlands Institute for Radio Astronomy and IBM collaborating to research extremely fast, but low-power exascale computer systems, data transport and storage processes, and streaming analytics that will be required to read, store and analyse all the raw data that will be collected daily.

The SKA project will also have unprecedented data-connectivity needs. Meeting the advanced technological and engineering needs of this project will result in significant local skills development, revolutionise science and technology research and enable innovative new businesses and employment in the science, technology and engineering fields.

Aside from the benefits to African science, Big Data Management and Analytics capabilities could be the biggest spin-off from the SKA project.

The innovations, skills development and commercial potential emerging as a result of the project are huge. The potential is not just academic – the taxpayer-funded IP is developed to a point where it is ready to become commercialised and benefit the economy.

Human capital development is already taking place as a result of the SKA project, with bursaries and scholarships being granted to allow students to learn the necessary cutting-edge science, technology, mathematics and engineering skills to support the project. Because the SKA is a long-term project over decades, its effect will increase.

The Centre for High Performance Computing is a member of the international SKA Science Data Processing Consortium. With funding from the DST, it is also supporting eight African SKA partner countries through an initiative where they have installed its new supercomputer to provide 1 000 teraflops (1 petaflop) of computing power to researchers. The facility was upgraded to meet the growing demand for use by university and industrial researchers. The SKA remains a major platform for cutting-edge innovation in domains such as supercomputing the high-speed transmission and processing of massive data sets.

Going forward, there will be a strong drive to leverage the SKA as a spearhead for other programmes – including next generation high performance computing challenges and Big Data challenges.

By May 2017, there were 45 antennas and 57 pedestals installed as part of MeerKAT and the DST was on track to build the full complement of 64 by 31 March 2018. MeerKAT has reached another milestone with the integration of the 32 antennas into a polarisation correlator or array. The next array release, AR2, was set for later in 2017.

Furthermore, 75% of MeerKAT's components were sourced locally. To date, MeerKAT has spent R134 million on local construction suppliers and 351 people have been trained by major SKA contractors such as Stratcom. The SKA project has created 7 284 employment opportunities through the construction of the KAT-7, MeerKAT and related projects.

The SKA Human Capital Programme is aimed at developing a new generation of young researchers and engineers. By its 11th year, the SKA bursary initiative had funded 919 students, 133 of whom were from other African countries, from undergraduate to postdoctoral level.

Astronomy courses are also being implemented in other African countries, including Kenya, Mozambique, Madagascar and Mauritius. Career opportunities will increase substantially and new business opportunities will emerge.

Information and communications technology

The DST is leading the implementation of the national ICT Research, Development and Innovation Strategy. Its main purpose is to create an enabling environment for the advancement of ICT research, development and innovation in South Africa.

South Africa's research capacity in the ICT field has become a strong competitive advantage.

The ICT Research, Development and Innovation Strategy aims to achieve a marked increase in advanced HR capacity, promote world-class research and build robust innovation chains for the creation of new high-tech ICT small enterprises. Implementing the strategy demands partnership involving Government, the private sector, higher education institutions and science councils.

The Meraka Institute of the CSIR manages and coordinates the implementation of the strategy. An important envisaged outcome is a vibrant, sustainable and innovative indigenous ICT industry that addresses a significant portion of the country's ICT needs and attracts investments by overseas-based multinational ICT corporations in research, development and innovation and manufacturing facilities and resources in South Africa.

The Centre for High-Performance Computing (CHPC), SANReN and the Very Large Databases are the three pillars of cyberinfrastructure that the DST supports. Hosted by the University of Cape Town and managed by the CSIR's Meraka Institute, the CHPC was the first of its kind in South Africa and is making scientific supercomputing a reality for South Africa.

A major project for SANReN is the national backbone network, which aimed to connect all major metros in the country with a 10 gigabyte per second link.

SANReN, linking 215 research sites, consists of 1 500 km of dark fibre and 5 000 km of managed bandwidth. This network is complemented by significant international broadband capacity on the West Africa Cable System and the east coast SEACOM system, ensuring that the DST's projects support competitive research and innovation as it prepares the national innovation system for the future.

SANReN connects more than 200 sites from Thohoyandou to Cape Town. This includes all the main campuses of all South African universities and most public research institutions, as well as global projects such as the SKA and the MeerKAT.

Indigenous knowledge systems (IKS)

The Indigenous Knowledge System Policy serves as a guide for the recognition, understanding, integration and promotion of South Africa's wealth of indigenous knowledge resources.

One of the areas of action identified by the policy is the protection of indigenous knowledge and the holders of such knowledge against exploitation.

This includes ensuring that communities receive fair and sustained recognition and, where appropriate, financial

remuneration for the use of this knowledge.

The indigenous knowledge of many communities embodies a deeply spiritualised and ancient relationship with the Earth's systems and cycles.

Traditional songs and languages, clothing, architecture, foods, motifs, daily rituals and mythological epics contain local survival information. Moreover, the diversity of indigenous cultures provides unique insights into how to live harmoniously within nature.

By sharing indigenous stories of vulnerability and adaptation, people learn how communities share ideas on how ancestral wisdom is being incorporated into climatic adaptation strategies.

By cherishing the value of indigenous knowledge, people can discover how best to adapt to a changing climate.

The DST has three IKS priorities:

- The development of a regulatory environment for the protection of IKS.
- The development of the National Recordal System for the collection, recording, documenting, storage and management and dissemination of IKS in communities in the nine provinces of the country. Until orally transmitted and rapidly disappearing indigenous knowledge is recorded, it will be difficult to protect. The National Recordal System is the largest fingerprint initiative of the region to document and record indigenous knowledge.
- Applied research, specifically bio-prospecting activities. An example would the Moritela Tshwene Tea Project near Zeerust in the North West.

In addition, two UK-South Africa bilateral research chairs have been awarded for research into food security one co-hosted by the universities of the Western Cape and Pretoria, and the other based at the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University.

The DST also established indigenous knowledge studies CoEs at some of the country's universities. The CoEs will play a defining role in generating highly qualified HR capacity in IKS.

Cooperation with other national state departments and role players

The DST continues to collaborate with district municipalities to build and strengthen science capacity to advance local economic development.

Private-sector involvement

South Africa's gold-mining industry works at deeper levels and under more difficult conditions than any other mining industry in the world.

The research into gold mining conducted by the CSIR's Mining Technology Group is concerned primarily with ensuring the health and safety of the workforce.

It includes those working in the areas of rock engineering and the underground environment.

Mining Technology's coal-mining research takes place on a smaller scale than that of gold mining, because the coal-mining industry is able to make use of various developments overseas.

Areas in which research is undertaken include strata control, mining, maximising the extraction of coal and the underground environment.

Research is also carried out by a large number of industrial companies with facilities to meet their specific needs.

The Mining Precinct is situated at a CSIR site, meaning that the public and private sectors are under one roof. Cooperation between public and private sectors is one of the great outcomes of the Mining Phakisa, forming a coalition of the willing to take the South African mining industry into a modernised future.

The Mining Precinct model creates an environment where "like-minded" people can work in close proximity and share ideas. It will host different hubs that will focus on mining technology, manufacturing and sustainable development.

In addition, the Mining Precinct is complemented by the equipment-focused representative organisation Mining Equipment Manufacturers South Africa (Memsa), which was launched by the Department of Trade and Industry.

Memsa is hosted within the Mining Precinct and is working in close collaboration with the mining (R&D) hub and local mining companies to determine their current equipment stocks, future needs and potential future order quantities to develop a better understanding of the possibilities related to future mining equipment.

This collaborative effort aims to link to other institutions, such as universities and research entities nationally and internationally.

Natural resource development

To reinvigorate the South African mining sector and to harness the vast amounts of existing and potential opportunities for industrial and manufacturing growth, it is crucial for the country to create the technologies and mining methods to push mining deeper in a commercially viable manner.

Now, more than ever, South Africa needs a competitive mining industry. This will only be possible if science and technology plays the quintessential role of changing the cost and exploitation horizons of the sector.

None of the existing mining stakeholders (publically funded research institutions, private sector companies, universities, unions or Government) have the scale to impact the situation alone over the long run.

To achieve this, a critical mass of science and knowledge to push the frontiers of mining will require a national effort consisting of deep partnerships and collaborations across institutions and industries.

Human capital development

The DST's Human Capital and Science Platforms Subprogramme conceptualises, formulates and implements programmes aimed at developing and renewing science, engineering and technology human capital to promote knowledge generation, protection and exploitation.

South African universities train more and more scientists each year, with whose help the country will be able to provide top-notch R&D and thus reaching its target for gross expenditure on R&D of 1,5% of GDP.

Food security and access to clean water remain among Government's top priorities – the department is therefore also focusing on using science and technology to ensure that existing water supplies are clean and is playing an active role in ensuring food security into the future.

International Cooperation and Resources

The DST is not only entrusted with the overall coordination of national research and innovation initiatives in South Africa, but

is also responsible for overseeing and facilitating South Africa's international scientific and technological cooperation.

The International Cooperation and Resources Programme's purpose is to:

- strategically develop, promote and manage international partnerships that strengthen the NSI
- enable an exchange of knowledge, capacity and resources between South Africa and its international partners, with a focus on supporting STI capacity-building in Africa
- support South African foreign policy through science diplomacy
- complement South Africa's national investments in STI, including access to resources for department initiatives that require external investment, by securing international funds of R1,4 billion by 31 March 2018
- maintain the number of researchers awarded research grants through NRF-managed programmes at 13 617 by the end of 2016
- maintain the number of International Science Indexing or ISI-accredited research articles published by NRF-funded researchers at 21 000 by mid-2016
- strategically develop priority science areas in which South Africa enjoys a competitive advantage
- promote South Africa as a preferred partner for international science and technology cooperation.

South Africa is regarded by many countries and private sector partners as a preferred and privileged partner for international cooperation in STI. On average, approximately 15% of annual R&D funding in South Africa comes from international investors.

Cooperation with other African partners and support for STI capacity-building in Africa remains a strategic priority for the DST. In this context, accessing its extensive network of international partners, the DST managed to secure R113 748 000 from international partners to support collaborative projects in Africa.

The DST itself has invested in 61 jointly funded projects with African partners, for example Egypt, Kenya, Tunisia and Zambia. In the multilateral context, the DST actively supported 13 African Union (AU) and Southern African Development Community (SADC) partnership initiatives.

The DST's International Cooperation and Resources branch has been allocated R124 million to enhance its science diplomacy work. This is to support strengthening and managing the DST's dynamic and diverse portfolio of relations with a range of international partners.

A recently released Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development study highlighted that among BRICS (Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa trade bloc) nations, South Africa ranked highest in terms of the percentage of scientific papers published by the country's researchers with international authors, pointing to the country's status as a sought-after partner for international STI partnership.

Several major multinational companies such as Pfizer, Nestlé and Hitachi have invested in research, innovation and human capital development activities in South Africa in partnership with the DST.

South Africa is also an important strategic partner for such major philanthropic organisations as the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, which has invested in programmes to harness STI for poverty alleviation.

South Africa participates successfully in competitive international research funding programmes. In the European Union's prestigious Horizon 2020 Framework Programme for Research and Innovation, South Africa's success in terms of the number of projects involving the country's researchers is, among countries outside Europe, bettered only by the US and Canada.

South Africa continues to provide leadership in the science structures of organisations such as the AU and the SADC. The DST led the preparation of the first BRICS multilateral framework programme for collaborative research and innovation.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Social Development

The work of the Department of Social Development (DSD) gives effect to Outcome 13 (an inclusive and responsive social protection system) of government's 2014 – 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTEF).

The department's focus over the MTEF period will be on improving the social development sector through:

- increasing access to social assistance
- investing in and increasing access to quality early childhood development (ECD) services
- reforming and standardising the social welfare system
- expanding social development services
- improving household access to food and nutrition
- strengthening community participation in service delivery.

The strategic goals for the DSD are to:

- review and reform social welfare services and financing
- improve and expand ECD provision
- deepen social assistance and extend the scope of the contributory social security system
- enhance the capabilities of communities to achieve sustainable livelihoods and household food security
- strengthen coordination, integration, planning, monitoring and evaluation of services.

South Africa has made good progress in building social cohesion and promoting a new single national identity. The biggest barrier to increasing social cohesion is the remaining inequality in society, which needs to be attended to.

More than half of all households in South Africa benefit from Government's social assistance programme.

Comprehensive social security alleviates and reduces poverty, vulnerability, social exclusion and inequality through a comprehensive social protection system.

Empowering young and old people, those with disabilities as well as women in particular, helps rebuild families and communities.

Welfare services create and provide social protection to the most vulnerable of society through the delivery of social welfare services via provincial government and non-profit organisation (NPO) structures.

Legislation and frameworks

The DSD is not established in terms of a single Act. Several pieces of legislation determine its mandate, including the Social Assistance Act, 2004 (Act 13 of 2004), which provides a legislative framework for providing social assistance. The Act sets out the different types of grants payable, as well as their qualifying criteria. It also makes provision for the establishment of the inspectorate for social assistance.

The DSD furthermore derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- The Advisory Board on Social Development Act, 2001 (Act 3 of 2001).
- The Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005).
- The Children's Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 41 of 2007).
- The Fund-Raising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978)
- The Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002).
- The National Welfare Act, 1978 (Act 100 of 1978).
- The National Development Agency (NDA) Act, 1998 (Act 108 of 1998).
- The NPO Act, 1997 (Act 71 of 1997).
- The Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006)
- The Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act, 1992 (Act 20 of 1992).
- The Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act, 2008 (Act 70 of 2008).
- The Probation Services Act, 1991 (Act 116 of 1991).
- The South African Social Security Agency (SASSA) Act, 2004 (Act 9 of 2004).
- The Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 6 of 2008).
- The Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act 110 of 1978). The Act also provides for the appointment of the Independent Tribunal in a way to be prescribed by regulation, and contains a number of technical amendments and corrections.
- In terms of the Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 5 of 2010), beneficiaries and other applicants may now ask SASSA to reconsider the relevant decision before appealing to the tribunal. All applications for appeal must now show that they have gone through the reconsideration process at SASSA.

According to the National Development Plan (NDP) 2030, South Africa needs to pay careful attention to the design of policies between now and 2030 to ensure that vulnerable groups and citizens are protected from the worst effects of poverty.

These social protection measures proposed seek to support those most in need, including children, people with disabilities and the elderly; and promote active participation in the economy and society for those who are unemployed and underemployed through labour market activation measures, employment services, income support programmes and other services to sustain and improve quality of life.

The plan acknowledges that the country has built an advanced and comprehensive social protection system with wide reach and coverage, but the system is still fragmented, plagued by administrative bottlenecks and implementation inefficiencies.

As a result, the various elements of the social protection system are not operating seamlessly. The priority should be improving efficiency in the delivery of services, addressing exclusions by identifying and reaching those who are entitled to the existing benefits of social protection, reducing the administrative bottlenecks that prevent people accessing benefits.

Childcare legislation

The Children's Act of 2005 sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children; defines parental responsibilities and rights; and provides for matters such as children's courts, adoption, child abduction and surrogate motherhood.

The Act also:

- gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution
- provides for the issuing of contribution orders
- provides for intercountry adoption
- gives effect to the Hague Convention on Intercountry Adoption
- prohibits child abduction and gives effect to the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction
- recognises new offences relating to children
- provides for matters relating to the trafficking of children and the implementation of the relevant protocol.

The Children's Act of 2005 provides for the establishment of the National Child Protection Register that records all people found

unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this law, childcare facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, are able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

The register is not open to the public and all requests for information must be directed to the DSD.

The Children's Amendment Act of 2007 provides for:

- the partial care of children
- ECD
- protection of children
- prevention and early intervention services
- children in alternative care
- foster care
- child and youth care centres, shelters and drop-in centres
- new offences relating to children
- the plight of child-headed households
- respect for parental rights by providing that no person may take or send a South African child out of the country without the consent of the parents or guardian
- the discipline of children.

The national guidelines to protect and care for children include the Constitution, the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act 74 of 1983), as amended, the White Paper for Social Welfare (1997) and the Children's Act of 2005, as amended.

Section 137 of the Children's Act of 2005 proposes new protection measures for child-headed households.

This section defines children from child-headed households, provides for appointing an adult to supervise a child-headed household and allows children in child-headed households to access social grants and other material assistance.

Budget

The department's budget allocation for the 2017/18 financial year was R160.4 billion. Over the medium term, the DSD will continue to provide social grants to the elderly, children, war veterans and people with disabilities.

These grants boost the incomes of poor households, which bear the brunt of persistent unemployment, poverty and inequality in South Africa.

Protecting and promoting the rights of children

The DSD, in consultation with a range of stakeholders, has developed a government-wide ECD policy and programme. The objectives of the policy are to:

- ensure that comprehensive, quality ECD services are in close proximity and equitably accessible to all children and their caregivers
- enable parents to lead and participate in the development of their young children through the use of these services
- and to ensure alignment and harmonisation across the different sectors responsible for ECD services.

The Children's Act of 2005 requires the DSD to establish and manage a national child protection register as part of the overall child protection system. The aim of the register is to have a record of all reports of abuse and all convictions, and to use the information to protect children from unsuitable persons.

All persons working with children are meant to be screened against the register. Organisations providing services to children, such as ECD centres, cannot complete their registration process unless they have screened all employees.

Role players

Department of Women

The Department of Women is situated in The Presidency. The mandate of the department is to champion the advancement of women's socio-economic empowerment and the promotion of gender equality.

Its mission is to accelerate socio-economic transformation for women empowerment and the advancement of gender equality.

National Development Agency

The NDA is a public entity, listed under Schedule 3A of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).

Its mandates are to:

- contribute towards the eradication of poverty and its causes by granting funds to civil-society organisations (CSOs)
- implement development projects in poor communities
- strengthen the institutional capacity of CSOs that provide services to poor communities
- promote consultation, dialogue and sharing of development experience between CSOs and relevant organs of State
- debate development policy
- undertake research and publication aimed at providing the basis for development policy.

The NDA supports the work of civil society in key areas of concern.

It is an important partner in the DSD's efforts to promote ECD by using its grants to strengthen the capacities of ECD community-service organisations, which support the department's efforts to reduce violence against women and children by providing key support to the gender-based violence (GBV) sector.

NDA programmes include grant funding, capacity-building and research, policy dialogue and impact assessment.

Capacity-building interventions are geared towards ensuring that recipients of grant funding are not only given money to start and run their projects, but that they are empowered with the necessary skills to ensure sustainability.

The NDA has established the Programme Management Unit, which is responsible for offering project management services to private and public-sector stakeholders who wish to fund poverty-eradication projects.

Particular emphasis is placed on those in the NDA's primary areas of focus, namely food security, ECD, enterprise development and income-generation programmes.

South African Social Security Agency

SASSA's objectives are to ensure the effective and efficient administration, management and payment of social assistance grants. It manages a large payment system to more than 17 million beneficiaries monthly.

The agency's key strategic focus over the MTEF period will be on putting the required systems in place to transfer the payment function of social grants from a contractor to the agency.

The new gold SASSA card operates fully within the national payment system and it has the following benefits for social-grant beneficiaries:

- Three cash withdrawals from any participating merchant (such as Shoprite, Boxer, etc);
- One free over-the-counter cash withdrawal at the South African Post Office;

- Unlimited free swipes (purchase payments) at all merchants; One free ATM balance enquiry per month;

The only deduction permitted is for funeral policies, up to no more than 10% of the grant value.

Advisory Board on Social Development

The Advisory Board on Social Development's key functions include:

- advising the Minister on all matters related to social development
- identifying, promoting, monitoring and evaluating policy, legislation and programmes regarding social development
- facilitating dialogue with and the participation of civil society.

South African Council of Social Service Professions (SACSSP)

The SACSSP is a statutory body with the primary focus of developing and protecting the integrity of the social service professions and the interest of the public at large.

The SACSSP is established in terms of Section 2 of the Social Service Professions Act of 1978.

All professionals who practice any of the social service professions incorporated in the scope of the SACSSP are obliged by the Social Service Professions Act of 1978 to register with the SACSSP. Failure to do so constitutes a criminal offence.

The council guides and regulates the Social Services Professions in the country in aspects pertaining to registration by:

- ensuring compliance by pactitioners in order for the sector to be serviced by registered persons, education and training
- ensuring continuing professional development and compliance by training instutions and professional conduct
- ensuring compliance by all registered practitioners in terms of professional and ethical services to communities and individuals.

The council has two professional boards under its auspices:

- The Professional Board for Social Workers.
- The Professional Board for Child and Youth Care.

Non-profit organisations

The NPO Directorate of the DSD administers the Register of NPOs in South Africa.

It is a voluntary registration facility that enhances the credibility of the registered NPO as it reports to a public office. Registration promotes effective, efficient and accountable management within the sector.

NPOs registered with the DSD are required in terms of the NPO Act of 1997 to submit their annual reports (narrative and financial reports) to the department. This applies to all NPOs registered under the NPO Act of 1997, whether funded or unfunded.

Programmes and projects

16 Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children

The 16 Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children is an annual awareness campaign observed globally.

It addresses policy and legal issues and calls for the elimination of all forms of GBV.

The campaign runs from 25 November, which was officially recognised by the UN in 1999 as the International Day for the Elimination of Violence against Women.

South Africa has added children to the campaign, as there is growing concern about the increasing violence against children.

The campaign ends on 10 December – International Human Rights Day.

Other important days commemorated annually during this 16-day period include World AIDS Day on 1 December and the International Day for Persons with Disabilities on 3 December.

The United Nations (UN) has proclaimed 25 November as International Day of No Violence Against Women.

Project Mikondzo

Project Mikondzo (which means "footprint" in Xitsonga) compels office-bound officials from the department, the NDA and the SASSA to join frontline officials to interact with communities in a bid to tackle social problems such as poverty, malnutrition, violence against women and child-headed households.

The 1 300 wards form part of 23 district municipalities from seven provinces, which Cabinet has prioritised for additional support.

The project includes an audit of ECD centres and the setting up of a command centre with a toll-free hotline open 24 hours a day, seven days a week. It also includes a substance abuse awareness campaign targeting sports and music events, the targeting of GBV and the strengthening of NPOs.

The project helps Government reach the about two million children who qualify for CSGs but who have not registered with SASSA to receive grants.

Anti-Substance Abuse Programme of Action

Alcohol advertising is regulated by the Liquor Act, 2003 (Act 59 of 2003) which outlines the guidelines for liquor advertising. The alcohol industry is self-regulated by the Code of Commercial Communication of Alcohol Beverages, something to which most companies and advertisers adhere.

The Central Drug Authority Board developed regulations for the Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act of 2008.

The Act provides for a comprehensive national response for combating substance abuse in South Africa through:

- mechanisms aimed at reducing demand and harm in relation to substance abuse through prevention, early intervention, treatment and reintegration programmes
- registration and establishment of treatment centres and halfway houses
- the committal of persons to and from treatment centres and for their treatment.

In its efforts to reduce incidents of GBV which are often caused by abuse of alcohol and drugs, the DSD has launched the GBV Command Centre (GBVCC) – a 24-hour call centre.

The GBVCC provides support and counselling to victims of GBV. As the Gold Medal Winner, this means the GBVCC is ranked number one in the world in its category.

Victims of GBV are encouraged to contact 0800 428 428 (0800 GBV GBV), a toll free number to speak to a social worker for assistance and counselling. Callers can also request a social worker from the Command Centre to contact them by dialling *120*7867# (free) from any cellphone.

The DSD had commissioned a review of the Ke Moja Drug Awareness Campaign to ascertain its effectiveness and strengthen dissemination of information tools.

One of the common drugs, Tik, is sold as a combination of amphetamines and talcum powder, baking powder, starch, glucose or quinine. The drug changes users' behaviour and some symptoms associated with usage of its usage and addiction range from loss of appetite, weight loss, aggression, anxiety, headaches as well as change in dress code.

Health professionals are also concerned about the devastating effects of this drug on the user which among its many effects induces psychotic symptoms, such as seeing or hearing things that are not there, and violence, making it a far more dangerous drug than most other drugs available in South Africa.

Government departments are collaborating with other sectors of society to implement the NDMP to respond to the scourge of drugs and substance abuse.

The Central Drug Authority is charged with the responsibility to develop and implement a coordinated approach encompassing supply control and demand reduction progress.

Provincial substance abuse forums have been established as well as local drug action committees which consists of social workers, teachers, justice and committee representatives.

The UN General Assembly, in its resolutions 42/112 of December 1987, declared 26 June as the International Day Against Drug Abuse and Illicit Trafficking.

Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The EPWP is a nationwide programme under the auspices of government and state-owned enterprises.

The programme provides an important avenue for labour absorption and income transfers to poor households in the short to medium term. It is also a deliberate attempt by public sector bodies to use expenditure on goods and services to create job opportunities for the unemployed.

EPWP projects employ workers on a temporary or ongoing basis either by Government, by contractors, or by NGOs under the Ministerial Conditions of Employment for the EPWP or learnership employment conditions.

The EPWP Phase 3 was expected to create six million work opportunities; out of this overall targeted figure the projected work opportunities to be created by the EPWP social sector is 1 037 000 work opportunities by 2019.

Early Childhood Development

ECD refers to the processes by which children from birth to at least nine years grow and thrive, physically, mentally, emotionally, spiritually, morally and socially. The South African Government recognises that increasing access to, as well as improving the quality of ECD provision, will contribute significantly to improving the learning outcomes of children within the basic education sector.

Food for All Programme

The DSD is tasked with facilitating and monitoring the implementation of the Food for All Programme.

To this end, distressed households were being provided with food through the department and Food Bank South Africa programme.

While this provides short-term relief for poor households, Government recognises that longer-term solutions are needed.

Government is committed to improving its efforts at ensuring food security for all in the country, starting with vulnerable households and communities.

To this end, households have been assisted in establishing food gardens to produce their own food, thus participating in their own development.

National Minimum Wage (NMW)

In December 2018, President Cyril Ramaphosa announced that the NMW will be implemented from 1 January 2019. The NMW of R20 an hour represents a marked increase in income for more than six million workers – or 47% of South Africa's labour force – who earn less than R20 an hour. This rate is subject to future adjustments in terms of the NMW Act of 2018.

In February 2017, representatives of government, business, the community sector and two of the three labour federations represented at the National Economic Development and Labour Council signed agreements on measures to strengthen labour stability and collective bargaining and on modalities for the introduction of a NMW.

The social partners reached agreement on modalities for the introduction of a NMW of R20 an hour. This translates to about R3 500 for those working 40 hours per week and about R3 900 for those who work for 45 hours per week.

The NMW is expected to significantly improve the lives of millions of low-paid workers and begin to address the challenge of wage inequality.

Job creation and poverty alleviation

The Mid-year population estimates by Stats SA show that South Africa still has a relatively young population. Two thirds of the population is younger than 35 years old. Those aged 15 to 35 years, which are defined as youth, comprise almost 40% of the total population. The youth are also the fastest-growing age group in the country.

This trend creates the prospect for a so-called "demographic dividend", in which resources are invested into activities that promote social and economic development and growth.

South Africa, like most countries, is grappling with the challenge of youth unemployment. Youth unemployment in South Africa is estimated to be 38,6%, with 58% of unemployed people aged between 15 and 34.

Government has recognised the problem of poor economic participation of young people and has put in place numerous policy interventions geared towards bringing youth into the mainstream of the economy to enhance social inclusion and cohesion.

Through the National Treasury and Department of Labour, the DSD introduced youth unemployment policy options for South Africa with the aim of incentivising entities to employ young people.

The National Youth Development Agency has provided the Integrated Youth Development Strategy with the key mandate of implementing interventions geared towards the economic participation of young people, namely, youth work, national youth services, and education and skills relevant to economic empowerment.

Government strives to provide an opportunity to raise the share of youth-owned businesses and to support youth to engage in cooperatives in the country.

The NDP is clear about the need for skills development in promoting economic growth and reaching related goals and the country has done well in the past 20 years of democracy

to ensure that practically all children who should be in primary school are there.

Access to food

In South Africa, although household access to food has improved since 2002, it has remained relatively static since 2011. The Household Food Insecurity Access Scale, which is aimed at determining households' access to food, showed that the percentage of South African households with inadequate or severely inadequate access to food decreased from 23,6% in 2010 to 21,3% in 2017. During this time, the percentage of individuals that were at risk of going hungry decreased from 29,1% to 24,7%.

Between 2002 and 2017, the percentage of households that experienced hunger decreased from 24,2% to 10,4% while the percentage of individuals who experienced hunger decreased from 29,3% to 12,1.

HIV and AIDS support

South Africa is continually striving to do more to stop new HIV infections and prevent AIDS-related deaths. In March 2017, the country launched its third five-year National Strategic Plan (NSP) on HIV, Sexually Transmitted Infections and Tuberculosis (2017–2022) under the slogan "Let Our Actions Count". The NSP, a guide for the country's response to these infections, seeks to reduce new HIV infections by 63% – from 270 000 in 2016 to less than 100 000 by 2022.

National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime

The National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime is updated annually in collaboration with the provincial VEP managers or coordinators and their provincial counterparts.

Children and youth

The Home Community-Based Care programme is the centrepiece of government's interventions to build a protective and caring environment for vulnerable children.

Most services include early identification of vulnerable children and their families, referrals, training of community caregivers and psychosocial support and material assistance, to name a few.

This approach is geared towards keeping children within their families and communities.

It is aimed at providing comprehensive care and support which is complemented by proactive action at community level. This includes linking families with poverty alleviation projects and other services in the community, such as food security initiatives and ECD services.

With effect from 1 April 2018, the Government Employee Pension Fund has introduced the new Child's Pension, which replaces the Orphan's Pension.

It will no longer be necessary for both parents to die first before a child or children can apply for pension. A child qualifies for Child's Pension up to the age of 22, regardless of whether or not the child is a student.

Child Labour Programme of Action (CLPA)

The CLPA is a national partnership initiated by Government, civil-society partners comprising organised business, organised labour and NGOs. The lead department is the Department of Labour.

The CLPA is South Africa's roadmap towards the prevention, reduction and eventual elimination of child labour.

The CLPA was first adopted in 2003 after extensive consultation within Government, with a wide range of organisations outside Government and with groups of teenage children involved in different forms of child labour. The programme sets out specific actions to be taken and assigned responsibility for these actions.

The third phase of the CLPA covered the period April 2013 to March 2017.

Childline South Africa

Childline offers a 24-hour toll-free crisis line (08000 55 555) to children and families across South Africa. It provides immediate assistance to children and families in crisis who need counselling and information. Childline is an NPO that works to protect children from all forms of violence and create a culture of respect for children's rights.

Programmes delivered through the provincial offices include:

- a crisis line
- child rights and education
- training and education of volunteers
- training of other professionals who work with child protection and children
- therapy for abused and traumatised children and their families
- court preparation of child witnesses
- networking and coordination
- lobbying and advocacy
- analysis of law and policy.

People with disabilities

In March 2016, government released the *White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities* (WPRPD) for public comment.

The White Paper is a call to action for government, civil society and the private sector to work together to ensure the socio-economic inclusion of persons with disabilities. Government seeks to create a caring and inclusive society that protects and develops the human potential of its children, a society for all where persons with disabilities enjoy the same rights as their fellow citizens, and where all citizens and institutions share equal responsibility for building such a society.

The WPRPD is intended to accelerate transformation and redress regarding full inclusion, integration and equality for persons with disabilities.

South Africa has been celebrating the annual International Day for Persons with Disabilities since 1997. According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey 2017, some 4,2% of South Africans aged five years and older were classified as disabled in 2016.

Women (4,5%) were slightly more likely to be disabled than men (3,9%). Northern Cape (7,0%), North West (6,4%), and Eastern Cape (4,9%) presented the highest prevalence of disability in the country.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation for the blind, and is governed by the blind. Situated in Johannesburg, it is aligned with other member organisations throughout South Africa.

Blind SA's main focus is to improve the quality of life of all South Africa's visually impaired people by empowering them through education.

Its objectives are to protect and promote the interests of people with visual impairment and enable all visually impaired people to achieve their optimal potential through independence; and by providing development care for and protecting the rights of those who, owing to circumstances beyond their control, are unable to do so themselves.

Orientation, mobility and skills development to blind and newly blinded people is an important aspect of the work undertaken by Blind SA.

The organisation provides, among other things, study bursaries for visually impaired students for further education, Braille publications in all of South Africa's official languages, Braille training that entails writing and reading, and orientation and mobility training.

South African Braille Authority (SABA)

SABA's purpose is to set and maintain standards for Braille in all 11 official languages of South Africa.

These standards relate to the development and maintenance of Braille codes; production of quality Braille; the teaching of, access to and promotion of Braille; Braille examinations; and many other Braille-related matters.

Members of SABA include schools for the blind (approximately half the members), consumer organisations of the blind, student disability units, Braille producers and the South African Library for the Blind.

Through SABA, South Africa is a member country of the International Council on English Braille (ICEB).

ICEB membership enables South Africa to stay abreast of and participate in international Braille-related matters.

South African National Council for the Blind (SANCB)

The SANCB is the coordinating body for over 100 member organisations that span the full spectrum of services offered for and to blind and partially sighted people throughout the country.

The SANCB comprises four core business areas, namely social development, the bureau for the prevention of blindness, education and lastly fund-raising and public relations.

To combat as much as 80% of avoidable blindness, the council regularly undertakes tours with its mobile eye care clinics to rural areas for eye screening, referrals and to perform cataract removal operations.

The SANCB provides entrepreneurial training, adult basic education and training, and facilitates skills training such as computer literacy and call centre programmes through its Optima College.

Support for the deaf

South Africa's national organisation for the deaf is the Deaf Federation of South Africa (DeafSA).

DeafSA has nine provincial chapters throughout South Africa.

Two other national organisations for the deaf are Deafblind South Africa and SHHH South Africa, the South African organisation for the hard of hearing.

An estimated 500 000 to 600 000 South Africans use South African Sign Language. As sign language has grown in South Africa – particularly baby sign language – an NPO, Sign Language Education and Development, has been formed to promote sign language.

Signing with hearing babies and children is being promoted through the Signsational Kids website.

South Africa has a long-established deaf education system. Statistics indicate that there are more than 40 schools for the deaf in South Africa. They include:

- De la Bat School (run by the Institute for the Deaf)
- Fulton School for the Deaf
- Kutlwanong School for the Deaf (Rustenburg)
- Kwa Thintwa School for Hearing Impaired
- St Vincent's School for the Deaf (Johannesburg)
- Vuleka School for the Blind and Deaf.

The Institute for the Deaf in Worcester operates Deaf College South Africa, which trains deaf people for jobs.

In addition, the Bible College for the Deaf in Gauteng trains people to work in deaf ministry.

The University of the Witswatersrand in Johannesburg has a Centre for Deaf Studies. The centre offers programmes in deaf education and focuses on teaching, research and community service.

Among other services, the National Institute for the Deaf provides services for multiple disabled deaf, runs two deaf churches and provides audiological and mental health services.

A Deaf Child Centre at the Department of Paediatrics and Child Health at the University of Cape Town, provides pre-school education and community services. This centre also focuses on deafness research.

The Carel du Toit Centre, based in Cape Town, provides early childhood auditory-oral education.

In addition, the centre engages in community outreaches, helping families with hearing-related needs and more practical needs such as food.

A similar centre is the Eduplex in Pretoria. It provides auditory-oral pre-school and primary school educational services, teaching hearing and deaf children together and provides training to prospective teachers, audiologists and therapists.

Older people

The DSD promotes a holistic approach to active ageing and well-being among the country's senior citizens. A number of initiatives have been rolled out by the departments of social development, health, tourism, sport and recreation South Africa and other stakeholders to promote general health among older persons, especially through sports to promote general well-being.

The government has since 2008 implemented a national active ageing programme in line with the Madrid International Plan of Action on Ageing of 2002.

The Madrid Plan of Action offers a bold new agenda for handling the issue of ageing in the 21st century. It focuses on three priority areas: older persons and development, advancing health and well-being into old age and ensuring enabling and supportive environments.

The Older Persons Act of 2006 aims to enhance the quality of life and improve the health of older persons by engaging them in programmes that promote social, physical, mental and emotional well-being to prevent or delay the onset of ageing challenges and keep old age related illness at bay.

The Older Persons' Parliament takes place annually in October. It gives elders the opportunity to engage with the executive on critical issues affecting their lives.

Training and skills development

Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers

The Unemployed Social Workers Database informs the department about the number of unemployed social workers who have studied outside the DSD scholarship programme.

This is in response to the issue raised by communities and the media that there are qualified social workers who are unemployed.

Government mandated the development of strategies to facilitate the recruitment and retention of such scarce skills.

The DSD has been the main driver in the implementation of this social policy. In addition, the NDP indicates that 60 000 social workers will be needed by 2030 to serve the population.

Professionalising community development

The Council for Social Service Professions was established in terms of the Social Service Professions Act of 1978.

The key functions are:

- protecting and promoting the interests of the professions, in respect of which professional boards have been or are to be established and to deal with any matter relating to such interests
- advising the Minister on matters affecting the professions in respect of which professional boards have been established
- controlling and exercising authority regarding all financial matters relating to the council and the professional boards
- assisting in the promotion of social services.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Sport and Recreation

The Department of Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) is established in terms of the Public Service Act of 1994.

Its legal mandate is derived from the National Sport and Recreation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 18 of 2007), which requires it to oversee the development and management of sport and recreation in South Africa.

The Act provides the framework for relationships between the department and its external clients. This includes the SRSA's partnership with the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (SASCOC). The partnership is key to improving South Africa's international ranking in selected sports. The Act also ensures that sport and physical education contribute to social cohesion by legislating on sports participation and sports infrastructure.

The National Development Plan (NDP) recognises sport and recreation as an effective means of nation building and social cohesion. This is given expression through Outcome 14 (nation-building and social cohesion) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework, with which the work of the Department of Sport and Recreation South Africa is closely aligned. As such, over the medium term, the department intends to focus on:

- promoting participation in sport and recreation; supporting the delivery of sport infrastructure;
- fostering transformation in sport and recreation;
- developing talented athletes by providing them with opportunities to excel; and
- supporting high performing athletes to achieve success in the international sporting arena.

Sport and Recreation South Africa

Aligned with the SRSA's vision of an active and winning nation, the department primarily focuses on providing opportunities for all South Africans to participate in sport; manages the regulatory framework; and provides funding for different sporting codes.

The right to participate in sport has been embodied in United Nations (UN) instruments such as the Convention on the Rights of the Child and the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women. It is recognised as a right which all governments should make available to people.

The SRSA aims to maximise access, development and excellence at all levels of participation in sport and recreation to improve the quality of life for all South Africans.

Transformation in sport

The latest transformation audit report reflects significant progress since the introduction of the Sports Transformation Charter. Federation commitment to the process, quality, and reliability of data
submitted has consistently improved. Cricket, football, netball, rugby, and tennis are leading the pack in this regard. Change in demographics at administration level is reflected in that more than half of the boards of federations audited are black and have black presidents.

On the field of play, a substantial number of male senior and underage national representative teams, including athletics, cricket, football, volleyball, boxing, and table tennis have achieved the charter targets.

However, women senior and underage national team demographic profiles are lagging behind that of male representative entities, in that charter targets were achieved by only three codes, namely, gymnastics, football, and boxing, reflecting the magnitude of the task to improve women's position in sport. Coaching, referee or umpire, and medical and scientific support structures were found to be more challenging from a demographic change perspective for both men and women. These areas have thus become increasingly under the magnifying glass.

During the 2017/2018 financial year, 66 sport and recreation bodies against a target of 60, were supported financially, this to assist them to transform and develop sport in the country. The gains made on transformation to date show a concerted effort by the sport and recreation sector, to redress the imbalances of the past.

The purpose of the Sports Transformation Charter is to level the playing fields that enable the majority of South Africans to have equitable access and opportunity to participate and achieve in all areas and at all levels of sport.

Nurturing talent and supporting excellence

The SRSA awards ministerial bursaries to learners in grades 8 to 12 who are identified as talented young athletes.

These bursaries are valid for the duration of learners' school careers, and they attend one of the 58 sports focus schools in South Africa, which are selected by provincial departments because of their exceptional sports coaching and facilities.

In 2018/19, a minimum of 60 qualifying athletes, including learners already in the programme, were to be supported through the payment of school fees, the provision of school uniforms and sport clothing, sport scientific support and event attendance. R21.4 million over the MTEF period is allocated for this in the Scientific Support subprogramme in the Winning Nation programme.

An additional 40 emerging athletes identified by national federations as having the potential to compete at the high performance level are also supported by the department each year through specialist training.

Support for these athletes also takes into consideration their circumstances and performance potential.

A further 40 elite athletes receive advanced coaching and financial support each year through the SASCOC's high performance programme to help them prepare and perform at the four major multi-code games: the All Africa Games, the World Games, the Commonwealth Games, and the Olympic and Paralympic Games.

Specialist training and sport scientific support is also expected to be provided to a projected 3 600 talented athletes in 2018/19 by 35 provincial and district sports academies.

Budget and funding

The SRSA's work to increase the accessibility of sport and recreation facilities contributes to the achievement of the National Development Plan's (NDP) goals of nation-building, social cohesion and a healthy national lifestyle, as well as a diverse, socially cohesive society with a common national identity of Government's 2014 – 2019 Medium-Term Strategic

Framework.

Over the medium term, the SRSA plans to encourage participation in sport and recreation at various levels, facilitate transformation in sport and recreation, and support talented and high-performance athletes in excelling and achieving success in the international sporting arena.

The department's budget allocation for the the 2017/17 financial year was R1 066.6 billion, of which R1 060.4 billion was utilized. This amounted to spending of 99.4% and under-spending of R6 187 million.

The department's goods and services budget has been reduced by R7,2 million in 2017/18, R7,6 million in 2018/19 and R8,1 million in 2018/19 as part of Cabinet's decision to lower the national aggregate expenditure ceiling. These reductions will be absorbed by implementing cost-saving measures in spending on items such as advertising, computer services, contractors, travel and subsistence, and venues and facilities.

Entities

The department administers and controls two public entities:

- Boxing South Africa (BSA), which was established in terms of the South African Boxing Act, 2001 (Act 11 of 2001).
- The South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS), which was established in terms of the SAIDS Act, 1997 (Act 14 of 1997) as amended.

Boxing South Africa

BSA's intention is to ensure effective and efficient administration of professional boxing in South Africa; to create synergy between professional and amateur boxing; and to promote interaction between associations of boxers, managers, promoters, trainers, officials and BSA.

In November 2018, the late legendary Nick 'Mthakathi' Durandt was awarded the Steve Tshwete Lifetime Achievement Award posthumously at the 13th Annual SA Sport Awards held in Bloemfontein.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport

The SAIDS, as South Africa's national anti-doping organisation, is mandated to promote participation in sport without the use of prohibited performance-enhancing substances and methods.

All South African sports organisations and national federations are obliged to recognise SAIDS' authority and to comply with its directives following South Africa's endorsement of the World Anti-Doping Code and the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (better known as UNESCO) convention on anti doping.

The organisation's key focus areas are:

- Doping control: The SAIDS is responsible for the development of anti-doping policies. The institute conducts a comprehensive, independent and effective national doping-control programme on South African athletes competing at regional, national and international levels. The SAIDS also conducts in-competition and out-of-competition doping control tests on international athletes on behalf of international sports federations and other international anti-doping organisations.
- Education: The SAIDS provides anti-doping education, information and awareness for athletes, coaches, parents, sports organisations, members of the medical, pharmaceutical and sports science professions, tertiary education institutions and the public.
- Research: The SAIDS conducts sociological research about the knowledge, attitude and use of performance-enhancing drugs among South African sportspeople, for the purpose of planning and implementing effective doping-control and education programmes.
- International collaboration: South Africa is an active participant in the global effort to combat drugs in sport. The SAIDS collaborates closely with counterparts worldwide to improve the of standards and practices in doping control. South Africa is a member of both the International Anti-Doping Arrangement and the Association of National Anti-Doping Organisations. Special assistance and support was given to the South African Doping Control Laboratory in Bloemfontein, Free State, for it to meet the obligations of the new anti-doping code.

Role players

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

The SRSA and SASCOC cooperate closely on issues of mutual importance, and the SRSA provides funding to SASCOC for initiatives such as the preparation of elite athletes for international events.

SASCOC is the national controlling body for the promotion and development of high-performance sport in South Africa and consults with relevant sports bodies in this regard.

SASCOC prepares and delivers Team SA to all international multi-coded sporting events such as the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games, African Games, Olympic Youth Games, Commonwealth Youth Games and African Union Sports Council (AUSC) Region 5 Games.

SASCOC is also responsible for the awarding of National Protea Colours to athletes/officials who have met the criteria to represent South Africa in different sporting codes and arenas and, in addition, endorse the applications for bidding and hosting of international events, providing the criteria are all met.

SASCOC's different strategies such as the Operation Excellence Programme were designed to offer support to athletes who have the potential to qualify for participation and returning medals at a higher level in the multi-coded events under the organisation's umbrella of sports. It is the premier programme for prospective Olympic and Paralympic medalists. The programme comprises three different tiers that provide varying degrees of funding and support.

The Olympic Committee also collaborates with various stakeholders including other national Olympic committees to ensure that its main mandate is fulfilled.

In April 2018, South Africa was unanimously re-elected as Chair-person of Intergovernmental Committee for Physical Education and Sport for a second term. The country continues to play a leading role in the monitoring and implementation of the Kazan Action Plan.

The Kazan Action Plan was adopted on 15 July 2017 by UNESCO's Sixth International Conference of Ministers and Senior Officials Responsible for Physical Education and Sport, MINEPS VI.

At the adoption of the Kazan Action Plan, it was declared that: Active schools, in which physical activity is placed at the heart of the school, support the establishment of healthy lifestyles, behaviour and learning. In addition, quality physical education is a necessary component of primary and secondary education.

Working with SASCOC, the Free State provincial government and through contributions from all provincial sport and recreation departments, SRSA set aside an amount of approximately R68 million per year, over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period, to strengthen the National Training Centre (NTC) based at the Free State Sport Science Institute.

The NTC is an Olympic preparatory institution for Team South Africa and forms part of the National Academy System for elite and high-performance sports.

The centre prepares national teams and athletes with scientific, medical and sport-specific support.

African Union Sports Council Region Five

The AUSC Region 5 is one of the five regions entrusted with the responsibility to develop sport under the AU. This follows the dissolution of the Supreme Council for Sport in Africa, under which Region 5 was known as Supreme Council for Sport in Africa Zone VI.

World Anti-Doping Agency

The World Anti-Doping Agency aims to bring consistency to anti-doping policies and regulations within sport organisations and governments across the world.

The World Anti-Doping Agency's NO! to Doping campaign, which has been running since 2010, has become the leading awareness campaign for most sporting codes around the globe.

National sport federations

The various sporting codes in South Africa are governed by their own federations and associations. These include:

- Aero Club of South Africa
- AFL South Africa
- Amateur Fencing Association of Southern Africa
- Anglers and Casting Federation of Southern Africa
- Archery South Africa
- Athletics South Africa
- Badminton South Africa
- Baseball Union of Southern Africa
- Basketball South Africa
- Bowls South Africa
- Boxing South Africa
- Bridge Federation of Southern Africa
- Canoeing South Africa
- Chess South Africa
- Clay Target Shooting Association of South Africa
- Confederation of Cue Sport South Africa
- Cricket South Africa
- Cycling South Africa
- Dance Sport Federation of Sport South Africa
- Darts South Africa
- Deaf Sports Federation of Southern Africa
- Federation Bocce
- Fitness Sport Aerobics Federation of Southern Africa
- Handball Federation of Southern Africa
- Judo South Africa
- Jukskei South Africa
- Karate South Africa
- Korfball Federation of South Africa
- Lifesaving South Africa
- Majorette and Cheerleading Association South Africa
- Martial Arts and Games Committee of South Africa
- Masters Sports Association of Southern Africa Mind Sports South Africa
- Modern Pentathlon Association of South Africa Motorsport South Africa
- National Amateur Bodybuilding Association of South Africa
- National Horseracing Authority
- National Pigeon Organisation of Southern Africa
- National Boxing Organisation of Southern Africa
- Netball South Africa
- Orienteering Federation of Southern Africa
- Parachute Association of South Africa
- Physically Disabled Association
- Powerlifting Federation of South Africa
- Powerboat South Africa
- Ringball South Africa
- Roller Sport South Africa
- Rowing South Africa
- SASCOC
- Scrabble South Africa
- Sheep Shearing Federation of Southern Africa
- Shooting Sport Federation of South Africa
- Snooker and Billiards South Africa
- Snow Sports South Africa
- Squash South Africa
- Soaring Society of South Africa
- Softball South Africa
- South African Amateur Fencing Association
- South African Bodyboarding Association
- South African Deep Sea Angling Association
- South African Figure Skating Association
- South African Fly Fishing Association
- South African Football Association
- South African Gold Panning Association
- South African Golf Association
- South African Gymnastics Federation
- South African Hang Gliding and Paragliding Association
- South African Hockey
- South African Ice Hockey Association
- South African National Archery Association
- South African National Equestrian Federation
- South African Polo Association
- South African Practical Shooting Association
- South African Rugby Union
- South African Sailing
- South African Shore Angling Association
- South African Sports Association for the Intellectually Impaired
- South African Tennis Association
- South African Underwater Sports Federation
- Surfing South Africa
- Swimming South Africa
- Table Tennis Board of Southern Africa
- Taekwondo Federation of South Africa
- Tenniquoits Board of South Africa
- Tenpin Bowling Association of South Africa
- Transplant Sports Association of South Africa
- Triathlon South Africa
- Tug of War Federation of South Africa
- University Sport South Africa
- Volleyball South Africa

- Water Ski Federation of Southern Africa
- Weightlifting Federation of Southern Africa
- Wrestling South Africa
- Wushu Federation of Southern Africa.

Programmes and projects

National Sport and Recreation Plan

The National Sport and Recreation Plan (NSRP), a blueprint for sport and recreation in South africa, aims to reconstruct and revitalise the sport and recreation sector towards the attainment of an active and winning nation, whilst improving the quality of life of all South africans.

The management sub-programme of the department provides strategic guidance, interpreting the direction set by the Minister, and oversees the performance of the department, the success of which is annually assessed by means of a management Performance assessment tool (MPAT). SRSA received a composite score of 2.7 out of a possible 4 in 2017/18.

Although MPAT is a moving target because of its annual tightening of standards, areas for improvement to "MPAT 1.6" were identified and pursued in 2017/18 in an effort to better serve the recipients of SRSA services. Reviewed focus will go into managing the findings of MPAT 1.7.

School Sport Programme

The Schools League Programme, which is the main project for the School Sport Programme, starts in February and runs until June every year.

Part of the league comprises schools competing in intra-school and interschool league competitions prior to the National School Sport Championships, which take place towards the end of each year.

Other key elements of the School Sport Programme include:

- the capacity development programme, which involves the training of educators and sport volunteers in sport-specific programmes
- providing sport equipment and sport attire support to disadvantaged schools
- providing cluster coordinators to aid the delivery and support of sport
- identifying of sport-focused schools in which athletes can be placed to further their sport development
- the support to school sport structures at local, district, provincial and national levels.

There are more than 25 000 schools in South Africa and around 19 000 are registered to participate in the league system.

National Sports Volunteer Corps

Talented players, athletes, coaches and administrators across different sporting codes have contributed immensely towards South Africa being recognised as one of the best sporting countries worldwide.

The purpose of the National Sports Volunteer Corps is to provide a platform through which sport greats and interested South African citizens can use their experience, expertise and passion for sport to contribute towards the development of future sport stars.

A school sports bursary, which offers R100 000 towards covering the cost of education and support required by pupils, opened many opportunities for sports veterans and attracted retired sportspeople who had registered with the department to offer their help as coaches, officials and sports administrators.

Major events

Seven major events received either ministerial or cabinet approval and related support in terms of the bidding and hosting regulations:

- 7 to 12 August 2017, Durban: 2017 Commonwealth Lifesaving Festival
- 2 to 26 August 2017, Durban: 10th International Forum on Elite Sport
- 9 to 15 July, Tlokwe, NW: 2nd World University Powerlifting Championships
- 31 August to 3 September 2017, Pietermaritzburg: UCI Para Cycling World Championships
- 4 to 10 September 2017, Pietermaritzburg: World Canoe Marathon Championships
- 10 to 19 September 2017, Potchefstroom: Commonwealth Powerlifting and Bench Press Championships
- 4 to 11 November 2017, Langebaan, WC: 2017 Shore Angling World Cup.

Transnet Rural and Farm Schools National Tournament

Established in QwaQwa in 2002, the Transnet Rural and Farm Schools Development Programme is one of the flagship projects within the Transnet Foundation's sports portfolio.

The Rural and Farm Schools Sport Development Programme focuses its efforts on sports development and the South African Football Association Transnet Football School of Excellence. The programme targets communities around Transnet's key expansion areas.

South African Sports Awards

The South African Sport Awards are part of SRSA's commitment to promote social cohesion, nation-building and the quality of life among all South Africans through sport and recreation.

The key objectives of the Sports Awards is acknowledging and celebrating sport excellence, reward sport achievement in and off the field of play.

The South African Sport Awards were initiated in 2004 in partnership with SASCOC and the South African Broadcasting Corporation as well as a host of other generous stakeholders and sponsors.

World champion athletes Luvo Manyonga and Caster Semenya won the respective South African Sportsman and Sportswoman of the Year awards at the annual South African Sports Awards in November 2017.

Long jump champion Manyonga won silver at the 2016 Rio Olympic Games and gold at the IAAF World Championships in London in 2017.

Semenya, a double gold medallist in the 800m at both the Rio Olympics and World Championships, walked away with the coveted Sportswoman of the Year award.

The full results were as follows:

- Sportsman of the Year: Luvo Manyonga
- Sportswoman of the Year: Caster Semenya.
- Sports Star of the Year: Luvo Manyonga
- People's Choice Sports Star of the Year: Caster Semenya
- Sportswoman with a disability: Ilse Hayes

- Sportsman with a disability: Dyan Buis
- Newcomer of the year: Sokwakhana Zazini
- Team of the Year: Springbok Sevens
- Coach of the Year: Jean Verster
- Volunteer of the Year: Samuel Maduwa
- Indigenous Games of the Year: North West Kho-kho team
- National Federation of the Year: Lifesaving SA
- Recreation Body of the Year: In-touch Community Support Group
- Photographer of the Year: Simphiwe Nkwali
- Journalist of the Year: OG Molefe
- School Team of the Year: St Mary's School Waverley
- Developing School Team of the Year: Hlangabeza Primary School Under-13 Chess
- Sports Administrator of the year: Sanelisiwe Khuzwayo.

National Aquatic Championships

The 2017 National Aquatic Championships took place in Durban with a total of 24 junior and eight senior FINA World Championships qualifications, as well as four Deaf Olympics and seven World Para Swimming Championships qualifiers.

Chad le Clos celebrated the confirmation of his third qualification time for Hungary in the 100-m butterfly when he clocked a fast 51,29 seconds, followed by Ryan Coetzee (53,29 seconds) and Ralph Goveia (54,30 seconds), while Brad Tandy and Zane Waddell were all smiles in the 50-m freestyle final, claiming the gold and silver in FINA World Championships qualification times of 21,97 seconds and 22,41 seconds, respectively. Douglas Erasmus won the bronze in 22,63 seconds.

Finishing over two seconds ahead of the pack, Brent Szurdoki scooped the gold in the 1 500-m freestyle with a FINA World Championships Qualification time of 15:11:22 to the 15:12:79 requirement, while Jarryd Baxter and Chad Michau booked their place to the Junior competition in the United States of America (USA) in qualifying times of 15:36:22 and 15:58:81, respectively.

Rebecca Meder's outstanding performance in the 400-m individual medley earned her the top spot in the event with a FINA Junior World Championships qualification time of 4:48:49, ahead of Samantha Randle in 4:55:12 and Kate Beavon in 4:57:63.

The 200-m breaststroke was a very rewarding race for five of Mzansi's youth hopefuls when Daniel Swanepoel, Duncan Rudolph, Bailey Musgrave, Likith Prema and Michael Houlie all confirmed their junior qualifications. Swanepoel won the race in 2:15:83 to Rudolph's 2:18:09, Musgrave's 2:18:26, Prema's 2:19:41 and Houlie's 2:19:63.

In the ladies' 200-m breaststroke, Tatjana Schoenmaker was victorious in 2:26:20, while Kaylene Corbett, Christin Mundell and Hanim Abrahams all added the event to their list of Junior Qualifiers in 2:30:07; 2:31:46 and 2:33:98, respectively.

In the 100-m freestyle, Erin Gallagher scooped the gold in 56,28 seconds ahead of Emma Chelius in 56,75 seconds and Seychelles' Felicity Passon in 56,90 seconds, while 14-year-old Olivia Nel, who despite finishing fourth, added her name to the FINA Junior World Championships list by a mere 0,02 seconds when she touched the wall in 58,06 seconds to the 58,08-second requirement.

Gallagher was back in the water to receive the gold for the 50-m butterfly, clocking a winning 27,35 seconds to Chelius' 27,90 seconds and Kenya's Emily Muteti in 28,40 seconds.

Martin Bindell, Neil Fair and Ruan Ras made up the 200-m backstroke medal podium in 1:59:69; 2:01:47 and 2:04:10, respectively, while 15-year-old Luan Grobbelaar was more than happy with his silver medal in the 400-m individual medley in a FINA Junior World Championships qualification time of 4:29:59 ahead of Ruan Breytenbach (4:35:39) and behind Ayrton Sweeney (4:20:41).

In the multi-disability races, Cornell Loubser claimed the top position in the S14-15 200-m individual medley in 2:40:86; with the S1-13 winner was Alani Ferreira in 2:52:03.

In the men's S14-15 medley event, Aaron Putz won the gold in 2:32:38, while Christian Sadie came first in the S1-13 category with a World Para Swimming Championships qualification time of 2:45:59.

The staging of this event was made possible through the support provided by Swimming SA partners, the SRSA, SASCOC, the National Lotteries Commission, Arena and Rand Water.

Biking, mountain biking, cycling

The third round of the South African National MTB Cup Series XCO took place in Bloemfontein at Happy Valley Conservancy in May 2017. Team Spur's Alan Hatherly took the top honours in the Elite Men's race and OMX Pro Team's Mariske Strauss took the Elite Women's title.

The penultimate race of the national series attracted a fair amount of international riders as well, with eight nations represented during the highly competitive event.

At the South African National Track Omnium Championships, held at the Bellville Velodrome in the Western Cape in April 2017, David Maree rode an impressive four rides to come out on top with the points to seal the Omnium title.

Nolan Hoffman fought hard to an impressive second and Gert Fouche finished in third. The omnium discipline of track cycling is typically made up of six events and held over two days, but the Track Commission held four events for the Omnium National Title. Maree won the first and second Elite Men's Omnium events of the day – the scratch and tempo races, and found himself in second place in the elimination event.

Boxing

In May 2018, Newlands boxer, Hector "Hekkie" Budler, became the first South African boxer to hold three major world crowns simultaneously when he won the WBA, International Boxing Federation (IBF) and The Ring magazine titles after one fight against another Japanese boxer, Ryoichi Taguchi in Tokyo.

Canoeing, rowing

The South African Sprint Canoe Championships came to a conclusion in April 2017 with a number of the country's best sprint paddlers rising to the surface. Donna Hutton and Louis Hattingh claimed the overall women's and men's paddlers prizes, respectively.

While some of the events attracted relatively small numbers of entries, the quality of the various age categories was high and the racing went right down to the wire with a number of the category prizes decided right at the end.

The event boasted the likes of Bridgitte Hartley, Chrisjan Coetzee, Stuart Maclaren, Esti van Tonder and Melanie van

Niekerk, all paddlers that have represented South Africa in various disciplines.

The performance of the competition came from Donna Hutton. The young star who competed in two A Finals at the 2016 Junior and Under-23 Sprint World Championships showed her dominance as she finished with two wins, a second and a third in the K1 events.

Hutton's impressive efforts were highlighted by the fact that she did not compete in any K2 events, yet she still finished with the highest number of points in the ladies competition.

Esti van Tonder powered her way to victories in the crucial Olympic disciplines of the 200-m K1 and the 500-m K1 events.

The men's victor ludorum was keenly contested with two paddlers in the mix going right up to the end of the competition; however it was the experienced Louis Hattingh who was too strong as he claimed the overall spoils ahead of Stuart Maclaren by two and a half points.

Maclaren was in top form in the K2 events where he came out on top in all four of the events, the 5 000-m, 1 000-m, 500-m and 200-m. Maclaren had three different partners for the four races, partnering Chrisjan Coetzee twice to win the 500-m and 200-m K2 events.

Caitlin and Christie Mackenzie battled it out for the junior girl's honours. Eventually, it was Caitlin who pipped Christie to the line by four points despite the latter's absence from the K2 events.

Alex Masina powered his way to the under-18 boys' title ahead of Callum Davis and Hamish Lovemore. Masina racked up 92,5 points as opposed to 50 points from Davis and 49,5 points from Lovemore.

Golf

Almero Theron defeated tournament favourite Ryan Dreyer in a dramatic play-off to lift the South African Mid-Amateur Stroke Play Championship title at Sun City in May 2017.

Central Gauteng's Marco Steyn joined an illustrious list of champions including Charl Schwartzel, Brandon Stone and Haydn Porteous when he won the Oxigen Prince's Grant National Amateur Invitational. Steyn won by four strokes on a tournament total of 286 and with a final round of 70.

Hockey

In July 2017, the South African national women's hockey team qualified for the 2018 FIH World Cup in London after winning in the FIH Hockey World League. South Africa beat Japan 2-1 in the fifth place play-off match played at the Wits hockey stadium in Johannesburg.

South Africa is 13th on the world rankings. By mid-2017, the current SA Women's Hockey National Coach, Sheldon Rostron, had been appointed as the Interim Head Coach for the SA Men's side. Rostron was put in charge of the SA Hockey Men for their World Cup qualifying bid at the African Hockey Cup of Nations in Egypt in October 2017. The appointment was a first for SA Hockey as the Men and Women will have a Joint Team Management Structure for the tournament.

Rostron has been the Head Coach of the Women's National team since 2014.

Ice hockey

The South Africa men's team is ranked 40th in the International Ice Hockey Federation (IIHF) World Ranking and competes in Division II B.

Motorsport

Defending champion Michael Stephen won his first GTC victory of the 2017 season. Mathew Hodges and Simon Moss completed the podium. First race winner Gennaro Bonafede had to start from the back of the grid and slowly worked his way through the rest of the field to start the final lap in second place.

At the Classic Racing at Zwartkops, the day's headline event was the 45-minute Castrol Tourist Trophy race for Pre-1968 Le Mans Sports and GT cars. Sarel van der Merwe's co-driver, Mike Briggs was involved in a first corner incident that saw their Daytona Coupe stranded on the side of the circuit.

A number of competitors took advantage of the safety car period that followed to make their compulsory pit stops. This proved to be the correct strategy for Peter Bailey as he ended up with a comfortable lead which he held to the flag.

Netball

The 2018 Brutal Fruit Netball Premier League took place, at the Ellis Park Indoor Arena in May. Matches were played every Friday, Saturday and Sunday for six weeks culminating into the finals that were held at the University of Pretoria.

Rugby

History was made when the Springboks came from being 3 – 24 behind at Ellis Park, to beat England 42 – 39 in the first of three Tests in June 2018.

Siya Kolisi celebrated becoming South Africa's first black Test captain by leading the team to a thrilling 42 – 39 triumph over England in the first Test in Johannesburg. Trailing by 21 points after 18 minutes, the Springboks staged a magnificent rally to lead 29 – 27 at half-time and held off a late England charge to succeed in a ten-try thriller. A 60-metre penalty from full-back Elliot Daly in the third minute served an early warning to the Springboks that the visitors were desperate to snap a three-match losing streak.

Soccer

Banyana Banyana is ranked in the Top 50 of the FIFA Women's World Ranking. The team won the 2018 COSAFA Women's Championship crown after defeating Cameroon at the Wolfson Stadium in Port Elizabeth.

In 2017, this South African national football team was ranked in the top 100 by the FIFA World Ranking system.

Volleyball

As part of the 2017/18 Federation Intensive Support Programme, the department supported Volleyball South Africa in implementing the Inaugural Volleyball League held in Durban every weekend from 2 to 25 March 2018.

The indoor matches were held at the University of KwaZulu-Natal, Westville Campus and the beach volleyball matches were held at the New Beach (South Beach).

A combined total of 188 female and male players participated in the Volleyball League.

Softball would be the recipient of this extra support in 2018/19. The plan is to establish a Softball League.

Softball

As part of the programme of intensive support to Softball for the 2018/19 financial year, the department was expected to provide technical support and additional financial support of R10 million to Softball South Africa. This will enable Softball South Africa to establish a Softball Premier League wherein women's and men's teams from all provinces will participate. The Softball Premier League will take place over a four-week period.

In addition to the Premier League, Softball South Africa was expected to launch a Softball Regional League. Limpopo, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, North West and Free State would participate in the Regional League, which will culminate into a Super Cup.

The league will start at provincial level and the top-two teams will represent their province in the National League.

Surfing, surfski, sailing

In March 2017, the Cape Town Surfriders Grommet Team made it six wins in a row when they took overall honours at the 2017 Billabong SA Grommet Games presented by Sea Harvest and supported by the SRSA. The four-day event was completed in perfect weather and choppy two-foot surf at Pipe Beach in Port Elizabeth.

The inaugural Nelson Mandela Bay Surf Pro presented by Billabong wrapped up three days of high performance surfing action in April 2017, with Michael February and Crystal Hulett taking the men's and women's titles, respectively, while Jake Elkington and Kayla Nogueira clinched the pro junior men's and women's crowns. The first internationally rated World Surf League Qualifying Series events to be staged in Port Elizabeth enjoyed contestable but testing surf and great weather for the three days and featured 128 competitors, including South Africa's top exponents and entrants from the USA and Australia.

Hank McGregor claimed victory in both the singles and doubles clash at the South African Surfski Championship at the Pete Marlin Surfski Race in the Eastern Cape.

In the women's singles race, Nikki Russell pipped Hayley Nixon in a battle up front, handing her a second while Jenna Ward, Kyeta Purchase and Chloë Bunnett rounded out the top five.

Swimming

The South African swimming team claimed the top spot on the medal table with a total of 78 medals (39 gold, 23 silver and 16 bronze) at the CANA Zone 3 Swimming Championships in November 2018.

Keagon Mnyaka (15) and Kaydn Naidoo (15) won an impressive thirteen medals between them. Mnyaka and Naidoo claimed the gold and silver in both the 200m freestyle in 2:09.46 and 2:12.41 and the 100m butterfly in 1:02.61 and 1:04.32, while Naidoo went one better in the 200m individual medley and the 50m butterfly, clocking a winning time of 2:27.28 and 27.15, respectively.

Mnyaka followed with the silver in 2:29.85 in the medley and 27.67 in the butterfly race, while Naidoo also finished first in the 400m freestyle in 4:50.18, the 50m freestyle in 25.73 and the 200m backstroke in 2:28.73.Mnyaka also won two bronze medals in the 200m backstroke in 2:42.72 and the 100m breaststroke in 1:16.78, while Tully Njoroge won a gold medal in the breaststroke event, touching the wall in 1:14.58.

Kuhlekonke Mkhize (14), added four gold medals to his tally in the 200m freestyle (2:14.85), the 50m freestyle (27.18), the 200m backstroke (2:37.84) and the 200m individual medley (2:31.48), and won silver in the 400m freestyle in 4:55.63, the 100m breaststroke in 1:19.27 and the 100m butterfly in 1:14.61.

On the women's side, Erica Sibande (15) was named the top swimmer in her age group after scooping an additional seven gold medals. Sibande topped the 200m freestyle in 2:36.10, the 50m butterfly in 36.09, the 200m breaststroke in 2:49.33, the 50m freestyle in 31.26, the 100m breaststroke in 1:40.92, the 400m freestyle in 5:26.78 and the final 3km Open Water race.

Leah Christie (13) won the gold medal in the 200m freestyle in 2:28.67 and 2:35.18. Lerato Thobeha won the gold medal 100m butterfly in 1:15.64

Tennis

South Africa's Women's 45+ Team of Jackie Booth, Lettica Venter, Annerie Wessels and Ronel Pieterse earned a silver medal in the Young Seniors World Team Championships in Cape Town in March 2017.

The KIA South African Davis Cup team had a bittersweet end to their Davis Cup tie against Estonia at the Irene Country Club in Pretoria in February 2017.

In a dead rubber final days play, South Africa won and lost a reverse singles giving them an overall 4 –1 victory over Estonia in their Euro/Africa Group 2 first round tie.

Raven Klaasen and Ruan Roelofse won the tie for South Africa by clinching the doubles rubber in four sets. Singles players Lloyd Harris and Nik Scholtz also won their respective rubbers.

In January 2017, South African junior tennis players impressed in Namibia and were named the top-performing nation in the ITF CAT Southern Africa Championships in Windhoek. A 14-and-under and 16-and-under girls and boys team represented the country in the championships.

In the individual competition, South Africa won four titles and reached two finals in the eight events played. Thando Longwe-Smit seeded five in the boys 16-and-under won the sole singles title when he upset top seeded countryman Pierre Malan 3-6 6-2 6-3.

In the three doubles titles won by South Africans, Rohan Loubser teamed up with Namibian Connor Van Schalkwyk to lift the 14-and-under boys title, while Pierre Malan and Charl Morgan won the 16-and-under boys title with Delien Kleinhans and Makayla Loubser winning the 16-and-under girls title.

In September 2017, Kevin Anderson made the finals of the US Open. He is the first South African player to make the final of a major tennis championship since 1994. Anderson produced an historic run at the US Open, before finally losing out to Spain's Rafael Nadal in straight sets 6-3 6-3 6-4 in the title decider.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Tourism

Tourism remains a key driver of South Africa's national economy and contributes to job creation. The tourism industry is a major contributor to the South African economy and employment of citizens.

Tourism contributed R136,1 billion, about 2.9% of the country's total GDP in 2017. It directly and indirectly supported about 1,5 million jobs in 2017, 9.5% of total employment, and there is potential to grow employment in the sector to 2,1 million jobs by 2028. This is especially significant as government, business and many social partners are collaborating to accelerate economic growth and employment.

The development of inclusive tourism for the benefit of all South Africans had an additional significance in 2018, as the country celebrated the centenaries of Tata Nelson Mandela and Mama Albertina Sisulu.

The National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS) was approved by Cabinet in December 2017. It seeks to make the country's international and domestic marketing more effective, facilitate easier travel to South Africa, improve the visitor experience, better manage the country as a destination, and spread the benefits of tourism to more South Africans by including more black people, women, youth and rural communities in the tourism value chain.

During the year under review, the department's Enterprise Development Programme supported 400 entrepreneurs in a business incubation programme in the rural Pilanesberg region, some of who saw an increase in their occupancy rate by up to 15%. Elsewhere, community tourism enterprises was supported to enter the tourism value chain.

Through its Incubator Programme, the department also added two more incubators in Phalaborwa and Mier, The two existing incubators in Pilanesberg and Manyeleti are now in their second year of operation and are already bearing fruit.

The incubation model is aimed at ensuring that communities around tourist attraction hubs benefit from economic opportunities found in those areas.

In response to growing the economy, the department has developed a Tourism B-BBEE portal to accelerate the empowerment of SMMEs in the sector. This will facilitate partnerships for market access with large enterprises.

The department has engaged communities and key stakeholders such as development finance institutions and commercial banks on enterprise development awareness sessions in all nine provinces. These sessions included the Tourism Incentive Programme (TIP) and the Amended Tourism B-BBEE Sector Codes.

The NDT's strategic goals over the medium term are to:

- maximise domestic tourism and foreign tourist arrivals in South Africa
- expand domestic and foreign investment in the South African tourism industry
- expand tourist infrastructure
- improve the range and quality of tourist services
- improve the tourist experience and value for money
- improve research and knowledge management
- contribute to growth and development
- expand the tourism share of GDP
- improve competitiveness and sustainability in the tourism sector
- strengthen collaboration with tourist organisations.

The inflow of tourists to South Africa is the result of the success of policies aimed at entrenching South Africa's status as a major international tourism and business events destination.

Legislation and policies

The NDT operates under the following legislation and policies:

The Tourism Act, 2014 (Act 3 of 2014) provides for the development and promotion of sustainable tourism for the benefit of South Africa, its residents and its visitors. It also provides for the continued existence of the South African Tourism Board, the establishment of the Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA), and the regulation of the tourist guide profession.

The Act aims to:

- promote the practising of responsible tourism for the benefit of South Africa and for the enjoyment of all its residents and visitors
- provide for the effective domestic and international marketing of South Africa as a tourist destination
- promote quality tourism products and services
- promote growth in and development of the tourism sector
- enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of Government in developing and managing tourism.

In terms of the Act, responsible tourism is tourism which:

- seeks to avoid negative economic, environmental and social impacts
- generates greater economic benefits for local people, enhances the wellbeing of host communities and improves working conditions and access to the tourism sector
- involves local people in decisions that affect their lives
- makes positive contributions to the conservation of natural and cultural heritage and to the maintenance of the world's diversity
- provides enjoyable experiences for tourists through meaningful connections with local people and a greater understanding of local cultural, social and environmental issues
- provides access for people with physical challenges
- is culturally sensitive, engenders respect between tourists and hosts, and builds local pride and confidence.

The mandate of the NDT, as outlined in the Tourism Act, 1993 (Act 72 of 1993), is to promote sustainable growth and development in the tourism sector.

The 1996 White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism in South Africa provides for the promotion of domestic and international tourism.

The Tourism Act of 1993 provides for:

- promoting tourism to and in South Africa
- regulating and rationalising the tourism industry
- implementing measures aimed at the maintenance and enhancement of the standards of facilities and services hired out or made available to tourists
- coordinating and rationalisating the activities of people who are active in the tourism industry
- establishing a board with legal powers
- authorising the Minister of Tourism to establish a grading and classification scheme in respect of accommodation establishments
- authorising the Minister to establish schemes for prescribed sectors of the tourism industry
- registering tourist guides
- prohibiting any person to act for gain as a tourist guide unless

he or she has been registered as a tourist guide in terms of the Act.

Budget and funding

The 2017 department's budget allocation amounted to R2.140 billion of which R296.853 million was allocated to fund compensation of employees, R299.860 million to goods and services and R1.321 billion to transfer and subsidies and R222.620 million to capital assets.

The department relies on South African Tourism to market South Africa and transfers 52.8% of the total budget for this purpose. South African Tourism received an additional R20 million in 2017/18 for the South African Convention Bureau to grow tourism from meetings, incentives, conventions and events.

The NDT's spending focus over the medium term will be on creating employment opportunities through the implementation of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and the Blue Flag programme.

Expenditure is to grow significantly over the MTEF period by a total average of 63,1% and 21,9%, respectively. The reason for this is threefold: the implementation of the EPWP, the TIP and the transfer payment to South African Tourism (SAT).

Over the medium term, the EPWP budgeted under the Social Responsibility Implementation subprogramme is to create 10 323 full-time equivalent jobs targeting the poor and unemployed, including women, youth and people living with disabilities. The EPWP would further contribute to a skilled and capable tourism workforce offering excellent services to tourists.

These initiatives support Government's broader objectives, such as poverty reduction, transformation, empowerment, rural development, economic growth and job creation.

The Blue Flag programme is aimed at the following:

- growing coastal and tourism
- increasing the number of tourist arrivals, which were projected at 10 350 797 million in 2016/17 to 11 415 284 million in 2018/19, by marketing South Africa internationally
- incentivising priority areas, i.e. market access, energy efficiency and the TGCSA
- supporting tourism attractions through the TIP.

To date, there are 45 South African beaches that have been awarded Blue Flag status, and several others are in the pilot phase.

To achieve Blue Flag status, 33 main criteria covering four aspects of coastal management have to be met. These four aspects are water quality, environmental education and information, environmental management, and safety and services.

The Blue Flag programme is a recognised international accreditation initiative that acknowledges excellence in maintaining the highest standards of environmental management, safety, services and amenities.

South Africa was the first country, outside of Europe, to introduce the Blue Flag programme, in November 2001. Locally, the initiative has grown from just three beaches in the first year to 41 beaches in 2015/16.

At the launch of the 2016/17 Blue Flag season, starting 1 November it was announced that 45 South African beaches have been awarded Blue Flag status this year, along with five marinas and eight sustainable tourism boats. An additional 22 beaches across the three provinces have been given Pilot Blue Flag status. Western Cape is leading the pack, followed by KwaZulu-Natal and then the Eastern Cape.

Beaches with Blue Flag status for 2016/17 are as follows:

Western Cape
Bikini Beach, Gordon's Bay
Brenton-on-Sea Beach, near Knysna
Buffalo Bay Beach, near Knysna
Camps Bay Beach, Cape Town
Clifton 4th Beach, Cape Town
De Bakke Beach, Mossel Bay
Fish Hoek Beach, Cape Town
Gouritsmond Beach, near Mossel Bay
Grotto Beach, Hermanus
Hartenbos Beach, Mossel Bay
Hawston Beach, near Hermanus
Keurboomstrand Beach, near Plettenberg Bay
Kleinbrak River Beach, near Mossel Bay
Kleinmond Beach, near Hermanus
Lappiesbaai Beach, Stilbaai
Llandudno Beach, Cape Town
Lookout Beach, near Plettenberg Bay
Melkbosstrand Beach, Cape Town
Mnandi Beach, Cape Town
Muizenberg Beach, Cape Town
Nature's Valley Beach, near Plettenberg Bay
Preekstoel Beach, near Still Bay
Robberg 5th Beach, Plettenberg Bay
Santos Beach, Mossel Bay
Silwerstroomstrand Beach, Cape Town
Strandfontein Beach, Cape Town
Wilderness Beach, near George
Witsand Beach, mouth of the Breede River
The Dunes Beach, near Plettenberg Bay

KwaZulu-Natal
Hibberdene Beach, Hibberdene
Lucien Beach, near Margate
Marina/San Lameer Beach, near Southbroom
Ramsgate, Beach, Ramsgate
Southport Beach, near Port Shepstone
Trafalgar Beach, near Southbroom
Umzumbe (Pumula) Beach, near Hibberdene
Ushaka Beach, Durban
Westbrook Beach, Durban

Eastern Cape
Dolphin Beach, Jeffrey's Bay
Hamburg Beach, near East London
Hobie Beach, near Port Elizabeth
Humewood Beach, Port Elizabeth
Kariega Beach, Kenton-on-Sea
Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred
Kings Beach, Port Elizabeth

The SAT is responsible for marketing South Africa as a domestic and international tourist destination of choice.

Transfers to the SAT constituted 50% of the departmental budget over the medium term, including R105 million received through government's economic competitiveness support package, which was allocated in 2016/17 for domestic marketing programmes.

Over the medium term, the SAT will focus on increasing tourism's contribution to the economy by growing tourist arrivals, tourism revenue, domestic holiday trips and total domestic direct spend.

Nelson Mandela's centinary tourism programme

The department of Tourism will partner with other government departments, media, heritage entities and other stakeholders to implement the Nelson Mandela Centenary. In addition, department and South African Tourism (SAT) have partnered with the Nelson Mandela Foundation, the Department of Arts and Culture, GCIS, DIRCO, the DTI, BrandSA and ProudlySA to host programmes and events to celebrate Madiba's birthday.

In line with celebrating 100 years of Mandela, SAT will

launch a tourism initiative called "What's your 100 Madiba experiences?" to promote travel and tourism through Mandela's legacy. 100 sites across the country that relate or connect to Nelson Mandela's legacy will be identified. These will become "must visit" sites during the course of 2018 for both domestic and international visitors.

The campaign will support and leverage the already existing campaign created by the Nelson Mandela Foundation – #BeTheLegacy.

The department has linked some of the planned activities and projects to its nodal approach, which targets strategically identified geographic areas or nodes with a concentration of clearly defined tourism potential or attractiveness for tourism growth and development. The planned activities in the nodes will support the department's strategic objectives to promote inclusive tourism growth and development by demonstrating a bias towards benefiting unemployed youth, women, people with disabilities, SMMEs and cooperatives located in townships and rural areas.

The choice of the 100 sites will be made by a collaborative team from the Nelson Mandela Foundation, SAT and National Department of Tourism. The Department of Tourism is currently identifying key sites for infrastructure enhancement from the "What's your 100" list of experiences. Below are projects aligned with the department's nodal approach and strategic priority of enhancing the visitor experience at the following World Heritage and National Heritage sites:

Nelson Mandela Capture Site in Howick

A partnership with KwaZulu-Natal will focus on enhancing the tourism offering at the Nelson Mandela Capture site in Howick. The Province is currently working with CoGTA and Umgeni Local Municipality to invest R57 million in an interpretation and multipurpose centre at the site.

The department will in turn, partner with the institutions and contribute R12 million to complete the centre.

Partnership with Robben Island

The department is currently working with Robben Island and has committed R10 million towards enhancement the destination. The project involves digitization of heritage archive of Robben Island, links to the creative industry through partnership with local artists and crafters and conversion of buildings for alternative usage.

The Peoples Park Project at Constitution Hill

In honour of the South African Constitution, the department will create "the People's Park" at Constitution Hill Precinct which will include the construction of an open park space, children's playground, high street retail amenities, construction of pedestrian routes, public open spaces connecting the surrounding community to the constitutional court, as well as the creation of wheelchair friendly bridges and pathways, sensory paths for blind visitors and upgrades to the lifts which provide universal access. The department will contribute R14 million towards this project.

The Living the Legacy Exhibition

The Living the Legacy Exhibition was originally developed by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform and has been donated to Maropeng in the Cradle of Humankind. This is a new project added for consideration by the department among the list of planned Mandela Centenary projects.

The project involves an interactive, experiential exhibition which will allow all visitors to access the political history and heritage of the liberation struggle that led to the ultimate end of apartheid.

This exhibition raises awareness of human rights, access for all and transformation. As a living heritage exhibition, it allows all visitors to contemplate the legacy of Madiba and ordinary South Africans who opposed the injustices of the past.

The proposed exhibition will be launched in 2018 and will run for two years at Moropeng in the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site.

The Department of Tourism has been requested to partner with Maropeng on this project with a contribution of R15million.

Other projects

The Cradock 4 Garden of Remembrance (Phase 2) is a R28 million EPWP construction project implemented in memory of the Cradock 4 anti-apartheid activists.

The department has completed this project and will hand it over to the Inxuba Yethemba Local Municipality that will manage and run the facility until a suitable operator is identified to manage it and put in place a management regime/structure to address sustainability and success of the project going forward.

The department will also provide further training in service excellence, tourist guide training, marketing (Indaba) of the facility and other interventions as identified by the stakeholders.

Coastal and Marine Tourism (CTM) Implementation Plan approved by Cabinet in 2017 seeks to grow a world class sustainable coastal and marine tourism destination that leverages South Africa's competitive advantage in nature, culture and heritage. To this end, three initiatives have been identified, namely:

- The Blue Flag Beaches Programme
- Boat-Based Whale Watching and Shark Cage Diving
- Off Road Vehicle 4x4 Beach Driving

These projects will be taken forward in the first phase implementation plan. Six nodes have been identified for the first phase (0-5 years), with 2 of these located in the Eastern Cape, as follows:

- Node 3: Port St Johns to Coffee Bay
- Nodes 4: East London, Port Elizabeth and surrounds

The launch of the Eastern Cape 6-day Hiking Trail in 2018 is also proposed as a Mandela Centenary Project. The R9 million nodal project is located in the Port St John Local Municipality. The project will establish a six-day hiking trail from Port St Johns to Coffee Bay that will additionally provide, among others, ablution facilities and huts for overnight accommodation.

The partnership with CATHSSETA towards the Eastern Cape Development Projects, at the King Sabata Dalindyebo is a project in support of government's initiative to revitalize Coffee Bay into a fully- fledged economic hub utilising tourism as a catalyst for economic development, aimed at revamping the Coffee Bay hotel.

The aim is to bring state-of-the-art infrastructure which involves renovating the industrial kitchen to meeting world-class standards. CATHSSETA has earmarked R10 million towards this project.

The industrial kitchen will be used to train the chefs and to implement other hospitality related programmes with the objective of returning the hotel to a working facility. It will also be used by college students for their workplace experience. Learners will gain first-hand experience of how industrial kitchens operates in the preparation of future employment.

The project also seeks to create a sense of pride and patriotism for local students so that they see themselves contributing towards the economic development of their region.

As a strategic partner COGTA has also shown interest in partnering with the Department to utilise current training initiatives funded through EPWP to further train community members around Coffee Bay that are currently in the community work programme.

Tourism Enterprise Development Programme

Tourism Enterprise Development Programme is part of the greater objective of the revised NTSS 2016 – 2026 that seeks to ensure sustainable development and growth of tourism enterprises in a manner that facilitates inclusive participation, job creation and contributes to the competitiveness of tourism destinations. The programme provides training and support for emerging and existing tourism businesses to ensure their sustainability in the sector. The programme includes an incubator programme, which was first launched in 2016 in Pilanesberg with 50 incubatees.

The incubator services are designed to address the identified needs of the SMMEs, and constant monitoring conducted by the department's Monitoring and Evaluation, and Enterprise Development units respectively.

The objective of the programme is to create a programme that is aligned to government's focus on SMMEs and facilitate the transformation of the tourism sector to make it inclusive and accessible to new entrants, especially businesses owned and managed by the women and the youth.

Role players

South African Tourism

In terms of the Tourism Act of 1993, the SAT is mandated to market South Africa internationally and domestically as a preferred tourism destination, to ensure that tourist facilities and services are of the highest standard, and to monitor and evaluate the performance of the tourism sector.

The organisation's main strategic goal over the medium term is to ensure that the tourism sector makes an increasing contribution to economic growth.

Other goals include increasing the annual volume of international tourists visiting the country, growing tourists' contribution to the economy through their spending, increasing international brand awareness of South Africa as a travel and business destination, and increasing the number of graded accommodation establishments.

In 2015, the NDT set a target of attracting 12 million international tourist arrivals by 2018, as well as an increase in domestic holiday trips from 2,8 million in 2014 to 4,1 million by 2020. This would assist the NDT in achieving its target of creating 225 000 jobs within the sector by 2020.

Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP)

The TEP is a non-profit company that facilitates the growth, development and sustainability of small tourism businesses. This is achieved through a number of products and services that provide hands-on, step-by-step support and guidance, ultimately leading to improved product quality, operational efficiency and market reach.

Funding for the TEP's small tourism business development interventions is provided by the NDT as well as the Business Trust, the Tourism Micro-Enterprises Support Fund (a sister company that provides funding specifically for the support of micro enterprises), global financial services company Credit Suisse, and the Eastern Cape Development Corporation.

In July 2016, the TEP announced the second intake of 14 small, medium and macro-sized enterprises (SMMEs) to undertake the TEP's six-month business incubation programme.

The first intake of 10 SMMEs started in August 2015 and graduated in March 2016. The TEP continues to monitor and assist the SMMEs that graduated from the programme.

Tourism INDABA

The Tourism INDABA is one of the largest tourism marketing events on the African calendar and one of the top three "must visit" events of its kind on the global calendar.

The annual event showcases the widest variety of southern Africa's best tourism products and attracts international buyers and media from across the world.

The Tourism INDABA is owned by the SAT and has won various awards for Africa's best travel and tourism show, presented by the Association of World Travel Awards.

The 2017 Tourism INDABA was held from 16 to 18 May In Durban, KwaZulu-Natal, with an estimated 7 000 delegates attending.

Meetings Africa

Meetings Africa is the African continent's largest trade show for the business events industry.

Meetings Africa has been lauded as the premier business event in this industry, showcasing Africa's diverse offering of services and products.

Positioned as "Advancing Africa Together", the sole ambition of the trade show is to contribute to the growth of Africa's potential as the world's fastest-growing and most sought-after business events destination.

Culture, Art, Tourism, Hospitality, and Sport Sector Education and Training Authority (CATHSSETA)

CATHSSETA is one of 21 sector education and training authorities established under the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998) in 2001.

It was formally known as the Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority until 1 April 2012, when it became CATHSSETA.

Its mandate is to facilitate skills development within its

i The two-day Local Government Tourism Conference was held in Ekurhuleni in April 2017.

Themed 'Tourism Planning is Everybody's Business', more than 700 sector stakeholders and officials from all spheres of government and private sector deliberated on the state of the sector and how integrated planning can improve tourism delivery at a local government level.

subsectors through the disbursement of grants for learning programmes and monitoring of education and training as outlined in the National Skills Development Strategy.

CATHSSETA operates in the following subsectors:

- Arts, Culture and Heritage
- Conservation
- Gaming and Lotteries
- Hospitality
- Sport, Recreation and Fitness
- Travel and Tourism.

In April 2016, CATHSSETA opened six regional offices to extend its footprint into previously underserved provinces and outlying rural areas.

Tourism Grading Council of South Africa

The TGCSA is South Africa's only officially recognised and globally credible quality assurance body for national tourism products. It uses a star grading system for the evaluation of the quality of accommodation establishments.

Of the 11 categories of establishments from which travellers can choose – hotels, lodges, bed & breakfasts, country houses, guest houses, self-catering units, caravan and camping parks, backpackers and hostelling facilities as well as meetings, exhibitions and special events venues – establishments that have been graded by one of the TGCSA's accredited grading assessors will clearly display the TGCSA star insignia. The TGCSA star plaque and certificate guarantees quality and service excellence in line with internationally benchmarked standards.

Tourism Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Charter Council

The Tourism BBBEE Charter Council's roles include:

- providing guidance on sector-specific matters effecting BBBEE in entities within the sector
- compiling reports on the status of BBBEE within the sector for the Minister and the BEE Advisory Council
- sharing information with sector members, approved accreditation agencies and the Minister pertaining to BBBEE in the sector.

Programmes and projects

Tourism Incentive Programme

The TIP became fully operational in 2015/16. The programme received a budget of R552,9 million over the MTEF period and will focus on supporting tourism attractions to enhance destination competitiveness. Underused and unused public recreational facilities and resorts will be redeveloped as tourism destination sites.

Besides its job creation and economic growth outcomes, the TIP is aimed at the following:

- enhancing infrastructure facilities to maximise tourism benefits
- promoting greater participation in tourism and leisure activities, particularly among low-income people and families
- attracting private-sector investment in those facilities
- sector transformation
- addressing the challenges of uneven geographical spread of tourism products and seasonality.

The programme will further support SMMEs by assisting them to participate in local and international trade exhibitions, thus creating direct linkages with international tourism companies.

The programme will start by focusing on creating better access to new markets and customers, encouraging greater participation in the grading system, and providing key tourist attractions with clean and renewable energy sources.

The programme comprises the following:

- A subsidy towards the costs incurred by tourism establishments to participate in trade exhibitions and marketing roadshows. This will include a capped reimbursement towards predetermined expenses such as airfare, accommodation and exhibition fees for participation in marketing platforms supported by the SAT.
- Support for owners of establishments who want to be graded by the TGCSA in the form of a structured system of retroactive discounts or rebates on the assessment fee for grading. This aims to make grading more affordable for smaller businesses, and encourage more establishments to become graded.
- A pilot project to retrofit facilities at state-owned destinations and attractions such as World Heritage Sites and national botanical gardens with renewable energy technology. This will guide the design of a programme to help make establishments, including those in the private sector, more environmentally sustainable.
- The TIP supports the objectives of South Africa's overall industrial policy, which includes creating jobs, building the local industrial base and transforming to a green economy.

National Tourism Sector Strategy

The vision of the NTSS is to position South Africa as one of the top 20 tourism destinations global by 2020.

The overall goal of the strategy is to drive the tourism economy, enhance visitor experiences, position South Africa as a destination of choice and sustain good governance in the industry.

The key focus areas of the NTSS are arrivals, GDP and job creation. The tourism sector is working towards creating 225 000 jobs by 2020.

To achieve all of its objectives, the NTSS focuses on domestic tourism with the intention to increase the number of domestic trips from 30,9 million in 2009 to 54 million by 2020.

Regional tourism is also being targeted with South Africa looking to take advantage of hitherto untapped markets such as outbound tourists.

This strategy represents the department's commitment to intelligent planning and policy formulation. It was developed over two years in close collaboration with local and provincial government, an advisory panel of top industry minds, representatives of various professional bodies, academia, tourism marketing agencies, civil society and the broader public.

The NTSS is a document that the entire sector is committed to and includes coordinated and credible targets. The strategy rests on three pillars, namely:

- driving the tourism economy
- enhancing visitor experiences
- ensuring sustainability and good governance in the industry.

Women in Tourism Forum

The majority of workers in the tourism sector are women, yet many of these women are still relegated to menial or junior roles within tourism establishments. The Women in Tourism Forum was established in 2014 to address the economic inequalities

and challenges faced by women within the sector.

Executive Development Programme

In 2016/17, the Executive Development Programme for black women tourism managers was launched to build strong business skills and leadership capabilities among black women in the tourism sector to lead key parts of tourism businesses and form a pool of future top leadership, entrepreneurs and industrialists in the sector.

Local Government Capacity-Building Programme

The Local Government Capacity-Building Programme aims to provide an integrated approach to capacity-building for the public sector, private sector and community representatives (traditional leaders, councillors and non-governmental organisations) within selected municipalities. The programme creates a platform for stakeholder engagement and information sharing on key areas that assist in stimulating tourism growth.

In 2016/17, the programme was scheduled to be implemented in eight rural municipalities.

Enterprise Development Project Management Unit

The NDT established the Enterprise Development Project Management Unit in March 2016. Its focus is on the following areas: enterprise development online information portal, business advisory services, tourism incubator hubs establishment and stakeholder engagement. There was also to be continued support of 100 rural tourism enterprises with coaching and mentorship.

Skills Development Programmes

The NDT's skills development programmes include the following:

- Service Excellence Programme: The Service Excellence Programme prioritises key aspects of the National Tourism Service Excellence Strategy. In 2016, the NDT trained and upskilled people at Robben Island in the Western Cape and the Manyane Game Reserve in the North West. The department also extended the programme to the Golden Gate Highlands National Park in the Free State.
- Tourist guides: Tourist guides play a key role as frontline professionals, information givers, interpreters, destination representatives and ambassadors in turning a tour into an experience. The NDT crafted new regulations aimed at cracking down on illegal tourist guides as well as capacity-building programmes aimed at improving the levels of service rendered by existing tourist guides throughout South Africa. From 2016/17 to 2018/19, the focus was expected to improve the service of tourist guides at South Africa's eight World Heritage Sites – the country's biggest tourism drawcards. A digital application is also being developed to enable tourists to find accredited tourist guides.
- Chefs: The National Youth Chefs Training Programme ensures world-class service standards, promotes South African indigenous cuisine and produces chefs who are able to compete with the best in the world.
- Tourism Ambassador/Buddies Programme: The tourism buddies programme is an experiential hospitality training programme targeting unemployed youth to enable them to acquire skills and gain work experience to enhance employability in the hospitality and tourism sector. Some 3 800 learners were initially enrolled in the programme in 2014/15, and 2 214 learners have since graduated.
- The Food Safety Assurers Programme: Food safety is a scientific discipline aimed at handling, preparing and storing food in ways that prevent food-borne illnesses. In the pilot project in KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo, 100 Technical and Vocational Education and Training hospitality and tourism unemployed graduates were trained and hosted as food safety assurers, and all 100 graduated.
- National Tourism Careers Expo (NTCE): The NTCE is aimed at introducing learners who are interested in pursuing a career in tourism. The NTCE took place from 29 September 2016 to 1 October 2016 in Bloemfontein in the Free State. The event was attended by an estimated 8 000 participants, 86 students and unemployed graduates, 461 educators, 201 delegates from the tourism industry, 42 exhibitors and 21 media houses.

In 2016/17, the NDT aimed to capacitate 577 learner chefs, 270 sommeliers, 3 400 tourism buddies and 300 graduates recruited and placed under the Food Safety Programme.

National Tourism Service Excellence Requirements

The National Tourism Service Excellence Requirements are aimed at improving and maintaining service levels at all service touch points in the tourism value chain as well as guiding the sector to achieve the NTSS objective of positioning South Africa as one of the top 20 global tourism destinations.

Previously the tourism value chain in South Africa did not have integrated standards and norms, and this contributed to inconsistencies in service levels.

The Service Excellence Requirements provides a yardstick to be used by all tourism service providers to deliver quality service and experiences that equal or surpass world standards.

The South African Bureau of Standards developed the standards on behalf of the tourism sector and benchmarked them against international requirements. The requirements have four key focus areas, namely marketing, products, delivery of service, and monitoring and evaluation.

The department also introduced a National Service Excellence campaign under the theme "Excellent Service Starts with Me". The campaign is aimed at creating awareness and educating consumers and tourism product owners about the requirements.

National Minimum Standard for Responsible Tourism (NMSRT)

Responsible tourism is a tourism management strategy in which the tourism sector and tourists take responsibility for protecting and conserving the natural environment, respecting and conserving local cultures and ways of life, and contributing to stronger local economies and a better quality of life for local people.

It includes providing better holiday experiences for guests and good business opportunities for tourism enterprises. The concept of responsible tourism is gaining ground as a newly emerging trend worldwide.

The NDT, in partnership with tourism stakeholders and the private sector, particularly accreditation agencies, developed the NMSRT. In doing so, South Africa has taken the lead on

the continent by publishing a set of national minimum standards that are aligned with international standard ISO/IEC 17011.

The NMSRT comprises 39 criteria divided into four categories, namely:

- sustainable operations and management
- economic criteria
- social and cultural criteria
- environmental criteria.

Lilizela Tourism Awards

The Lilizela Tourism Awards recognises industry players within four focus areas reflecting eight categories, with the ninth category being the Minister's Award.

The awards acknowledge and applaud the efforts of people whose work sets global benchmarks in excellence.

International tourism

The SAT's Strategic Plan and Annual Performance Plan aims to increase tourism revenue's contribution to the economy from a then projected R91,2 billion in 2015 to R124,4 billion by 2020. The key performance indicators to be looked at for the strategy was the number of international tourist arrivals, total revenue, percentage of brand positivity and number of domestic holiday trips.

South Africa continued to enjoy a strong growth trajectory in tourist arrivals with a 15,4% increase overall for the first six months of 2016, compared to the same period in 2015.

Africa exhibited strong growth with a 14,4% increase in travellers coming from the rest of the continent, which signifies a strong recovery from 2015.

The 15,4% translates to more than 4,9 million tourists from across the globe. Asia leads the growth with an increase of over 40% with close to 162 000 tourists coming from this region during this period. Europe still dominates as the key source market with 697 373 tourists coming from Europe. This is a 14,7% increase when compared to the same period last year.

North American travellers coming to South Africa increased by nearly 18% while Central and South American tourists increased by 17%.

Australasia's tourist arrivals to South Africa grew by 10,8% during the same period.

Guidelines for international tourists

Every international traveller to South Africa must have a valid passport and, where necessary, a visa.

The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), stipulates that all visitors to South Africa are required to have at least one blank page (both back and front) in their passport to enable the entry visa to be issued.

If there is insufficient space in the passport, entry will be denied.

Enquiries may be directed to South African diplomatic representatives abroad or to the Department of Home Affairs in Pretoria, Gauteng. Visas are issued free of charge.

Visitors who intend travelling between South Africa and neighbouring countries are advised to apply for multiple-entry visas.

Passport holders of certain countries are exempt from visa requirements.

Tourists must satisfy immigration officers that they have the means to support themselves during their stay and that they have return or onward tickets. They must also have valid international health certificates.

Visitors from the yellow fever belt in Africa and the United States of America (USA), and those who travel through or disembark in these areas, have to be inoculated against the disease.

Malaria is endemic to parts of KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. It is essential to take anti-malaria precautions when visiting these areas.

Foreign tourists visiting South Africa can have their value-added tax (VAT) refunded, provided the value of the items purchased exceeds R20. VAT is refunded on departure at the point of exit.

South Africa's transport infrastructure – airlines, railroads, luxury touring buses (coaches) and motor vehicles – is such that tourists can travel comfortably and quickly from their port of entry to any part of the country.

South African Airways, as well as a number of international airlines, operate regular scheduled flights to and from South Africa.

Several domestic airlines operate in the country. There are also mainline trains to all parts of the country.

The tourist accommodation industry in South Africa provides a wide spectrum of accommodation, from formal hotels to informal holiday flats and cottages, game lodges and reserves, guest houses, youth hostels and bed-and-breakfast establishments.

Tourist guiding

The NDT entered into an agreement with CATHSSETA that seeks to prioritise tourist-guide training and development throughout South Africa.

The memorandum of understanding with CATHSSETA also addresses areas of transformation within the tourist-guide sector, as well as the maintenance of standards through quality training and effective skills development programmes aimed at existing tourist guides.

The department engaged the Road Traffic Management Corporation to educate traffic officials throughout South Africa on how to enforce the legislation pertaining to tourist guides.

The NDT works closely with the Department of Transport with a view to ensuring enforcement of tourist-guiding issues relating to tour operators and related regulations in the National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009).

The NDT wants industry bodies that are committed to growing the tourist-guiding sector and elevating the profession to enter into formal agreements with stakeholder bodies that share department's vision.

The NDT undertook a process to review the Regulations in Respect of Tourist Guiding. This included wide consultations with tourist guides and key stakeholders throughout the country to improve processes and systems to register tourist guides and ensure compliance within the sector.

The NDT is working with the provinces to establish a centralised database of tourist guides. Once a viable database is in place, the NDT will be able to engage the departments of home affairs and justice, and other relevant authorities to ensure that the information received from the provinces is subjected to a vetting process as prescribed in the Tourism Act of 2014.

The training programmes for tourist guides taking place in

provinces focus on skills development for existing tourist guides to make them more marketable and employable within the sector.

Tourism niche markets

Domestic tourism (Sho't Left)

SAT's Sho't Left campaign aims to promote a culture of local holiday travel, targeting ordinary South Africans and their families who have a desire to see more of the country but do not know where to go.

SAT relaunched its Sho't Left campaign in August 2007, challenging South Africans to "see your world differently", even when only visiting family or friends. The campaign is aimed at young upcoming individuals, independent couples and families, with research into the domestic tourism market indicating that over five million South Africans have both the resources and the desire to travel.

Adventure tourism

The country's diverse terrain, together with an ideal climate for outdoor activities, makes it perfect for the adventure tourism niche market. Activities such as climbing, surfing, diving, hiking, horseback safaris, mountain-biking, river-rafting and just about any other extreme activity are supported by dedicated operators.

South Africa offers some of the best rock climbing and abseiling opportunities in the world. Those who prefer rivers have a choice of trips ranging from mostly scenic to Grade 5 whitewater rafting. Opportunities for escorted or self-guided trips are also available.

For those who want to take to the skies, there are more than 100 listed paragliding or hang- gliding launch sites as well as numerous less known sites. There are also many opportunities for helicopter rides balloon and microlight flights, aerobatics and skydiving.

Thousands of kilometres of hiking trails wind through the country in desert, forest, mountain or coastal terrains, many with adjacent mountain-biking trails.

In addition, South Africa offers a wide variety of horse trails through vineyards, on beaches and in the mountains. For the more adventurous there are also horseback safaris in game reserves. The 216-metre (m) Bloukrans Bridge on the border of the Eastern and Western Cape offers the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

Business tourism

South Africa remains one of the top 15 long-haul business-events destinations in the world and is the premier business-events destination in Africa.

The business-events industry was identified as an important contributor towards the NTSS's target of 15 million international arrivals by 2020.

Government recognises business-events tourism as an area with significant growth potential and has therefore established the SANCB to further promote growth in the conferencing industry. The SANCB is tasked with coordinating national bidding, undertaking research and collaborating with city and provincial convention bureaus and the business-events industry to present a united front for destination South Africa.

According to the latest available figures, it is estimated that meetings, incentives, conventions and exhibitions support about 280 000 direct and indirect jobs in South Africa a year. Research conducted by the SANCB showed that 40% of all convention delegates attending meetings in South Africa return within the next five years as tourists, thus boosting tourism growth and job creation.

Other findings were as follows:

- The USA is South Africa's largest source market for business events delegates. The United Kingdom, Turkey, Nigeria, India and Australia also feature strongly in hosting business events here.
- Of all the business delegates coming to South Africa, about one-third travel around the country to experience some of the country's many attractions. This trend also boosts the leisure tourism industry.
- Most business delegates – about 40% – are aged between 35 and 44 years. The likelihood of a return visit with family and friends is very high.
- More business events are being held outside the major centres. This is an encouraging trend, where tourism is spread geographically across all regions of the country, so that venues and communities in some of the lesser-known areas also benefit from tourism.

Cruise tourism

The department works closely with the cruise-line industry to ensure that packages and excursions are developed and that passengers are encouraged to visit the country's shores, enjoy what it has to offer and inspire other travellers to visit South Africa.

Cultural tourism

Heritage and cultural tourism is the fastest-emerging competitive niche within domestic and international tourism markets. This category accounts for about two-thirds of international tourism.

The National Heritage and Cultural Strategy is aimed at guiding the integration of heritage and cultural resources with mainstream tourism. It is set to stimulate sustainable livelihoods through heritage and cultural tourism products, as well as to diversify the sector and raise awareness of heritage and cultural resources.

South Africa's diversity is reflected in its cultural tourism, with many destinations commemorating the past. These range from the ancient nomadic San culture to European settlement, apartheid rule and the struggle for political freedom.

Cultural tourist destinations include the following:

- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park in KwaZulu-Natal is home to the ancient rock art of the San.
- Cradle of Humankind near Johannesburg is the richest hominid fossil site in the world.
- Mapungubwe in Limpopo is one of the richest archaeological sites in Africa, where an advanced South African culture prospered between 1 200 AD and 1 270 AD.
- Soweto's Heritage Trail is a reminder of the events that characterised South Africa's liberation struggle, such as the student uprising on 16 June 1976.
- Many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's people.

Medical tourism

South Africa has emerged as a medical tourism destination of choice for travellers from other African countries as well as further afield; and the industry is proving to have extensive growth potential.

Most medical tourists come to South Africa for cosmetic surgery, but the country's skilled surgeons can also perform organ transplants, cardiac, orthopaedic and obesity surgery, and dentistry.

Nature-based tourism

South Africa's fauna and flora and varied landscapes have enormous recreational value and attract several million tourists each year.

Protected natural areas serve not only to maintain biodiversity, but sustainable visitor access to these areas adds economic, recreational and aesthetic value to that which is being conserved within their borders. It also helps to preserve a wealth of traditional indigenous knowledge related to biodiversity, which is in itself a tourism resource.

South Africa has 20 national parks as well as numerous private game farms and nature reserves.

Three of the country's eight United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) World Heritage Sites are natural sites, while one is a mixed cultural/natural site. These are the Cape Floral Region, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park, the Vredefort Dome and the uKhahlamba Drakensberg Park.

South Africa's popularity as an avi-tourism destination is due to the large number of birds, endemic species and major bird habitats. Birdlife South Africa, South Africa's national birding organisation, has more than 8 000 members and 40 branches nationwide.

Rural tourism

The NDT's National Rural Strategy is aimed at creating community-driven bed-and-breakfast operations, catering for international and domestic tourists.

In supporting the geographic spread of tourism and in particular tourism growth in rural areas and enhancing the supply of rural tourism products, the department is focusing on rural communities.

Culture and heritage products are the fastest emerging competitive niche offerings in the domestic and international markets.

Sustainable development will be achieved if the people, whose land, culture and natural resources are used for tourism, benefit from such use in a meaningful way.

Sports tourism

It is estimated that sports tourism contributes more than R6 billion to the South African tourism industry.

More than 10% of foreign tourists come to South Africa to watch or participate in sports events, with spectators accounting for 60% to 80% of these arrivals.

The world-class sporting events on South Africa's annual calendar include the following:

- the annual Cape Argus Cycle Race, which caters for 35 000 people riding and pushing their bikes over a 10-km course
- the Midmar Mile in KwaZulu-Natal, which attracts 18 000 open-water swimmers annually
- the Comrades Marathon.

The Sports and Events Tourism Exchange (SETE) is the only event of its kind in Southern Africa and provides a platform that brings together businesses from the sports, events and tourism industries.

The SETE conference, which encourages collaboration between these sectors, was held in Cape Town from 18 to 20 April 2018.

Township tourism

Township tours have the potential to present South Africa's culture and heritage and the NDT wants packages to be developed to achieve that goal. Government wants to capitalise on job-creation opportunities in this sector.

Wine tourism

Wine tourism is growing fast worldwide and plays an especially important role in South Africa with its centuries-old reputation for making high-quality wine. International Wine Review, one of the world's most influential opinion formers on wine, has rated South Africa's wine tourism the best developed in the world.

The country's vineyards are mostly situated in the Western Cape near the coast.

All South African wine routes fall under the auspices of the Wine of Origin Scheme.

Stylistically, South African wines fit somewhere between Old World and New World.

Regional tourism

Western Cape

The Western Cape lies at the southern tip of Africa. The province's unmatched natural beauty, famous hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and rich cuisine make it one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

The tourism industry in the province has grown faster and created more jobs than any other province. Tourism directly contributes R17 billion to the provincial economy and accounts for 204 000 formal jobs in the province.

Cape Metropole

Tourism in the city of Cape Town, which lies at the foot of the magnificent Table Mountain, centres on the V&A Waterfront. A working harbour, the V&A Waterfront offers everything from upmarket shopping malls, arts and craft markets, and a variety of restaurants to theatres, live music and museums.

Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, is one of the New Seven Wonders of Nature. A modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.

Other major attractions in the city include the Bo-Kaap Museum, the Castle of Good Hope, the Company's Garden, the District Six Museum, flea markets, the Grand Parade, the Houses of Parliament, the South African Cultural History Museum and the South African National Gallery.

The Gold of Africa Museum, established by Anglo Gold, houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.

Air flips and trips are available, as are many boat and yacht trips from Table Bay Harbour.

There are also trips to Robben Island (proclaimed a World

Heritage Site and also the place where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in prison).

The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. The gateway houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.

Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.

The Rhodes Memorial in Rondebosch on the slopes of Table Mountain was built from granite from the mountain as a tribute to the memory of Cecil John Rhodes, Prime Minister of the Cape from 1890 to 1896.

The University of Cape Town is worth a visit for its historic Middle Campus and many buildings designed by Sir Herbert Baker.

Cape Point, part of the Table Mountain National Park, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. Care has been taken to protect the environmental integrity of this 22 100-hectare (ha) reserve of indigenous flora and fauna.

Simon's Town's naval atmosphere and Historic Mile are major attractions in the area. A statue of the famous dog and sailors' friend Able Seaman Just Nuisance stands at Jubilee Square.

Hout Bay is renowned for its colourful working harbour. Seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal colony, shell and gift shops, and a famous harbour-front emporium attract many visitors. Duiker Island is a seal and seabird sanctuary.

The World of Birds Wildlife Sanctuary is one of the largest bird parks in the world and houses some 3 000 birds of 400 different species.

Big Bay in Bloubergstrand is a surfers' paradise and hosts an international windsurfing event.

Rietvlei Nature Reserve is a unique wetland area with over 110 bird species, including pelicans and flamingos.

Canal Walk in the suburb of Century City is one of the largest shopping centres in Africa, with close to 400 shops, and is home to the largest cinema complex in South Africa.

New Year in Cape Town is a festive affair, when the Cape minstrels take to the streets with their upbeat music and fancy costumes.

The Monkey Town Primate Centre is home to over 200 individual primates and is located east of Somerset West on the N2.

Strawberry-picking in Cape Town on the Mooiberge Strawberry Farm is available in season, which begins in November.

Cape winelands

The Cape winelands feature dramatic mountains, rolling farmlands and peaceful vineyards. They are home to Route 62, the world's longest wine route.

The Stellenbosch Wine Route comprises over 100 wine estates, most of which offer cellar tours.

Stellenbosch is the oldest town in South Africa. The town is a gracious blend of old Cape Dutch, Georgian and Victorian architecture. Dorp Street consists of one of the longest rows of old buildings in the country.

The Stellenbosch Village Museum consists of four homesteads and gardens ranging from the late-17th to the mid-19th centuries.

The Stellenbosch Toy and Miniature Museum houses a collection of 1:12 scale miniatures such as room boxes, miniature houses, antique dolls, cars and cuddly toys.

The Spier Summer Arts Festival livens up summer nights from November to March at the Spier Wine Estate near Stellenbosch. Supervised pony and cart rides for children are available on the lawns of the Spier Estate. There is also a horse-carriage tour and equestrian centre for older children.

The Freedom Monument at Pniel commemorates the freed slaves who were the first settlers at the mission station, established in 1843.

Franschhoek has become known as the "Gourmet Capital" of the Cape. The Huguenot Monument was built in 1944 to commemorate the arrival in 1688 of the Huguenots who were predominantly French. In April each year, the region hosts the South African Cheese Festival.

Visitors can also enjoy various hiking trails and historical walks, as well as the Vignerons de Franschhoek Wine Route. There is also an annual book/literary festival in Franschhoek.

Butterfly World, one of the more unique attractions of the Western Cape winelands, consists of a tropical garden in a 1 000 m^2 greenhouse.

The Giraffe House Wildlife Awareness Centre comprises 15 ha and focuses mainly on African wildlife. Giraffe House provides a place for people to enjoy a picnic in the fresh air, while experiencing and learning about animals and conservation.

Drakenstein Lion Park was established as a sanctuary for lions born in captivity. Jonkershoek Nature Reserve, which includes the smaller Assegaaibosch Nature Reserve, is near Stellenbosch, comprising the Jonkershoek Mountains and portions of the upper Jonkershoek Valley. The reserve stretches over 9 800 ha and its rugged terrain is ideal for hiking. Assegaaibosch is much smaller and is suitable for shorter walks and picnics.

On Le Bonheur Estate visitors can experience guided croc-pond tours, which lead across open dams via rampways. Over 1 000 crocodiles are housed in these dams. Visitors can touch a baby crocodile and, during summer months, witness them being fed.

Paarl is famous for its Cape Dutch and Victorian architectural treasures found along a 1-km stretch of the main street. The area's fynbos supports many south-western Cape endemics, such as the Cape sugarbird and orange-breasted sunbird. The Afrikaans Language Monument is on the slopes of Paarl Mountain, while the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum (Language Museum) is in the centre of the town.

The town of Wellington lies in a picturesque valley, with the majestic Hawequa Mountains on its eastern border. Wellington is also the home of South Africa's dried-fruit industry.

Experience life as the pioneers did in years gone by at the Kleinplasie Living Museum. The KWV Brandy Cellar, the largest of its kind in the world, offers cellar tours and brandy tastings.

The Hex River Valley is the largest producer of table grapes in southern Africa. Visitors can pick their own grapes at harvest time and sample the variety of export-quality produce.

The well-known Hex River 4x4 trail and the ochre San rock

art trail is a must for nature lovers. De Doorns lies in the heart of the Hex River Valley. Bonnievale on the Breede River, features several cheese factories.

For the adventurous outdoor enthusiast there are canoe trips, as well as birdwatching and riverboating.

Surrounded by vineyards, orchards, and roses, Robertson is known as "The Valley of Wine and Roses". It is known for its connoisseur-quality wines and its thoroughbred horses. Renowned for its muscadel wines, Montagu is the gateway to the Little Karoo.

Relax in the healing waters of the Avalon Springs or visit the Montagu Museum, which houses, among other things, original cartoons and books by well-known cartoonist TO Honiball.

The picturesque village of Gouda is known for the Parrotts Den pub, a living museum in the Gouda Hotel.

McGregor has a variety of charming thatched cottages and well-preserved Victorian houses, making it one of the best-preserved examples of mid-19th-century architecture in the Western Cape.

Prince Alfred Hamlet is the gateway to the Gydo Pass, known for its scenic views. This quaint village lies in an important deciduous-fruit farming area. Hidden amid vineyards and wine estates lies Rawsonville, known for its award-winning wines.

Tourists can enjoy an afternoon drive along the beautiful Slanghoek Valley with its lush vineyards and panoramic views, or relax in the mineral springs at Goudini Spa.

Garden Route

The Garden Route spans roughly 200 km of the southern coast, incorporating a stretch of coastline that includes Mossel Bay, George, Wilderness, Sedgefield, Knysna, Plettenberg Bay and Nature's Valley – each with its own charm and attractions. Famed for its lush greenery and the vast Tsitsikamma Forest, the Garden Route is the most biodiverse region in the world.

The Garden Route features the pont at Malgas, which is one of the two remaining ponts in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River. The Grootvadersbosch Nature Reserve outside Heidelberg comprises the popular Bushbuck Trail, a wilderness trail and two mountain-biking trails. Riversdale is one of South Africa's most important fynbos export areas. Other attractions include the Julius Gordon Africana Museum.

At the historical Strandveld Architectural Heritage Site at Still Bay, visitors can watch tame eels being fed. Ancient fish traps can be seen at Morris Point and the harbour.

At the aloe factories at Albertinia, aloe juice is extracted for medicine and high-quality skincare products. Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.

The Point in Mossel Bay is not only popular among surfers, but its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide. The St Blaize trail starts here and is the ideal place from which to watch the whales and dolphins at play in season.

The harbour at Mossel Bay is one of the most modern commercial and recreational harbours on the southern coastline of the Western Cape. Other attractions include the Attequas Kloof Pass, Anglo-Boer/South African War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex. Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whalewatching and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast.

The Slave Tree in George, located just outside the Old Library, was planted in 1811, when George was laid out. It is known to be the biggest English oak in the southern hemisphere. George is popular among golfers and is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate, as well as various other acclaimed golf courses. Visitors can board the Power Van at the Outeniqua Transport Museum, and enjoy a glimpse of the Garden Route Botanical Garden from this rail bus. The Big Tree at Woodville, an Outeniqua yellowwood, is estimated to be around 850 years old. It is located about 40 km outside of George in the direction of Knysna.

The George Airport, Outeniqua Pass, railway line and the N2 offer convenient access to this region, making George the ideal hub from which to explore the Garden Route and Little Karoo.

Victoria Bay and Wilderness are popular for their unspoilt beaches. Wilderness is the western gateway to the southern Cape lakes area. It is a nature lover's paradise, best known for its beaches, lakes, placid lagoon and lush indigenous forests.

The Langvlei and Rondevlei bird sanctuaries in the Wilderness National Park, which hosts over 230 different bird species, is popular among birdwatchers. Sedgefield borders Swartvlei Lagoon, the largest natural inland saltwater lake in South Africa. Activities include beach horseriding, hiking, angling and birdwatching.

Knysna nestles on the banks of an estuary, guarded by The Heads (two huge sandstone cliffs) and surrounded by indigenous forests, tranquil lakes and golden beaches.

This natural wonderland is home to the largest and smallest of creatures, from the Knysna seahorse to the Knysna elephants, rare delicate butterflies and the endemic Knysna loerie, a colourful forest bird.

The abundant fynbos and forest settings host over 200 species. Knysna is also famous for its delectable homegrown oysters, enjoyed with locally brewed beer in quaint pubs and restaurants. The Knysna Oyster Festival, a celebration of the good life, has established itself as one of the most popular annual events in the Western Cape.

An eclectic mix of art galleries presents the diversity of talent in the area. There are also lagoon cruises, forest hikes, golf and adventure sports on offer.

Plettenberg Bay is adventure country, offering boat-based whalewatching, blackwater tubing, hiking, as well as forest and cycling trails. The Keurbooms River Nature Reserve at Plettenberg Bay offers a canoeing trail, while the Robberg Nature Reserve is a treasure trove of land, marine, geological and archaeological wealth.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's fascinating landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the world's largest bird – the ostrich. The Little Karoo is rich in culture and history. Oudtshoorn, the world's ostrich-feather capital, is the region's main town.

The annual Klein-Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (National Arts Festival) is held in the town. Some 29 km from Oudtshoorn lie the Cango Caves, a series of subterranean limestone caverns.

Bearing evidence of early San habitation, the cave features magnificent dripstone formations.

Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards, while the Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers. Calitzdorp has four wine estates, three of which are open to the public.

The spring water of the Calitzdorp Spa is rich in minerals and reputed to have medicinal properties. The Gamka Mountain Reserve is home to the rare and endangered Cape mountain zebra.

Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas. The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with its gravel roads is also worth a visit. De Rust lies at the southern entrance to Meiringspoort. The Meiringspoort Gorge extends 20 km through the Swartberg Mountain Range. Halfway through is a beautiful 69-m waterfall. Wine farms in the area are open to the public.

Ladismith is home to the Towerkop Cheese Factory. There are various hiking, mountain-biking and 4x4 trails in the area, as well as the Anysberg, Little Karoo and Towerkop nature reserves.

Uniondale, on the main route between George and Graaff-Reinet, features the largest water wheel in the country, the Old Water Mill. Uniondale Poort is a scenic drive linking Uniondale with Avontuur in the Langkloof Valley.

At Vanwyksdorp, visitors can see how fynbos is dried and packed for the export market. Donkey-cart rides take visitors to Anglo-Boer/South African War grave sites.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo, a fascinating semi-desert area, lies in the heart of one of the world's most unique and interesting arid zones. This ancient, fossil-rich land is five times the size of Great Britain. Here, visitors will find the Earth's largest variety of succulents. Beaufort West, the oldest town in the Central Karoo, is often referred to as the "Oasis of the Karoo". The local museum displays awards presented to heart-transplant pioneer, Prof. Chris Barnard, a son of this town.

A township route introduces visitors to the Xhosa culture in the area. The Karoo National Park, on the town's doorstep, is home to a variety of game, as well as the highly endangered riverine rabbit.

Matjiesfontein, a national monument, offers tourists a peek into yesteryear and the opportunity to overnight in Victorian splendour. The village houses a transport museum and the Marie Rawdon Museum.

Experience the vastness of the Great Karoo in Murraysburg, an ecotourist and hunter's paradise.

Laingsburg, a tiny village that was devastated by floods about a century after it was established, was rebuilt afterwards. It is the best place to study the geology of the region.

Prince Albert is a well-preserved town at the foot of the Swartberg Mountains. It is the ideal place to sample Karoo cuisine, see examples of local architecture dating back to the early 1800s and enjoy several scenic drives.

The Fransie Pienaar Museum introduces visitors to the cultural history of the area. It has a fossil room and an exhibit covering the gold rush in this area in the 19th century. The museum has a licence to distil and sell "witblits" (literally white lightning, also known as "firewater" in the local parlance). Prince Albert is the closest town by road to Gamkaskloof.

The Hell, a little valley in the heart of the Swartberg Mountains, was the home of one of the world's most isolated communities for almost 150 years. Gamkaskloof is a nature reserve and national monument managed by Cape Nature Conservation. It has overnight facilities and can be accessed by a 57-km long (but two-hour drive) winding road which starts at the peak of the Swartberg Pass.

West Coast

The West Coast is a region of outstanding beauty and contrast. The coast's scenic beauty is matched only by culinary experiences of mussels, oysters, calamari, crayfish and abalone in season, or linefish pulled from the Benguela Current's cold waters.

During April every year, Lambert's Bay has the Crayfish and Cultural Festival. The area is not only a birder's paradise, but every year migrating whales visit the coastal waters from July.

Vredenburg, the business centre of the area, has a popular golf course with a bird hide. Lambert's Bay is a traditional fishing village, with Bird Island as a popular tourist attraction. It is a breeding ground for African penguins, the Cape cormorant and other seabirds.

Within two months of the first good winter rains, wild flowers on the West Coast explode in a brilliant display of colour.

The Swartland region is known for its wheat fields, vineyards, wineries and outdoor activities.

Further north, visitors encounter the Olifants River Valley and the vast plains of the Knersvlakte with its wealth of indigenous succulent plants.

The citrus area in the Olifants River Valley is the third-largest in South Africa.

The town of Darling draws visitors to its country museum and art gallery, annual wild flower and orchid shows, basket factory and wine cellars.

The entertainment venue "Evita se Perron" is situated at the old Darling Railway Station and offers top performances by South African entertainers.

Malmesbury is the biggest town in the Swartland. Major attractions include the Malmesbury Museum and the historical walkabout.

The Riebeek Valley is known for its scenic beauty. The area has become a popular haven for well-known artists of various disciplines. Wines and olives can be tasted at various cellars.

Elands Bay is a popular holiday resort and surfer's paradise. Khoi and San rock art can be viewed at the Elands Bay caves.

Moorreesburg and Koringberg are major wheat-distributing towns. Tourists can visit the Wheat Industry Museum, one of only three in the world. Birdwatching, hiking, 4x4 routes, clay-pigeon shooting, mountain-biking trails, canoeing and waterskiing at Misverstand are popular activities.

Yzerfontein is famous for its unspoilt beaches, fynbos, beautiful views and whalewatching. Another major attraction is the historical lime furnaces.

Langebaan, a popular holiday destination, is home to the West Coast National Park. An internationally renowned wetland that houses about 60 000 waterbirds and waders, the park attracts thousands of visitors each year. The oldest anatomically modern fossilised human footprints were also discovered here.

The Langebaan Lagoon forms part of the park and is zoned for specific activities. The Postberg section of the park, across the lagoon, is famous for its wild flowers that bloom mainly during August and September.

Cape Columbine at Paternoster is the last manned lighthouse build on the South African coast. The Columbine Nature Reserve is home to a variety of seabird species.

Saldanha is a watersport enthusiast's paradise. Its attractions include Doc's Cave, a landmark on the scenic breakwater drive, and the Hoedjieskoppie Nature Reserve.

There are various hiking trails in the SAS Saldanha Nature Reserve.

St Helena Bay is best known for the Vasco Da Gama Monument and Museum. Visitors can enjoy fishing (snoek in season), hiking as well as whalewatching and birdwatching.

Piketberg offers arts and crafts, fauna and flora, wine culture and recreation.

The Goedverwacht and Wittewater Moravian mission stations are close to the town. Porterville is famous for its Disa Route (best in January and February).

The Groot Winterhoek Mountain Peak in the Groot Winterhoek Wilderness Area is the second-highest in the Western Cape.

The Dasklip Pass is popular with hang-gliders. At Velddrif/Laaiplek, visitors can indulge in bokkems (a West Coast salted-fish delicacy) at factories along the Berg River. Tourists can also visit the salt-processing factory and the West Coast Art Gallery in town.

The wine route from Citrusdal to Lutzville produces a selection of internationally acclaimed wines. Citrusdal is famous for its citrus products and wines. The Citrusdal Museum depicts the pioneering days of the early colonists. The Goede Hoop Citrus Co-Op is the largest single packing facility in South Africa. World-renowned rooibos tea is also produced here.

The annual Citrusdal Outdoor Calabash features 4x4 outings, lectures and visits to rock-art sites and an arts and crafts market. Annually, scores of skydiving enthusiasts visit Citrusdal for a skydiving "boogie" that lasts several days. The oldest orange tree in the country, calculated to be more than 250 years old, grows in the Citrusdal Valley. The Sandveldhuisie is an example of a typical Sandveld dwelling.

The Cederberg Wilderness Area features the elephant's foot plant, the rare snow protea and some of the best examples of San rock art in the Western Cape.

Visitors to Clanwilliam can visit the rooibos and velskoen factories as well as the grave of the well-known South African poet Louis Leipoldt.

Various historical buildings can also be viewed. The Clanwilliam and Bulshoek dams are popular among watersport enthusiasts.

Wuppertal, at the foot of the Cederberg mountains, features the oldest Rhenish Mission Station. Proceeds from 4x4 trails in the area fund the creation of new hiking trails and the building of more overnight huts and guest houses.

The town, which is well-known for its rooibos and buchu production, has added one more attraction to its tourism offerings – the Cederberg Donkey Cart Route. The project entails a three-day tour through the Cederberg Mountain area and Heuningvlei, with accommodation facilities for overnight visitors.

Vredendal is the centre of the Lower Olifants River Valley. Major attractions include marble-processing and manufacturing, industrial mines (dolomite and limestone), the KWV Grape Juice Concentrate Plant and Distillery and the South African Dried Fruit Co-Operative. The town is also home to the Vredendal Wine Cellar, the largest co-operative wine cellar under one roof in the southern hemisphere.

The picturesque town of Doringbaai with its attractive lighthouse is well known for its seafood.

Strandfontein, about 8 km north of Doringbaai, is essentially a holiday and retirement resort with a panoramic view of the ocean. Klawer was named after the wild clover that grows in the area. During the flower season, the area is a symphony of colour. The Doring River features hiking trails and opportunities for river-rafting. Lutzville and Koekenaap are synonymous with wine and flowers in season.

Visitors can also view the Sishen-Saldanha Railway Bridge. Where the railway line spans the Olifants River, it is divided into 23 sections, each 45 m long. The 14 100-ton deck was pushed into position over teflon sheets with hydraulic jacks from the bridgehead. It is the longest bridge in the world built using this method.

Vanrhynsdorp houses the largest succulent nursery in South Africa. The Latsky Radio Museum houses a collection of old valve radios, some dating back to 1924. The Troe-Troe and Rietpoort mission stations are a must-see for history enthusiasts.

Overberg

In the most southerly region of Africa east of Cape Town, lies the Overberg.

The Hangklip-Kleinmond area comprises Kleinmond, Betty's Bay, Pringle Bay and Rooi Els. It is a popular holiday region, ideal for whalewatching, and includes the Kleinmond Coastal Nature Reserve and the Harold Porter Botanical Garden.

The Penguin Reserve at Stoney Point, Betty's Bay, is one of two breeding colonies of the jackass penguin off Africa.

South Africa's first international biosphere reserve, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, was proclaimed by Unesco in 1999. It runs along the coast from Gordon's Bay to the Bot River Vlei, stretching 2 km out to sea, and inland to the Groenlandberg Mountains near Grabouw.

Hermanus is a popular holiday resort and famous for the best land-based whalewatching in the world.

Stanford is one of the few villages in South Africa where the market square has been retained. The central core of the village has been proclaimed a national conservation area. Award-winning wines are produced in the area.

Gansbaai is known for its excellent rock and boat angling, diving, shark-cage diving and whalewatching.

The Danger Point Lighthouse, named as such because of the ships that have been wrecked and lives lost on this dangerous coast, is open to the public.

De Kelders is the only freshwater cave on the African coast. Spectacular views of southern right whales can be enjoyed from the cliffs at De Kelders and along the coast to Pearly Beach.

Also popular are white-shark tours, diving safaris and fishing trips.

Elim was founded by German missionaries in 1824, with its only inhabitants being members of the Moravian Church. Visitors are welcome to attend services.

The Old Watermill (1833) has been restored and declared a

national monument.

Popular sites in Napier include the Militaria Museum and Rose Boats and Toy Museum.

The Shipwreck Museum in Bredasdorp, founded in 1975, specialises in shipwrecks found along the South African coastline. The town also has the Audrey Blignault Museum.

De Mond Nature Reserve is home to some rare bird species, including the damara tern and giant tern.

The Geelkop Nature Reserve derives its name from the mass of yellow flowering plants that cover the hill during spring.

The lighthouse at L'Agulhas, which forms part of the Agulhas National Park, is the country's second-oldest working lighthouse. It celebrated its 150th anniversary in 1999. The Agulhas National Park is a ruggedly beautiful coastal plain of 20 959 ha.

At Cape Agulhas, the southernmost tip of the continent, the waters cleave into the Indian and Atlantic oceans.

The wrecks of some 130 seafaring craft – yachts, Spanish galleons, Dutch East Indiamen, the legendary Birkenhead, and even modern-day fishing trawlers – have found a watery grave around the notorious Cape of Storms.

Struisbaai has the longest white coastline in the southern hemisphere. Arniston was named Waenhuiskrans (coach-house cliff) by the local fishers in honour of the huge sea cave capable of housing several oxwagons. For outsiders, it was named after the Arniston, a ship wrecked there in 1815. The Waenhuiskrans Cave can be explored at low tide.

The De Hoop Nature Reserve on the way to Swellendam includes an internationally renowned wetland and bird sanctuary. It is a winter retreat for the southern right whale and the Western Cape's only Cape griffen vulture colony. The red Bredasdorp lily and many species of protea and erica are found in the Heuningberg Nature Reserve.

Swellendam is well-known for its youngberries and eclectic architecture. The Drostdy Museum consists of a group of buildings containing a huge selection of period furniture.

The Bontebok National Park, about 7 km from Swellendam, provides sanctuary to the threatened bontebok and other species. Known for its worldclass wine, Barrydale offers the visitor fruit and fresh air in abundance. Situated on the N2, about 160 km from Cape Town, Riviersonderend offers beautiful mountain and river scenery, a nine-hole golf course and sightings of the blue crane.

Caledon is famous for its natural mineral waters, hot springs and wildflower shows. Southern Associated Maltsters is the only malt producer for the South African lager beer industry and the largest in the southern hemisphere.

Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.

Villiersdorp houses the Dagbreek Museum that dates back to 1845 and was declared a monument in 1994. The historical home, Oude Radyn, is possibly the only building in the Western Cape to have Batavian wooden gutters and down pipes.

The Theewaterskloof Dam outside Villiersdorp is the seventh-largest dam in the country. The Villiersdorp Wild Flower Garden and Nature Reserve has an indigenous herb garden and a reference library.

The Grabouw/Elgin district produces about 60% of South Africa's total apple exports and fine wines. The valley is also renowned for cultivating fresh chrysanthemums, roses and proteas.

The Elgin Apple Museum is one of only two in the world. Sir Lowry's Pass offers spectacular views of False Bay from Gordon's Bay to Cape Point.

Northern Cape

Characterised by its vast expanses of space and silence, warm sunny climate, friendly people and hospitality, the Northern Cape is a province with a rich culture heritage.

Diamond fields

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors.

The Kimberley Tram Service dates back to the beginning of the 20th century and still transports passengers from the City Hall to the Mine Museum.

Underground mine tours are a big attraction, as are the famous ghost tours, during which many historical buildings are seen from a different perspective.

Hand and mechanical diamond-digging by private diggers can be viewed by appointment.

The McGregor Museum houses invaluable collections of the archaeological finds in the area, as well as San art works.

The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The Pioneers of Aviation Museum near Kimberley Airport houses a replica of the Compton-Paterson biplane, which was used for pilot training by the flying school operated by the Paterson Aviation Syndicate at Alexandersfontein.

A township tour of Galeshewe provides a fresh perspective on South Africa's socio-historical realities. Pan African Congress founder Robert Sobukwe's house is there.

The Magersfontein Battlefield outside Kimberley, with its original trenches and other defences intact, is the site of the Boers' crushing defeat of the British during the Siege of Kimberley.

A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.

Barkley West attracts many watersports enthusiasts and anglers. Tucked along the Vaal River near Barkley West lies the Vaalbos National Park.

The park is not only home to large raptors, but also a breeding centre for endangered African herbivores such as rhino, roan and sable antelope and disease-free buffalo.

Kalahari

At Black Rock, visitors can view a worked-out manganese mine.

Danielskuil lies at the foot of the Kuruman hills. The Tswana people occupied the area before it became home to the Griquas. Boesmansgat, on the farm Mount Carmel outside Danielskuil, is a unique natural sinkhole – the second-deepest and largest of its kind in the world.

Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed

with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Setswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman" – which yields 20 million litres of water per day.

Moffat's Mission in Kuruman features the house of missionary Robert Moffat, the church he built as well as several other historic buildings. Moffat translated the Bible into Setswana – the first African language in which the Bible was made accessible.

The printing press on which he printed the first 2 000 copies can still be viewed. The church he built seats 800 people and is still in use. Explorer David Livingstone married Moffat's daughter and started many famous travels from this mission station.

The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment. The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters.

The Witsand Nature Reserve, situated about 80 km south-west of Postmasburg, features a 100-m high dune of brilliant white sand. It stretches for about 9 km and is about 2 km wide.

Green Kalahari

The Roaring Sands site on the farm Doornaar near Groblershoop is a popular tourist attraction. Its high sand dunes, surrounded by typically red Kalahari dunes, are said to "roar" when the wind blows.

Along the hand-built irrigation canals at Kakamas 11 waterwheels are still used. Kanoneiland is a settlement on the biggest island in the Orange River. At Keimoes, the Orange River flows at its widest.

The Tierberg Nature Reserve offers spectacular views of the Keimoes Valley and the many islands in the Orange River. The original irrigation canal system is still in use. The Orange River Wine Cellar's largest cellar is situated here.

Kenhardt is the oldest town in the Lower Orange River area. The Quiver Tree Forest and Kokerboom Hiking Trail, consisting of between 4 000 and 5 000 quiver trees, are within easy driving distance of the town.

Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties", who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

Kalahari Desert Speedweek, in its third year at the beginning of October 2014, is an annual eight-day speed festival held in a far north-western corner of South Africa where tumbleweeds can roam for days nonstop and the dried-up lake beds are tailormade for topspeed exploration.

It is a proper run-what-you-brung motorsport event where anybody is welcome to enter, and anything with an engine is eligible. Over the years, the event has also become a meeting place for all sorts of eccentric machinery and people. Expect anything from 1940s vintage Nash sedans limping along in period-correct warbird liveries to finely tuned Italian exotics humming at breakneck speeds, billowing dust clouds in tow.

The Orange River displays its impressive power at the Augrabies Falls in the Augrabies Falls National Park. Visitors can hire canoes to ensure closer contact with the natural heritage surrounding the world's sixth-largest waterfall.

The Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park comprises 38 000 m^2 of land, making it one of the largest conservation areas in the world. Straddling the Green Kalahari and Botswana, the park is a two-million-hectare sanctuary for various raptors, antelope, gemsbok, springbok, blue wildebeest, red hartebeest, eland, Kalahari lion, black-maned lion, brown and spotted hyena, leopard, cheetah and smaller game, including mongoose, porcupine and the endangered honey badger.

Namaqualand

The Namas are the indigenous people of Namaqualand. Their traditional Nama reed huts still abound in Leliefontein, Nourivier and Steinkopf. Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert.

The flowers sprout and survive for a brief period before they wilt and disappear in the blistering heat and dry conditions just as suddenly as they appeared. The small town of Garies is the centre for those setting out to enjoy this show of exuberance in the Kamiesberg.

Since diamonds were discovered along the West Coast in 1925, Alexander Bay has become known for its mining activities. The town is no longer a high-security area and no permits are needed to enter. The Alexkor Museum paints a picture of the history of the area. The town also features the world's largest desert lichenfield, which has some 26 species.

At Hondeklip Bay, visitors can dive for crayfish and watch the local fisherfolk conduct their trade. Port Nolloth is a centre for the small-scale diamond-recovery and crayfish industries. It is the only holiday resort on the Diamond Coast. The local factory sells fish and crayfish in season.

Set in a narrow valley bisecting the granite domes of the Klein Koperberge lies Springbok.

South of Springbok, near Kamieskroon, lies the Skilpad Wild Flower Reserve, part of the Namaqua National Park, which captures the full grandeur of the flower season. The 1 000-ha reserve is open only during the flower season.

The Goegap Nature Reserve comprises 15 004 ha of typically granite, rocky hills and sandy flats. The reserve also offers a 4x4 trail, as well as several hiking and mountain-biking trails.

Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and SANParks.

Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo)

Flanked by the Towerberg, Colesberg is one of the Northern Cape's most beautiful towns. The town features one of the country's last working horsemills. An Anglo-Boer/South African War tour is also on offer. A weekend tour includes a visit to the Norval's Pont prisoner-of-war camp and cemetery.

Colesberg has bred many of the country's top Merino sheep. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses.

De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.

Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

The "Star of South Africa" diamond was discovered at Hopetown. The town also features an old toll house and a block house dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

At Wonderdraai near Prieska, visitors can see the horseshoe-

shaped island formed by the flow of the Orange River. It seems as if the river turns to flow uphill.

Vanderkloof, built to house the people building the Vanderkloof Dam, was turned into a flourishing holiday resort. Visitors can enjoy waterskiing, boardsailing, boating and swimming, or visit the Eskom hydro-electric power station within the dam's wall.

The rare riverine rabbit is found in the Victoria West Nature Reserve.

Hantam Karoo

Near Brandvlei lies Verneukpan where Sir Malcolm Campbell unsuccessfully attempted to break the world land-speed record in 1929.

Carnarvon is well known for its corbelled dome-roofed houses built of flat stones because of a lack of wood.

The floors of these interesting houses were smeared and coloured with a rich red mixture of fat and oxblood and polished with smooth stone.

A few kilometres outside Fraserburg lies the Gansfontein Palaeosurface. Discovered in 1968, it comprises several trackways of large, four-footed and five-toed mammalian reptiles. The prints are estimated to be some 190 million years old.

Sutherland, birthplace of NP van Wyk Louw, well-known Afrikaans author and poet, is also known for its brilliant night skies and cold, biting winters.

The South African Astronomical Observatory's observation telescopes, including the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt), are in Sutherland. The sterboom (star tree), which blossoms in September, is found only in Sutherland.

The Tankwa Karoo National Park, on the southern border of the Northern Cape, 70 km west of Sutherland, encompasses the Succulent Karoo Biome, the world's only arid hotspot, stretches 116 000 km² from the south-western Cape into southern Namibia.

The landscape offers seasonal contrasts of coloured wild flowers and stark desert, set against the backdrop of the Roggeveld Escarpment to the east, Klein Roggeveld to the south and the Cederberg to the west. Its extensive desert plateaus are ideal for viewing game such as gemsbok, Cape mountain zebra, springbuck and bustards.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with the Kingdom of Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

This central region is characterised by rolling fields of wheat, sunflowers and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Motheo

With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses". The city also hosts an annual rose festival.

The Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building), built in 1849 as a school, is Bloemfontein's oldest surviving building. Still in its original condition, this historical building is used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Afrikaans Literary Museum and Research Centre has works by prominent Afrikaans authors. Exhibits in the Afrikaans Music Museum and Theatre Museum (part of the centre) include old musical instruments, sheet music, costumes, photographs and furniture.

The museum is notable for its wide collection of fossils, cultural-historical exhibits and archaeological displays, including the Florisbad Skull, which was discovered in the 1930s at the Florisbad Spring.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5 m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War. Visitors get a glimpse of life in the concentration and prisoner-of-war camps. The research library contains an extensive collection of Africana.

The Old Presidency dates back to 1885 and was the official residence of three presidents of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. It houses a museum depicting their respective terms of office, and is a cultural centre for art exhibitions, theatrical productions and musical events.

The Observatory Theatre in Bloemfontein's Game Reserve is a unique attraction. Naval Hill is the biggest game reserve completely surrounded by a city. Bloemfontein hosts the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September every year. The Sand du Plessis Theatre and Art Gallery at Oliewenhuis are also worth visiting.

Botshabelo (Place of Refuge), 45 km from Bloemfontein on the N8 road to Lesotho, is believed to be the largest township settlement in the Free State – and the second-largest in South Africa after Soweto.

Nearby, the town of Thaba Nchu features luxury hotels and a casino, with the Maria Moroka Nature Reserve surrounding Thaba Nchu Sun and the Setlogelo Dam.

Xhariep

Bethulie used to be a London Missionary Society station. The original mission buildings still stand.

The Pellissier House Museum depicts the history of the area. There is an Anglo-Boer/South African War concentration camp cemetery in Bethulie.

The Gariep Dam, more than 100-km long and 15 km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa. Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve. On the southern side of the dam lies the Oviston Nature Reserve.

Philippolis, the oldest town in the Free State, was founded as a London Missionary Society station in 1824. It was the first mission station in the province.

Trompsburg is the hub of the Free State Merino sheep-farming industry. The Tussen-die-Riviere Nature Reserve reputedly supports more game than any other sanctuary in the Free State.

A fountain near Koffiefontein was a favourite resting place for transport riders in the 19th century. In June 1870, one of these transport riders picked up a diamond near the fountain. This prompted a rush, and by 1882 Koffiefontein was a booming town with four mining companies.

Thabo Mofutsanyana

Snowcapped mountains and beautiful scenery provide a

backdrop to this pristine area.

Clocolan is known for the beauty of its cherry trees when they are in full bloom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.

Clarens is often described as the "Jewel of the Free State", owing to its exceptionally beautiful scenery. San paintings are found on farms in the area.

Close by, the Highlands Route meanders along the foothills of the Maluti Mountains and follows the Lesotho border via Ladybrand and ends at Zastron in the south.

The town is known for the many arts and crafts shops, which offer the visitor a wide range of curios and original artwork.

Ficksburg is known for its asparagus and cherry farms. Every November, a cherry festival is held there. The town is a gateway to the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho.

Rosendal, surrounded by the Witte Mountains, celebrated its centenary in 2011.

The Golden Gate Highlands National Park, known for its impressive sandstone cliffs and rock formations, is a popular holiday destination.

The birdwatching mecca of Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve near Memel constitutes a wetland with Ramsar status, and is surrounded by private game and holiday farms.

Lejweleputswa region

Bethlehem, which lies on the banks of the Jordaan River, was founded by the Voortrekkers in the 1840s. The banks of the Jordaan River form part of the Pretoriuskloof Nature Reserve – a sanctuary for birds and small game. The museum in Miller Street depicts the history of the area.

Van Reenen's Pass winds through the Drakensberg, and was originally used by migrating herds of zebra, hartebeest, blesbok and wildebeest. The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic church in the world.

At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.

Platberg, the 2 394-m "flat mountain", is the town's landmark. A well-known race, claimed by some to be the toughest in the country, is run annually up, along and back down the mountain.

Sterkfontein Dam is ideal for watersports and fishing. An open-water swimming race takes place there annually.

The Riemland Museum in Heilbron depicts the heritage and agricultural activities of the region.

The QwaQwa district is a traditional home to the Basotho people. The Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve is a living museum where visitors can witness the Sotho traditions and lifestyle in the chief's kraal.

Karakul carpets, mohair, wall hangings, copper, glassware and brass are made and sold at Phuthaditjhaba. The nearby Metsi Matsho and Fika Patso dams are renowned for troutfishing.

Welkom is known for its gold mines. It is also the only city in the country where traffic circles are used instead of traffic lights.

The world's deepest wine cellar is at the St Helena Mine, which is 857 m below the Earth's surface.

Bothaville is regarded as the centre of the Free State Maize Route. The Nampo Harvest Farm and Festival attracts more than 20 000 visitors each year and is the second-largest private agricultural show in the world. Bothaville also hosts the annual Food and Witblits festival, drawing visitors from all over South Africa.

The sandstone church in Kestell is possibly the most impressive of all the Eastern Free State's sandstone buildings. Winburg is the oldest town and first capital of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. The Voortrekker Museum depicts the daily routine of the trekkers. A concentration camp cemetery is situated nearby.

Sasolburg originated in 1954 with the establishment of Sasol, the synthetic fuel producer. Parys, situated on the banks of the Vaal River, offers tourists a tranquil river retreat.

The nearby Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site was caused by the collision of a meteorite with the Earth many years ago. It is the only World Heritage Site in the Free State. It features unique fauna and flora, including 100 different plant species, more than 300 bird types and a variety of small mammals.

Jukskei is the first indigenous game that has developed to international participation. The Jukskei Museum in Kroonstad has over 3 500 objects that depict the development of the game.

Jagersfontein has the deepest man-made hole in the world. The Excelsior diamond of 971 carats was found in this open-cast mine in 1893. Eagles nest against the cliffs of the mine.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline. With its wide open sandy beaches, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs.

Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Amatola Mountain Region

The Amatola Mountains are famous for their scenery and history, and stretch from Adelaide in the east to Stutterheim in the west. With its lush forests and ancient battlefields, it is an area steeped in Xhosa culture and early settler history.

The dense forests of the Amatolas are a haven for the endangered Cape parrot, and were also home to the first dinosaur to be identified in South Africa, the Blinkwater Monster, a large fossilised reptile discovered near Fort Beaufort.

Outdoor enthusiasts enjoy Cathcart where troutfishing, hiking, riding and birdwatching are among the attractions. The Amatole Hiking Trail is a well-known scenic, but strenuous, trail.

The coastal city of Port Elizabeth is a superb holiday destination offering a diverse mix of eco-attractions. It also hosts the annual Buoy open-water swim and the Isuzu National Sailing Week held annually in April in Algoa Bay.

The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton – winner of three international awards – was designed to be a monument to South Africa's struggle against apartheid and an integral part of community life in a township that acted as a crucible for the struggle.

Bay World has an oceanarium and snake park, and many splendid museums. Within the city there are some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens. These include: St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial; the 1882 Victorian

Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.

Tourists can also explore the Donkin Heritage Trail, take a ride on the famous Apple Express, and hike along the site of ancient shipwrecks on the Sacramento Trail. At King William's Town, tourists can visit the Amathole Missionary Museum. The grave of the Black Consciousness activist, Steve Biko, is also in the town.

Other attractions include the Greater Addo Elephant National Park and game reserves; the traditional healing village, Kaya Lendaba, birdwatching; air tours; canoeing; various mountain-biking and horseriding trails; and organised outdoor excursions.

Wild Coast

Since Portuguese mariners first pioneered the sea route around the Cape to India, this notorious coast has claimed countless ships.

Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.

The entire region is the home of a major section of the isiXhosa-speaking southern Nguni (or Pondo) tribes. Brightly coloured examples of their beadwork, together with traditional pottery and basketry, can be bought from roadside vendors and at some trading posts.

Visitors to the rural village of Qunu can view the childhood home of Nelson Mandela. In Mthatha, the Nelson Mandela Museum tells the story of this great figure through a display reflecting the life and times of Mandela.

Mandela received thousands of gifts from presidents, groups and ordinary people. Accepted on behalf of the people of South Africa, they are in safekeeping at the museum for the benefit and appreciation of the nation. Artefacts range from children's letters to bejewelled camel covers.

Coffee Bay is popular among surfers, anglers and shell collectors. To the south is the prominent rock formation, the Hole in the Wall. The local Xhosa people call this place Izi Khaleni ("Place of Thunder"). During high tide, the waves break through the hole in such a way that the concussion can be heard throughout the valley.

East Griqualand

East Griqualand is an area of great beauty, featuring colourful, living history. Kokstad lies in the Umzimhlava River basin between Mount Currie and the Ngele Mountains.

The original town hall – built in 1910 – is a national monument, now serving as the local library. The former library – built in 1907 – is also a national monument and houses the Kokstad Museum.

The Weza State Forest runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds. The southernmost portion of the Ukhahlamba Drakensberg World Heritage Site, the impressive Swartberg, Bokkiesberg, Cedarberg and Ngele mountain ranges lie in East Griqualand.

Between Kokstad and Matatiele, the hamlet of Cedarville provides tranquil canoe-borne excursions into its surrounding, water-filled hollows. Steam-train journeys can be undertaken between Swartberg and Creighton.

Karoo

The vast plains of the Karoo have an air of grandeur, and its many picturesque towns are steeped in history. The Owl House in Nieu-Bethesda displays the creative talent of the late Helen Martins. Statues of mermaids, wise men, camels, owls and churches create a wonderland in the garden. All the artworks were created with broken bottles, bits of mirror and cement.

More than 200 houses in Graaff-Reinet have been restored to their original Victorian appearance and proclaimed national monuments. The Old Library Museum houses the Lex Bremner Fossil Collection of Karoo reptile fossils and a collection of Khoi and San art reproductions. Urquhart House has a popular genealogical research centre.

Almost 50 km south-west of Graaff-Reinet is the Kalkkop Crater, which is of major scientific importance. To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. A steep and narrow road leads into the mountains that surround the valley.

The Valley of Desolation is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, and was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion. The first evidence of the presence of dinosaurs in South Africa can be viewed at Maclear.

The Mountain Zebra National Park is a haven for the Cape mountain zebra species, which at one time inhabited most of the Cape. The park saved these animals from extinction and their population stands at about 300. Other species found in the park include various antelope such as eland, the African wildcat, bat-eared fox, and more than 200 bird species, including the pale-winged starling, the booted eagle and the blue crane.

N6 Route

This route runs from Bloemfontein to East London. Popular attractions include the slopes of the Tiffindell Ski Resort and the trout-filled streams, as well as the many caves adorned with ancient rock art. Several historic towns can be found in the region, including Smithfield, Barkly East, Lady Grey, Elliot, Aliwal North, Burgersdorp, Queenstown and Rhodes.

Sunshine Coast

The Sunshine Coast comprises miles of unspoilt, sundrenched beaches. Port Alfred lies at the mouth of the Kowie River. Coastal hills are home to the oribi – a small territorial buck that was recently near extinction.

Inland, Grahamstown is sometimes referred to as the "City of Saints" due to the more than 40 churches in the town. It is also known for the National Arts Festival, which is held annually. During the festival, Grahamstown is transformed into a dedicated arts venue where performers, visual artists, audiences, writers and crafts people fuse in a celebration of creative energy.

Other attractions include various museums and historical buildings, the oldest post box in South Africa, botanical gardens, the cathedrals of St Michael and St George, nature reserves and hiking trails. Situated north-east of Grahamstown, the Great Fish River Reserve consists primarily of valley bushveld habitat and is surrounded by tribal land and commercial game reserves and farms.

The reserve has abundant wildlife such as white rhino, giraffe, waterbuck, Cape buffalo, hippo, kudu, springbok and eland.

There are several historic forts and remains from the frontier wars located in the area.

East London, which forms part of the Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality, is South Africa's only river port city. It

was originally established as a supply port to serve the colonial British military headquarters at King William's Town. The East London Aquarium houses approximately 400 different marine and freshwater species.

The museum depicts the natural environment and rich heritage of the region. Best known for the prehistoric coelacanth, the museum also displays reconstructions of the extinct dodo of Mauritius, along with the only extant dodo egg in the world.

The Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area is the largest of the inland protected areas and provides opportunities to visit fynbos-covered mountains on foot or in off-road vehicles. There is a fascinating shell collection at the Shell Museum at Kei Mouth.

Tsitsikamma

This region, stretching from Plettenberg Bay to Jeffreys Bay, is renowned for its dense forests, majestic mountains and deep river gorges. It forms the eastern end of the Garden Route.

The word tsitsikamma is derived from the Khoekhoen words "tse-tsesa" meaning "clear", and gami meaning "water". South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park, extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km and 3 km out to sea.

Inland, adventure seekers will find deep gorges and temperate evergreen forests crisscrossed by six hiking trails, including the five-day Otter Trail. The varied wildlife includes dolphins and whales, caracal, genet, chacma baboon, dassie and mongoose. Prominent bird species in the area are the African black oystercatcher, the orange-breasted sunbird, the Nerina trogon and the colourful Knysna loerie. A lucky few may catch a glimpse of the rare Cape clawless otter, after which the Otter Trail is named. Another popular adventure is a blackwater tubing experience on the Storms River.

Limpopo

The Limpopo landscape is made up of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Steeped in history, Limpopo celebrates a rich cultural heritage, and at many archaeological sites the mysteries of the past and ancient peoples are still being unearthed.

Much of the land, particularly in the Kruger National Park and other game and nature reserves, is unspoilt, and provides sanctuary to large numbers of game.

Waterberg

The Nylsvley Nature Reserve has one of the greatest concentrations of waterfowl and bushveld birds in South Africa. More than 400 species frequent the area. The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves.

The Arend Dieperink Museum features a fine cultural-historical collection.

The Makapansgat Caves are notable for their fossils and the caves are being developed into an archaeological site. Makapan Valley is an extension of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site.

The Thabazimbi district has a large concentration of private game reserves and is one of the fastest-growing ecotourism areas in the country.

The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures.

Bela Bela is known for its hot springs. There are also a number of game reserves and leisure resorts in the area.

The Waterberg range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands and birdlife. Cliffs known as the "Palace of the Vultures" harbour a large breeding colony of Cape vultures.

Modimolle is the region's main town.

Capricorn district

The Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum outside Polokwane is a traditional Northern Sotho kraal. Men and women practise traditional skills such as making baskets, clay pots, furniture and utensils, as well as preparing hides.

Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa. Polokwane offers a variety of museums and art galleries, including the Bakone Malapa Museum, the Polokwane Museum and the Hugh Exton Photographic Museum. Zion City at Moria, near Polokwane, is the headquarters of the Zion Christian Church, which attracts more than a million pilgrims every Easter.

Vhembe district

The Mapungubwe archaeological site, 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a World Heritage Site.

Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.

The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, west of Makhado, is built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depicts their lifestyle between 1848 and 1852.

Also worth visiting is the Big Tree in the Mutale Municipality, the Tshatshingo potholes, the mystical lake of Dzivhafundudzi and the holy forest and waterfalls at Phiphidi.

Mopani district

The Lekgameetse Nature Reserve in the northern foothills of the Drakensberg is part of the Cloud Mountain Biosphere. This 18 000 ha nature reserve is well known for its abundant butterflies.

The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who is believed to have settled in the area early in the 16th century. The reserve encompasses the world's largest concentration of the cycad species Encephalartos transvenosus, also known as the Modjadji cycad.

The Hans Merensky Nature Reserve and Mineral Spa on the southern banks of the Great Letaba River supports a large variety of game. At the adjoining Tsonga Kraal Open-Air Museum, arts, crafts and traditional huts reflect the Tsonga lifestyle of 100 years ago.

The Kruger National Park (northern section) is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

Thulamela, in the northern part of the Kruger National Park, yielded the skeletons of two ancient royals and a multitude of artefacts, including gold bangles, beads and a double gong.

Bohlabela district

On the way to the Kruger National Park, visitors can enjoy

wildlife experiences at Manyeleti, home to the Big Five. Adventurers can attempt mountain-climbing at the Mangwazi Nature Reserve, enjoy the Mapulaneng Trail at Zoeknog and the Injaka Dam at Bushbuckridge.

North West

North West has several cultural villages that entertain and enrich visitors. A number of game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park, situated in the transition zone between the Kalahari and the Lowveld.

Home to the Big Five, the park offers a wide variety of accommodation and is close to popular attractions such as Sun City and only a two/three-hour drive from Johannesburg. The park has an area of approximately 550 km², making it the fourth largest park in South Africa supporting more than 7 000 head of game and 350 bird species.

Central district

The historic route of Mahikeng includes an Anglo-Boer/South African War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his Mafikeng Diary, and the Mahikeng Museum. The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre and the Botsalano Game Reserve are well worth a visit.

The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can explore the Mampoer Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.

Other attractions include the Wondergat; the Bosbult Monument, which commemorates a battle fought during the Anglo-Boer/South African War; the Kaditshwene Iron Age Village Ruins; and various hiking trails.

Ottosdal is in the centre of North West and was established as a Dutch Reformed Church parish on the farm Korannafontein in 1913 and named after its owner, GP Otto. It is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone", or pyrophyllite, is found and mined. The annual agricultural show in Ottosdal is one of the oldest in the province.

Trenches and cemeteries dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War can be found on the farms Gestoptefontein and Driekuil. In the Garden of Remembrance are graves of soldiers killed during the war. The Old Farmhouse built in 1910 houses a unique African collection. The Old Watermill built around 1860 is a national monument.

The Ottosdal Night Race is organised in conjunction with the Diamond Marathon Club. The event consists of 42,2-km, 21,1-km and 10-km races and a 5-km fun run.

San rock engravings, Stone Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuil and Korannafontein.

Eastern district

Hartbeespoort Dam is a popular spot for weekend outings, breakfast runs and yachting.

The Hartbeespoort Reptile and Animal Park is on the banks of the dam.

Cultural experiences in the area include the popular Mapoch and Gaabo Motho cultural villages as well as the Ring Wagon Inn.

The Ann van Dyk Cheetah Centre (formely the De Wildt Cheetah Breeding and Research Centre) specialises in breeding cheetah and other endangered wildlife species.

Other places of interest include the Borakalalo Game Reserve, the Margaret Roberts Herb Farm and the Phaladingwe Nature Trail.

Bophirima district

The Taung Skull Fossil Site and Blue Pools are renowned for the Taung skull found in the Buxton quarries. The Taung Skull Fossil Site is an extension of the Sterkfontein Fossil Hominid Site. This region is popular with adventure seekers – especially those who enjoy 4x4 routes and hunting farms.

Rustenburg district

The 60 000-ha Madikwe Game Reserve is home to 66 large mammal species. Over 10 000 animals of 27 major species have been reintroduced under Operation Phoenix. Hot-air balloon trips, day and night game drives and bushwalks are available.

The reserve has the second-largest elephant population in South Africa and guests are assured of sighting not only the Big Five but also the elusive cheetah and endangered wild dog.

Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are very popular tourist attractions, offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, watersports and an artificial beach. There are various hiking trails in the region. The Heritage Route starts at the Sterkfontein Caves World Heritage Site and ends at Pilanesberg.

Southern district

The OPM Prozesky Bird Sanctuary in Potchefstroom has over 200 bird species and is situated adjacent to the Mooi River.

The Oudorp Hiking Trail takes visitors through the old part of Klerksdorp, where 12 Voortrekker families settled.

Other attractions in the region include the Potchefstroom Lakeside Resort, the Faan Meintjies Nature Reserve in Klerksdorp, mine tours at Orkney, the Diggers Route at Wolmaransstad and the Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserve.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – "The Place Where the Sun Rises" – epitomises every traveller's dream of the true African experience. Located in the north-eastern part of South Africa, the province is bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south and east.

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the Middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves.

Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province. Attractions range from gameviewing and birdwatching to scenic drives across the valleys and peaks of the vast Drakensberg escarpment, and include agritourism, industrial and adventure tourism and cultural experiences.

Historical sites and cultural villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark events and characters who passed this way in search of adventure and wealth.

Ndebele bead work and wall-painting in the north-west, the arts and crafts of the Lowveld. The different traditional villages throughout the province offer a unique insight into the people's history and cultures.

Mbombela

Mbombela is the capital of Mpumalanga and the commercial and administrative hub of the Lowveld.

The Mbombela Historical Trail is an hour-long walking route stretching from the Promenade Centre to the Civic Centre.

The Blue Train runs between Pretoria and Mbombela on a chartered route called the Valley of the Olifants Route. Rovos Rail trains also travel to Mbombela.

The Green Heritage Hiking Trail in the Mbombela Nature Reserve is one of several walks in the reserve and one of many in the region.

Not to be missed is the Lowveld Botanical Garden, as well as the Reptile Park, the Sudwala Caves and the PR Owen Dinosaur Park.

The tranquil town of White River to the north of Mbombela is well known as an artist's haven and a gateway to the Kruger National Park. Rottcher Wineries have taken advantage of the area's prime production of oranges to make a truly unique wine, which has been a hallmark of the area for over 50 years.

Panorama

Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September.

The Blyderivierspoort Nature Reserve near Graskop is characterised by striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants. Within the reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of floodwater.

The Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. The canyon is the third-largest in the world, the only green canyon, and hosts three rivers that feed the Blydepoort Dam at Swadini. God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon.

The Blyderivierspoort Hiking Trail is one of the most popular in the country. The southern section of the Kruger National Park, which is a major tourist attraction, falls within this region.

Kaapsehoop is a historical village known for the wild horses that frequent the district. Blue swallows are regular visitors from September to April.

The Lydenburg Museum is in the Gustav Klingbiel Reserve, which is the site of archaeological ruins from the Later Iron Age.

The Lydenburg Heads, human-like masks dating back to 500 AD, were discovered in this area.

Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa and a popular mountain-biking destination.

The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry. The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit.

The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.

At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February.

Pilgrim's Rest is a living museum and a replica of the early gold-mining town. The Alanglade House Museum offers guided tours of the former mine manager's house, while the Diggings Museum just outside the town arranges guided tours of gold-panning activities.

This area was the setting for Jock of the Bushveld, the novel by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick about the experiences of a man and his dog as they shared adventures in the world of African gold-mining. The Dredzen Shop Museum features a range of items in use nearly a century ago.

Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, south of Pilgrim's Rest, is best known for its indigenous forest – one of few left in the region.

Highlands Meander

The Highlands Meander is a mecca for flyfishers. It is in the placid and pristine waters of this region that one finds various stocks of fish, with trout as the major drawcard.

At the Verloren Vlei and Steenkampsberg nature reserves at Dullstroom one can get a rare glimpse of the endangered blue, wattled and crowned cranes.

The Loskop Dam Nature Reserve offers game-watching, boating and fishing. Many hiking trails are available, such as the Elandskrans Trail, which includes a 30-minute train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

Cultural Heartland

Visitors to the Cultural Heartland can immerse themselves in the true cultural heritage of Mpumalanga. Here, one can learn about the proud and welcoming Ndebele people, revered for the striking and colourful geometric patterns on their houses, clothing and beadwork.

This region also has illuminating historical sites such as the Botshabelo Historical Village near Middelburg.

Cosmos Country

Cosmos Country covers parts of what is known as the energy belt of Mpumalanga, which is home to a number of power stations. This region also has the world's largest underground coal-mining complex and the Sasol plant that is renowned for its oil-from-coal technology. The carpet of cosmos flowers that blossom in late summer lures visitors to this region.

Wild Frontier

Various archaeological discoveries dating back almost three billion years were made in the imposing mountains of this region. Visitors can enjoy a rare glimpse of the San paintings embossed in some rocks. The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini.

Grass and wetlands

Grass and wetlands are a paradise with their variety of bird species. This region stretches across the deep valleys and mountains of the east where thermal springs bubble to the surface. There are 270 pans and lakes within a 20 km radius of Lake Chrissie. In this region, visitors can take part in the unusual "frogging expedition" or simply gaze at the stars during "star-gazing weekends".

Gauteng

Gauteng, the "Place of Gold", is the commercial powerhouse

of the country, but its offerings are not limited to commerce and industry. Anchored by the cities of Johannesburg and Pretoria, Gauteng provides plenty in the way of entertainment through its network of upmarket shopping malls, casinos, street markets, theatres, restaurants, museums and parks.

Gauteng is characterised by a cosmopolitan mix of people from all walks of life. The province's unique cultural and social legacy is evident from the many excellent museums, theatres, cultural precincts and craft markets.

Although Gauteng is the most populated, built-up and industrialised province, it still has natural areas offering a variety of leisure activities such as day hikes, picnic spots and sports activities.

The Vaal Dam, which supplies water to most of Gauteng's residents, covers some 300 km^2 and is a popular venue for watersports. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam also attracts diverse bird species.

Tourism attractions in and around the Cradle of Humankind have grown to more than 380, with over half of these offering graded accommodation.

The broader 47 000-ha Cradle of Humankind site has many caves, the most famous of which are the Sterkfontein caves.

In 1999, Sterkfontein and its environs were declared a World Heritage Site. About 40% of all the world's human ancestor fossils have been found here, including several of the world's most famous and important fossils. A further 500 hominid fossils and more than 9 000 stone tools have been excavated in the area during ongoing work. The famous skull of Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton some 3,3 million years old, were discovered at the Sterkfontein Caves near Krugersdorp.

The Krugersdorp Game Reserve provides sanctuary for several game species, including four of the Big Five. The African Fauna and Bird Park houses various species of wildlife and birds.

The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden has a 70 m-high waterfall and a breeding pair of black eagles.

Some 40 km north of Pretoria is a ring of hills 1 km in diameter and 100 m high. These are the walls of the Tswaing Meteorite Crater, left by an asteroid that hit the area some 200 000 years ago. There is a museum adjacent to this site. The crater is covered with indigenous trees and bushes, which attract a variety of bird life.

The old mining town of Cullinan has developed around the Premier Diamond Mine. The mine has produced some of the world's most famous diamonds, including the Cullinan Diamond, the world's largest at 3 106 carats.

Johannesburg

The Adler Museum of the History of Medicine depicts the history of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy in South Africa. The Pharmacy Museum in Melrose houses a large variety of medicines, including more than 670 traditional medicines that have been collected throughout southern Africa.

Newtown is at the heart of initiatives to revitalise the inner city of Johannesburg. Here, visitors will find the renowned Market Theatre, jazz bars, dance studios and artists' communes among museums, libraries and other places of historic interest.

The Absa Money Museum lies in downtown Johannesburg. Historical records stretch all the way back to the beginnings of Johannesburg, and displays ranges from fairly early money forms, like cowrie shells and Venetian glass beads, through to gold coins recovered from sunken ships. The scientific study of money and its history, or Numismatics, is the essence of the museum's displays.

The Nelson Mandela Bridge is a landmark gateway into Newtown. It is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa.

Museum Africa in Newtown tells the story of life in South Africa from the Stone Age to the Nuclear Age and beyond.

The Market Theatre complex comprises three theatres, an art gallery, restaurants and pubs. A bronze statue of the champion of passive resistance, Mahatma Gandhi, can be seen in the city centre.

Gold Reef City is a theme park based on Johannesburg during the gold rush era.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg is a state-of-the-art tribute to the rise and fall of apartheid, with 22 exhibition areas that take the visitor on an emotional journey through the state-sanctioned system of apartheid.

Constitution Hill features the impressive building housing South Africa's Constitutional Court, which offers visitors the chance to view the fort, the so-called native gaol, the women's gaol and the awaiting-trial block.

A large, well-established park surrounds Zoo Lake, which breeding bird colonies frequent. Other attractions include jazz concerts, rowing boats for hire, a tea garden and a restaurant.

The James Hall Museum of Transport was founded in 1964 and houses an historical collection of various modes of land transport used in South Africa, dating back 400 years.

The South African Museum of Military History holds an impressive collection of weaponry and uniforms from the two world wars.

The two-bedroom house where Mandela lived before his incarceration has been declared a national monument and converted into a museum.

The Walter Sisulu Square in Kliptown, Soweto, is the place where the Freedom Charter was signed in 1955. The Kliptown Project comprises a hotel, the Kliptown Museum, retail outlets, restaurants and offices.

Soweto is a popular tourist destination. No tour of Soweto would be complete without a visit to the Hector Petersen Museum, which commemorates the people who died during the Student Uprising of 16 June 1976.

The Nelson Mandela Foundation's Centre of Memory is open to the public as a place of memory-sharing and reflection on the life and times of Nelson Mandela.

At the Lesedi Cultural Village in the Swartkops hills north of Johannesburg visitors can families of different cultural groupings. It features four traditional homesteads where visitors can spend the night with a family of their choice. The Phumangena Zulu Kraal is home to traditional Zulu people living and working there.

The Melville Koppies in Johannesburg was once the site of a Stone Age African village and iron-smelting works. Flora include 80% of the species recorded on the Witwatersrand. It is open to the public from September to April.

Pretoria

A variety of historical buildings is found in the city, such as the Union Buildings, which celebrated its centenary in 2013. Designed by Sir Herbert Baker, construction started in 1910 and

was completed in 1913.

It has since been the setting for the presidential inauguration of former President Nelson Mandela in 1994, as well as those of Thabo Mbeki on 16 June 1999, and 27 April 2004, and of Jacob Zuma on 9 May 2009 and 24 May 2014. It is also the setting of many national celebrations, including Women's Day and Freedom Day. In December 2013, a bronze statue of former President Mandela was unveiled at the Union Buildings.

Church Square is built around a statue of the former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek, Paul Kruger, and includes buildings such as the Old Raadsaal and the Palace of Justice.

Ten minutes' drive from Church Square is Freedom Park, which commemorates the country's political history. The 35-ha site comprises a garden of remembrance, a museum, and statues and sculptures to honour South Africans who contributed to the country's freedom and development.

The Kruger House Museum contains the personal belongings of President Kruger.

Melrose House is a beautiful example of Victorian architecture. The Peace Treaty of Vereeniging, which ended the Anglo-Boer War/South African War, was signed there in 1902.

Demonstrations at the Pioneer Open-Air Museum include milking, butter- and candle-making, bread-baking and coffee-bean grinding.

Other museums include the South African Air Force Museum, Police Museum, Coert Steynberg Museum and the Transvaal Museum of Natural History.

The Voortrekker Monument commemorates the Great Trek. Some 260 steps lead to the dome, where spectacular views of the city can be enjoyed.

Fort Schanskop has been refurbished and has a 375-seat amphitheatre.

The Sammy Marks Museum near Pretoria dates from 1885. Rooms in the house are filled with Victorian paintings, furniture, silverware and porcelain.

Visitors can relax at the tea garden and restaurant on the premises.

The General Smuts House Museum in Irene in the south-east of Pretoria, contains the original furnishings of the Smuts family home.

The Rietvlei Nature Reserve is notable for its grass types, herbs, large number of game including rhino, hippo and many bird species.

The Mapoch Ndebele Village, north of Pretoria, is the first living cultural village in South Africa owned and managed by its residents.

Mamelodi is about 20 km from the city centre and features Solomon Mahlangu Square, which is dedicated to this freedom fighter.

The Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum outside Pretoria features a farmstead dating from 1880. Traditional farming activities are demonstrated, and annual events include a prickly pear festival, a mampoer festival and the Agricultural Museum Show.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, which is the largest in the southern hemisphere.

KwaZulu-Natal

The garden province of South Africa, KwaZulu-Natal, is a subtropical region of lush and well-watered valleys, washed by the warm Indian Ocean. One of the country's most popular tourist destinations, the province stretches from Port Edward in the south to the borders of Swaziland and Mozambique to the north.

History-filled towns lead to adventure sports and gameviewing, along with outlets for unique arts and crafts.

Durban and surroundings

The city of Durban, overlooking Africa's busiest seaport, is warm and inviting. It is not only South Africa's domestic tourism leader, but is also popular among visitors from throughout Africa and the rest of the world who seek a unique blend of vibrance, sophistication, cultural diversity and excitement in a beautiful setting.

The Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Attractions include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

The uShaka Marine World has a theme park, oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute. It is home to a wide variety of sea life, including sharks, dolphins and seals. One of its main attractions is the long lane of shops and the multitude of restaurants, especially those in the old wreck (a replica of a ship wreck in the centre of the park), and a tourism information office at its entrance.

The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden. Besides the botanical gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces and includes an outdoor restaurant and a zoo, plus a sizeable playground for children.

MiniTown is a model city depicting Durban's best-known buildings.

Museums include the Natural History Museum, the Natural Science Museum, the Old House Museum and the Old Fort. One of the most intriguing museums is the Maritime Museum, complete with two floating ships in the harbour.

The Shree Ambalavaanar Alayam Temple (the Second River Temple) in Cato Manor was the first Hindu temple in Africa. It is a national monument.

The Juma Musjid Mosque is the largest mosque in the southern hemisphere.

Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile and Dolphin Mile open-water swimming events, the July Handicap horserace and the Amashova-shova cycle tour.

Umhlanga Rocks, just north of Durban, is notable for its ski-boating facilities and the Ski-Boat Festival held every April. The KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board offers shark dissections and interesting displays. Guided tours of the Hawaan Forest are also on offer. Hawaan is the last relic of coastal forest in the region and has rare indigenous trees.

The Umgeni River Bird Park overlooks the Umgeni River and ranks among the world's best bird sanctuaries. Walk-in aviaries hold many varieties of indigenous and exotic birds.

The maritime offices, which control the entry of ships into and out of the busiest port in Africa, are in the Millennium Town at the end of the Bluff.

North Coast

Year-round frolicking dolphins and impressive seasonal whale migrations make the coastline between the Umdloti and the Thukela rivers aptly called the "Dolphin Coast". The rarely seen larger humpback dolphins are also found here.

Many of the first Indian immigrants settled here, and the area's markets, mosques and temples give it an authentic Eastern flavour.

Tongaat is an area where sugar was first planted in 1854. The town's Indian ambience is accentuated by two prominent Hindu temples – the Juggernath Puri and Vishwaroop temples.

Other towns along the Dolphin Coast include Shaka's Rock, Salt Rock, Ballito, Verulam, KwaDukuza, Darnall and Umdloti.

Zululand and the Elephant Coast

Zululand's north-east quadrant – between Mozambique, Swaziland and the warm Indian Ocean – has its own unique tale to tell. This is the Elephant Coast or Maputaland, named after the mid-17th-century king who established dominion here some 200 years before King Shaka consolidated his Zulu empire to the south.

The Tembe Elephant Park in the far north is home to herds of the massive African elephant.

The Hluhluwe-Imfolozi Park is one of South Africa's largest game parks. Visitors should look out for the Big Five as well as the elusive cheetah and wild dog.

The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, is known as "The Valley of Zulu Kings". A joint public-private sector project aims to preserve the culture and history of the Zulu people. This heritage park is near a nature reserve that supports the Big Five of the animal kingdom. At the eMakhosini Memorial Site, seven Zulu kings are buried.

Umgungundlovu was once the royal capital of King Dingaan and was reconstructed. The beehive huts and the layout of the original Zulu village have been reproduced. Authentic Zulu villages such as Shakaland, Kwabhekithunga Kraal, Damazulu and Stewart's Farm offer accommodation and the opportunity to experience traditional Zulu culture.

The iSimangaliso (isiZulu word meaning "miracle") Wetland Park is one of the jewels of South Africa's coastline, with a unique mosaic of ecosystems – swamps, lakes, beaches, coral reefs, wetlands, woodlands, coastal forests and grasslands – supporting diverse animal, bird and marine life.

It is South Africa's third-largest park, spanning 280 km of coastline, from the Mozambican border in the north to Mapelane, south of the St Lucia estuary, and made up of around 328 000 ha of pristine natural ecosystems – including swamps, lake systems, beaches, coral reefs, wetlands, woodlands and coastal forests.

St Lucia and its surroundings comprise a globally important wetland and have five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and birdwatching paradise, and boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. St Lucia is the only town in the world that is surrounded by a natural world heritage area.

The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay. The adjacent Indian Ocean provides exciting snorkelling and fishing opportunities. On offer is a four-day guided walking trail around the estuarine system.

uMkhuze is a small trade and transport centre. The Mkuze River cuts through the Ubombo Mountains before serving as a natural boundary for Zululand's popular Mkuzi Game Reserve.

The Border Cave, a site of immense archaeological interest on the border of Swaziland, now also has an interpretation centre.

Lake Sibaya is South Africa's largest natural freshwater lake, covering some 77 km^2. Sibaya Lake Lodge is the first South African ecotourism development jointly owned by private enterprise and the local community.

The coral reef in the Sodwana Bay National Park attracts hundreds of scuba divers throughout the year, and in summer, power boaters arrive for some of the best marlin fishing in the world.

South Coast

Amanzimtoti is popular for its safe swimming beaches and a variety of fun activities and attractions for the whole family.

The Hibiscus Coast stretches between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast. Margate is the largest resort town along this coast, and is very popular during the holidays. The Hibiscus Festival is held there in July.

The Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve encompasses forest, rivers, rapids and ravines. Birdlife, including five kingfisher species and seven eagle species, is prolific. There is also a variety of mammals and a 140-m abseil and gorge swing for adrenalin junkies.

Port Edward offers safe swimming and good fishing opportunities. Nearby, the Umthamvuna Nature Reserve is noted for its beautiful scenery, birdlife and many rare plant species.

The Shell Museum at Shelly Beach is well worth a visit. Other popular coastal towns include Port Shepstone, Ramsgate, St Michael's-on-Sea, Uvongo and Scottburgh. Nature's annual extravaganza – the unforgettable Sardine Run – strikes the South Coast around the end of June every year, when people flock to the beaches and anglers await the arrival of the game fish following the sardines.

Pietermaritzburg and the Midlands

Pietermaritzburg has various museums, including the Msunduzi Museum that depicts the heritage of different cultural groups of KwaZulu-Natal, a replica Hindu Shiva temple and a beautiful herb garden, the Natal Museum and the Natal Steam Railway Museum, which offers steam-train rides on the second Sunday of every month. The Tatham Art Gallery is also extremely popular.

The Albert Falls Public Resort Nature Reserve and the Albert Falls Dam provide opportunities for sailing, canoeing and fishing. Birdwatching, horseriding and hiking are also popular activities.

The Howick Falls are in the Nature Valley Reserve, where the river tumbles 100 m in a single fall. There are several climbing routes.

The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 ports of call en route, ranging from art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese makers.

Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and powerboating. The

1 000-ha Midmar Game Park is inhabitated by rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl. The popular yearly Midmar Mile attracted 18 000 swimmers in 2013.

Drakensberg

The mountainous "Barrier of Spears" uKhahamba-Drakensberg Park World Heritage Site, adorned with Stone Age cave paintings, forms the north-western border of KwaZulu-Natal. The entire area is a bird sanctuary, featuring, among other species, the endangered bearded vulture. The highest concentration of walks and trails in South Africa is found here.

The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park consists of almost the entire Drakensberg mountain range from Bushman's Neck in the south to the Royal KwaZulu-Natal National Park in the north.

Peaks soar to over 3 000 m and are often snow-covered in winter. There are trout hatcheries in the Kamberg Reserve area and at Cathedral Peak.

Lotheni Nature Reserve is notable for its trout-fishing facilities (angling permits are required). Relics of the area's history have been preserved in the Settler Museum.

The Himeville Nature Reserve has two lakes stocked with trout. The nearby Swamp Nature Reserve attracts a variety of waterfowl, including the rare wattled crane.

The Ndedema Gorge in the Mdedelelo Wilderness Area near Cathedral Peak has examples of Khoi and San art.

Sani Pass is the only road across the high escarpment between KwaZulu-Natal and the Kingdom of Lesotho. The top section is only passable in 4x4 vehicles. The Giant's Cup Hiking Trail, starting at the foot of the pass, is described as one of South Africa's finest.

Giant's Castle Game Reserve is especially known for its more than 5 000 San paintings. The Bushman Site Museum is worth a visit.

Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Thukela Falls.

Battlefields

The KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.

The Battlefields Route starts at Estcourt, winding north through Colenso and Ladysmith to Newcastle and Volksrust, and eastwards to Utrecht, Glencoe, Dundee, Nqutu, Paulpietersburg, Vryheid, Babanango and Ulundi.

All the towns along the route have their own unique charm and range of attractions: arts and crafts, scenic hiking trails, farm resorts, Zulu culture and roadside stalls. Gameviewing, natural hot springs, horse trails and watersports can also be enjoyed.

The Chelmsford Nature Reserve near Newcastle is a birdwatcher's paradise. Powerboating and carp fishing are added attractions. Game includes springbok, zebra, rhino and blesbok. Majuba Hill and O'Neill's Cottage are other interesting places to visit.

The Ladysmith Siege Museum provides insight into the battles of Colenso, Spioenkop, Vaalkrans and Tugela Heights. Museum staff arrange guided tours to nearby battlefields such as Wagon Hill. Other attractions include the statue of Gandhi, the All Saints Church, the Soofi Mosque and the Spioenkop Dam and Nature Reserve.

Near Dundee, tourists can visit various battlefields, including Ncome-Blood River, Isandlwana, Rorke's Drift and Talana. The Talana Museum depicts various facets of the coal industry, and local Zulu, Boer and British history.

Rorke's Drift was the setting for one of the most famous battles of the war. The main attraction is the Rorke's Drift Battle Museum.

Top 10 reasons to visit South Africa

1. **Affordable** – In South Africa, you can even afford luxury and have spending money for shopping and other treats.
2. **Natural beauty** – South Africa's scenic wonders are legendary. From Table Mountain to God's Window, the mountains, forests, coasts and deserts will sooth your soul and delight you.
3. **World-class facilities** – You will find it easy to get around, find a comfortable place to stay and have a great meal.
4. **Adventure** – South Africa is the adventure capital of the world. With over 130 adventures, there is something for everyone from mountain walks to shark-cage diving.
5. **Good weather** – In sunny South Africa with a great weather, you can enjoy the outdoors, play golf year-round and take advantage of the nearly 3 000 km of coastline.
6. **Rainbow Nation** – The Rainbow Nation celebrates all its African and immigrant cultures. South Africans are known for their friendliness and hospitality.
7. **Diverse experiences** – Go almost anywhere in South Africa and experience the ultimate combination of nature, wildlife, culture, adventure, heritage and good vibe.
8. **Wildlife** – The ubundant and diverse wildlife include the Big Five (African lion, African elephant, Cape buffalo, African leopard and black rhinoceros).
9. **Freedom Struggle** – Discover a nation's struggle for freedom whilst following the footsteps of Nelson Mandela, Hector Pieterson and many other celebrated revolutionaries.
10. **Responsible tourism** – In South Africa you can travel with care as you explore protected areas, contribute to social and conservation projects, and collect arts and crafts.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Transport

The Constitution of South Africa identifies the legislative responsibilities of different spheres of government regarding airports, road infrastructure, rail, maritime, road traffic management and public transport. Transport is a function that is legislated and executed at national, provincial and local government level.

The implementation of transport functions at the national level takes place through public entities that are overseen by the Department of Transport (DoT), each with a specific delivery mandate, as specified in legislation establishing these entities.

The 1996 White Paper on Transport focuses on and defines the infrastructure and operations of rail, pipelines, roads, airports, harbours, and the intermodal operations of public transport and freight.

The DoT is responsible for implementing the legislation and policies for the subsectors mention above by doing the following:

- conducting sector research
- formulating legislation and policy to set the strategic direction of subsectors
- assigning responsibilities to public entities and other spheres of government
- regulating through setting norms and standards
- monitoring implementation.

Over the medium term, the DoT aims to focus on improving mobility and access to social and economic activities by maintaining the provincial and national road networks, upgrading and maintaining rail infrastructure, and improving public transport for rail and road commuters.

These activities will contribute to the realisation of Outcome 6 of Government's 2014 – 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTEF) of maintaining an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network.

Legislation

For the cross-modal functions of public transport and freight, the principle guiding documents are the National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009), the public transport strategy and the national freight logistics strategy.

The DoT is further guided by the following legislation and policies:

- The Transport Laws and Related Matters Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 3 of 2013) aims, among other things, to amend the Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (C-BRTA) to collect toll on behalf of the South African National Roads Agency (SANRAL).
- The National Land Transport Act of 2009 clarifies the concurrent roles and responsibilities of the different spheres of government in relation to public transport. It also consolidates public transport planning, service delivery, regulation and monitoring in the municipal sphere, establishes the national and provincial public transport regulators, and enhances overall transport regulatory functions.
- The incorporation of the Shosholoza Meyl train service and the Autopax long-distance bus services into the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (PRASA) was finalised in the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Services Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 38 of 2008).
- The National Road Traffic Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 64 of 2008) and the Cross-Border Transport Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 12 of 2008) allow for better road-traffic enforcement and improved cross-border regulation.
- The pilot project for the implementation of the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (Aarto) Act, 1998 (Act 46 of 1998), a demerit point system for traffic offences, has been rolled out in the municipal areas of Tshwane and Johannesburg. The system is expected to be extended to all municipal areas following the establishment of the Road Traffic Infringement Agency (RTIA), which will administer the system.
- The Civil Aviation Act, 2009 (Act 13 of 2009), was promulgated to harmonise and rationalise safety and security legislation for aviation to ensure compliance with International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) standards.
- The Air Service Licensing Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 21 of 2008), addresses corporate governance issues relating to the Air Services Licensing Council. The department plans to implement the airlift strategy and improve aviation safety and compliance with the standards set by the United States of America (USA) Federal Aviation Administration's international aviation safety assessment, and by the ICAO, an organ of the United Nations (UN).
- The Road Accident Fund (RAF) Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 19 of 2005), came into effect in August 2008 with the publication of regulations guiding, primarily, the assessment of injuries. The Act creates an equitable, affordable and sustainable system for victims of road accidents and their families. In November 2009, Cabinet approved the policy to provide benefits to road-accident victims as a form of social security and to move away from the current fault-based systems.
- The RAF (Transitional Provisions) Act, 2012, (Act 15 of 2012) provides for transitional measures regarding certain categories of third parties whose claims were limited to R25 000 under the RAF Act, 1996 (Act 56 of 1996) prior to 1 August 2008.
- In May 2014, the DoT published a revised version of the Road Accident Benefit Scheme (RABS). The Bill proposed that the RABS Administrator replace the RAF. The new regulations, rules and forms were drafted to enable a better understanding of how the proposed scheme would operate in practice. The RABS Bill provides for a new no-fault benefit scheme and a new Administrator called the RABS Administrator, which will replace the current RAF and compensation system administered by it. The RABS Bill forms part of an initiative to replace the third-party compensation system currently administered by the RAF with a new scheme that is reasonable, equitable, affordable and sustainable.

Budget

The DoT's budget for the 2017/18 financial year was R59.8 billion. The is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6,8% over the MTEF, from R56,3 billion in 2016/17 to R68,6 billion in 2019/20. However, spending on goods and services is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 1%, from R751,8 million in 2016/17 to R729,1 million in 2019/20, due to reprioritisations to other transport spending priorities. These include: R15,9 million to support the operations of the Maritime and Aeronautical Rescue Coordination Centre; R19 million to strengthen the regulatory capacity of the Ports Regulator of South Africa; and R6 million to develop rail economic regulation capacity in the department in preparation for the establishment

of the Single Transport Economic Regulator. As

part of Cabinet's decision to lower the national aggregate expenditure ceiling, the budget for goods and services has been reduced by R49,6 million over the MTEF period.

Role players

The DoT has established 12 public entities to deliver on certain elements of government's operational activities, namely the Airports Company South Africa (Acsa), Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS), the C-BRTA, PRASA, the Ports Regulator, the Railway Safety Regulator (RSR), the RAF, the RTIA, the Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC), the South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA), the South African Maritime Safety Authority (SAMSA) and SANRAL. These entities report to the Minister of Transport. Commercial role players include Transnet, South African Airways (SAA) and SA Express (SAX).

Airports Company South Africa

Acsa is regulated in terms of the Airports Company Act, 1993 (Act 44 of 1993) and the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), and is listed in terms of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).

The company was formed to own and operate the nine principal South African airports, including the three main international gateways: OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg, Cape Town International Airport and King Shaka International Airport in Durban.

The company is one of the concessionaires operating Mumbai International Airport in India and Guarulhos International Airport in Sao Paulo, Brazil.

Over the medium term, Acsa will continue providing safe and secure services as well as infrastructure for passengers and airlines to transport people and goods. This will be achieved through the effective use of existing airport infrastructure and investments in airport infrastructure.

Airports operated by the company are expected to accommodate 312 902 arriving aircraft and 20,9 million departing passengers a year by 2019/20, from 272 439 arriving aircraft and 19,2 million departing passengers in 2016/17. To support this growth, Acsa will continue to focus on airport maintenance and engineering, as well as airport safety and security.

Airport maintenance and engineering costs are expected to increase over the medium term, at an average annual rate of 6,7%, from R870 million in 2016/17 to R1,1 billion in 2019/20. Airport safety and security costs per international airport are also expected to increase from R505,7 million in 2016/17 to R661,1 million in 2019/20, at an average annual rate of 9,3%.

After administration costs, expenditure on airport maintenance and engineering in all airports accounts for the bulk of the company's total expenditure over the medium term, at 14,7% or R3 billion.

Air Traffic and Navigation Services

The ATNS was established in terms of the ATNS Act, 1993 (Act 45 of 1993). Its mandate is to provide safe, orderly and efficient air traffic navigational and associated services to the air traffic management community. It does this on behalf of the State and in accordance with the ICAO standards and recommended practices, as well as the South African civil aviation regulations and technical standards.

The company's strategic goals are to:

- provide safe, efficient and cost-effective air traffic management solutions and associated services
- expand the company footprint to cover Africa and the Indian Ocean region.

ATNS has also adopted the promotion of mathematics and physical science as its flagship project, aimed at increasing the pool of potential candidates who can be attracted and trained as air traffic controllers. Since its inception in 1993, the company has renewed the majority of the national communication, navigation, surveillance and air traffic management infrastructure.

ATNS trains air traffic controllers from South Africa, Africa and the Africa-Indian Ocean area.

South Africa is one of the 36 council members of the ICAO Council, serving under Part 2 and is committed to regional aviation safety, security and environment issues.

Cross-Border Road Transport Agency

The C-BRTA was established in terms of the Cross-Border Road Transport Act of 1998. The agency's legislative mandate requires it to:

- advise the Minister of Transport on cross-border road transport policy
- regulate access to the market by the road transport freight and passenger industry in respect of cross-border road transport by issuing permits
- undertake road transport law enforcement
- play a facilitative role in contributing to economic prosperity of the region.

The agency's estimated expenditure for 2017/18 is R214,9 million.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

PRASA was established in terms of the Public Finance Management Act of 1999. Its mandate is contained in the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Services Amendment Act of 2008. The Act requires the agency to provide rail commuter services within, to and from South Africa in the public interest.

In consultation with the DoT, it also provides for long-haul passenger rail and bus services within, to and from South Africa.

Over the medium term, PRASA will aim to improve the reliability of rail services and increase rail passenger ridership. To this end, the agency will continue to make investments in its capital infrastructure, including the following:

- refurbishment and overhaul of its coaches
- acquire new rolling stock and locomotives
- modernise depots and stations
- upgrade its signalling and other rail infrastructure.

PRASA also expects to finalise and implement its turnaround strategy to improve operational performance over the medium term.

PRASA was expected to grow passenger trips from 440 million in 2016/17 to 484 million in 2019/20 for Metrorail, and passenger numbers from 484 000 in 2016/17 to 804 000 in 2019/20 for Shosholoza Meyl.

The anticipated growth in passenger numbers is expected to increase fare revenue from R2,8 billion in 2016/17 to R4,3 billion in 2019/20, at an average annual rate of 15,7%. The agency also derives revenue from transfers from the DoT and rental

The Airports Company South Africa (ACSA) is ranked among the 10 most punctual airports in the world.

ACSA's achievement, among others, is attributed to its world-class state-of-the-art Airport Management Centre (AMC), which is the nerve centre of the airport's operations.

The AMC facilitates a seamless coordination between airlines, baggage handlers, security staff, customer service staff, aircraft engineers and marshals.

The list was revealed by the OAG Aviation Worldwide, a UK-based agency which monitors on-time- performance among airlines and airports globally.

OR Tambo International Airport achieved eighth place in the large airports category, while Cape Town International Airport ranked sixth in the medium airports category. King Shaka International Airport in KwaZulu-Natal was ranked 10th in the small airports category.

OAG Aviation Worldwide tracks a minimum of 80% of the flights that operate at an airport for it to be included in the Punctuality League.

According to the League, the top 20 airports in the large airport category ensured that 83,9% arriving and departing flights operated under 15 minutes of their scheduled arrival and departure times last year.

income from property. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7,8%, from R10,9 billion in 2016/17 to R13,7 billion in 2019/20.

PRASA is in the process of modernising its rail services. This includes buying new rolling stock for the Metrorail commuter service and locomotives for the agency's long-distance mainline passenger service, as well as upgrading stations and infrastructure.

Although Cabinet approved a reduction of R1 billion on transfers to the agency over the medium term, R3 billion will be reprioritised over the period for the operations of the long-distance mainline passenger service, and R2,7 billion will be reprioritised for the renewal of rolling stock in 2019/20.

Spending on Metrorail is expected to subsidise more than 484 million passenger trips per year in the period ahead, and spending on the mainline passenger service is expected to subsidise 2,3 million passengers over the medium term.

In February 2018, PRASA reintroduced its Main Line Passenger Services between Johannesburg and Musina.

The service was withdrawn in 2014 due to the rationalisation of train services.

The train will have a dining car that provides meals, tea/coffee and refreshments at an affordable price. The train stops at intermediate stations such as Germiston, Pretoria, Hammanskraal, Bela Bela, Mokgophong, Mokopane, Polokwane, Soekmekaar, Makhado and finally Musina.

The journey between Johannesburg and Polokwane takes eight hours and to Musina, ten hours. The train will also be used by Zimbabwean customers crossing the border after alighting in Musina. The reintroduction of the Main Line Passenger Services marks government's commitment and endeavour to speed up the implementation of an integrated public transport system.

The long distance services will create a seamless, cost-effective and a fully integrated solution not only to facilitate human movement but also to strengthen the country's economic ties with the rest of Africa.

National Ports Regulator

The NPR was established in terms of the National Ports Act, 2005 (Act 12 of 2005).

Its primary function is the economic regulation of the ports system, in line with government's strategic objectives to promote equity of access to ports and to monitor the activities of the Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA).

In accordance with this mandate, the NPR performs certain functions and activities including:

- regulation of pricing and other aspects of economic regulation
- promotion of equity of access to ports facilities and services
- monitoring the industry's compliance with the regulatory framework
- hearing any complaints and appeals lodged with it.

In addition, the NPR is a key component of the ports regulatory architecture envisaged in the National Commercial Ports Policy.

The TNPA is the largest port authority in Africa. It owns and manages ports at Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha and Ngqura.

The TNPA provides suitable infrastructure as a conduit for the country's imports and exports. Besides being the port landlord, it also has a control function, which includes:

- providing vessel-traffic control and navigational aids
- licensing and leasing terminals to operators
- monitoring the performance of port operators
- ensuring the orderly, efficient and reliable transfer of cargo and passengers between sea and land.

Based on the White Paper on the National Commercial Ports Policy (2002), the vision for South African ports is to become a system of ports, seamlessly integrated in the logistics network, that is jointly and individually self-sustainable.

The NPR functions with certain statutory and non-statutory committees that concentrate on aspects of its mandates. The NPR is an independent regulator, within the context of the prevailing policy and regulatory framework and it is funded by fiscal allocation from national government.

The NPR performs functions that relate mainly to the regulation of pricing and other aspects of economic regulation, the promotion of equal access to ports facilities and services, the monitoring of the industry's compliance with the regulatory framework, and the hearing of any complaints and appeals lodged with it. The regulator's estimated expenditure for 2017/18 will be R22,8 million.

Railway Safety Regulator

The RSR is the custodian of railway safety in South Africa.

Its functions include:

- issuing and managing safety permits
- conducting inspections and audits
- investigating railway accidents
- developing regulations, safety standards and related documents which form the basis of the regulatory regime
- issuing notices of non-conformance and non-compliance
- imposing penalties for non-compliance with the Act and safety standards adopted by the board of directors of the RSR.

The RSR is central to the safety of both passengers and the environment in the railway industry, and to that end has taken a bold stand to adopt the vision "Aspiring to Achieve Zero Occurrences". While collisions still remain a challenge, in 2015/16 the number of collisions between trains declined by 44% from 2014/15.

Road Safety and Road Accident Fund

The mandate of the RAF is derived from the RAF Act of 1996 as the payment of compensation for loss or damage wrongfully caused by the driving of motor vehicles in South Africa.

The socio-economic mandate of the fund is to reintegrate victims of road accidents into society from a health and economic perspective, and to protect wrongdoers and their families from financial ruin.

The fund delivers on this mandate by:

- paying the medical and related costs required to restore road accident victims to health
- compensating the victim/s or their dependants for income or support lost as a result of the accident
- indemnifying the wrongdoer from liability
- paying general damages in instances where a person suffers a serious injury in a road traffic accident
- paying funeral expenses to families when a person dies as a result of a road traffic accident.

The fund's strategic goals over the medium term are to:

- develop a legislative dispensation that is aligned with the principles of social security
- ensure that the organisation is solvent, liquid and sustainable by 2020
- ensure that the organisation is customer-centric, operationally effective and efficient by 2017.

The key objectives of the RAF Road Safety Strategy are to reduce the high rate of road accidents by becoming proactively involved in activities aimed at addressing road-safety behaviour and promoting road-safety principles and effective law enforcement.

The RAF's Road Safety Strategy also creates a platform to support the RAF core business, since post-crash care is one of the pillars prescribed by the Global Road Safety Commission.

It aims to:

- increase awareness of the RAF's business and service offering by conducting ongoing campaigns
- create a platform for all transport industry stakeholders to assist the victims of road accidents and their family members
- enhance the overall business strategy by identifying key stakeholder groups and developing effective stakeholder engagement channels to reach target audiences in a proactive manner.

The RABS Bill, which provides for the establishment of a new administrator, the RABS Administrator, to replace the current RAF, was published for public comment in 2016. Consultations sessions were held throughout the country with various stakeholders. The Bill proposes a comprehensive social security safety net scheme that is not fault-based.

It will allow expanded access to much-needed benefits to road users. These include the public and private transport passengers, widows, orphans and many other dependants who were previously and currently are excluded by virtue of fault.

Road Traffic Infringement Agency

The RTIA promotes road traffic quality by providing for a scheme to discourage road traffic infringements to support the prosecution of offences in terms of national and provincial laws relating to road traffic, and implements a points demerit system. The agency's estimated expenditure for 2017/18 will be R387,9 million.

The RTIA's objectives include:

- administering the procedures to discourage the contravention of road traffic laws and to execute the adjudication of infringements
- enforcing penalties imposed against people contravening road traffic laws
- providing specialised prosecution support services
- undertaking community education and community awareness programmes to ensure that individuals understand their rights and options.

The pursuit of this mandate entails the management and rollout of the Aarto Act of 1998, which includes the implementation of the driver points demerit system and rehabilitation programmes.

Road Traffic Management Corporation

The RTMC pools national and provincial government resources for the provision of road traffic management. This includes cooperative and coordinated road traffic strategic planning, regulation, facilitation and law enforcement. The RTMC's estimated expenditure for 2017/18 will be R736,7 million.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

The SACAA is mandated with controlling, promoting, regulating, supporting, developing, enforcing and continuously improving levels of safety and security throughout the civil aviation industry.

The SACAA presented the revised Cross-Functional Accident Reduction Plan aimed at reducing accidents in the general aviation sector, in a coordinated manner.

The new Cross-Functional Accident Reduction Plan features the following:

- in-depth statistics gathered, however a number of accident investigations remain open to complete the analysis
- although not yet comprehensive, industry activity is being captured by the SACAA to inform future strategies
- expanded scope of stakeholder consultation prior to the finalisation of the strategy
- more in-depth experience in dealing with accidents.

The revised Cross-Functional Accident Reduction Plan still seeks to improve pilot competency development within the training environment with the authority intensifying its oversight role over pilot training schools.

South African Maritime Safety Authority

SAMSA and the DoT are working on mobilising the maritime sector, organising its industries and drawing the attention towards what the sector can contribute to the achievement of government's social and economic goals.

SAMSA has successfully pulled together elements of the sector and created a cohesive sense of the boundaries and drivers of the country's performance, with regional and international positioning options.

The maritime economic sector is of central and strategic importance to the National Growth Path (NGP), the BRICS bloc and South Africa's influential role within the African Union (AU), India-Brazil-South Africa bloc and the Southern African Development Community (SADC).

The widening trade balance is to no small measure because of a lack of focus on shipping logistics and maritime transport. South Africa is the only country in all these partnerships that has no focused shipping and maritime transport sector policy and strategy, and owns no ships.

By August 2015, three cargo vessels were sailing the country's flag, while the applications for an additional 12 ships was under consideration.

The increase in South Africa's registered commercial cargo vessels is a strategic move to expand both training opportunities for the country cadets as well as business trade opportunities.

Through SAMSA, the DoT continued investing in intelligent surveillance breakthrough technologies in ship-tracking and maritime traffic management.

In the two years since the launch of Operation Phakisa, the country increased its focus on the opportunities provided by its more 3 000 km of coastline.

SAMSA struck a partnership with the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University and the Department of Higher Education in a National Cadetship Programme. This has resulted in 124 cadets being placed on 18 partner vessels.

South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited

South Africa has 750 000 km of roads – the 10th longest road network in the world and by far the longest in Africa.

At the core of this network is the spine – a national network of 22 197km, which is managed by SANRAL. It stretches from Beit Bridge in the north to the southern-most parts of the continent, and from Oranjemund to the KwaZulu-Natal coast.

Of this, 19 245km (87%) are non-toll roads and 2 952km (13%) are toll roads.

SANRAL's principal task is to plan, design, construct, operate, rehabilitate and maintain South Africa's national roads to support the country's socio-economic development goals and facilitate development, commerce, mobility and access.

In doing so, the entity is responsive to changes to its environment and has finalised a long-term strategy – Horizon 2030.

This includes a draft Transformation Policy which has the aim of promoting small, emerging, black construction companies and related industries, while also better supporting the transformation of the industry to reflect the demographics of the country.

Transnet Limited

Transnet is a focused freight-transport and logistics company wholly owned by the South African Government.

It comprises the following operating divisions:

- Transnet Freight Rail
- Transnet Rail Engineering
- Transnet Port Terminals
- Transnet Pipelines
- TNPA.

South African Airways

SAA is the leading carrier in Africa, serving 56 destinations, in partnership with SA Express, Airlink and its low-cost carrier, Mango, within South Africa and across the continent, and nine intercontinental routes from its Johannesburg hub. It is a member of the largest international airline network, Star Alliance.

SAA is the leading carrier in Africa, serving 26 destinations across the continent, as well as major destinations within South Africa and internationally from its Johannesburg hub at OR Tambo International Airport and is a member of the largest international airline network, Star Alliance.

SAA's core business is the provision of passenger airline and cargo transport services together with related services, which are provided through SAA and its four wholly owned subsidiaries:

- SAA Technical
- Mango, its low-cost carrier
- Air Chefs, the catering entity of SAA
- South African Travel Centre.

SAA's long-term Turnaround Strategy is a three-phase implementation approach with continuous and cyclical monitoring and review over a 20-year period.

One of the key elements of the strategy was increased focus and emphasis on governance and accountability. SAA believes these will go a long way in restoring the airline's reputation in the global markets and among its stakeholders.

This makes SAA one of the world's leading carriers in the areas of environmental responsibility and sustainability.

As part of its Five-Year Corporate Plan aimed at achieving and maintaining financial sustainability in the shortest time possible, SAA signed a code-share agreement with TAAG Angola Airlines. The agreement was effective from 15 January 2018. It will see SAA code-sharing with TAAG on their direct services between Johannesburg and Luanda and between Cape Town and Luanda. In return, TAAG Angola Airlines will code-share with SAA on its direct services between Johannesburg and Luanda and will include Johannesburg and Harare, Johannesburg and Lusaka, and Johannesburg and Hong Kong in the near future.

Interline agreements between airlines ease travel for customers who fly on more than one airline to reach their destination, while the airlines save on operation costs.

A code-share agreement enables SAA to offer flights with the SA code on flights operated by TAAG, and TAAG will in turn be able to offer flights with the DT code on flights operated by SAA.

In January 2015, the SAA became the first airline globally to install the Satellite Authorisation System (SatAuth) that allows for secure credit-card transactions anywhere in the skies.

SAA installed the device on one of its Airbus A340-300 aircraft at the SAAT maintenance facility in Kempton Park, Johannesburg.

The system also provides pinpoint accurate aircraft tracking services for operational purposes. It will allow for secure credit card transactions at any point and real-time positioning of any flight, anywhere, impacting fuel-saving interventions in-flight as well as providing full visibility of actual flight paths versus planned routing at any time. SatAuth, the first product of its kind, was developed in South Africa.

SAA is plannning to install SatAuth across its entire long-haul fleet over time.

SA Express

SAX is a domestic and regional passenger and cargo carrier established on 24 April 1994. Although the airline is operationally independent of SAA, its flights are incorporated within the strategic alliance with Airlink and SAA.

SAX became the first airline in the country to adopt a new method of taxiing after landing that burns less fuel and cuts fuel emissions.

This simple but unusual method of using only one engine to

taxi off the runway to the terminal after landing, cuts the amount of fuel burned by an average of 20 ℓ on every landing.

A flight from Johannesburg to Bloemfontein typically uses 1 000 ℓ of fuel, so saving 20 ℓ is a reduction of 2%, helping the airline to become more cost-efficient.

Programmes and projects

Road Transport Management System (RTMS)

The RTMS is an industry-led voluntary self-regulation scheme that encourages consignees, consignors and road transporters to implement a management system that preserves road infrastructure, improves road safety and increases productivity of the logistics value chain. This scheme also supports the DoT's National Freight Logistics Strategy.

The system's key components are load optimisation, driver wellness, vehicle maintenance and productivity. It is designed to show transport companies how to take greater corporate responsibility for road safety.

A national RTMS steering committee is responsible for the promotion and administration of the RTMS in South Africa. It comprises individuals representing major industries and aligned stakeholders within the country.

Road safety and road infrastructure are public concerns subject to strict regulation by government. Overregulation, road deterioration and high accident rates pose a significant threat to the long-term sustainability and global competitiveness of the road logistics value chain.

This prompted users of road haulage (consignors and consignees) and providers of road haulage (hauliers) to jointly develop strategies aimed at protecting the road network, improving road safety and transport productivity for the benefit of the country's citizens and the industry itself.

The RTMS is a self-regulating scheme with standard rules that aim to become the business norm, supporting the principles of good corporate governance and ensuring that no one gains an unfair advantage by poor compliance to transport regulations.

Furthermore, industry recognises its critical role in the economy's growth. Efficient movement of goods between a country's centres of production and its shipping ports boosts competitiveness in international markets.

National Transport Master Plan

The long-term vision of NATMAP 2050 is to sustain South Africa's projected growth and focus on integrated transport planning to ensure that the different modes of transport complement each other.

Government policies, plans and programmes, including the NDP and the NGP, enjoin the nation to create a social contract to help propel South Africa to a higher developmental trajectory, as well as build a more cohesive and equitable society.

The transport sector is critical to realising the implementation of the 2030 vision of advanced economic development, job creation, growth and provision of equitable access to opportunities and services for all, while fostering an inclusive society and economy.

Public Transport Strategy

South Africa is on its way to becoming the first country in Africa to have rapid public transport networks. Such networks will not only change the face of the country, but also boost economic development, job creation and tourism.

South Africa's Public Transport Strategy, which comprises a multibillion rand transport infrastructure plan, is set to entirely reshape travel in South Africa. At the core of the plan is a high-quality integrated mass rapid public transport network that includes rail, taxi and bus services. The strategy aims to accelerate the improvement in public transport by establishing integrated rapid public transport networks (IRPTNs), which will introduce priority rail corridors and Bus Rapid Transport (BRT) systems in cities.

The Public Transport Strategy is expected to improve public transport services for more than half the country's population.

The long-term goal of the strategy is to have 85% of a metropolitan city's population within 1 km of the network, and provide a transport service that is clean, comfortable, reliable, fast, secure, safe and affordable.

As part of government's commitment towards rural development, the S'hamba Sonke Programme addresses road maintenance on secondary roads and rural roads, with particular emphasis on repairing potholes, using labour-intensive methods of construction and maintenance.

Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS)

eNaTIS provides for the registration and licensing of vehicles. It manages and records applications for and authorisation of driving and learner's licences.

It is also a law-enforcement tool used to ensure that the details of stolen vehicles are circulated and prevents irregular and fraudulent re-registration of such vehicles.

The system delineates the lifecycle of a vehicle, from the factory floor to the scrap yard.

It is compulsory for all new motor vehicles and motor vehicles requiring a police clearance to be microdotted. The registration of a motor vehicle introduced onto the eNaTIS by the manufacturer, importer or builder is only allowed if the microdot information was loaded onto the system.

The DoT and the South African Police Service (SAPS) would enforce the requirements through eNaTIS.

In November 2016, the Constitutional Court ordered control of the eNatis Traffic Management System be handed over to the RTMC.

S'hamba Sonke Road Maintenance Project

The S'hamba Sonke (meaning "Walking Together") programme was launched by the DoT in 2011 to address the backlog in road repairs.

The programme, through the Provincial Roads Maintenance Grant, consists of three budget components. The largest enables provinces to expand their maintenance activities. The other components allow provinces to repair roads damaged by floods and cover the cost of rehabilitation work created by coal haulage activities in Mpumalanga and Gauteng.

Through this programme, government continues to address the spatial inequalities, create job opportunities, improve rural transport and its infrastructure, and also open the rural economy to new investment and development while also providing the much needed maintenance to the road infrastructure.

This programme has created 137 887 jobs, of which 28 933 are for youth, 54 918 taken by women and 180 are done by people living with disabilities.

Scholar transport

In recognition of the challenges confronting learners who attend school far away from their homes, Cabinet approved the Learner Transport Policy in May 2015.

Its aims are to:

- improve access to quality education by providing safe, decent, effective and integrated sustainable learner transport
- improve access to quality education through a coordinated and aligned transport system
- improve planning and implementation of an integrated learner transport service
- manage and oversee the implementation of an integrated learner transport service
- ensure an effective management of learner transport system
- provide for a safe and secure transport environment for learners through cooperation and collaboration with law enforcement authorities.

Non-motorised transport (NMT)

The promotion of NMT is mainly aimed at increasing transport mobility and accessibility, mainly in rural areas. The DoT has broadened its Shova Kalula Project into a more comprehensive NMT undertaking that incorporates, among other things, cycling and animal-drawn carts.

The Shova Kalula ("Pedal Easy") National Bicycle Programme aims to improve mobility and access to basic needs as well as social and economic opportunities for people especially in rural, remote and poorly resourced areas, including learners. Since the introduction of Shova Kalula, the DoT, in partnership with provinces, municipalities and private sector, has distributed more than 177 310 bicycles to destitute learners who travel long distances to their respective schools.

The project forms part of government's action programme and is expected to contribute to its antipoverty strategy and second-economy interventions. It is believed that these initiatives improve rural communities' mobility and access to economic opportunities.

The DoT's aim is to distribute one million bicycles a year across South Africa.

The Shova Kalula Project also incorporates microbusinesses that sell, repair and maintain bicycles to ensure the project's sustainability.

In February 2016, the Department of Environmental Affairs and KFW German Development Bank launched Phase 2 of the Non-Motorised Transport Programme as part of South Africa's National Climate Change Response Policy, which sets the country's vision for an effective climate change response and the long-term transition to a climate-resilient and low-carbon economy and society.

Phase 1 of the programme was initiated in 2011 and focused on developing bicycle routes, parking facilities and rental stations with a view to promote non-motorised transport. The intended outcome was to reduce carbon emissions, improve air quality and advocate behavioural change towards a cleaner healthier lifestyle.

Given the success of Phase 1, the Department of Environmental Affairs secured a grant of €5 million to finance a five-year NMT Phase 2 from KfW Development Bank, within the framework of the German-South African bi-national Financial Cooperation.

Phase 2 will comprise the extension of the existing bicycle networks to contribute towards efficient intermodal transportation networks within the cities. It will further include associated services such as the promotion of small, medium and micro-enterprise development through the establishment of bicycle empowerment centres.

Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP)

The TRP is an intervention by Government to bring about safe, effective, reliable, affordable and accessible taxi operations by introducing new taxi vehicles designed to undertake public transport functions in the taxi industry.

The TRP is not only about scrapping old taxi vehicles, but also about how best to help operators to benefit constructively through empowerment. The compulsory requirements are also meant to ensure passenger comfort.

Through the TRP, government has ensured the following changes:

- introduction of safety requirements for passengers
- comfort for passengers by insisting on the size and number of seats
- promotion of accessibility on the size and number of seats
- branding and colour-coding of taxi vehicles so that legal taxis can be identified and differentiated from illegal ones, and so that members of the public can easily identify a taxi vehicle.

By June 2015, the DoT had scrapped 61 254 old taxis with a total payment of R3,4 billion for scrapping allowances.

Resources

Roads

National roads

Government is responsible for overall policy, while SANRAL is responsible for road-building and maintenance.

The DoT continues to improve the road network by ensuring that it is well maintained and safe.

A new national roads plan was developed, acknowledging the importance of roads to the economy.

Provincial roads

Provincial governments are responsible for planning, constructing and maintaining roads and bridges, except those falling under SANRAL or local governments. The DoT helps provincial and local governments to improve and develop the state of their roads.

Municipal roads

The construction and maintenance of most roads and streets within the municipal boundaries of cities and towns is the responsibility of the municipality concerned.

Toll roads

The toll-road network comprises about 19% (3 120 km) of the national road grid. SANRAL manages some 1 832 km of these toll roads.

In its endeavour to continue the expansion and maintenance of the comprehensive national road network, SANRAL will continue the selective expansion of toll roads.

About 1 288 km of the tolled sections of national roads have been concessioned to private companies to develop, operate and maintain.

Rail

Gautrain

The Gautrain is an 80 km-long mass rapid transit railway system that links Johannesburg, Pretoria and OR Tambo International Airport.

It was built to relieve traffic congestion in the Johannesburg-Pretoria traffic corridor and offer commuters a viable alternative to road transport, as Johannesburg had limited public transport infrastructure.

The Gauteng 25-Year Integrated Transport Master Plan will ensure integration of transport with spatial patterns as well as the integration between various transport modes to transport people effectively.

The Gautrain ferries more than 60 000 people a day (including weekends) or 1,2 million people a year. It celebrated its 6th anniversary in June 2016, reaching a milestone of close to 80 million passenger trips.

Some 19 new Gautrain stations were in the pipeline by May 2017. The Gautrain Management Agency is planning to extend the rail route by 150 km over the following 20 years, including routes through Randburg, Fourways, and Soweto.

This expansion is expected to create 211 000 jobs.

A feasibility study released in March 2017. This included demand modelling to determine transport needs for Gauteng in 2025 and 2037, which showed that the "cost of doing nothing" in the province will lead to major road congestion in 2037, at which stage cars will travel at an average of 15 km/h due to doubling of car growth.

The feasibility study identified the following main links and stations of the Gautrain rail network extensions:

- On the link between Jabulani via Cosmo City and Samrand to Mamelodi, stations include Roodepoort, Little Falls, Fourways, Sunninghill, Olievenhoutsbosch, Irene, Tshwane East and Hazeldean.
- The link between Sandton and Cosmo City has a station at Randburg.
- On the link between Rhodesfield and Boksburg there will be a station at East Rand Mall and possible link-up with the OR Tambo International Airport Midfield terminal development.
- A future link from Cosmo City to Lanseria Airport.

Moloto Rail Development Corridor

The Moloto Rail Project's main objective is to ensure that passenger rail as the backbone of an integrated multi-modal transport system using proven state of the art rolling stock and equipment. In addition this rail project would serve as a catalyst for economic development initiatives within and around the Corridor resolving challenges of safety, efficiency, reliability, affordability and overall integration with other public transport services.

The Moloto Development Corridor has its main objective to increase speed for buses from 70 km/h to 120 km/h and from 160 km/h to 200 km/h for standard gauge trains, thereby reduce travel time for commuters. This part of government's policy to develop an intermodal transportation solution and involves the following catalytic projects:

- 13 new train stations
- Koedoespoort Rapid Rail alignment (117 km of dual track)
- modal integration points
- surface 240 km of feeder routes
- Tshwane Bus Rapid Transit
- new dual 67-km carriageway from Siyabuswa to Moloto
- Mamelodi East and Greenview Pienaarspoort alignment.

Civil aviation

South Africa's nine major airports are:

- OR Tambo International in Gauteng
- Cape Town International in the Western Cape
- King Shaka International in KwaZulu-Natal
- Bloemfontein International in the Free State
- Port Elizabeth International in the Eastern Cape
- Upington International in the Northern Cape
- East London Airport in the Eastern Cape
- George Airport in the Western Cape
- Kimberley Airport in the Northern Cape.

Through the launch of the Pilot Cadet Training and Development Programme for those who had been previously disadvantaged, the three state-owned airlines – SAA, SAX and Mango – will strengthen their role as engines of economic growth in the developmental state, and as leaders in the transformation of the aviation sector.

Airlift Strategy

The Airlift Strategy introduced structured regulatory measures for increasing tourism growth for South Africa. In particular, this strategy is based on aviation policy directives and contributes to the county's growth by:

- aligning with the Tourism Growth Strategy and industry
- prioritising tourism and trade markets
- unblocking obstacles to growth through regulatory mechanisms, and bilateral and multilateral air-services negotiations.

The overall objective of the Airlift Strategy is to increase aviation's contribution towards sustainable economic growth and job creation. This requires the creation and maintenance of an enabling framework, within which both suppliers and consumers of air-transport services may exercise reasonable flexibility and choice.

The strategy enhances the prospects of South Africa as a preferred air-travel destination and synchronises the basis for bilateral air-services negotiations with other priorities.

The strategy also provides specific guidelines for various unique markets, with emphasis on the needs of intra-African air services, and aims to improve the regulation of particularly the supply side of air-transport services.

The department also developed the Airlift Implementation Plan, which provides a clear framework and capacity targets to be met.

Airlines

Several domestic airlines, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies, operate in South Africa. SAA, British Airways (BA)/Comair, SAX, SA Airlink and Inter-Air operate scheduled air services within South Africa and the Indian Ocean islands.

In addition to serving Africa, SAA also operates services to Europe, Latin America and the Far East. Other airlines operating in the country are Kulula and Mango. Scheduled international air services are also provided by Air Afrique, Air Austral, Air Botswana, Air France, Air Gabon, Air Madagascar, Air Malawi, Air Mauritius, Air Namibia, Air Portugal, Air Seychelles, Air Tanzania, Air Zimbabwe, Airlink Swaziland, Alliance Express, BA, Cameroon Airlines, Delta Airlines, El Al, Egyptair, Emirates,

Ethiopian Airlines, Ghana Airways, Iberia, KLM, Kenya Airways, LAM Mozambique Airlines, LTU International Airways, Lufthansa, MK Airlines, Malaysia Airlines, Martinair Holland, Northwest Airlines, Olympic Airways, Qantas, Royal Air Maroc, Saudi Arabian Airlines, Singapore Airlines, Swissair, Taag, Thai International, Turkish Airlines, Uganda Airlines, United Airlines, Varig, Virgin Atlantic, Yemenia, Zambian Air Services and Zambian Skyways.

Freight transport

Ports

Along its 3 000 km-long coastline, South Africa has eight commercial seaports: Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Ngqura, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town and Saldanha.

South Africa is situated on a major sea route, which facilitates the safe and secure movement of about 500 Mt of crude petrochemical sea trade.

This represents over 30% of the world's petrochemical production, on board over 5 000 tanker voyages of very large crude carriers per year.

The nine commercial ports are crucial to South Africa's transport, logistics and socioeconomic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea.

The Port of Durban is the busiest container terminal in Africa and the second busiest in the southern hemisphere following Melbourne, Australia. Over 4 000 commercial vessels called at the port's 57 berths in 2015. The Ports Authority alone employs 6 200 people at the Durban Port, with an estimated 30 000 people employed indirectly.

Richard's Bay is the busiest port in South Africa by tonnage and is one of the top two coal-handling ports in the world. Richard's Bay focuses on bulk cargo handling while the Durban Port focuses on general cargo. It has also been earmarked for expansion projects with R3,7 billion set aside for mobile and quayside equipment, as well as weighbridges. Safety-critical, environmental and legal-compliance projects would also be carried out.

Cape Town, located at the southern-most point of Africa, is ideally positioned as a hub terminal for cargo to South America and the Far East. West/East Africa cargo has grown substantially, making the Cape Town Container Terminal the terminal of choice for trans-shipment cargo. The terminal handles 3 161 vessels per year for a gross tonnage of 44 501 297.

Pipelines

South Africa consumes about 25 billion litres of petroleum products a year.

Transnet Pipelines transports almost 50% of all refined petroleum products in the country for the emerging and major oil companies of South Africa. The Tarlton storage and distribution depot is a vital conduit in the supply of fuel to Botswana. Transnet Pipelines plans to enhance this service.

Transnet Pipelines transports all the crude requirements for the inland refinery at Natref, from where almost 70% of their refined products and 80% at Secunda are transported through the pipeline network to the final markets.

Transnet Pipelines owns, maintains and operates a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines.

Investment in the pipeline sector is ongoing. Construction on a R5,8 billion fuel pipeline between the Mozambican Port of Matola in Maputo and Kendal in South Africa started in 2009. The 450-km pipeline transports up to 3,5 Ml a year and is expected to prevent potential fuel shortages in South Africa.

The pipeline facilitates the importation of petrol and diesel from Mozambique, which has extensive natural gas and coal reserves, but no oil reserves. Of the pipeline's total capacity of 3,5 Ml of fuel and diesel, a maximum of 1,5 Ml is diverted to Mbombela. The remainder is transported to Kendal.

More than 60% of South Africa's liquid-fuels demand lies within the Durban-Johannesburg corridor. The Durban-Johannesburg pipeline is no longer adequate for the transportation of the required volumes of petroleum products from the coast to the inland regions.

The multiproduct pipeline, being constructed at a cost of R23 billion between Durban and Johannesburg, will replace the existing Durban-Johannesburg pipeline.

Freight

Africa's road access rate is only 34% compared with 50% in other geographical zones. Yet roads remain the dominant mode of transportation, accounting for more than 90% of passenger and freight transport in Africa, compared with around 50% of freight in Europe.

Government will also review its rail investment programme to accelerate the shift of freight transport from road to rail.

Transnet will invest about R63 billion in the freight rail system by 2020. For its part, organised business will continue to promote greater use of rail freight by companies.

Transnet Freight Rail (TFR)

TFR is the largest division of Transnet. It is a world-class heavy haul freight rail company that specialises in the transportation of freight.

The company is proud of its reputation for technological leadership beyond Africa as well as within Africa, where it is active in some 17 countries.

TFR has positioned itself to become a profitable and sustainable freight railway business, assisting in driving the competitiveness of the South African economy.

The company is made up of the following six business units:

- Agriculture and Bulk Liquids
- Coal
- Container and Automotive
- Iron Ore and Manganese
- Steel and Cement
- Mineral Mining and Chrome.

Forming an integral part of the southern African economy, Transnet:

- moves 17% of the nation's freight annually
- exports 100% of the country's coal
- exports 100% of the iron ore
- 30% of the core network carries 95% of freight volumes
- has annual revenues of over R14 billion
- will invest R35 billion in capital over the next five years
- has 38 000 employees countrywide.

The company maintains an extensive rail network across South Africa that connects with other rail networks in the sub-Saharan region, with its rail infrastructure representing about 80% of Africa's total.

Maritime

Marine transport encompasses all forms of transport by sea, intermodal links and inland ports. It serves a large degree for the freight market, and in the South African context offers no significant passenger-carrying ability.

The DoT is responsible for South Africa's maritime administration and legislation, which SAMSA controls on its behalf in terms of the SAMSA Act of 1998.

The broad aim of SAMSA is to maintain the safety of life and property at sea within South Africa's area of maritime jurisdiction, and to ensure the prevention of marine pollution by oil and other substances emanating from ships.

The Department of Environmental Affairs is responsible for combating pollution and uses Kuswag coast-watch vessels to perform this function. SAMSA is responsible for introducing and maintaining international standards set by the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) in London, United Kindom (UK), with respect to:

- ship construction
- maritime training and training curriculums
- watch-keeping
- certification of seafarers
- manning and operation of local and foreign ships
- maritime search-and-rescue
- marine communications and radio navigation aids
- pollution prevention.

SAMSA has an operations unit, a policy unit and a corporate support division to handle all financial, human resources and information technology issues.

Other functions include registering ships, establishing a coastal patrol service and managing marine casualties and wrecks.

SAMSA is steadily improving its capacity to monitor safety standards of foreign vessels. Numerous ships calling at South Africa's major ports are inspected, and those not complying with international safety standards are detained until the deficiencies are corrected.

The South African Marine Corporation, Unicorn Lines and Griffin Shipping are South Africa's predominant shipping lines. Their fleets of container, oil tanker, general cargo and bulk cargo vessels operate not only between South African ports and as cross-traders to other parts of the world.

South African Maritime Training Academy (SAMTRA)

The SAMTRA at Simon's Town in the Western Cape provides advanced training to the broader maritime sector, including the merchant navy, harbour-craft operations, the fishing industry and the South African Navy.

The South African Merchant Navy Academy, General Botha, established at Granger Bay, is integrated with the Cape Peninsula University of Technology, with a similar training facility at the Durban Institute of Technology.

Deck and engineering students and officers complete their academic training at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology and the Durban Institute of Technology, while lower classes of certificates are offered at the Training Centre for Seamen, situated in the Duncan Dock area in Cape Town. This training institution also caters for deck, engine-room and catering department ratings.

SAMSA is responsible for setting all standards of training certification and watch-keeping on behalf of the DoT, while the Maritime Education and Training Board is responsible for accrediting all maritime courses.

Other maritime training organisations offer a wide range of courses that have been developed within the South African maritime industry. These are situated mainly in the ports of Cape Town and Durban and, to a lesser degree, Port Elizabeth.

As part of an initiative to reduce the vacancy rate of at least 45 000 jobs in the maritime industry, 12 Further Education and Training (FET) colleges across the country started to offer courses aimed at equipping young people for a career in the industry.

The FET colleges will meet at least 80% of the industry's skills demands, producing artisans such as riggers, welders and boiler makers. Annually between 1 200 and 1 600 students enter the maritime industry after completing their studies.

Through its involvement in the AU, South Africa was leading the development of an integrated African Maritime Strategy.

Public transport

The DoT continues to administer subsidies for buses and other subsidised forms of public transport.

This includes world-class airports, upgraded train stations, refurbished coaches and luxury buses, taxis and IRPTNs such as the BRT System.

Integrated public transport networks

Bus Rapid Transport

The Tshwane Rapid Transit (A Re Yeng) started operating in 2014.

All A Re Yeng buses are equipped with free wi-fi on the trunk route, full air conditioning, low-floor technology which supports Euro V emission levels, vehicle stability and a cashless automated electronic system that is fully monitored by camera and censors. The buses are operated by qualified former taxi drivers recruited from the various taxi associations in the city.

The A Re Yeng bus project will be rolled out in phases, culminating in the construction of 80-km long dedicated lanes. The route will comprise 51 bus stations that stretch from Soshanguve to Mamelodi, passing through the city centre and surrounding suburbs.

The City of Tshwane's launch follows on Johannesburg's Rea Vaya and Cape Town's MyCiti Integrated Rapid Transit systems.

The City of Johannesburg's Rea Vaya bus system route was operational since October 2013.

The route runs from Soweto and passes through Noordegesig, New Canada, Pennyville, Bosmont, Coronationville, Newclare, Westbury, Westdene, Melville, Auckland Park and Parktown; and links to the city centre.

The GO!Durban system was launched in 2015. Once completed, the GO!Durban will see minibus vehicles collect people from residential areas to transfer stations where, they will get buses to their preferred destinations.

About R20 billion set aside for transformation of Durban's public transport system is expected to connect 600 000 commuters across the city to nine public transport corridors by 2027.

Infrastructure development

It is the mandate of the PICC to oversee the implementation of infrastructure projects that stimulate social and economic growth.

South Africa's infrastructure plans include economic and social infrastructure that will unlock key mineral resources and exports. The PICC coordinates this infrastructure plan.

Rail

PRASA is at the forefront of government efforts to transform public transport in South Africa, with rail services forming the backbone of the network.

PRASA's main responsibility is to integrate intermodal facilities and services into public transport solutions that optimise the performance of the whole transport system.

The main thrust of the rail policy will focus on investment and new modern technology. It will address the regulatory framework required, particularly economic regulation, infrastructure and operations. It will also make proposals regarding the investment required to restore rail to its rightful place in the country's economy.

By 2020, existing logistics corridors are expected to be expanded upon and new corridors will have been established. A world-class export-oriented rail manufacturing sector and 6 405 km of rail are expected to have been replaced for the general freight, coal and ore lines, increasing the rail network capacity by 149,7 Mt.

The Durban-to-Gauteng Corridor is the busiest corridor in the southern hemisphere, both in terms of value and tonnage. It also forms an integral part of South Africa's freight transportation network.

Ports

Transnet Port Terminals is expected to spend R33 billion over the next six years on upgrading and expanding South Africa's ports, as part of a massive state-led infrastructure drive aimed at boosting the country's economic growth.

The expansion projects will see major increases in the container-handling capacity of the ports in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal and Ngqura outside Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape.

Container capacity is also being created in other terminals, such as the Durban Ro-Ro and Maydon Wharf Terminal, through the acquisition of new equipment, including mobile cranes and various infrastructure upgrades.

The port is said to be the deepest container terminal in sub-Saharan Africa and will accommodate the new generation of giant container ships that regularly visit the country's shores.

Given its positioning and size, the Ngqura Trade Port will go a long way in boosting South Africa's trade with other countries in the region and is expected to support the country's new growth path. The planning of the Ngqura has been integrated with that of the Coega Development Zone.

The bulk handling capacity at Ngqura, Richards Bay in KwaZulu-Natal, and Saldanha in the Western Cape will also come in for major expansion.

Safety-critical, environmental and legal compliance projects are also in the pipeline. Some R1,2 billion will be spent on creating new capacity, including new storage areas, at Richards Bay. Transnet is also pursuing the re-engineering of the port to create additional capacity for bulk products at the terminal.

Saldanha's iron-ore bulk facility, which has undergone significant expansion in recent years, will be further expanded, taking its capacity to 82 Mt a year.

Safety of travellers

Arrive Alive

Government's Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign has become an important part of the DoT's road safety projects and awareness efforts, especially during critical periods for road traffic management such as the Easter long weekend and the December holidays.

At the end of 2015, it was announced that the RTMC could not use the Arrive Alive campaign anymore, as it had been registered as a brand. The safety campaign remains in place, operating under the name 365 Days of Road Safety Programme, which would focus on creating awareness all year round.

The goals of the campaign are to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5% compared with the same period the previous year
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws
- forge improved working relationships between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

The campaign emphasised that the reduction in road deaths was urgent and non-negotiable.

UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020

South Africa is a signatory to the UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020. The UN General Assembly resolution proclaiming a Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020 was tabled by the Government of the Russian Federation and co-sponsored by more than 90 countries.

The initiative aims to save lives by halting the increasing trends in road traffic deaths and injuries world-wide.

It is based on the following pillars:

- Pillar 1 – Building road safety management capacity
- Pillar 2 – Improving the safety of road infrastructure and broader transport networks
- Pillar 3 – Further developing the safety of vehicles
- Pillar 4 – Enhancing the behaviour of road users
- Pillar 5 – Improving post-crash response.

As part of the Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020 campaign, Government is targeting the reduction in fatalities by 50% in 2020.

South Africa's efforts are focused on four key areas:

- fatigue or driver fitness
- drinking and driving
- use of seat belts
- pedestrian safety.

A key aspect of the integrated Road Safety Management Programme is increasing pedestrian safety. In planning and design, SANRAL provides for interventions such as traffic calming, safe stopping areas for public transport, and pedestrian bridges. The DoT also engages communities adjacent to national roads to find solutions to pedestrians' needs.

To contribute to safety on the roads, SANRAL has developed a database of projects that need to be implemented in areas that are hazardous to pedestrians. The solutions range from pedestrian bridges, pavements, road safety education and traffic calming measures.

When it comes to managing safety on freeways, SANRAL's incident management system, supported by central coordination centres, embraces interaction between emergency services and law enforcement agencies on all declared national routes.

Passenger rail safety

The National RSR Act, 2002 (Act 16 of 2002), is the enabling legislation for setting up the independent RSR, reporting and accountable to the Minister of Transport.

The mandate of the RSR is to:

- oversee safety in railway transport, while operators remain responsible for managing the safety of their operations
- develop an appropriate regulatory framework through the development of regulations and standards for safe railway operations
- monitor and ensure safety compliance by conducting audits, inspections, safety assessments and occurrence investigations
- collect and disseminate information relating to safe railway operations
- promote the harmonisation of the railway safety regime of South Africa with SADC railway operations
- promote improved safety performance to support the use of rail.

In pursuance of this mandate, the RSR has, in collaboration with the railway industry and the South African Bureau of Standards, developed a series of standards to ensure a common and consistent approach to railway safety in areas such as safety management, technical and operational requirements, and the management of human factors.

A key to the successful regeneration of the railway system in South Africa, and indeed the subregion, is the interoperability of the railways.

This implies consistent standards and common usage of technology where railway infrastructure is used by more than one operator.

The RSR and the railway industry continue to collaborate in developing the overarching broad technical and operating standards.

The need for harmonisation of safety standards within the SADC region is of strategic importance. The RSR is facilitating efforts to adopt and align the current railway safety standards by regional railway operators through the Southern African Railway Association.

Since the RSR's creation, there has been increased awareness of safety in railways, improvements in safety management and accountability, and standardisation of safety management systems among railway operators in South Africa and regional railways operating into South Africa.

The permit system employed by the RSR ensures the standardisation of safety management systems.

Through its Southern African Railway Association membership, the RSR plays a leading role in regional safety issues. The RSR played a central part in developing the Regional Safety Policy Framework and safety standards and in updating the Handbook on the Transportation of Hazardous Materials by Rail.

Since the reintroduction of the railway police, there has been a significant drop in crime on trains and at train stations.

Maritime safety

An estimated 7 000 vessels pass around South Africa's coastline annually, of which many are laden tankers carrying in excess of 30 Mt of crude oil. South African weather conditions present regular challenges to vessels, often resulting in distress calls to the Cape Town-based Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre (MRCC).

Piracy constitutes a serious challenge to the development and stability of the SADC member states, given the importance of the region's international seaborne trade and its vital contribution to regional food stocks and economic development.

Threats of piracy are of particular concern to the SADC, whose coastline and shipping lanes are extremely vulnerable to maritime crime. As the SADC's coastal area does not fall within patrol areas of the international anti-pirate forces, the SADC will have to take responsibility for its own maritime security.

The threat around the Horn of Africa and SADC waters detrimentally affects the SADC's trade and economy.

The SADC's Maritime Strategy entails a regional partnership with all member states contributing within their means. Not all members necessarily have the essential maritime and military capabilities, but they still contribute in other ways by providing land-based equipment such as radar and soldiers to patrol coastlines and islands.

The SADC has established robust rules of engagement for anti-piracy, which are largely consistent with those of other regions and task forces.

Regarding the legal framework, SADC member states are expected to:

- ratify or accede to international maritime conventions/treaties/regimes and the incorporation of these into their national law
- put in place comprehensive legal regimes at national level, consistent with international law, to prosecute pirates
- stop the practice of "catch-and-release" of pirates since it allows experienced pirates to execute more sophisticated acts of piracy
- strengthen and harmonise regional and domestic legal frameworks for arrest, awaiting trial detention, prosecution and imprisonment or repatriation of pirates
- take responsibility for its own maritime security in cooperation with other regions, task forces, navies and role players.

The MRCC enables South Africa to exercise its responsibilities to the international community by employing state-of-the-art search-and-rescue infrastructure and services.

South Africa has a well-established pollution prevention strategy, and is ready to respond in case of threats to the environment or to provide assistance to vessels at risk.

South Africa acts in terms of the Indian Ocean Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on Port State Control and has a similar agreement with the states of West Africa in the form of the Abuja MoU.

Search and rescue services

The Southern African Search and Rescue Organisation (Sasar) has been in existence since 1957. It was formalised through the enactment of the South African Maritime and Aeronautical Search and Rescue (SAR) Act, 2002 (Act 44 of 2002). The Act gave the organisation a statutory mandate to coordinate all SAR activities within South Africa's area of responsibility.

South Africa is responsible for a huge SAR area, representing

about 10% of the globe and about 28,5 million km² in total. To manage this vast area, the South African area is divided into the aeronautical and maritime SAR areas.

The aeronautical SAR region covers Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Swaziland, and associated flight information regions.

The maritime SAR area stretches about halfway between South Africa and South America on the western side, and about halfway between South Africa and Australia on the eastern side. It also borders on Namibia, Angola, South Africa and Mozambique on the northern side and then extends to the south pole.

Relevant operational structures and substructures were established for Sasar to execute its mandate successfully.

The Aeronautical Rescue Coordination Centre (ARCC) and the MRCC are the primary structures responsible for the execution of Sasar's statutory mandate. The ARCC and the MRCC are based at the ATNS and SAMSA.

SAR only works when several countries and all stakeholders collaborate across borders. This culture of collaboration dates back to 1959 when the Convention on International Civil Aviation first made provision for cooperation between states.

According to this provision, states will individually or in cooperation with other states, arrange for the establishment and prompt provision of SAR services within their territories to ensure that people in distress get assistance.

Regional cooperation also uses scarce resources and helps nations to avoid duplicating efforts and facilities.

Through this collaboration, services are provided for poor states in a uniform way across a wide area. Collaboration also reduces the overall cost of SAR operations.

The SADC approached the ICAO and the IMO to fund the training requirements identified for the region.

In collaboration with the Department of Environmental Affairs, the DoT is also planning to create SAR capacity in the Antarctic region.

The DoT, the South African National Defence Force, Telkom, Portnet, SAMSA, SACAA, ATNS, SAPS, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, SAA and the Department of Cooperative Governance are members of Sasar and contribute their services and facilities.

Voluntary organisations such as the 4x4 Rescue Club, the Mountain Club of South Africa, Hamnet (the national amateur radio emergency communication network) and the National Sea Rescue Institute are also members of Sasar.

The ARCC Centre is an operational facility of Sasar that promotes the efficient organisation of search and rescue services and coordinates aeronautical search and rescue operations. This plays a significant role in improving the safety of South African airspace.

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2017/18

Water and Sanitation

The Department of Water and Sanitation's (DWS) legislative mandate seeks to ensure that the country's water resources are protected, managed, used, developed, conserved and controlled in a sustainable manner for the benefit of all people and the environment.

The DWS is mandated to develop a knowledge base and implement effective policies, procedures and integrated planning strategies both for water resources and services.

This entails adhering to the requirements of water-related policies and legislation, including constitutional requirements, that are critical in delivering on the right of access to sufficient food and water, transforming the economy and eradicating poverty.

The DWS's strategic objectives are to:

- ensure efficient water usage by supporting municipalities to implement water conservation and demand management programmes continuously
- maintain a reliable and equitable supply of water by developing new and updating existing reconciliation strategies for the water management areas in Richards Bay by March 2016, Limpopo North by March 2017 and Mahikeng by March 2018
- generate information that is used to inform decisions on programmes for water management by improving the monitoring of water resources, through the development of a hydrological water monitoring network system, to enable the review of all existing water monitoring networks by March 2017
- ensure the protection of water resources by developing an integrated water quality management strategy to determine resource quality objectives for 11 river systems by March 2018.

Legislation

The DWS published the draft regulations requiring that the abstraction of water for irrigation purposes be limited, monitored, measured and recorded for public comment.

In terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), the Minister of Water and Sanitation must publish regulations in terms of Section 26 of the Act, which requires that the abstraction of water for irrigation of crops should be limited, monitored, measured and recorded.

The regulations limit the abstraction rate, prescribe procedures, give powers to authorities and define offences. These regulations are necessary for effective monitoring and enforcement of compliance to the limits and conditions of water use authorisation.

South Africa's Constitution enshrines the basic human right to have access to sufficient water as well as a safe and healthy environment.

Government fulfils these rights through the DWS, assisted by specific legislation:

- The National Water Act of 1998 ensures that South Africa's water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner, for the benefit of all people.
- The Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997), prescribes the legislative duty of municipalities as water-service authorities to provide water supply and sanitation according to national standards and norms. It also regulates water boards as important water service providers and gives the executive authority and responsibility to the Minister of Water and Sanitation to support and strengthen the capacity of municipalities to manage their own affairs, exercise their powers and perform their functions.
- The Water Services Act of 1997 places an obligation on the Minister to maintain a National Water Services Information System and to monitor the performance of all water services institutions.
- The Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), provides for the promotion of water-related research through a Water Research Commission (WRC) and a Water Research Fund.
- The National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), makes provision for cooperative environmental governance by establishing principles for decision-making on matters affecting the environment, institutions that promote cooperative governance and procedures for coordinating environmental functions exercised by organs of state.
- The National Water Policy is underpinned by three fundamental principles for managing water resources: equity, (environmental) sustainability and efficiency.

Sanitation provision is governed by the Strategic Framework on Water Services (2003) and the Water Services Act of 1997.

All water users who do not receive their water from a service provider, local authority, water board, irrigation board, government water scheme or other bulk supplier, and who use water for irrigation, mining purposes, industrial use, feedlots or in terms of general authorisation, have a statutory obligation to register. This includes the use of surface and groundwater.

Other uses that must be registered include:

- diversion of rivers and streams
- discharge of waste or water containing waste
- storage, which includes any person or body storing water for any purpose from surface run-off, groundwater or fountain flow in excess of 10 000 m^3 or where the water area at full supply level exceeds one hectare (ha) in total on land owned or occupied by that person or body, and who is not in possession of a permit or permission
- local authorities and other bulk suppliers with their own water sources and purification works
- controlled activities such as irrigating with waste, power generation with water, atmospheric modification or recharging of aquifers.

An assessment of the environmental requirements of the rivers and streams concerned is conducted before a licence can be issued.

To promote sustainable and equitable water resource management, the department has developed and continues to update a range of strategies for water management.

Transformation

In pursuance of the transformation agenda, the DWS was in mid-2017 moving towards presenting the National Water and Sanitation Bill that will undergo parliamentary processes and be published for public consultation.

The objective of the Bill is to radically transform the water and sanitation sector across the value chain and create an enabling environment for the delivery of basic water and sanitation services to communities that were historically disadvantaged; thereby enhancing access, equity and sustainability.

The department will also ensure that the establishment of the Water and Sanitation Infrastructure Agency finds traction while pursuing the consolidation and rationalisation of the water boards to establish wall-to-wall water boards.

The Water Use Licence regulatory framework has been revised in accordance with the integrated licence approach. In addition, the regulations for the metering of water for irrigation purposes have been gazetted for public comments to be finalised during 2016.

Budget and funding

The department's budget allocation for the 2017/18 financial year was R15.6 billion.

Over the medium term, the DWS will continue to focus on water infrastructure, including raw water infrastructure, such as dams and canals, bulk infrastructure, such as water treatment works and water services infrastructure such as reservoirs and pipelines to households.

Raw water infrastructure

The DWS is responsible for the design, construction, commissioning and rehabilitation of raw water infrastructure, including dams and bulk distribution systems.

Three raw water projects are expected to be completed over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period at an estimated total cost of R6,1 billion.

Spending in the subprogramme is still set to increase at an average annual rate of 10,5% from 2015/16 to 2018/19.

Bulk infrastructure

To ensure that water is available for households and farmers, the DWS will implement 15 mega projects and complete one mega project (project cost is more than R1 billion) and 10 large water and wastewater infrastructure projects (project cost is more than R250 million but less than R1 billion) over the medium term. These are funded through the regional bulk infrastructure grant, which is allocated R15,5 billion over the MTEF period.

Examples of these projects: The Xonxa Dam water supply to Lukhanji municipality in Eastern Cape, at a total project cost of R259 million. This project will mitigate the impact of the current water shortfall and benefit the entire municipal population of 52 278 households and the Wolmaransstad wastewater treatment works in the Maquassi Hills municipality in the North West, at a total project cost of R 197 million.

The project entails upgrading the sewage treatment works to double its treatment capacity to 9 Ml/d to meet the current and future growth in sewage volumes arising from development in the area.

The project beneficiaries are the existing 12 700 households and the households projected to be established in the area over the next 20 years.

Water services infrastructure

To improve household access to water and sanitation, the DWS will provide funding and institutional support to municipalities and other implementing agents to complete 182 small water and wastewater services projects (project cost is less than R250 million) over the MTEF period.

The funding is provided through the new water services infrastructure grant, which will receive R12,3 billion over the MTEF period. Most of the grant is allocated to the 29 priority rural district municipalities. These projects include the provision of water from tankers, boreholes, standpipes and pipelines, and the refurbishment of water treatment works.

Sanitation services

To ensure that the 25 292 remaining sanitation buckets in formal areas are replaced with adequate sanitation services by the end of 2018/19. R145 million was allocated for the bucket eradication programme (BEP) in the 2017/18 financial year. Additional budget of R264 million was reprioritised within the Department to fund the BEP.

A total budget of R409 million was then set aside to eradicate the Bucket System. In the 2018/19 financial year an amount of R1,4 billion has been set aside to deal with the outstanding internal reticulation and bulk infrastructure to ensure that all buckets in formal areas are eradicated by end of 2018/19 financial year.

Regulatory function

To complement infrastructure delivery, the DWS develops and implements integrated planning strategies and effective policies and procedures, and maintains data management systems.

Over the medium term, the department will strengthen its regulatory function by finalising pricing regulations for full cost recovery on water schemes and will continue the process of establishing a water regulator.

Drought relief

The drought situation intensified over the 2017/18 in the Eastern Cape, Western Cape and Northern Cape while it remains at significant levels in some areas of the other provinces.

The DWS worked closely with the disaster management structures established by CoGTA, provincial, district and local municipalities to implement a wide range of interventions where required, according to their respective Integrated Development and Disaster Management Plans.

More direct support by the DWS was provided in the reprioritisation of projects under the respective grant programmes funded by National Treasury to expedite implementation where the impact of the drought was most severe. These interventions included emergency pumping and transfers, pipelines, pumping Installations, reservoirs, water treatment works as well as the development of boreholes and well fields.

Examples of large scale augmentation programmes are the Goedertrouw Transfer Scheme, the Phase 2 and 3 upgrades to the Nooitgedacht Transfer scheme, the Tsolo/Xilnca pipeline for Butterworth which are fast-tracked where possible. The Richards Bay desalination plant was completed in this period.

Several emergency measures are also being pursued by the City of Cape Town to address shortfalls in the short term through tight water conservation measures supported by the optimal management of the Cape Water Supply System by DWS.

These measures are supplemented by rigorous measures to monitor and enforce compliance to restrictions by special DWS teams, civil engineering works in the basins of almost empty large dams to access lower levels of water and the drillingof emergency boreholes with DWS drilling rigs. In the medium and longer term, several groundwater projects are implemented and

desalination plants are established.

It is still expected that the current summer rainfall season will increase the water in storage in the interior.

Policies and strategies

National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS)

The NWRS2 sets out the vision and strategic actions for effective water management. These included the security of water supply, environmental degradation, and pollution of resources.

The NWRS2 outlines the key challenges, constraints and opportunities in water resource management and proposes new approaches that ensure a collective and adequate response for the benefit of all people in South Africa.

The strategy also responds to the priorities set by Government in the National Development Plan and National Water Act of 1998 imperatives that support sustainable development.

It is centred on three key objectives:

- Water supports development and the elimination of poverty and inequality. The strategy recognises that the manner in which water was allocated in the past was unequal and favoured certain sections of the population. The intention, therefore, is to redress past imbalances in the manner in which water was allocated.
- Water contributes to the economy and job creation.
- Water is protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner.

The NWRS2 also focuses on water conservation and the management of water demand as key priorities.

Raw Water Pricing Strategy

There have been continued efforts to reform and realign the water value chain so that it can achieve government's objectives since 1994.

These include ensuring equitable access to water and sanitation, the sustainable use of water for social and economic benefit, and ensuring the sustainability of water resources and water-services delivery.

As part of this process, the DWS is looking at pricing, financing and economic regulation reforms in the water sector. This project will review the raw water pricing strategy, develop infrastructure funding models and recommend an appropriate model and institutional arrangements for an economic regulator for water.

It is generally agreed that pricing and economic regulation play a key role in the provisioning of infrastructure by assuring necessary investments to support socio-economic growth and ensuring that services are widely available and accessible and priced at levels that support current and future needs.

The project will contribute to the following:

- the revision of the Raw Water Pricing Strategy to ensure equitable and appropriate raw water tariffs that will enable sustainable operation and management of raw water infrastructure and will fund catchment management
- funding/financing models for water resources infrastructure
- the establishment of an economic regulator for the entire water value chain.

The project is strategic in nature and will enable the DWS to have sound water-pricing policies, cost-reflective tariffs for the entire water value chain in South Africa and a good funding framework for infrastructure. The project is divided into three work streams, each to be led by the DWS together with different institutions to provide support.

National Groundwater Strategy

Groundwater is a strategic resource in many parts of South Africa, especially in rural areas.

It also plays an important role in the supply of water to small towns and villages in the drier parts of the country.

There is considerable potential for additional development of groundwater resources to augment existing resources.

The need for improved groundwater management to ensure sustainable and efficient use of the resource was recognised in NWRS-1 and led to the formulation of a National Groundwater Strategy through which strategic actions were undertaken.

In 2016, the DWS issued a gazette to limit urban water use by 15% and irrigation use by 20%.

Reuse Strategy

The DWS has developed a water reuse strategy to encourage informed decisions relating to water reuse.

Reuse could be increased significantly with return flows in coastal cities, where it would otherwise drain into the sea.

In coastal cities, water reuse and desalination compete as two options for water conservation.

Reuse is becoming increasingly acceptable and feasible owing to increasing shortages, improved purification technology and decreasing treatment costs. Membrane technologies, also used for desalination of seawater, have become more affordable and have improved.

The reuse of treated wastewater would be managed to ensure public health safety.

Infrastructure upgrades and bilateral agreements

The DWS made good progress with the preparatory work of the Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP), which is expected to begin in 2019.

The Polihali Dam, the Polihali-Katse transfer tunnel and other infrastructural aspects of the LHWP Phase 2 should be completed by 2024. Once Phase 2 has been completed, the amount of water supplied to South Africa through the LHWP will progressively increase from 780 million m³ to about 1,27 billion m³ a year over the following 20 years.

There is progress in the Mokolo and Crocodile River pipeline project, which will transfer water through a 46-km pipeline and pump station from the Mokolo Dam to the Lephalale area. Phase 1 of the Mokolo and Crocodile River (West)Water Augmentation Project (MCWAP), which will transfer water through a 46-km pipeline and pump station from the Mokolo Dam to the Lephalale area, is complete. A second pipeline will be constructed as Phase 2A of the MCWAP to transfer water from the Crocodile River (West) to the Lephalale area.

The raising of the Hazelmere Dam wall will incorporate a Piano Key Weir, which is cutting-edge technology in dam-building. The additional water that will become available from this project is aimed at ensuring the supply of water and supporting the development of human settlements, King Shaka Airport and the Dube Trade Port. The raising of the Hazelmere Dam wall will incorporate a Piano Key Weir as part of the raising, which is cutting-edge technology in dam-building. The additional yield

available from this project is aimed at ensuring the supply of water to the north coast of KZN and support the developments of human settlements, King Shaka Airport and the Dube Trade Port. The construction of the dam wall is completed and the capacity of dam can be increased to 120% on impoundment of the previous dam level which shall be beneficial to water users. The overall completion percentage is at 93%.

The raising of the Clanwilliam Dam started in October 2015 at an estimated cost of R2,5 billion. The raising of the dam will also include dam safety measures to ensure the stability of the embankment. The construction of the N7 realignment started in August 2014 and is scheduled for completion in March 2017. Raising the full supply level of Clanwilliam Dam will improve the safety of the structure.

With the raising the annual yield of the dam will be increased by 70 million m^3 of which a portion will be made available to assist in the development of resource poor farmers. Site establishment activities for the project commenced in June 2014 and were completed in September 2016.

The estimated cost for the project is R 2,5 billion. Construction of the N7 realignment by SANRAL commenced in August 2014 and was completed in March 2016. Three quarters of the extra water that will be available from this project will be reserved to resource poor farmers

Three quarters of the extra water that will be available from this project will be reserved to resource poor farmers.

The DWS is proceeding with the planning of the Mzimvubu Water Project, which entails the development of a multipurpose dam (the Ntabelanga) to supply new irrigation development, and the Laleni Dam for hydropower generation. The project will also provide domestic and industrial water requirements in the Eastern Cape. The Department is proceeding with the planning of the Mzimvubu Water Project, which entails the development of a multipurpose dam (the Ntabelanga) to supply new irrigation development, and the Laleni Dam for hydropower generation. The project will also provide domestic and industrial water requirements in the Eastern Cape.

The department has initiated the raising of the Tzaneen Dam and construction of the new N'wamitwa Dam for the Groot Letaba River Water Development Project in Limpopo. The total estimated cost of the project is R4,2 billion with a projected completion date of 2019. The department has initiated the raising of the Tzaneen Dam and construction of the new N'wamitwa Dam for the Groot Letaba River Water Development Project in Limpopo. The total estimated cost of the project is R4,2 billion combined.

Rainwater harvesting

The Department is formulating the Rain Water Harvesting (RWH) Strategy as an adaptation to climate change. Climate change poses significant social, economic and environmental risks especially in developing countries. This then necessitates the implementation of high impact climate change response measures that will realise considerable mitigation, adaptation and broader socio-economic benefits.

It is in this context that DWS, in partnership with DEA, is developing a national rainwater harvesting strategy to provide a road-map for enhanced planning, development and scaled-up implementation of rainwater harvesting as a key component of South Africa's water resources and efforts to enhance climate resilience. The strategy will provide guidance for the implementation of a series of action programmes towards the mainstreaming of RWH in South Africa. This National RWH Strategy will also help serve as the guiding tool for district and local municipalities to effectively and economically put RWH into practice.

The DWS supports a national rainwater harvesting programme, which has a narrow but important focus on the construction of above and below-ground rainwater storage tanks by rural households for food gardens and other productive water uses.

Several municipalities now use roof rainwater tanks for domestic purposes. These have been found to be particularly effective when used in conjunction with other water supply options.

Though there are no hard figures yet on how many cubic millimetres per year rainwater harvesting can contribute, it is an option that can be implemented in a short timeframe.

Rainwater harvesting gives people who live in areas where reticulation has not as yet been implemented access to water. The programme targets rural communities through the installation of tanks and awareness campaigns.

A resource guideline was developed in 2017/2018 financial year to assist municipalities that are providing rainwater harvesting systems to communities as an interim service or to reduce demand on their water supply systems with best practices.In some areas Rainwater Harvesting Systems are provided as a drought relief but what the department wants to do with this programme is to advise municipalities to plan for alternative water sources or the "water mix" since municipalities seem to rely on surface water for water services and a lot of water schemes are failing because of dependency on a single source.It is the same source that is affected by issues of water allocation reform (not enough water for water services and other uses),climate change and droughts.The rainwater harvesting guideline is in the process of being advocated in the 2018/19 financial year.

Desalination strategy

The department has developed a supporting desalination strategy, which also includes desalination as a technology for treating water other than seawater for water reuse. Desalination of seawater could potentially provide an unlimited resource of fresh water. However, the rising cost of energy may be a deterrent.

As with other infrastructure projects with potential environmental impacts, the planning for a desalination plant will have to undergo an environmental impact assessment in compliance with the Nema of 1998.

The DWS will ensure that desalination is considered as an option for meeting future water requirements, in particular in coastal cities where there is sufficient electricity for desalination.

The target is not only to implement desalination in several locations in South Africa, but also to become an international knowledge centre in this particular field.

Role players

Consolidated water boards

The primary activity of water boards is to provide water services

(bulk potable and bulk wastewater) to other water services institutions within their respective service areas.

They may perform other activities under conditions set out in the Water Services Act of 1997. In certain situations, the Minister of Water Affairs may direct water boards to amend their business plans to meet all the requirements of the Water Services Act of 1997. By mid-2016, there were nine water boards in South Africa.

Rand Water

The entity's core mandate is to abstract raw water, which is then treated, transported, stored and finally delivered as potable water to municipalities and to some mines and industries around Johannesburg.

While Rand Water supplies water to approximately 12,3 million onsumers in Gauteng, its areas of operations have expanded to include parts of Limpopo, North West, Mpumalanga and the Free State.

Rand Water serves between 16 million and 19 million people, and 98% of its water abstraction is from the Vaal river system. Municipal customers account for 90% of total demand, with the balance being mainly direct supply to mines.

Spending on providing bulk water was projected to grow from R7,4 billion in 2016/17 to R10,3 billion in 2019/20 because of increases in raw water purchase costs, energy costs, chemical costs and labour costs.

Water purchases are expected to increase at an average rate of 13,5% and chemical costs at 17%. This is because of the inclusion of a charge for acid mine drainage, and deteriorating water quality at the Vaal catchment management area as a result of drought and flood conditions.

Rand Water derives its revenue from the sale of bulk water and work done on behalf of municipalities and the DWS. Total revenue was expected to grow at an annual rate of 14,7% over the medium term from R10,9 billion in 2016/17 to R16,5 billion in 2019/20, owing to projected tariff increases, from R6,4 per kilolitre in 2016/17 to R8,2 per kilolitre in 2019/20.

Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority (TCTA)

The TCTA is responsible for the development of bulk raw-water infrastructure. It also provides an integrated treasury management and financial advisory service to the DWS, water boards, municipalities and other entities that are linked to bulk raw-water infrastructure.

The TCTA is primarily responsible for off-budget projects. It also plays an important role in roviding financial advisory services (structuring and raising project finance, debt management and tariff setting), project implementation services, and other technical support to the DWS and water boards.

Over the medium term, the authority will focus on planning Phase 2 of the Lesotho Highlands water project and finding a short-term solution to acid mine drainage in the Witwatersrand.

These activities were expected to drive an increase in total expenditure at an average annual rate of 10,4% over the medium term, driven by expenditure in goods and services related particularly to operational and maintenance costs.

The TCTA plans to improve business processes over the medium term to deliver projects in a timely and cost-effective manner through improving key internal processes such as the turnaround time of the procurement of goods through increased efficiency. For projects where construction is completed, the TCTA ensures the debt is managed over the lifetime of the project and repaid in such a manner that the tariff remains constant in real terms, thereby ensuring affordability to the user.

Umgeni Water

Umgeni Water works with the DWS to build regional bulk water infrastructure that will enable it to provide bulk water and sanitation services, and serve water services institutions in KwaZulu-Natal.

The entity's focus over the medium term will be on planning, constructing, operating and maintaining regional bulk infrastructure in its service area.

It will take more responsibility for regional water resources infrastructure to achieve greater integration with bulk water and sanitation systems.

These activities will see a significant growth of expenditure in bulk water and wastewater treatment services.

To support Umgeni Water's rural development drive, R1,1 billion has been set aside for regional bulk infrastructure projects over the medium term.

The major projects that the entity will focus on over the medium term include the Mshwati bulk water supply, Greater Mpofana bulk water supply project and Phase 1 of the Lower Thukela bulk water supply project. The budget for acquisition of assets declined by 12,7% from R2 billion in 2016/17 to R1,3 billion in 2019/20, as it is expected that most projects will be completed towards the end of the medium term.

Water Trading Entity (WTE)

The WTE is mandated to undertake the construction of new water infrastructure such as dams, bulk distribution systems and pipelines, reservoirs, canals and wastewater treatment infrastructure through the water infrastructure build programme; and the rehabilitation and refurbishment of existing water resource infrastructure through the dam safety rehabilitation programme to ensure a sustainable water supply for both domestic and industrial use.

The entity plans to complete the construction of three raw water projects over the medium term.

The first is Mdloti River water development project in 2017/18, which will entail the raising of Hazelmere Dam wall to increase the water supply to Umgeni water for distribution to the KwaZulu-Natal north coast.

The second project that the entity plans to complete is the construction of the Groot Letaba River development project to meet the growing demand in the Tzaneen area.

The third project is Phase 2D of the Olifants River development project, which is the construction of a bulk distribution system between Steelpoort and Mooihoek.

The entity plans to complete these three projects in 2019/20.

Other new projects the entity anticipates to undertake over the medium term include Phase 2 of the Lesotho Water Highlands project, the long-term solution for acid mine drainage, Phases 2B and 2C of the Olifants River water resource development project, Phase 2A of the Mokolo Crocodile water augmentation and Phase 2 of the Mooi-Mgeni transfer scheme. These will be implemented by the TCTA.

The WTE will also focus on the operations, maintenance and refurbishment of existing infrastructure. The key infrastructure projects in this spending category will include the rebuilding of the Vlakfontein canal and the rehabilitation of Boskop, Vaalharts, Ncora, Pongolaspoort, Nzhelele and Lindleyspoort canals.

The entity plans to complete 90% of scheduled maintenance on this project each year with a provision for 10% deviation.

The entity will continue to supply raw water to strategic users such as industry, water boards and municipalities.

Water resources management activities such as monitoring the eco-status of 71 rivers each year remain an integral part of the WTE's work.

The entity plans to reduce the number of days for the payment and collection of outstanding debt from 150 in 2015/16 to 100 each year over the medium term. As a result, over the medium term, the revenue from the sale of raw water is expected to grow annually by 9%.

Other role players

The Breede-Gouritz Catchment Management Agency lays a key role in the use, protection and development of water resources in the Breede-Gouritz water management area. T

The Inkomati-Usuthu Catchment Management Agency plays a key role in the use, protection, and development of water resources in the Inkomati-Usuthu water management area.

The Komati River Basin Water Authority was established in terms of a treaty between South Africa and Swaziland relating to the water resources of the Komati River Basin. The basin primarily comprises the Driekoppies Dam in South Africa, commissioned in 1997, and the Maguga Dam in Swaziland, commissioned in 2002. The authority is governed by the Joint Water Commission, whose members are officials from the governments of Swaziland and South Africa.

The WRC was established in terms of the Water Research Act of 1971 and is listed as a public entity. The commission's mandate is to conduct research on water by determining needs and priorities for research, stimulating and funding water research, promoting the effective transfer of information and technology, and enhancing knowledge and capacity-building in the water sector. Research is informed by government policies, needs, and international trends.

Households access improved drinking water

As of 2016/17, 92,5% of households across the nation have had access to improved drinking water sources, according to General Household Survey Series VIII: Water and Sanitation, 2002 – 2016 report.

The report, which was released by Statistician General Pali Lehohla on Wednesday, showed that the Western Cape, Free State, Northern Cape and Gauteng provinces have almost universal access to improved drinking sources.

Using the Millennium Development Goals methodology, the Western Cape (99,4%), the Free State (99,3%), the Northern Cape (99,1%) and Gauteng (98,6%) reported almost universal access to improved drinking water sources.

Universal access to improved drinking water sources in households living in RDP dwellings was reported to be 100% in the Northern Cape and the Free State, while the Western Cape and Gauteng was 99,8% and 99,6%, respectively.

The report noted that although the Eastern Cape had the lowest percentage of households with access to improved drinking water sources (75,7%), the province reported the largest increase from 2002, when 60,9% reported accessing improved drinking water sources.

Households living in formal and informal dwellings had greater access to improved drinking water sources than households living in traditional dwellings.

Black Africans access to improved drinking water sources increased from 86,1% in 2002 to 91,77% in 2015.

Access to improved drinking water sources was greater for households living in Mangaung with 100% access, while households in Buffalo City, eThekwini and the City of Tshwane had the lowest access to improved drinking water sources.

According to the survey, nationally, 15% of households lived more than 500 m away from water sources.

Provincially 28,2% households in KwaZulu-Natal were most likely to reside more than 500 m away from the water source, followed by 16,3% households in Limpopo.

The report said during 2009, 88% households lived less than 200 m away from the outside-yard toilet facility, whereas in 2015, the percentage increased to 94%.

Nationally, the percentage of households with access to improved sanitation facilities increased from 62,3% to 80% in 2015.

The majority of households in the Western Cape (93,3%) and Gauteng (91%) had access to improved sanitation facilities, while about half in Limpopo (54%) and just below two-thirds in Mpumalanga (65,8%) had access to improved sanitation facilities.

It is notable that access to improved sanitation facilities grew most rapidly in Eastern Cape (+48,2%) between 2002 and 2015. The metros with the largest percentage of households with access to improved sanitation facilities were the City of Johannesburg (96,9%), Nelson Mandela Bay (94,6%) and the City of Cape Town (91,8%).

The metros with the lowest percentage of households with access to improved sanitation facilities were the City of Tshwane (82%) and eThekwini (83,5%).

The odds of households in other eight provinces to have access to unimproved sanitation facilities were greater than the odds of households in Western Cape.

Nationally, 1,2% of households reported using the bucket toilet system, with Western Cape recording the highest percentage (4%) of households using the bucket toilet system, followed by the Free State (2,7%) and the Northern Cape (2,4%).

The report noted that even though only 1,2% of households reported using the bucket toilet system, there is still a large proportion of households living in informal dwellings (6,8%) that reported using the bucket toilet system.

Resources

South Africa's water resources are, in global terms, scarce and extremely limited.

The precipitation per year for Africa is 22 300 km³, of which the evaporation rate is 80% and the runoff rate is 20%. Southern Africa only has 12,25% of the total water in Africa, making it a highly arid region.

Rainfall is, however, relatively higher in the northern and eastern parts of southern Africa (the Democratic Republic of Congo, Zambia and Mozambique) with the drier parts of the region including Namibia, Botswana and South Africa.

South Africa has an mean annual rainfall of approximately 500 mm, compared to the world's average of 860 mm. It is characterised by low, variably distributed rainfall as well as high

evaporation rates, resulting in the uneven distribution of run-off across the country.

The country experiences severe and prolonged hydrological droughts, which may last as long as 10 years at a time. The quality of water in South Africa is also negatively impacted by dissolved salts from host rocks in certain areas such as Namaqualand in the Northern Cape.

The surface water potential of the major drainage systems in South Africa are dominated by the Orange and the Limpopo river basins, which are shared with neighbouring countries.

Over 60% of the country's river flow comes from 20% of the land area. To overcome the uneven spread of water resources and to manage floods and drought, more than two thirds of the country's mean annual rainfall is currently stored in dams.

The country's water security is mainly reliant on fresh surface water, with ground water and return flows underused.

However, the freshwater available for use is currently at its limit, and alternative sources such as ground water needs to be further exploited. In addition, the country shares four major rivers with six neighbouring states, namely Zimbabwe, Botswana, Mozambique, Swaziland, Lesotho and Namibia. Therefore, international agreements on water sharing are in place on all of these river basins.

There is a well-developed infrastructure, with more than 4 395 registered dams in South Africa, including 350 dams belonging to the department, and a number of large-scale inter-basin water transfer schemes. Water services infrastructure covers more than 35 000 km of bulk pipelines and 200 000 km of reticulation systems that are managed by 152 water service authorities and providers.

However, this existing infrastructure needs maintenance and the country is already experiencing challenges with lack of focus on sustainable asset management. The schemes also require efficient and effective operations, for which specialised skills and capabilities at all levels are needed. Major challenges are experienced regarding the capabilities of water services authorities to effectively manage the schemes on a sustainable basis. This issue needs to be dealt with decisively through a review of the mandates and policies in relation to the management of water infrastructure, and available capacity.

Work is also required in terms of rolling out the establishment of appropriate institutions, such as regional water utilities, as well as to better leverage private sector support. Non-revenue water is also a challenge to be dealt with.

Medium to long-term capital investment plans must be based on up-to-date reconciliation of changing water requirements and water availability from surface water, groundwater, reuse, desalination of seawater and rainwater harvesting sources.

The main contributors to water quality problems and environmental concerns are mining (acidity and increased metals content), urban development (salinity, nutrients and microbiological), industries (chemicals and toxins) and agriculture (sediment, nutrients, agro-chemicals and salinity through irrigation return flows). Untreated or poorly treated wastewater is severely affecting the quality of water in many areas, as well as negatively impacting on the environment.

Climate change is expected to exacerbate the already substantial pressure on freshwater and estuarine ecosystems by altering rainfall patterns and the more frequent or intense occurance of events such changes in flow patterns, droughts and storms.

South Africa's water ecosystems are not in a healthy state. Of the 223 river ecosystem types, 60% are threatened, with 25% of these critically endangered. Less than 15% of river ecosystems are located within protected areas, of which many of which are threatened and degraded by upstream human activities. Of 792 wetland ecosystems, 65% have been identified as threatened and 48% as critically endangered.

A further key factor impacting on water quality is the treatment of wastewater. Maintenance of these systems is the responsibility of local government and is highly impacted by a lack of resources and requisite skills to manage and maintain the systems to the required standards, resulting in untreated effluent flowing into river systems, with detrimental effects on the ecosystems.

Acid mine drainage has also been reported from a number of areas in South Africa, including the Witwatersrand Gold Fields, the Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal Coal Fields and the O'Kiep Copper District.

The DWS must continue to support and lead improvements in water quality and environmental protection across the value chain through a range of interventions, including the assessment of water supply and wastewater treatment systems and the close monitoring of non-compliant systems in terms of the Water Services Act of 1997.

Dams must be evaluated in terms of dam safety regulations, and water management institutions must be monitored to ensure they in turn effectively monitor affiliated water users. Non-compliance will continue to be investigated and punitive action taken where applicable and possible.

In addition, the DWS must continue to monitor the level of compliance of mines against their water use entitlements. In this regard, the mine water management policy is in the process of being finalised and approved. Once in place, the intention is to implement the environmental levy on mines.

South Africa's challenge into the future is to ensure that there is fair and equitable redistribution of water resources across the various sectors. This should take into account the country's socio-political and economic transformation agenda. As the country has a limited resource base, with competing sectoral interests, trade-offs must be made in prioritising uses, affordability and sustainability.

South Africa is still heavily reliant on surface water and its further development with more than two-thirds of the country's mean annual runoff already stored in dams. Where additional water is still available, such as in the uThukela, Mzimvubu and Pongola basins, it is located in areas far from the existing centres of demand. It is thus important for South Africa to focus its water resource planning in the following areas:

- Ground water currently reflects only 9% use and is underused, undervalued and not well managed. With about 3 500 million m^3 of groundwater estimated to be available for further development, much scope exists to exploit the potential of ground water as a freshwater source.
- At 14%, water reuse is already a major component of the water mix, albeit mostly indirectly. Direct reuse, especially in the coastal areas, must be further encouraged
- There is also large scope for increasing desalination, which is currently providing less than 1% of the country's water needs. Inland measures are in place to desalinate acid mine water

and brackish water resources, while coastal areas have an opportunity to desalinate seawater.

From the above, the DWS is committed to improve integrated water resource management to ensure continued water security. This includes optimising dam storage and transfer systems, effectively managing the water resources mix and exploring various options for the reconciliation of water availability with demand.

The already constrained water resources is further impacted by the current prolonged dry spell coinciding with the drought legacy conditions in a number of provinces. The predictions of climate forecasting models indicates that dry spell effects could last for up to seven years. Therefore, the construction of additional bulk water storage capacity, such as the Lesotho Highlands Phase 2 project and others, are critical to ensuring water security in the long term.

Approximately 9,3% of available potable is water lost through leakage. This is water that the country cannot afford to lose, especially within the current prolonged drought. In the short term, the DWS's mitigation measures include the implementation of the "war on leaks" programme that will train youth to repair leaking taps and pipes in their communities.

In addition, an allocation of R350 million has been made to drought-related projects in the short term. Infrastructure would also be upgraded, rainwater harvested and water desalination projects would be expedited.

Through various communication campaigns, the consumers within the various sectors within agriculture, domestic, industrial, power and mining would be encouraged to limit their water consumption patterns especially during this drought period.

Dams and water schemes

In an attempt to respond adequately to demand and anticipate future demand, South Africa has built numerous large and medium-sized dams, and developed sophisticated inter-basin transfer schemes. The country now has more than 350 government-owned dams countrywide. They range in storage capacity from a volume of 5 500 million m^3 of water down to 0,2 million m^3.

Most water consumption can be attributed to drinking, irrigation, electricity, mining processes and industrial processes.

The DWS follows an integrated approach to managing South Africa's water resources. Proposed new water schemes have to comply with the NWRS, requiring that water demand management programmes be implemented before embarking on new infrastructure development.

Strict environmental impact assessments must also be performed in accordance with laws and regulations administered by the Department of Environmental Affairs, while the guidelines issued by the World Commission on Dams must also be followed.

Bulk infrastructure is a critical element of water services infrastructure and an integrated part of water services management.

Groundwater resources

An estimated 80 000 to 100 000 boreholes are being drilled annually. By May 2017, there was an estimated 252 240 boreholes in South Africa.

The bulk of the records were obtained from state-drilled boreholes. The National Groundwater Archive is a web-enabled database system that allows capturing, viewing, modifying and extraction (dissemination) of groundwater related data.

The DWS has a legal obligation to ensure that water resources (including groundwater) are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner.

The National Water Act of 1998 requires the establishment of national monitoring and information systems as the availability of information about water resources is regarded as critical to the main purpose of the Act.

The need for groundwater data and information continues to increase to assist in planning to provide water to people, monitoring, drought relief and climate change

Groundwater, despite its relatively small contribution to bulk water supply, represents an important and strategic water resource in South Africa, since it services between 52% and 82% of community water-supply schemes in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

The lack of perennial streams in the semi-desert to desert parts means that two thirds of South Africa's surface area depend largely on groundwater.

Although irrigation is the largest user, the supply to more than 300 towns and smaller settlements is very important.

Through Government's commitment towards meeting the basic water needs of communities, groundwater has become a strategic resource for village water supply in the wetter parts of the country, because of its cost-effectiveness in a widely scattered small-scale user situation.

Groundwater also contributes considerably to river flow. This requires reserving a significant share of groundwater resources to protect aquatic ecosystems in terms of the National Water Act of 1998. The maximum quantity of groundwater that can be developed economically is about 6 000 million m^3 a year, while some 4 000 million m^3 of groundwater (mainly in the dry season) contributes to surface water flow annually.

Southern Africa also has large hidden underground water reserves, with 12 to 15 aquifer systems, of which three are considered very important for the future.

In South Africa, a substantial resource lies in a massive dolomite aquifer system that covers a vast area, extending from Springs and Brakpan, east of Johannesburg to Lenasia, south of the city; Zuurbekom, Carltonville and Magaliesberg on the West Rand; Kuruman in the Northern Cape and even as far as parts of Botswana.

The Witwatersrand mining basin's aquifer storage capacity is about the size of Lake Kariba.

Managing and developing water resources

To facilitate the management of water resources, the country has been divided into 19 catchment-based water management areas, of which 11 share international rivers.

Sufficient water resources have been developed and are available to ensure that all requirements for water can reasonably be met, without impairing the socio-economic development of the country.

Where feasible, special management techniques may be applied to improve water quality to appropriate standards for particular uses. The quality of groundwater varies according to hydrogeological conditions and anthropogenic impact. However,

most major aquifer systems contain potable water.

To underscore its commitment to the pursuit of universal access to water, the DWS is investing in new infrastructure and maintaining and rehabilitating dysfunctional systems to ensure operational efficiency.

This is particularly relevant to developing water infrastructure to meet the specific needs of different rural communities. Closely related to rural development is the need for mainstream support to local government to sustain the infrastructure underpinning efficient service delivery to communities.

Managing water quality and wastewater

To ensure compliance with minimum water quality norms and standards, the DWS started the annual Blue Drop and Green Drop assessments to guarantee that water and wastewater systems are managed according to set norms and standards.

The department has set a target of 99% compliance with drinking water quality standards and 80% compliance with wastewater effluent standards.

This incentive-based regulation system aims to improve the quality of municipal drinking water quality and management of wastewater.

Because of the scale and magnitude of resources needed for the national certification programme, the Green Drop and Blue Drop programmes take place every second year, alternating with each other. In a programme's "gap" year, progress in the wastewater sector is tracked and reported via the assessment of the cumulative risk status of treatment systems.

The DWS was honoured to receive international recognition in terms of Environmental Engineering Excellence for the Blue Drop and Green Drop Certification programmes from the American Academy for Environmental Engineers. This academy is affiliated to the International Water Association.

Programmes and initiatives

Integrated Water Resources Management (IWRM)

The DWS, with the assistance of the Royal Danish Government, initiated a programme in 2000 to pilot IWRM approaches in three water management areas of South Africa: Crocodile West-Marico (mainly in North West), Mvoti-uMzimkulu (KwaZulu-Natal) and Olifants-Doorn (mainly in the Western Cape).

These water management areas were selected as they represent a cross-section of water resources conditions as well as water-use conditions and user interests.

The IWRM requires intensive planning to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable management of water resources and for coping with conflicting demands.

Back to Basics Programme

While the Back to Basics Programme is focused on 27 district municipalities, the PICC has given the DWS the task to intervene when there are problems.

These interventions shall be on a case-by-case basis in accordance with legislation to safeguard the well-being of communities.

In partnership with the Eastern Cape and North West provincial governments, respectively, the DWS intervened in municipalities that have been placed under administration. These include the Makana Local Municipality in the Eastern Cape, as well as the Madibeng Local Municipality and Ngaka Modiri Molema District Municipality in North West.

An important element of these interventions has been the successful use of the water boards of Amatola, Magalies and Sedibeng, respectively, to supplement the capacity of the department to improve operational performance and build new infrastructure where necessary.

In Limpopo, the DWS has appointed the Lepelle Northern Water as an implementing agent for the Mopani District Municipality Revitalisation Programme, which includes various water treatment works, wastewater treatment works, boreholes and pipelines.

In Bushbuckridge, Mpumalanga, through Rand Water, the DWS executed an emergency intervention to solve operational problems that were causing water shortages and also accelerating the implementation of water reticulation infrastructure.

In each of the identified municipalities, qualified and experienced personnel are being deployed to work on, and implement, a road map for a "Water Secure and Safe Sanitation Future", using budgets pooled from national and provincial governments and from the affected municipalities.

The Water and Sanitation Revolution

The key strategic priorities for the water and sanitation revolution are:

- water resource management
- water infrastructure development
- water and sanitation services
- policy regulation.

The key pillars of this revolution are:

- water conservation and demand management that involves the use of innovation and regulation to reclaim water already developed and available for use
- improving the water mix involves the increased use of a variety of water sources in addition to the country's current reliance on surface water.

Brits Water Treatment Works

The DWS, working together with the Madibeng Local Municipality, set aside R381 million to address water challenges in Majakaneng through the upgrade of the Brits Water Treatment Works (BWTW) which also supplies the Majakaneng area.

The works will ensure that the BWTW has an additional production capacity of 20 megalitres per day. Work is underway at the BWTW with civil works (Phase 1). It will be implemented by a DWS construction unit as contractors and two professional service providers have been appointed for electrical and mechanical works.

The BWTW is expected to be completed by 2017/18.

In the short term, DWS allocated R1,1 million to the Madibeng local municipality to address the water challenges in Majakaneng, which are mainly attributed to vandalism and leakages in the water supply system.

The Madibeng Local Municipality embarked on leak detection exercises and filling the reservoirs. The municipality started with the distribution of water to identify and repair visible leaks. This required isolation of certain sections of Majakaneng and it was expected that not all sections would water.

The DWS and Madibeng Local Municipality will continue cooperating to deal with the water leakages, which cause low water pressure in Majakaneng, resulting in water shortages in some areas.

The DWS, working together with the Madibeng Local Municipality, set aside R381 million to address water challenges in Brits,and its surrounding areas through the upgrade of the Brits Water Treatment Works (BWTW) which also supplies the Lethlabile, Maboloka, Jericho, Sonop, Madidi, Makau, Muthutlong, and Majakaneng area.

The works will ensure that the BWTW has an additional production capacity of 20 mega litres per day which at the completion will be 80Ml/d. The first phase which was refurbishment of 12 filters was completed in year 2015. The second phase which is the upgrade of the water works to additional capacity of 20Ml/d and abstraction point. The anticipated completion date shifted to August 2019 due to financial constraints. The work is underway at the BWTW with civil works (Phase 2). It is implemented by the DWS construction unit as the main contractor, with involvement of the cal sub-contractors and two professional service providers have been appointed for electrical and mechanical works.

DWS allocated R12 million to the Madibeng local municipality to address the water challenges in Majakaneng, particularly the new stands without the water reticulation and standpipes, as the short term intervention.

The other interim intervention is taking place in Jericho, Maboloka, Madidi and Mmakau due to shortage of water and drying up of boreholes.

The DWS will continue to provide the support to Madibeng municipality to fulfil its constitutional obligation by providing basic services within its jurisdiction.

Water Tribunal

The Water Tribunal was established in 1998 to hear appeals against directives and decisions made by responsible authorities, CMAs or water management agencies about matters covered by the National Water Act of 1998, such as the issuing of licences to use water. It is an independent body and can hold hearings anywhere in the country.

The WRC and the Judicial Services Commission recommend people to be included as members of the Water Tribunal, and the Minister of Water Affairs appoints them. The members have to be familiar with water management, engineering, law and other related matters, and they are given administrative support by the DWS.

Strategic Water Partners Network – South Africa (SWPN-SA)

SWPN-SA is one of South Africa's most innovative public-private civil-society sector partnerships, making progress that would not have been possible.

The efforts of the SWPN-SA are integral to the NWRS, which the DWS released in 2012.

A cornerstone of the SWPN-SA is developing innovation that leverages the strength and expertise of the DWS, the South African private sector, civil society and expert organisations.

Ncorha Water Treatment Works

Former President Jacob Zuma officially launched the Ncorha Water Treatment Works at Bhanti village, Intsika Yethu Local Municipality, in the Eastern Cape in June 2016.

The Ncorha Water Treatment Works forms part of the Government Infrastructure Development Programme, which is aimed at providing services to communities and transform the economic landscape of the country.

The value of the project is R64 million and was funded by the DWS. It is estimated to benefit 18 429 families from 208 villages in the four surrounding municipalities. In addition, the project has created 188 jobs, with local people, the youth and women being major beneficiaries.

The upgrading of the water treatment works, construction of reservoirs and pumpstations is complete. The construction of the last reservoir commenced in November 2017.

Lushushwane Water Project

In April 2017, the then Minster of Water and Sanitation, Ms Nomvula Mokonyane performed a sod-turning to mark the commencement of Phase 2 & 3 of the Lushushwane Bulk Water Supply Project at Bettysgoed Village, in Mpumalanga.

The Lusushwane Bulk Water Supply project is aimed at providing water to the rural communities of the Chief Albert Luthuli Local Municipality. The project will benefit at least 16 285 people in the vicinity.

The project, from Phase 1 to Phase 3, is funded by the DWS with the Gert Sibande District Municipality as the implementation agent. The scheme, in all its phases, is estimated to the value of around R90 151 000 (This estimate was determined in 2014, thus may increase due to costs escalations). On completion, it will benefit local communities including Bettysgoed, Smithfield, Oshoek, Lochiel, Robinsdale, Aankomst, Pampoen, Houtbosch and Hartbeeskop.

The objective of this project is to provide adequate and sustainable water supply to the existing and future demand within Lushushwane over the 20year horizon estimate to increase to 5,014 households (21,934 people), through refurbishment, upgrading and construction of new infrastructure.

Phase 1 of 3 was completed in December 2017, however will only be commissioned once phase 2 of 3 is completed. Phase 2 & 3 is currently under construction and is expected to be completed by 02 December 2019, however as at 31 January 2018 the project is at 10%.

The area is currently being supplied from the existing 1,8Ml/day river scheme and boreholes (hand and electrified boreholes) and once all phases are completed, the scheme will be able to meet the current demand of 2,9Ml/d. Subsequent to the completion of all phases, the scheme will be transferred to the Chief Albert Luthuli Local Municipality as the Beneficiary, thus to be responsible for the operations and maintenance of the Scheme.

National Water Resources Infrastructure (NWRI) Programme

The NWRI ensures reliable supply of water from bulk raw-water resources infrastructure. The programme sources funding to implement, operate and maintain bulk raw-water resources infrastructure efficiently and effectively by strategically managing risks and assets.

Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant Programme

Regional bulk infrastructure is defined as the infrastructure required to connect water on a macro or subregional scale, over vast distances, with internal bulk and reticulation systems or any bulk infrastructure that may have an impact on water resources in terms of quality and quantity. The DWS is responsible and accountable for the management of funding, which is administered by the National Treasury.

Over 16 000 households will benefit from the R52 million Makapanstad and Mathibestad Bulk Water Project, which aims to address water shortages in villages in the Moretele Local Municipality in North West.

Upon completion, the project will address water shortages in the villages of Kwa-Mmatlwaela, Tladistad, Leeukraal, Kgomo-Kgomo, Kontante, Moretele, Makapanstad, Phomolong, Potoane, Prieska, Mathibestad, Thulwe and Opperman.

The Mathibestad and Makapanstad Bulk Water Project is funded through the Provincial Infrastructure Grant and Municipal Infrastructure Grant.

Regional bulk infrastructure is defined as the infrastructure required to connect water on a macro or sub regional scale, over vast distances, with internal bulk and reticulation systems or any bulk infrastructure that may have an impact on water resources in terms of quality and quantity. The DWS is responsible and accountable for the management of funding, which is administered by the National Treasury.

Over 35 000 households will benefit from the R222 760 736 allocated to Moretele South Bulk Water Supply, which aims to address water shortages in villages in the Moretele from Klipdrift to Babelegi and Babelegi to Ga Motla within the Moretele Local Municipality in North West. The Klipdrift Water Treatment Works was completed in May 2016 and handed over to Magalies Water for Operation and Maintenance.

Upon completion, the project will address water shortages in the villages of Bosplaas, Bosplaas AH, Botshabelo, Carousel View, Dannhauser, Dertig, Ga-Moeka, Ga-Monamo, Ga-Motle, Greenside, Hani View, Kgomo-Kgomo, Kromkuil, Kwa-Mmathlwaela, Kwa-Ratsiepane, Leboneng, Legkraal, Makapanstad, Mathibestad, Maubane-Moretele, Mmakaunyane, Modiane-B, Mogogelo, Moretele, Opperman, Papatso, Potwana, Prieska, Rabosula, Swartdamstad, The Carousel Casino, Thulwe, Tladistad and Wynandskraal.

Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs)

SIP 18, which was approved by the PICC, aims to address water supply and sanitation backlogs to millions of households.

The PICC's 18 SIPs are divided into geographic, energy, spatial and social infrastructure development projects. These projects – headed by different departments – cover more than 150 specific infrastructure interventions in rail, road and ports, dams, irrigation systems, sanitation and electricity.

This programme is a 10-year plan that will address the estimated backlog of adequate water to 1,4 million households and that of basic sanitation to 2,1 million households.

SIP 18 is expected to fast-track the issuing of water licences, expand the capacity of the water system, speed up build programmes, address backlog projects and rehabilitate and upgrade existing water and sanitation infrastructure.

The project, which will also focus on priority small towns and rural areas where water service delivery is a problem, is also expected to create jobs, raise the quality of service delivery of water around the country and extend water supply to areas that are either underserviced or unserviced.

The department identified several projects that will be used to drive SIP 18, including the Sedibeng Regional Sewer Scheme, which is a R5-billion project to be implemented in the area.

Rand Water's BG3 pipeline, which is sub-Saharan Africa's largest water pipeline, running from the Vaal Dam to its Zoekfontein Plant, which is 8,6 km away, was launched in June 2013. The pipeline will increase water distribution in this district and surrounding areas.

The BG3 pipeline runs adjacent to Rand Water's existing BG1 and BG2 pipelines that supply water to Gauteng and parts of the neighbouring Free State, Mpumalanga and North West.

Once in commission, the BG3 pipeline will allow for Rand Water's two pipelines (BG1 and BG2) to be shut down for refurbishment and maintenance. The BG3 pipeline will augment raw-water capacity to Zuikerbosch by up to 2 100 megalitres per day, which will accommodate the region's projected growth in water demand to 2030.

The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project was designed to resolve the water supply problems to Eskom's Duvha and Matla power stations in Mpumalanga.

The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project augments the Komati Water Scheme from the Vaal Eastern Subsystem to help Eskom overcome its water supply challenges. The Matla power station reservoir will in turn also provide water to Kusile power station, which reached another major milestone with Unit 1 reaching full load in March 2017.

This means Unit 1 is running at the full design and operating capacity – 800 MW – taking Kusile one step closer to commercial operation. The initial synchronisation of Unit 1 took place in December 2016.

The interaction of the water resources of the Komati, Usutu and Vaal River systems provides a higher assurance of water supply to all Eskom's thermal power stations and other water users in Mpumalanga. The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project will be able to deliver an additional 57 million m^3 of water a year to the Komati Water Scheme. On the department's instruction, the TCTA is financing and implementing the project which is part of SIP 18.

Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme

The Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme ensures the continued structural and operational safety of the dams owned by the DWS.

Support for resource-poor farmers

In accordance with the National Water Act of 1998 as well as regulations on financial assistance to resource-poor farmers, the Minister may allocate assistance to those farmers who fulfil requirements.

To ensure that water resources are protected, the regulations explicitly state that financial assistance may be granted and used only for activities that ensure water is protected, used, developed, conserved and managed in a sustainable and equitable manner.

Water Allocation Reform

The Water Allocation Reform Programme's objectives are

to ensure equitable access to water, eradicate poverty and promote social and economical development.

The programme's priorities are to meet the water needs of historically disadvantaged people, ensure their participation in water resources management and promote the beneficial and efficient use of water in the public interest.

Licences are required for storage and use of water, among other things. To facilitate the availability of water for historically disadvantaged people, attention is also given to the allocation of water following principles of equity and sustainability.

Women in Water

The Women in Water Project aims to strengthen the active participation of rural women in water resource management. Women identify water-related challenges in their communities and conceptualise ideas to address them. They are registered for Women in Water awards. The national winners receive cash prizes which are used for further project development and implementation.

Learning Academy

There is a shortage of skills in the water and sanitation sector. The DWS, as the custodian of South Africa's water resources, through its Learning Academy External Bursary Scheme, provides bursaries yearly to aid in closing this gap. The DWS welcomes all applicants who would like to pursue careers that are in line with the department's core business.

The DWS scheme boasts an all-inclusive package recognised in South Africa as being highly competitive. The DWS External Bursary Scheme aims to attract exceptional young and innovative talent to the department.

Students pursuing the following fields of study are eligible to apply: Analytic Chemistry, Aquatic Sciences, Biochemistry, Biological Sciences, Water and Sanitation, Geographical Information Systems, Civil/Electrical/Mechanical Engineering, Water Resource Management, Environmental Law/Management/Science, Water Utilisation, Cartography, Geo-chemistry, Geo-hydrology, Geology, Hydrology, Limnology, Microbiology, Surveying and Water Care.

The purpose of the learning academy is to:

- investigate technical and scarce skills development needs within the department
- address technical and scarce skills gaps in the overall water supply value chain
- address scarce skills gaps in specific technical areas of the department
- plan and build capacity for medium and long-term needs of the department and the water and sanitation sector
- develop and implement structured training for engineering and scientific graduate trainees
- develop and propose interventions (regarding mentoring, skills and knowledge transfer, and professional registration processes) with the Engineering Council of South Africa, the South African Council for Natural and Scientific Professions and the Surveying Council of South Africa in line with the Occupations Specific Dispensation.

A total of 842 bursaries have been granted since 2007 to learners at the identified Institutions of Higher Learning.

By December 2017, 280 Learner Interns had successfully completed their experiential training with the Learning Academy. A new group of 21 Engineering and Surveying Learner Interns joined the Learning Academy in January 2017 and is presently busy with their specific structured training programmes. This includes learners from the Public-Private partnership the department has signed with Izakhiwo Trust in 2017.

In total, 728 Graduate Trainees joined the programme since 2007. Currently there is 140 GTs in the programme.

Management of water conservation and demand

Although South Africa has been classified as a water-scarce country, water from the source to the consumer is often lost as a result of inappropriate and inadequate asset management.

Lack of education on the part of the consumer also leads to inefficiency in the day-to-day use of water. The loss of water depletes the country's resources and reduces revenue to water services authorities.

The municipalities' revenue is lost due to leaking pipes, illegal connections and poor billing systems.

In terms of the water-use efficiency programme, 68 municipalities were supported in implementing water conservation and water demand measures to reduce water loss by 519 million m³. Measures to improve efficient water use in the catchment areas were also undertaken and the volume of water loss was reduced to 32 million m³.

Water leaks account for nearly 36% of the nation's unaccounted for water and costs the country about R7 billion annually.

Realising that South Africa is a water-scarce country, the DWS is also putting in place medium to long-term interventions that are intended to reduce the risks for water scarcity in the future.

These include:

- rainwater harvesting (drinking water, water for livestock, water for irrigation)
- integrating groundwater and surface water use in the future
- desalination at a large scale
- invest in innovative water-saving solutions, such as the Drop-the-Block campaign
- incorporating all municipal and privately owned dams into the management system or the future
- implementing further transfer schemes to improve drought resilience
- building additional storage capacity
- rolling out large-scale reuse of water (recycling of effluent, focus on coastal towns where treated effluent is disposed of via sea outfalls and not taken into account in return flows).

Enhanced Local Government Support Approach

A rapid response unit in the department addresses poor performance of water and wastewater systems, which has resulted in community protests in some cases.

The unit deals with proactive and reactive non-compliance cases of municipal service delivery. The unit's specialists enable the department to intervene directly in high-risk operational situations, where the lives of citizens and the environment are under threat because of water and wastewater treatment failures.

Freshwater Programme

Recognising the value and threatened status of South Africa's

freshwater biodiversity, and the need to build competence and leadership in this area, the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) has established a programme focusing on freshwater biodiversity.

The Freshwater Programme aims to grow and consolidate freshwater activities within SANBI.

The Freshwater Programme focuses on supporting collaborative freshwater initiatives. These include Working for Wetlands, the National Wetland Inventory, National Freshwater Ecosystems Priority Areas Project, a wetlands mitigation banking scheme with the Grasslands Programme and coal-mining industry, and water-related payments for ecosystem services pilot projects.

Key to the programme's operation will be the further development of strategic relationships with other organisations with shared objectives.

This includes managing the Working for Wetlands Programme on behalf of the departments of water and sanitation, environmental affairs and agriculture, forestry and fisheries. Working for Wetlands champions the protection, rehabilitation and sustainable use of South Africa's wetlands through cooperative governance and partnerships.

Monitoring programmes

River flow is monitored at 1 200 flow-gauging stations and some 260 major reservoirs. The evaporation and rainfall station network has 360 stations.

The oldest flow-gauging station still operating in South Africa is on the Mooi River near Potchefstroom in North West.

There are 21 operational rainfall stations in the mountains of the Western Cape and five in the Mpumalanga escarpment. Observations are relayed through a cellular short message system.

Water levels are monitored at some 1 000 observation boreholes across South Africa. Particular attention is given to monitoring in dolomitic areas. In addition, a small network of rain gauges monitors rainwater quality.

The importance of qualitative information on South Africa's water resources has led to an increased drive towards creating a national water-quality monitoring network.

The formal protection, restoration and rehabilitation of wetlands is strengthened through improved land-use planning, land and development management policies, as well as operational and regulatory means at national, provincial and local level.

Adopting of ecosystem-based approaches and implementing the open-space planning and management programmes adds impetus to the protection of these systems and associated services, especially at local government level.

It requires integrated approaches and the involvement of multiple sectors, particularly those dealing with human settlements, development and planning.

The DWS is also designing programmes to assess and report on the radiological (radioactivity) and toxicological quality status of the country's water resources.

National Chemical Monitoring Programme (NCMP)

The NCMP assesses and reports on the chemical status of water resources in South Africa. The main water-quality challenges for domestic water users are high levels of dissolved salts and, in some places, high fluoride concentration. The other challenges facing irrigated agriculture are the high sodium-absorption ratio, high electrical conductivity, high pH and high levels of chloride.

Another global challenge affecting South Africa is eutrophication or excessive plant (including algae) growth in dams. This is because of high levels of nutrient input from point sources of pollution and diffuse sources of pollution from catchments.

Annual reports indicate that 50% of dams in South Africa are seriously affected (hypertrophic), while the rest range in quality from good (oligotrophic) to poor (mesotrophic).

Another problem is the sporadic outbreak of cholera and other water-borne diseases, mainly because of poor sanitation and hygiene at household level. The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are prone to cholera outbreaks.

River Eco-status Monitoring Programme (REMP)

The REMP evolved from the River Health Programme, replacing the programme in 2016. It is a component of the National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP).

The REMP focuses on the monitoring of the ecological conditions in river ecosystems as they are reflected by the system drivers and biological responses (instream and riparian).

Integrated Water Quality Management Strategy

The pollution of South Africa's water resources, both surface and underground water, not only adversely affects human and environmental health but has severe consequences for the economy and social well-being.

In response to the country's need to take an improved integrated approach to Water Quality Management (WQM), the DWS recently developed an integrated WQM Strategy.

This strategy sets forth a number of strategic objectives, each supported by key actions, which collectively aim to ensure that "Government, in partnership with private sector and civil society, secures water that is fit for use, for all, forever!" These actions range from the need to strengthen institutions to the need to improve monitoring and information management and to strengthen our regulation of activities that degrade water quality.

Managing water resources under a changing climate

With climate change, water resources that are already under pressure due to increasing water demand, will be under even greater stress in the future. Already, physical evidence suggests that there are changes in historical rain patterns and intensities, as observed in the increasing temperature and drought trends.

Water distribution in South Africa is spatially skewed, with decreasing rainfall and increasing evaporation from east to west.

Even though rainfall trends cannot be clearly defined, it can be said with high confidence that potential impacts of climate change in South Africa on water availability will be negative. Just with increasing temperatures alone without considering other climatic and non-climatic factors, evaporation rates will increase and that will affect water availability. Climate change impacts on the water sector will thus; amplify the current existing conditions.

The DWS has made good progress in trying to understand the impacts of climate change on the different WMAs through conducting Risk and Vulnerability Assessment Studies, and

accordingly suggested adaptation strategies as appropriate. These studies reveal that, for example, catchments in the eastern side of the country, e.g. Mzimvubu-Tsitsikamma WMA, rainfall has shown an increasing trend and the area is also projected to experience increasing rain days both in the intermediate and distant futures.

This however comes with other challenges such as severe erosion and siltation. Evaporation rates in most cases have been shown to exceed precipitation, becoming relatively higher in areas where it rains less, for example in the Lower Vaal and Lower Orange catchments.

What needs to be considered even further is not only the direct impacts of climate change on the water sector, but secondary impacts on other water dependent sectors, such as Agriculture, Mining and Energy. As such, any adverse impacts of climate change, may negatively affect progress towards development in a number of economic sectors in the country.

National Water and Sanitation Master Plan

The development of the National Water and Sanitation Master Plan (NW&SMP) was launched by the Deputy Minister of Water and Sanitation during the National Dialogue held on 22 May 2017. The NW&SMP aims at mobilising the commitment and efforts of all role players and stakeholders in the water and sanitation sector towards collectively achieving the desired future state of the sector, as defined by the Government's vision, goals and targets until 2030 (NDP, SDG's, MTSF's and other key drivers). It will provide a critical overview of the present state in the sector and the key challenges it is currently facing, together with a consolidated plan of actions required to enable the achievement of the set targets.

The plan of actions will include a detailed schedule of consolidated and prioritised interventions, actions, investments, projects and initiatives. For each action, the plan will define specific intermediate and final targets, the parties responsible for their achievement, the deadlines for delivery and the estimated costs or other required resources. The achievements will be monitored and evaluated annually by a dedicated PMU managed by the DWS. The NW&SMP will be a living document, which will be updated bi-annually to reflect the dynamics in the sector.

The NW&SMP will act as the implementation tool for the NWSRSS and the two documents will be aligned. The draft NW&SMP will be available at the end of March 2018, and will be tabled for approval by Cabinet in the year 2018/19.

National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme

The NAEHMP is a national programme managed by Resource Quality Services with support from the WRC, CSIR and various regional and provincial authorities.

It is responsible for managing aquatic ecosystems. It focuses on the biological attributes of a river that serve as indicators of its ecological health. The NAEHMP's main objectives are to:

- generate a national perspective of the health of aquatic ecosystems in South Africa
- develop the capacity and information base required to enable the DWS and other role players to report on the status of and trends in the ecological health of South Africa's river systems, in an objective and scientifically sound manner
- generate information products and audit-management strategies that could assist in distinguishing between aquatic ecosystems exposed to sustainable use and those experiencing ecological deterioration.

The NAEHMP comprises three separate monitoring programmes namely:

- The River EcoStatus Monitoring Programme (REMP): This is the oldest component of the NAEHMP. It focuses on the monitoring of ecological conditions of river ecosystems as it is reflected by the system drivers and biological responses. The basis of the REMP is the establishment of a reference condition derived from best available information. Present conditions (Ecological Category) for the different indicators are determined as a percentage change from reference. The REMP is built upon the use of particular models incorporating existing approved EcoStatus models. The assessment can be done on a sub quaternary or site level and includes the use of the Index of Habitat Integrity (IHI), Fish Response Assessment Index (FRAI), Macroinvertebrate Response Assessment Index (MIRAI), Vegetation Response Assessment Index (VEGRAI) and Integrated Ecostatus. Monitoring is conducted on a quarterly basis and technical reports produced annually.

Currently a number of provinces are only partially implementing the REMP focussing mostly on the Macroinvertebrates and habitat components but the programme is fully implemented in the Inkomati- Usuthu as well as the Breede-Gouritz, Berg-Olifants and Pongola-Mtamvuna Water Management Areas. Information obtained through the REMP is also used in monitoring the biological and Habitat components of the Resource Quality Objectives (RQOs).

- The National Estuaries Monitoring Programme (NEsMP): This purpose of this programme is the monitoring of water quality, physic-chemical and biological aspects for determining long-term trends and changes in the condition of South African estuaries. The NEsMP coordinates national monitoring efforts and provide support in the form of sampling equipment, training, data management and information dissemination, while collaborating institutions collect physic-chemical data and water samples. The programme was tested on 28 Estuaries over a five year period from 2012 to 2017 and is now implemented on 24 Estuaries.
- The National Wetland Monitoring Programme (NWMP): In 2016 the Water Research Commission completed the National Wetland Monitoring Programme design based on minimising duplication of effort while maximising the value of outputs of wetland assessment and monitoring, finding suitable methods for prioritizing wetland to be assessed and monitored, adaptive management and maximum engagement and participation by stakeholders. This programme has not been implemented yet, but aims to assess & monitor the extent of wetlands, the threats to and the change in the present ecological state (PES) and ecosystem services provided by, wetlands in South Africa. It is a "state-of-wetland" reporting programme, designed to demonstrate trends in the state or integrity (biological, physical & chemical components of its ecosystem & their interactions) of wetlands over time.

National Toxicity Monitoring Programme

The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme reports on the

status of dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane and other persistent organic pollutants. This information is reported internationally to the Stockholm Convention through the Department of Environmental Affairs.

The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme was designed to assess the status of water resource through measuring the concentration of a selection of priority pollutants at a number of "hot spots" and also assessing the toxicity of the water to some aquatic organisms through direct measurement of effect.

The priority pollutant selection is aligned to the extent possible with South Africa's responsibility for reporting under the Stockholm Convention. The geographic distribution of monitoring points is still largely determined by fiscal and operational constraints. It currently focuses on the upper reaches of the Crocodile (West)-Marico- and Olifants River catchments.

The combination of chemical and biotic assessment in conjunction with the other national monitoring programmes also supports strategic and operational decision making by identifying areas of impairment of fitness for use.

The first five years of monitoring indicated that the persistent priority pollutant concentrations were generally low but that mild seasonal toxicity occurs, possibly in conjunction with agricultural activity. It also tends to confirm that the major human exposure route of DDT (used in malaria vector control) is unlikely to be through the water. Future development includes extending analyses to riverine sediments.

Education and awareness

Youth development and National Water Week

Sub-Directorate Youth Development is responsible for the co-ordination of Youth Development programmes within the Department of Water and Sanitation and the Water and Sanitation sector. The activities of the conducted by the unit are guided by the Youth Accord, National Youth Policy vision 2020 which concentrate on the integrated approach towards job creation, skills development and Entrepreneurship. A Youth Development strategy has been developed as a guiding document towards meeting the commitments made in the AMCOW Youth Development Strategy. In the spirit of consultation and the promotion of dialogue between Young people involved in the sector, the unit is planning on hosting its second Youth Indaba during Youth Month 2018 to enhance the Youth Development roadmap for the sector in order to operationalise the Youth Strategy.

The National Water Week is an awareness week campaign by the DWS. It serves as a powerful campaign mechanism reiterating the value of water, the need for sustainable management of this scarce resource and the role water plays in eradicating poverty and underdevelopment in South Africa. The campaign seeks to continue building on the ongoing awareness creation within the broader South African community.

This awareness creation is coupled with the responsibility that every citizen must take in ensuring the integrity of South Africa's water resources and its efficient use.

The linkages between water services, supply, resource management, poverty eradication, social and economic development were emphasised in a number of innovative ways. The campaign is influenced by local needs and international sectoral trends.

The National Water Week will take place from 19 to 23 March 2018 under the theme "Access to safe water by 2030 – possible through nature", which also coincide with World Water Day and National Human Rights Day. The theme was adopted In line with Millennium Development Goals and also in line with the International theme for World Water Day 2018, which is "Nature for Water".

Regional and international cooperation and initiatives

In line with the DWS's regional and international responsibilities in the water sector, the department entered into collaborative relationships with countries such as Lesotho, Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, DRC, Swaziland in the region.

- Mozambique and Swaziland on the Inkomati and Maputo rivers
- Botswana, Lesotho and Namibia on the establishment of the Orange Senqu River Commission
- Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique on the establishment of the Limpopo Watercourse Commission
- Lesotho on the Lesotho Highlands Water Project
- Swaziland on the Komati River Development Project.

These agreements improve South Africa's bilateral and multilateral relations in the African Union. All the countries involved benefit, while sharing development costs.

South Africa shares four of its major river systems with six immediate neighbouring countries, namely Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland and Zimbabwe.

In the area of shared river basins, South Africa continued participating in joint water commissions to form part of Africa bilaterals with Botswana on Joint Permanent Cooperation and with Mozambique regarding the breach of the Usuthu River, where a feasibility study was completed.

South Africa also formed global relations with countries such as Iran, China, Denmark, Russia, Mexico, South Korea, Australia, Germany, the Netherlands and Japan.

Acid Mine Drainage

Water and Sanitation launched the Eastern Acid Mine Drainage Treatment Plant, which ensures that the rising water levels in the abandoned Grootvlei mine do not contaminate groundwater.

The Eastern Basin Plant in Springs is one of the largest of its kind in the world, treating approximately 110 megalitres per day.

The plant is among the three main basins in the Witwatersrand Goldfields. These include the western basin in the Krugersdorp area, central basin in the Germiston area and the eastern basin in the Springs area. Both western and central basins have been launched and are running smoothly.

The first long-term solution to acid mine drainage was launched at the Central Basin Acid Mine Drainage Treatment Plant in Germiston in May 2016. This was the commencement of several integrated projects aimed at providing a long-term solution to acid mine drainage as well as a water secure future for the economic hub of Gauteng.

The DWS launched the Eastern Acid Mine Drainage Treatment Plant, which ensures that the rising water levels in the abandoned East Rand mines do not contaminate the water resources and create other risks to society.

The Eastern Basin Plant in Springs is one of the largest of its kind in the world, treating approximately 110 megalitres per day.

The Eastern Basin Plant is located in one of the three main

basins in the Witwatersrand Goldfields. These include the Western Basin in the Krugersdorp area, Central Basin in the Germiston area and the Eastern Basin in the Springs to Nigel areas. Both the Western and Central Basins were commissioned previously and are running smoothly.

The initial intervention to mitigate to acid mine drainage was launched at the Central Basin Acid Mine Drainage Treatment Plant in Germiston in May 2016. This was the commencement of several integrated projects aimed at providing a long-term solution to acid mine drainage as well as contributing to water security in the economic hub of Gauteng.

In early 2018, the DWS was exploring options to further process water from the acid mine drainage treatment plants so that it can be directed towards advantageous socio-economic uses. A host of parallel initiatives are also underway to maximise efforts in mine water management in a manner that is sustainable and beneficial to all in the water sector.